Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews

Series Editor:
Richard A. Harvey

Biochemistry

5th edition

Richard Harvey
Denise Ferrier

Wolters Kluwer Health | Lippincott Williams & Wilkins

VISIT…

LANZAROTE
Caliente.COM

Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Biochemistry

Fifth Edition

Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Biochemistry

Fifth Edition

Richard A. Harvey, PhD
Professor Emeritus
Department of Biochemistry
University of Medicine and Dentistry of New Jersey–
Robert Wood Johnson Medical School
Piscataway, New Jersey

Denise R. Ferrier, PhD
Professor
Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology
Drexel University College of Medicine
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Wolters Kluwer | Lippincott Williams & Wilkins
Health
Philadelphia • Baltimore • New York • London
Buenos Aires • Hong Kong • Sydney • Tokyo

Acquisitions Editor: Susan Rhyner
Product Manager: Jennifer Verbiar
Designer: Holly Reid McLaughlin

Copyright © 2011 (2008, 2005, 1994, 1987) Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, a Wolters Kluwer business

351 West Camden Street
Baltimore, MD 21201

Two Commerce Square
2001 Market Street
Philadelphia, PA 19103

All rights reserved. This book is protected by copyright. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, including as photocopies or scanned-in or other electronic copies, or utilized by any information storage and retrieval system without written permission from the copyright owner, except for brief quotations embodied in critical articles and reviews. Materials appearing in this book prepared by individuals as part of their official duties as U.S. government employees are not covered by the above-mentioned copyright. To request permission, please contact Lippincott Williams & Wilkins at Two Commerce Square, 2001 Market St, Philadelphia, PA 19103, via email at permissions@lww.com, or via website at lww.com (products and services).

Printed in China

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Harvey, Richard A., Ph. D.
Biochemistry / Richard A. Harvey, Denise R. Ferrier ; computer graphics, Michael Cooper. -- 5th ed.
p. cm.
Rev. ed. of: Biochemistry / Pamela C. Champe, Richard A. Harvey, Denise R. Ferrier. 4th ed. c2008.
Includes bibliographical references and index.
ISBN 978-1-60831-412-6 (alk. paper)
1. Biochemistry--Outlines, syllabi, etc. 2. Biochemistry--Examinations, questions, etc. 3. Clinical biochemistry--Outlines, syllabi, etc. 4. Clinical biochemistry--Examinations, questions, etc. I. Ferrier, Denise R. II. Title.
QP514.2.C48 2010
612'.015--dc22
2010008046

The publishers have made every effort to trace the copyright holders for borrowed material. If they have inadvertently overlooked any, they will be pleased to make the necessary arrangements at the first opportunity.

DISCLAIMER

Care has been taken to confirm the accuracy of the information present and to describe generally accepted practices. However, the authors, editors, and publisher are not responsible for errors or omissions or for any consequences from application of the information in this book and make no warranty, expressed or implied, with respect to the currency, completeness, or accuracy of the contents of the publication. Application of this information in a particular situation remains the professional responsibility of the practitioner; the clinical treatments described and recommended may not be considered absolute and universal recommendations.

The authors, editors, and publisher have exerted every effort to ensure that drug selection and dosage set forth in this text are in accordance with the current recommendations and practice at the time of publication. However, in view of ongoing research, changes in government regulations, and the constant flow of information relating to drug therapy and drug reactions, the reader is urged to check the package insert for each drug for any change in indications and dosage and for added warnings and precautions. This is particularly important when the recommended agent is a new or infrequently employed drug.

Some drugs and medical devices presented in this publication have Food and Drug Administration (FDA) clearance for limited use in restricted research settings. It is the responsibility of the health care provider to ascertain the FDA status of each drug or device planned for use in their clinical practice.

To purchase additional copies of this book, call our customer service department at **(800) 638-3030** or fax orders to **(301) 223-2320**. International customers should call **(301) 223-2300**.

Visit Lippincott Williams & Wilkins on the Internet: http://www.lww.com. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins customer service representatives are available from 8:30 am to 6:00 pm, EST.

RRS1003

Contributing Authors (Chapter 26)

Susan K. Fried, PhD
Professor
Department of Medicine
Section of Endocrinology, Diabetes and Nutrition
Boston University School of Medicine
Boston, Massachusetts

Richard B. Horenstein, MD
Assistant Professor
Department of Medicine
Division of Endocrinology, Diabetes and Nutrition
University of Maryland Medical Center
Baltimore, Maryland

Computer Graphics:

Michael Cooper
Cooper Graphics
www.cooper247.com

This book is dedicated to the
memory of our dear friend and
colleague Pamela Champe,
whose commitment to her
students and love of biochemistry
made her the consummate
teacher and mentor.

Contents

UNIT I: Protein Structure and Function

Chapter 1: Amino Acids **1**
Chapter 2: Structure of Proteins **13**
Chapter 3: Globular Proteins **25**
Chapter 4: Fibrous Proteins **43**
Chapter 5: Enzymes **53**

UNIT II: Intermediary Metabolism

Chapter 6: Bioenergetics and Oxidative Phosphorylation **69**
Chapter 7: Introduction to Carbohydrates **83**
Chapter 8: Glycolysis **91**
Chapter 9: Tricarboxylic Acid Cycle **109**
Chapter 10: Gluconeogenesis **117**
Chapter 11: Glycogen Metabolism **125**
Chapter 12: Metabolism of Monosaccharides and Disaccharides **137**
Chapter 13: Pentose Phosphate Pathway and NADPH **145**
Chapter 14: Glycosaminoglycans, Proteoglycans, and Glycoproteins **157**

UNIT III: Lipid Metabolism

Chapter 15: Metabolism of Dietary Lipids **173**
Chapter 16: Fatty Acid and Triacylglycerol Metabolism **181**
Chapter 17: Complex Lipid Metabolism **201**
Chapter 18: Cholesterol and Steroid Metabolism **219**

UNIT IV: Nitrogen Metabolism

Chapter 19: Amino Acids: Disposal of Nitrogen **245**
Chapter 20: Amino Acid Degradation and Synthesis **261**
Chapter 21: Conversion of Amino Acids to Specialized Products **277**
Chapter 22: Nucleotide Metabolism **291**

UNIT V: Integration of Metabolism

Chapter 23: Metabolic Effects of Insulin and Glucagon **307**
Chapter 24: The Feed/Fast Cycle **321**
Chapter 25: Diabetes Mellitus **337**
Chapter 26: Obesity **349**
Chapter 27: Nutrition **357**
Chapter 28: Vitamins **373**

UNIT VI: Storage and Expression of Genetic Information

Chapter 29: DNA Structure, Replication and Repair **395**
Chapter 30: RNA Structure, Synthesis and Processing **417**
Chapter 31: Protein Synthesis **431**
Chapter 32: Regulation of Gene Expression **449**
Chapter 33: Biotechnology and Human Disease **465**

Index **489**

UNIT I: Protein Structure and Function

Amino Acids

1

I. OVERVIEW

Proteins are the most abundant and functionally diverse molecules in living systems. Virtually every life process depends on this class of molecules. For example, enzymes and polypeptide hormones direct and regulate metabolism in the body, whereas contractile proteins in muscle permit movement. In bone, the protein collagen forms a framework for the deposition of calcium phosphate crystals, acting like the steel cables in reinforced concrete. In the bloodstream, proteins, such as hemoglobin and plasma albumin, shuttle molecules essential to life, whereas immunoglobulins fight infectious bacteria and viruses. In short, proteins display an incredible diversity of functions, yet all share the common structural feature of being linear polymers of amino acids. This chapter describes the properties of amino acids. Chapter 2 explores how these simple building blocks are joined to form proteins that have unique three-dimensional structures, making them capable of performing specific biologic functions.

II. STRUCTURE OF THE AMINO ACIDS

Although more than 300 different amino acids have been described in nature, only 20 are commonly found as constituents of mammalian proteins. [Note: These are the only amino acids that are coded for by DNA, the genetic material in the cell (see p. 395).] Each amino acid (except for proline, which has a secondary amino group) has a carboxyl group, a primary amino group, and a distinctive side chain ("R-group") bonded to the α-carbon atom (Figure 1.1A). At physiologic pH (approximately pH 7.4), the carboxyl group is dissociated, forming the negatively charged carboxylate ion ($-COO^-$), and the amino group is protonated ($-NH_3^+$). In proteins, almost all of these carboxyl and amino groups are combined through peptide linkage and, in general, are not available for chemical reaction except for hydrogen bond formation (Figure 1.1B). Thus, it is the nature of the side chains that ultimately dictates the role

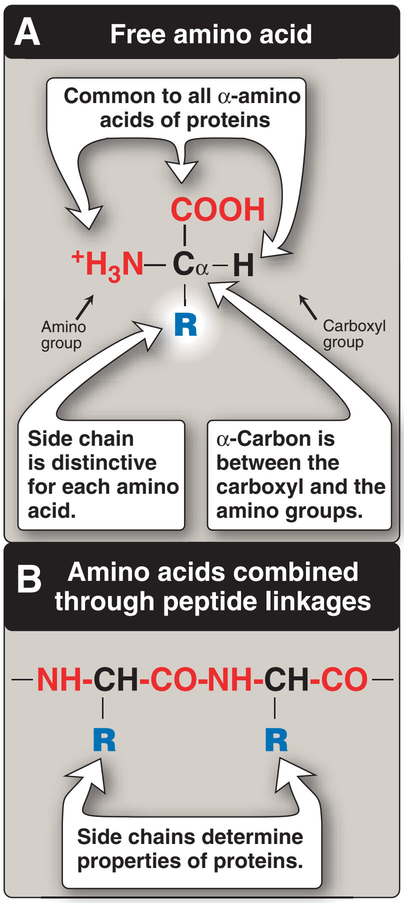

A
Free amino acid
Common to all α-amino acids of proteins
COOH
$^+H_3N-C\alpha-H$
R
Amino group
Carboxyl group
Side chain is distinctive for each amino acid.
α-Carbon is between the carboxyl and the amino groups.
B
Amino acids combined through peptide linkages
—NH-CH-CO-NH-CH-CO—
R
R
Side chains determine properties of proteins.

Figure 1.1
Structural features of amino acids (shown in their fully protonated form).

an amino acid plays in a protein. It is, therefore, useful to classify the amino acids according to the properties of their side chains, that is, whether they are nonpolar (have an even distribution of electrons) or polar (have an uneven distribution of electrons, such as acids and bases; Figures 1.2 and 1.3).

A. Amino acids with nonpolar side chains

Each of these amino acids has a nonpolar side chain that does not gain or lose protons or participate in hydrogen or ionic bonds (Figure 1.2). The side chains of these amino acids can be thought of as "oily" or lipid-like, a property that promotes hydrophobic interactions (see Figure 2.10, p. 19).

1. **Location of nonpolar amino acids in proteins:** In proteins found in aqueous solutions—a polar environment—the side chains of the nonpolar amino acids tend to cluster together in the interior of the protein (Figure 1.4). This phenomenon, known as the hydrophobic

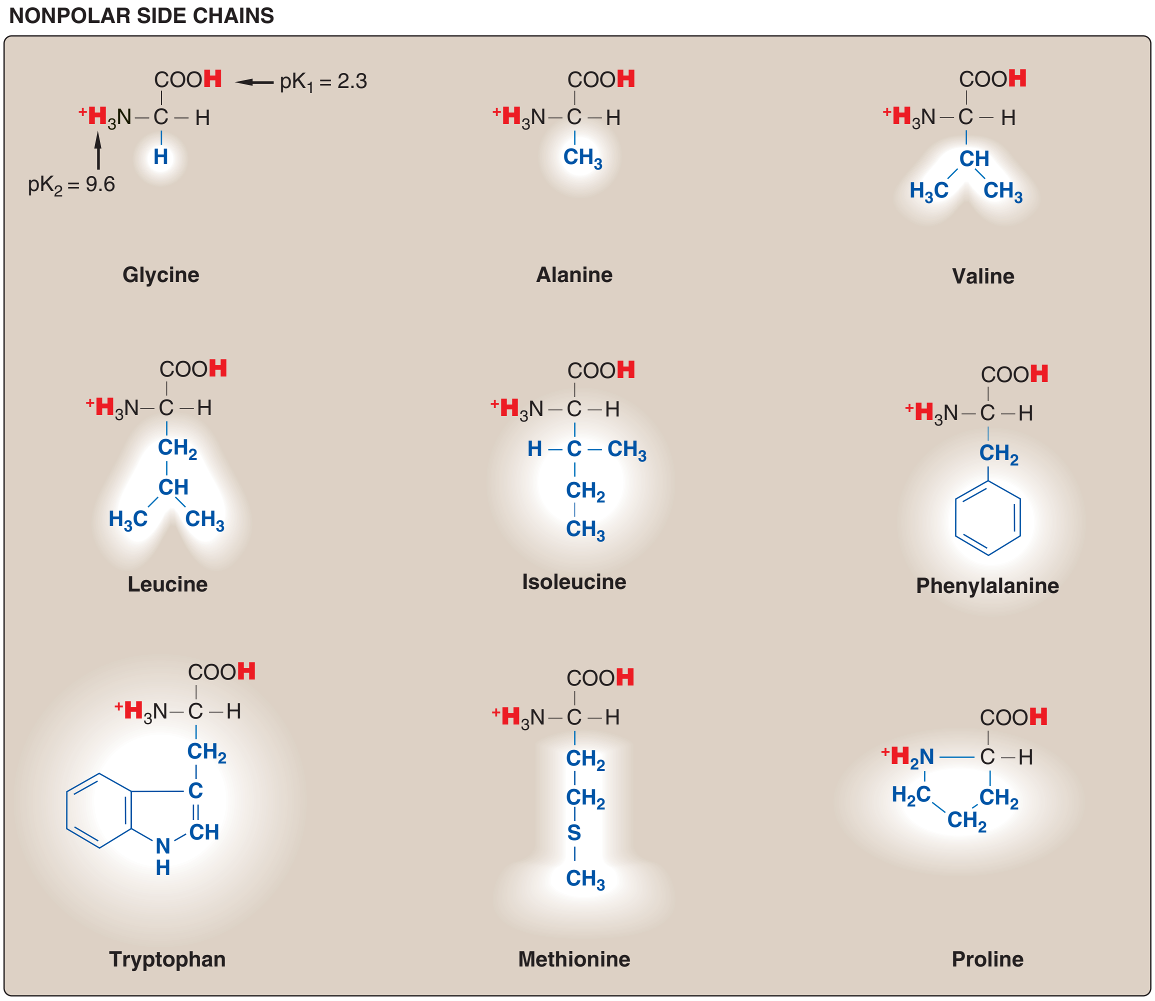
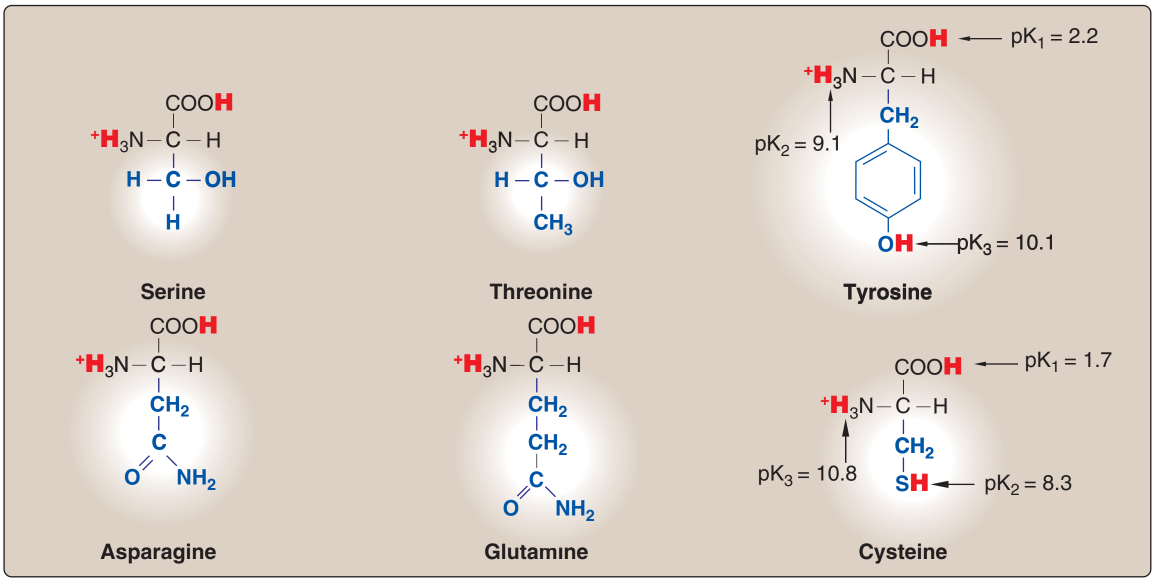
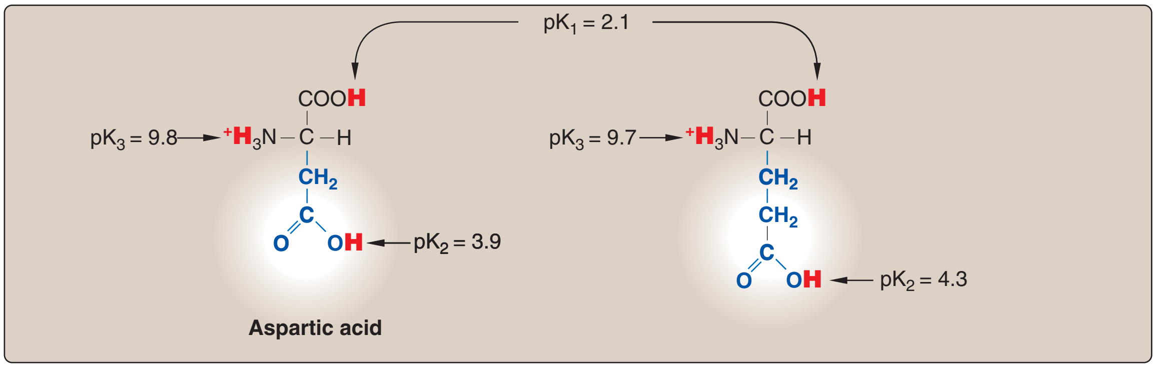

NONPOLAR SIDE CHAINS
COOH
pK1 = 2.3
+H3N–C–H
H
pK2 = 9.6
Glycine
CH3
Alanine
CH
H3C CH3
Valine
CH2
CH
H3C CH3
Leucine
H–C–CH3
CH2
CH3
Isoleucine
CH2
Phenylalanine
CH2
C
CH
N
H
Tryptophan
CH2
CH2
S
CH3
Methionine
+H2N
H2C
CH2
CH2
Proline

Figure 1.2
Classification of the 20 amino acids commonly found in proteins, according to the charge and polarity of their side chains at acidic pH is shown here and continues in Figure 1.3. Each amino acid is shown in its fully protonated form, with dissociable hydrogen ions represented in red print. The pK values for the α-carboxyl and α-amino groups of the nonpolar amino acids are similar to those shown for glycine. (Continued in Figure 1.3.)

UNCHARGED POLAR SIDE CHAINS


Serine
Threonine
pK$_1$ = 2.2
pK$_2$ = 9.1
pK$_3$ = 10.1
Tyrosine
Asparagine
Glutamine
pK$_1$ = 1.7
pK$_3$ = 10.8
pK$_2$ = 8.3
Cysteine

ACIDIC SIDE CHAINS


pK$_1$ = 2.1
pK$_3$ = 9.8
pK$_2$ = 3.9
Aspartic acid
pK$_3$ = 9.7
pK$_2$ = 4.3

BASIC SIDE CHAINS

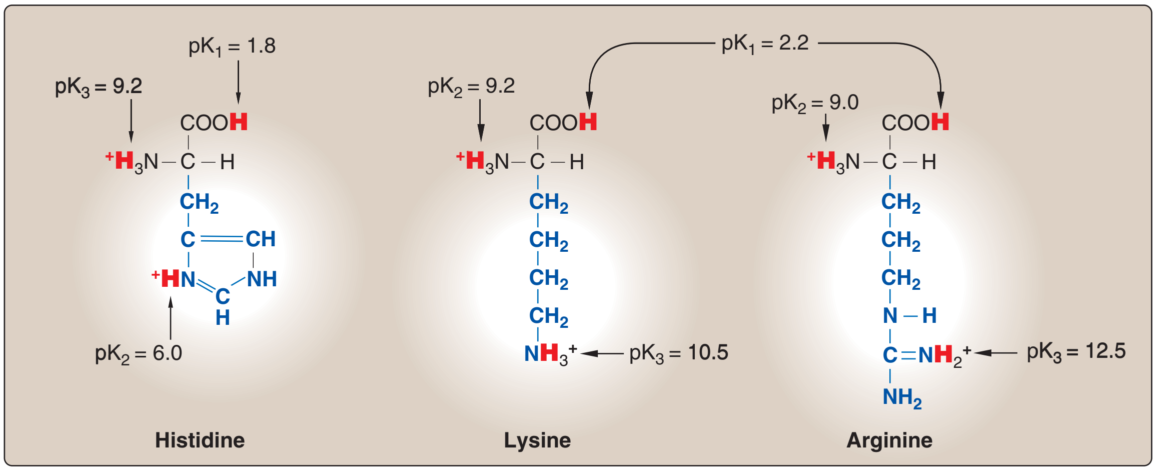

pK$_1$ = 1.8
pK$_3$ = 9.2
pK$_2$ = 6.0
Histidine
pK$_2$ = 9.2
pK$_1$ = 2.2
pK$_3$ = 10.5
Lysine
pK$_2$ = 9.0
pK$_3$ = 12.5
Arginine

Figure 1.3
Classification of the 20 amino acids commonly found in proteins, according to the charge and polarity of their side chains at acidic pH (continued from Figure 1.2).

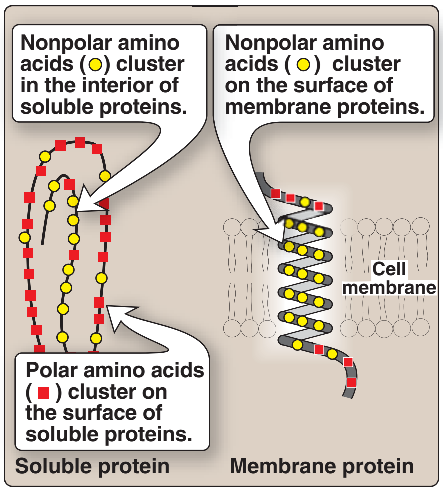

Nonpolar amino acids (○) cluster in the interior of soluble proteins.
Nonpolar amino acids (○) cluster on the surface of membrane proteins.
Cell membrane
Polar amino acids (■) cluster on the surface of soluble proteins.
Soluble protein
Membrane protein

Figure 1.4
Location of nonpolar amino acids in soluble and membrane proteins.

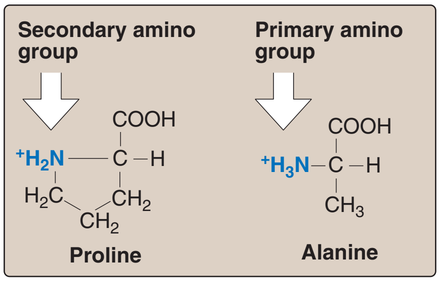

Secondary amino group
Primary amino group
COOH
^+H_2N—C—H
H_2C
CH_2
CH_2
Proline
COOH
^+H_3N—C—H
CH_3
Alanine

Figure 1.5
Comparison of the secondary amino group found in proline with the primary amino group found in other amino acids, such as alanine.

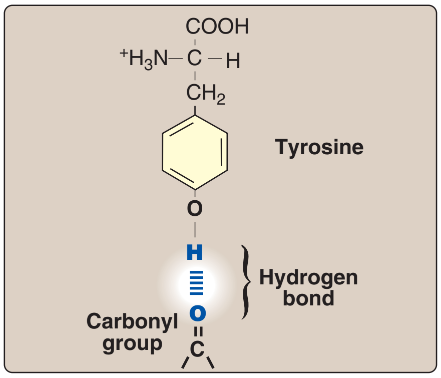

COOH
^+H_3N—C—H
CH_2
Tyrosine
O
H
Hydrogen bond
O
C
Carbonyl group

Figure 1.6
Hydrogen bond between the phenolic hydroxyl group of tyrosine and another molecule containing a carbonyl group.

effect, is the result of the hydrophobicity of the nonpolar R-groups, which act much like droplets of oil that coalesce in an aqueous environment. The nonpolar R-groups thus fill up the interior of the folded protein and help give it its three-dimensional shape. However, for proteins that are located in a hydrophobic environment, such as a membrane, the nonpolar R-groups are found on the outside surface of the protein, interacting with the lipid environment (see Figure 1.4). The importance of these hydrophobic interactions in stabilizing protein structure is discussed on p. 19.

> Sickle cell anemia, a sickling disease of red blood cells, results from the substitution of polar glutamate by nonpolar valine at the sixth position in the β subunit of hemoglobin (see p. 36).

2. **Proline:** Proline differs from other amino acids in that proline's side chain and α-amino N form a rigid, five-membered ring structure (Figure 1.5). Proline, then, has a secondary (rather than a primary) amino group. It is frequently referred to as an imino acid. The unique geometry of proline contributes to the formation of the fibrous structure of collagen (see p. 45), and often interrupts the α-helices found in globular proteins (see p. 26).

B. Amino acids with uncharged polar side chains

These amino acids have zero net charge at neutral pH, although the side chains of cysteine and tyrosine can lose a proton at an alkaline pH (see Figure 1.3). Serine, threonine, and tyrosine each contain a polar hydroxyl group that can participate in hydrogen bond formation (Figure 1.6). The side chains of asparagine and glutamine each contain a carbonyl group and an amide group, both of which can also participate in hydrogen bonds.

1. **Disulfide bond:** The side chain of cysteine contains a sulfhydryl group (–SH), which is an important component of the active site of many enzymes. In proteins, the –SH groups of two cysteines can become oxidized to form a dimer, cystine, which contains a covalent cross-link called a disulfide bond (–S–S–). (See p. 19 for a further discussion of disulfide bond formation.)

> Many extracellular proteins are stabilized by disulfide bonds. Albumin, a blood protein that functions as a transporter for a variety of molecules, is an example.

2. **Side chains as sites of attachment for other compounds:** The polar hydroxyl group of serine, threonine, and, rarely, tyrosine, can serve as a site of attachment for structures such as a phosphate group. In addition, the amide group of asparagine, as well as the hydroxyl group of serine or threonine, can serve as a site of attachment for oligosaccharide chains in glycoproteins (see p. 165).

C. Amino acids with acidic side chains

The amino acids aspartic and glutamic acid are proton donors. At physiologic pH, the side chains of these amino acids are fully ionized, containing a negatively charged carboxylate group ($–COO^-$). They are, therefore, called aspartate or glutamate to emphasize that these amino acids are negatively charged at physiologic pH (see Figure 1.3).

D. Amino acids with basic side chains

The side chains of the basic amino acids accept protons (see Figure 1.3). At physiologic pH the side chains of lysine and arginine are fully ionized and positively charged. In contrast, histidine is weakly basic, and the free amino acid is largely uncharged at physiologic pH. However, when histidine is incorporated into a protein, its side chain can be either positively charged or neutral, depending on the ionic environment provided by the polypeptide chains of the protein. This is an important property of histidine that contributes to the role it plays in the functioning of proteins such as hemoglobin (see p. 31).

E. Abbreviations and symbols for commonly occurring amino acids

Each amino acid name has an associated three-letter abbreviation and a one-letter symbol (Figure 1.7). The one-letter codes are determined by the following rules:

1. **Unique first letter:** If only one amino acid begins with a particular letter, then that letter is used as its symbol. For example, I = isoleucine.

2. **Most commonly occurring amino acids have priority:** If more than one amino acid begins with a particular letter, the most common of these amino acids receives this letter as its symbol. For example, glycine is more common than glutamate, so G = glycine.

3. **Similar sounding names:** Some one-letter symbols sound like the amino acid they represent. For example, F = phenylalanine, or W = tryptophan (“twyptophan” as Elmer Fudd would say).

4. **Letter close to initial letter:** For the remaining amino acids, a one-letter symbol is assigned that is as close in the alphabet as possible to the initial letter of the amino acid, for example, K = lysine. Furthermore, B is assigned to Asx, signifying either aspartic acid or asparagine, Z is assigned to Glx, signifying either glutamic acid or glutamine, and X is assigned to an unidentified amino acid.

1 Unique first letter:

Cysteine	=	Cys	=	C
Histidine	=	His	=	H
Iso**le**ucine	=	Ile	=	I
Methionine	=	Met	=	M
Serine	=	Ser	=	S
Val**ine**	=	Val	=	V

2 Most commonly occurring amino acids have priority:

Alanine	=	Ala	=	A
Glycine	=	Gly	=	G
Leucine	=	Leu	=	L
Proline	=	Pro	=	P
Threonine	=	Thr	=	T

3 Similar sounding names:

Arginine	=	Arg	=	R	(“a**R**ginine”)
Asparagi**n**e	=	Asn	=	N	(contains N)
Aspartate	=	Asp	=	D	("aspar**D**ic")
Glutamate	=	Glu	=	E	("glut**E**mate")
Glutami**n**e	=	Gln	=	Q	(“**Q**-tamine”)
Phenylalanine	=	Phe	=	F	(“**F**enylalanine”)
Tyrosine	=	Tyr	=	Y	(“t**Y**rosine”)
Try**p**tophan	=	Trp	=	W	(double ring in the molecule)

4 Letter close to initial letter:

Aspartate or asparagine	=	Asx	=	B	(near A)
Glutamate or glutamine	=	Glx	=	Z	
Lysine	=	Lys	=	K	(near L)
Undetermined amino acid	=			X	

Figure 1.7
Abbreviations and symbols for the commonly occurring amino acids.

F. Optical properties of amino acids

The α-carbon of an amino acid is attached to four different chemical groups and is, therefore, a chiral or optically active carbon atom. Glycine is the exception because its α-carbon has two hydrogen substituents and, therefore, is optically inactive. Amino acids that have an asymmetric center at the α-carbon can exist in two forms, designated D and L, that are mirror images of each other (Figure 1.8). The two forms in each pair are termed stereoisomers, optical isomers, or enantiomers. All amino acids found in proteins are of the L-configuration. However, D-amino acids are found in some antibiotics and in plant and bacterial cell walls. (See p. 253 for a discussion of D-amino acid metabolism.)

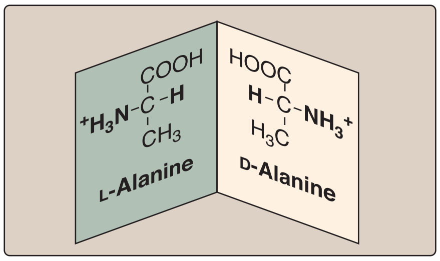


Figure 1.8
D and L forms of alanine are mirror images.

III. ACIDIC AND BASIC PROPERTIES OF AMINO ACIDS

Amino acids in aqueous solution contain weakly acidic α-carboxyl groups and weakly basic α-amino groups. In addition, each of the acidic and basic amino acids contains an ionizable group in its side chain. Thus, both free amino acids and some amino acids combined in peptide linkages can act as buffers. Recall that acids may be defined as proton donors and bases as proton acceptors. Acids (or bases) described as "weak" ionize to only a limited extent. The concentration of protons in aqueous solution is expressed as pH, where pH = log $1/[H^+]$ or $-\log [H^+]$. The quantitative relationship between the pH of the solution and concentration of a weak acid (HA) and its conjugate base (A^-) is described by the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation.

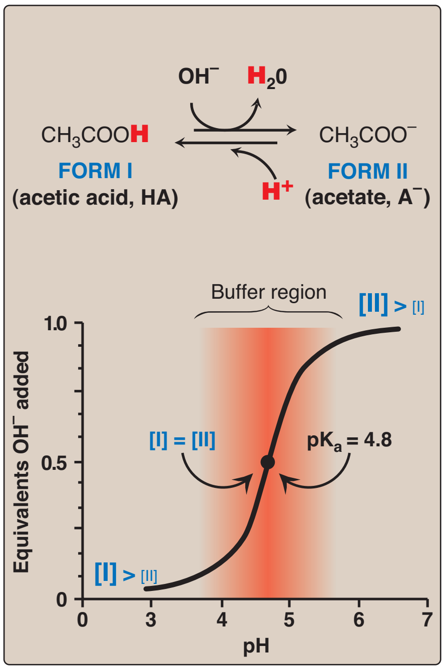


Figure 1.9
Titration curve of acetic acid.

A. Derivation of the equation

Consider the release of a proton by a weak acid represented by HA:

HA	⇄	H^+	+	A^-
weak acid		proton		salt form or conjugate base

The "salt" or conjugate base, A^-, is the ionized form of a weak acid. By definition, the dissociation constant of the acid, K_a, is

$$K_a = \frac{[H^+][A^-]}{[HA]}$$

[Note: The larger the K_a, the stronger the acid, because most of the HA has dissociated into H^+ and A^-. Conversely, the smaller the K_a, the less acid has dissociated and, therefore, the weaker the acid.] By solving for the $[H^+]$ in the above equation, taking the logarithm of both sides of the equation, multiplying both sides of the equation by −1, and substituting $pH = -\log [H^+]$ and $pK_a = -\log K_a$, we obtain the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation:

$$\boxed{pH = pK_a + \log \frac{[A^-]}{[HA]}}$$

B. Buffers

A buffer is a solution that resists change in pH following the addition of an acid or base. A buffer can be created by mixing a weak acid (HA) with its conjugate base (A^-). If an acid such as HCl is then added to such a solution, A^- can neutralize it, in the process being converted to HA. If a base is added, HA can neutralize it, in the process being converted to A^-. Maximum buffering capacity occurs at a pH equal to the pK_a, but a conjugate acid/base pair can still serve as an effective buffer when the pH of a solution is within approximately ±1 pH unit of the pK_a. If the

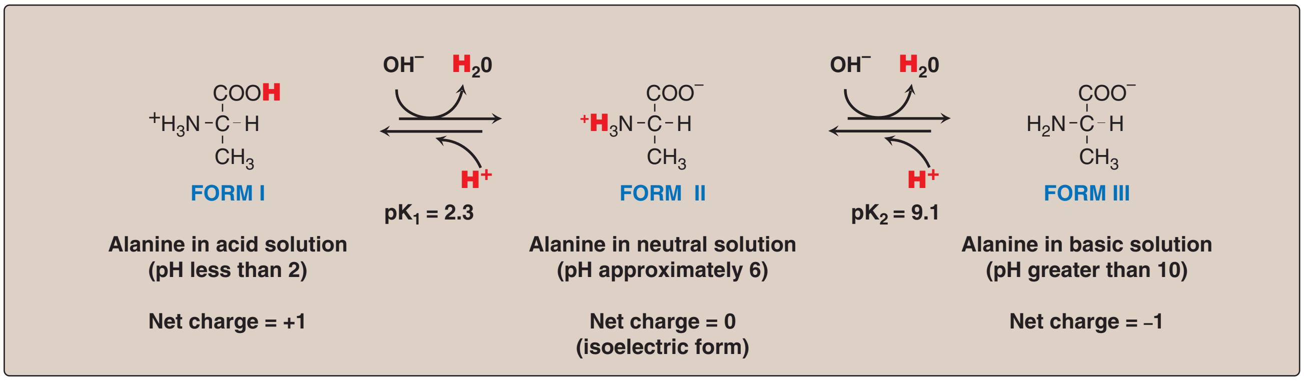

COOH
+H3N-C-H
CH3
FORM I
OH−
H20
H+
pK1 = 2.3
COO−
+H3N-C-H
CH3
FORM II
OH−
H20
H+
pK2 = 9.1
COO−
H2N-C-H
CH3
FORM III
Alanine in acid solution
(pH less than 2)
Net charge = +1
Alanine in neutral solution
(pH approximately 6)
Net charge = 0
(isoelectric form)
Alanine in basic solution
(pH greater than 10)
Net charge = –1

Figure 1.10
Ionic forms of alanine in acidic, neutral, and basic solutions.

amounts of HA and A^- are equal, the pH is equal to the pK_a. As shown in Figure 1.9, a solution containing acetic acid (HA = CH_3-COOH) and acetate (A^- = CH_3-COO^-) with a pK_a of 4.8 resists a change in pH from pH 3.8 to 5.8, with maximum buffering at pH 4.8. At pH values less than the pK_a, the protonated acid form (CH_3-COOH) is the predominant species. At pH values greater than the pK_a, the deprotonated base form (CH_3-COO^-) is the predominant species in solution.

C. Titration of an amino acid

1. **Dissociation of the carboxyl group:** The titration curve of an amino acid can be analyzed in the same way as described for acetic acid. Consider alanine, for example, which contains both an α-carboxyl and an α-amino group. At a low (acidic) pH, both of these groups are protonated (shown in Figure 1.10). As the pH of the solution is raised, the –COOH group of Form I can dissociate by donating a proton to the medium. The release of a proton results in the formation of the carboxylate group, $-COO^-$. This structure is shown as Form II, which is the dipolar form of the molecule (see Figure 1.10). This form, also called a zwitterion, is the isoelectric form of alanine, that is, it has an overall (net) charge of zero.

2. **Application of the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation:** The dissociation constant of the carboxyl group of an amino acid is called K_1, rather than K_a, because the molecule contains a second titratable group. The Henderson-Hasselbalch equation can be used to analyze the dissociation of the carboxyl group of alanine in the same way as described for acetic acid:

$$K_1 = \frac{[H^+][II]}{[I]}$$

where I is the fully protonated form of alanine, and II is the isoelectric form of alanine (see Figure 1.10). This equation can be rearranged and converted to its logarithmic form to yield:

$$\mathrm{pH} = \mathrm{p}K_1 + \log\frac{[\mathrm{II}]}{[\mathrm{I}]}$$

3. **Dissociation of the amino group:** The second titratable group of alanine is the amino ($-NH_3^+$) group shown in Figure 1.10. This is a much weaker acid than the –COOH group and, therefore, has a much smaller dissociation constant, K_2. [Note: Its pK_a is therefore larger.] Release of a proton from the protonated amino group of Form II results in the fully deprotonated form of alanine, Form III (see Figure 1.10).

4. **pKs of alanine:** The sequential dissociation of protons from the carboxyl and amino groups of alanine is summarized in Figure 1.10. Each titratable group has a pK_a that is numerically equal to the pH at which exactly one half of the protons have been removed from that group. The pK_a for the most acidic group (–COOH) is pK_1, whereas the pK_a for the next most acidic group ($-NH_3^+$) is pK_2.

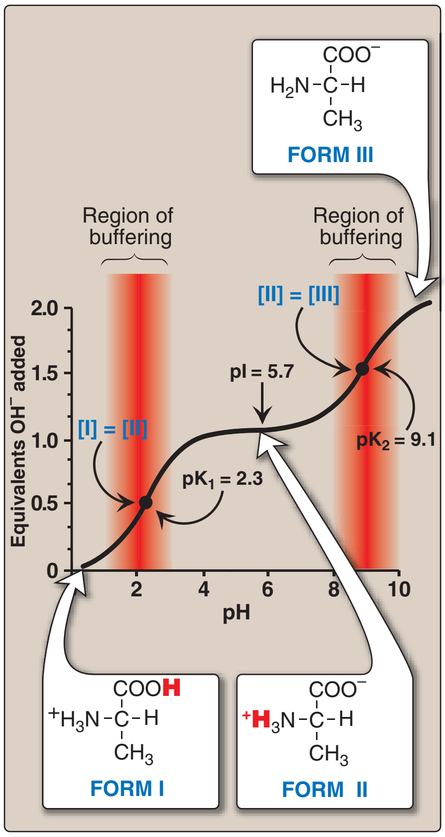


Figure 1.11
The titration curve of alanine.

5. **Titration curve of alanine:** By applying the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation to each dissociable acidic group, it is possible to calculate the complete titration curve of a weak acid. Figure 1.11 shows the change in pH that occurs during the addition of base to the fully protonated form of alanine (I) to produce the completely deprotonated form (III). Note the following:

   a. **Buffer pairs:** The $-COOH/-COO^-$ pair can serve as a buffer in the pH region around pK_1, and the $-NH_3^+/-NH_2$ pair can buffer in the region around pK_2.

   b. **When pH = pK:** When the pH is equal to pK_1 (2.3), equal amounts of Forms I and II of alanine exist in solution. When the pH is equal to pK_2 (9.1), equal amounts of Forms II and III are present in solution.

   c. **Isoelectric point:** At neutral pH, alanine exists predominantly as the dipolar Form II in which the amino and carboxyl groups are ionized, but the net charge is zero. The isoelectric point (pI) is the pH at which an amino acid is electrically neutral, that is, in which the sum of the positive charges equals the sum of the negative charges. For an amino acid, such as alanine, that has only two dissociable hydrogens (one from the α-carboxyl and one from the α-amino group), the pI is the average of pK_1 and pK_2 ($pI = [2.3 + 9.1]/2 = 5.7$, see Figure 1.11). The pI is thus midway between pK_1 (2.3) and pK_2 (9.1). pI corresponds to the pH at which the Form II (with a net charge of zero) predominates, and at which there are also equal amounts of Forms I (net charge of +1) and III (net charge of –1).

> Separation of plasma proteins by charge typically is done at a pH above the pI of the major proteins, thus, the charge on the proteins is negative. In an electric field, the proteins will move toward the positive electrode at a rate determined by their net negative charge. Variations in the mobility pattern are suggestive of certain diseases.

6. **Net charge of amino acids at neutral pH:** At physiologic pH, amino acids have a negatively charged group ($-COO^-$) and a positively charged group ($-NH_3^+$), both attached to the α-carbon. [Note: Glutamate, aspartate, histidine, arginine, and lysine have additional potentially charged groups in their side chains.] Substances, such as amino acids, that can act either as an acid or a base are defined as amphoteric, and are referred to as ampholytes (amphoteric electrolytes).

D. Other applications of the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation

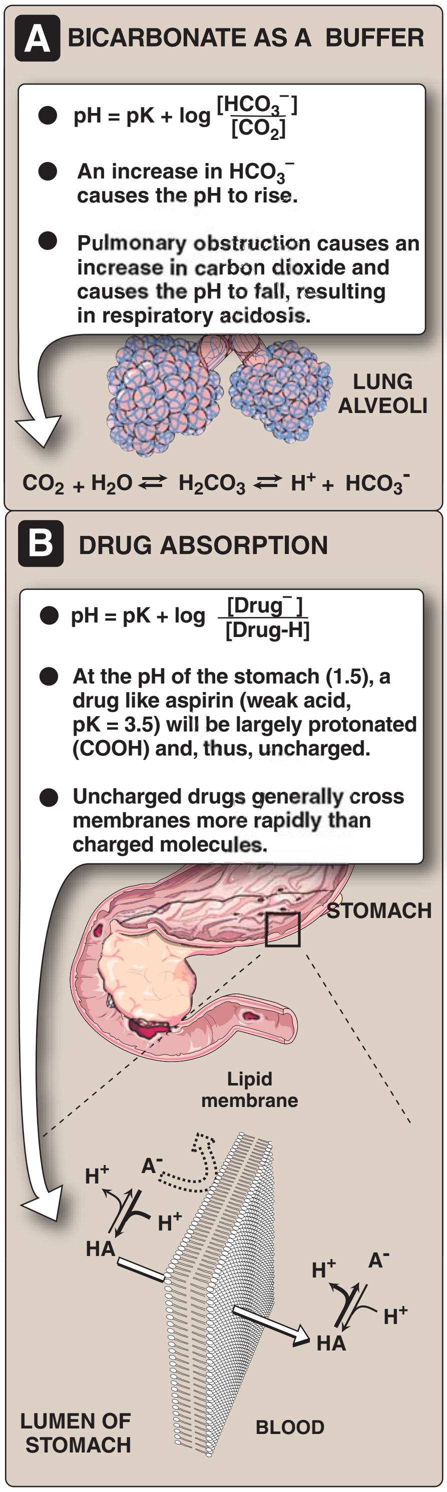
The Henderson-Hasselbalch equation can be used to calculate how the pH of a physiologic solution responds to changes in the concentration of a weak acid and/or its corresponding “salt” form. For example, in the bicarbonate buffer system, the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation predicts how shifts in the bicarbonate ion concentration, $[HCO_3^-]$, and CO_2 influence pH (Figure 1.12A). The equation is also useful for calculating the abundance of ionic forms of acidic and basic drugs. For example, most drugs are either weak acids or weak bases (Figure 1.12B). Acidic drugs (HA) release a proton (H^+), causing a charged anion (A^-) to form.

$$HA \rightleftarrows H^+ + A^-$$

Weak bases (BH^+) can also release a H^+. However, the protonated form of basic drugs is usually charged, and the loss of a proton produces the uncharged base (B).

$$BH^+ \rightleftarrows B + H^+$$

A drug passes through membranes more readily if it is uncharged. Thus, for a weak acid such as aspirin, the uncharged HA can permeate through membranes and A^- cannot. For a weak base, such as morphine, the uncharged form, B, penetrates through the cell membrane and BH^+ does not. Therefore, the effective concentration of the permeable form of each drug at its absorption site is determined by the relative concentrations of the charged and uncharged forms. The ratio between the two forms is determined by the pH at the site of absorption, and by the strength of the weak acid or base, which is represented by the pK_a of the ionizable group. The Henderson-Hasselbalch equation is useful in determining how much drug is found on either side of a membrane that separates two compartments that differ in pH, for example, the stomach (pH 1.0–1.5) and blood plasma (pH 7.4).



A BICARBONATE AS A BUFFER

- $pH = pK + \log \frac{[HCO_3^-]}{[CO_2]}$
- An increase in HCO_3^- causes the pH to rise.
- Pulmonary obstruction causes an increase in carbon dioxide and causes the pH to fall, resulting in respiratory acidosis.

$CO_2 + H_2O \rightleftarrows H_2CO_3 \rightleftarrows H^+ + HCO_3^-$

B DRUG ABSORPTION

- $pH = pK + \log \frac{[Drug^-]}{[Drug\text{-}H]}$
- At the pH of the stomach (1.5), a drug like aspirin (weak acid, pK = 3.5) will be largely protonated (COOH) and, thus, uncharged.
- Uncharged drugs generally cross membranes more rapidly than charged molecules.

Figure 1.12
The Henderson-Hasselbalch equation is used to predict: A, changes in pH as the concentrations of HCO_3^- or CO_2 are altered; or B, the ionic forms of drugs.

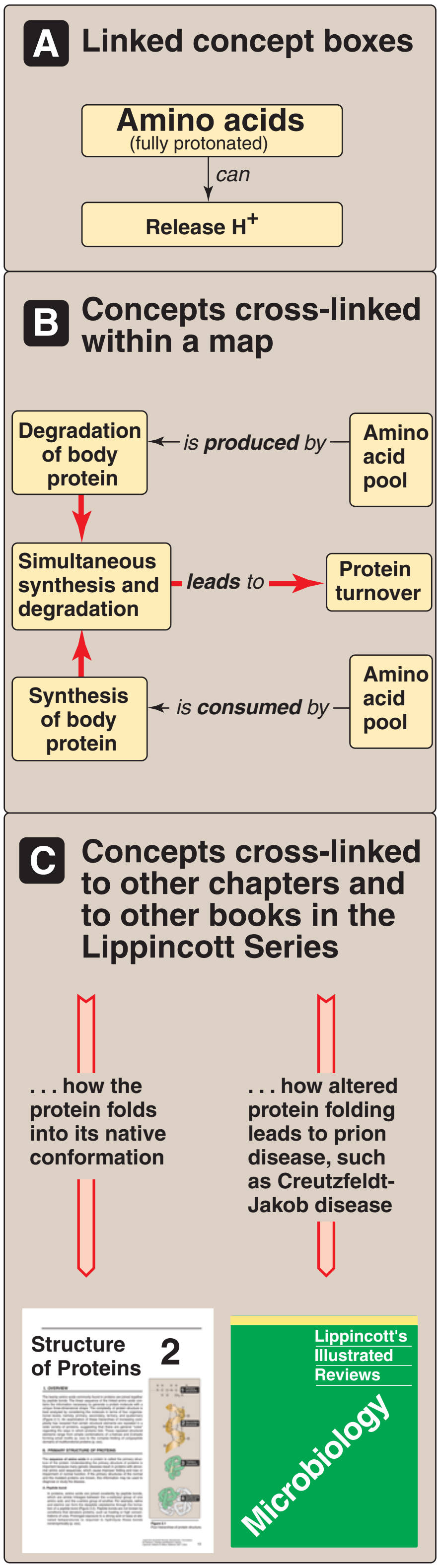

A
Linked concept boxes
Amino acids
(fully protonated)
can
Release H+
B
Concepts cross-linked within a map
Degradation of body protein
is produced by
Amino acid pool
Simultaneous synthesis and degradation
leads to
Protein turnover
Synthesis of body protein
is consumed by
Amino acid pool
C
Concepts cross-linked to other chapters and to other books in the Lippincott Series
. . . how the protein folds into its native conformation
. . . how altered protein folding leads to prion disease, such as Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease
Structure of Proteins
2
Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews
Microbiology

Figure 1.13
Symbols used in concept maps.

IV. CONCEPT MAPS

Students sometimes view biochemistry as a blur of facts or equations to be memorized, rather than a body of concepts to be understood. Details provided to enrich understanding of these concepts inadvertently turn into distractions. What seems to be missing is a road map—a guide that provides the student with an intuitive understanding of how various topics fit together to make sense. The authors have, therefore, created a series of biochemical concept maps to graphically illustrate relationships between ideas presented in a chapter, and to show how the information can be grouped or organized. A concept map is, thus, a tool for visualizing the connections between concepts. Material is represented in a hierarchic fashion, with the most inclusive, most general concepts at the top of the map, and the more specific, less general concepts arranged beneath. The concept maps ideally function as templates or guides for organizing information, so the student can readily find the best ways to integrate new information into knowledge they already possess.

A. How is a concept map constructed?

1. **Concept boxes and links:** Educators define concepts as "perceived regularities in events or objects." In our biochemical maps, concepts include abstractions (for example, free energy), processes (for example, oxidative phosphorylation), and compounds (for example, glucose 6-phosphate). These broadly defined concepts are prioritized with the central idea positioned at the top of the page. The concepts that follow from this central idea are then drawn in boxes (Figure 1.13A). The size of the type indicates the relative importance of each idea. Lines are drawn between concept boxes to show which are related. The label on the line defines the relationship between two concepts, so that it reads as a valid statement, that is, the connection creates meaning. The lines with arrowheads indicate in which direction the connection should be read (Figure 1.14).

2. **Cross-links:** Unlike linear flow charts or outlines, concept maps may contain cross-links that allow the reader to visualize complex relationships between ideas represented in different parts of the map (Figure 1.13B), or between the map and other chapters in this book or companion books in the series (Figure 1.13C). Cross-links can thus identify concepts that are central to more than one discipline, empowering students to be effective in clinical situations, and on the United States Medical Licensure Examination (USMLE) or other examinations, that bridge disciplinary boundaries. Students learn to visually perceive nonlinear relationships between facts, in contrast to cross-referencing within linear text.

V. CHAPTER SUMMARY

Each amino acid has an **α-carboxyl group** and a primary **α-amino group** (except for proline, which has a **secondary amino group**). At physiologic pH, the α-carboxyl group is dissociated, forming the negatively charged carboxylate ion ($-COO^-$), and the α-amino group is protonated ($-NH_3^+$). Each amino acid also contains one of 20 distinctive

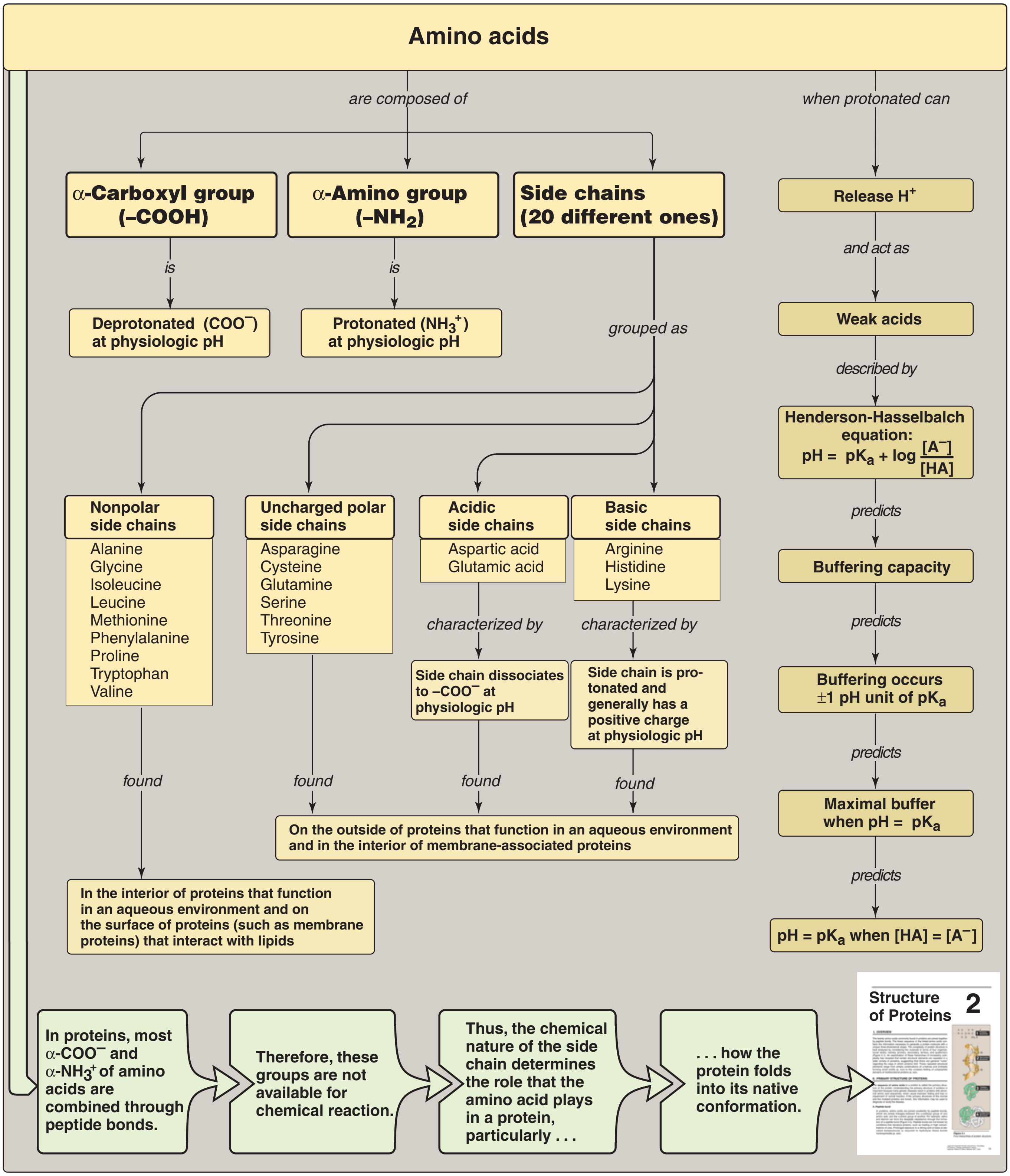

Amino acids
are composed of
when protonated can
α-Carboxyl group (–COOH)
α-Amino group ($-NH_2$)
Side chains (20 different ones)
Release H^+
is
is
and act as
Deprotonated (COO^-) at physiologic pH
Protonated (NH_3^+) at physiologic pH
grouped as
Weak acids
described by
Henderson-Hasselbalch equation: $pH = pK_a + \log \frac{[A^-]}{[HA]}$
predicts
Nonpolar side chains
Alanine
Glycine
Isoleucine
Leucine
Methionine
Phenylalanine
Proline
Tryptophan
Valine
Uncharged polar side chains
Asparagine
Cysteine
Glutamine
Serine
Threonine
Tyrosine
Acidic side chains
Aspartic acid
Glutamic acid
Basic side chains
Arginine
Histidine
Lysine
Buffering capacity
characterized by
characterized by
predicts
Side chain dissociates to $-COO^-$ at physiologic pH
Side chain is protonated and generally has a positive charge at physiologic pH
Buffering occurs ±1 pH unit of pK_a
predicts
found
found
found
found
Maximal buffer when $pH = pK_a$
On the outside of proteins that function in an aqueous environment and in the interior of membrane-associated proteins
predicts
In the interior of proteins that function in an aqueous environment and on the surface of proteins (such as membrane proteins) that interact with lipids
$pH = pK_a$ when $[HA] = [A^-]$
Structure of Proteins 2
In proteins, most α-COO^- and α-NH_3^+ of amino acids are combined through peptide bonds.
Therefore, these groups are not available for chemical reaction.
Thus, the chemical nature of the side chain determines the role that the amino acid plays in a protein, particularly . . .
. . . how the protein folds into its native conformation.

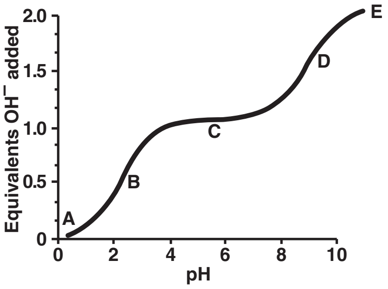
Figure 1.14
Key concept map for amino acids.

side chains attached to the α-carbon atom. The chemical nature of this side chain determines the function of an amino acid in a protein, and provides the basis for classification of the amino acids as **nonpolar**, **uncharged polar**, **acidic**, or **basic**. All free amino acids, plus charged amino acids in peptide chains, can serve as **buffers.** The quantitative relationship between the pH of a solution and the concentration of a weak acid (HA) and its conjugate base (A^-) is described by the **Henderson-Hasselbalch equation**. Buffering occurs within ±1pH unit of the pK_a, and is maximal when pH = pK_a, at which $[A^-] = [HA]$. The α-carbon of each amino acid (except glycine) is attached to four different chemical groups and is, therefore, a **chiral** or **optically active** carbon atom. Only the L-form of amino acids is found in proteins synthesized by the human body.

Study Questions

Choose the ONE correct answer.

1.1 The letters A through E designate certain regions on the titration curve for glycine (shown below). Which one of the following statements concerning this curve is correct?



A. Point A represents the region where glycine is deprotonated.
B. Point B represents a region of minimal buffering.
C. Point C represents the region where the net charge on glycine is zero.
D. Point D represents the pK of glycine's carboxyl group.
E. Point E represents the pI for glycine.

Correct answer = C. C represents the isoelectric point or pI, and as such is midway between pK_1 and pK_2 for this monoamino monocarboxylic acid. Glycine is fully protonated at Point A. Point B represents a region of maximum buffering, as does Point D. Point E represents the region where glycine is fully deprotonated.

1.2 Which one of the following statements concerning the peptide shown below is correct?

Gly-Cys-Glu-Ser-Asp-Arg-Cys

A. The peptide contains glutamine.
B. The peptide contains a side chain with a secondary amino group.
C. The peptide contains a majority of amino acids with side chains that would be positively charged at pH 7.
D. The peptide is able to form an internal disulfide bond.

Correct answer = D. The two cysteine residues can, under oxidizing conditions, form a disulfide bond. Glutamine's 3-letter abbreviation is Gln. Proline (Pro) contains a secondary amino group. Only one (Arg) of the seven would have a positively charged side chain at pH 7.

1.3 Given that the pI for glycine is 6.1, to which electrode, positive or negative, will glycine move in an electric field at pH 2? Explain.

Correct answer = negative electrode. When the pH is less than the pI, the charge on glycine is positive because the α-amino group is fully protonated. (Recall that glycine has H as its R group).

Structure of Proteins

2

I. OVERVIEW

The 20 amino acids commonly found in proteins are joined together by peptide bonds. The linear sequence of the linked amino acids contains the information necessary to generate a protein molecule with a unique three-dimensional shape. The complexity of protein structure is best analyzed by considering the molecule in terms of four organizational levels, namely, primary, secondary, tertiary, and quaternary (Figure 2.1). An examination of these hierarchies of increasing complexity has revealed that certain structural elements are repeated in a wide variety of proteins, suggesting that there are general "rules" regarding the ways in which proteins achieve their native, functional form. These repeated structural elements range from simple combinations of α-helices and β–sheets forming small motifs, to the complex folding of polypeptide domains of multifunctional proteins (see p. 18).

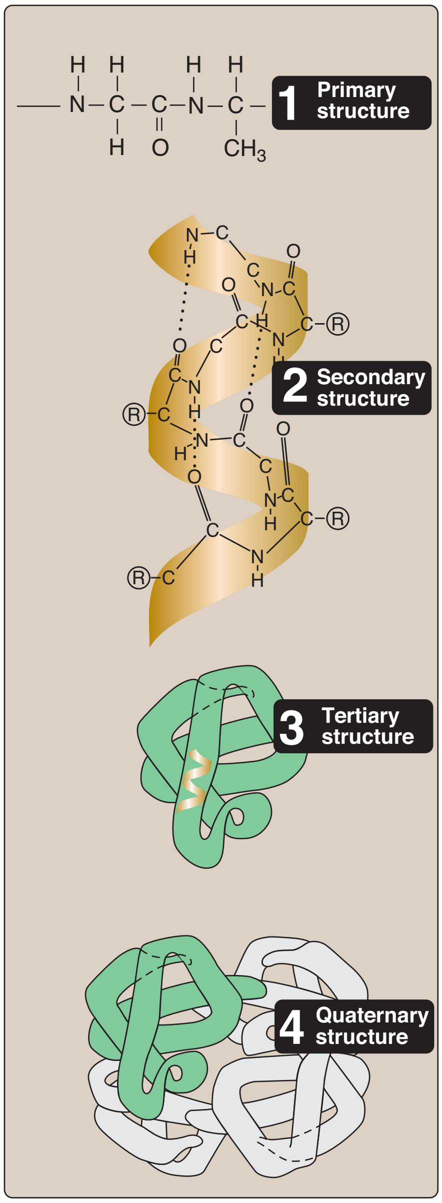


Figure 2.1
Four hierarchies of protein structure.

II. PRIMARY STRUCTURE OF PROTEINS

The sequence of amino acids in a protein is called the primary structure of the protein. Understanding the primary structure of proteins is important because many genetic diseases result in proteins with abnormal amino acid sequences, which cause improper folding and loss or impairment of normal function. If the primary structures of the normal and the mutated proteins are known, this information may be used to diagnose or study the disease.

A. Peptide bond

In proteins, amino acids are joined covalently by peptide bonds, which are amide linkages between the α-carboxyl group of one amino acid and the α-amino group of another. For example, valine and alanine can form the dipeptide valylalanine through the formation of a peptide bond (Figure 2.2). Peptide bonds are not broken by conditions that denature proteins, such as heating or high concentrations of urea (see p. 20). Prolonged exposure to a strong acid or base at elevated temperatures is required to hydrolyze these bonds nonenzymically.

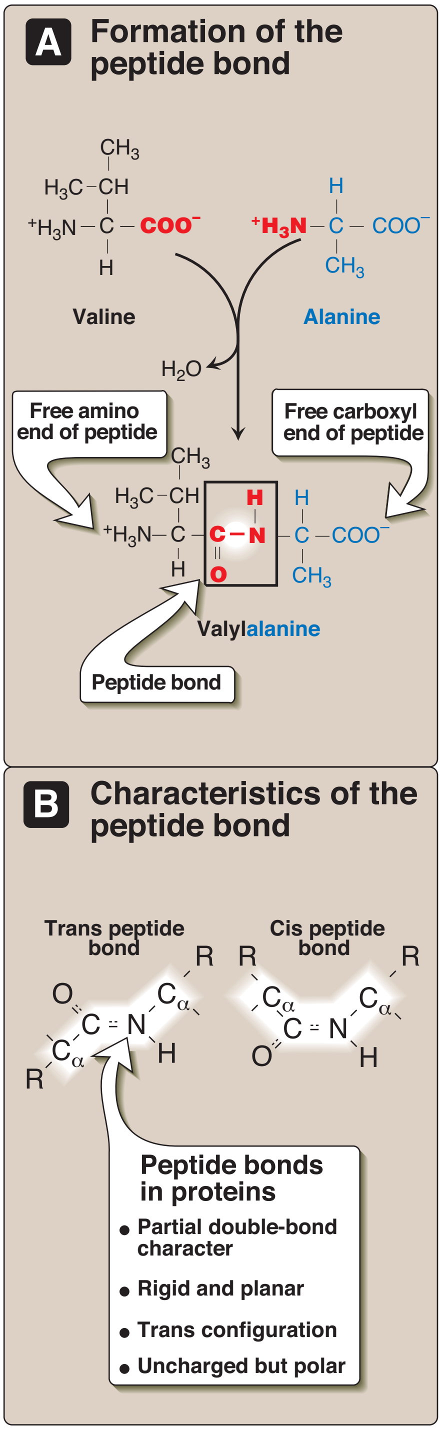

A
Formation of the peptide bond
CH3
H3C–CH
+H3N–C–COO–
H
H
+H3N–C–COO–
CH3
Valine
Alanine
H2O
Free amino end of peptide
Free carboxyl end of peptide
CH3
H3C–CH
H
H
+H3N–C–C–N–C–COO–
H
O
CH3
Valylalanine
Peptide bond
B
Characteristics of the peptide bond
Trans peptide bond
Cis peptide bond
R
O
Cα
C = N
Cα
H
R
R
Cα
C = N
O
Cα
H
R
Peptide bonds in proteins
• Partial double-bond character
• Rigid and planar
• Trans configuration
• Uncharged but polar

Figure 2.2
A. Formation of a peptide bond, showing the structure of the dipeptide valylalanine.
B. Characteristics of the peptide bond.

1. **Naming the peptide:** By convention, the free amino end (N-terminal) of the peptide chain is written to the left and the free carboxyl end (C-terminal) to the right. Therefore, all amino acid sequences are read from the N- to the C-terminal end of the peptide. For example, in Figure 2.2A, the order of the amino acids is "valine, alanine." Linkage of many amino acids through peptide bonds results in an unbranched chain called a polypeptide. Each component amino acid in a polypeptide is called a "residue" because it is the portion of the amino acid remaining after the atoms of water are lost in the formation of the peptide bond. When a polypeptide is named, all amino acid residues have their suffixes (-ine, -an, -ic, or -ate) changed to -yl, with the exception of the C-terminal amino acid. For example, a tripeptide composed of an N-terminal valine, a glycine, and a C-terminal leucine is called valylglycylleucine.

2. **Characteristics of the peptide bond:** The peptide bond has a partial double-bond character, that is, it is shorter than a single bond, and is rigid and planar (Figure 2.2B). This prevents free rotation around the bond between the carbonyl carbon and the nitrogen of the peptide bond. However, the bonds between the α-carbons and the α-amino or α-carboxyl groups can be freely rotated (although they are limited by the size and character of the R-groups). This allows the polypeptide chain to assume a variety of possible configurations. The peptide bond is generally a trans bond (instead of cis, see Figure 2.2B), in large part because of steric interference of the R-groups when in the cis position.

3. **Polarity of the peptide bond:** Like all amide linkages, the –C=O and –NH groups of the peptide bond are uncharged, and neither accept nor release protons over the pH range of 2–12. Thus, the charged groups present in polypeptides consist solely of the N-terminal (α-amino) group, the C-terminal (α-carboxyl) group, and any ionized groups present in the side chains of the constituent amino acids. The –C=O and –NH groups of the peptide bond are polar, and are involved in hydrogen bonds, for example, in α-helices and β-sheet structures, described on pp. 16–17.

B. Determination of the amino acid composition of a polypeptide

The first step in determining the primary structure of a polypeptide is to identify and quantitate its constituent amino acids. A purified sample of the polypeptide to be analyzed is first hydrolyzed by strong acid at 110°C for 24 hours. This treatment cleaves the peptide bonds and releases the individual amino acids, which can be separated by cation-exchange chromatography. In this technique, a mixture of amino acids is applied to a column that contains a resin to which a negatively charged group is tightly attached. [Note: If the attached group is positively charged, the column becomes an anion-exchange column.] The amino acids bind to the column with different affinities, depending on their charges, hydrophobicity, and other characteristics. Each amino acid is sequentially released from the chromatography column by eluting with solutions of increasing ionic strength and pH (Figure 2.3). The separated amino acids contained in the eluate from the column are quantitated by heating them with ninhydrin—a reagent that forms a purple compound with most amino acids, ammonia, and amines. The amount of each amino acid is determined spectrophotometrically by measuring the amount of light absorbed by the ninhydrin derivative. The analysis described above is performed using an amino acid analyzer—an automated machine whose components are depicted in Figure 2.3.

C. Sequencing of the peptide from its N-terminal end

Sequencing is a stepwise process of identifying the specific amino acid at each position in the peptide chain, beginning at the N-terminal end. Phenylisothiocyanate, known as Edman reagent, is used to label the amino-terminal residue under mildly alkaline conditions (Figure 2.4). The resulting phenylthiohydantoin (PTH) derivative introduces an instability in the N-terminal peptide bond that can be selectively hydrolyzed without cleaving the other peptide bonds. The identity of the amino acid derivative can then be determined. Edman reagent can be applied repeatedly to the shortened peptide obtained in each previous cycle.

D. Cleavage of the polypeptide into smaller fragments

Many polypeptides have a primary structure composed of more than 100 amino acids. Such molecules cannot be sequenced directly from end to end. However, these large molecules can be cleaved at specific sites, and the resulting fragments sequenced. By using more than one cleaving agent (enzymes and/or chemicals) on separate samples of the purified polypeptide, overlapping fragments can be generated that permit the proper ordering of the sequenced fragments, thus providing a complete amino acid sequence of the large polypeptide (Figure 2.5). Enzymes that hydrolyze peptide bonds are termed *peptidases* (*proteases*). [Note: *Exopeptidases* cut at the ends of proteins, and are divided into *aminopeptidases* and *carboxypeptidases*. *Carboxypeptidases* are used in determining the C-terminal amino acid. *Endopeptidases* cleave within a protein.]

E. Determination of a protein's primary structure by DNA sequencing

The sequence of nucleotides in a protein-coding region of the DNA specifies the amino acid sequence of a polypeptide. Therefore, if the nucleotide sequence can be determined, it is possible, from knowledge of the genetic code (see p. 431), to translate the sequence of nucleotides into the corresponding amino acid sequence of that

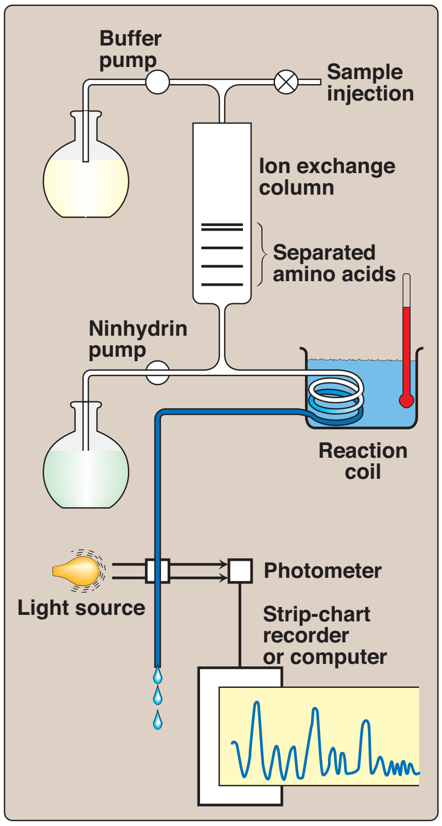

Buffer pump
Sample injection
Ion exchange column
Separated amino acids
Ninhydrin pump
Reaction coil
Photometer
Light source
Strip-chart recorder or computer

Figure 2.3
Determination of the amino acid composition of a polypeptide using an amino acid analyzer.

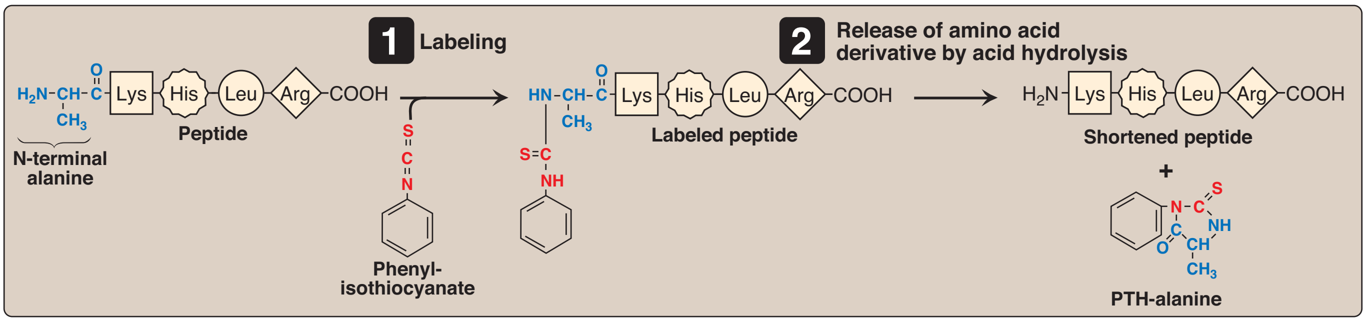

1 Labeling
2 Release of amino acid derivative by acid hydrolysis
H2N-CH-C-Lys-His-Leu-Arg-COOH
O
CH3
N-terminal alanine
Peptide
S=C=N
Phenyl-isothiocyanate
HN-CH-C-Lys-His-Leu-Arg-COOH
S=C
NH
Labeled peptide
H2N-Lys-His-Leu-Arg-COOH
Shortened peptide
+
S
N-C
NH
C
O
CH
CH3
PTH-alanine

Figure 2.4
Determination of the amino-terminal residue of a polypeptide by Edman degradation.

polypeptide. This indirect process, although routinely used to obtain the amino acid sequences of proteins, has the limitations of not being able to predict the positions of disulfide bonds in the folded chain, and of not identifying any amino acids that are modified after their incorporation into the polypeptide (posttranslational modification, see p. 443). Therefore, direct protein sequencing is an extremely important tool for determining the true character of the primary sequence of many polypeptides.

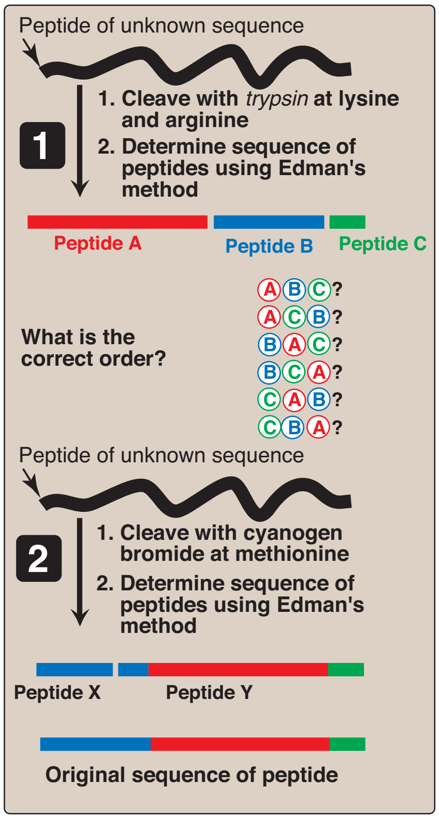

Peptide of unknown sequence
1
1. Cleave with trypsin at lysine and arginine
2. Determine sequence of peptides using Edman's method
Peptide A
Peptide B
Peptide C
What is the correct order?
ABC?
ACB?
BAC?
BCA?
CAB?
CBA?
Peptide of unknown sequence
2
1. Cleave with cyanogen bromide at methionine
2. Determine sequence of peptides using Edman's method
Peptide X
Peptide Y
Original sequence of peptide

Figure 2.5
Overlapping of peptides produced by the action of *trypsin* and cyanogen bromide.

III. SECONDARY STRUCTURE OF PROTEINS

The polypeptide backbone does not assume a random three-dimensional structure, but instead generally forms regular arrangements of amino acids that are located near to each other in the linear sequence. These arrangements are termed the secondary structure of the polypeptide. The α-helix, β-sheet, and β-bend (β-turn) are examples of secondary structures frequently encountered in proteins. [Note: The collagen α-chain helix, another example of secondary structure, is discussed on p. 45.]

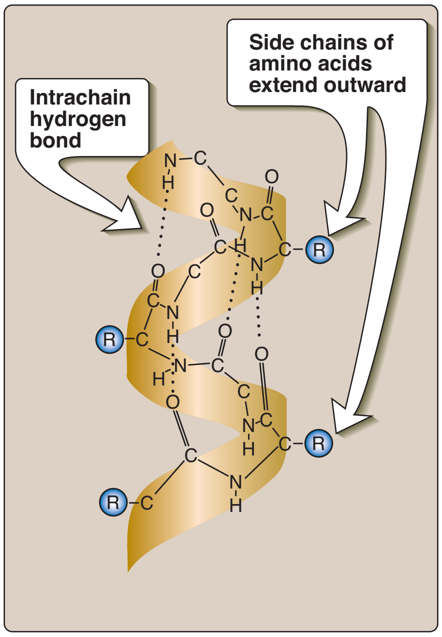

Side chains of amino acids extend outward
Intrachain hydrogen bond
R
R
R
R

Figure 2.6
α-Helix showing peptide backbone.

A. α-Helix

Several different polypeptide helices are found in nature, but the α-helix is the most common. It is a spiral structure, consisting of a tightly packed, coiled polypeptide backbone core, with the side chains of the component amino acids extending outward from the central axis to avoid interfering sterically with each other (Figure 2.6). A very diverse group of proteins contains α-helices. For example, the keratins are a family of closely related, fibrous proteins whose structure is nearly entirely α-helical. They are a major component of tissues such as hair and skin, and their rigidity is determined by the number of disulfide bonds between the constituent polypeptide chains. In contrast to keratin, myoglobin, whose structure is also highly α-helical, is a globular, flexible molecule (see p. 26).

1. **Hydrogen bonds:** An α-helix is stabilized by extensive hydrogen bonding between the peptide-bond carbonyl oxygens and amide hydrogens that are part of the polypeptide backbone (see Figure 2.6). The hydrogen bonds extend up and are parallel to the spiral from the carbonyl oxygen of one peptide bond to the –NH– group of a peptide linkage four residues ahead in the polypeptide. This ensures that all but the first and last peptide bond components are linked to each other through intrachain hydrogen bonds. Hydrogen bonds are individually weak, but they collectively serve to stabilize the helix.

2. **Amino acids per turn:** Each turn of an α-helix contains 3.6 amino acids. Thus, amino acid residues spaced three or four residues apart in the primary sequence are spatially close together when folded in the α-helix.

3. **Amino acids that disrupt an α-helix:** Proline disrupts an α-helix because its secondary amino group is not geometrically compatible with the right-handed spiral of the α-helix. Instead, it inserts a kink in the chain, which interferes with the smooth, helical structure. Large numbers of charged amino acids (for example, gluta-

mate, aspartate, histidine, lysine, or arginine) also disrupt the helix by forming ionic bonds, or by electrostatically repelling each other. Finally, amino acids with bulky side chains, such as tryptophan, or amino acids, such as valine or isoleucine, that branch at the β-carbon (the first carbon in the R-group, next to the α-carbon) can interfere with formation of the α-helix if they are present in large numbers.

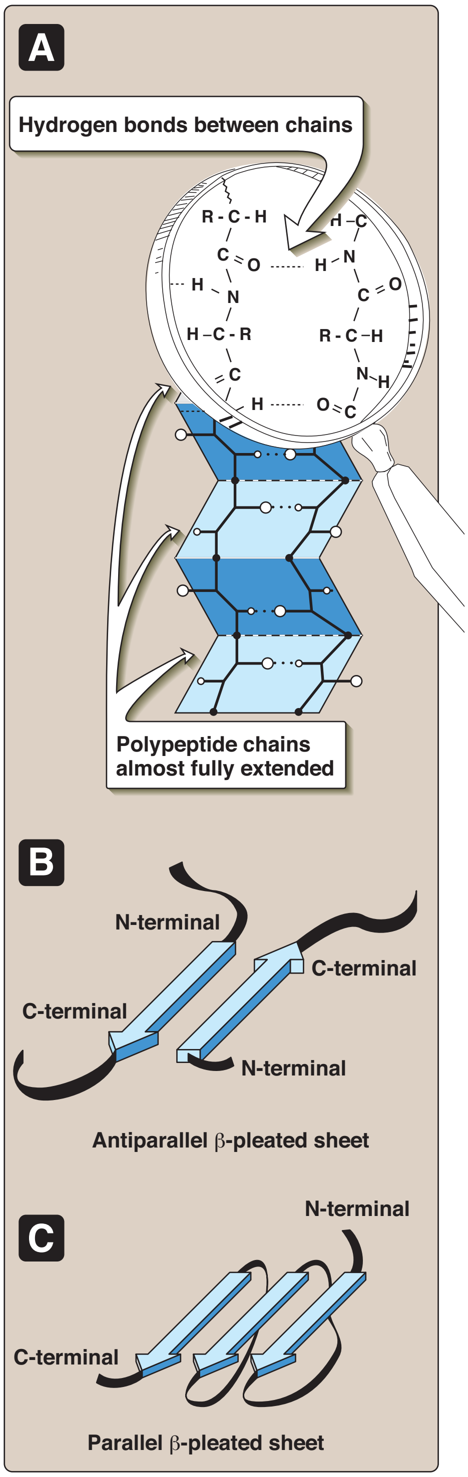
B. β-Sheet

The β-sheet is another form of secondary structure in which all of the peptide bond components are involved in hydrogen bonding (Figure 2.7A). The surfaces of β-sheets appear "pleated," and these structures are, therefore, often called "β-pleated sheets." When illustrations are made of protein structure, β-strands are often visualized as broad arrows (Figure 2.7B).

1. **Comparison of a β-sheet and an α-helix:** Unlike the α-helix, β-sheets are composed of two or more peptide chains (β-strands), or segments of polypeptide chains, which are almost fully extended. Note also that in β-sheets the hydrogen bonds are perpendicular to the polypeptide backbone (see Figure 2.7A).

2. **Parallel and antiparallel sheets:** A β-sheet can be formed from two or more separate polypeptide chains or segments of polypeptide chains that are arranged either antiparallel to each other (with the N-terminal and C-terminal ends of the β-strands alternating as shown in Figure 2.7B), or parallel to each other (with all the N-termini of the β-strands together as shown in Figure 2.7C). When the hydrogen bonds are formed between the polypeptide backbones of separate polypeptide chains, they are termed interchain bonds. A β-sheet can also be formed by a single polypeptide chain folding back on itself (see Figure 2.7C). In this case, the hydrogen bonds are intrachain bonds. In globular proteins, β-sheets always have a right-handed curl, or twist, when viewed along the polypeptide backbone. [Note: Twisted β-sheets often form the core of globular proteins.]

> The α-helix and β-sheet structures provide maximal hydrogen bonding for peptide bond components within the interior of polypeptides.



Antiparallel β-pleated sheet

Parallel β-pleated sheet

Figure 2.7
A. Structure of a β-sheet. B. An antiparallel β-sheet with the β-strands represented as broad arrows. C. A parallel β-sheet formed from a single polypeptide chain folding back on itself.

C. β-Bends (reverse turns, β-turns)

β-Bends reverse the direction of a polypeptide chain, helping it form a compact, globular shape. They are usually found on the surface of protein molecules, and often include charged residues. [Note: β-Bends were given this name because they often connect successive strands of antiparallel β-sheets.] β-Bends are generally composed of four amino acids, one of which may be proline—the amino acid that causes a "kink" in the polypeptide chain. Glycine, the amino acid with the smallest R-group, is also frequently found in β-bends. β-Bends are stabilized by the formation of hydrogen and ionic bonds.

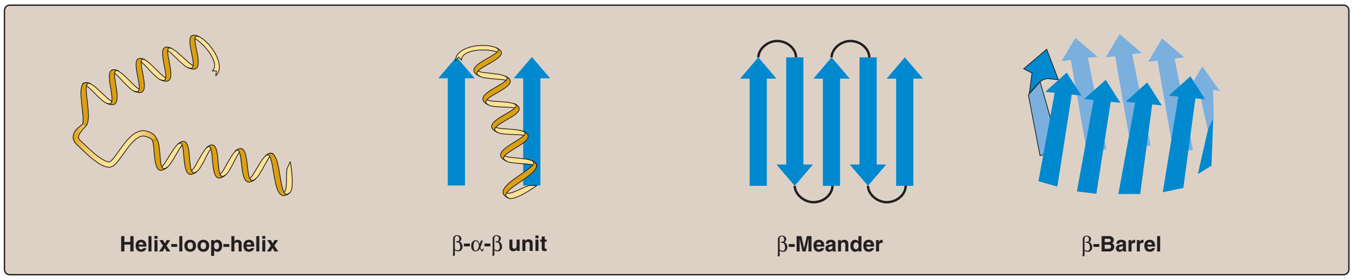


Figure 2.8
Some common structural motifs combining α-helices and/or β-sheets. The names describe their schematic appearance.

D. Nonrepetitive secondary structure

Approximately one half of an average globular protein is organized into repetitive structures, such as the α-helix and/or β-sheet. The remainder of the polypeptide chain is described as having a loop or coil conformation. These nonrepetitive secondary structures are not "random," but rather simply have a less regular structure than those described above. [Note: The term "random coil" refers to the disordered structure obtained when proteins are denatured (see p. 20).]

E. Supersecondary structures (motifs)

Globular proteins are constructed by combining secondary structural elements (α-helices, β-sheets, nonrepetitive sequences). These form primarily the core region—that is, the interior of the molecule. They are connected by loop regions (for example, β-bends) at the surface of the protein. Supersecondary structures are usually produced by packing side chains from adjacent secondary structural elements close to each other. Thus, for example, α-helices and β-sheets that are adjacent in the amino acid sequence are also usually (but not always) adjacent in the final, folded protein. Some of the more common motifs are illustrated in Figure 2.8.

> Proteins that bind to DNA contain a limited number of motifs. The helix-loop-helix motif is an example found in a number of proteins that function as transcription factors (see p. 455).

IV. TERTIARY STRUCTURE OF GLOBULAR PROTEINS

The primary structure of a polypeptide chain determines its tertiary structure. "Tertiary" refers both to the folding of domains (the basic units of structure and function, see discussion below), and to the final arrangement of domains in the polypeptide. The structure of globular proteins in aqueous solution is compact, with a high-density (close packing) of the atoms in the core of the molecule. Hydrophobic side chains are buried in the interior, whereas hydrophilic groups are generally found on the surface of the molecule.

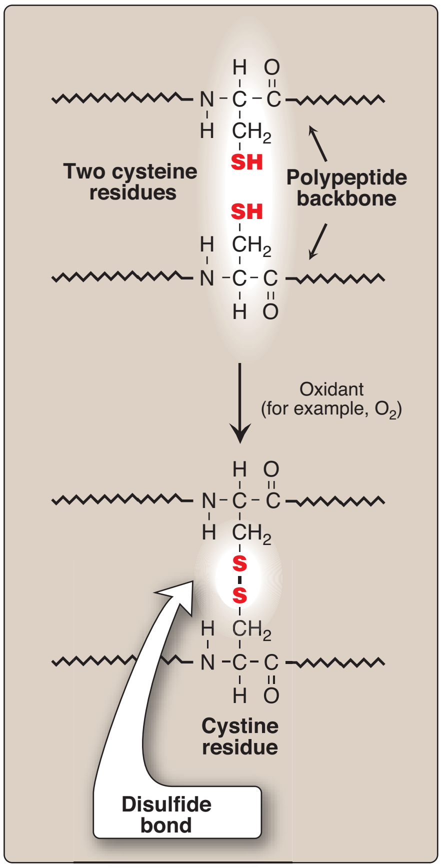


Figure 2.9
Formation of a disulfide bond by the oxidation of two cysteine residues, producing one cystine residue.

A. Domains

Domains are the fundamental functional and three-dimensional structural units of polypeptides. Polypeptide chains that are greater than 200 amino acids in length generally consist of two or more domains. The core of a domain is built from combinations of supersecondary structural elements (motifs). Folding of the peptide chain within a domain usually occurs independently of folding in other domains. Therefore, each domain has the characteristics of a small, compact globular protein that is structurally independent of the other domains in the polypeptide chain.

B. Interactions stabilizing tertiary structure

The unique three-dimensional structure of each polypeptide is determined by its amino acid sequence. Interactions between the amino acid side chains guide the folding of the polypeptide to form a compact structure. The following four types of interactions cooperate in stabilizing the tertiary structures of globular proteins.

1. **Disulfide bonds:** A disulfide bond is a covalent linkage formed from the sulfhydryl group (–SH) of each of two cysteine residues, to produce a cystine residue (Figure 2.9). The two cysteines may be separated from each other by many amino acids in the primary sequence of a polypeptide, or may even be located on two different polypeptide chains; the folding of the polypeptide chain(s) brings the cysteine residues into proximity, and permits covalent bonding of their side chains. A disulfide bond contributes to the stability of the three-dimensional shape of the protein molecule, and prevents it from becoming denatured in the extracellular environment. For example, many disulfide bonds are found in proteins such as immunoglobulins that are secreted by cells.

2. **Hydrophobic interactions:** Amino acids with nonpolar side chains tend to be located in the interior of the polypeptide molecule, where they associate with other hydrophobic amino acids (Figure 2.10). In contrast, amino acids with polar or charged side chains tend to be located on the surface of the molecule in contact with the polar solvent. [Note: Recall that proteins located in nonpolar (lipid) environments, such as a membrane, exhibit the reverse arrangement (see Figure 1.4, p. 4).] In each case, a segregation of R-groups occurs that is energetically most favorable.

3. **Hydrogen bonds:** Amino acid side chains containing oxygen- or nitrogen-bound hydrogen, such as in the alcohol groups of serine and threonine, can form hydrogen bonds with electron-rich atoms, such as the oxygen of a carboxyl group or carbonyl group of a peptide bond (Figure 2.11; see also Figure 1.6, p. 4). Formation of hydrogen bonds between polar groups on the surface of proteins and the aqueous solvent enhances the solubility of the protein.

4. **Ionic interactions:** Negatively charged groups, such as the carboxylate group ($-COO^-$) in the side chain of aspartate or glutamate, can interact with positively charged groups, such as the amino group ($-NH_3^+$) in the side chain of lysine (see Figure 2.11).

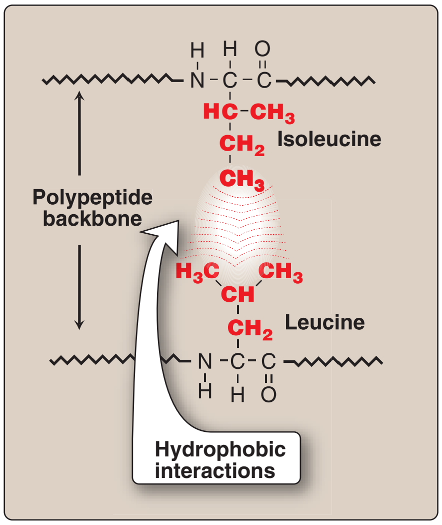


Figure 2.10
Hydrophobic interactions between amino acids with nonpolar side chains.

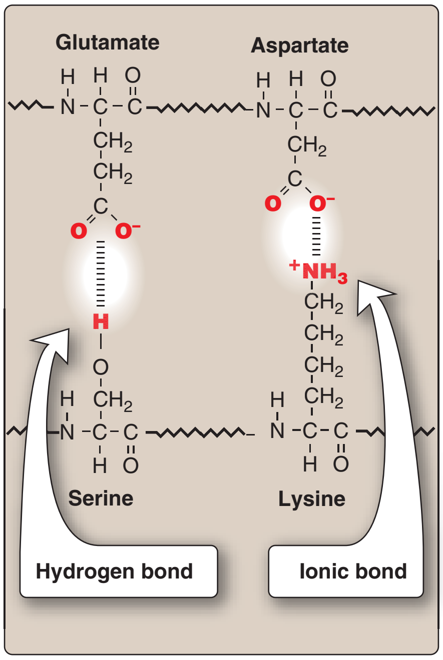


Figure 2.11
Interactions of side chains of amino acids through hydrogen bonds and ionic bonds (salt bridges).

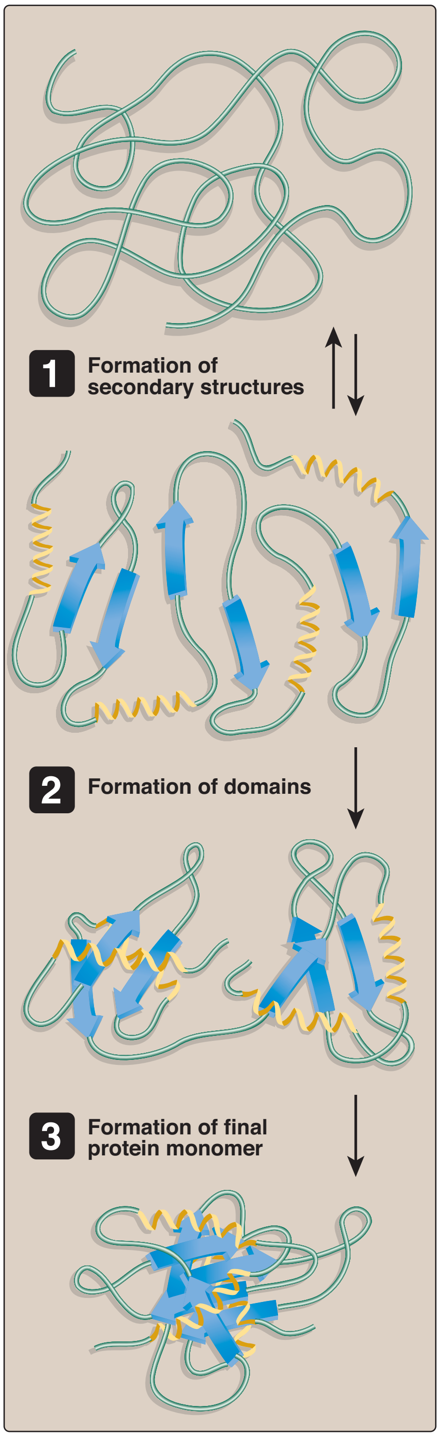

1 Formation of secondary structures
2 Formation of domains
3 Formation of final protein monomer

Figure 2.12
Steps in protein folding.

C. Protein folding

Interactions between the side chains of amino acids determine how a long polypeptide chain folds into the intricate three-dimensional shape of the functional protein. Protein folding, which occurs within the cell in seconds to minutes, employs a shortcut through the maze of all folding possibilities. As a peptide folds, its amino acid side chains are attracted and repulsed according to their chemical properties. For example, positively and negatively charged side chains attract each other. Conversely, similarly charged side chains repel each other. In addition, interactions involving hydrogen bonds, hydrophobic interactions, and disulfide bonds all exert an influence on the folding process. This process of trial and error tests many, but not all, possible configurations, seeking a compromise in which attractions outweigh repulsions. This results in a correctly folded protein with a low-energy state (Figure 2.12).

D. Denaturation of proteins

Protein denaturation results in the unfolding and disorganization of the protein's secondary and tertiary structures, which are not accompanied by hydrolysis of peptide bonds. Denaturing agents include heat, organic solvents, mechanical mixing, strong acids or bases, detergents, and ions of heavy metals such as lead and mercury. Denaturation may, under ideal conditions, be reversible, in which case the protein refolds into its original native structure when the denaturing agent is removed. However, most proteins, once denatured, remain permanently disordered. Denatured proteins are often insoluble and, therefore, precipitate from solution.

E. Role of chaperones in protein folding

It is generally accepted that the information needed for correct protein folding is contained in the primary structure of the polypeptide. Given that premise, it is difficult to explain why most proteins when denatured do not resume their native conformations under favorable environmental conditions. One answer to this problem is that a protein begins to fold in stages during its synthesis, rather than waiting for synthesis of the entire chain to be totally completed. This limits competing folding configurations made available by longer stretches of nascent peptide. In addition, a specialized group of proteins, named "chaperones," are required for the proper folding of many species of proteins. The chaperones—also known as "heat shock" proteins—interact with the polypeptide at various stages during the folding process. Some chaperones are important in keeping the protein unfolded until its synthesis is finished, or act as catalysts by increasing the rates of the final stages in the folding process. Others protect proteins as they fold so that their vulnerable, exposed regions do not become tangled in unproductive interactions.

V. QUATERNARY STRUCTURE OF PROTEINS

Many proteins consist of a single polypeptide chain, and are defined as monomeric proteins. However, others may consist of two or more polypeptide chains that may be structurally identical or totally unrelated. The arrangement of these polypeptide subunits is called the quaternary structure of the protein. Subunits are held together by noncovalent interactions (for example, hydrogen bonds, ionic bonds, and hydrophobic interactions). Subunits may either function independently of each other, or may work cooperatively, as in hemoglobin, in which the binding of oxygen to one subunit of the tetramer increases the affinity of the other subunits for oxygen (see p. 29).

> Isoforms are proteins that perform the same function but have different primary structures. They can arise from different genes or from tissue-specific processing of the product of a single gene. If the proteins function as enzymes, they are referred to as isozymes (see p. 65).

VI. PROTEIN MISFOLDING

Protein folding is a complex, trial-and-error process that can sometimes result in improperly folded molecules. These misfolded proteins are usually tagged and degraded within the cell (see p. 444). However, this quality control system is not perfect, and intracellular or extracellular aggregates of misfolded proteins can accumulate, particularly as individuals age. Deposits of these misfolded proteins are associated with a number of diseases.

A. Amyloid disease

Misfolding of proteins may occur spontaneously, or be caused by a mutation in a particular gene, which then produces an altered protein. In addition, some apparently normal proteins can, after abnormal proteolytic cleavage, take on a unique conformational state that leads to the formation of long, fibrillar protein assemblies consisting of β-pleated sheets. Accumulation of these insoluble, spontaneously aggregating proteins, called amyloids, has been implicated in many degenerative diseases—particularly in the age-related neurodegenerative disorder, Alzheimer disease. The dominant component of the amyloid plaque that accumulates in Alzheimer disease is amyloid β (Aβ), a peptide containing 40–42 amino acid residues. X-ray crystallography and infrared spectroscopy demonstrate a characteristic β-pleated sheet conformation in nonbranching fibrils. This peptide, when aggregated in a β-pleated sheet configuration, is neurotoxic, and is the central pathogenic event leading to the cognitive impairment characteristic of the disease. The Aβ that is deposited in the brain in Alzheimer disease is derived by proteolytic cleavages from the larger amyloid precursor protein—a single transmembrane protein expressed on the cell surface in the brain and other tissues (Figure 2.13). The Aβ peptides aggregate, generating the amyloid that is found in the brain parenchyma and around blood vessels. Most cases of Alzheimer disease are not genetically based, although at least 5–10% of cases are familial. A second biologic factor involved in the development of Alzheimer disease is the accumulation of neurofibrillary tangles inside neurons. A key component of these tangled fibers is an abnormal form of the tau (τ) protein, which in its healthy version helps in the assembly of the microtubular structure. The defective τ, however, appears to block the actions of its normal counterpart.

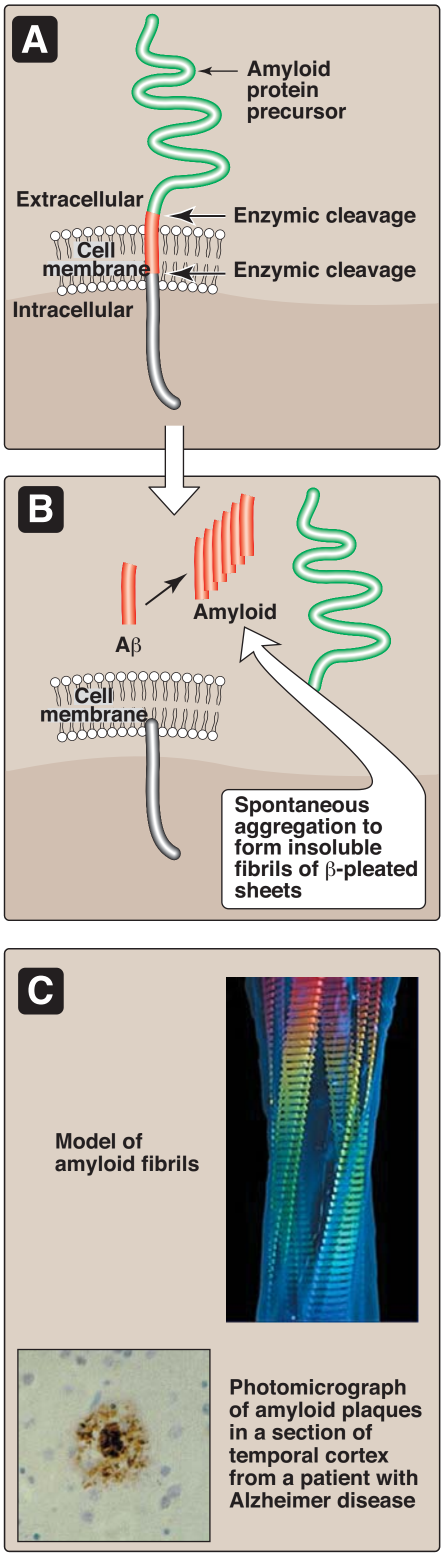

A
Amyloid protein precursor
Extracellular
Enzymic cleavage
Cell membrane
Enzymic cleavage
Intracellular
B
Aβ
Amyloid
Cell membrane
Spontaneous aggregation to form insoluble fibrils of β-pleated sheets
C
Model of amyloid fibrils
Photomicrograph of amyloid plaques in a section of temporal cortex from a patient with Alzheimer disease

Figure 2.13
Formation of amyloid plaques found in Alzheimer disease.

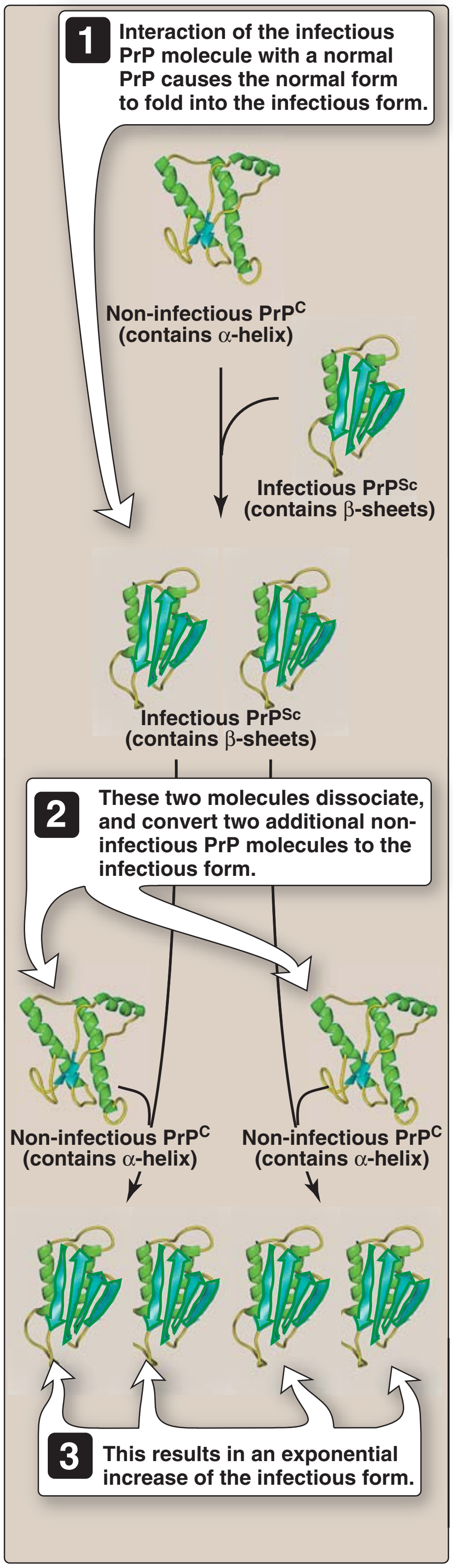

1
Interaction of the infectious PrP molecule with a normal PrP causes the normal form to fold into the infectious form.
Non-infectious PrP^C (contains α-helix)
Infectious PrP^{Sc} (contains β-sheets)
Infectious PrP^{Sc} (contains β-sheets)
2
These two molecules dissociate, and convert two additional non-infectious PrP molecules to the infectious form.
Non-infectious PrP^C (contains α-helix)
Non-infectious PrP^C (contains α-helix)
3
This results in an exponential increase of the infectious form.

Figure 2.14
One proposed mechanism for multiplication of infectious prion agents.

B. Prion disease

The prion protein (PrP) has been strongly implicated as the causative agent of transmissible spongiform encephalopathies (TSEs), including Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease in humans, scrapie in sheep, and bovine spongiform encephalopathy in cattle (popularly called "mad cow disease").[1] After an extensive series of purification procedures, scientists were astonished to find that the infectivity of the agent causing scrapie in sheep was associated with a single protein species that was not complexed with detectable nucleic acid. This infectious protein is designated PrP^{Sc} (Sc = scrapie). It is highly resistant to proteolytic degradation, and tends to form insoluble aggregates of fibrils, similar to the amyloid found in some other diseases of the brain. A noninfectious form of PrP^C (C = cellular), encoded by the same gene as the infectious agent, is present in normal mammalian brains on the surface of neurons and glial cells. Thus, PrP^C is a host protein. No primary structure differences or alternate posttranslational modifications have been found between the normal and the infectious forms of the protein. The key to becoming infectious apparently lies in changes in the three-dimensional conformation of PrP^C. It has been observed that a number of α-helices present in noninfectious PrP^C are replaced by β-sheets in the infectious form (Figure 2.14). It is presumably this conformational difference that confers relative resistance to proteolytic degradation of infectious prions, and permits them to be distinguished from the normal PrP^C in infected tissue. The infective agent is thus an altered version of a normal protein, which acts as a "template" for converting the normal protein to the pathogenic conformation. The TSEs are invariably fatal, and no treatment is currently available that can alter this outcome.

VII. CHAPTER SUMMARY

Central to understanding protein structure is the concept of the **native conformation** (Figure 2.15), which is the functional, fully-folded protein structure (for example, an active enzyme or structural protein). The unique three-dimensional structure of the native conformation is determined by its **primary structure**, that is, its amino acid sequence. Interactions between the amino acid side chains guide the folding of the polypeptide chain to form **secondary**, **tertiary**, and (sometimes) **quaternary** structures, which cooperate in stabilizing the native conformation of the protein. In addition, a specialized group of proteins named "**chaperones**" is required for the proper folding of many species of proteins. **Protein denaturation** results in the unfolding and disorganization of the protein's structure, which are not accompanied by hydrolysis of peptide bonds. Denaturation may be reversible or, more commonly, irreversible. Disease can occur when an apparently normal protein assumes a conformation that is cytotoxic, as in the case of Alzheimer disease and the **transmissible spongiform encephalopathies (TSEs),** including **Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease**. In **Alzheimer disease,** normal proteins, after abnormal chemical processing, take on a unique conformational state that leads to the formation of neurotoxic **amyloid protein** assemblies consisting of β-pleated sheets. In TSEs, the infective agent is an altered version of a normal **prion protein** that acts as a "template" for converting normal protein to the pathogenic conformation.

INFO LINK [1] See Chapter 31 in ***Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Microbiology*** for a more detailed discussion of prions.

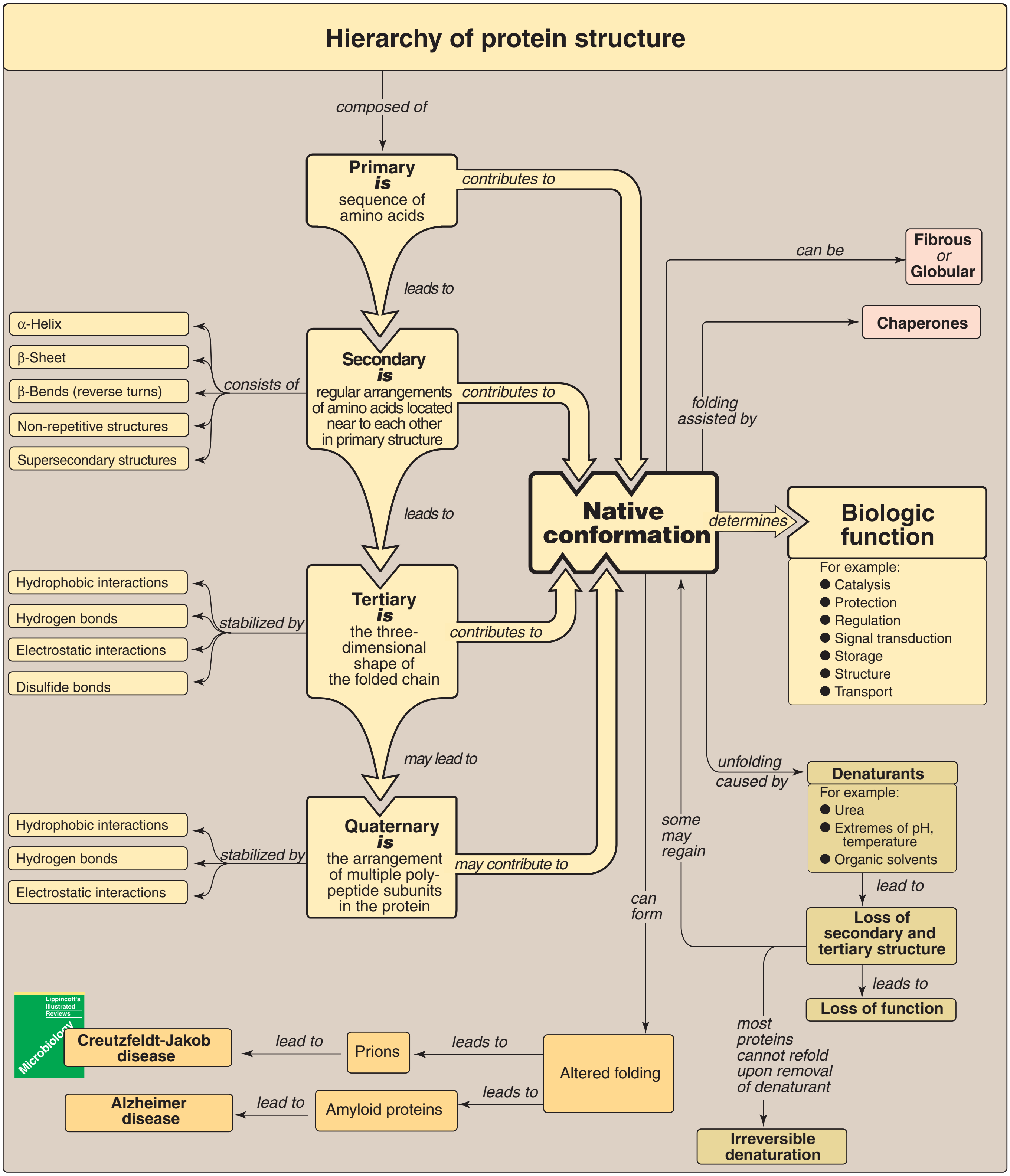

Hierarchy of protein structure
composed of
Primary
is
sequence of amino acids
contributes to
leads to
α-Helix
β-Sheet
β-Bends (reverse turns)
Non-repetitive structures
Supersecondary structures
consists of
Secondary
is
regular arrangements of amino acids located near to each other in primary structure
contributes to
leads to
Hydrophobic interactions
Hydrogen bonds
Electrostatic interactions
Disulfide bonds
stabilized by
Tertiary
is
the three-dimensional shape of the folded chain
contributes to
may lead to
Hydrophobic interactions
Hydrogen bonds
Electrostatic interactions
stabilized by
Quaternary
is
the arrangement of multiple poly-peptide subunits in the protein
may contribute to
can be
Fibrous
or
Globular
Chaperones
folding
assisted by
Native conformation
determines
Biologic function
For example:
● Catalysis
● Protection
● Regulation
● Signal transduction
● Storage
● Structure
● Transport
unfolding
caused by
Denaturants
For example:
● Urea
● Extremes of pH, temperature
● Organic solvents
lead to
Loss of secondary and tertiary structure
leads to
Loss of function
some
may
regain
most
proteins
cannot refold
upon removal
of denaturant
Irreversible denaturation
can
form
Altered folding
leads to
Prions
lead to
Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease
leads to
Amyloid proteins
lead to
Alzheimer disease
Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews
Microbiology

Figure 2.15
Key concept map for protein structure.

Study Questions

Choose the ONE correct answer.

2.1 A peptide bond:

A. has a partial double-bond character.
B. is ionized at physiologic pH.
C. is cleaved by agents that denature proteins, such as organic solvents and high concentrations of urea.
D. is stable to heating in strong acids.
E. occurs most commonly in the cis configuration.

Correct answer = A. The peptide bond has a partial double-bond character. Unlike its components—the α-amino and α-carboxyl groups—the –NH and –C=O of the peptide bond do not accept or give off protons. The peptide bond is not cleaved by organic solvents or urea, but is labile to strong acids. It is usually in the trans configuration.

2.2 Which one of the following statements is correct?

A. The α-helix can be composed of more than one polypeptide chain.
B. β-Sheets exist only in the antiparallel form.
C. β-Bends often contain proline.
D. Domains are a type of secondary structure.
E. The α-helix is stabilized primarily by ionic interactions between the side chains of amino acids.

Correct answer = C. β-Bends often contain proline, which provides a kink. The α-helix differs from the β-sheet in that it always involves the coiling of a single polypeptide chain. The β-sheet occurs in both parallel and antiparallel forms. Domains are elements of tertiary structure. The α-helix is stabilized primarily by hydrogen bonds between the –C=O and –NH– groups of peptide bonds.

2.3 Which one of the following statements about protein structure is correct?

A. Proteins consisting of one polypeptide can have quaternary structure.
B. The formation of a disulfide bond in a protein requires that the two participating cysteine residues be adjacent to each other in the primary sequence of the protein.
C. The stability of quaternary structure in proteins is mainly a result of covalent bonds among the subunits.
D. The denaturation of proteins always leads to irreversible loss of secondary and tertiary structure.
E. The information required for the correct folding of a protein is contained in the specific sequence of amino acids along the polypeptide chain.

Correct answer = E. The correct folding of a protein is guided by specific interactions between the side chains of the amino acid residues of a polypeptide chain. The two cysteine residues that react to form the disulfide bond may be a great distance apart in the primary structure (or on separate polypeptides), but are brought into close proximity by the three-dimensional folding of the polypeptide chain. Denaturation may either be reversible or irreversible. Quaternary structure requires more than one polypeptide chain. These chains associate through noncovalent interactions.

2.4 An 80-year-old man presented with impairment of higher intellectual function and alterations in mood and behavior. His family reported progressive disorientation and memory loss over the last 6 months. There is no family history of dementia. The patient was tentatively diagnosed with Alzheimer disease. Which one of the following best describes the disease?

A. It is associated with β-amyloid—an abnormal protein with an altered amino acid sequence.
B. It results from accumulation of denatured proteins that have random conformations.
C. It is associated with the accumulation of amyloid precursor protein.
D. It is associated with the deposition of neurotoxic amyloid peptide aggregates.
E. It is an environmentally produced disease not influenced by the genetics of the individual.
F. It is caused by the infectious form of a host-cell protein.

Correct answer = D. Alzheimer disease is associated with long, fibrillar protein assemblies consisting of β-pleated sheets found in the brain and elsewhere. The disease is associated with abnormal processing of a normal protein. The accumulated altered protein occurs in a β-pleated sheet configuration that is neurotoxic. The Aβ amyloid that is deposited in the brain in Alzheimer disease is derived by proteolytic cleavages from the larger amyloid precursor protein—a single transmembrane protein expressed on the cell surface in the brain and other tissues. Most cases of Alzheimer disease are sporadic, although at least 5–10% of cases are familial. Prion diseases, such as Creutzfeldt-Jakob, are caused by the infectious form (PrP^{Sc}) of a host-cell protein (PrP^{C}).

Globular Proteins

3

I. OVERVIEW

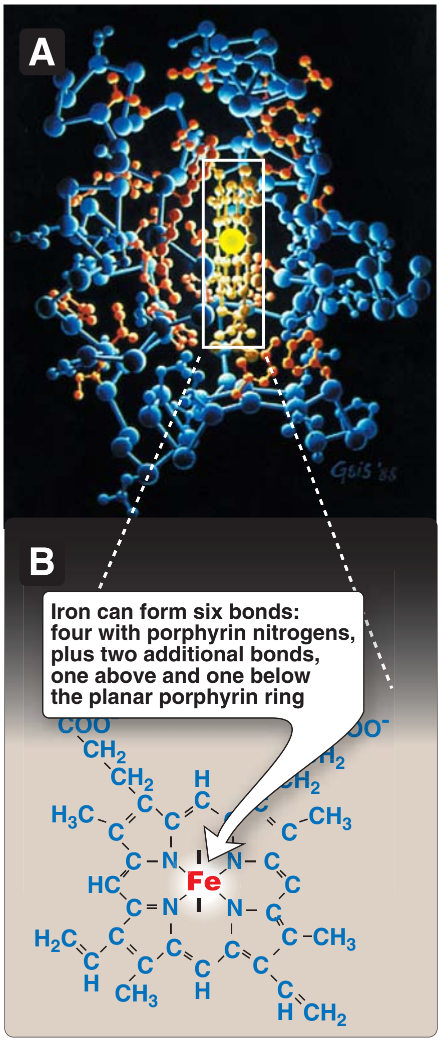
The previous chapter described the types of secondary and tertiary structures that are the bricks-and-mortar of protein architecture. By arranging these fundamental structural elements in different combinations, widely diverse proteins can be constructed that are capable of various specialized functions. This chapter examines the relationship between structure and function for the clinically important globular hemeproteins. Fibrous structural proteins are discussed in Chapter 4.

II. GLOBULAR HEMEPROTEINS

Hemeproteins are a group of specialized proteins that contain heme as a tightly bound prosthetic group. (See p. 54 for a discussion of prosthetic groups.) The role of the heme group is dictated by the environment created by the three-dimensional structure of the protein. For example, the heme group of a cytochrome functions as an electron carrier that is alternately oxidized and reduced (see p. 76). In contrast, the heme group of the enzyme *catalase* is part of the active site of the enzyme that catalyzes the breakdown of hydrogen peroxide (see p. 148). In hemoglobin and myoglobin, the two most abundant hemeproteins in humans, the heme group serves to reversibly bind oxygen.

A. Structure of heme

Heme is a complex of protoporphyrin IX and ferrous iron (Fe^{2+}) (Figure 3.1). The iron is held in the center of the heme molecule by bonds to the four nitrogens of the porphyrin ring. The heme Fe^{2+} can form two additional bonds, one on each side of the planar porphyrin ring. In myoglobin and hemoglobin, one of these positions is coordinated to the side chain of a histidine residue of the globin molecule, whereas the other position is available to bind oxygen (Figure 3.2). (See p. 278 for a discussion of the synthesis and degradation of heme.)



Iron can form six bonds: four with porphyrin nitrogens, plus two additional bonds, one above and one below the planar porphyrin ring

Figure 3.1
A. Hemeprotein (cytochrome c).
B. Structure of heme.

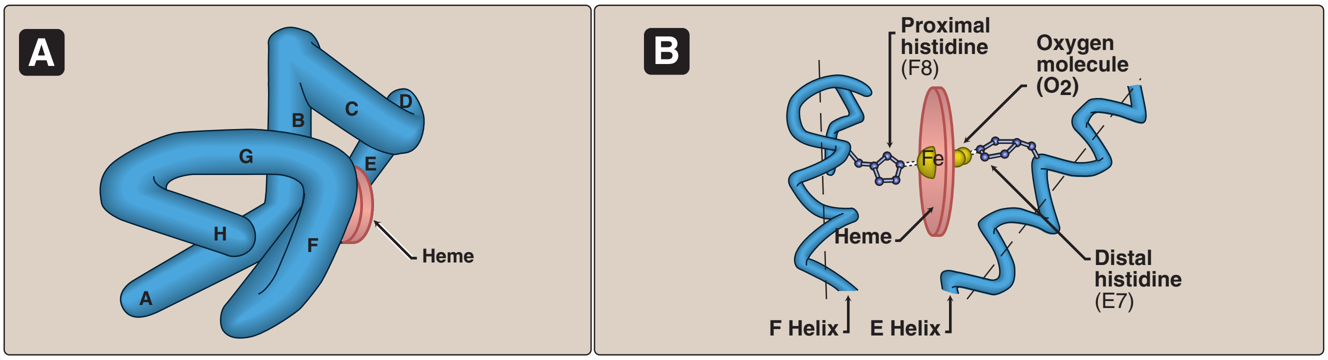


Figure 3.2
A. Model of myoglobin showing helices A to H. B. Schematic diagram of the oxygen-binding site of myoglobin.

B. Structure and function of myoglobin

Myoglobin, a hemeprotein present in heart and skeletal muscle, functions both as a reservoir for oxygen, and as an oxygen carrier that increases the rate of transport of oxygen within the muscle cell. Myoglobin consists of a single polypeptide chain that is structurally similar to the individual subunit polypeptide chains of the hemoglobin molecule. This homology makes myoglobin a useful model for interpreting some of the more complex properties of hemoglobin.

1. **α-Helical content:** Myoglobin is a compact molecule, with approximately 80% of its polypeptide chain folded into eight stretches of α-helix. These α-helical regions, labeled A to H in Figure 3.2A, are terminated either by the presence of proline, whose five-membered ring cannot be accommodated in an α-helix (see p. 16), or by β-bends and loops stabilized by hydrogen bonds and ionic bonds (see p. 17).

2. **Location of polar and nonpolar amino acid residues:** The interior of the myoglobin molecule is composed almost entirely of nonpolar amino acids. They are packed closely together, forming a structure stabilized by hydrophobic interactions between these clustered residues (see p. 19). In contrast, charged amino acids are located almost exclusively on the surface of the molecule, where they can form hydrogen bonds, both with each other and with water.

3. **Binding of the heme group:** The heme group of myoglobin sits in a crevice in the molecule, which is lined with nonpolar amino acids. Notable exceptions are two histidine residues (Figure 3.2B). One, the proximal histidine (F8), binds directly to the iron of heme. The second, or distal histidine (E7), does not directly interact with the heme group, but helps stabilize the binding of oxygen to the ferrous iron. The protein, or globin, portion of myoglobin thus creates a special microenvironment for the heme that permits the reversible binding of one oxygen molecule (oxygenation). The simultaneous loss of electrons by the ferrous iron (oxidation) occurs only rarely.

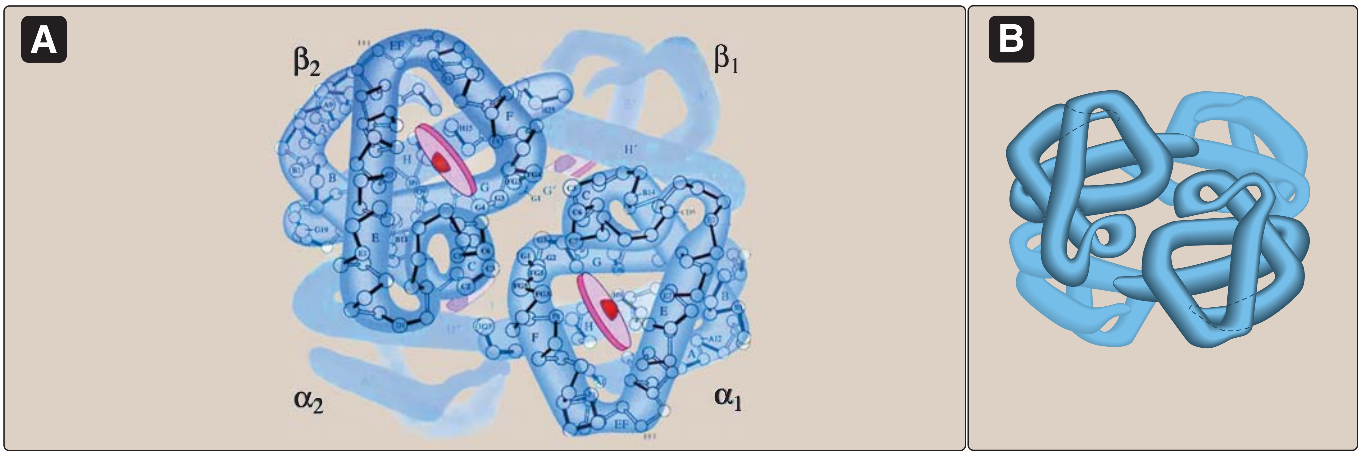


Figure 3.3
A. Structure of hemoglobin showing the polypeptide backbone. B. Simplified drawing showing the helices.

C. Structure and function of hemoglobin

Hemoglobin is found exclusively in red blood cells (RBCs), where its main function is to transport oxygen (O_2) from the lungs to the capillaries of the tissues. Hemoglobin A, the major hemoglobin in adults, is composed of four polypeptide chains—two α chains and two β chains—held together by noncovalent interactions (Figure 3.3). Each subunit has stretches of α-helical structure, and a heme-binding pocket similar to that described for myoglobin. However, the tetrameric hemoglobin molecule is structurally and functionally more complex than myoglobin. For example, hemoglobin can transport H^+ and CO_2 from the tissues to the lungs, and can carry four molecules of O_2 from the lungs to the cells of the body. Furthermore, the oxygen-binding properties of hemoglobin are regulated by interaction with allosteric effectors (see p. 29).

> Obtaining O_2 from the atmosphere solely by diffusion greatly limits the size of organisms. Circulatory systems overcome this, but transport molecules such as hemoglobin are also required because O_2 is only slightly soluble in aqueous solutions such as blood.

1. **Quaternary structure of hemoglobin:** The hemoglobin tetramer can be envisioned as being composed of two identical dimers, $(\alpha\beta)_1$ and $(\alpha\beta)_2$, in which the numbers refer to dimers one and two. The two polypeptide chains within each dimer are held tightly together, primarily by hydrophobic interactions (Figure 3.4). [Note: In this instance, hydrophobic amino acid residues are localized not only in the interior of the molecule, but also in a region on the surface of each subunit. Interchain hydrophobic interactions form strong associations between α-subunits and β-subunits in the

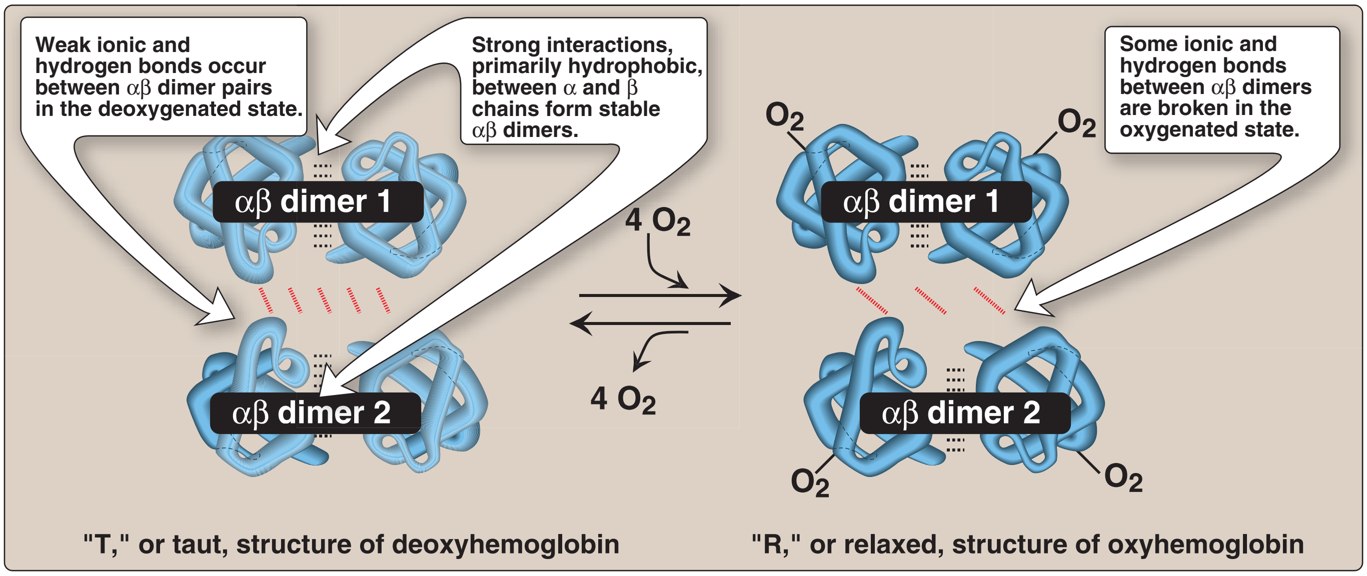

Weak ionic and hydrogen bonds occur between αβ dimer pairs in the deoxygenated state.
Strong interactions, primarily hydrophobic, between α and β chains form stable αβ dimers.
Some ionic and hydrogen bonds between αβ dimers are broken in the oxygenated state.
αβ dimer 1
αβ dimer 2
4 O2
4 O2
O2
O2
O2
O2
αβ dimer 1
αβ dimer 2
"T," or taut, structure of deoxyhemoglobin
"R," or relaxed, structure of oxyhemoglobin

Figure 3.4
Schematic diagram showing structural changes resulting from oxygenation and deoxygenation of hemoglobin.

dimers.] Ionic and hydrogen bonds also occur between the members of the dimer. In contrast, the two dimers are able to move with respect to each other, being held together primarily by polar bonds. The weaker interactions between these mobile dimers result in the two dimers occupying different relative positions in deoxyhemoglobin as compared with oxyhemoglobin (see Figure 3.4). [Note: The binding of O_2 to the heme iron pulls the iron into the plane of the heme. Because the iron is also linked to the proximal histidine (F8), there is movement of the globin chains that alters the interface between the αβ dimers.]

a. **T form:** The deoxy form of hemoglobin is called the “T,” or taut (tense) form. In the T form, the two αβ dimers interact through a network of ionic bonds and hydrogen bonds that constrain the movement of the polypeptide chains. The T form is the low-oxygen-affinity form of hemoglobin.

b. **R form:** The binding of oxygen to hemoglobin causes the rupture of some of the ionic bonds and hydrogen bonds between the αβ dimers. This leads to a structure called the “R,” or relaxed form, in which the polypeptide chains have more freedom of movement (see Figure 3.4). The R form is the high-oxygen-affinity form of hemoglobin.

D. Binding of oxygen to myoglobin and hemoglobin

Myoglobin can bind only one molecule of oxygen, because it contains only one heme group. In contrast, hemoglobin can bind four oxygen molecules—one at each of its four heme groups. The degree of saturation (Y) of these oxygen-binding sites on all myoglobin or hemoglobin molecules can vary between zero (all sites are empty) and 100% (all sites are full, Figure 3.5).

1. **Oxygen dissociation curve:** A plot of Y measured at different partial pressures of oxygen (pO_2) is called the oxygen dissociation curve. The curves for myoglobin and hemoglobin show important differences (see Figure 3.5). This graph illustrates that myoglobin has a higher oxygen affinity at all pO_2 values than does hemoglobin. The partial pressure of oxygen needed to achieve half-saturation of the binding sites (P_{50}) is approximately 1 mm Hg for myoglobin and 26 mm Hg for hemoglobin. The higher the oxygen affinity (that is, the more tightly oxygen binds), the lower the P_{50}. [Note: pO_2 may also be represented as PO_2.]

   a. **Myoglobin (Mb):** The oxygen dissociation curve for myoglobin has a hyperbolic shape (see Figure 3.5). This reflects the fact that myoglobin reversibly binds a single molecule of oxygen. Thus, oxygenated (MbO_2) and deoxygenated (Mb) myoglobin exist in a simple equilibrium:

   $$\text{Mb} + O_2 \rightleftarrows \text{MbO}_2$$

   The equilibrium is shifted to the right or to the left as oxygen is added to or removed from the system. [Note: Myoglobin is designed to bind oxygen released by hemoglobin at the low pO_2 found in muscle. Myoglobin, in turn, releases oxygen within the muscle cell in response to oxygen demand.]

   b. **Hemoglobin (Hb):** The oxygen dissociation curve for hemoglobin is sigmoidal in shape (see Figure 3.5), indicating that the subunits cooperate in binding oxygen. Cooperative binding of oxygen by the four subunits of hemoglobin means that the binding of an oxygen molecule at one heme group increases the oxygen affinity of the remaining heme groups in the same hemoglobin molecule (Figure 3.6). This effect is referred to as heme-heme interaction (see below). Although it is more difficult for the first oxygen molecule to bind to hemoglobin, the subsequent binding of oxygen occurs with high affinity, as shown by the steep upward curve in the region near 20–30 mm Hg (see Figure 3.5).

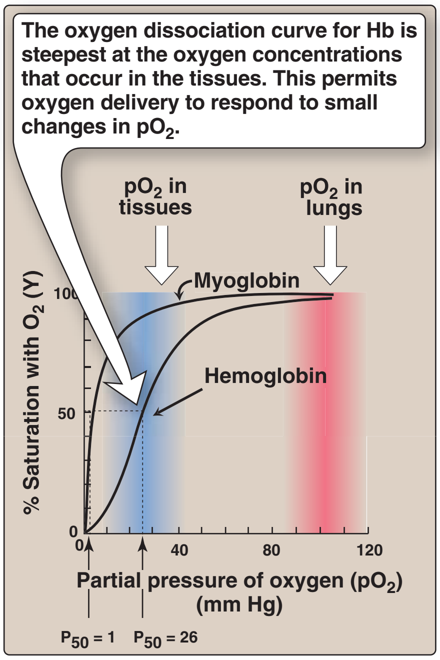

The oxygen dissociation curve for Hb is steepest at the oxygen concentrations that occur in the tissues. This permits oxygen delivery to respond to small changes in pO_2.

Figure 3.5
Oxygen dissociation curves for myoglobin and hemoglobin (Hb).

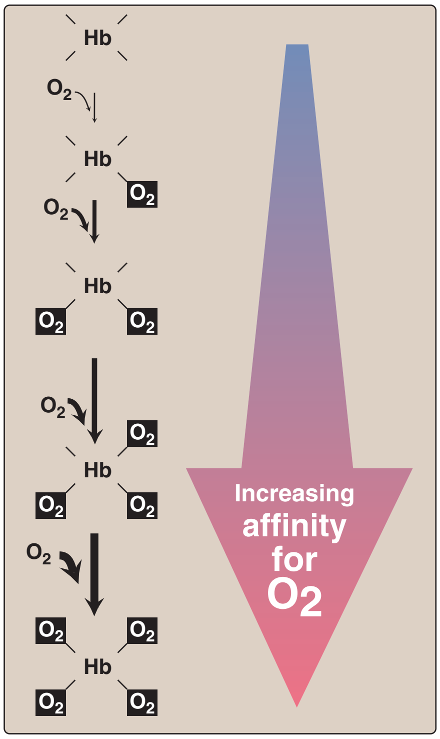


Figure 3.6
Hemoglobin (Hb) binds oxygen with increasing affinity.

E. Allosteric effects

The ability of hemoglobin to reversibly bind oxygen is affected by the pO_2 (through heme-heme interactions as described above), the pH of the environment, the partial pressure of carbon dioxide, pCO_2, and the availability of 2,3-bisphosphoglycerate. These are collectively called allosteric ("other site") effectors, because their interaction at one site on the hemoglobin molecule affects the binding of oxygen to heme groups at other locations on the molecule. [Note: The binding of oxygen to myoglobin is not influenced by allosteric effectors.]

1. **Heme-heme interactions:** The sigmoidal oxygen dissociation curve reflects specific structural changes that are initiated at one heme group and transmitted to other heme groups in the hemoglobin tetramer. The net effect is that the affinity of hemoglobin for the last oxygen bound is approximately 300 times greater than its affinity for the first oxygen bound.

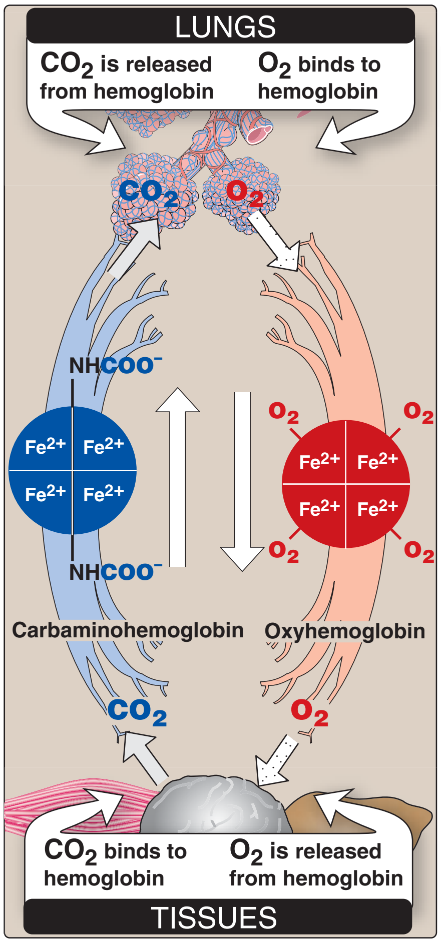


Figure 3.7
Transport of oxygen and carbon dioxide by hemoglobin.

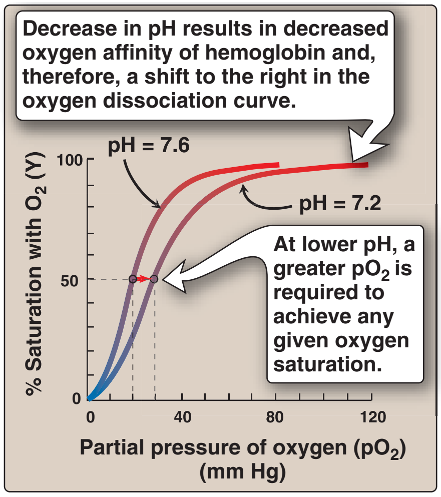


Figure 3.8
Effect of pH on the oxygen affinity of hemoglobin. Protons are allosteric effectors of hemoglobin.

a. **Loading and unloading oxygen:** The cooperative binding of oxygen allows hemoglobin to deliver more oxygen to the tissues in response to relatively small changes in the partial pressure of oxygen. This can be seen in Figure 3.5, which indicates pO_2 in the alveoli of the lung and the capillaries of the tissues. For example, in the lung, the concentration of oxygen is high and hemoglobin becomes virtually saturated (or "loaded") with oxygen. In contrast, in the peripheral tissues, oxyhemoglobin releases (or "unloads") much of its oxygen for use in the oxidative metabolism of the tissues (Figure 3.7).

b. **Significance of the sigmoidal oxygen dissociation curve:** The steep slope of the oxygen dissociation curve over the range of oxygen concentrations that occur between the lungs and the tissues permits hemoglobin to carry and deliver oxygen efficiently from sites of high to sites of low pO_2. A molecule with a hyperbolic oxygen dissociation curve, such as myoglobin, could not achieve the same degree of oxygen release within this range of partial pressures of oxygen. Instead, it would have maximum affinity for oxygen throughout this oxygen pressure range and, therefore, would deliver no oxygen to the tissues.

2. **Bohr effect:** The release of oxygen from hemoglobin is enhanced when the pH is lowered or when the hemoglobin is in the presence of an increased pCO_2. Both result in a decreased oxygen affinity of hemoglobin and, therefore, a shift to the right in the oxygen dissociation curve (Figure 3.8), and both, then, stabilize the T state. This change in oxygen binding is called the Bohr effect. Conversely, raising the pH or lowering the concentration of CO_2 results in a greater affinity for oxygen, a shift to the left in the oxygen dissociation curve, and stabilization of the R state.

a. **Source of the protons that lower the pH:** The concentration of both CO_2 and H^+ in the capillaries of metabolically active tissues is higher than that observed in alveolar capillaries of the lungs, where CO_2 is released into the expired air. [Note: Organic acids, such as lactic acid, are produced during anaerobic metabolism in rapidly contracting muscle (see p. 103).] In the tissues, CO_2 is converted by *carbonic anhydrase* to carbonic acid:

$$CO_2 + H_2O \quad \rightleftarrows \quad H_2CO_3$$

which spontaneously loses a proton, becoming bicarbonate (the major blood buffer):

$$H_2CO_3 \quad \rightleftarrows \quad HCO_3^- + H^+$$

The H^+ produced by this pair of reactions contributes to the lowering of pH. This differential pH gradient (lungs having a higher pH, tissues a lower pH) favors the unloading of oxygen in the peripheral tissues, and the loading of oxygen in the lung. Thus, the oxygen affinity of the hemoglobin molecule responds to small shifts in pH between the lungs and oxygen-consuming tissues, making hemoglobin a more efficient transporter of oxygen.

b. Mechanism of the Bohr effect: The Bohr effect reflects the fact that the deoxy form of hemoglobin has a greater affinity for protons than does oxyhemoglobin. This effect is caused by ionizable groups, such as specific histidine side chains that have higher pK_as in deoxyhemoglobin than in oxyhemoglobin. Therefore, an increase in the concentration of protons (resulting in a decrease in pH) causes these groups to become protonated (charged) and able to form ionic bonds (also called salt bridges). These bonds preferentially stabilize the deoxy form of hemoglobin, producing a decrease in oxygen affinity.

The Bohr effect can be represented schematically as:

$$\underset{\text{oxyhemoglobin}}{HbO_2 + H^+} \rightleftarrows \underset{\text{deoxyhemoglobin}}{HbH + O_2}$$

where an increase in protons (or a lower pO_2) shifts the equilibrium to the right (favoring deoxyhemoglobin), whereas an increase in pO_2 (or a decrease in protons) shifts the equilibrium to the left.

3. Effect of 2,3-bisphosphoglycerate on oxygen affinity: 2,3-Bisphosphoglycerate (2,3-BPG) is an important regulator of the binding of oxygen to hemoglobin. It is the most abundant organic phosphate in the RBC, where its concentration is approximately that of hemoglobin. 2,3-BPG is synthesized from an intermediate of the glycolytic pathway (Figure 3.9; see p. 101 for a discussion of 2,3-BPG synthesis in glycolysis).

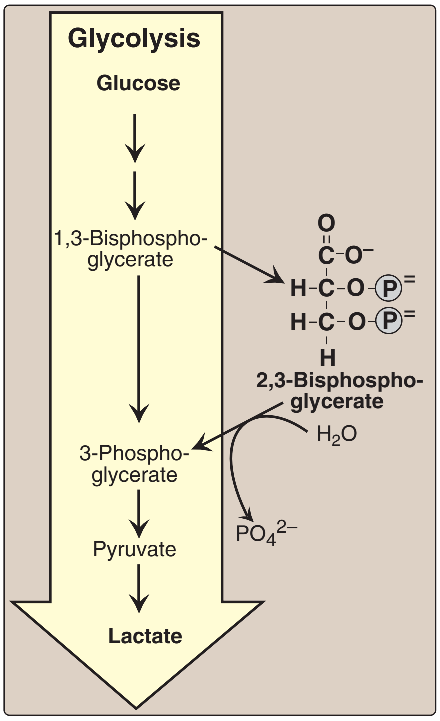


Figure 3.9
Synthesis of 2,3-bisphosphoglycerate. [Note: Ⓟ is a phosphoryl group.] In older literature 2,3-bisphosphoglycerate (2,3-BPG) may be referred to as 2,3-diphosphoglycerate (2,3-DPG).

a. Binding of 2,3-BPG to deoxyhemoglobin: 2,3-BPG decreases the oxygen affinity of hemoglobin by binding to deoxyhemoglobin but not to oxyhemoglobin. This preferential binding stabilizes the taut conformation of deoxyhemoglobin. The effect of binding 2,3-BPG can be represented schematically as:

$$\underset{\text{oxyhemoglobin}}{HbO_2 + \text{2,3-BPG}} \rightleftarrows \underset{\text{deoxyhemoglobin}}{\text{Hb–2,3-BPG} + O_2}$$

b. Binding site of 2,3-BPG: One molecule of 2,3-BPG binds to a pocket, formed by the two β-globin chains, in the center of the deoxyhemoglobin tetramer (Figure 3.10). This pocket contains several positively charged amino acids that form ionic bonds with the negatively charged phosphate groups of 2,3-BPG. [Note: A mutation of one of these residues can result in hemoglobin variants with abnormally high oxygen affinity.] 2,3-BPG is expelled on oxygenation of the hemoglobin.

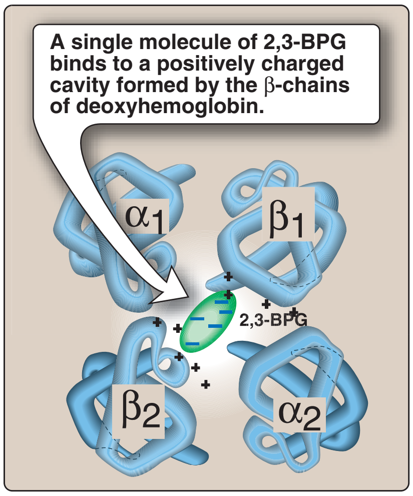

A single molecule of 2,3-BPG binds to a positively charged cavity formed by the β-chains of deoxyhemoglobin.

Figure 3.10
Binding of 2,3-BPG by deoxyhemoglobin.

c. Shift of the oxygen dissociation curve: Hemoglobin from which 2,3-BPG has been removed has a high affinity for oxygen. However, as seen in the RBC, the presence of 2,3-BPG significantly reduces the affinity of hemoglobin for oxygen, shifting the oxygen dissociation curve to the right (Figure 3.11). This reduced affinity enables hemoglobin to release oxygen efficiently at the partial pressures found in the tissues.

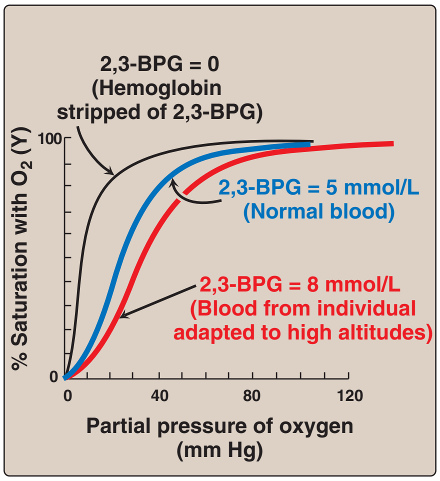


Figure 3.11
Allosteric effect of 2,3-BPG on the oxygen affinity of hemoglobin.

d. Response of 2,3-BPG levels to chronic hypoxia or anemia: The concentration of 2,3-BPG in the RBC increases in response to chronic hypoxia, such as that observed in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) like emphysema, or at high altitudes, where circulating hemoglobin may have difficulty receiving sufficient oxygen. Intracellular levels of 2,3-BPG are also elevated in chronic anemia, in which fewer than normal RBCs are available to supply the body's oxygen needs. Elevated 2,3-BPG levels lower the oxygen affinity of hemoglobin, permitting greater unloading of oxygen in the capillaries of the tissues (see Figure 3.11).

e. Role of 2,3-BPG in transfused blood: 2,3-BPG is essential for the normal oxygen transport function of hemoglobin. However, storing blood in the currently available media results in a decrease in 2,3-PBG. Stored blood displays an abnormally high oxygen affinity, and fails to unload its bound oxygen properly in the tissues. Hemoglobin deficient in 2,3-BPG thus acts as an oxygen "trap" rather than as an oxygen transport system. Transfused RBCs are able to restore their depleted supplies of 2,3-BPG in 6–24 hours. However, severely ill patients may be compromised if transfused with large quantities of such 2,3-BPG–"stripped" blood. [Note: The maximum storage time for red cells has been doubled (21 to 42 days, with median time of 15 days) by changes in H^+, phosphate and hexose sugar concentration, and by the addition of adenine (see p. 291). Although the content of 2,3-BPG was not greatly affected by these changes, ATP production was increased and improved RBC survival.]

4. **Binding of CO_2:** Most of the CO_2 produced in metabolism is hydrated and transported as bicarbonate ion (see p. 9). However, some CO_2 is carried as carbamate bound to the N-terminal amino groups of hemoglobin (forming carbaminohemoglobin, see Figure 3.7), which can be represented schematically as follows:

$$\text{Hb}-\text{NH}_2 + \text{CO}_2 \rightleftarrows \text{Hb}-\text{NH}-\text{COO}^- + \text{H}^+$$

The binding of CO_2 stabilizes the T (taut) or deoxy form of hemoglobin, resulting in a decrease in its affinity for oxygen (see p. 28) and a right shift in the oxygen dissociation. In the lungs, CO_2 dissociates from the hemoglobin, and is released in the breath.

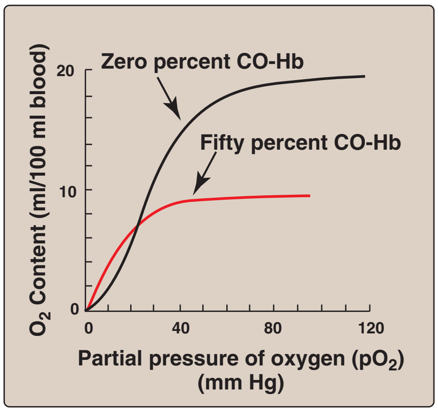


Figure 3.12
Effect of carbon monoxide on the oxygen affinity of hemoglobin. CO-Hb = carbon monoxyhemoglobin.

5. **Binding of CO:** Carbon monoxide (CO) binds tightly (but reversibly) to the hemoglobin iron, forming carbon monoxyhemoglobin (or carboxyhemoglobin). When CO binds to one or more of the four heme sites, hemoglobin shifts to the relaxed conformation, causing the remaining heme sites to bind oxygen with high affinity. This shifts the oxygen dissociation curve to the left, and changes the normal sigmoidal shape toward a hyperbola. As a result, the affected hemoglobin is unable to release oxygen to the tissues (Figure 3.12). [Note: The affinity of hemoglobin for CO is 220 times greater than for oxygen. Consequently, even minute concentrations of CO in the environment can produce toxic concentrations of carbon monoxyhemoglobin in the blood. For exam-

ple, increased levels of CO are found in the blood of tobacco smokers. Carbon monoxide toxicity appears to result from a combination of tissue hypoxia and direct CO-mediated damage at the cellular level.] Carbon monoxide poisoning is treated with 100% oxygen at high pressure (hyperbaric oxygen therapy), which facilitates the dissociation of CO from the hemoglobin. [Note: CO inhibits Complex IV of the electron transport chain (see p. 76).] In addition to O_2, CO_2, and CO, nitric oxide gas (NO) also is carried by hemoglobin. NO is a potent vasodilator (see p. 151). It can be taken up (salvaged) or released from RBCs, thus modulating NO availability and influencing vessel diameter.

Form	Chain composition	Fraction of total hemoglobin
HbA	$\alpha_2\beta_2$	90%
HbF	$\alpha_2\gamma_2$	<2%
HbA$_2$	$\alpha_2\delta_2$	2–5%
HbA$_{1c}$	$\alpha_2\beta_2$-glucose	3–9%

Figure 3.13
Normal adult human hemoglobins. [Note: The α-chains in these hemoglobins are identical.]

F. Minor hemoglobins

It is important to remember that human hemoglobin A (Hb A) is just one member of a functionally and structurally related family of proteins, the hemoglobins (Figure 3.13). Each of these oxygen-carrying proteins is a tetramer, composed of two α-globin polypeptides and two β-globin (or β-globin-like) polypeptides. Certain hemoglobins, such as Hb F, are normally synthesized only during fetal development, whereas others, such as Hb A_2, are synthesized in the adult, although at low levels compared with Hb A. Hb A can also become modified by the covalent addition of a hexose. For example, addition of glucose forms the glucosylated hemoglobin derivative, Hb A_{1c}.

1. **Fetal hemoglobin (Hb F):** Hb F is a tetramer consisting of two α chains identical to those found in Hb A, plus two γ chains ($\alpha_2\gamma_2$, see Figure 3.13). The γ chains are members of the β-globin gene family (see p. 35).

   a. **Hb F synthesis during development:** In the first month after conception, embryonic hemoglobins such as Hb Gower 1, composed of two α-like zeta (ζ) chains and two β-like epsilon (ε) chains ($\zeta_2\varepsilon_2$), are synthesized by the embryonic yolk sac. In the fifth week of gestation, the site of globin synthesis shifts, first to the liver and then to the marrow, and the primary product is Hb F. Hb F is the major hemoglobin found in the fetus and newborn, accounting for about 60% of the total hemoglobin in the erythrocytes during the last months of fetal life (Figure 3.14). Hb A synthesis starts in the bone marrow at about the eighth month of pregnancy and gradually replaces Hb F. (Figure 3.14 shows the relative production of each type of hemoglobin chain during fetal and postnatal life.) [Note: Hb F represents less than 1% of the Hb in most adults, and is concentrated in RBCs known as F-cells.]

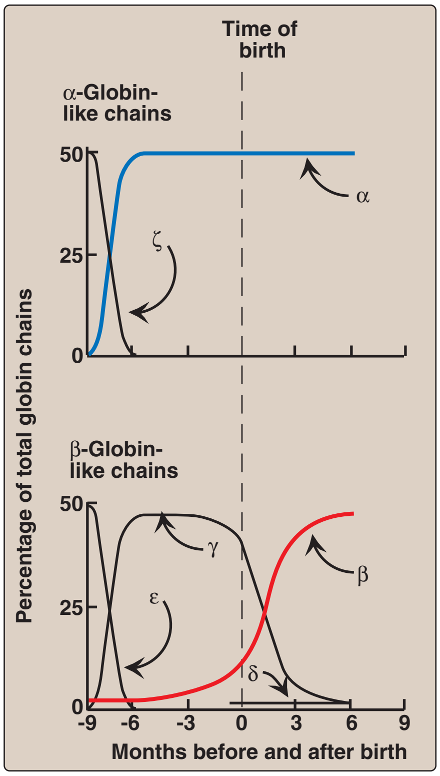


Figure 3.14
Developmental changes in hemoglobin.

   b. **Binding of 2,3-BPG to Hb F:** Under physiologic conditions, Hb F has a higher affinity for oxygen than does Hb A, as a result of Hb F binding only weakly to 2,3-BPG. [Note: The γ-globin chains of Hb F lack some of the positively charged amino acids that are responsible for binding 2,3-BPG in the β-globin chains.] Because 2,3-BPG serves to reduce the affinity of hemoglobin for oxygen, the weaker interaction between 2,3-BPG and Hb F results in a higher oxygen affinity for Hb F relative to Hb A. In contrast, if both Hb A and Hb F are stripped of their 2,3-BPG, they then have a similar affinity for oxygen.

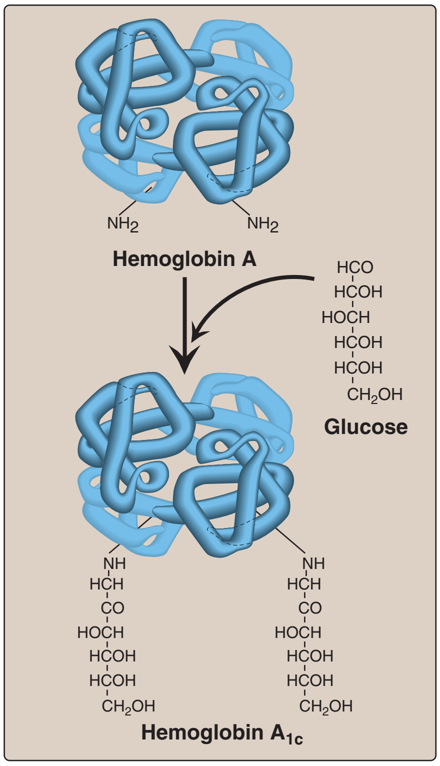

NH$_2$
NH$_2$
Hemoglobin A
HCO
HCOH
HOCH
HCOH
HCOH
CH$_2$OH
Glucose
NH
HCH
CO
HOCH
HCOH
HCOH
CH$_2$OH
NH
HCH
CO
HOCH
HCOH
HCOH
CH$_2$OH
Hemoglobin A$_{1c}$

Figure 3.15
Nonenzymic addition of glucose to hemoglobin.

The higher oxygen affinity of Hb F facilitates the transfer of oxygen from the maternal circulation across the placenta to the RBCs of the fetus.

2. **Hemoglobin A_2 (Hb A_2):** Hb A_2 is a minor component of normal adult hemoglobin, first appearing shortly before birth and, ultimately, constituting about 2% of the total hemoglobin. It is composed of two α-globin chains and two δ-globin chains ($\alpha_2\delta_2$, see Figure 3.13).

3. **Hemoglobin A_{1c} (HbA_{1c}):** Under physiologic conditions, Hb A is slowly and nonenzymically glycosylated, the extent of glycosylation being dependent on the plasma concentration of a particular hexose. The most abundant form of glycosylated hemoglobin is Hb A_{1c}. It has glucose residues attached predominantly to the NH_2 groups of the N-terminal valines of the β-globin chains (Figure 3.15). Increased amounts of Hb A_{1c} are found in RBCs of patients with diabetes mellitus, because their Hb A has contact with higher glucose concentrations during the 120-day lifetime of these cells. (See p. 340 for a discussion of the use of this phenomenon in assessing average blood glucose levels in persons with diabetes.)

III. ORGANIZATION OF THE GLOBIN GENES

To understand diseases resulting from genetic alterations in the structure or synthesis of hemoglobins, it is necessary to grasp how the hemoglobin genes, which direct the synthesis of the different globin chains, are structurally organized into gene families and also how they are expressed.

A. α-Gene family

The genes coding for the α-globin-like and β-globin-like subunits of the hemoglobin chains occur in two separate gene clusters (or families) located on two different chromosomes (Figure 3.16). The α-gene cluster on chromosome 16 contains two genes for the α-globin chains. It also contains the ζ gene that is expressed early in development as a component of embryonic hemoblobin. [Note: Globin gene famillies also contain globin-like genes that are not expressed (that is, their genetic information is not used to produce globin chains). These are called pseudogenes.]

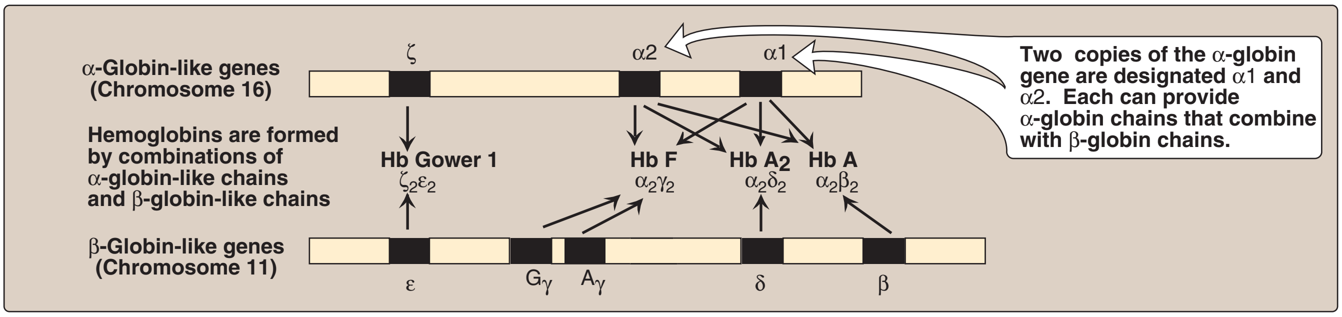

α-Globin-like genes (Chromosome 16)
ζ
α2
α1
Two copies of the α-globin gene are designated α1 and α2. Each can provide α-globin chains that combine with β-globin chains.
Hemoglobins are formed by combinations of α-globin-like chains and β-globin-like chains
Hb Gower 1
$\zeta_2\varepsilon_2$
Hb F
$\alpha_2\gamma_2$
Hb A$_2$
$\alpha_2\delta_2$
Hb A
$\alpha_2\beta_2$
β-Globin-like genes (Chromosome 11)
ε
Gγ
Aγ
δ
β

Figure 3.16
Organization of the globin gene families.

B. β-Gene family

A single gene for the β-globin chain is located on chromosome 11 (see Figure 3.16). There are an additional four β-globin-like genes: the ε gene (which, like the ζ gene, is expressed early in embryonic development), two γ genes (G_γ and A_γ that are expressed in Hb F), and the δ gene that codes for the globin chain found in the minor adult hemoglobin Hb A_2.

C. Steps in globin chain synthesis

Expression of a globin gene begins in the nucleus of red cell precursors, where the DNA sequence encoding the gene is transcribed. The RNA produced by transcription is actually a precursor of the messenger RNA (mRNA) that is used as a template for the synthesis of a globin chain. Before it can serve this function, two noncoding stretches of RNA (introns) must be removed from the mRNA precursor sequence, and the remaining three fragments (exons) joined in a linear manner. The resulting mature mRNA enters the cytosol, where its genetic information is translated, producing a globin chain. (A summary of this process is shown in Figure 3.17. A more detailed description of protein synthesis is presented in Chapter 31, p. 431.)

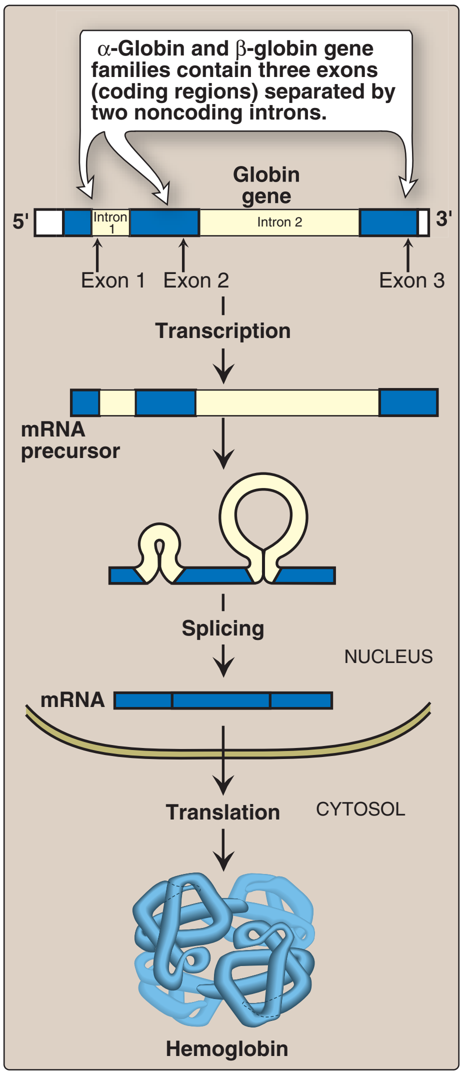


Figure 3.17
Synthesis of globin chains.

IV. HEMOGLOBINOPATHIES

Hemoglobinopathies have traditionally been defined as a family of genetic disorders caused by production of a structurally abnormal hemoglobin molecule, synthesis of insufficient quantities of normal hemoglobin, or, rarely, both. Sickle cell anemia (Hb S), hemoglobin C disease (Hb C), hemoglobin SC disease (Hb S + Hb C), and the thalassemia syndromes are representative hemoglobinopathies that can have severe clinical consequences. The first three conditions result from production of hemoglobin with an altered amino acid sequence (qualitative hemoglobinopathy), whereas the thalassemias are caused by decreased production of normal hemoglobin (quantitative hemoglobinopathy).

A. Sickle cell anemia (hemoglobin S disease)

Sickle cell anemia, the most common of the red cell sickling diseases, is a genetic disorder of the blood caused by a single nucleotide alteration (a point mutation) in the gene for β-globin. It is the most common inherited blood disorder in the United States, affecting 80,000 Americans. It occurs primarily in the African-American population, affecting one of 500 newborn African-American infants in the United States. Sickle cell anemia is a homozygous, recessive disorder. It occurs in individuals who have inherited two mutant genes (one from each parent) that code for synthesis of the β chains of the globin molecules. [Note: The mutant β-globin chain is designated β^S, and the resulting hemoglobin, $\alpha_2\beta^S{}_2$, is referred to as Hb S.] An infant does not begin showing symptoms of the disease until sufficient Hb F has been replaced by Hb S so that sickling can occur (see below). Sickle cell anemia is characterized by lifelong episodes of pain ("crises"), chronic hemolytic anemia with associated hyperbilirubinemia (see p. 284), and increased susceptibility to infections, usually beginning in early childhood. [Note: The lifetime of an

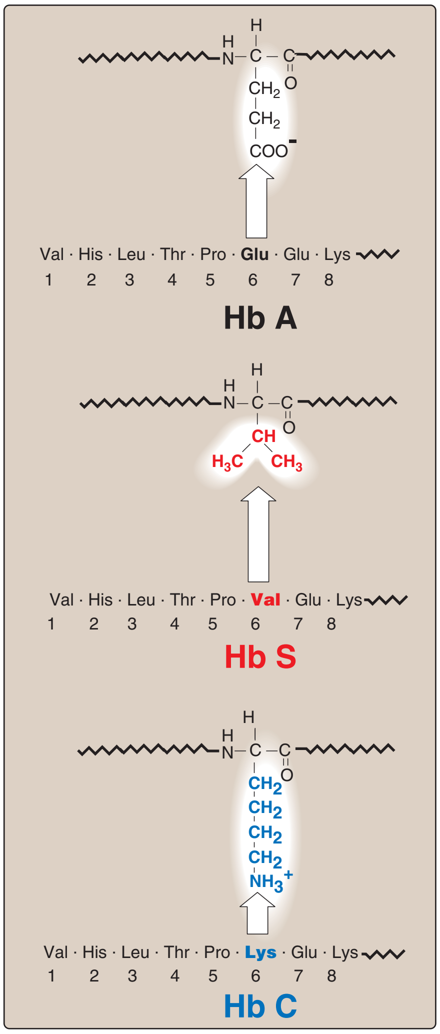

H
H
N–C–C
O
CH2
CH2
COO-
Val · His · Leu · Thr · Pro · Glu · Glu · Lys
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8
Hb A
H
H
N–C–C
O
CH
H3C CH3
Val · His · Leu · Thr · Pro · Val · Glu · Lys
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8
Hb S
H
H
N–C–C
O
CH2
CH2
CH2
CH2
NH3+
Val · His · Leu · Thr · Pro · Lys · Glu · Lys
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8
Hb C

Figure 3.18
Amino acid substitutions in Hb S and Hb C.

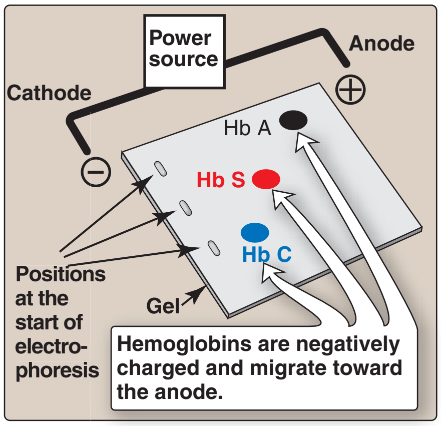

Power source
Anode
Cathode
Hb A
Hb S
Hb C
Positions at the start of electrophoresis
Gel
Hemoglobins are negatively charged and migrate toward the anode.

Figure 3.19
Diagram of hemoglobins A, S, and C after electrophoresis.

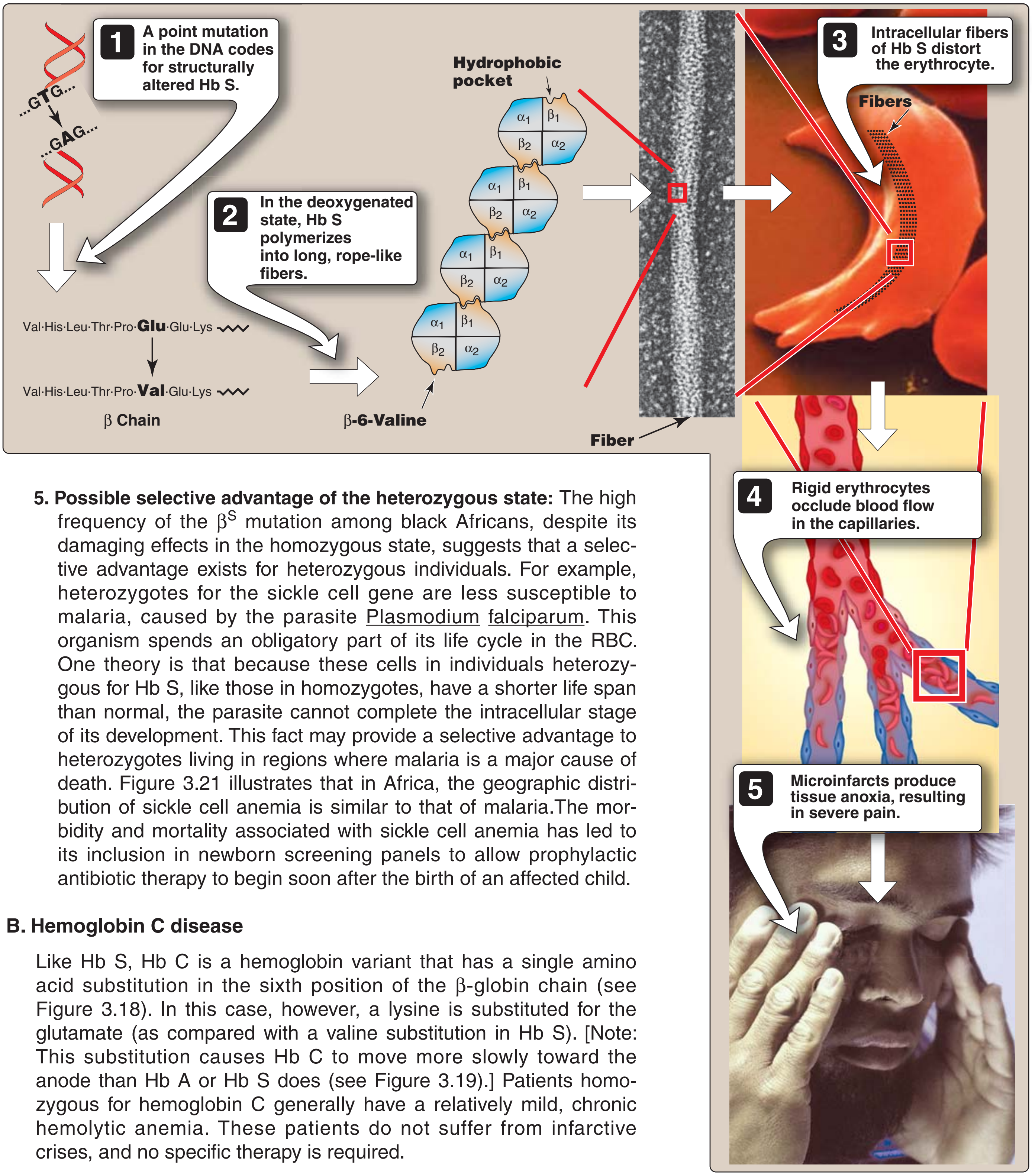
erythrocyte in sickle cell anemia is less than 20 days, compared with 120 days for normal RBCs; hence, the anemia.] Other symptoms include acute chest syndrome, stroke, splenic and renal dysfunction, and bone changes due to marrow hyperplasia. Heterozygotes, representing 1 in 12 African-Americans, have one normal and one sickle cell gene. The blood cells of such heterozygotes contain both Hb S and Hb A. These individuals have sickle cell trait. They usually do not show clinical symptoms and can have a normal life span.

1. **Amino acid substitution in Hb S β chains:** A molecule of Hb S contains two normal α-globin chains and two mutant β-globin chains (β^S), in which glutamate at position six has been replaced with valine (Figure 3.18). Therefore, during electrophoresis at alkaline pH, Hb S migrates more slowly toward the anode (positive electrode) than does Hb A (Figure 3.19). This altered mobility of Hb S is a result of the absence of the negatively charged glutamate residues in the two β chains, thus rendering Hb S less negative than Hb A. [Note: Electrophoresis of hemoglobin obtained from lysed RBCs is routinely used in the diagnosis of sickle cell trait and sickle cell disease.]

2. **Sickling and tissue anoxia:** The replacement of the charged glutamate with the nonpolar valine forms a protrusion on the β-globin that fits into a complementary site on the β chain of another hemoglobin molecule in the cell (Figure 3.20). At low oxygen tension, deoxyhemoglobin S polymerizes inside the RBC, forming a network of fibrous polymers that stiffen and distort the cell, producing rigid, misshapen erythrocytes. Such sickled cells frequently block the flow of blood in the narrow capillaries. This interruption in the supply of oxygen leads to localized anoxia (oxygen deprivation) in the tissue, causing pain and eventually death (infarction) of cells in the vicinity of the blockage. The anoxia also leads to an increase in deoxygenated Hb S. [Note: The mean diameter of RBCs is 7.5 µm, whereas that of the microvasculature is 3–4 µm. Instead of squeezing through the microvasculature like Hb A–containing RBCs, sickled cells have a decreased ability to deform and an increased tendency to adhere to vessel walls, and so have difficulty moving through small vessels.]

3. **Variables that increase sickling:** The extent of sickling and, therefore, the severity of disease is enhanced by any variable that increases the proportion of Hb S in the deoxy state (that is, reduces the affinity of Hb S for oxygen). These variables include decreased oxygen tension as a result of high altitudes or flying in a nonpressurized plane, increased pCO_2, decreased pH, dehydration, and an increased concentration of 2,3-BPG in erythrocytes.

4. **Treatment:** Therapy involves adequate hydration, analgesics, aggressive antibiotic therapy if infection is present, and transfusions in patients at high risk for fatal occlusion of blood vessels. Intermittent transfusions with packed red cells reduce the risk of stroke, but the benefits must be weighed against the complications of transfusion, which include iron overload (hemosiderosis), bloodborne infections, and immunologic complications. Hydroxyurea, an antitumor drug, is therapeutically useful because it increases circulating levels of Hb F, which decreases RBC sickling. This leads to decreased frequency of painful crises and reduces mortality.


1 A point mutation in the DNA codes for structurally altered Hb S.

2 In the deoxygenated state, Hb S polymerizes into long, rope-like fibers.

3 Intracellular fibers of Hb S distort the erythrocyte.

4 Rigid erythrocytes occlude blood flow in the capillaries.

5 Microinfarcts produce tissue anoxia, resulting in severe pain.

Figure 3.20
Molecular and cellular events leading to sickle cell crisis.

5. Possible selective advantage of the heterozygous state: The high frequency of the β^S mutation among black Africans, despite its damaging effects in the homozygous state, suggests that a selective advantage exists for heterozygous individuals. For example, heterozygotes for the sickle cell gene are less susceptible to malaria, caused by the parasite Plasmodium falciparum. This organism spends an obligatory part of its life cycle in the RBC. One theory is that because these cells in individuals heterozygous for Hb S, like those in homozygotes, have a shorter life span than normal, the parasite cannot complete the intracellular stage of its development. This fact may provide a selective advantage to heterozygotes living in regions where malaria is a major cause of death. Figure 3.21 illustrates that in Africa, the geographic distribution of sickle cell anemia is similar to that of malaria.The morbidity and mortality associated with sickle cell anemia has led to its inclusion in newborn screening panels to allow prophylactic antibiotic therapy to begin soon after the birth of an affected child.

B. Hemoglobin C disease

Like Hb S, Hb C is a hemoglobin variant that has a single amino acid substitution in the sixth position of the β-globin chain (see Figure 3.18). In this case, however, a lysine is substituted for the glutamate (as compared with a valine substitution in Hb S). [Note: This substitution causes Hb C to move more slowly toward the anode than Hb A or Hb S does (see Figure 3.19).] Patients homozygous for hemoglobin C generally have a relatively mild, chronic hemolytic anemia. These patients do not suffer from infarctive crises, and no specific therapy is required.

C. Hemoglobin SC disease

Hemoglobin SC disease is another of the red cell sickling diseases. In this disease, some β-globin chains have the sickle cell mutation, whereas other β-globin chains carry the mutation found in Hb C disease. [Note: Patients with Hb SC disease are doubly heterozygous (compound heterozygote) because both of their β-globin genes are abnormal, although different from each other.] Hemoglobin levels tend to be higher in Hb SC disease than in sickle cell anemia, and may even be at the low end of the normal range. The clinical course of adults with Hb SC anemia differs from that of sickle cell anemia in that symptoms such as painful crises are less frequent and less severe; however, there is significant clinical variability.

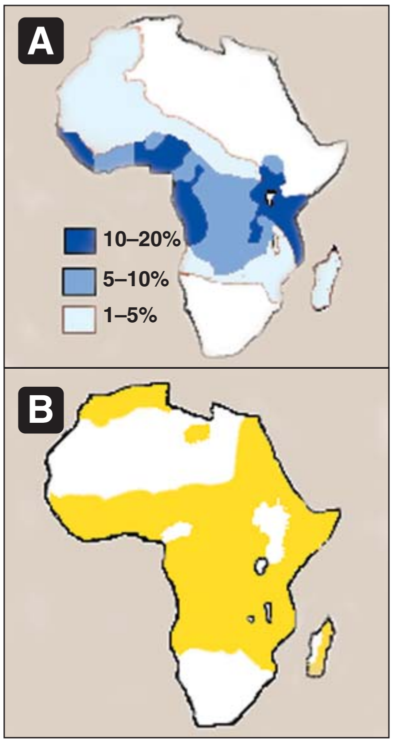


Figure 3.21
A. Distribution of sickle cell in Africa expressed as a percentage of the population with disease.
B. Distribution of malaria in Africa.

D. Methemoglobinemias

Oxidation of the heme component of hemoglobin to the ferric (Fe^{3+}) state forms methemoglobin, which cannot bind oxygen. This oxidation may be caused by the action of certain drugs, such as nitrates, or endogenous products, such as reactive oxygen intermediates (see p. 148). The oxidation may also result from inherited defects, for example, certain mutations in the α- or β-globin chain promote the formation of methemoglobin (Hb M). Furthermore, a deficiency of *NADH-cytochrome b_5 reductase* (also called *NADH-methemoglobin reductase*), the enzyme responsible for the conversion of methemoglobin (Fe^{3+}) to hemoglobin (Fe^{2+}), leads to the accumulation of methemoglobin. [Note: The erythrocytes of newborns have approximately half the capacity of those of adults to reduce methemoglobin. They are therefore particularly susceptible to the effects of methemoglobin-producing compounds.] The methemoglobinemias are characterized by "chocolate cyanosis" (a brownish-blue coloration of the skin and mucous membranes) and chocolate-colored blood, as a result of the dark-colored methemoglobin. Symptoms are related to the degree of tissue hypoxia, and include anxiety, headache, and dyspnea. In rare cases, coma and death can occur. Treatment is with methylene blue, which is oxidized as Fe^{+3} is reduced.

E. Thalassemias

The thalassemias are hereditary hemolytic diseases in which an imbalance occurs in the synthesis of globin chains. As a group, they are the most common single gene disorders in humans. Normally, synthesis of the α- and β-globin chains is coordinated, so that each α-globin chain has a β-globin chain partner. This leads to the formation of $\alpha_2\beta_2$ (Hb A). In the thalassemias, the synthesis of either the α- or the β-globin chain is defective. A thalassemia can be caused by a variety of mutations, including entire gene deletions, or substitutions or deletions of one to many nucleotides in the DNA. [Note: Each thalassemia can be classified as either a disorder in which no globin chains are produced (α^o- or β^o-thalassemia), or one in which some chains are synthesized, but at a reduced level (α^+- or β^+-thalassemia).]

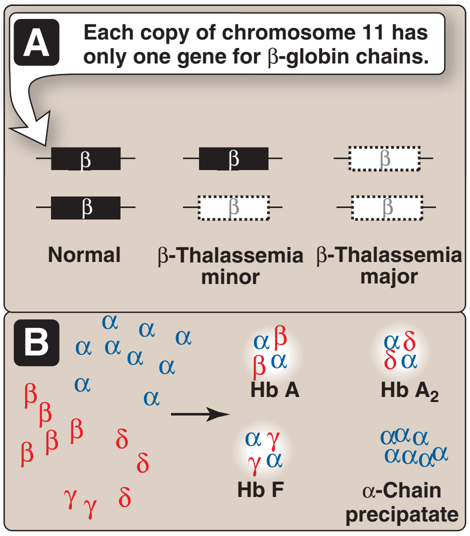


Figure 3.22
A. β-Globin gene mutations in the β-thalassemias. B. Hemoglobin tetramers formed in β-thalassemias.

1. **β-Thalassemias:** In these disorders, synthesis of β-globin chains is decreased or absent, typically as a result of point mutations that affect the production of functional mRNA; however, α-globin chain synthesis is normal. α-Globin chains cannot form stable tetramers and, therefore, precipitate, causing the premature death of cells initially destined to become mature RBCs. Increase in $\alpha_2\gamma_2$ (Hb F) and $\alpha_2\delta_2$ (Hb A_2) also occurs. There are only two copies of the β-globin gene in each cell (one on each chromosome 11). Therefore, individuals with β-globin gene defects have either β-thalassemia trait (β-thalassemia minor) if they have only one defective β-globin gene, or β-thalassemia major (Cooley anemia)

if both genes are defective (Figure 3.22). Because the β-globin gene is not expressed until late in fetal gestation, the physical manifestations of β-thalassemias appear only several months after birth. Those individuals with β-thalassemia minor make some β chains, and usually do not require specific treatment. However, those infants born with β-thalassemia major are seemingly healthy at birth, but become severely anemic, usually during the first or second year of life due to ineffective erythropoiesis. Skeletal changes as a result of extramedullary hematopoiesis also are seen.These patients require regular transfusions of blood. [Note: Although this treatment is lifesaving, the cumulative effect of the transfusions is iron overload (a syndrome known as hemosiderosis). Use of iron chelation therapy has improved morbidity and mortality.] The increasing use of bone marrow replacement therapy has been a boon to these patients.

2. **α-Thalassemias:** These are defects in which the synthesis of α-globin chains is decreased or absent, typically as a result of deletional mutations. Because each individual's genome contains four copies of the α-globin gene (two on each chromosome 16), there are several levels of α-globin chain deficiencies (Figure 3.23). If one of the four genes is defective, the individual is termed a silent carrier of α-thalassemia, because no physical manifestations of the disease occur. If two α-globin genes are defective, the individual is designated as having α-thalassemia trait. If three α-globin genes are defective, the individual has Hb H (β_4) disease—a mildly to moderately severe hemolytic anemia. If all four α-globin genes are defective, Hb Bart (γ_4) disease with hydrops fetalis and fetal death results, because α-globin chains are required for the synthesis of Hb F. [Note: Hemoglobinopathies that result in increased O_2 affinity typically are characterized by increased production of RBCs, whereas those that result in decreased O_2 affinity are characterized by anemia.]

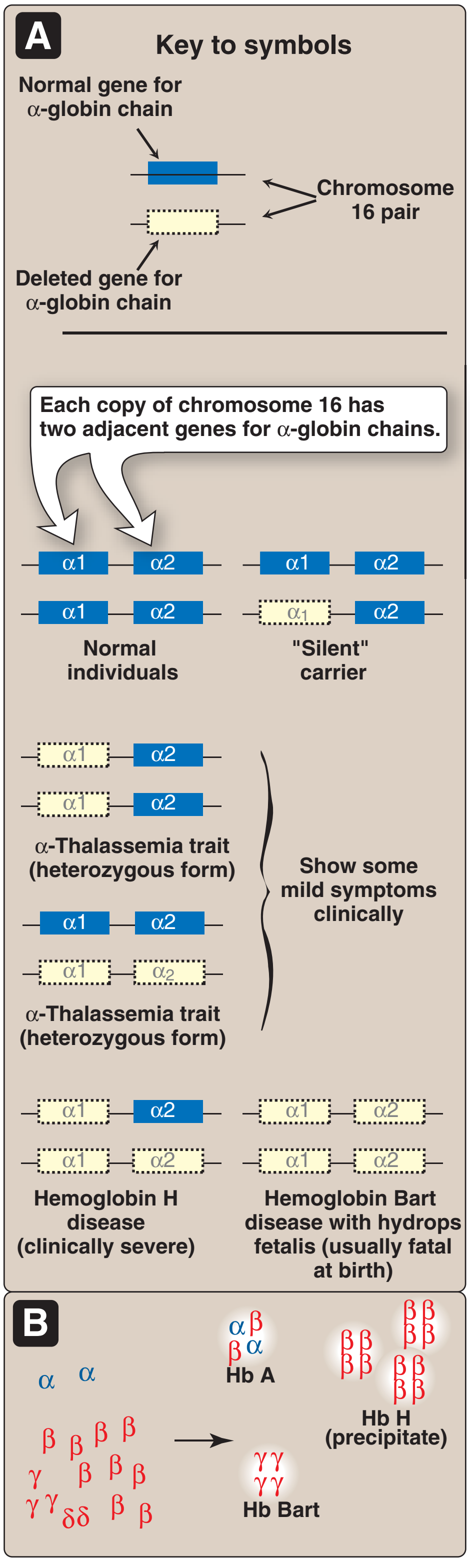

A
Key to symbols
Normal gene for α-globin chain
Chromosome 16 pair
Deleted gene for α-globin chain
Each copy of chromosome 16 has two adjacent genes for α-globin chains.
α1
α2
Normal individuals
"Silent" carrier
α-Thalassemia trait (heterozygous form)
α-Thalassemia trait (heterozygous form)
Show some mild symptoms clinically
Hemoglobin H disease (clinically severe)
Hemoglobin Bart disease with hydrops fetalis (usually fatal at birth)
B
α α
β β β β
γ β β β
γ γ δ δ β β
αβ βα
Hb A
ββ ββ
Hb H (precipitate)
γγ γγ
Hb Bart

Figure 3.23
A. α-Globin gene deletions in the α-thalassemias. B. Hemoglobin tetramers formed in α-thalassemias.

V. CHAPTER SUMMARY

Hemoglobin A, the major hemoglobin in adults, is composed of four polypeptide chains (two α chains and two β chains, $\alpha_2\beta_2$) held together by noncovalent interactions (Figure 3.24). The subunits occupy different relative positions in deoxyhemoglobin compared with oxyhemoglobin. The **deoxy form** of hemoglobin is called the "**T**," or **taut** (**tense**) **form**. It has a constrained structure that limits the movement of the polypeptide chains. The T form is the **low-oxygen-affinity form** of hemoglobin. The binding of oxygen to hemoglobin causes rupture of some of the ionic and hydrogen bonds. This leads to a structure called the "**R**," or **relaxed form**, in which the polypeptide chains have more freedom of movement. The R form is the **high-oxygen-affinity form** of hemoglobin. The **oxygen dissociation curve** for hemoglobin is **sigmoidal** in shape (in contrast to that of **myoglobin**, which is **hyperbolic**), indicating that the subunits cooperate in binding oxygen. **Cooperative binding** of oxygen by the four subunits of hemoglobin means that the binding of an oxygen molecule at one heme group increases the oxygen affinity of the remaining heme groups in the same hemoglobin molecule. Hemoglobin's **ability to bind**

oxygen reversibly is affected by the **pO_2** (through heme-heme interactions), the **pH** of the environment, the **pCO_2**, and the availability of **2,3-bisphosphoglycerate (2,3-BPG)**. For example, the release of O_2 from Hb is enhanced when the pH is lowered or the pCO_2 is increased (the **Bohr effect**), such as in **exercising muscle**, and the oxygen dissociation curve of Hb is shifted to the right. To cope long-term with the effects of **chronic hypoxia** or **anemia**, the concentration of **2,3-BPG** in **RBCs** increases. **2,3-BPG** binds to the Hb and decreases its oxygen affinity, and it, therefore, also shifts the oxygen-dissociation curve to the right. **Carbon monoxide** (**CO**) binds tightly (but reversibly) to the hemoglobin iron, forming **carbon monoxyhemoglobin** (Hb CO). **Hemoglobinopathies** are disorders caused either by production of a **structurally abnormal hemoglobin** molecule, synthesis of **insufficient quantities** of normal hemoglobin subunits, or, rarely, both (Figure 3.25). The sickling diseases **sickle cell anemia** (Hb S disease) and **hemoglobin SC disease**, as well as **hemoglobin C disease** and the **thalassemia syndromes** are representative hemoglobinopathies that can have severe clinical consequences.

Study Questions

Choose the ONE correct answer.

3.1 Which one of the following statements concerning the hemoglobins is correct?

A. Fetal blood has a higher affinity for oxygen than does adult blood because Hb F has a decreased affinity for 2,3-BPG.
B. Purified Hb F (stripped of 2,3-BPG) has a higher affinity for oxygen than does purified Hb A.
C. The globin chain composition of Hb F is $\alpha_2\delta_2$.
D. Hb A_{1c} differs from Hb A by a single, genetically determined amino acid substitution.
E. Hb A_2 appears early in fetal life.

Correct answer = A. Because 2,3-BPG reduces the affinity of hemoglobin for oxygen, the weaker interaction between 2,3-BPG and Hb F results in a higher oxygen affinity for Hb F relative to Hb A. In contrast, if both Hb A and Hb F are stripped of 2,3-BPG, they have a similar affinity for oxygen. Hb F consists of $\alpha_2\gamma_2$. Hb A_{1c} is a glycosylated form of Hb A, formed nonenzymically in red cells. Hb A_2 is a minor component of normal adult hemoglobin, first appearing shortly before birth and rising to adult levels (about 2% of the total hemoglobin) by 6 months of age.

3.2 Which one of the following statements concerning the ability of acidosis to precipitate a crisis in sickle cell anemia is correct?

A. Acidosis decreases the solubility of Hb S.
B. Acidosis increases the affinity of hemoglobin for oxygen.
C. Acidosis favors the conversion of hemoglobin from the taut to the relaxed conformation.
D. Acidosis shifts the oxygen dissociation curve to the left.
E. Acidosis decreases the ability of 2,3-BPG to bind to hemoglobin.

Correct answer = A. Hb S is significantly less soluble in the deoxygenated form, compared with oxyhemoglobin S. A decrease in pH (acidosis) causes the oxygen dissociation curve to shift to the right, indicating a decreased affinity for oxygen. This favors the formation of the deoxy, or taut, form of hemoglobin, and can precipitate a sickle cell crisis. The binding of 2,3-BPG is increased, because it binds only to the deoxy form of hemoglobins.

3.3 Which one of the following statements concerning the binding of oxygen by hemoglobin is correct?

A. The Bohr effect results in a lower affinity for oxygen at higher pH values.
B. Carbon dioxide increases the oxygen affinity of hemoglobin by binding to the C-terminal groups of the polypeptide chains.
C. The oxygen affinity of hemoglobin increases as the percentage saturation increases.
D. The hemoglobin tetramer binds four molecules of 2,3-BPG.
E. Oxyhemoglobin and deoxyhemoglobin have the same affinity for protons (H^+).

Correct answer = C. The binding of oxygen at one heme group increases the oxygen affinity of the remaining heme groups in the same molecule. Carbon dioxide decreases oxygen affinity because it lowers the pH; moreover, binding of carbon dioxide to the N-termini stabilizes the taut, deoxy form. Hemoglobin binds one molecule of 2,3-BPG. Deoxyhemoglobin has a greater affinity for protons and, therefore, is a weaker acid.

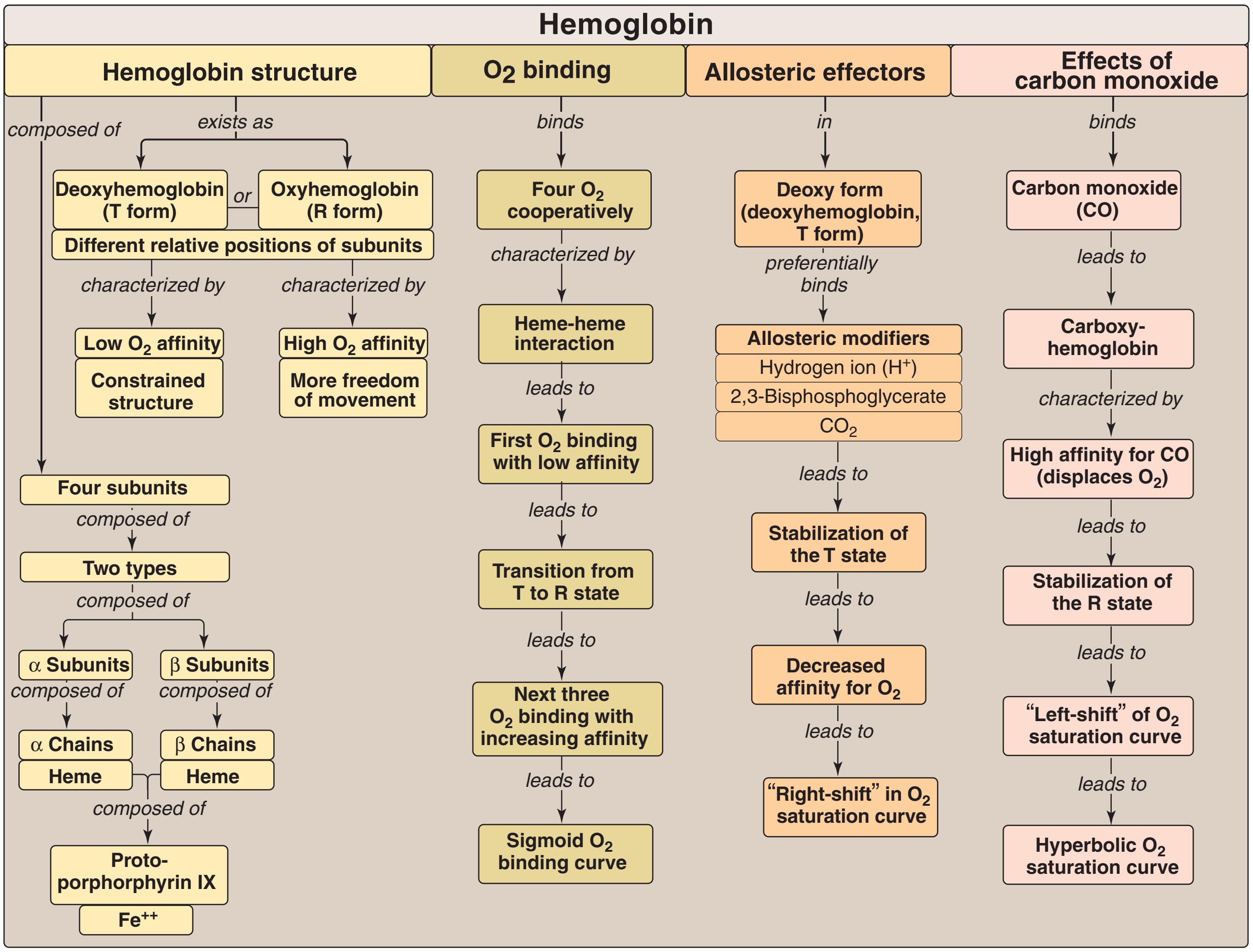

Hemoglobin
Hemoglobin structure
O_2 binding
Allosteric effectors
Effects of carbon monoxide
composed of
exists as
Deoxyhemoglobin (T form)
or
Oxyhemoglobin (R form)
Different relative positions of subunits
characterized by
characterized by
Low O_2 affinity
Constrained structure
High O_2 affinity
More freedom of movement
Four subunits
composed of
Two types
composed of
α Subunits
β Subunits
composed of
composed of
α Chains
Heme
β Chains
Heme
composed of
Proto-porphorphyrin IX
Fe^{++}
binds
Four O_2 cooperatively
characterized by
Heme-heme interaction
leads to
First O_2 binding with low affinity
leads to
Transition from T to R state
leads to
Next three O_2 binding with increasing affinity
leads to
Sigmoid O_2 binding curve
in
Deoxy form (deoxyhemoglobin, T form)
preferentially binds
Allosteric modifiers
Hydrogen ion (H^+)
2,3-Bisphosphoglycerate
CO_2
leads to
Stabilization of the T state
leads to
Decreased affinity for O_2
leads to
"Right-shift" in O_2 saturation curve
binds
Carbon monoxide (CO)
leads to
Carboxy-hemoglobin
characterized by
High affinity for CO (displaces O_2)
leads to
Stabilization of the R state
leads to
"Left-shift" of O_2 saturation curve
leads to
Hyperbolic O_2 saturation curve

Figure 3.24
Key concept map for hemoglobin structure and function.

Study Questions (continued)

3.4 β-Lysine 82 in hemoglobin A is important for the binding of 2,3-BPG. In Hb Helsinki, this amino acid has been replaced by methionine. Which of the following should be true concerning Hb Helsinki?

A. It should be stabilized in the T, rather than the R, form.

B. It should have increased O_2 affinity and, consequently, decreased delivery of O_2 to tissues.

C. Its O_2 dissociation curve should be shifted to the right relative to Hb A.

D. It results in anemia.

Correct answer is B. Substitution of lysine by methionine decreases the ability of negatively charged phosphate groups in 2,3-BPG to bind the β subunits of hemoglobin. Because 2,3BPG decreases the O_2 affinity of hemoglobin, a reduction in 2,3-BPG should result in increased O_2 affinity and decreased delivery of O_2 to tissues. The R form is the high-oxygen-affinity form of hemoglobin. Increased O_2 affinity (decreased delivery) results in a left shift in the O_2 dissociation curve. Decreased O_2 delivery is compensated for by increased RBC production.

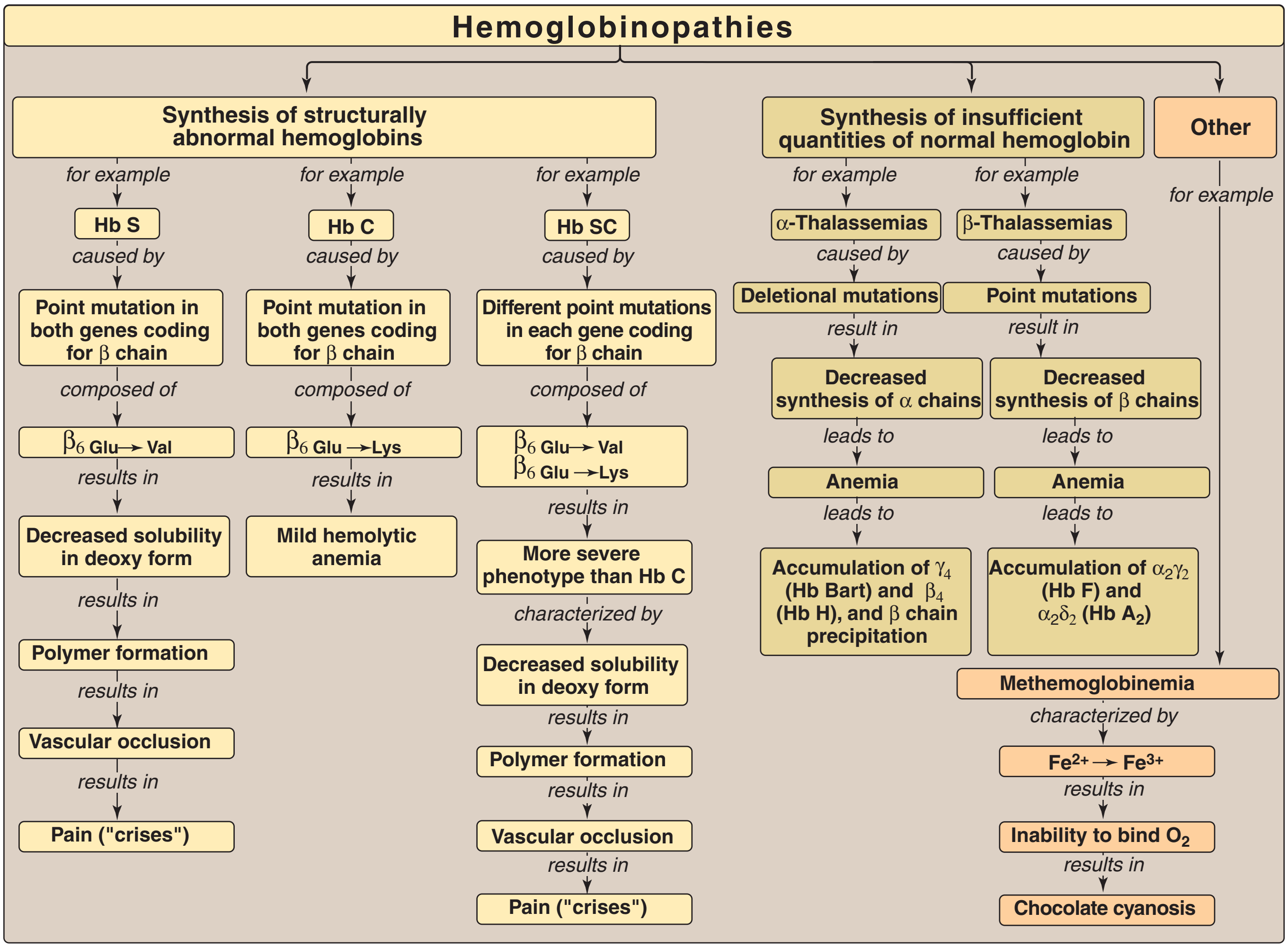

Hemoglobinopathies
Synthesis of structurally abnormal hemoglobins
for example
Hb S
caused by
Point mutation in both genes coding for β chain
composed of
β_6 Glu → Val
results in
Decreased solubility in deoxy form
results in
Polymer formation
results in
Vascular occlusion
results in
Pain ("crises")
for example
Hb C
caused by
Point mutation in both genes coding for β chain
composed of
β_6 Glu → Lys
results in
Mild hemolytic anemia
for example
Hb SC
caused by
Different point mutations in each gene coding for β chain
composed of
β_6 Glu → Val
β_6 Glu → Lys
results in
More severe phenotype than Hb C
characterized by
Decreased solubility in deoxy form
results in
Polymer formation
results in
Vascular occlusion
results in
Pain ("crises")
Synthesis of insufficient quantities of normal hemoglobin
for example
α-Thalassemias
caused by
Deletional mutations
result in
Decreased synthesis of α chains
leads to
Anemia
leads to
Accumulation of γ_4 (Hb Bart) and β_4 (Hb H), and β chain precipitation
for example
β-Thalassemias
caused by
Point mutations
result in
Decreased synthesis of β chains
leads to
Anemia
leads to
Accumulation of $\alpha_2\gamma_2$ (Hb F) and $\alpha_2\delta_2$ (Hb A_2)
Other
for example
Methemoglobinemia
characterized by
$Fe^{2+} \rightarrow Fe^{3+}$
results in
Inability to bind O_2
results in
Chocolate cyanosis

Figure 3.25
Key concept map for hemoglobinopathies.

Study Questions (continued)

3.5 A 67-year-old man presented to the emergency department with a 1 week history of angina and shortness of breath. He complained that his face and extremities had a "blue color." His medical history included chronic stable angina treated with isosorbide dinitrate and nitroglycerin. Blood obtained for analysis was chocolate-colored. Which one of the following is the most likely diagnosis?

A. Sickle cell anemia
B. Carboxyhemoglobinemia
C. Methemoglobinemia.
D. β-Thalassemia
E. Hemoglobin SC disease

Correct answer = C. Oxidation of the heme component of hemoglobin to the ferric (Fe^{3+}) state forms methemoglobin. This may be caused by the action of certain drugs, such as nitrates. The methemoglobinemias are characterized by chocolate cyanosis (a brownish-blue coloration of the skin and mucous membranes), and chocolate-colored blood as a result of the dark-colored methemoglobin. Symptoms are related to tissue hypoxia, and include anxiety, headache, dyspnea. In rare cases, coma and death can occur.

Fibrous Proteins

4

I. OVERVIEW

Collagen and elastin are examples of common, well-characterized fibrous proteins of the extracellular matrix that serve structural functions in the body. For example, collagen and elastin are found as components of skin, connective tissue, blood vessel walls, and sclera and cornea of the eye. Each fibrous protein exhibits special mechanical properties, resulting from its unique structure, which are obtained by combining specific amino acids into regular, secondary structural elements. This is in contrast to globular proteins, whose shapes are the result of complex interactions between secondary, tertiary, and, sometimes, quaternary structural elements.

II. COLLAGEN

Collagen is the most abundant protein in the human body. A typical collagen molecule is a long, rigid structure in which three polypeptides (referred to as "α chains") are wound around one another in a rope-like triple helix (Figure 4.1). Although these molecules are found throughout the body, their types and organization are dictated by the structural role collagen plays in a particular organ. In some tissues, collagen may be dispersed as a gel that gives support to the structure, as in the extracellular matrix or the vitreous humor of the eye. In other tissues, collagen may be bundled in tight, parallel fibers that provide great strength, as in tendons. In the cornea of the eye, collagen is stacked so as to transmit light with a minimum of scattering. Collagen of bone occurs as fibers arranged at an angle to each other so as to resist mechanical shear from any direction.

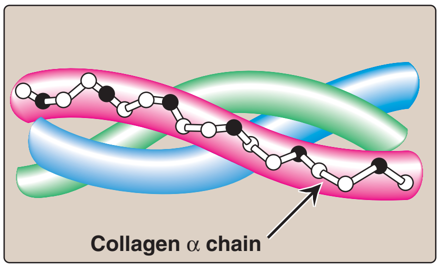


Figure 4.1
Triple-stranded helix of collagen.

A. Types of collagen

The collagen superfamily of proteins includes more than 25 collagen types, as well as additional proteins that have collagen-like domains. The three polypeptide α chains are held together by hydrogen bonds between the chains. Variations in the amino acid sequence of the α chains result in structural components that are about the same size (approximately 1,000 amino acids long), but with slightly different properties. These α chains are combined to form the various types of collagen found in the tissues. For example, the most common collagen, type I, contains two chains called $\alpha1$ and one chain called $\alpha2$ ($\alpha1_2\alpha2$), whereas type II collagen contains three $\alpha1$ chains ($\alpha1_3$). The

TYPE	TISSUE DISTRIBUTION
	Fibril-forming
I	Skin, bone, tendon, blood vessels, cornea
II	Cartilage, intervertebral disk, vitreous body
III	Blood vessels, fetal skin
	Network-forming
IV	Basement membrane
VII	Beneath stratified squamous epithelia
	Fibril-associated
IX	Cartilage
XII	Tendon, ligaments, some other tissues

Figure 4.2
The most abundant types of collagen.

collagens can be organized into three groups, based on their location and functions in the body (Figure 4.2).

1. **Fibril-forming collagens:** Types I, II, and III are the fibrillar collagens, and have the rope-like structure described above for a typical collagen molecule. In the electron microscope, these linear polymers of fibrils have characteristic banding patterns, reflecting the regular staggered packing of the individual collagen molecules in the fibril (Figure 4.3). Type I collagen fibers are found in supporting elements of high tensile strength (for example, tendon and cornea), whereas fibers formed from type II collagen molecules are restricted to cartilaginous structures. The fibers derived from type III collagen are prevalent in more distensible tissues, such as blood vessels.

2. **Network-forming collagens:** Types IV and VII form a three-dimensional mesh, rather than distinct fibrils (Figure 4.4). For example, type IV molecules assemble into a sheet or meshwork that constitutes a major part of basement membranes.

> Basement membranes are thin, sheet-like structures that provide mechanical support for adjacent cells, and function as a semipermeable filtration barrier to macromolecules in organs such as the kidney and the lung.

3. **Fibril-associated collagens:** Types IX and XII bind to the surface of collagen fibrils, linking these fibrils to one another and to other components in the extracellular matrix (see Figure 4.2).

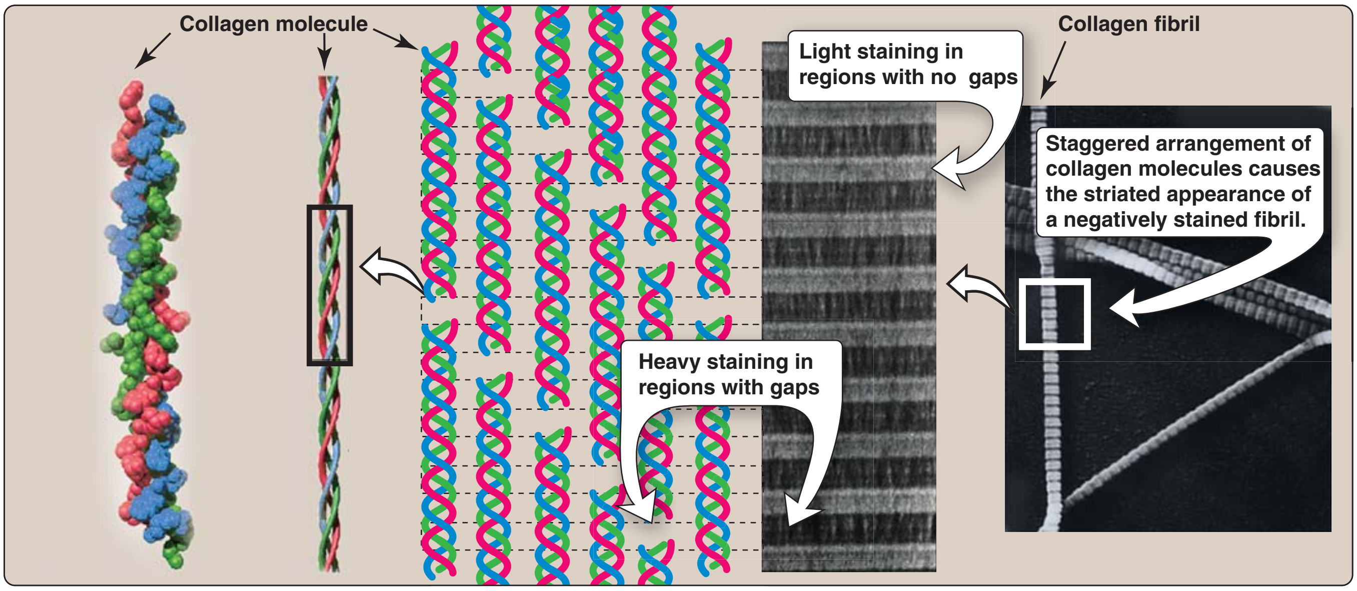

Collagen molecule
Light staining in regions with no gaps
Collagen fibril
Staggered arrangement of collagen molecules causes the striated appearance of a negatively stained fibril.
Heavy staining in regions with gaps

Figure 4.3
Collagen fibrils at right have a characteristic banding pattern, reflecting the regularly staggered packing of the individual collagen molecules in the fibril.

B. Structure of collagen

1. **Amino acid sequence:** Collagen is rich in proline and glycine, both of which are important in the formation of the triple-stranded helix. Proline facilitates the formation of the helical conformation of each α chain because its ring structure causes "kinks" in the peptide chain. [Note: The presence of proline dictates that the helical conformation of the α chain cannot be an α helix.] Glycine, the smallest amino acid, is found in every third position of the polypeptide chain. It fits into the restricted spaces where the three chains of the helix come together. The glycine residues are part of a repeating sequence, –Gly–X–Y–, where X is frequently proline and Y is often hydroxyproline (but can be hydroxylysine, Figure 4.5). Thus, most of the α chain can be regarded as a polytripeptide whose sequence can be represented as $(\text{–Gly–Pro–Hyp–})_{333}$.

2. **Triple-helical structure:** Unlike most globular proteins that are folded into compact structures, collagen, a fibrous protein, has an elongated, triple-helical structure that places many of its amino acid side chains on the surface of the triple-helical molecule. [Note: This allows bond formation between the exposed R-groups of neighboring collagen monomers, resulting in their aggregation into long fibers.]

3. **Hydroxyproline and hydroxylysine:** Collagen contains hydroxyproline (hyp) and hydroxylysine (hyl), which are not present in most other proteins. These residues result from the hydroxylation of some of the proline and lysine residues after their incorporation into polypeptide chains (Figure 4.6). The hydroxylation is, thus, an example of posttranslational modification (see p. 443). Hydroxyproline is important in stabilizing the triple-helical structure of collagen because it maximizes interchain hydrogen bond formation.

4. **Glycosylation:** The hydroxyl group of the hydroxylysine residues of collagen may be enzymatically glycosylated. Most commonly, glucose and galactose are sequentially attached to the polypeptide chain prior to triple-helix formation (Figure 4.7).

C. Biosynthesis of collagen

The polypeptide precursors of the collagen molecule are formed in fibroblasts (or in the related osteoblasts of bone and chondroblasts of cartilage), and are secreted into the extracellular matrix. After enzymic modification, the mature collagen monomers aggregate and become cross-linked to form collagen fibers.

1. **Formation of pro-α chains:** Collagen is one of many proteins that normally function outside of cells. Like most proteins produced for export, the newly synthesized polypeptide precursors of α chains (prepro-α chains) contain a special amino acid sequence at their N-terminal ends. This sequence acts as a signal that, in the absence of additional signals, targets the polypeptide being synthesized for secretion from the cell. The signal sequence facilitates the binding of ribosomes to the rough endoplasmic reticulum (RER), and directs the passage of the prepro-α chain into the lumen of the RER. The signal sequence is rapidly cleaved in the RER to yield a precursor of collagen called a pro-α chain (see Figure 4.7).

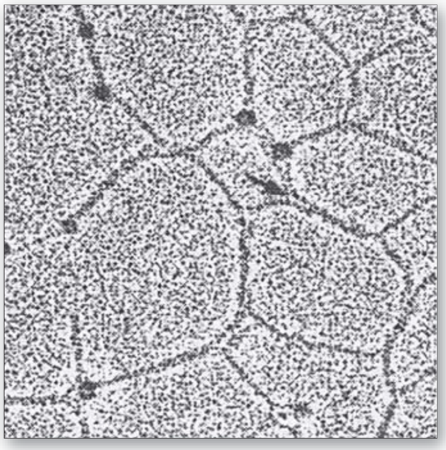


Figure 4.4
Electron micrograph of a polygonal network formed by association of collagen type IV monomers.

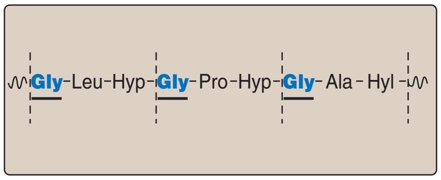


Figure 4.5
Amino acid sequence of a portion of the α1 chain of collagen. [Note: Hyp is hydroxyproline and Hyl is hydroxylysine.]

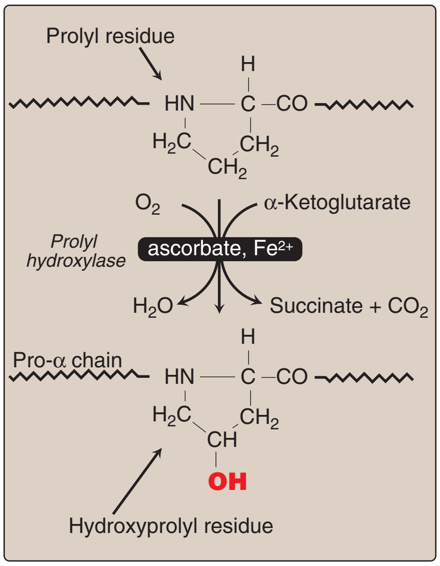


Figure 4.6
Hydroxylation of prolyl residues of pro-α chains of collagen by *prolyl hydroxylase.*

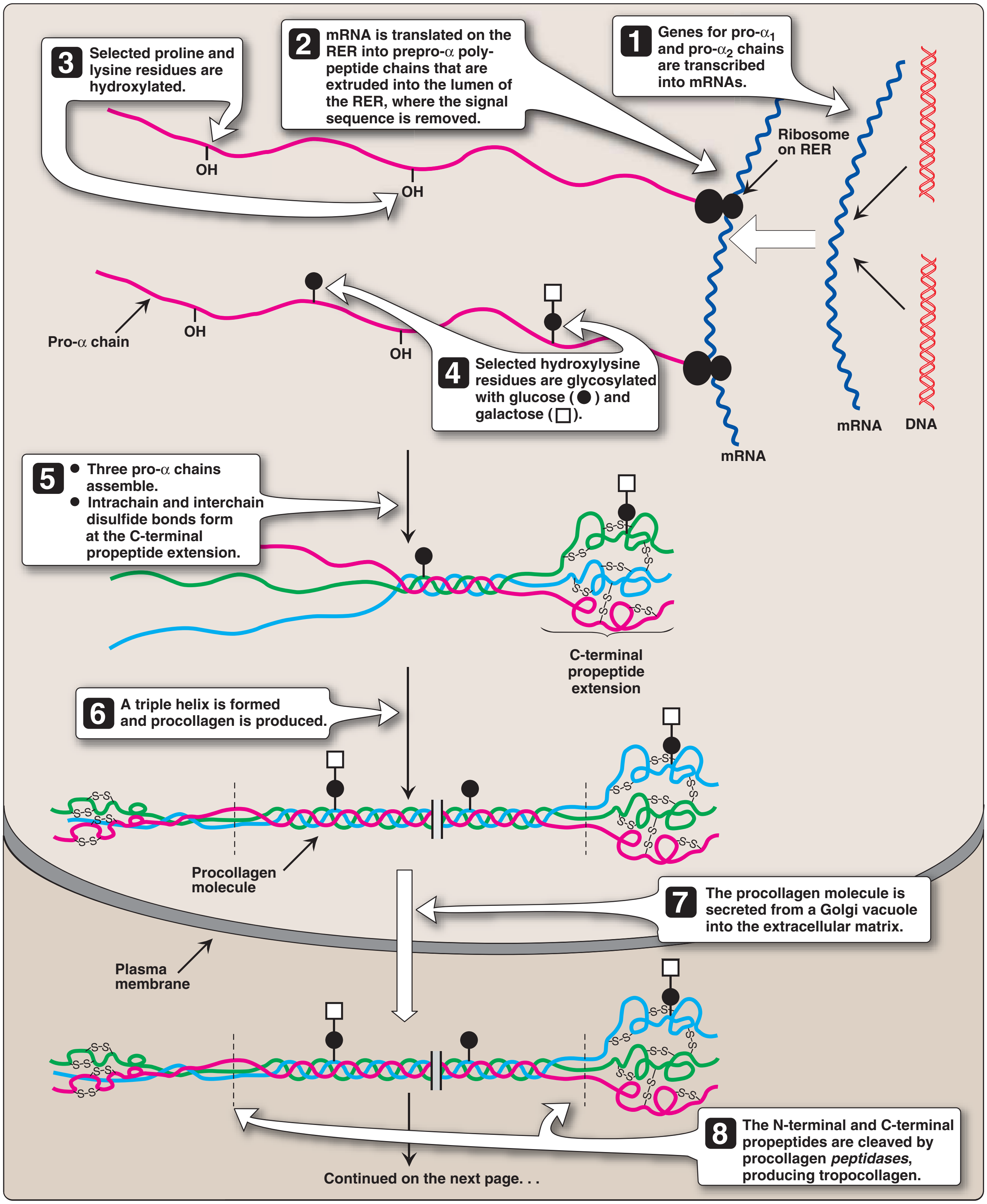
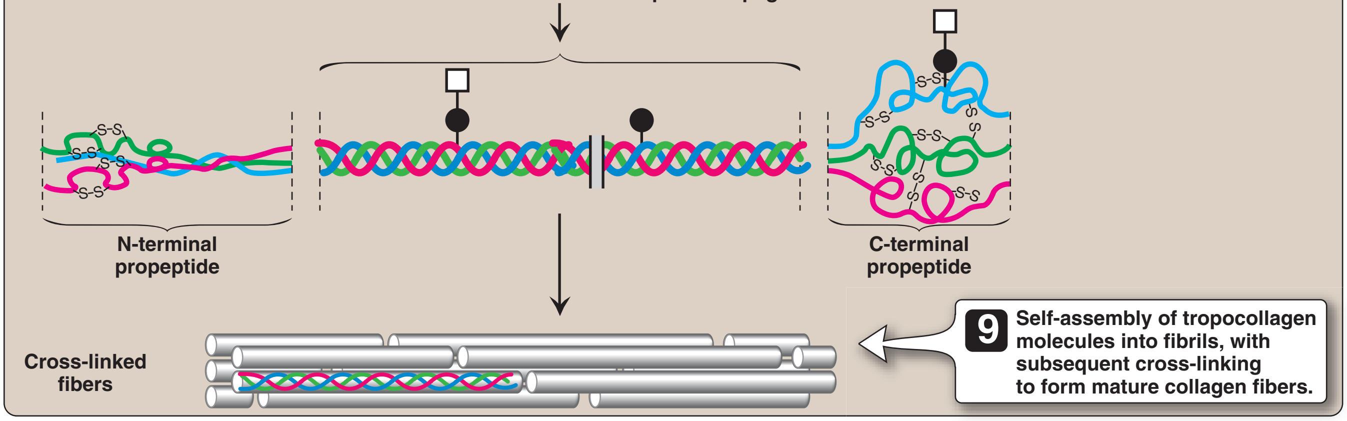

1 Genes for pro-α1 and pro-α2 chains are transcribed into mRNAs.
2 mRNA is translated on the RER into prepro-α polypeptide chains that are extruded into the lumen of the RER, where the signal sequence is removed.
3 Selected proline and lysine residues are hydroxylated.
OH
OH
Ribosome on RER
Pro-α chain
OH
OH
4 Selected hydroxylysine residues are glycosylated with glucose (●) and galactose (□).
mRNA
mRNA
DNA
5 ● Three pro-α chains assemble.
● Intrachain and interchain disulfide bonds form at the C-terminal propeptide extension.
S-S
C-terminal propeptide extension
6 A triple helix is formed and procollagen is produced.
Procollagen molecule
7 The procollagen molecule is secreted from a Golgi vacuole into the extracellular matrix.
Plasma membrane
8 The N-terminal and C-terminal propeptides are cleaved by procollagen *peptidases*, producing tropocollagen.
Continued on the next page. . .

Figure 4.7
Synthesis of collagen. RER = rough endoplasmic reticulum. (*Continued on the next page*)

...Continued from the previous page



9 Self-assembly of tropocollagen molecules into fibrils, with subsequent cross-linking to form mature collagen fibers.

Figure 4.7
Synthesis of collagen. (*Continued from the previous page*)

2. **Hydroxylation:** The pro-α chains are processed by a number of enzymic steps within the lumen of the RER while the polypeptides are still being synthesized (see Figure 4.7). Proline and lysine residues found in the Y-position of the –Gly–X–Y– sequence can be hydroxylated to form hydroxyproline and hydroxylysine residues. These hydroxylation reactions require molecular oxygen, Fe^{2+}, and the reducing agent vitamin C (ascorbic acid, see p. 377), without which the hydroxylating enzymes, *prolyl hydroxylase* and *lysyl hydroxylase*, are unable to function (see Figure 4.6). In the case of ascorbic acid deficiency (and, therefore, a lack of prolyl and lysyl hydroxylation), interchain H-bond formation is impaired, as is formation of a stable triple helix. Additionally, collagen fibrils cannot be cross-linked (see below), greatly decreasing the tensile strength of the assembled fiber. The resulting deficiency disease is known as scurvy. Patients with ascorbic acid deficiency also often show bruises on the limbs as a result of subcutaneous extravasation of blood due to capillary fragility (Figure 4.8).

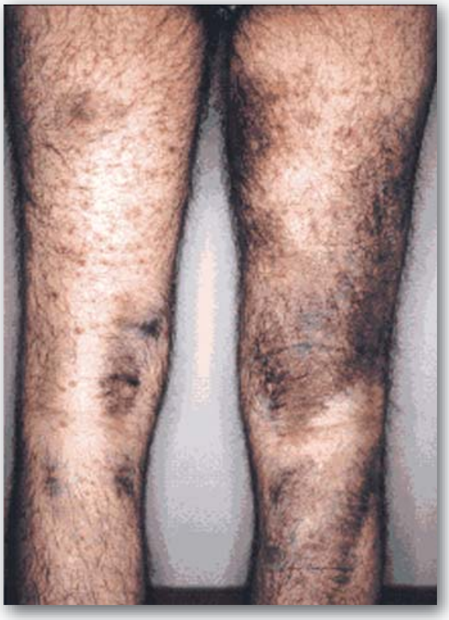


Figure 4.8
The legs of a 46-year-old man with scurvy.

3. **Glycosylation:** Some hydroxylysine residues are modified by glycosylation with glucose or glucosyl-galactose (see Figure 4.7).

4. **Assembly and secretion:** After hydroxylation and glycosylation, pro-α chains form procollagen, a precursor of collagen that has a central region of triple helix flanked by the nonhelical amino- and carboxyl-terminal extensions called propeptides (see Figure 4.7). The formation of procollagen begins with formation of interchain disulfide bonds between the C-terminal extensions of the pro-α chains. This brings the three α chains into an alignment favorable for helix formation. The procollagen molecules move through the Golgi apparatus, where they are packaged in secretory vesicles. The vesicles fuse with the cell membrane, causing the release of procollagen molecules into the extracellular space.

5. **Extracellular cleavage of procollagen molecules:** After their release, the procollagen molecules are cleaved by *N-* and *C-procollagen peptidases,* which remove the terminal propeptides, releasing triple-helical tropocollagen molecules.

6. **Formation of collagen fibrils:** Individual tropocollagen molecules spontaneously associate to form collagen fibrils. They form an ordered, overlapping, parallel array, with adjacent collagen molecules arranged in a staggered pattern, each overlapping its neighbor by a length approximately three-quarters of a molecule (see Figure 4.7).

7. **Cross-link formation:** The fibrillar array of collagen molecules serves as a substrate for *lysyl oxidase*. This Cu^{2+}-containing extracellular enzyme oxidatively deaminates some of the lysyl and hydroxylysyl residues in collagen. The reactive aldehydes that result (allysine and hydroxyallysine) can condense with lysyl or hydroxylysyl residues in neighboring collagen molecules to form covalent cross-links and, thus, mature collagen fibers (Figure 4.9).

> *Lysyl oxidase* is one of several copper-containing enzymes. Others include *cytochrome oxidase* (see p. 76), *dopamine hydroxylase* (see p. 286), *superoxide dismutase* (see p.148) and *tyrosinase* (see p. 273). Disruption in copper homeostasis causes copper deficiency (X-linked Menkes disease) or overload (Wilson disease).

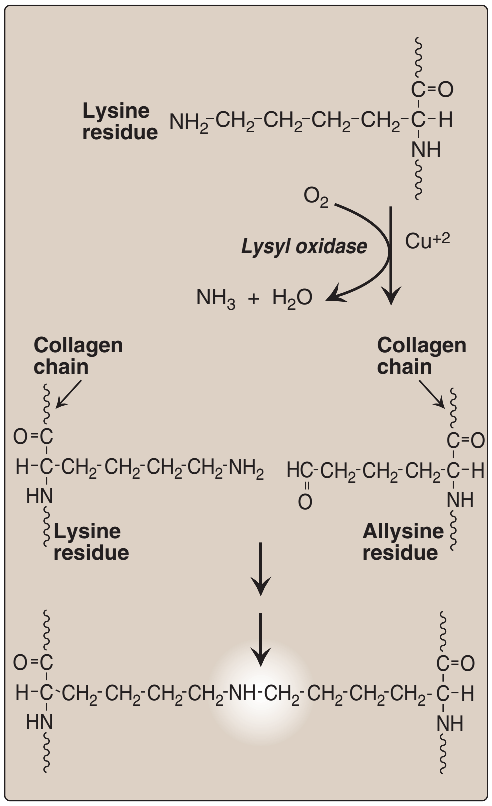

Lysine residue
NH_2-CH_2-CH_2-CH_2-CH_2-C-H
C=O
NH
O_2
Lysyl oxidase
Cu^{+2}
NH_3 + H_2O
Collagen chain
Collagen chain
O=C
H-C-CH_2-CH_2-CH_2-CH_2-NH_2
HN
Lysine residue
HC-CH_2-CH_2-CH_2-C-H
O
C=O
NH
Allysine residue
O=C
H-C-CH_2-CH_2-CH_2-CH_2-NH-CH_2-CH_2-CH_2-CH_2-C-H
HN
C=O
NH

Figure 4.9
Formation of cross-links in collagen.

D. Degradation of collagen

Normal collagens are highly stable molecules, having half-lives as long as several years. However, connective tissue is dynamic and is constantly being remodeled, often in response to growth or injury of the tissue. Breakdown of collagen fibers is dependent on the proteolytic action of *collagenases*, which are part of a large family of matrix *metalloproteinases*. For type I collagen, the cleavage site is specific, generating three-quarter and one-quarter length fragments. These fragments are further degraded by other matrix *proteinases* to their constituent amino acids.

E. Collagen diseases: Collagenopathies

Defects in any one of the many steps in collagen fiber synthesis can result in a genetic disease involving an inability of collagen to form fibers properly and, thus, provide tissues with the needed tensile strength normally provided by collagen. More than 1,000 mutations have been identified in 22 genes coding for 12 of the collagen types. The following are examples of diseases that are the result of defective collagen synthesis.

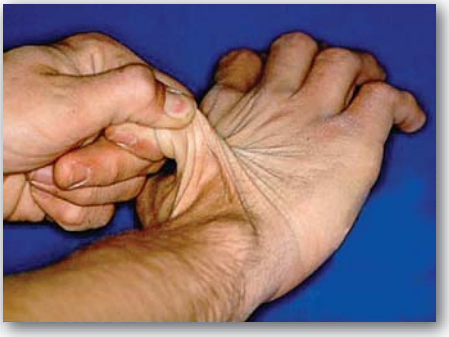


Figure 4.10
Stretchy skin of Ehlers-Danlos syndrome.

1. **Ehlers-Danlos syndrome (EDS):** This disorder is a heterogeneous group of generalized connective tissue disorders that result from inheritable defects in the metabolism of fibrillar collagen molecules. EDS can result from a deficiency of collagen-processing enzymes (for example, *lysyl hydroxylase* or *procollagen peptidase*), or from mutations in the amino acid sequences of collagen types I, III, or V. The most clinically important mutations are found in the gene for type III collagen. Collagen containing mutant chains is not secreted, and is either degraded or accumulated to high levels in intracellular compartments. Because collagen type III is an important component of the arteries, potentially lethal vascular problems

occur. [Note: Although collagen type III is only a minor component of the collagen fibrils in the skin, patients with EDS also show, for unknown reasons, defects in collagen type I fibrils. This results in fragile, stretchy skin and loose joints (Figure 4.10).]

2. Osteogenesis imperfecta (OI): This disease, known as brittle bone syndrome, is also a heterogeneous group of inherited disorders distinguished by bones that easily bend and fracture (Figure 4.11). Retarded wound healing and a rotated and twisted spine leading to a “humped-back” (kyphotic) appearance are common features of the disease. Type I OI is called osteogenesis imperfecta tarda. The disease is the consequence of decreased production of α1 and α2 chains. It presents in early infancy with fractures secondary to minor trauma, and may be suspected if prenatal ultrasound detects bowing or fractures of long bones. Type II OI is called osteogenesis imperfecta congenita, and is the most severe. Patients die of pulmonary hypoplasia in utero or during the neonatal period. Most patients with severe OI have mutations in the gene for either the pro-α1 or pro-α2 chains of type I collagen. The most common mutations cause the replacement of glycine residues (in –Gly–X–Y–) by amino acids with bulky side chains. The resultant structurally abnormal pro-α chains prevent the formation of the required triple-helical conformation.

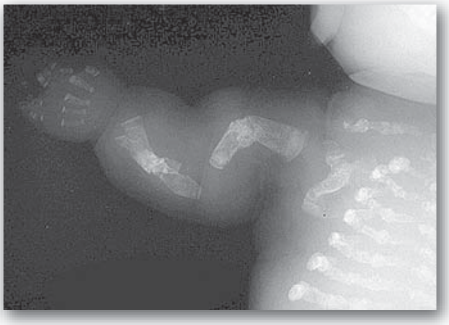


Figure 4.11
Lethal form (type II) of osteogenesis imperfecta in which the fractures appear in utero, as revealed by this radiograph of a stillborn fetus.

III. ELASTIN

In contrast to collagen, which forms fibers that are tough and have high tensile strength, elastin is a connective tissue protein with rubber-like properties. Elastic fibers composed of elastin and glycoprotein microfibrils are found in the lungs, the walls of large arteries, and elastic ligaments. They can be stretched to several times their normal length, but recoil to their original shape when the stretching force is relaxed.

A. Structure of elastin

Elastin is an insoluble protein polymer synthesized from a precursor, tropoelastin, which is a linear polypeptide composed of about 700 amino acids that are primarily small and nonpolar (for example, glycine, alanine, and valine). Elastin is also rich in proline and lysine, but contains only a little hydroxyproline and hydroxylysine. Tropoelastin is secreted by the cell into the extracellular space. There it interacts with specific glycoprotein microfibrils, such as fibrillin, which function as a scaffold onto which tropoelastin is deposited. Some of the lysyl side chains of the tropoelastin polypeptides are oxidatively deaminated by *lysyl oxidase*, forming allysine residues. Three of the allysyl side chains plus one unaltered lysyl side chain from the same or neighboring polypeptides form a desmosine cross-link (Figure 4.12). This produces elastin—an extensively interconnected, rubbery network that can stretch and bend in any direction when stressed, giving connective tissue elasticity (Figure 4.13). Mutations in the fibrillin-1 protein are responsible for Marfan syndrome—a connective tissue disorder characterized by impaired structural integrity in the skeleton, the eye, and the cardiovascular system. With this disease, abnormal fibrillin protein is incorporated into microfibrils along with normal fibrillin, inhibiting the formation of functional microfibrils. [Note: Patients with OI, EDS, or Marfan syndrome may have blue sclera due to tissue thinning that allows underlying pigment to show through.]

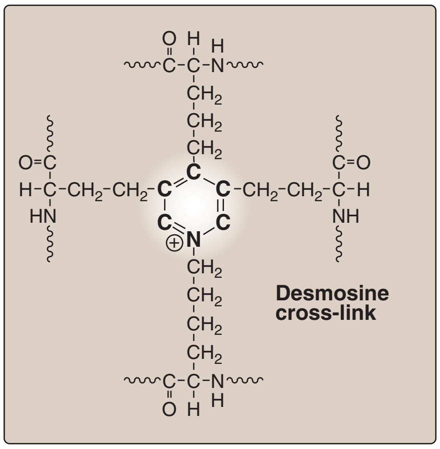


Figure 4.12
Desmosine cross-link in elastin.

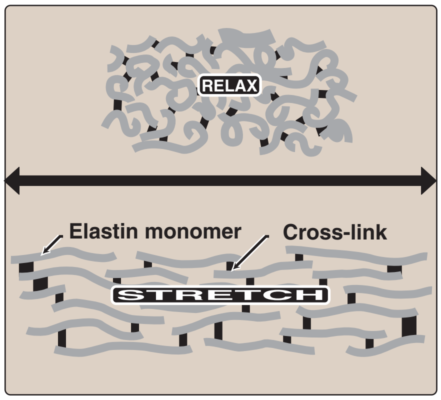


Figure 4.13
Elastin fibers in relaxed and stretched conformations.

B. Role of α_1-antitrypsin in elastin degradation

1. **α_1-Antitrypsin:** Blood and other body fluids contain a protein, α_1-antitrypsin (α_1-AT, A1AT, currently also called α_1-antiproteinase), that inhibits a number of proteolytic enzymes (also called *proteases* or *proteinases*) that hydrolyze and destroy proteins. [Note: The inhibitor was originally named α_1-antitrypsin because it inhibits the activity of *trypsin* (a proteolytic enzyme synthesized as trypsinogen by the pancreas, see p. 248.] α_1-AT comprises more than 90% of the α_1-globulin fraction of normal plasma. α_1-AT has the important physiologic role of inhibiting neutrophil *elastase*—a powerful *protease* that is released into the extracellular space, and degrades elastin of alveolar walls, as well as other structural proteins in a variety of tissues (Figure 4.14). Most of the α_1-AT found in plasma is synthesized and secreted by the liver. The remainder is synthesized by several tissues, including monocytes and alveolar macrophages, which may be important in the prevention of local tissue injury by *elastase*.

2. **Role of α_1-AT in the lungs:** In the normal lung, the alveoli are chronically exposed to low levels of neutrophil *elastase* released from activated and degenerating neutrophils. This proteolytic activity can destroy the elastin in alveolar walls if unopposed by the action of α_1-AT, the most important inhibitor of neutrophil *elastase* (see Figure 4.14). Because lung tissue cannot regenerate, emphysema results from the destruction of the connective tissue of alveolar walls.

3. **Emphysema resulting from α_1-AT deficiency:** In the United States, approximately 2–5% of patients with emphysema are predisposed to the disease by inherited defects in α_1-AT. A number of different mutations in the gene for α_1-AT are known to cause a deficiency of this protein, but one single purine base mutation (GAG → AAG, resulting in the substitution of lysine for glutamic acid at position 342 of the protein) is clinically the most widespread. The polymerization of the mutated protein in the endoplasmic reticulum of hepatocytes causes decreased secretion of α_1-AT by the liver. The accumulated polymer may result in cirrhosis (scarring of the liver). In the United States, the α_1-AT mutation is most common in Caucasians of Northern European ancestry. An individual must inherit two abnormal α_1-AT alleles to be at risk for the development of emphysema. In a heterozygote, with one normal and one defective gene, the levels of α_1-AT are sufficient to protect the alveoli from damage. [Note: A specific α_1-AT methionine is required for the binding of the inhibitor to its target *proteases*. Smoking causes the oxidation and subsequent inactivation of that methionine residue, thereby rendering the inhibitor powerless to neutralize *elastase*. Smokers with α_1-AT deficiency, therefore, have a considerably elevated rate of lung destruction and a poorer survival rate than nonsmokers with the deficiency.] The deficiency of *elastase* inhibitor can be reversed by augmentation therapy—weekly intravenous administration of α_1-AT. The α_1-AT diffuses from the blood into the lung, where it reaches therapeutic levels in the fluid surrounding the lung epithelial cells.

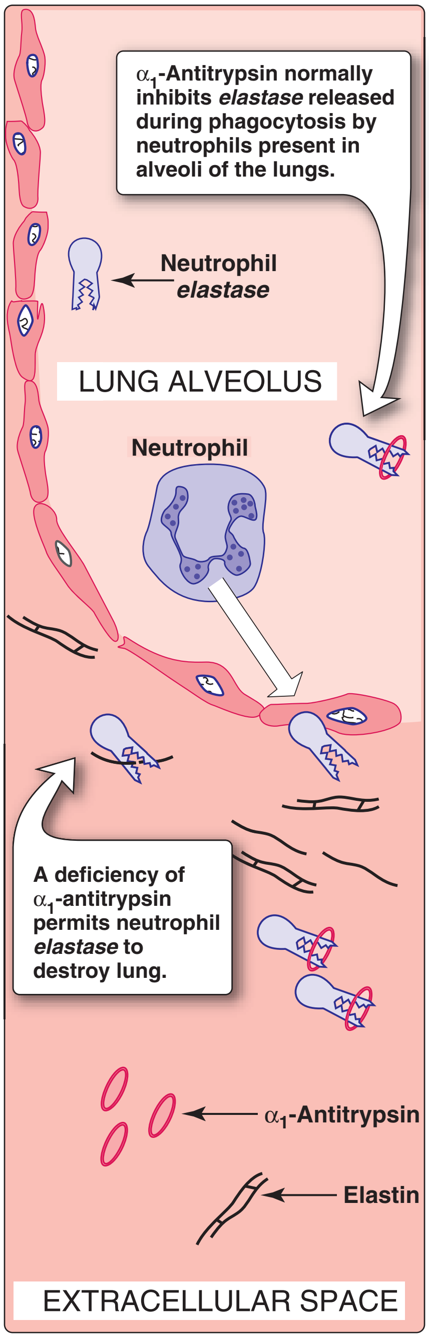

α1-Antitrypsin normally inhibits elastase released during phagocytosis by neutrophils present in alveoli of the lungs.
Neutrophil elastase
LUNG ALVEOLUS
Neutrophil
A deficiency of α1-antitrypsin permits neutrophil elastase to destroy lung.
α1-Antitrypsin
Elastin
EXTRACELLULAR SPACE

Figure 4.14
Destruction of alveolar tissue by *elastase* released from neutrophils activated as part of the immune response to airborne pathogens.

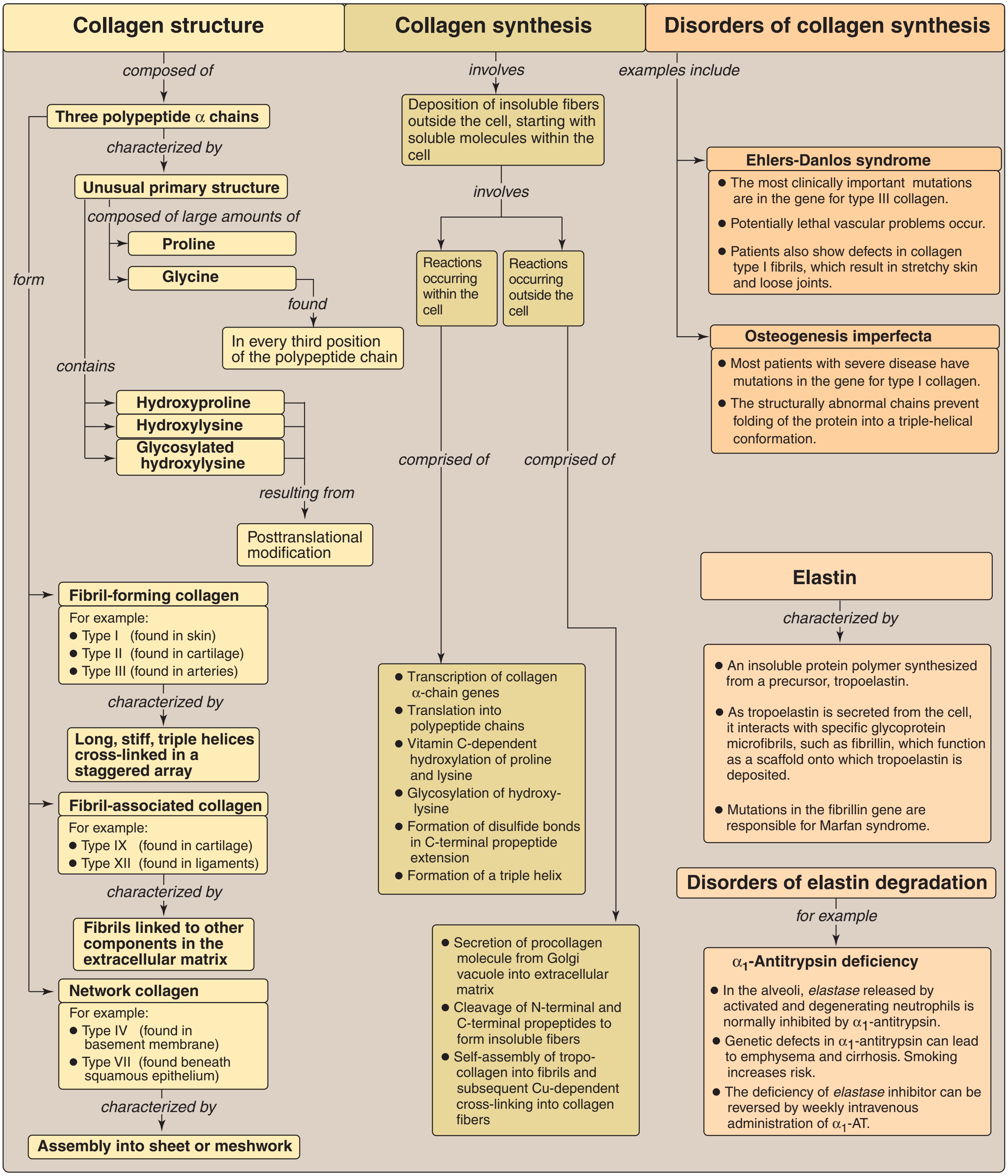

Collagen structure
composed of
Three polypeptide α chains
characterized by
Unusual primary structure
composed of large amounts of
Proline
Glycine
found
In every third position of the polypeptide chain
form
contains
Hydroxyproline
Hydroxylysine
Glycosylated hydroxylysine
resulting from
Posttranslational modification
Fibril-forming collagen
For example:
● Type I (found in skin)
● Type II (found in cartilage)
● Type III (found in arteries)
characterized by
Long, stiff, triple helices cross-linked in a staggered array
Fibril-associated collagen
For example:
● Type IX (found in cartilage)
● Type XII (found in ligaments)
characterized by
Fibrils linked to other components in the extracellular matrix
Network collagen
For example:
● Type IV (found in basement membrane)
● Type VII (found beneath squamous epithelium)
characterized by
Assembly into sheet or meshwork
Collagen synthesis
involves
Deposition of insoluble fibers outside the cell, starting with soluble molecules within the cell
involves
Reactions occurring within the cell
Reactions occurring outside the cell
comprised of
comprised of
● Transcription of collagen α-chain genes
● Translation into polypeptide chains
● Vitamin C-dependent hydroxylation of proline and lysine
● Glycosylation of hydroxylysine
● Formation of disulfide bonds in C-terminal propeptide extension
● Formation of a triple helix
● Secretion of procollagen molecule from Golgi vacuole into extracellular matrix
● Cleavage of N-terminal and C-terminal propeptides to form insoluble fibers
● Self-assembly of tropocollagen into fibrils and subsequent Cu-dependent cross-linking into collagen fibers
Disorders of collagen synthesis
examples include
Ehlers-Danlos syndrome
● The most clinically important mutations are in the gene for type III collagen.
● Potentially lethal vascular problems occur.
● Patients also show defects in collagen type I fibrils, which result in stretchy skin and loose joints.
Osteogenesis imperfecta
● Most patients with severe disease have mutations in the gene for type I collagen.
● The structurally abnormal chains prevent folding of the protein into a triple-helical conformation.
Elastin
characterized by
● An insoluble protein polymer synthesized from a precursor, tropoelastin.
● As tropoelastin is secreted from the cell, it interacts with specific glycoprotein microfibrils, such as fibrillin, which function as a scaffold onto which tropoelastin is deposited.
● Mutations in the fibrillin gene are responsible for Marfan syndrome.
Disorders of elastin degradation
for example
α_1-Antitrypsin deficiency
● In the alveoli, *elastase* released by activated and degenerating neutrophils is normally inhibited by α_1-antitrypsin.
● Genetic defects in α_1-antitrypsin can lead to emphysema and cirrhosis. Smoking increases risk.
● The deficiency of *elastase* inhibitor can be reversed by weekly intravenous administration of α_1-AT.

Figure 4.15
Key concept map for the fibrous proteins, collagen and elastin.

IV. CHAPTER SUMMARY

Collagen and elastin are fibrous proteins (Figure 4.15). Collagen molecules contain an abundance of **proline**, **lysine**, and **glycine**, the latter occurring at every third position in the primary structure. Collagen also contains **hydroxyproline**, **hydroxylysine**, and **glycosylated hydroxylysine**, each formed by posttranslational modification. Collagen molecules typically form **fibrils** containing a long, stiff, triple-stranded helical structure, in which three collagen polypeptide chains are wound around one another in a rope-like superhelix (**triple helix**). Other types of collagen form mesh-like networks. **Elastin** is a connective tissue protein with rubber-like properties in tissues such as the lung. **α1-Antitrypsin** (α_1-AT), produced primarily by the liver but also by tissues such as monocytes and alveolar macrophages, prevents elastin degradation in the alveolar walls. A deficiency of α_1-AT can cause **emphysema** and, in some cases, cirrhosis of the liver.

Study Questions

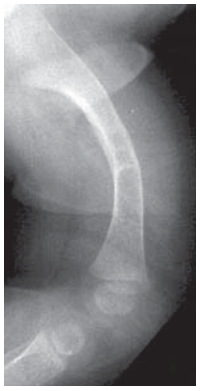
Choose the ONE best answer.

4.1 A 30-year-old woman presented with progressive shortness of breath. She denied the use of cigarettes. A family history revealed that her sister had suffered from unexplained lung disease. Which one of the following etiologies most likely explains this patient's pulmonary symptoms?

A. Deficiency of proline hydroxylase
B. Deficiency of α_1-antitrypsin
C. Deficiency in dietary vitamin C
D Decreased elastase activity
E. Increased collagenase activity

Correct answer = B. α_1-Antitrypsin deficiency is a genetic disorder that can cause pulmonary emphysema even in the absence of cigarette use. A deficiency of α_1-antitrypsin permits increased elastase activity to destroy elastin in the alveolar walls, even in nonsmokers. α_1-Antitrypsin deficiency should be suspected when chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) develops in a patient younger than 45 years who does not have a history of chronic bronchitis or tobacco use, or when multiple family members develop obstructive lung disease at an early age. Choices A, C, and E refer to collagen, not elastin.

4.2 A seven-month-old child "fell over" while crawling, and now presents with a swollen leg. At age 1 month, the infant had multiple fractures in various states of healing (right clavicle, right humerus, right radius). At age 7 months, the infant has a fracture of a bowed femur, secondary to minor trauma (see x-ray at right). The bones are thin, have few trabecula, and have thin cortices. A careful family history ruled out nonaccidental trauma (child abuse) as a cause of the bone fractures. The child is most likely to have a defect in:



A. type I collagen.
B. type III collagen.
C. type IV collagen.
D. elastin.
E. fibrillin.

Correct answer = A. The child most likely has osteogenesis imperfecta. Most cases arise from a defect in the genes encoding type I collagen. Bones in affected patients are thin, osteoporotic, often bowed with a thin cortex and deficient trabeculae, and extremely prone to fracture. This patient is affected with type I, osteogenesis imperfecta tarda. The disease presents in early infancy with fractures secondary to minor trauma. The disease may be suspected on prenatal ultrasound through detection of bowing or fractures of long bones. Type II, osteogenesis imperfecta congenita, is more severe, and patients die of pulmonary hypoplasia in utero or during the neonatal period. Defects in type III collagen are the most common cause of Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, characterized by lethal vascular problems and stretchy skin. Type IV collagen forms networks, not fibrils.

4.3 What is the differential basis of the liver and lung pathology seen in α_1-AT deficiency?

With α_1-AT deficiency, the liver cirrhosis that can result is due to polymerization and retention of α_1-AT in the liver, its site of synthesis. The lung pathology is due to this retention-based deficiency in α_1-AT (a serin protease inhibitor or serpin) such that elastase (a serine protease) is unopposed.

Enzymes

5

I. OVERVIEW

Virtually all reactions in the body are mediated by enzymes, which are protein catalysts that increase the rate of reactions without being changed in the overall process. Among the many biologic reactions that are energetically possible, enzymes selectively channel reactants (called substrates) into useful pathways. Enzymes thus direct all metabolic events. This chapter examines the nature of these catalytic molecules and their mechanism of action.

II. NOMENCLATURE

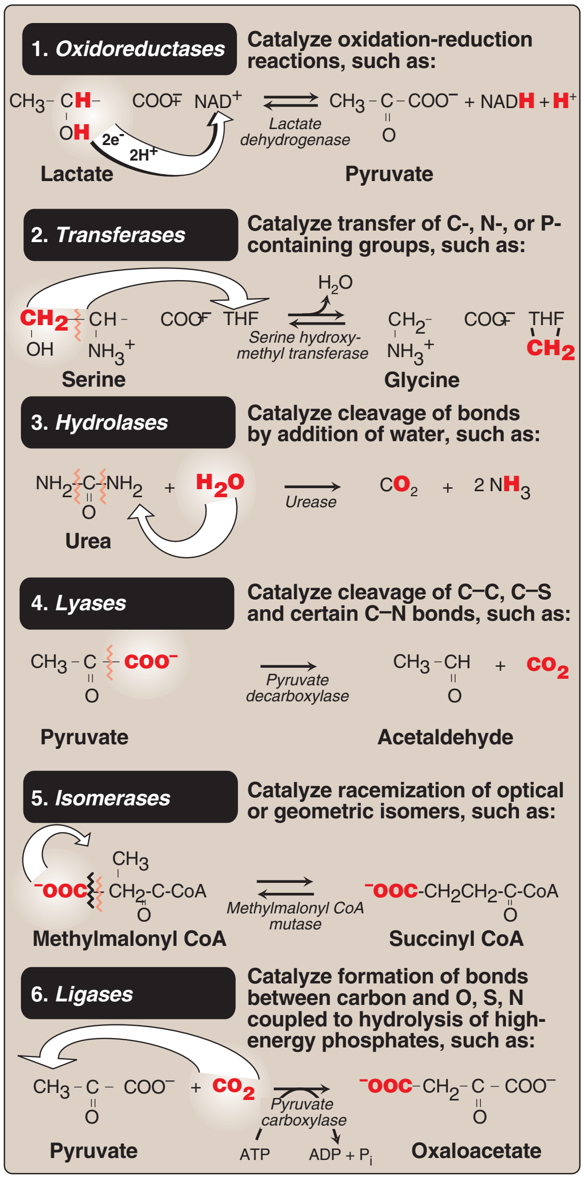
Each enzyme is assigned two names. The first is its short, recommended name, convenient for everyday use. The second is the more complete systematic name, which is used when an enzyme must be identified without ambiguity.

A. Recommended name

Most commonly used enzyme names have the suffix "*-ase*" attached to the substrate of the reaction (for example, *glucosidase* and *urease*), or to a description of the action performed (for example, *lactate dehydrogenase* and *adenylyl cyclase*). [Note: Some enzymes retain their original trivial names, which give no hint of the associated enzymic reaction, for example, *trypsin* and *pepsin*.]

B. Systematic name

In the systematic naming system, enzymes are divided into six major classes (Figure 5.1), each with numerous subgroups. For a given enzyme, the suffix *-ase* is attached to a fairly complete description of the chemical reaction catalyzed, including the names of all the substrates; for example, *lactate:NAD$^+$ oxidoreductase*. [Note: Each enzyme is also assigned a classification number.] The systematic names are unambiguous and informative, but are frequently too cumbersome to be of general use.



1. Oxidoreductases
Catalyze oxidation-reduction reactions, such as:
CH3–CH–COO⁻ NAD+
OH
2e⁻
2H+
Lactate dehydrogenase
CH3–C–COO⁻ + NADH + H+
O
Lactate
Pyruvate
2. Transferases
Catalyze transfer of C-, N-, or P-containing groups, such as:
CH2–CH–COO⁻ THF
OH NH3+
H2O
Serine hydroxymethyl transferase
CH2–COO⁻ THF
NH3+ CH2
Serine
Glycine
3. Hydrolases
Catalyze cleavage of bonds by addition of water, such as:
NH2–C–NH2 + H2O
O
Urease
CO2 + 2 NH3
Urea
4. Lyases
Catalyze cleavage of C–C, C–S and certain C–N bonds, such as:
CH3–C–COO⁻
O
Pyruvate decarboxylase
CH3–CH + CO2
O
Pyruvate
Acetaldehyde
5. Isomerases
Catalyze racemization of optical or geometric isomers, such as:
CH3
⁻OOC–CH–C-CoA
O
Methylmalonyl CoA mutase
⁻OOC-CH2CH2-C-CoA
O
Methylmalonyl CoA
Succinyl CoA
6. Ligases
Catalyze formation of bonds between carbon and O, S, N coupled to hydrolysis of high-energy phosphates, such as:
CH3–C–COO⁻ + CO2
O
Pyruvate carboxylase
ATP
ADP + Pi
⁻OOC–CH2–C–COO⁻
O
Pyruvate
Oxaloacetate

Figure 5.1
The six major classes of enzymes with examples. THF = tetrahydrofolate.

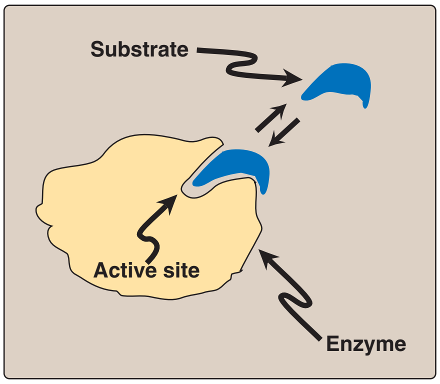


Figure 5.2
Schematic representation of an enzyme with one active site binding a substrate molecule.

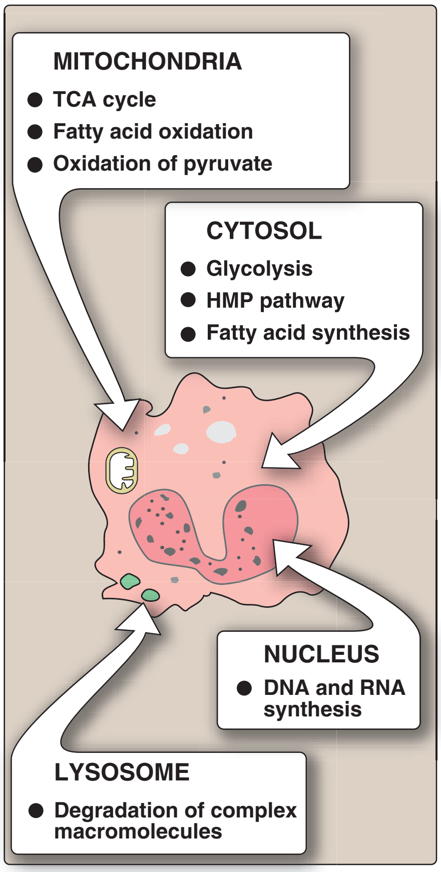


Figure 5.3
The intracellular location of some important biochemical pathways.

> Potentially confusing enzyme nomenclature: *synthetase* (requires ATP), *synthase* (no ATP required); *phosphatase* (uses water to remove phosphoryl group), *phosphorylase* (uses P_i to break a bond and generate a phosphorylated product); *dehydrogenase* (NAD^+/FAD is electron acceptor in redox reaction), *oxidase* (O_2 is acceptor but oxygen atoms are not incorporated into substrate), *oxygenase* (one or both oxygens atoms are incorporated).

III. PROPERTIES OF ENZYMES

Enzymes are protein catalysts that increase the velocity of a chemical reaction, and are not consumed during the reaction. [Note: Some RNAs can act like enzymes, usually catalyzing the cleavage and synthesis of phosphodiester bonds. RNAs with catalytic activity are called ribozymes (see p. 439), and are much less commonly encountered than protein catalysts.]

A. Active sites

Enzyme molecules contain a special pocket or cleft called the active site. The active site contains amino acid side chains that participate in substrate binding and catalysis (Figure 5.2). The substrate binds the enzyme, forming an enzyme–substrate (ES) complex. Binding is thought to cause a conformational change in the enzyme (induced fit) that allows catalysis. ES is converted to an enzyme–product (EP) complex that subsequently dissociates to enzyme and product.

B. Catalytic efficiency

Enzyme-catalyzed reactions are highly efficient, proceeding from 10^3–10^8 times faster than uncatalyzed reactions. The number of molecules of substrate converted to product per enzyme molecule per second is called the turnover number, or k_{cat} and typically is 10^2–$10^4 s^{-1}$.

C. Specificity

Enzymes are highly specific, interacting with one or a few substrates and catalyzing only one type of chemical reaction. [Note: The set of enzymes made in a cell determines which metabolic pathways occur in that cell.]

D. Holoenzymes

Some enzymes require molecules other than proteins for enzymic activity. The term holoenzyme refers to the active enzyme with its nonprotein component, whereas the enzyme without its nonprotein moiety is termed an apoenzyme and is inactive. If the nonprotein moiety is a metal ion such as Zn^{2+} or Fe^{2+}, it is called a cofactor. If it is a small organic molecule, it is termed a coenzyme. Coenzymes that only transiently associate with the enzyme are called cosubstrates. Cosubstrates dissociate from the enzyme in an altered state (NAD^+ is an example, see p. 101). If the coenzyme is permanently associated with the enzyme and returned to its original form, it is called a prosthetic group (FAD is an example, see p. 110). Coenzymes frequently are derived from vitamins. For example, NAD^+ contains niacin and FAD contains riboflavin (see Chapter 28).

E. Regulation

Enzyme activity can be regulated, that is, increased or decreased, so that the rate of product formation responds to cellular need.

F. Location within the cell

Many enzymes are localized in specific organelles within the cell (Figure 5.3). Such compartmentalization serves to isolate the reaction substrate or product from other competing reactions. This provides a favorable environment for the reaction, and organizes the thousands of enzymes present in the cell into purposeful pathways.

IV. HOW ENZYMES WORK

The mechanism of enzyme action can be viewed from two different perspectives. The first treats catalysis in terms of energy changes that occur during the reaction, that is, enzymes provide an alternate, energetically favorable reaction pathway different from the uncatalyzed reaction. The second perspective describes how the active site chemically facilitates catalysis.

A. Energy changes occurring during the reaction

Virtually all chemical reactions have an energy barrier separating the reactants and the products. This barrier, called the free energy of activation, is the energy difference between that of the reactants and a high-energy intermediate that occurs during the formation of product. For example, Figure 5.4 shows the changes in energy during the conversion of a molecule of reactant A to product B as it proceeds through the transition state (high-energy intermediate), T*:

$$A \rightleftarrows T^* \rightleftarrows B$$

1. **Free energy of activation:** The peak of energy in Figure 5.4 is the difference in free energy between the reactant and T*, where the high-energy intermediate is formed during the conversion of reactant to product. Because of the high free energy of activation, the rates of uncatalyzed chemical reactions are often slow.

2. **Rate of reaction:** For molecules to react, they must contain sufficient energy to overcome the energy barrier of the transition state. In the absence of an enzyme, only a small proportion of a population of molecules may possess enough energy to achieve the transition state between reactant and product. The rate of reaction is determined by the number of such energized molecules. In general, the lower the free energy of activation, the more molecules have sufficient energy to pass through the transition state, and, thus, the faster the rate of the reaction.

3. **Alternate reaction pathway:** An enzyme allows a reaction to proceed rapidly under conditions prevailing in the cell by providing an alternate reaction pathway with a lower free energy of activation (Figure 5.4). The enzyme does not change the free energies of the reactants or products and, therefore, does not change the equilibrium of the reaction (see p. 71). It does, however, accelerate the rate with which equilibrium is reached.

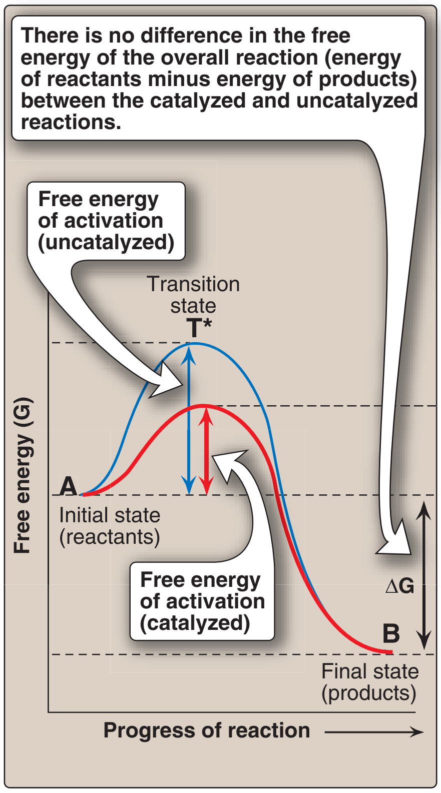


Figure 5.4
Effect of an enzyme on the activation energy of a reaction.

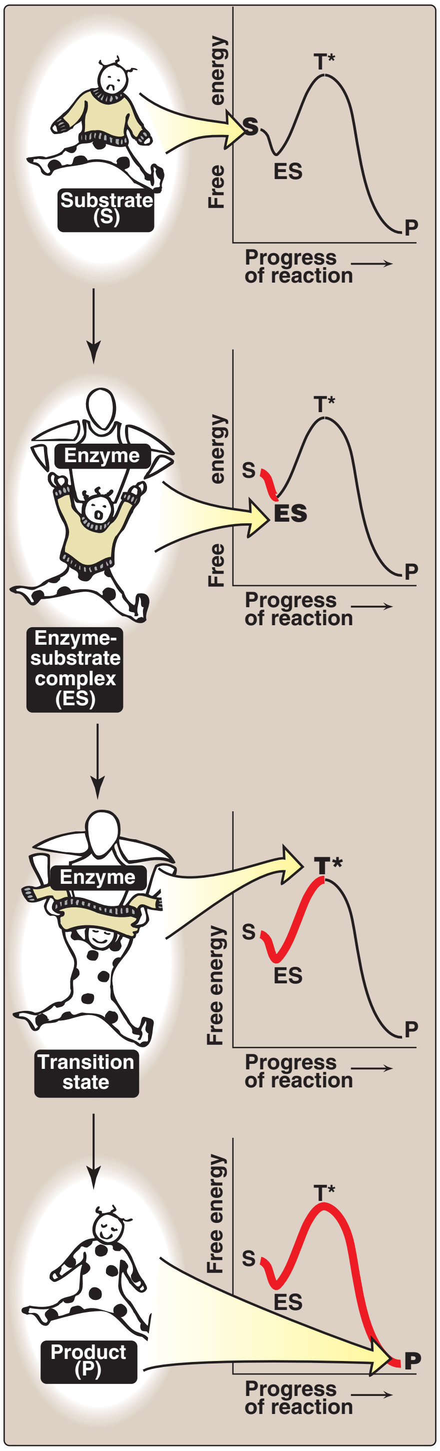


Figure 5.5
Schematic representation of energy changes accompanying formation of an enzyme–substrate complex and subsequent formation of a transition state.

B. Chemistry of the active site

The active site is not a passive receptacle for binding the substrate, but rather is a complex molecular machine employing a diversity of chemical mechanisms to facilitate the conversion of substrate to product. A number of factors are responsible for the catalytic efficiency of enzymes, including the following:

1. **Transition-state stabilization:** The active site often acts as a flexible molecular template that binds the substrate and initiates its conversion to the transition state, a structure in which the bonds are not like those in the substrate or the product (see T^* at the top of the curve in Figure 5.4). By stabilizing the transition state, the enzyme greatly increases the concentration of the reactive intermediate that can be converted to product and, thus, accelerates the reaction.

2. **Other mechanisms:** The active site can provide catalytic groups that enhance the probability that the transition state is formed. In some enzymes, these groups can participate in general acid-base catalysis in which amino acid residues provide or accept protons. In other enzymes, catalysis may involve the transient formation of a covalent ES complex. [Note: The mechanism of action of *chymotrypsin*, an enzyme of protein digestion in the intestine, includes general base, general acid, and covalent catalysis. A histidine at the active site of the enzyme gains (general base) and loses (general acid) protons, mediated by the pK of histidine in proteins being close to physiologic pH. Serine at the active site forms a covalent link with the substrate.]

3. **Visualization of the transition state:** The enzyme-catalyzed conversion of substrate to product can be visualized as being similar to removing a sweater from an uncooperative infant (Figure 5.5). The process has a high energy of activation because the only reasonable strategy for removing the garment (short of ripping it off) requires that the random flailing of the baby results in both arms being fully extended over the head—an unlikely posture. However, we can envision a parent acting as an enzyme, first coming in contact with the baby (forming ES), then guiding the baby's arms into an extended, vertical position, analogous to the ES transition state. This posture (conformation) of the baby facilitates the removal of the sweater, forming the disrobed baby, which here represents product. [Note: The substrate bound to the enzyme (ES) is at a slightly lower energy than unbound substrate (S) and explains the small "dip" in the curve at ES.]

V. FACTORS AFFECTING REACTION VELOCITY

Enzymes can be isolated from cells, and their properties studied in a test tube (that is, in vitro). Different enzymes show different responses to changes in substrate concentration, temperature, and pH. This section describes factors that influence the reaction velocity of enzymes. Enzymic responses to these factors give us valuable clues as to how enzymes function in living cells (that is, in vivo).

A. Substrate concentration

1. **Maximal velocity:** The rate or velocity of a reaction (v) is the number of substrate molecules converted to product per unit time; velocity is usually expressed as µmol of product formed per minute. The rate of an enzyme-catalyzed reaction increases with substrate concentration until a maximal velocity (V_{max}) is reached (Figure 5.6). The leveling off of the reaction rate at high substrate concentrations reflects the saturation with substrate of all available binding sites on the enzyme molecules present.

2. **Hyperbolic shape of the enzyme kinetics curve:** Most enzymes show Michaelis-Menten kinetics (see p. 58), in which the plot of initial reaction velocity (v_o) against substrate concentration ([S]), is hyperbolic (similar in shape to that of the oxygen-dissociation curve of myoglobin, see p. 29). In contrast, allosteric enzymes do not follow Michaelis-Menton kinetics and show a sigmoidal curve (see p. 62) that is similar in shape to the oxygen dissociation curve of hemoglobin (see p. 29).

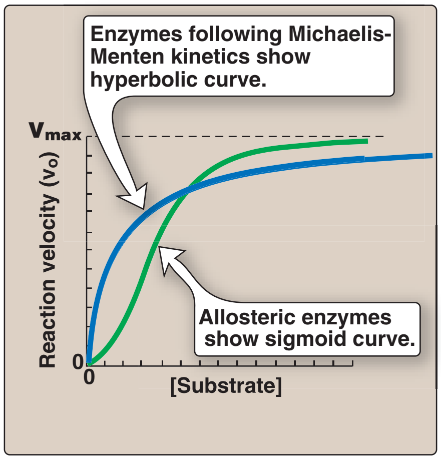


Figure 5.6
Effect of substrate concentration on reaction velocity.

B. Temperature

1. **Increase of velocity with temperature:** The reaction velocity increases with temperature until a peak velocity is reached (Figure 5.7). This increase is the result of the increased number of molecules having sufficient energy to pass over the energy barrier and form the products of the reaction.

2. **Decrease of velocity with higher temperature:** Further elevation of the temperature results in a decrease in reaction velocity as a result of temperature-induced denaturation of the enzyme (see Figure 5.7).

> The optimum temperature for most human enzymes is between 35 and 40°C. Human enzymes start to denature at temperatures above 40°C, but thermophilic bacteria found in the hot springs have optimum temperatures of 70°C.

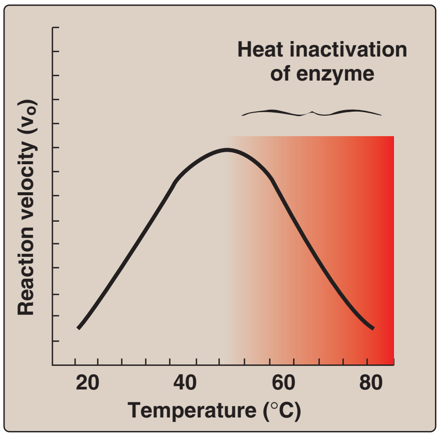


Figure 5.7
Effect of temperature on an enzyme-catalyzed reaction.

C. pH

1. **Effect of pH on the ionization of the active site:** The concentration of H^+ affects reaction velocity in several ways. First, the catalytic process usually requires that the enzyme and substrate have specific chemical groups in either an ionized or un-ionized state in order to interact. For example, catalytic activity may require that an amino group of the enzyme be in the protonated form ($-NH_3^+$). At alkaline pH, this group is deprotonated, and the rate of the reaction, therefore, declines.

2. **Effect of pH on enzyme denaturation:** Extremes of pH can also lead to denaturation of the enzyme, because the structure of the catalytically active protein molecule depends on the ionic character of the amino acid side chains.

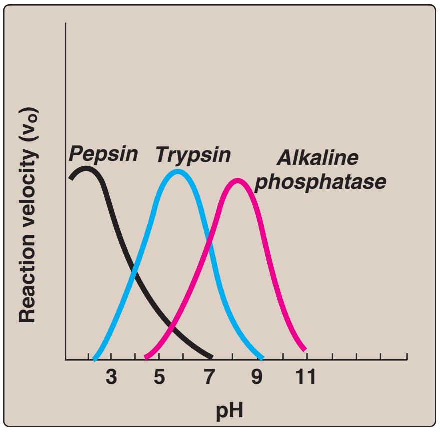


Figure 5.8
Effect of pH on enzyme-catalyzed reactions.

3. **The pH optimum varies for different enzymes:** The pH at which maximal enzyme activity is achieved is different for different enzymes, and often reflects the [H^+] at which the enzyme functions in the body. For example, *pepsin*, a digestive enzyme in the stomach, is maximally active at pH 2, whereas other enzymes, designed to work at neutral pH, are denatured by such an acidic environment (Figure 5.8).

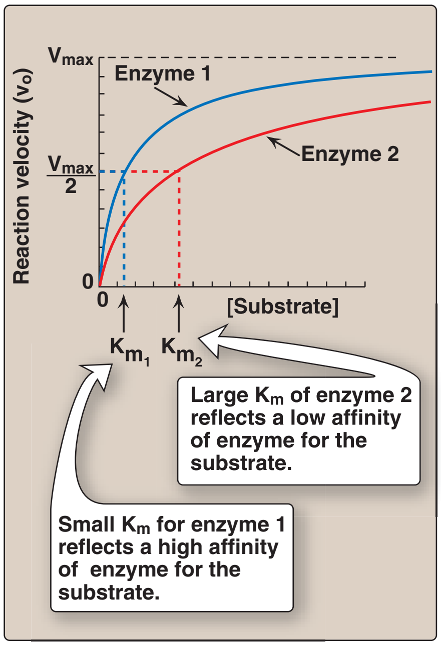
VI. MICHAELIS-MENTEN EQUATION

A. Reaction model

Leonor Michaelis and Maude Menten proposed a simple model that accounts for most of the features of enzyme-catalyzed reactions. In this model, the enzyme reversibly combines with its substrate to form an ES complex that subsequently yields product, regenerating the free enzyme. The model, involving one substrate molecule, is represented below:

$$E + S \underset{k_{-1}}{\overset{k_1}{\rightleftharpoons}} ES \xrightarrow{k_2} E + P$$

where S is the substrate
E is the enzyme
ES is the enzyme–substrate complex
P is the product
k_1, k_{-1}, and k_2 are rate constants



Large K_m of enzyme 2 reflects a low affinity of enzyme for the substrate.

Small K_m for enzyme 1 reflects a high affinity of enzyme for the substrate.

Figure 5.9
Effect of substrate concentration on reaction velocities for two enzymes: enzyme 1 with a small K_m, and enzyme 2 with a large K_m.

B. Michaelis-Menten equation

The Michaelis-Menten equation describes how reaction velocity varies with substrate concentration:

$$\boxed{v_o = \frac{V_{max}\,[S]}{K_m + [S]}}$$

where v_o = initial reaction velocity
V_{max} = maximal velocity
K_m = Michaelis constant = $(k_{-1} + k_2)/k_1$
[S] = substrate concentration

The following assumptions are made in deriving the Michaelis-Menten rate equation:

1. **Relative concentrations of E and S:** The concentration of substrate ([S]) is much greater than the concentration of enzyme ([E]), so that the percentage of total substrate bound by the enzyme at any one time is small.

2. **Steady-state assumption:** [ES] does not change with time (the steady-state assumption), that is, the rate of formation of ES is equal to that of the breakdown of ES (to E + S and to E + P). In general, an intermediate in a series of reactions is said to be in steadystate when its rate of synthesis is equal to its rate of degradation.

3. **Initial velocity:** Initial reaction velocities (v_o) are used in the analysis of enzyme reactions. This means that the rate of the reaction is measured as soon as enzyme and substrate are mixed. At that time, the concentration of product is very small and, therefore, the rate of the back reaction from P to S can be ignored.

C. Important conclusions about Michaelis-Menten kinetics

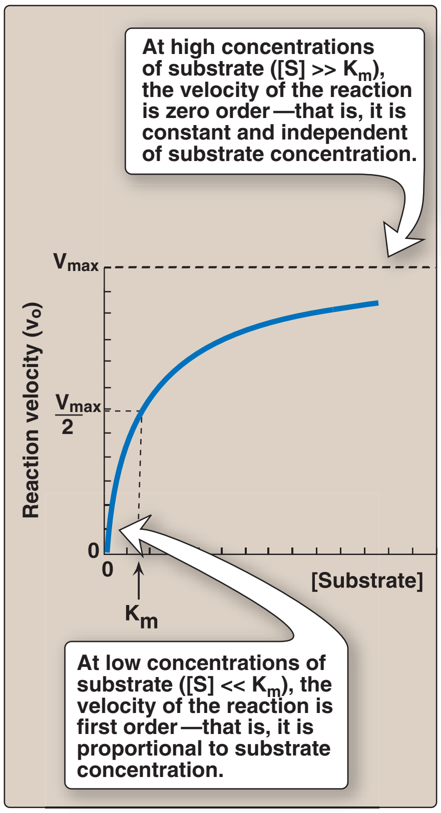
1. **Characteristics of K_m:** K_m—the Michaelis constant—is characteristic of an enzyme and its particular substrate, and reflects the affinity of the enzyme for that substrate. K_m is numerically equal to the substrate concentration at which the reaction velocity is equal to $\frac{1}{2}V_{max}$. K_m does not vary with the concentration of enzyme.

   a. **Small K_m:** A numerically small (low) K_m reflects a high affinity of the enzyme for substrate, because a low concentration of substrate is needed to half-saturate the enzyme—that is, to reach a velocity that is $\frac{1}{2}V_{max}$ (Figure 5.9).

   b. **Large K_m:** A numerically large (high) K_m reflects a low affinity of enzyme for substrate because a high concentration of substrate is needed to half-saturate the enzyme.

2. **Relationship of velocity to enzyme concentration:** The rate of the reaction is directly proportional to the enzyme concentration at all substrate concentrations. For example, if the enzyme concentration is halved, the initial rate of the reaction (v_o), as well as that of V_{max}, are reduced to half that of the original.

3. **Order of reaction:** When [S] is much less than K_m, the velocity of the reaction is approximately proportional to the substrate concentration (Figure 5.10). The rate of reaction is then said to be first order with respect to substrate. When [S] is much greater than K_m, the velocity is constant and equal to V_{max}. The rate of reaction is then independent of substrate concentration, and is said to be zero order with respect to substrate concentration (see Figure 5.10).



At high concentrations of substrate ([S] >> K_m), the velocity of the reaction is zero order—that is, it is constant and independent of substrate concentration.

At low concentrations of substrate ([S] << K_m), the velocity of the reaction is first order—that is, it is proportional to substrate concentration.

Figure 5.10
Effect of substrate concentration on reaction velocity for an enzyme-catalyzed reaction.

D. Lineweaver-Burk plot

When v_o is plotted against [S], it is not always possible to determine when V_{max} has been achieved, because of the gradual upward slope of the hyperbolic curve at high substrate concentrations. However, if $1/v_o$ is plotted versus 1/[S], a straight line is obtained (Figure 5.11). This plot, the Lineweaver-Burk plot (also called a double-reciprocal plot) can be used to calculate K_m and V_{max}, as well as to determine the mechanism of action of enzyme inhibitors.

1. The equation describing the Lineweaver-Burk plot is:

$$\frac{1}{v_o} = \frac{K_m}{V_{max}\,[S]} + \frac{1}{V_{max}}$$

where the intercept on the x-axis is equal to $-1/K_m$, and the intercept on the y-axis is equal to $1/V_{max}$.

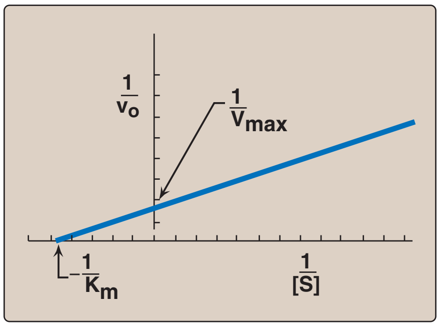


Figure 5.11
Lineweaver-Burk plot.

VII. INHIBITION OF ENZYME ACTIVITY

Any substance that can diminish the velocity of an enzyme-catalyzed reaction is called an inhibitor. In general, irreversible inhibitors bind to enzymes through covalent bonds. Reversible inhibitors typically bind to enzymes through noncovalent bonds, thus dilution of the enzyme–inhibitor complex results in dissociation of the reversibly bound inhibitor, and recovery of enzyme activity. The two most commonly encountered types of reversible inhibition are competitive and noncompetitive.

A. Competitive inhibition

This type of inhibition occurs when the inhibitor binds reversibly to the same site that the substrate would normally occupy and, therefore, competes with the substrate for that site.

1. **Effect on V_{max}:** The effect of a competitive inhibitor is reversed by increasing [S]. At a sufficiently high substrate concentration, the reaction velocity reaches the V_{max} observed in the absence of inhibitor (Figure 5.12).

2. **Effect on K_m:** A competitive inhibitor increases the apparent K_m for a given substrate. This means that, in the presence of a competitive inhibitor, more substrate is needed to achieve $\frac{1}{2}V_{max}$.

3. **Effect on the Lineweaver-Burk plot:** Competitive inhibition shows a characteristic Lineweaver-Burk plot in which the plots of the inhibited and uninhibited reactions intersect on the y-axis at $1/V_{max}$ (V_{max} is unchanged). The inhibited and uninhibited reactions show different x-axis intercepts, indicating that the apparent K_m is increased in the presence of the competitive inhibitor because $-1/K_m$ moves closer to zero from a negative value (see Figure 5.12).

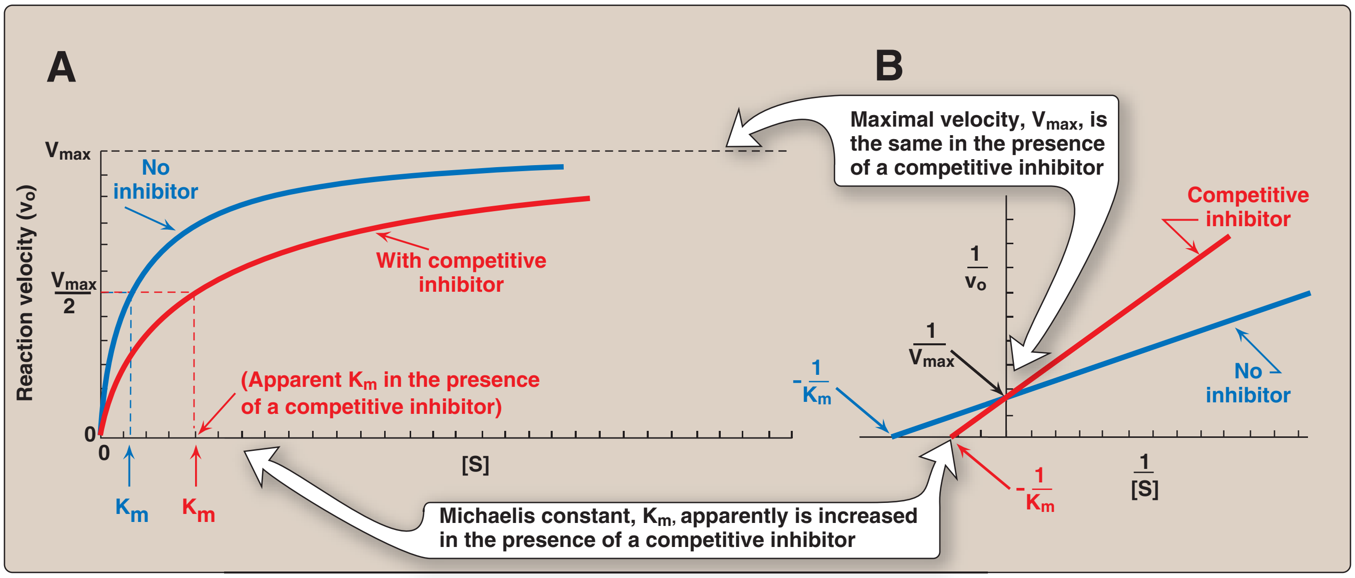


Figure 5.12
A. Effect of a competitive inhibitor on the reaction velocity (v_o) versus substrate ([S]) plot. B. Lineweaver-Burk plot of competitive inhibition of an enzyme.

4. **Statin drugs as examples of competitive inhibitors:** This group of antihyperlipidemic agents competitively inhibits the first committed step in cholesterol synthesis. This reaction is catalyzed by *hydroxymethylglutaryl–CoA reductase* (*HMG-CoA reductase*), see p. 220). Statin drugs, such as atorvastatin (Lipitor) and pravastatin (Pravachol),[1] are structural analogs of the natural substrate for this enzyme, and compete effectively to inhibit *HMG-CoA reductase*. By doing so, they inhibit de novo cholesterol synthesis, thereby lowering plasma cholesterol levels (Figure 5.13).

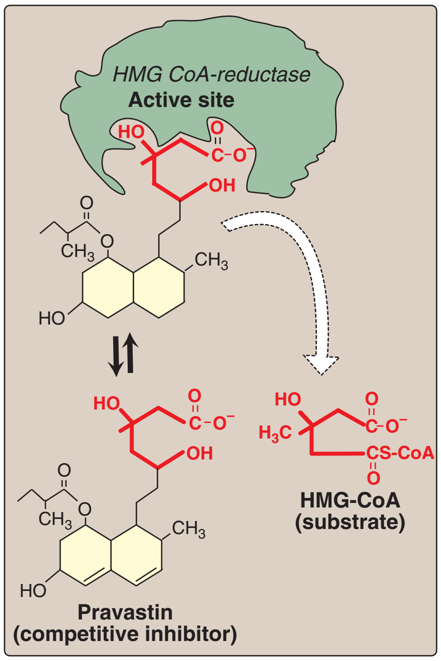


Figure 5.13
Pravastatin competes with HMG-CoA for the active site of *HMG-CoA reductase*.

B. Noncompetitive inhibition

This type of inhibition is recognized by its characteristic effect on V_{max} (Figure 5.14). Noncompetitive inhibition occurs when the inhibitor and substrate bind at different sites on the enzyme. The noncompetitive inhibitor can bind either free enzyme or the ES complex, thereby preventing the reaction from occurring (Figure 5.15).

1. **Effect on V_{max}:** Noncompetitive inhibition cannot be overcome by increasing the concentration of substrate. Thus, noncompetitive inhibitors decrease the apparent V_{max} of the reaction.

2. **Effect on K_m:** Noncompetitive inhibitors do not interfere with the binding of substrate to enzyme. Thus, the enzyme shows the same K_m in the presence or absence of the noncompetitive inhibitor.

3. **Effect on Lineweaver-Burk plot:** Noncompetitive inhibition is readily differentiated from competitive inhibition by plotting $1/v_o$ versus $1/[S]$ and noting that the apparent V_{max} decreases in the presence of a noncompetitive inhibitor, whereas K_m is unchanged (see Figure 5.14).

4. **Examples of noncompetitive inhibitors:** Some inhibitors act by forming covalent bonds with specific groups of enzymes. For

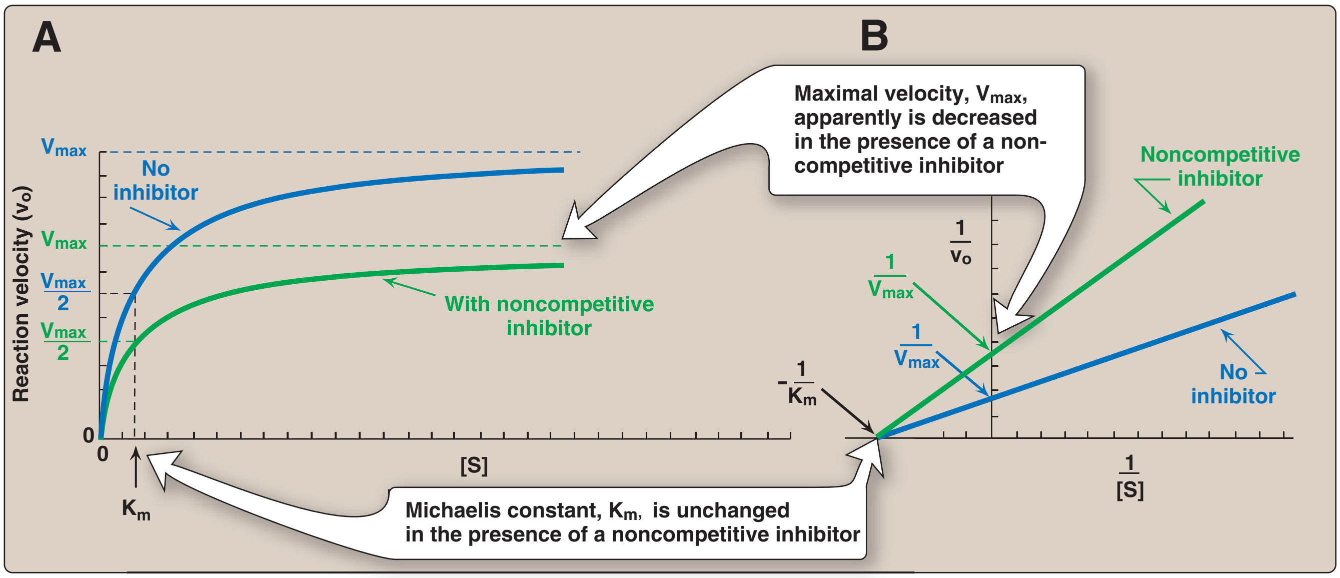


Figure 5.14
A. Effect of a noncompetitive inhibitor on the reaction velocity (v_o) versus substrate ([S]) plot. B. Lineweaver-Burk plot of noncompetitive inhibition of an enzyme.

INFO LINK [1] See Chapter 21 in ***Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Pharmacolog*** for a more detailed discussion of the drugs used to treat hyperlipidemia.

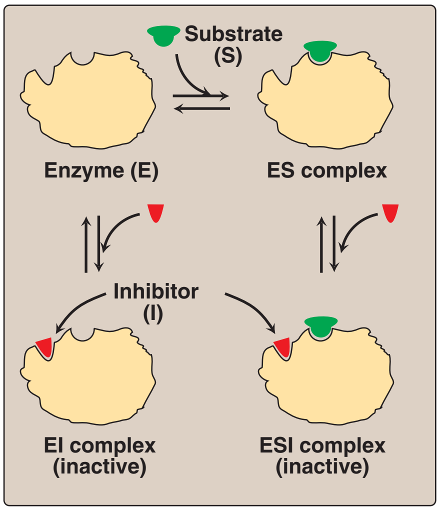


Figure 5.15
A noncompetitive inhibitor binding to both free enzyme and enzyme–substrate (ES) complex.

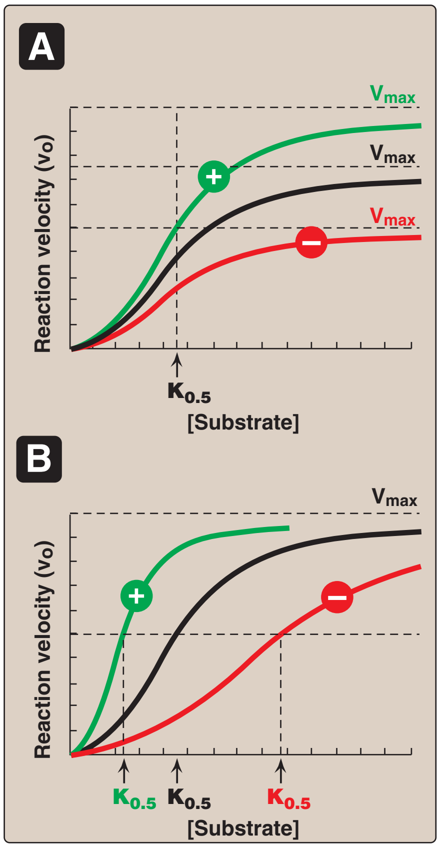


Figure 5.16
Effects of negative ⊖ or positive ⊕ effectors on an allosteric enzyme. A. V_{max} is altered. B. The substrate concentration that gives half-maximal velocity ($K_{0.5}$) is altered.

example, lead forms covalent bonds with the sulfhydryl side chains of cysteine in proteins. The binding of the heavy metal shows noncompetitive inhibition. *Ferrochelatase*, an enzyme that catalyzes the insertion of Fe^{2+} into protoporphyrin (a precursor of heme, see p. 279), is an example of an enzyme sensitive to inhibition by lead. Other examples of noncompetitive inhibition are certain insecticides, whose neurotoxic effects are a result of their covalent binding at the catalytic site of the enzyme *acetylcholinesterase* (an enzyme that cleaves the neurotransmitter, acetylcholine). [Note: Even though covalent bonds are formed, if active enzyme can be recovered, the inhibition is reversible.]

C. Enzyme inhibitors as drugs

At least half of the ten most commonly dispensed drugs in the United States act as enzyme inhibitors. For example, the widely prescribed β-lactam antibiotics, such as penicillin and amoxicillin,[2] act by inhibiting enzymes involved in bacterial cell wall synthesis. Drugs may also act by inhibiting extracellular reactions. This is illustrated by *angiotensin-converting enzyme* (ACE) inhibitors. They lower blood pressure by blocking the enzyme that cleaves angiotensin I to form the potent vasoconstrictor, angiotensin II.[3] These drugs, which include captopril, enalapril, and lisinopril, cause vasodilation and a resultant reduction in blood pressure.

VIII. REGULATION OF ENZYME ACTIVITY

The regulation of the reaction velocity of enzymes is essential if an organism is to coordinate its numerous metabolic processes. The rates of most enzymes are responsive to changes in substrate concentration, because the intracellular level of many substrates is in the range of the K_m. Thus, an increase in substrate concentration prompts an increase in reaction rate, which tends to return the concentration of substrate toward normal. In addition, some enzymes with specialized regulatory functions respond to allosteric effectors or covalent modification, or they show altered rates of enzyme synthesis (or degradation) when physiologic conditions are changed.

A. Regulation of allosteric enzymes

Allosteric enzymes are regulated by molecules called effectors (also called modifiers) that bind noncovalently at a site other than the active site. These enzymes are usually composed of multiple subunits, and the regulatory (allosteric) site that binds the effector may be located on a subunit that is not itself catalytic. The presence of an allosteric effector can alter the affinity of the enzyme for its substrate, or modify the maximal catalytic activity of the enzyme, or both. Effectors that inhibit enzyme activity are termed negative effectors, whereas those that increase enzyme activity are called positive effectors. Allosteric enzymes frequently catalyze the committed step early in a pathway.

1. **Homotropic effectors:** When the substrate itself serves as an effector, the effect is said to be homotropic. Most often, an allosteric sub-

---

[2] See Chapter 32 in ***Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Pharmacology*** for a discussion of inhibitors of bacterial cell wall synthesis.
[3] See Chapter 19 in ***Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Pharmacology*** for a discussion of angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors.

strate functions as a positive effector. In such a case, the presence of a substrate molecule at one site on the enzyme enhances the catalytic properties of the other substrate-binding sites—that is, their binding sites exhibit cooperativity. These enzymes show a sigmoidal curve when reaction velocity (v_o) is plotted against substrate concentration ([S]), Figure 5.16). This contrasts with the hyperbolic curve characteristic of enzymes following Michaelis-Menten kinetics, as previously discussed. [Note: The concept of cooperativity of substrate binding is analogous to the binding of oxygen to hemoglobin.] Positive and negative effectors of allosteric enzymes can affect either the V_{max}, the $K_{0.5}$, or both (see Figure 5.16).

2. **Heterotropic effectors:** The effector may be different from the substrate, in which case the effect is said to be heterotropic. For example, consider the feedback inhibition shown in Figure 5.17. The enzyme that converts D to E has an allosteric site that binds the endproduct, G. If the concentration of G increases (for example, because it is not used as rapidly as it is synthesized), the first irreversible step unique to the pathway is typically inhibited. Feedback inhibition provides the cell with appropriate amounts of a product it needs by regulating the flow of substrate molecules through the pathway that synthesizes that product. Heterotropic effectors are commonly encountered, for example, the glycolytic enzyme *phosphofructokinase-1* is allosterically inhibited by citrate, which is not a substrate for the enzyme (see p. 99).

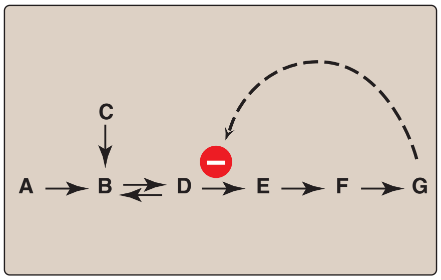


Figure 5.17
Feedback inhibition of a metabolic pathway.

B. Regulation of enzymes by covalent modification

Many enzymes may be regulated by covalent modification, most frequently by the addition or removal of phosphate groups from specific serine, threonine, or tyrosine residues of the enzyme. Protein phosphorylation is recognized as one of the primary ways in which cellular processes are regulated.

1. **Phosphorylation and dephosphorylation:** Phosphorylation reactions are catalyzed by a family of enzymes called *protein kinases* that use adenosine triphosphate (ATP) as a phosphate donor. Phosphate groups are cleaved from phosphorylated enzymes by the action of *phosphoprotein phosphatases* (Figure 5.18).

2. **Response of enzyme to phosphorylation:** Depending on the specific enzyme, the phosphorylated form may be more or less active than the unphosphorylated enzyme. For example, phosphorylation of *glycogen phosphorylase* (an enzyme that degrades glycogen) increases activity, whereas the addition of phosphate to *glycogen synthase* (an enzyme that synthesizes glycogen) decreases activity (see p. 132).

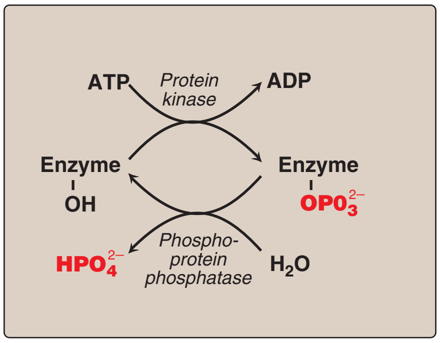


Figure 5.18
Covalent modification by the addition and removal of phosphate groups.

C. Induction and repression of enzyme synthesis

The regulatory mechanisms described above modify the activity of existing enzyme molecules. However, cells can also regulate the amount of enzyme present by altering the rate of enzyme degradation or, more typically, the rate of enzyme synthesis. The increase (induction) or decrease (repression) of enzyme synthesis leads to an alteration in the total population of active sites. Enzymes subject to regulation of synthesis are often those that are needed at only one

REGULATOR EVENT	TYPICAL EFFECTOR	RESULTS	TIME REQUIRED FOR CHANGE
Substrate inhibition	Substrate	Change in velocity (v_o)	Immediate
Product inhibition	Reaction product	Change in V_{max} and/or K_m	Immediate
Allosteric control	Pathway end product	Change in V_{max} and/or $K_{0.5}$	Immediate
Covalent modification	Another enzyme	Change in V_{max} and/or K_m	Immediate to minutes
Synthesis or degradation of enzyme	Hormone or metabolite	Change in the amount of enzyme	Hours to days

Figure 5.19
Mechanisms for regulating enzyme activity. [Note: Inhibition by pathway end product is also referred to as feedback inhibition.]

stage of development or under selected physiologic conditions. For example, elevated levels of insulin as a result of high blood glucose levels cause an increase in the synthesis of key enzymes involved in glucose metabolism (see p. 105). In contrast, enzymes that are in constant use are usually not regulated by altering the rate of enzyme synthesis. Alterations in enzyme levels as a result of induction or repression of protein synthesis are slow (hours to days), compared with allosterically or covalently regulated changes in enzyme activity, which occur in seconds to minutes. Figure 5.19 summarizes the common ways that enzyme activity is regulated.

IX. ENZYMES IN CLINICAL DIAGNOSIS

Plasma enzymes can be classified into two major groups. First, a relatively small group of enzymes are actively secreted into the blood by certain cell types. For example, the liver secretes zymogens (inactive precursors) of the enzymes involved in blood coagulation. Second, a large number of enzyme species are released from cells during normal cell turnover. These enzymes almost always function intracellularly, and have no physiologic use in the plasma. In healthy individuals, the levels of these enzymes are fairly constant, and represent a steady state in which the rate of release from damaged cells into the plasma is balanced by an equal rate of removal of the enzyme protein from the plasma. Increased plasma levels of these enzyme may indicate tissue damage (Figure 5.20).

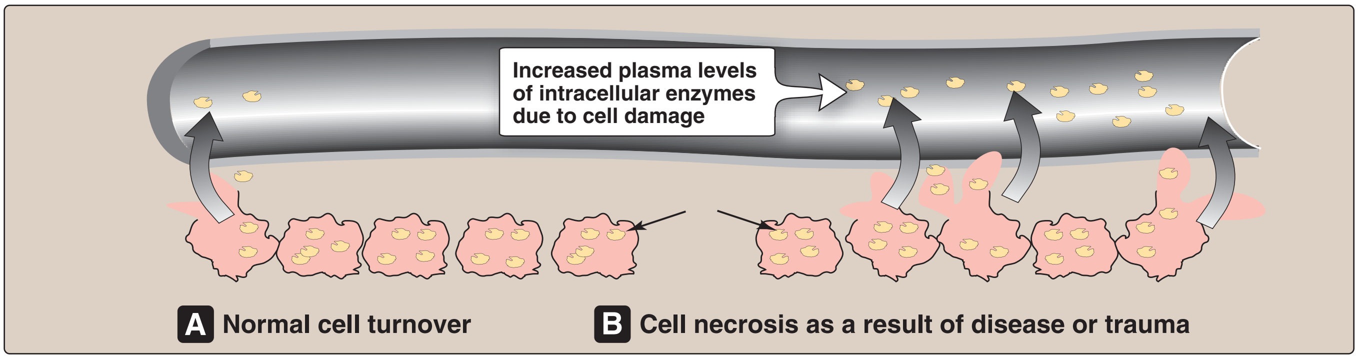

Increased plasma levels of intracellular enzymes due to cell damage
A Normal cell turnover
B Cell necrosis as a result of disease or trauma

Figure 5.20
Release of enzymes from normal and diseased or traumatized cells.

> Plasma is the fluid, noncellular part of blood. Laboratory assays of enzyme activity most often use serum, which is obtained by centrifugation of whole blood after it has been allowed to coagulate. Plasma is a physiologic fluid, whereas serum is prepared in the laboratory.

A. Alteration of plasma enzyme levels in disease states

Many diseases that cause tissue damage result in an increased release of intracellular enzymes into the plasma. The activities of many of these enzymes are routinely determined for diagnostic purposes in diseases of the heart, liver, skeletal muscle, and other tissues. The level of specific enzyme activity in the plasma frequently correlates with the extent of tissue damage. Thus, determining the degree of elevation of a particular enzyme activity in the plasma is often useful in evaluating the prognosis for the patient.

B. Plasma enzymes as diagnostic tools

Some enzymes show relatively high activity in only one or a few tissues. The presence of increased levels of these enzymes in plasma thus reflects damage to the corresponding tissue. For example, the enzyme *alanine aminotransferase* (*ALT*, see p. 251) is abundant in the liver. The appearance of elevated levels of *ALT* in plasma signals possible damage to hepatic tissue. [Note: Measurement of *ALT* is part of the liver function test panel.] Increases in plasma levels of enzymes with a wide tissue distribution provide a less specific indication of the site of cellular injury and limits their diagnostic value.

C. Isoenzymes and diseases of the heart

Most isoenzymes (also called isozymes) are enzymes that catalyze the same reaction. However, they do not necessarily have the same physical properties because of genetically determined differences in amino acid sequence. For this reason, isoenzymes may contain different numbers of charged amino acids and may, therefore, be separated from each other by electrophoresis (Figure 5.21). Different organs frequently contain characteristic proportions of different isoenzymes. The pattern of isoenzymes found in the plasma may, therefore, serve as a means of identifying the site of tissue damage. For example, the plasma levels of *creatine kinase* (*CK*) are commonly determined in the diagnosis of myocardial infarction. They are particularly useful when the electrocardiogram is difficult to interpret, such as when there have been previous episodes of heart disease.

1. **Quaternary structure of isoenzymes:** Many isoenzymes contain different subunits in various combinations. For example, *creatine kinase* (*CK*) occurs as three isoenzymes. Each isoenzyme is a dimer composed of two polypeptides (called B and M subunits) associated in one of three combinations: *CK1* = BB, *CK2* = MB, and *CK3* = MM. Each *CK* isoenzyme shows a characteristic electrophoretic mobility (see Figure 5.21). [Note: Virtually all *CK* in the brain is the BB isoform, whereas in skeletal muscle it is MM. In cardiac muscle, about one-third is MB with the rest as MM.]

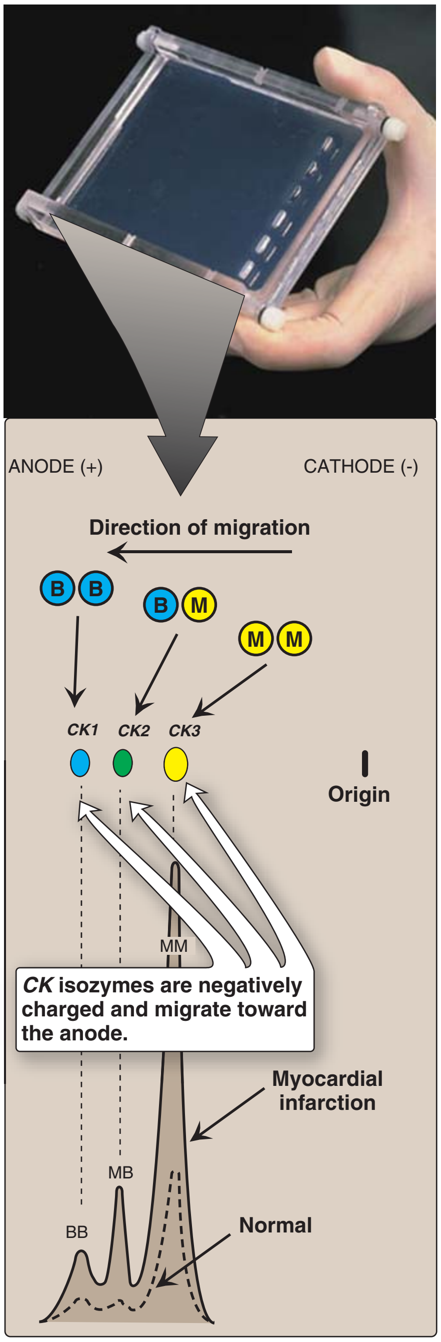


Figure 5.21
Subunit structure, electrophoretic mobility, and enzyme activity of *creatine kinase* (*CK*) isoenzymes.

2. Diagnosis of myocardial infarction: Measurement of blood levels of proteins with cardiac specificity is used in the diagnosis of myocardial infarction (MI) because myocardial muscle is the only tissue that contains more than 5% of the total *CK* activity as the *CK2* (MB) isoenzyme. Appearance of this hybrid isoenzyme in plasma is virtually specific for infarction of the myocardium. Following an acute MI, this isoenzyme appears approximately 4–8 hours following onset of chest pain, reaches a peak of activity at approximately 24 hours, and returns to baseline after 48–72 hours (Figure 5.22). Troponin T and troponin I are regulatory proteins involved in myocardial contractility. They are released into the plasma in response to cardiac damage. Cardiac troponin I (cTnI) is highly sensitive and specific for damage to cardiac tissue. cTnI appears in plasma within 4–6 hours after an MI, peaks in 8–28 hours, and remains elevated for 3–10 days. Elevated serum troponins then, are more predictive of adverse outcomes in unstable angina or myocardial infarction than the conventional assay of *CK2.*

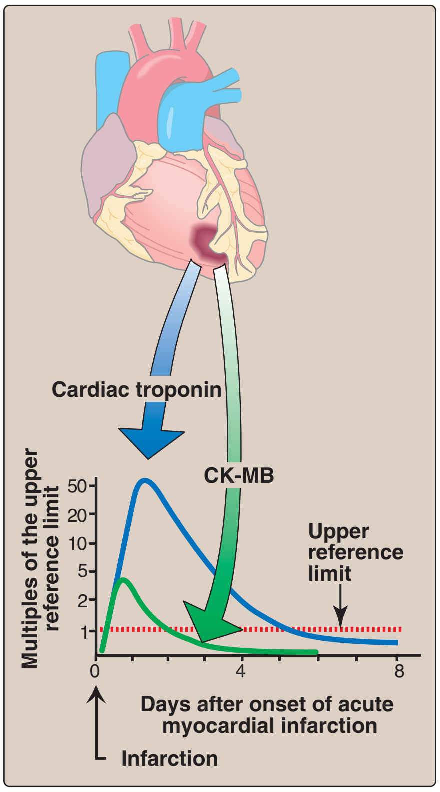


Figure 5.22
Appearance of *creatine kinase* (*CK*) and cardiac troponin in plasma after a myocardial infarction.

X. CHAPTER SUMMARY

Enzymes are **protein catalysts** that increase the velocity of a chemical reaction by lowering the energy of the transition state (Figure 5.23). Enzymes are not consumed during the reaction they catalyze. Enzyme molecules contain a special pocket or cleft called the **active site**. The active site contains amino acid side chains that participate in substrate binding and catalysis. The active site binds the substrate, forming an **enzyme–substrate (ES) complex**. Binding is thought to cause a conformational change in the enzyme (induced fit) that allows catalysis. ES is converted to enzyme-product (EP), which subsequently dissociates to enzyme and product. An enzyme allows a reaction to proceed rapidly under conditions prevailing in the cell by providing an **alternate reaction pathway** with a **lower free energy of activation**. The enzyme does not change the free energies of the reactants or products and, therefore, does not change the equilibrium of the reaction. Most enzymes show **Michaelis-Menten kinetics**, and a plot of the **initial reaction velocity** (**v_o**) against **substrate concentration ([S])** has a **hyperbolic** shape similar to the oxygen dissociation curve of myoglobin. Any substance that can diminish the velocity of such enzyme-catalyzed reactions is called an inhibitor. The two most commonly encountered types of reversible inhibition are **competitive** (which **increases** the **apparent K_m**) and **noncompetitive** (which **decreases** the **apparent V_{max}**). In contrast, the **multisubunit allosteric enzymes** frequently show a **sigmoidal curve** similar in shape to the oxygen dissociation curve of hemoglobin. They typically catalyze the **committed step (often the rate-limiting or slowest step)** of a pathway. Allosteric enzymes are regulated by molecules called **effectors** (also **modifiers**) that bind noncovalently at a site other than the active site. Effectors can be either **positive** (accelerate the enzyme-catalyzed reaction) or **negative** (slow down the reaction). An allosteric effector can alter the affinity of the enzyme for its substrate, or modify the maximal catalytic activity of the enzyme, or both. Enzymes can also be regulated by covalent modification, and by changes in the rate of synthesis or degradation. Enzymes have diagnostic and therapeutic value in medicine.

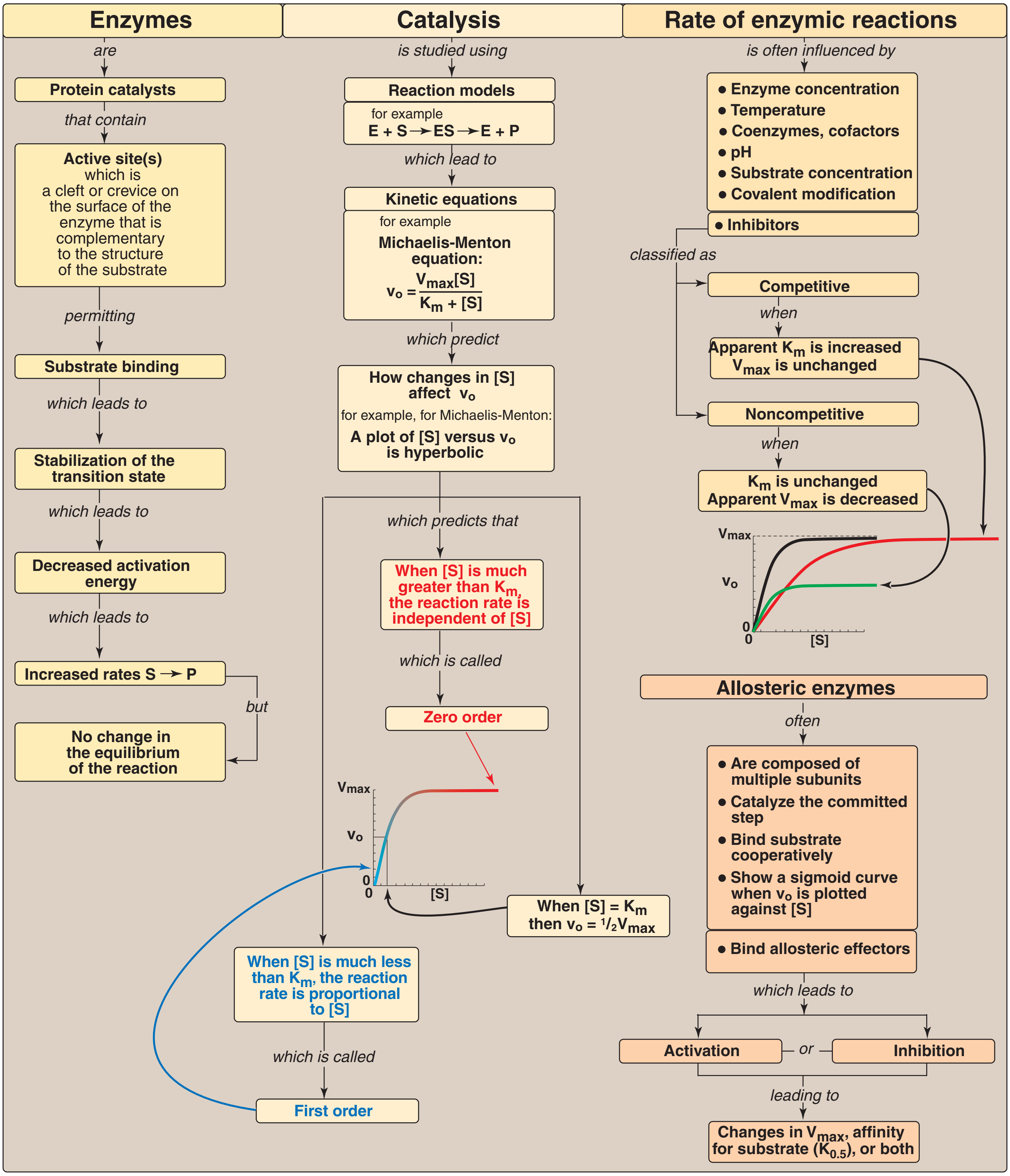

Enzymes
are
Protein catalysts
that contain
Active site(s) which is a cleft or crevice on the surface of the enzyme that is complementary to the structure of the substrate
permitting
Substrate binding
which leads to
Stabilization of the transition state
which leads to
Decreased activation energy
which leads to
Increased rates S → P
but
No change in the equilibrium of the reaction
Catalysis
is studied using
Reaction models
for example
E + S → ES → E + P
which lead to
Kinetic equations
for example
Michaelis-Menton equation:
$v_o = \frac{V_{max}[S]}{K_m + [S]}$
which predict
How changes in [S] affect v_o
for example, for Michaelis-Menton:
A plot of [S] versus v_o is hyperbolic
which predicts that
When [S] is much greater than K_m, the reaction rate is independent of [S]
which is called
Zero order
V_{max}
v_o
0
0
[S]
When [S] = K_m then v_o = $^1/_2 V_{max}$
When [S] is much less than K_m, the reaction rate is proportional to [S]
which is called
First order
Rate of enzymic reactions
is often influenced by
• Enzyme concentration
• Temperature
• Coenzymes, cofactors
• pH
• Substrate concentration
• Covalent modification
• Inhibitors
classified as
Competitive
when
Apparent K_m is increased V_{max} is unchanged
Noncompetitive
when
K_m is unchanged Apparent V_{max} is decreased
V_{max}
v_o
0
0
[S]
Allosteric enzymes
often
• Are composed of multiple subunits
• Catalyze the committed step
• Bind substrate cooperatively
• Show a sigmoid curve when v_o is plotted against [S]
• Bind allosteric effectors
which leads to
Activation
or
Inhibition
leading to
Changes in V_{max}, affinity for substrate ($K_{0.5}$), or both

Figure 5.23
Key concept map for the enzymes. S = substrate, [S] = substrate concentration, P = product, E = enzyme, v_o = initial velocity, V_{max} = maximal velocity, K_m = Michaelis constant, $K_{0.5}$ = substrate concentration which gives half maximal velocity.

Study Questions

Choose the ONE correct answer.

5.1 In cases of ethylene glycol poisoning and its characteristic metabolic acidosis, treatment involves correction of the acidosis, removal of any remaining ethylene glycol, and administration of an inhibitor of alcohol dehydrogenase (ADH, alcohol:NAD$^+$ oxidoreductase), the enzyme that oxidizes ethylene glycol to the organic acids that cause the acidosis. Ethanol (grain alcohol) frequently is the inhibitor given to treat ethylene glycol poisoning; it works by competitively inhibiting ADH. As a competitive inhibitor, ethanol:

A. increases apparent K_m without affecting V_{max}.
B. decreases apparent K_m without affecting V_{max}.
C. increases apparent V_{max} without affecting K_m.
D. decreases apparent V_{max} without affecting K_m.
E. decreases both apparent V_{max} and apparent K_m.

5.2 ADH requires NAD$^+$ for catalytic activity. In the reaction catalyzed by ADH, an alcohol is oxidized to an aldehyde as NAD$^+$ is reduced to NADH and dissociates from the enzyme. The NAD$^+$ is functioning as a (an):

A. apoenzyme.
B. coenzyme-cosubstrate.
C. coenzyme-prosthetic group.
D. cofactor.
E. heterotropic effector.

5.3 A 70-year-old man was admitted to the emergency room with a 12-hour history of chest pain. Serum creatine kinase (CK) activity was measured at admission (day 1) and once daily (Figure 5.24). On day 2 after admission, he experienced cardiac arrhythmia, which was terminated by three cycles of electric cardioconversion, the latter two at maximum energy. [Note: Cardioconversion is performed by placing two paddles, 12 cm in diameter, in firm contact with the chest wall and applying a short electric voltage.] Normal cardiac rhythm was reestablished. He had no recurrence of arrhythmia over the next several days. His chest pain subsided and he was released on day 10. Which one of the following is most consistent with the data presented?

A. The patient had a myocardial infarction 48 to 64 hours prior to admission.
B. The patient had a myocardial infarction on day 2.
C. The patient had angina prior to admission.
D. The patient had damage to his skeletal muscle on day 2.
E. The data do not permit any conclusion concerning myocardial infarction prior to, or after, admission to the hospital.

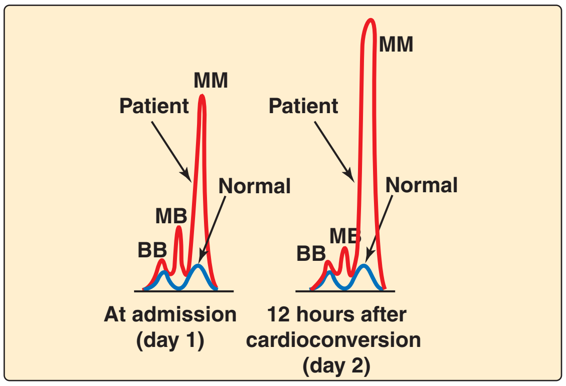


Figure 5.24
Serum *creatine kinase* levels.

Correct answer = A. In the presence of a competitive inhibitor, an enzyme appears to have a lower affinity for substrate, but as the substrate level is increased, the observed velocity approaches V_{max}. (See panel B of Figures 5.12 and 5.14 to compare effects of competitive and noncompetitive inhibitors.)

Correct answer = B. Coenzymes-cosubstrates are small organic molecules that associate transiently with an enzyme and leave the enzyme in a changed form. Coenzyme-prosthetic groups are small organic molecules that associate permanently with an enzyme and are returned to their original form on the enzyme. Cofactors are metal ions. Heterotropic effectors are not substrates.

Correct answer = D. The CK isoenzyme pattern at admission showed elevated MB isozyme, indicating that the patient had experienced a myocardial infarction in the previous 12–24 hours. [Note: 48–64 hours after an infarction, the MB isozyme would have returned to normal values.] On day 2, 12 hours after the cardioconversions, the MB isozyme had decreased, indicating no further damage to the heart. However, the patient showed an increased MM isozyme after cardioconversion. This suggests damage to muscle, probably a result of the convulsive muscle contractions caused by repeated cardioconversion. Angina is typically the result of transient spasms in the vasculature of the heart, and would not be expected to lead to tissue death that results in elevation in serum creatine kinase.

UNIT II:
Intermediary Metabolism

Bioenergetics and Oxidative Phosphorylation

6

I. OVERVIEW

Bioenergetics describes the transfer and utilization of energy in biologic systems. It makes use of a few basic ideas from the field of thermodynamics, particularly the concept of free energy. Changes in free energy (ΔG) provide a measure of the energetic feasibility of a chemical reaction and can, therefore, allow prediction of whether a reaction or process can take place. Bioenergetics concerns only the initial and final energy states of reaction components, not the mechanism or how much time is needed for the chemical change to take place. In short, bioenergetics predicts if a process is possible, whereas kinetics measures how fast the reaction occurs (see p. 54).

II. FREE ENERGY

The direction and extent to which a chemical reaction proceeds is determined by the degree to which two factors change during the reaction. These are enthalpy (ΔH, a measure of the change in heat content of the reactants and products) and entropy (ΔS, a measure of the change in randomness or disorder of reactants and products, Figure 6.1). Neither of these thermodynamic quantities by itself is sufficient to determine whether a chemical reaction will proceed spontaneously in the direction it is written. However, when combined mathematically (see Figure 6.1), enthalpy and entropy can be used to define a third quantity, free energy (G), which predicts the direction in which a reaction will spontaneously proceed.

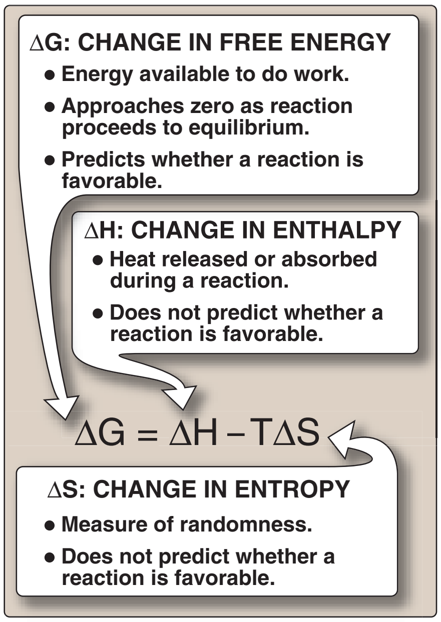

ΔG: CHANGE IN FREE ENERGY
• Energy available to do work.
• Approaches zero as reaction proceeds to equilibrium.
• Predicts whether a reaction is favorable.
ΔH: CHANGE IN ENTHALPY
• Heat released or absorbed during a reaction.
• Does not predict whether a reaction is favorable.
ΔG = ΔH – TΔS
ΔS: CHANGE IN ENTROPY
• Measure of randomness.
• Does not predict whether a reaction is favorable.

Figure 6.1
Relationship between changes in free energy (G), enthalpy (H), and entropy (S). T is the absolute temperature in degrees Kelvin (^{o}K): $^{o}K = {}^{o}C + 273$.

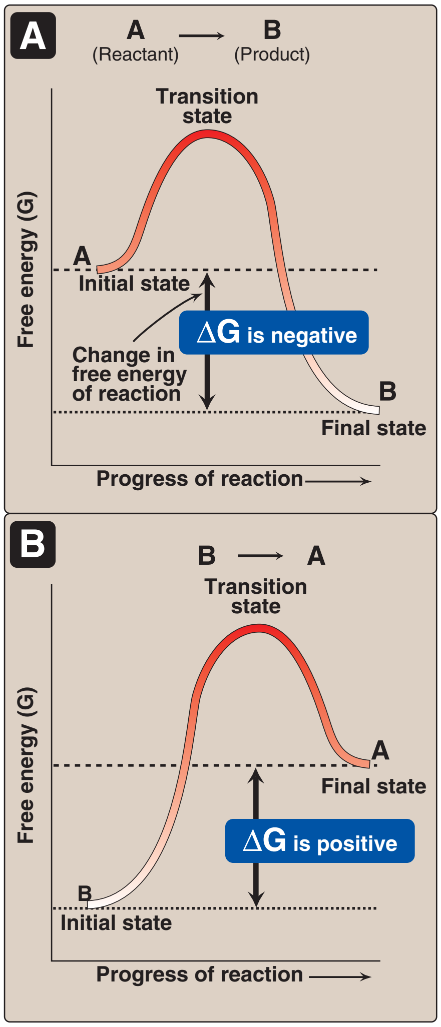


Figure 6.2
Change in free energy (ΔG) during a reaction. A. The product has a lower free energy (G) than the reactant. B. The product has a higher free energy than the reactant.

III. FREE ENERGY CHANGE

The change in free energy is represented in two ways, ΔG and ΔG°. The first, ΔG (without the superscript "o"), represents the change in free energy and, thus, the direction of a reaction at any specified concentration of products and reactants. ΔG, then, is a variable. This contrasts with the standard free energy change, ΔG° (with the superscript "o"), which is the energy change when reactants and products are at a concentration of 1 mol/L. [Note: The concentration of protons is assumed to be 10^{-7} mol/L, that is, pH = 7.] Although ΔG° represents energy changes at these nonphysiologic concentrations of reactants and products, it is nonetheless useful in comparing the energy changes of different reactions. Furthermore, ΔG° can readily be determined from measurement of the equilibrium constant (see p. 72). This section outlines the uses of ΔG; ΔG° is described on p. 71.

A. Sign of ΔG predicts the direction of a reaction

The change in free energy, ΔG, can be used to predict the direction of a reaction at constant temperature and pressure. Consider the reaction:

$$A \rightleftarrows B$$

1. **Negative ΔG:** If ΔG is a negative number, there is a net loss of energy, and the reaction goes spontaneously as written—that is, A is converted into B (Figure 6.2A). The reaction is said to be exergonic.
2. **Positive ΔG:** If ΔG is a positive number, there is a net gain of energy, and the reaction does not go spontaneously from B to A (see Figure 6.2B). Energy must be added to the system to make the reaction go from B to A, and the reaction is said to be endergonic.
3. **ΔG is zero:** If ΔG = 0, the reactants are in equilibrium. [Note: When a reaction is proceeding spontaneously—that is, free energy is being lost—then the reaction continues until ΔG reaches zero and equilibrium is established.]

B. ΔG of the forward and back reactions

The free energy of the forward reaction (A → B) is equal in magnitude but opposite in sign to that of the back reaction (B → A). For example, if ΔG of the forward reaction is –5 kcal/mol, then that of the back reaction is +5 kcal/mol. [Note: ΔG can also be expressed in kilojoules per mole or kJ/mol (1 kcal = 4.2 kJ).]

C. ΔG depends on the concentration of reactants and products

The ΔG of the reaction A → B depends on the concentration of the reactant and product. At constant temperature and pressure, the following relationship can be derived:

$$\Delta G = \Delta G^{o} + RT \ln \frac{[B]}{[A]}$$

where ΔG^{o} is the standard free energy change (see below)
R is the gas constant (1.987 cal/mol · degree)
T is the absolute temperature (^{o}K)
[A] and [B] are the actual concentrations of the reactant and product
ln represents the natural logarithm

A reaction with a positive ΔG^{o} can proceed in the forward direction (have a negative overall ΔG) if the ratio of products to reactants ([B]/[A]) is sufficiently small (that is, the ratio of reactants to products is large). For example, consider the reaction:

$$\text{Glucose 6-phosphate} \rightleftarrows \text{fructose 6-phosphate}$$

Figure 6.3A shows reaction conditions in which the concentration of reactant, glucose 6-phosphate, is high compared with the concentration of product, fructose 6-phosphate. This means that the ratio of the product to reactant is small, and RT ln([fructose 6-phosphate]/[glucose 6-phosphate]) is large and negative, causing ΔG to be negative despite ΔG^{o} being positive. Thus, the reaction can proceed in the forward direction.

D. Standard free energy change, ΔG^{o}

The standard free energy change, ΔG^{o}, is so called because it is equal to the free energy change, ΔG, under standard conditions—that is, when reactants and products are at 1 mol/L concentrations (see Figure 6.3B). Under these conditions, the natural logarithm of the ratio of products to reactants is zero (ln1 = 0) and, therefore, the equation shown at the top of this page becomes:

$$\Delta G = \Delta G^{o} + 0$$

1. **ΔG^{o} is predictive only under standard conditions:** Under standard conditions, ΔG^{o} can be used to predict the direction a reaction proceeds because, under these conditions, ΔG^{o} is equal to ΔG. However, ΔG^{o} cannot predict the direction of a reaction under physiologic conditions, because it is composed solely of constants (R, T, and K_{eq}) and is, therefore, not altered by changes in product or substrate concentrations.

2. **Relationship between ΔG^{o} and K_{eq}:** In a reaction $A \rightarrow B$, a point of equilibrium is reached at which no further net chemical change takes place—that is, when A is being converted to B as fast as B is being converted to A. In this state, the ratio of [B] to [A] is constant, regardless of the actual concentrations of the two compounds:

$$K_{eq} = \frac{[B]_{eq}}{[A]_{eq}}$$

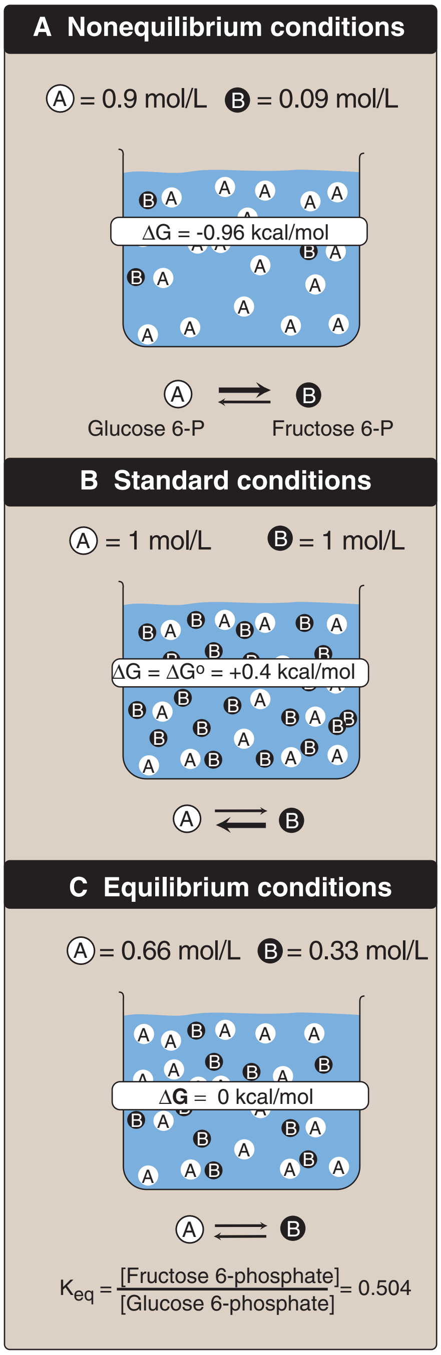


Figure 6.3
ΔG of a reaction depends on the concentration of reactant (A) and product (B). For the conversion of glucose 6-P to fructose 6-P, ΔG is negative when the ratio of reactant (A) to product (B) is large (top, panel A); is positive under standard conditions (middle, panel B); and is zero at equilibrium (bottom, panel C).

where K_{eq} is the equilibrium constant, and $[A]_{eq}$ and $[B]_{eq}$ are the concentrations of A and B at equilibrium. If the reaction $A \rightleftarrows B$ is allowed to go to equilibrium at constant temperature and pressure, then at equilibrium the overall free energy change (ΔG) is zero. Therefore,

$$\Delta G = 0 = \Delta G^o + RT \ln \frac{[B]_{eq}}{[A]_{eq}}$$

where the actual concentrations of A and B are equal to the equilibrium concentrations of reactant and product $[A]_{eq}$ and $[B]_{eq}$, and their ratio as shown above is equal to the K_{eq}. Thus,

$$\boxed{\Delta G^o = -RT \ln K_{eq}}$$

This equation allows some simple predictions:

If $K_{eq} = 1$, then $\Delta G^o = 0$	$A \rightleftarrows B$
If $K_{eq} > 1$, then $\Delta G^o < 0$	$A \;\substack{\longrightarrow \\ \leftarrow}\; B$
If $K_{eq} < 1$, then $\Delta G^o > 0$	$A \;\substack{\rightarrow \\ \longleftarrow}\; B$

3. **ΔG^o of two consecutive reactions are additive:** The standard free energy changes (ΔG^o) are additive in any sequence of consecutive reactions, as are the free energy changes (ΔG). For example:

$$\begin{array}{lll} \text{Glucose + ATP} \rightarrow \text{glucose 6-P + ADP} & \Delta G^o = -4{,}000 \text{ cal/mol} \\ \text{Glucose 6-P} \rightarrow \text{fructose 6-P} & \Delta G^o = +400 \text{ cal/mol} \\ \hline \text{Glucose + ATP} \rightarrow \text{fructose 6-P + ADP} & \Delta G^o = -3{,}600 \text{ cal/mol} \end{array}$$

4. **ΔGs of a pathway are additive:** This additive property of free energy changes is very important in biochemical pathways through which substrates must pass in a particular direction (for example, A → B → C → D → ...). As long as the sum of the ΔGs of the individual reactions is negative, the pathway can potentially proceed as written, even if some of the individual reactions of the pathway have a positive ΔG. The actual rate of the reactions does, of course, depend on the lowering of activation energies by the enzymes that catalyze the reactions (see p. 55).

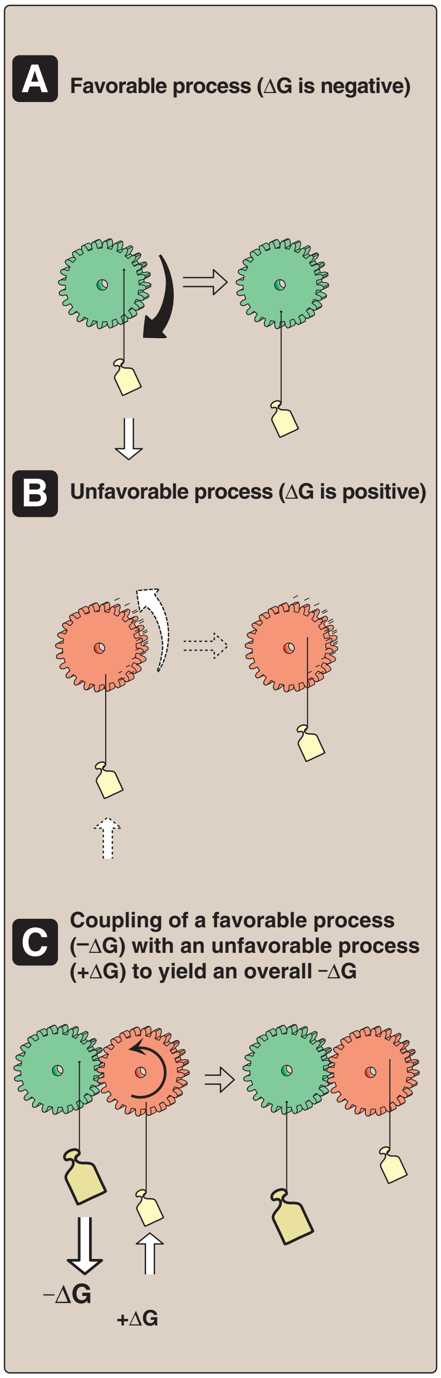

A
Favorable process (ΔG is negative)
B
Unfavorable process (ΔG is positive)
C
Coupling of a favorable process (−ΔG) with an unfavorable process (+ΔG) to yield an overall −ΔG
−ΔG
+ΔG

Figure 6.4
Mechanical model of coupling of favorable and unfavorable processes.

IV. ATP AS AN ENERGY CARRIER

Reactions or processes that have a large positive ΔG, such as moving ions against a concentration gradient across a cell membrane, are made possible by coupling the endergonic movement of ions with a second, spontaneous process with a large negative ΔG, such as the exergonic hydrolysis of adenosine triphosphate (ATP). [Note: In the absence of enzymes, ATP is a stable molecule because its hydrolysis has a high activation energy.] Figure 6.4 shows a mechanical model of energy coupling. A gear with an attached weight spontaneously turns in the direction that achieves the lowest energy state, in this case the weight seeks its lowest position (see Figure 6.4A). The reverse motion (see Figure 6.4B) is energetically unfavored and does not occur spontaneously. Figure 6.4C shows that the energetically favored movement of one gear can be used to turn a second gear in a direction that it would not move spontaneously. The simplest example of energy coupling in biologic reactions occurs when the energy-requiring and the energy-yielding reactions share a common intermediate.

A. Reactions are coupled through common intermediates

Two chemical reactions have a common intermediate when they occur sequentially so that the product of the first reaction is a substrate for the second. For example, given the reactions

$$A + B \rightarrow C + D$$

$$D + X \rightarrow Y + Z$$

D is the common intermediate and can serve as a carrier of chemical energy between the two reactions. Many coupled reactions use ATP to generate a common intermediate. These reactions may involve the transfer of a phosphate group from ATP to another molecule. Other reactions involve the transfer of phosphate from an energy-rich intermediate to adenosine diphosphate (ADP), forming ATP.

B. Energy carried by ATP

ATP consists of a molecule of adenosine (adenine + ribose) to which three phosphate groups are attached (Figure 6.5). If one phosphate is removed, ADP is produced; if two phosphates are removed, adenosine monophosphate (AMP) results. The standard free energy of hydrolysis of ATP, ΔG^o, is approximately –7.3 kcal/mol for each of the two terminal phosphate groups. Because of this large negative ΔG^o, ATP is called a high-energy phosphate compound.

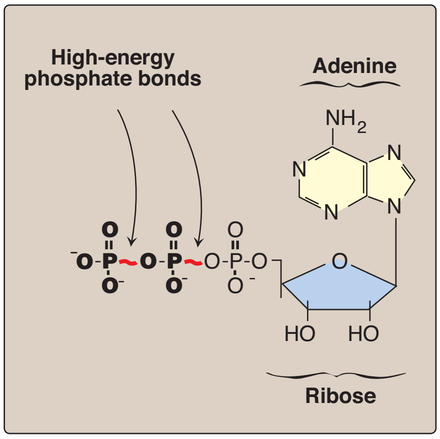


Figure 6.5
Adenosine triphosphate.

V. ELECTRON TRANSPORT CHAIN

Energy-rich molecules, such as glucose, are metabolized by a series of oxidation reactions ultimately yielding CO_2 and water (Figure 6.6). The metabolic intermediates of these reactions donate electrons to specific coenzymes—nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD^+) and flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD)—to form the energy-rich reduced coenzymes, NADH and $FADH_2$. These reduced coenzymes can, in turn, each donate a pair of electrons to a specialized set of electron carriers, collectively called the electron transport chain, described in this section. As electrons are passed down the electron transport chain, they lose much of their free energy. Part of this energy can be captured and stored by the production of ATP from ADP and inorganic phosphate (P_i). This process is called oxidative phosphorylation and is described on p. 77. The remainder of the free energy not trapped as ATP is used to drive ancillary reactions such as Ca^{2+} transport into mitochondria, and to generate heat.

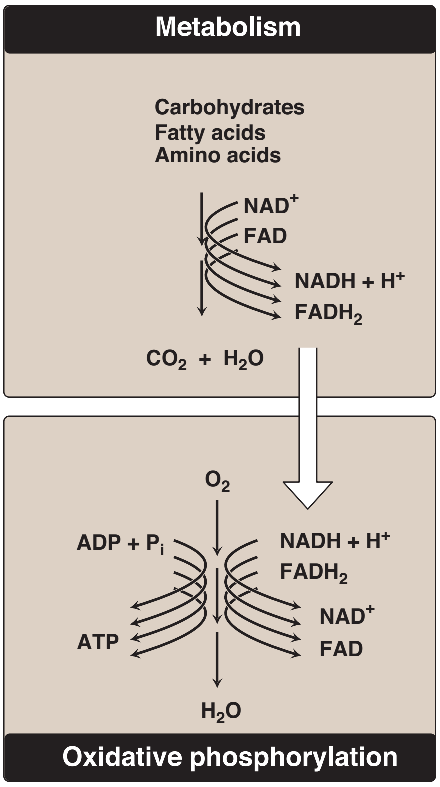


Figure 6.6
The metabolic breakdown of energy-yielding molecules.

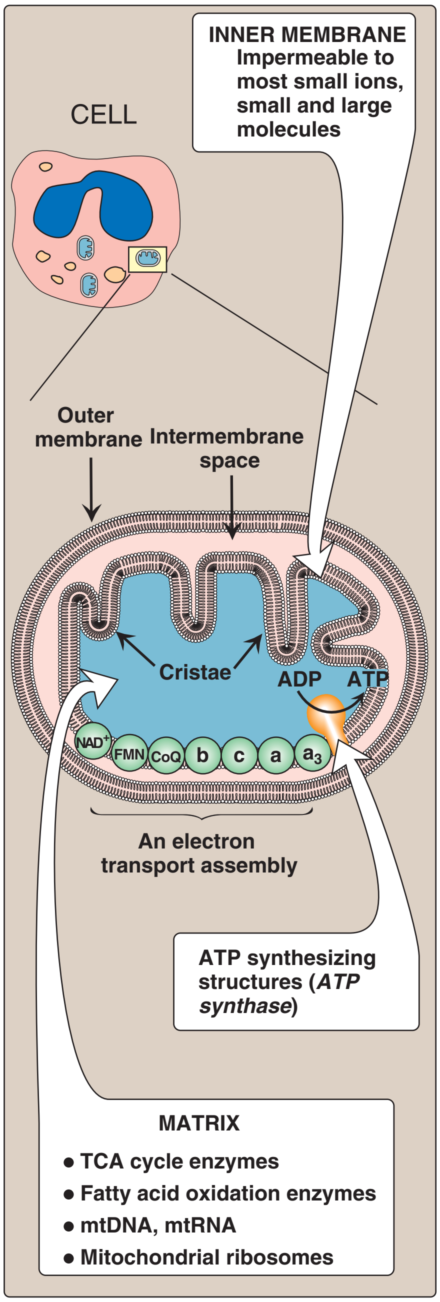

INNER MEMBRANE
Impermeable to most small ions, small and large molecules
CELL
Outer membrane
Intermembrane space
Cristae
ADP
ATP
NAD+
FMN
CoQ
b
c
a
a3
An electron transport assembly
ATP synthesizing structures (ATP synthase)
MATRIX
• TCA cycle enzymes
• Fatty acid oxidation enzymes
• mtDNA, mtRNA
• Mitochondrial ribosomes

Figure 6.7
Structure of a mitochondrion showing schematic representation of the electron transport chain and ATP synthesizing structures on the inner membrane.
mtDNA = mitochondrial DNA;
mtRNA = mitochondrial RNA.
[Note: In contrast to the inner membrane, the outer membrane is highly permeable and the milieu of the intermembrane space is like that of the cytosol.]

A. Mitochondrion

The electron transport chain is present in the inner mitochondrial membrane and is the final common pathway by which electrons derived from different fuels of the body flow to oxygen. Electron transport and ATP synthesis by oxidative phosphorylation proceed continuously in all tissues that contain mitochondria.

1. **Membranes of the mitochondrion:** The components of the electron transport chain are located in the inner membrane. Although the outer membrane contains special pores, making it freely permeable to most ions and small molecules, the inner mitochondrial membrane is a specialized structure that is impermeable to most small ions, including H^+, Na^+, and K^+, and small molecules such as ATP, ADP, pyruvate, and other metabolites important to mitochondrial function (Figure 6.7). Specialized carriers or transport systems are required to move ions or molecules across this membrane. The inner mitochondrial membrane is unusually rich in protein, half of which is directly involved in electron transport and oxidative phosphorylation. The inner mitochondrial membrane is highly convoluted. The convolutions, called cristae, serve to greatly increase the surface area of the membrane.

2. **Matrix of the mitochondrion:** This gel-like solution in the interior of mitochondria is 50% protein. These molecules include the enzymes responsible for the oxidation of pyruvate, amino acids, fatty acids (by β-oxidation), and those of the tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle. The synthesis of glucose, urea, and heme occur partially in the matrix of mitochondria. In addition, the matrix contains NAD^+ and FAD (the oxidized forms of the two coenzymes that are required as hydrogen acceptors) and ADP and P_i, which are used to produce ATP. [Note: The matrix also contains mitochondrial RNA and DNA (mtRNA and mtDNA) and mitochondrial ribosomes.]

B. Organization of the electron transport chain

The inner mitochondrial membrane can be disrupted into five separate protein complexes, called Complexes I, II, III, IV, and V. Complexes I–IV each contain part of the electron transport chain (Figure 6.8). Each complex accepts or donates electrons to relatively mobile electron carriers, such as coenzyme Q and cytochrome c. Each carrier in the electron transport chain can receive electrons from an electron donor, and can subsequently donate electrons to the next carrier in the chain. The electrons ultimately combine with oxygen and protons to form water. This requirement for oxygen makes the electron transport process the respiratory chain, which accounts for the greatest portion of the body's use of oxygen. Complex V is a protein complex that contains a domain (F_o) that spans the inner mitochondrial membrane, and a domain (F_1) that appears as a sphere that protrudes into the mitochondrial matrix (see p. 78). Complex V catalyzes ATP synthesis and so is referred to as *ATP synthase*.

C. Reactions of the electron transport chain

With the exception of coenzyme Q, all members of this chain are proteins. These may function as enzymes as is the case with the

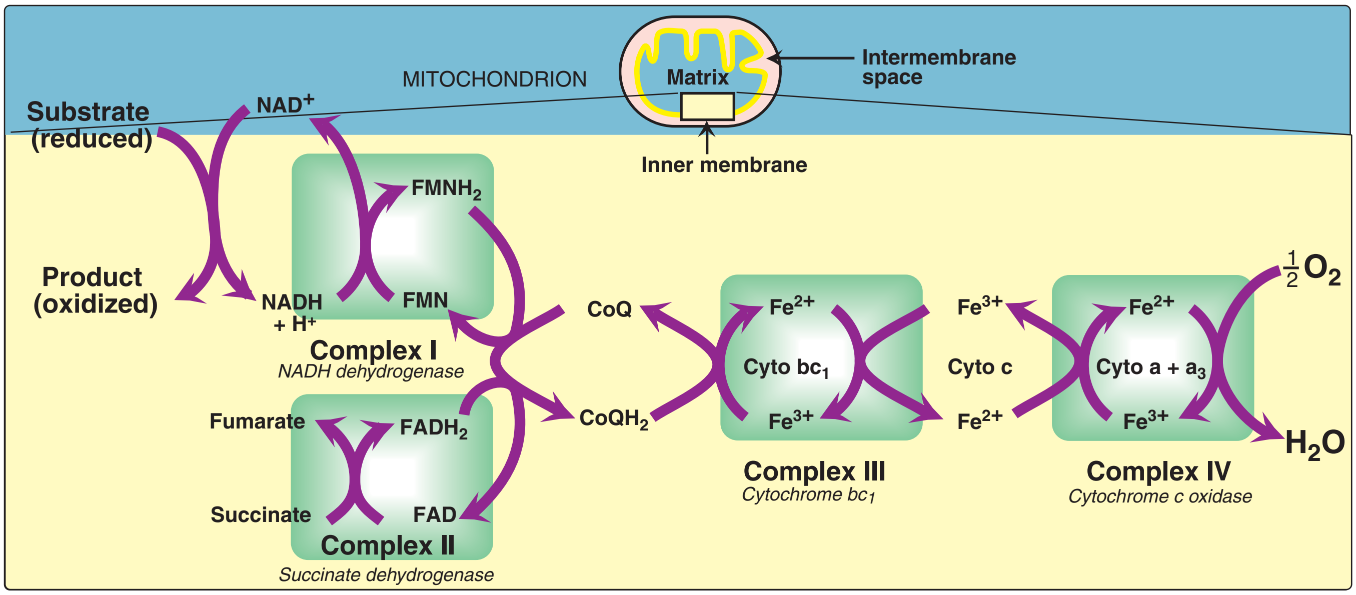

MITOCHONDRION
Matrix
Intermembrane space
Inner membrane
Substrate (reduced)
Product (oxidized)
NAD+
NADH + H+
FMNH2
FMN
Complex I
NADH dehydrogenase
Fumarate
Succinate
FADH2
FAD
Complex II
Succinate dehydrogenase
CoQ
CoQH2
Fe2+
Cyto bc1
Fe3+
Complex III
Cytochrome bc1
Fe3+
Cyto c
Fe2+
Fe2+
Cyto a + a3
Fe3+
Complex IV
Cytochrome c oxidase
½O2
H2O

Figure 6.8
Electron transport chain. [Note: NADH, produced from a variety of oxidative (catabolic) processes, is the substrate for Complex I. Succinate, an intermediate of the TCA cycle, is the substrate for Complex II.]

dehydrogenases, may contain iron as part of an iron–sulfur center, may be coordinated with a porphyrin ring as in the cytochromes, or may contain copper as does the cytochrome a + a_3 complex.

1. **Formation of NADH:** NAD^+ is reduced to NADH by *dehydrogenases* that remove two hydrogen atoms from their substrate. (For examples of these reactions, see the discussion of the *dehydrogenases* found in the TCA cycle, p. 112.) Both electrons but only one proton (that is, a hydride ion, $:H^-$) are transferred to the NAD^+, forming NADH plus a free proton, H^+.

2. **NADH dehydrogenase:** The free proton plus the hydride ion carried by NADH are next transferred to *NADH dehydrogenase*, a protein complex (Complex I) embedded in the inner mitochondrial membrane. Complex I has a tightly bound molecule of flavin mononucleotide (FMN, a coenzyme structurally related to FAD, see Figure 28.15, p. 380) that accepts the two hydrogen atoms ($2e^- + 2H^+$), becoming $FMNH_2$. *NADH dehydrogenase* also contains iron atoms paired with sulfur atoms to make iron–sulfur centers (Figure 6.9). These are necessary for the transfer of the hydrogen atoms to the next member of the chain, coenzyme Q (ubiquinone).

3. **Coenzyme Q:** Coenzyme Q (CoQ) is a quinone derivative with a long, hydrophobic isoprenoid tail. It is also called ubiquinone because it is ubiquitous in biologic systems. CoQ is a mobile carrier and can accept hydrogen atoms both from $FMNH_2$, produced on *NADH dehydrogenase* (Complex I), and from $FADH_2$, produced on *succinate dehydrogenase* (Complex II), *glycerophosphate dehydrogenase* (see p. 79), and *acyl CoA dehydrogenase* (see p. 192). CoQ transfers electrons to Complex III. CoQ, then, links the flavoproteins to the cytochromes.

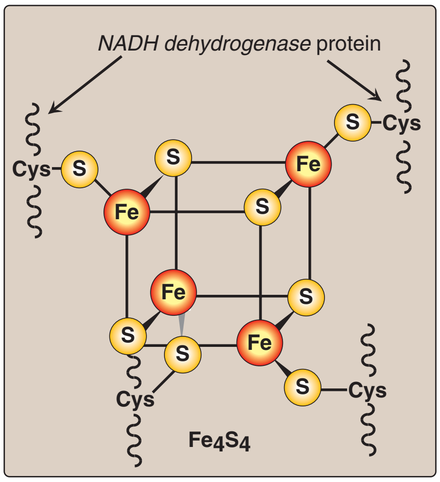

NADH dehydrogenase protein
Cys
S
Fe
S
Fe
S
S
Cys
Fe
S
S
Fe
S
Cys
S
Cys
Fe4S4

Figure 6.9
Iron-sulfur center of Complex I. [Note: Complexes II and III also contain iron-sulfur centers.

4. **Cytochromes:** The remaining members of the electron transport chain are cytochromes. Each contains a heme group (a porphyrin ring plus iron). Unlike the heme groups of hemoglobin, the cytochrome iron is reversibly converted from its ferric (Fe^{3+}) to its ferrous (Fe^{2+}) form as a normal part of its function as a reversible carrier of electrons. Electrons are passed along the chain from CoQ to cytochromes bc_1 (Complex III), c, and $a + a_3$ (Complex IV, see Figure 6.8). [Note: Cytochrome c is associated with the outer face of the inner membrane and, like CoQ, is a mobile carrier of electrons.]

5. **Cytochrome $a + a_3$:** This cytochrome complex is the only electron carrier in which the heme iron has an available coordination site that can react directly with O_2, and so also is called *cytochrome oxidase*. At this site, the transported electrons, O_2, and free protons are brought together, and O_2 is reduced to water (see Figure 6.8). *Cytochrome oxidase* contains copper atoms that are required for this complex reaction to occur.

6. **Site-specific inhibitors:** Site-specific inhibitors of electron transport have been identified and are illustrated in Figure 6.10. These compounds prevent the passage of electrons by binding to a component of the chain, blocking the oxidation/reduction reaction. Therefore, all electron carriers before the block are fully reduced, whereas those located after the block are oxidized. [Note: Inhibition of electron transport inhibits ATP synthesis because these processes are tightly coupled.]

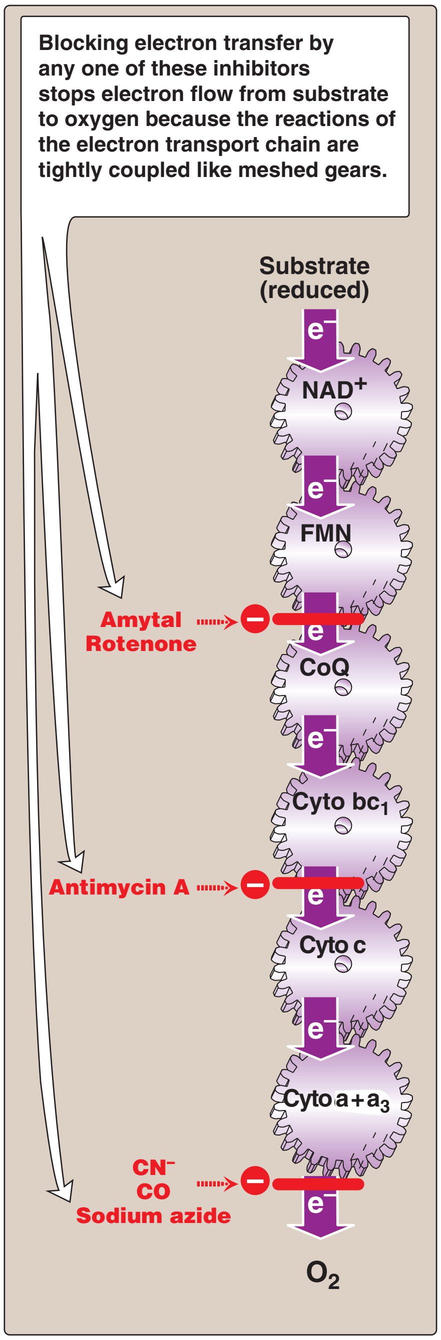

Blocking electron transfer by any one of these inhibitors stops electron flow from substrate to oxygen because the reactions of the electron transport chain are tightly coupled like meshed gears.

Figure 6.10
Site-specific inhibitors of electron transport shown using a mechanical model for the coupling of oxidation-reduction reactions. [Note: Figure illustrates normal direction of electron flow.]

Incomplete reduction of oxygen to water produces reactive oxygen species (ROS), such as superoxide ($O_2^{\bar{\bullet}}$), hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2) and hydroxyl radicals (OH•). ROS damage DNA and proteins, and cause lipid peroxidation. Enzymes such as *superoxide dismutase* (*SOD*), *catalase*, and *glutathione peroxidase* are cellular defenses against ROS.

D. Release of free energy during electron transport

Free energy is released as electrons are transferred along the electron transport chain from an electron donor (reducing agent or reductant) to an electron acceptor (oxidizing agent or oxidant). The electrons can be transferred as hydride ions ($:H^-$) to NAD^+, as hydrogen atoms (•H) to FMN, coenzyme Q, and FAD, or as electrons (e^-) to cytochromes.

1. **Redox pairs:** Oxidation (loss of electrons) of one compound is always accompanied by reduction (gain of electrons) of a second substance. For example, Figure 6.11 shows the oxidation of NADH to NAD^+ accompanied by the reduction of FMN to $FMNH_2$. Such oxidation-reduction reactions can be written as the sum of two separate half-reactions, one an oxidation reaction and the other a reduction reaction (see Figure 6.11). NAD^+ and NADH form a redox pair, as do FMN and $FMNH_2$. Redox pairs differ in their tendency to lose electrons. This tendency is a characteristic of a particular redox pair, and can be quantitatively specified by a constant, E_o (the standard reduction potential), with units in volts.

2. **Standard reduction potential (E_o):** The E_o of various redox pairs can be ordered from the most negative E_o to the most positive. The more negative the E_o of a redox pair, the greater the tendency of the reductant member of that pair to lose electrons. The more positive the E_o, the greater the tendency of the oxidant member of that pair to accept electrons. Therefore, electrons flow from the pair with the more negative E_o to that with the more positive E_o. The E_o values for some members of the electron transport chain are shown in Figure 6.12. [Note: The components of the electron transport chain are arranged in order of increasingly positive E_0 values.]

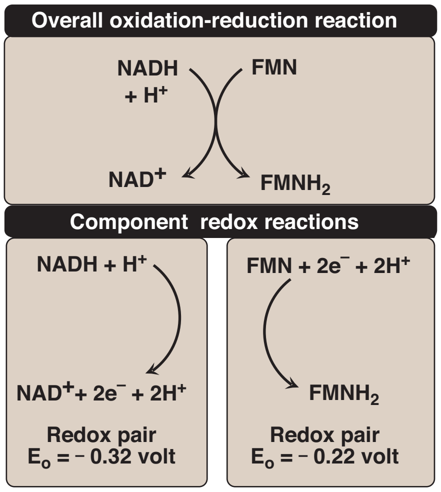


Figure 6.11
Oxidation of NADH by FMN, separated into two component redox pairs.

3. **ΔG^o is related to ΔE_o:** The change in free energy is related directly to the magnitude of the change in E_o:

$$\Delta G^o = -\, n\, F\, \Delta E_o$$

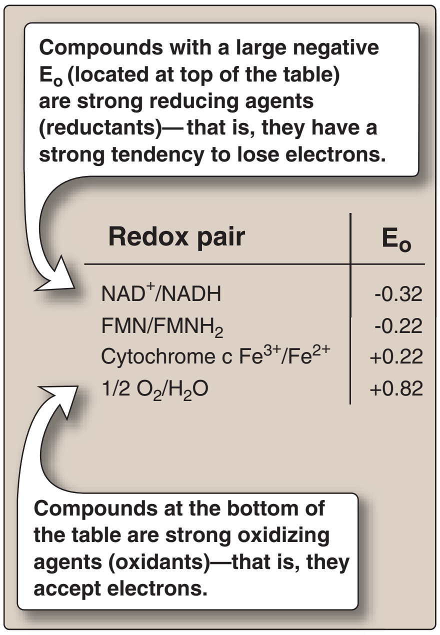
n = number of electrons transferred (1 for a cytochrome, 2 for NADH, $FADH_2$, and coenzyme Q)

F = Faraday constant (23.1 kcal/volt · mol)

ΔE_o = E_o of the electron-accepting pair minus the E_o of the electron-donating pair

ΔG^o = change in the standard free energy

4. **ΔG^o of ATP:** The standard free energy for the phosphorylation of ADP to ATP is +7.3 kcal/mol. The transport of a pair of electrons from NADH to oxygen via the electron transport chain produces 52.58 kcal. Therefore, more than sufficient energy is available to produce three ATP from three ADP and three P_i (3 x 7.3 = 21.9 kcal/mol), sometimes expressed as a P:O ratio (ATP made per O atom reduced) of 3:1. The remaining calories are used for ancillary reactions or released as heat. [Note: P:O for $FADH_2$ is 2:1 because Complex I is bypassed.]



Compounds with a large negative E_o (located at top of the table) are strong reducing agents (reductants)—that is, they have a strong tendency to lose electrons.

Redox pair	E_o
NAD^+/NADH	-0.32
FMN/$FMNH_2$	-0.22
Cytochrome c Fe^{3+}/Fe^{2+}	+0.22
1/2 O_2/H_2O	+0.82

Compounds at the bottom of the table are strong oxidizing agents (oxidants)—that is, they accept electrons.

Figure 6.12
Standard reduction potentials of some reactions.

VI. OXIDATIVE PHOSPHORYLATION

The transfer of electrons down the electron transport chain is energetically favored because NADH is a strong electron donor and molecular oxygen is an avid electron acceptor. However, the flow of electrons from NADH to oxygen does not directly result in ATP synthesis.

A. Chemiosmotic hypothesis

The chemiosmotic hypothesis (also known as the Mitchell hypothesis) explains how the free energy generated by the transport of electrons by the electron transport chain is used to produce ATP from ADP + P_i.

1. **Proton pump:** Electron transport is coupled to the phosphorylation of ADP by the transport ("pumping") of protons (H^+) across the inner mitochondrial membrane from the matrix to the intermembrane space at Complexes I, III, and IV. This process creates an electrical gradient (with more positive charges on the outside of the membrane than on the inside) and a pH gradient (the outside of the membrane is at a lower pH than the inside, Figure 6.13). The energy generated by this proton gradient is sufficient to drive ATP

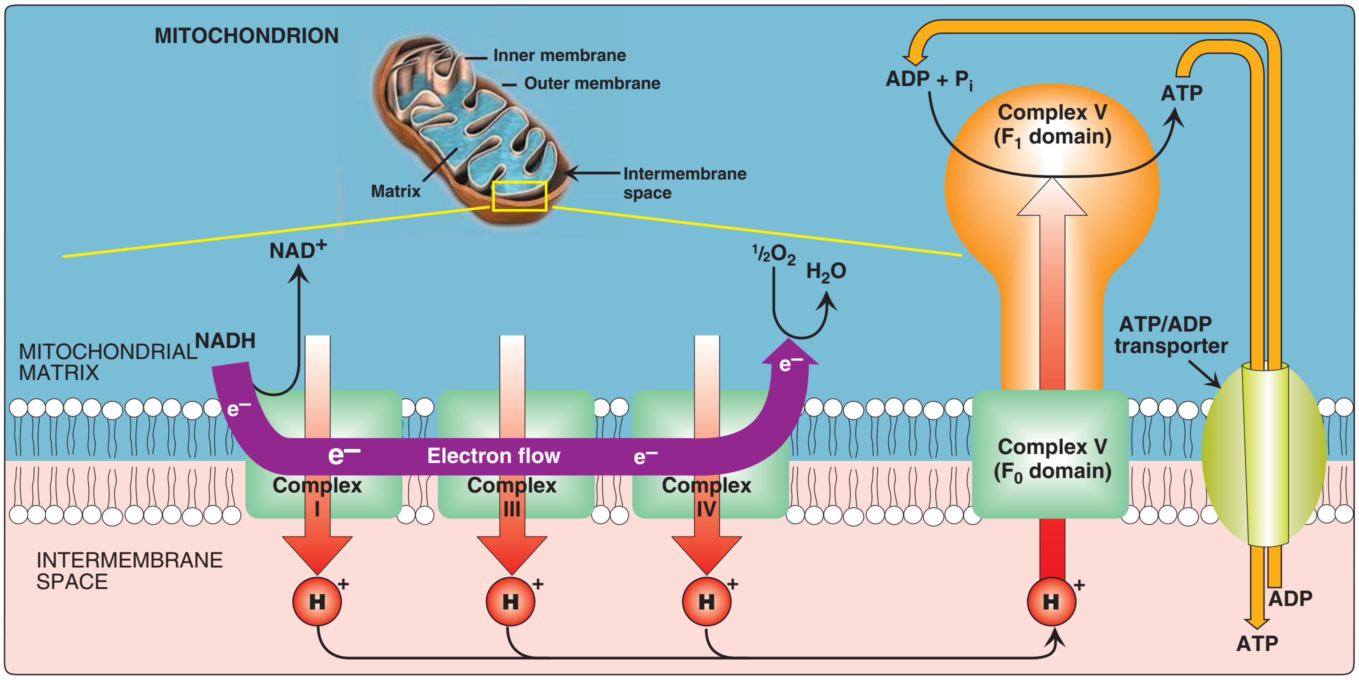

MITOCHONDRION
Inner membrane
Outer membrane
Matrix
Intermembrane space
ADP + P_i
Complex V (F_1 domain)
ATP
NAD$^+$
NADH
$^1/_2O_2$
H_2O
MITOCHONDRIAL MATRIX
e$^-$
Electron flow
Complex I
Complex III
Complex IV
ATP/ADP transporter
Complex V (F_0 domain)
INTERMEMBRANE SPACE
H$^+$
ADP
ATP

Figure 6.13
Electron transport chain shown coupled to the transport of protons. [Note: Protons are not pumped at Complex II.]

synthesis. Thus, the proton gradient serves as the common intermediate that couples oxidation to phosphorylation.

2. **ATP synthase:** The enzyme complex *ATP synthase* (Complex V, see Figure 6.13) synthesizes ATP using the energy of the proton gradient generated by the electron transport chain. [Note: It is also called F_1/F_o *ATPase* because the isolated enzyme can catalyze the hydrolysis of ATP to ADP and P_i.] The chemiosmotic hypothesis proposes that after protons have been pumped to the cytosolic side of the inner mitochondrial membrane, they reenter the matrix by passing through a channel in the membrane-spanning domain (F_o) of Complex V, driving rotation of F_o and, at the same time, dissipating the pH and electrical gradients. F_o rotation causes conformational changes in the extra-membranous F_1 domain that allow it to bind ADP + P_i, phosphorylate ADP to ATP, and release ATP.

    a. **Oligomycin:** This drug binds to the F_o (hence the letter o) domain of *ATP synthase,* closing the H$^+$ channel, preventing reentry of protons into the mitochondrial matrix, and thus preventing phosphorylation of ADP to ATP. Because the pH and electrical gradients cannot be dissipated in the presence of this drug, electron transport stops because of the difficulty of pumping any more protons against the steep gradients. This dependency of cellular respiration on the ability to phosphorylate ADP to ATP is known as respiratory control, and is the consequence of the tight coupling of these processes. Electron transport and phosphorylation are, therefore, again shown to be tightly coupled processes. Inhibition of one process inhibits the other. [Note: Respiratory control also results from decreased availability of ADP or P_i.]

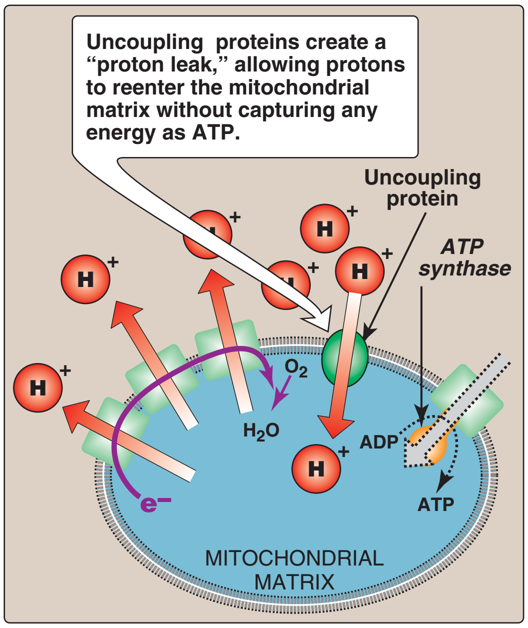

Uncoupling proteins create a "proton leak," allowing protons to reenter the mitochondrial matrix without capturing any energy as ATP.
Uncoupling protein
ATP synthase
H$^+$
O_2
H_2O
ADP
ATP
e$^-$
MITOCHONDRIAL MATRIX

Figure 6.14
Transport of H$^+$ across the mitochondrial membrane by 2,4-dinitrophenol.

b. Uncoupling proteins (UCP): UCPs occur in the inner mitochondrial membrane of mammals, including humans. These carrier proteins create a "proton leak," that is, they allow protons to re-enter the mitochondrial matrix without energy being captured as ATP (Figure 6.14). The energy is released as heat, and the process is called nonshivering thermogenesis. UCP1, also called thermogenin, is responsible for the heat production in the brown adipocytes of mammals. UCP1 is activated by fatty acids. Brown fat, unlike the more abundant white fat, uses almost 90% of its respiratory energy for thermogenesis in response to cold in the neonate, and during arousal in hibernating animals. However, humans appear to have little brown fat (except in the newborn), and UCP1 does not appear to play a major role in energy balance. [Note: Other uncoupling proteins (UCP2, UCP3) have been found in humans, but their significance remains unclear.]

c. Synthetic uncouplers: Electron transport and phosphorylation can also be uncoupled by compounds that increase the permeability of the inner mitochondrial membrane to protons. The classic example is 2,4-dinitrophenol, a lipophilic proton carrier that readily diffuses through the mitochondrial membrane. This uncoupler causes electron transport to proceed at a rapid rate without establishing a proton gradient, much as do the UCPs (see Figure 6.14). Again, energy is released as heat rather than being used to synthesize ATP. In high doses, aspirin and other salicylates uncouple oxidative phosphorylation. This explains the fever that accompanies toxic overdoses of these drugs.

B. Membrane transport systems

The inner mitochondrial membrane is impermeable to most charged or hydrophilic substances. However, it contains numerous transport proteins that permit passage of specific molecules from the cytosol (or more correctly, the intermembrane space) to the mitochondrial matrix.

1. **ATP-ADP transport:** The inner mitochondrial membrane requires specialized carriers to transport ADP and P_i from the cytosol (where ATP is used and converted to ADP in many energy-requiring reactions) into mitochondria, where ATP can be resynthesized. An adenine nucleotide carrier imports one molecule of ADP from the cytosol into mitochondria, while exporting one ATP from the matrix back into the cytosol (see Figure 6.13). [Note: A phosphate carrier is responsible for transporting P_i from the cytosol into mitochondria.]

2. **Transport of reducing equivalents:** The inner mitochondrial membrane lacks an NADH transporter, and NADH produced in the cytosol cannot directly enter the mitochondrial matrix. However, two electrons of NADH (also called reducing equivalents) are transported from the cytosol into the matrix using substrate shuttles. In the glycerophosphate shuttle (Figure 6.15A), two electrons are transferred from NADH to dihydroxyacetone phosphate by cytosolic *glycerophosphate dehydrogenase*. The glycerol 3-phosphate produced is oxidized by the mitochondrial isozyme as FAD is

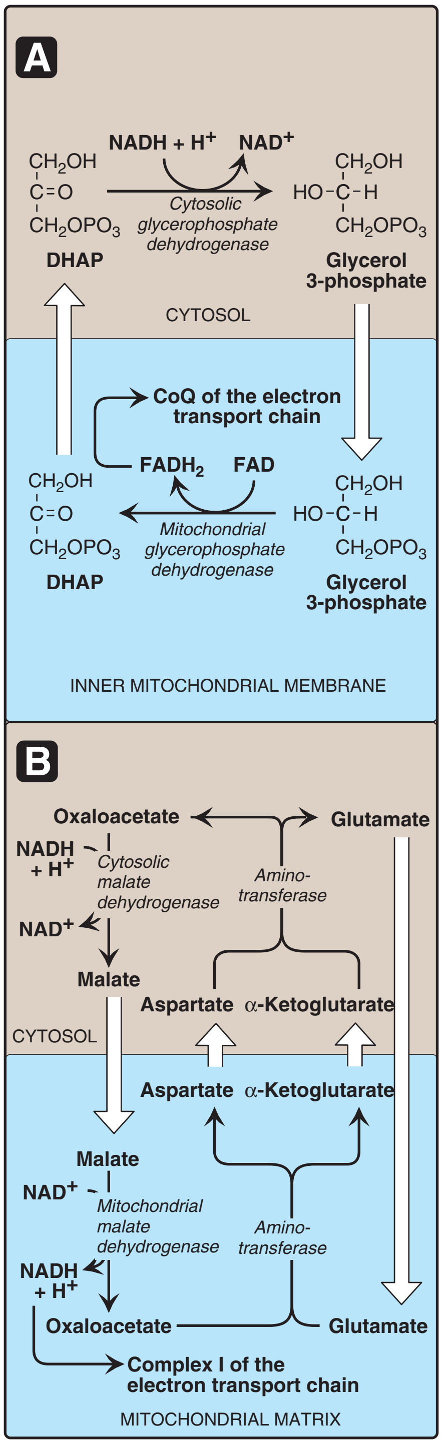

A
NADH + H⁺
NAD⁺
CH₂OH
C=O
CH₂OPO₃
DHAP
Cytosolic glycerophosphate dehydrogenase
CH₂OH
HO-C-H
CH₂OPO₃
Glycerol 3-phosphate
CYTOSOL
CoQ of the electron transport chain
FADH₂
FAD
CH₂OH
C=O
CH₂OPO₃
DHAP
Mitochondrial glycerophosphate dehydrogenase
CH₂OH
HO-C-H
CH₂OPO₃
Glycerol 3-phosphate
INNER MITOCHONDRIAL MEMBRANE
B
Oxaloacetate
Glutamate
NADH + H⁺
Cytosolic malate dehydrogenase
Amino-transferase
NAD⁺
Malate
Aspartate
α-Ketoglutarate
CYTOSOL
Aspartate
α-Ketoglutarate
Malate
NAD⁺
Mitochondrial malate dehydrogenase
Amino-transferase
NADH + H⁺
Oxaloacetate
Glutamate
Complex I of the electron transport chain
MITOCHONDRIAL MATRIX

Figure 6.15
Substrate shuttles for the transport of electrons across the inner mitochondrial membrane. A. Glycerol 3-phosphate shuttle. B. Malate-aspartate shuttle. DHAP = dihydroxyacetone phosphate.

reduced to $FADH_2$. CoQ of the electron transport chain oxidizes $FADH_2$. The glycerophosphate shuttle, therefore, results in the synthesis of two ATPs for each cytosolic NADH oxidized. This contrasts with the malate-aspartate shuttle (Figure 6.15B), which produces NADH (rather than $FADH_2$) in the mitochondrial matrix and, therefore, yields three ATPs for each cytosolic NADH oxidized by *malate dehydrogenase* as oxaloacetate is reduced to malate. A transport protein carries malate into the matrix.

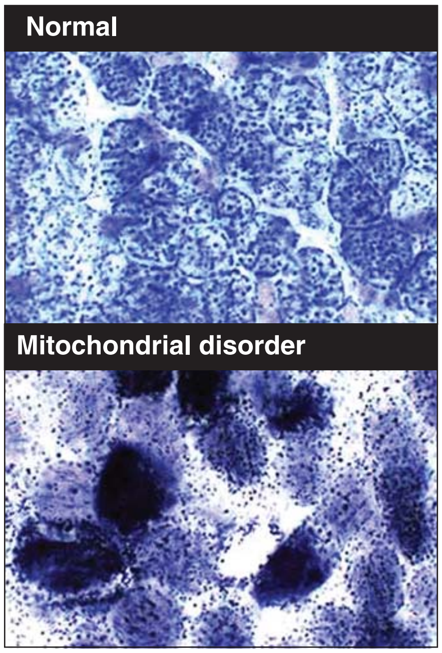


Figure 6.16
Muscle fibers from a patient with a mitochondrial myopathy show abnormal mitochondrial proliferation when stained for *succinate dehydrogenase*, an enzyme of Complex II.

C. Inherited defects in oxidative phosphorylation

Thirteen of the approximately 120 polypeptides required for oxidative phosphorylation are coded for by mtDNA and synthesized in mitochondria, whereas the remaining mitochondrial proteins are synthesized in the cytosol and transported into mitochondria. Defects in oxidative phosphorylation are more likely a result of alterations in mtDNA, which has a mutation rate about ten times greater than that of nuclear DNA. Tissues with the greatest ATP requirement (for example, central nervous system, skeletal and heart muscle, kidney, and liver) are most affected by defects in oxidative phosphorylation. Mutations in mtDNA are responsible for several diseases, including some cases of mitochondrial myopathies (Figure 6.16), and Leber hereditary optic neuropathy, a disease in which bilateral loss of central vision occurs as a result of neuroretinal degeneration, including damage to the optic nerve. The mtDNA is maternally inherited because mitochondria from the sperm cell do not enter the fertilized egg.

D. Mitochondria and apoptosis

The process of apoptosis or programmed cell death may be initiated through the intrinsic (mitochondrial-mediated) pathway by the formation of pores in the outer mitochondrial membrane. These pores allow cytochrome c to leave the intermembrane space and enter the cytosol. Once in the cytosol, cytochrome c, in association with proapoptotic factors, activates a family of proteolytic enzymes (the *caspases*), causing cleavage of key proteins and resulting in the morphologic and biochemical changes characteristic of apoptosis.

VII. CHAPTER SUMMARY

The change in **free energy** (**ΔG**) occurring during a reaction predicts the direction in which that reaction will spontaneously proceed. **If ΔG** is **negative** (that is, the product has a lower free energy than the substrate), the **reaction goes spontaneously**. If **ΔG** is **positive**, the reaction **does not go spontaneously**. If **ΔG = 0**, the reactions are in **equilibrium**. The **ΔG** of the forward reaction (A → B) is equal in magnitude but opposite in sign to that of the back reaction (B → A). The **ΔG**s are **additive** in any sequence of consecutive reactions, as are the standard free energy changes (**ΔG^o**s). Therefore, reactions or processes that have a large, positive ΔG are made possible by **coupling** with cleavage of **adenosine triphosphate** (**ATP**), which has a large, negative ΔG. The reduced coenzymes **NADH** and **$FADH_2$** each donate a pair of electrons to a specialized set of electron carriers, consisting of **FMN**,

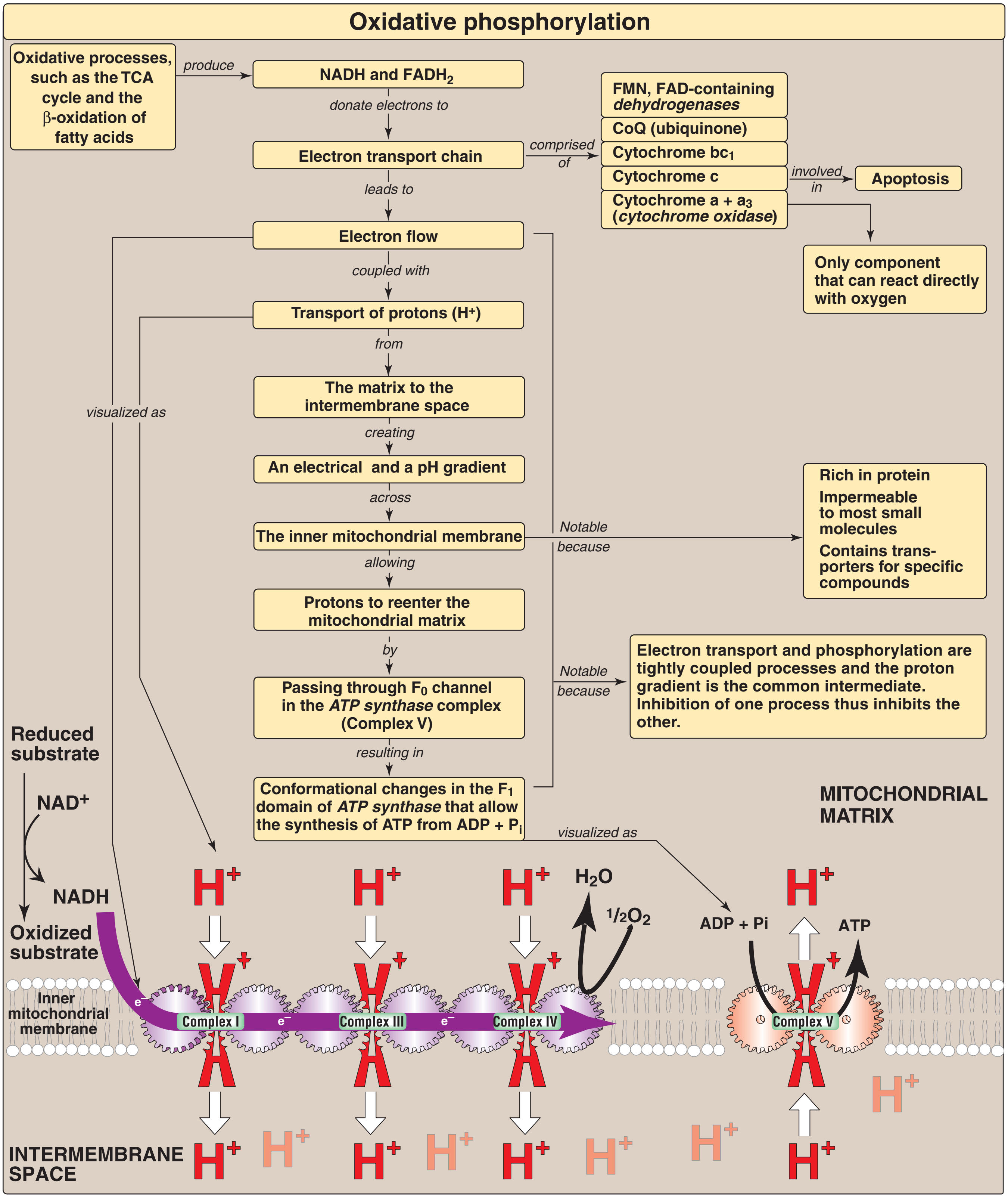

Oxidative phosphorylation
Oxidative processes, such as the TCA cycle and the β-oxidation of fatty acids
produce
NADH and FADH$_2$
donate electrons to
Electron transport chain
comprised of
FMN, FAD-containing *dehydrogenases*
CoQ (ubiquinone)
Cytochrome bc$_1$
Cytochrome c
Cytochrome a + a$_3$ (*cytochrome oxidase*)
involved in
Apoptosis
Only component that can react directly with oxygen
leads to
Electron flow
coupled with
Transport of protons (H$^+$)
from
The matrix to the intermembrane space
creating
An electrical and a pH gradient
across
The inner mitochondrial membrane
Notable because
Rich in protein
Impermeable to most small molecules
Contains transporters for specific compounds
allowing
Protons to reenter the mitochondrial matrix
by
Passing through F$_0$ channel in the *ATP synthase* complex (Complex V)
Notable because
Electron transport and phosphorylation are tightly coupled processes and the proton gradient is the common intermediate. Inhibition of one process thus inhibits the other.
resulting in
Conformational changes in the F$_1$ domain of *ATP synthase* that allow the synthesis of ATP from ADP + P$_i$
visualized as
visualized as
MITOCHONDRIAL MATRIX
Reduced substrate
NAD$^+$
NADH
Oxidized substrate
H$^+$
H$_2$O
$^1/_2$O$_2$
ADP + Pi
ATP
e$^-$
Complex I
Complex III
Complex IV
Complex V
Inner mitochondrial membrane
INTERMEMBRANE SPACE

Figure 6.17
Summary of key concepts for oxidative phosphorylation. [Note: Electron flow and ATP synthesis are envisioned as sets of interlocking gears to emphasize the idea of coupling.]

coenzyme Q, and a series of **cytochromes**, collectively called the **electron transport chain**. This pathway is present in the **inner mitochondrial membrane**, and is the final common pathway by which electrons derived from different fuels of the body flow to oxygen, reducing it to water. The terminal cytochrome, cytochrome oxidase, is the only cytochrome able to bind oxygen. **Electron transport** is coupled to the **transport of protons** (H^+) across the inner mitochondrial membrane from the matrix to the intermembrane space. This process creates **electrical** and **pH gradients** across the inner mitochondrial membrane. After protons have been transferred to the cytosolic side of the inner mitochondrial membrane, they reenter the mitochondrial matrix by passing through the F_o channel in **ATP synthase (Complex V)**, dissipating the pH and electrical gradients and causing conformational changes in F_1 that result in the synthesis of ATP from ADP + P_i. **Electron transport** and **phosphorylation** are thus said to be **tightly coupled** (Figure 6.17). Inhibition of one process inhibits the other. These processes can be **uncoupled** by **uncoupling proteins** found in the inner mitochondrial membrane, and by synthetic compounds such as **2,4-dinitrophenol** and **aspirin**, all of which increase the permeability of the inner mitochondrial membrane to protons. The energy produced by the transport of electrons is released as **heat** rather than being used to synthesize ATP. Mutations in **mitochondrial DNA** (**mtDNA**) are responsible for some cases of **mitochondrial diseases**, such as **Leber hereditary optic neuropathy**. The release of cytochrome c into the cytoplasm and subsequent activation of proteolytic caspases results in apoptotic cell death.

Study Questions

Choose the ONE correct answer.

6.1 A muscle biopsy specimen from a patient with a rare disorder, Luft disease, showed abnormally large mitochondria that contained packed cristae when examined in the electron microscope. Basal ATPase activity of the mitochondria was seven times greater than normal. From these and other data it was concluded that oxidation and phosphorylation were partially uncoupled. Which of the following statements about this patient is correct?

A. The rate of electron transport is abnormally low.
B. The proton gradient across the inner mitochondrial membrane is greater than normal.
C. ATP levels in the mitochondria are greater than normal.
D. Cyanide would not inhibit electron flow.
E. The patient shows hypermetabolism and elevated core temperature.

Correct answer = E. When phosphorylation is partially uncoupled from electron flow, one would expect a decrease in the proton gradient across the inner mitochondrial membrane and, hence, impaired ATP synthesis. In an attempt to compensate for this defect in energy capture, metabolism and electron flow to oxygen is increased. This hypermetabolism will be accompanied by elevated body temperature because the energy in fuels is largely wasted, appearing as heat. The electron transport chain will still be inhibited by cyanide.

6.2 Explain why and how the malate-aspartate shuttle moves NADH reducing equivalents from the cytosol to the mitochondrial matrix.

There is no transporter for NADH in the inner mitochondrial membrane. However, NADH can be oxidized to NAD^+ by the cytoplasmic isozyme of malate dehydrogenase as oxaloacetate is reduced to malate. The malate is transported across the inner membrane, and the mitochondrial isozyme of malate dehydrogenase oxidizes it to oxaloacetate as mitochondrial NAD^+ is reduced to NADH. This NADH can be oxidized by Complex I of the electron transport chain, generating three ATP through the coupled processes of respiration and oxidative phosphorylation.

6.3 CO binds to and inhibits Complex IV of the electron transport chain. What effect, if any, should this respiratory inhibitor have on oxidative phosphorylation?

Inhibition of the electron transport chain by respiratory inhibitors such as CO results in an inability to maintain the proton gradient. Oxidative phosphorylation is therefore inhibited, as are ancillary reactions, because they also require the proton gradient.

Introduction to Carbohydrates

7

I. OVERVIEW

Carbohydrates are the most abundant organic molecules in nature. They have a wide range of functions, including providing a significant fraction of the dietary calories for most organisms, acting as a storage form of energy in the body, and serving as cell membrane components that mediate some forms of intercellular communication. Carbohydrates also serve as a structural component of many organisms, including the cell walls of bacteria, the exoskeleton of many insects, and the fibrous cellulose of plants. The empiric formula for many of the simpler carbohydrates is $(CH_2O)_n$, hence the name "hydrate of carbon."

II. CLASSIFICATION AND STRUCTURE OF CARBOHYDRATES

Monosaccharides (simple sugars) can be classified according to the number of carbon atoms they contain. Examples of some monosaccharides commonly found in humans are listed in Figure 7.1. Carbohydrates with an aldehyde as their most oxidized functional group are called aldoses, whereas those with a keto as their most oxidized functional group are called ketoses (Figure 7.2). For example, glyceraldehyde is an aldose, whereas dihydroxyacetone is a ketose. Carbohydrates that have a free carbonyl group have the suffix –ose. [Note: Ketoses (with some exceptions, for example, fructose) have an additional two letters in their suffix: –ulose, for example, xylulose.] Monosaccharides can be linked by glycosidic bonds to create larger structures (Figure 7.3). Disaccharides contain two monosaccharide units, oligosaccharides contain from three to about ten monosaccharide units, whereas polysaccharides contain more than ten monosaccharide units, and can be hundreds of sugar units in length.

Generic names	Examples
3 Carbons: trioses	Glyceraldehyde
4 Carbons: tetroses	Erythrose
5 Carbons: pentoses	Ribose
6 Carbons: hexoses	Glucose
7 Carbons: heptoses	Sedoheptulose
9 Carbons: nonoses	Neuraminic acid

Figure 7.1
Examples of monosaccharides found in humans, classified according to the number of carbons they contain.

A. Isomers and epimers

Compounds that have the same chemical formula but have different structures are called isomers. For example, fructose, glucose, mannose, and galactose are all isomers of each other, having the same chemical formula, $C_6H_{12}O_6$. Carbohydrate isomers that differ in configuration around only one specific carbon atom (with the exception of the carbonyl carbon, see "anomers" below) are defined as epimers of each other. For example, glucose and galactose are C-4

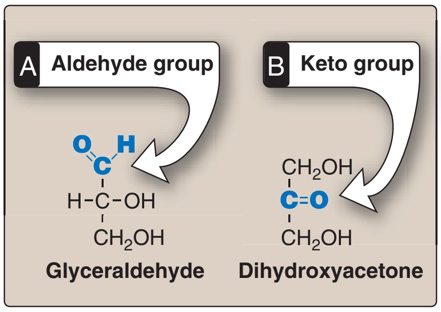


Figure 7.2
Examples of an aldose (A) and a ketose (B) sugar.

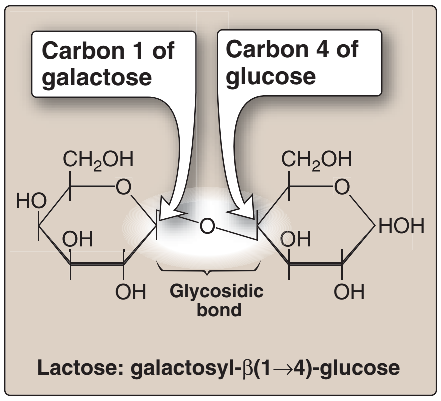


Figure 7.3
A glycosidic bond between two hexoses producing a disaccharide.

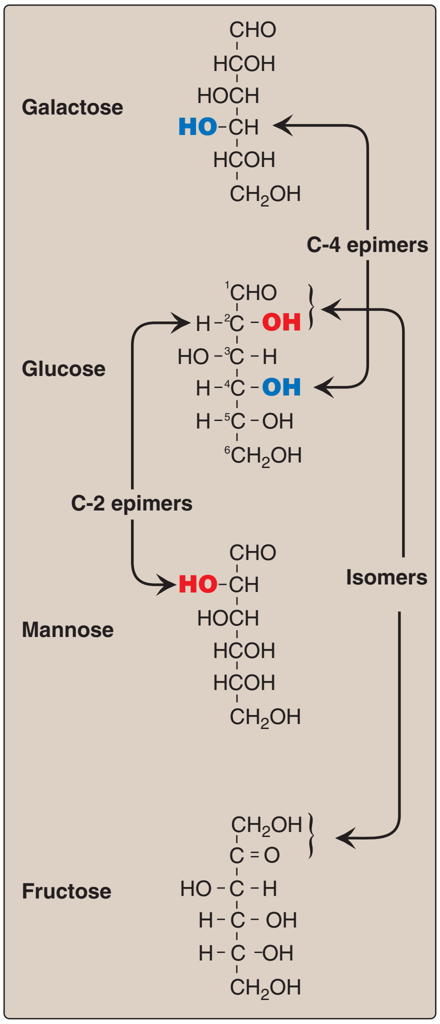


Figure 7.4
C-2 and C-4 epimers and an isomer of glucose.

epimers—their structures differ only in the position of the –OH group at carbon 4. [Note: The carbons in sugars are numbered beginning at the end that contains the carbonyl carbon—that is, the aldehyde or keto group (Figure 7.4).] Glucose and mannose are C-2 epimers. However, galactose and mannose are NOT epimers—they differ in the position of –OH groups at two carbons (2 and 4) and are, therefore, defined only as isomers (see Figure 7.4).

B. Enantiomers

A special type of isomerism is found in the pairs of structures that are mirror images of each other. These mirror images are called enantiomers, and the two members of the pair are designated as a D- and an L-sugar (Figure 7.5). The vast majority of the sugars in humans are D-sugars. In the D isomeric form, the –OH group on the asymmetric carbon (a carbon linked to four different atoms or groups) farthest from the carbonyl carbon is on the right, whereas in the L-isomer it is on the left. Enzymes known as *racemases* are able to interconvert D- and L-isomers.

C. Cyclization of monosaccharides

Less than 1% of each of the monosaccharides with five or more carbons exists in the open-chain (acyclic) form. Rather, they are predominantly found in a ring (cyclic) form, in which the aldehyde (or keto) group has reacted with an alcohol group on the same sugar, making the carbonyl carbon (carbon 1 for an aldose or carbon 2 for a ketose) asymmetric. [Note: Pyranose refers to a six-membered ring consisting of five carbons and one oxygen, for example, glucopyranose (Figure 7.6), whereas furanose denotes a five-membered ring with four carbons and one oxygen.]

1. **Anomeric carbon:** Cyclization creates an anomeric carbon (the former carbonyl carbon), generating the α and β configurations of the sugar, for example, α-D-glucopyranose and β-D-glucopryanose (see Figure 7.6). These two sugars are both glucose but are anomers of each other. [Note: In the α configuration, the OH on the anomeric C projects to the same side as the ring in a modified Fischer projection formula (Figure 7.6A), and is trans to the CH_2OH group in a Haworth projection formula (Figure 7.6B). Because the α and β forms are not mirror images, they are referred to as diastereomers.] Enzymes are able to distinguish between these two structures and use one or the other preferentially. For example, glycogen is synthesized from α-D-glucopyranose, whereas cellulose is synthesized from β-D-glucopyranose. The cyclic α and β anomers of a sugar in solution are in equilibrium with each other, and can be spontaneously interconverted (a process called mutarotation, see Figure 7.6).

2. **Reducing sugars:** If the hydroxyl group on the anomeric carbon of a cyclized sugar is not linked to another compound by a glycosidic bond, the ring can open. The sugar can act as a reducing agent, and is termed a reducing sugar. Such sugars can react with chromogenic agents (for example, Benedict's reagent or Fehling's solution) causing the reagent to be reduced and colored, with the aldehyde group of the acyclic sugar becoming oxidized. [Note:

Only the state of the oxygen in the aldehyde group determines if the sugar is reducing or nonreducing.]

> A colorimetric test can detect a reducing sugar in urine. A positive result is indicative of an underlying pathology because sugars are not normally present in urine, and can be followed up by more specific tests to identify the reducing sugar.

D. Joining of monosaccharides

Monosaccharides can be joined to form disaccharides, oligosaccharides, and polysaccharides. Important disaccharides include lactose (galactose + glucose), sucrose (glucose + fructose), and maltose (glucose + glucose). Important polysaccharides include branched glycogen (from animal sources) and starch (plant sources) and unbranched cellulose (plant sources); each is a polymer of glucose. The bonds that link sugars are called glycosidic bonds. These are formed by enzymes known as *glycosyltransferases* that use nucleotide sugars such as UDP-glucose as substrates.

1. **Naming glycosidic bonds:** Glycosidic bonds between sugars are named according to the numbers of the connected carbons, and with regard to the position of the anomeric hydroxyl group of the sugar involved in the bond. If this anomeric hydroxyl is in the α configuration, the linkage is an α-bond. If it is in the β configuration, the linkage is a β-bond. Lactose, for example, is synthesized by forming a glycosidic bond between carbon 1 of β-galactose and carbon 4 of glucose. The linkage is, therefore, a $\beta(1\rightarrow4)$ glycosidic bond (see Figure 7.3). [Note: Because the anomeric end of the glucose residue is not involved in the glycosidic linkage it (and, therefore, lactose) remains a reducing sugar.]

E. Complex carbohydrates

Carbohydrates can be attached by glycosidic bonds to non-carbohydrate structures, including purine and pyrimidine bases (found in

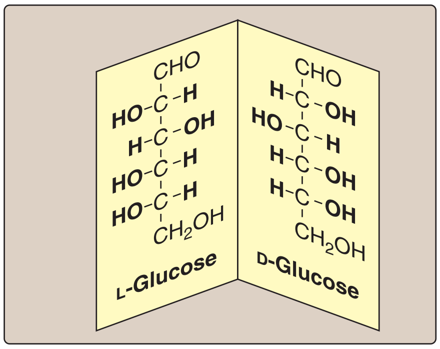


Figure 7.5
Enantiomers (mirror images) of glucose.

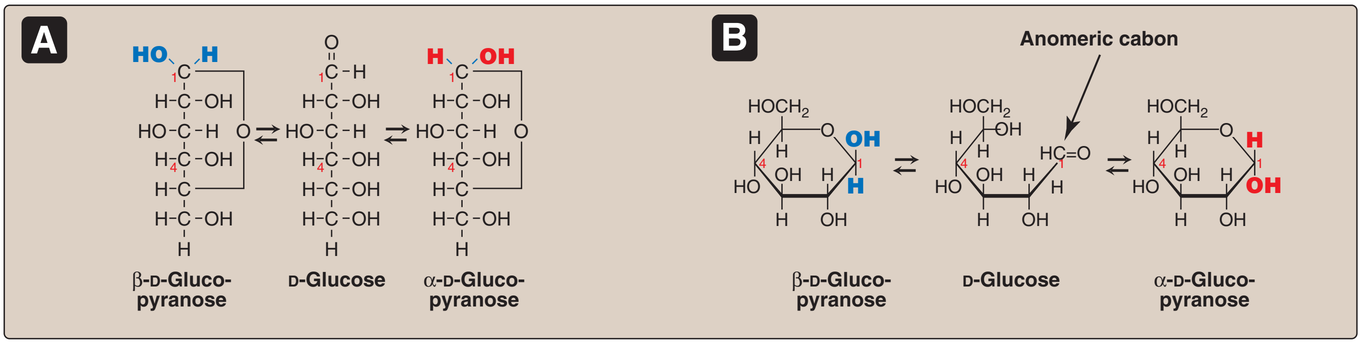


Figure 7.6
A The interconversion (mutarotation) of the α and β anomeric forms of glucose shown as modified Fischer projection formulas. B. The interconversion shown as Haworth projection formulas. Carbon 1 is the anomeric carbon. [Note: Glucose is a reducing sugar.]

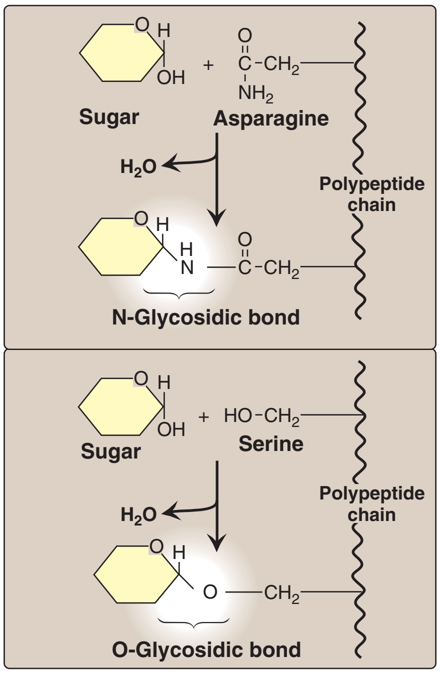


Figure 7.7
Glycosides: examples of N- and O-glycosidic bonds.

nucleic acids), aromatic rings (such as those found in steroids and bilirubin), proteins (found in glycoproteins and proteoglycans), and lipids (found in glycolipids).

1. **N- and O-glycosides:** If the group on the non-carbohydrate molecule to which the sugar is attached is an $-NH_2$ group, the structure is an N-glycoside and the bond is called an N-glycosidic link. If the group is an –OH, the structure is an O-glycoside, and the bond is an O-glycosidic link (Figure 7.7). [Note: All sugar–sugar glycosidic bonds are O-type linkages.]

III. DIGESTION OF DIETARY CARBOHYDRATES

The principal sites of dietary carbohydrate digestion are the mouth and intestinal lumen. This digestion is rapid and is catalyzed by enzymes known as *glycoside hydrolases* (*glycosidases*) that hydrolyze glycosidic bonds. Because there is little monosaccharide present in diets of mixed animal and plant origin, the enzymes are primarily *endoglycosidases* that hydrolyze polysaccharides and oliosaccharides, and *disaccharidases* that hydrolyse tri- and disaccharides into their reducing sugar components (Figure 7.8). *Glycosidases* are usually specific for the structure and configuration of the glycosyl residue to be removed, as well as for the type of bond to be broken. The final products of carbohydrate digestion are the monosaccharides, glucose, galactose and fructose, which are absorbed by cells of the small intestine.

A. Digestion of carbohydrates begins in the mouth

The major dietary polysaccharides are of plant (starch, composed of amylose and amylopectin) and animal (glycogen) origin. During mastication, salivary *α-amylase* acts briefly on dietary starch and glycogen, hydrolyzing random α(1→4) bonds. [Note: There are both *α(1→4)*- and *β(1→4)-endoglucosidases* in nature, but humans do not produce the latter. Therefore, we are unable to digest cellulose—a carbohydrate of plant origin containing β(1→4) glycosidic bonds between glucose residues.] Because branched amylopectin and glycogen also contain α(1→6) bonds, which *α-amylase* cannot hydrolyze, the digest resulting from its action contains a mixture of short, branched and unbranched oligosaccharides kown as dextrins (Figure 7.9) [Note: Disaccharides are also present as they, too, are resistant to *amylase*.] Carbohydrate digestion halts temporarily in the stomach, because the high acidity inactivates salivary *α-amylase*.

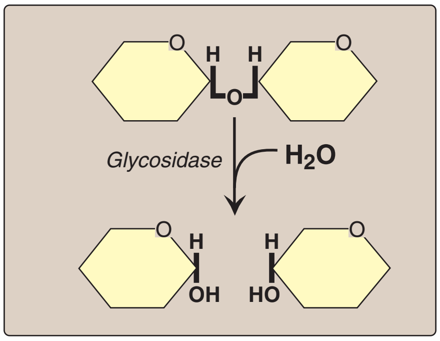


Figure 7.8
Hydrolysis of a glycosidic bond.

B. Further digestion of carbohydrates by pancreatic enzymes occurs in the small intestine

When the acidic stomach contents reach the small intestine, they are neutralized by bicarbonate secreted by the pancreas, and pancreatic *α-amylase* continues the process of starch digestion.

C. Final carbohydrate digestion by enzymes synthesized by the intestinal mucosal cells

The final digestive processes occur primarily at the mucosal lining of the upper jejunum, and include the action of several *disacchari-*

dases (Figure 7.10). For example, *isomaltase* cleaves the $\alpha(1\rightarrow6)$ bond in isomaltose and *maltase* cleaves maltose and maltotriose, each producing glucose, *sucrase* cleaves sucrose producing glucose and fructose, and *lactase* (*β-galactosidase*) cleaves lactose producing galactose and glucose. Trehalose, an $\alpha(1\rightarrow1)$ disaccharide of glucose found in mushrooms and other fungi, is cleaved by *trehalase*. These enzymes are secreted through, and remain associated with, the luminal side of the brush border membranes of the intestinal mucosal cells. [Note: The substrates for *isomaltase* are broader than its name suggests, as it hydrolyzes the majority of maltose.]

> *Sucrase* and *isomaltase* are enzymic activities of a single protein which is cleaved into two functional subunits that remain associated in the cell membrane, forming the *sucrase-isomaltase* complex. *Maltase* forms a similar complex with an *exoglucosidase* (*glucoamylase*) that cleaves $\alpha(1\rightarrow4)$ glycosidic bonds in dextrins.

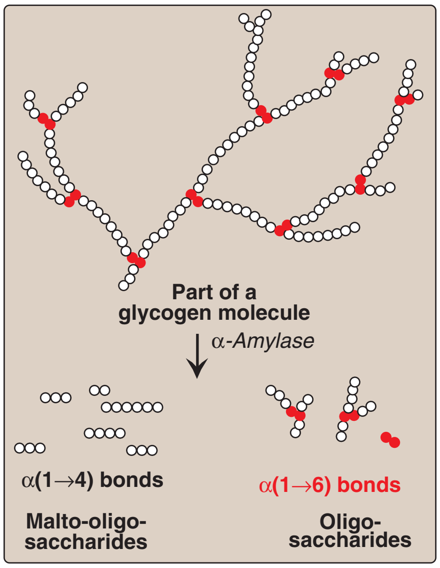

Part of a glycogen molecule
α-Amylase
α(1→4) bonds
α(1→6) bonds
Malto-oligo-saccharides
Oligo-saccharides

Figure 7.9
Degradation of dietary glycogen by salivary or pancreatic *α-amylase*.

D. Absorption of monosaccharides by intestinal mucosal cells

The duodenum and upper jejunum absorb the bulk of the dietary sugars. However, different sugars have different mechanisms of absorption. For example, galactose and glucose are transported into the mucosal cells by an active, energy-requiring process that requires a concurrent uptake of sodium ions; the transport protein is the sodium-dependent glucose cotransporter 1 (SGLT-1). Fructose uptake requires a sodium-independent monosaccharide transporter (GLUT-5) for its absorption. All three monosaccharides are transported from the intestinal mucosal cell into the portal circulation by yet another transporter, GLUT-2. (See p. 97 for a discussion of these transporters.)

E. Abnormal degradation of disaccharides

The overall process of carbohydrate digestion and absorption is so efficient in healthy individuals that ordinarily all digestible dietary carbohydrate is absorbed by the time the ingested material reaches the lower jejunum. However, because it is monosaccharides that are absorbed, any defect in a specific *disaccharidase* activity of the intestinal mucosa causes the passage of undigested carbohydrate into the large intestine. As a consequence of the presence of this osmotically active material, water is drawn from the mucosa into the large intestine, causing osmotic diarrhea. This is reinforced by the bacterial fermentation of the remaining carbohydrate to two- and three-carbon compounds (which are also osmotically active) plus large volumes of CO_2 and H_2 gas, causing abdominal cramps, diarrhea, and flatulence.

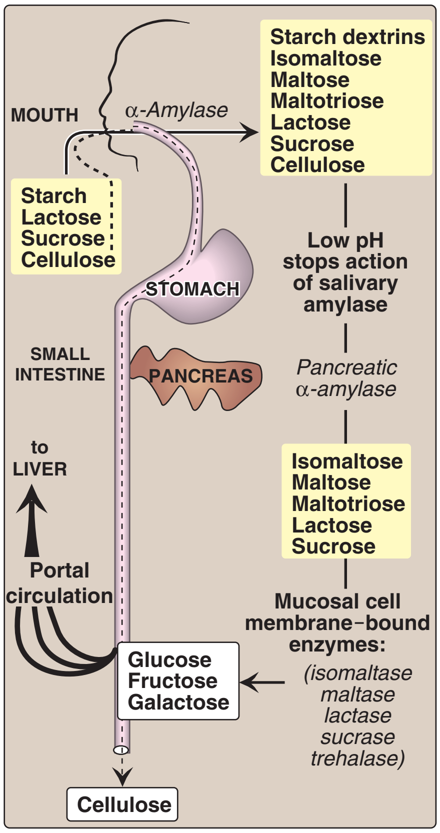

MOUTH
α-Amylase
Starch dextrins
Isomaltose
Maltose
Maltotriose
Lactose
Sucrose
Cellulose
Starch
Lactose
Sucrose
Cellulose
STOMACH
Low pH stops action of salivary amylase
SMALL INTESTINE
PANCREAS
Pancreatic α-amylase
to LIVER
Isomaltose
Maltose
Maltotriose
Lactose
Sucrose
Portal circulation
Mucosal cell membrane–bound enzymes:
(isomaltase
maltase
lactase
sucrase
trehalase)
Glucose
Fructose
Galactose
Cellulose

Figure 7.10
Digestion of carbohydrates. [Note: Indigestible cellulose enters the colon and is excreted.]

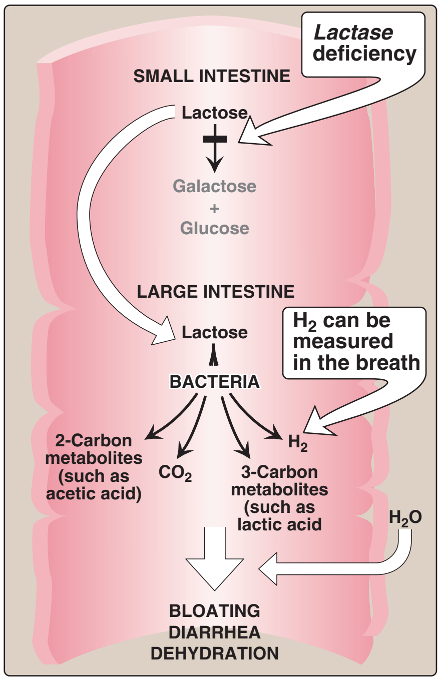


Figure 7.11
Abnormal lactose metabolism.

1. **Digestive enzyme deficiencies:** Genetic deficiencies of the individual *disaccharidases* result in disaccharide intolerance. Alterations in disaccharide degradation can also be caused by a variety of intestinal diseases, malnutrition, or drugs that injure the mucosa of the small intestine. For example, brush border enzymes are rapidly lost in normal individuals with severe diarrhea, causing a temporary, acquired enzyme deficiency. Thus, patients suffering or recovering from such a disorder cannot drink or eat significant amounts of dairy products or sucrose without exacerbating the diarrhea.

2. **Lactose intolerance:** More than three quarters of the world's adults are lactose intolerant (Figure 7.11). This is particularly manifested in certain populations. For example, up to 90% of adults of African or Asian descent are *lactase*-deficient and, therefore, are less able to metabolize lactose than individuals of Northern European origin. The age-dependent loss of *lactase* activity represents a reduction in the amount of enzyme rather than a modified inactive enzyme. It is thought to be caused by small variations in the DNA sequence of a region on chromosome 2 that controls expression of the gene for *lactase*, also on chromosome 2. Treatment for this disorder is to reduce consumption of milk while eating yogurts and cheeses, as well as green vegetables such as broccoli, to ensure adequate calcium intake; to use *lactase*-treated products; or to take *lactase* in pill form prior to eating. [Note: Because the loss of *lactase* is the norm for most of the world's adults, use of the term "adult hypolactasia" for lactose intolerance is becoming more common.]

3. **Sucrase-isomaltase complex deficiency:** This deficiency results in an intolerance of ingested sucrose. The disorder is found in about 10% of the Inuit people of Greenland and Canada, whereas 2% of North Americans are heterozygous for the deficiency. Treatment includes the dietary restriction of sucrose, and enzyme replacement therapy.

4. **Diagnosis:** Identification of a specific enzyme deficiency can be obtained by performing oral tolerance tests with the individual disaccharides. Measurement of hydrogen gas in the breath is a reliable test for determining the amount of ingested carbohydrate not absorbed by the body, but which is metabolized instead by the intestinal flora (see Figure 7.11).

IV. CHAPTER SUMMARY

Monosaccharides (simple sugars, Figure 7.12) containing an aldehyde group are called **aldoses** and those with a keto group are called **ketoses**. **Disaccharides**, **oligosaccharides**, and **polysaccharides** consist of monosaccharides linked by **glycosidic bonds**. Compounds with the same chemical formula are called **isomers**. If two monosaccharide isomers differ in configuration around one specific carbon atom (with the exception of the carbonyl carbon), they are defined as **epimers** of each other. If a pair of sugars are mirror images (**enantiomers**), the two members of the pair are designated as **D-** and **L-sugars**. When a

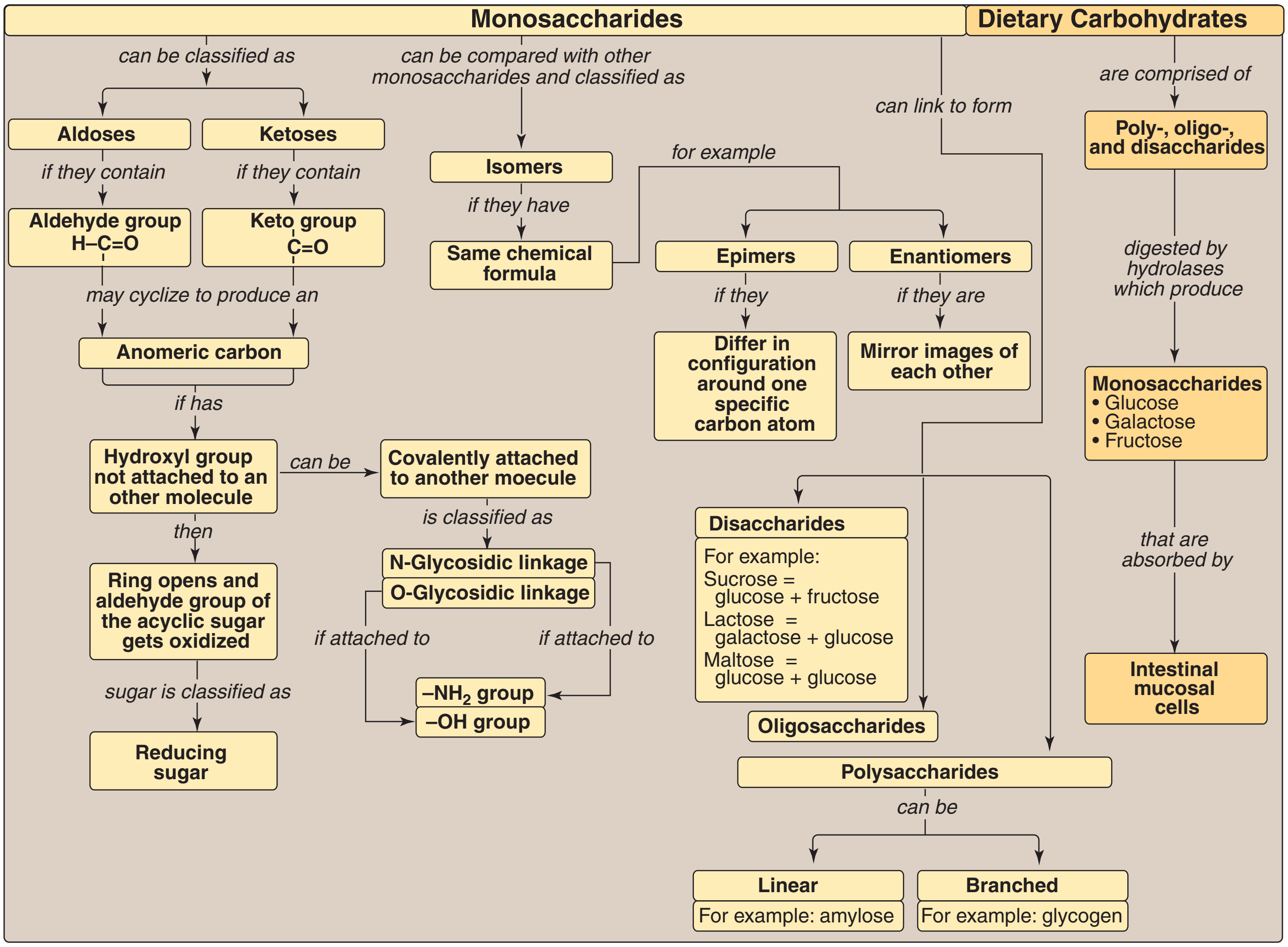

Monosaccharides
Dietary Carbohydrates
can be classified as
can be compared with other monosaccharides and classified as
can link to form
are comprised of
Aldoses
Ketoses
Isomers
Poly-, oligo-, and disaccharides
if they contain
if they contain
if they have
for example
Aldehyde group H–C=O
Keto group C=O
Same chemical formula
Epimers
Enantiomers
digested by hydrolases which produce
may cyclize to produce an
if they
if they are
Anomeric carbon
Differ in configuration around one specific carbon atom
Mirror images of each other
Monosaccharides
• Glucose
• Galactose
• Fructose
if has
Hydroxyl group not attached to an other molecule
can be
Covalently attached to another moecule
is classified as
then
Disaccharides
For example:
Sucrose = glucose + fructose
Lactose = galactose + glucose
Maltose = glucose + glucose
that are absorbed by
N-Glycosidic linkage
O-Glycosidic linkage
Ring opens and aldehyde group of the acyclic sugar gets oxidized
if attached to
if attached to
Intestinal mucosal cells
sugar is classified as
–NH2 group
–OH group
Oligosaccharides
Reducing sugar
Polysaccharides
can be
Linear
For example: amylose
Branched
For example: glycogen

Figure 7.12
Key concept map for structure of monosaccharides.

sugar cyclizes, an **anomeric carbon** is created from the aldehyde group of an aldose or keto group of a ketose. This carbon can have two configurations, α or β. If the aldehyde group on an acyclic sugar gets oxidized as a chromogenic agent gets reduced, that sugar is a **reducing sugar**. A sugar with its anomeric carbon linked to another structure is called a **glycosyl residue**. Sugars can be attached either to an $-NH_2$ or an –OH group, producing **N-** and **O-glycosides**. **Salivary α-amylase** acts on **dietary polysaccharides** (glycogen, amylose, amylopectin), producing **oligosaccharides**. **Pancreatic α-amylase** continues the process of polysaccharide digestion. The final digestive processes occur at the **mucosal lining** of the **small intestine**. Several **disaccharidases** [for example, **lactase** (**β-galactosidase**), **sucrase**, **maltase**, and **isomaltase**] produce monosaccharides (glucose, galactose, and fructose). These enzymes are secreted by and remain associated with the luminal side of the **brush border membranes** of **intestinal mucosal cells**. Absorption of the monosaccharides requires specific transporters. If carbohydrate degradation is deficient (as a result of heredity, intestinal disease, malnutrition, or drugs that injure the mucosa of the small intestine), undigested carbohydrate will pass into the large intestine, where it can cause **osmotic diarrhea**. Bacterial fermentation of the compounds produces large volumes of CO_2 and H_2 gas, causing abdominal cramps, diarrhea, and flatulence. **Lactose intolerance**, caused by a lack of **lactase**, is by far the most common of these deficiencies.

Study Question

Choose the ONE correct answer.

7.1 Which of the following statements best describes glucose?

A. It is a ketose and usually exists as a furanose ring in solution.
B. It is a C-4 epimer of galactose.
C. It is utilized in biological systems only in the L-isomeric form.
D. It is produced from dietary starch by the action of α-amylase.
E. Homopolysaccharides of glucose, formed by the action of glycosyltransferases, are always branched molecules that contain only β-glycosidic linkages.

Correct answer = B. Glucose and galactose differ only in configuration around carbon 4, and so are C-4 epimers that are interconvertible by the action of an epimerase. Glucose is an aldose sugar that typically exists as a pyranose ring in solution; fructose, however, is a ketose with a furanose ring. The D-isomeric form of carbohydrates is most typically the form found in biologic systems, in contrast to amino acids. Salivary amylase does not produce monosaccharides. Homopolysaccharides of glucose include branched glycogen in which the glycosidic linkages are the α form, as well as unbranched cellulose that has β linkages.

7.2 A young black man entered his physician's office complaining of bloating and diarrhea. His eyes were sunken and the physician noted additional signs of dehydration. The patient's temperature was normal. He explained that the episode had occurred following a birthday party at which he had participated in an ice cream eating contest. The patient reported prior episodes of a similar nature following ingestion of a significant amount of dairy products. This clinical picture is most probably due to a deficiency in:

A. salivary α-amylase.
B. isomaltase.
C. pancreatic α-amylase.
D. sucrase.
E. lactase.

Correct answer = E. The physical symptoms suggest a deficiency in an enzyme responsible for carbohydrate degradation. The symptoms observed following the ingestion of dairy products suggest that the patient is deficient in lactase.

7.3 Routine examination of the urine of an asymptomatic pediatric patient showed a positive reaction with Clinitest (a copper reduction method of detecting reducing sugars), but a negative reaction with the glucose oxidase test. Which one of the following sugars is least likely to be present (assuming a single elevated saccharide)?

A. Lactose
B. Fructose
C. Sucrose
D. Xylulose
E. Galactose

Correct answer = C. Clinitest is a nonspecific test that produces a change in color if urine is positive for reducing substances, including reducing sugars (glucose, fructose, galactose, xylulose, lactose), amino acids, ascorbic acid, and certain drugs and drug metabolites. Because sucrose is not a reducing sugar, it is not detected by Clinitest. Glucose oxidase method will not detect increased levels of galactose or other sugars in urine. It is therefore important that a copper reduction method be used as a screening test. In those instances when the copper method is positive and the glucose oxidase method is negative, glucosuria is ruled out.

7.4 α-Glucosidase inhibitors such as acarbose and miglitol taken with meals are used in the treatment of diabetes. Explain. What effect should these drugs have on the digestion of lactose?

α-Glucosidase inhibitors slow the production of glucose from dietary carbohydrates, thereby reducing the post-prandial rise in blood glucose and facilitating better blood glucose control in diabetics. These drugs have no effect on lactose digestion because the disaccharide lactose contains a β-glycosidic bond, not an α.

Glycolysis

8

I. INTRODUCTION TO METABOLISM

In Chapter 5, individual enzymic reactions were analyzed in an effort to explain the mechanisms of catalysis. However, in cells, these reactions rarely occur in isolation, but rather are organized into multistep sequences called pathways, such as that of glycolysis (Figure 8.1). In a pathway, the product of one reaction serves as the substrate of the subsequent reaction. Different pathways can also intersect, forming an integrated and purposeful network of chemical reactions. These are collectively called metabolism, which is the sum of all the chemical changes occurring in a cell, a tissue, or the body. Most pathways can be classified as either catabolic (degradative) or anabolic (synthetic). Catabolic reactions break down complex molecules, such as proteins, polysaccharides, and lipids, to a few simple molecules, for example, CO_2, NH_3 (ammonia), and water. Anabolic pathways form complex end products from simple precursors, for example, the synthesis of the polysaccharide, glycogen, from glucose. [Note: Pathways that regenerate a component are called cycles.] In the following chapters, this text focuses on the central metabolic pathways that are involved in synthesizing and degrading carbohydrates, lipids, and amino acids.

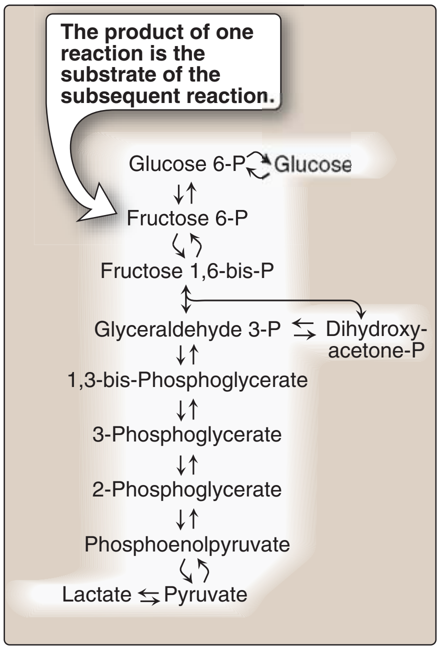


Figure 8.1
Glycolysis, an example of a metabolic pathway.

A. Metabolic map

It is convenient to investigate metabolism by examining its component pathways. Each pathway is composed of multienzyme sequences, and each enzyme, in turn, may exhibit important catalytic or regulatory features. To provide the reader with the "big picture," a metabolic map containing the important central pathways of energy metabolism is presented in Figure 8.2. This map is useful in tracing connections between pathways, visualizing the purposeful "movement" of metabolic intermediates, and picturing the effect on the flow of intermediates if a pathway is blocked, for example, by a drug or an inherited deficiency of an enzyme. Throughout the next three units of this book, each pathway under discussion will be repeatedly featured as part of the major metabolic map shown in Figure 8.2.

B. Catabolic pathways

Catabolic reactions serve to capture chemical energy in the form of adenosine triphosphate (ATP) from the degradation of energy-rich fuel molecules. Catabolism also allows molecules in the diet (or nutrient molecules stored in cells) to be converted into building blocks needed for the synthesis of complex molecules. Energy generation by degradation of complex molecules occurs in three stages as shown in Figure 8.3. [Note: Catabolic pathways are typically oxidative, and require coenzymes such as NAD^+.]

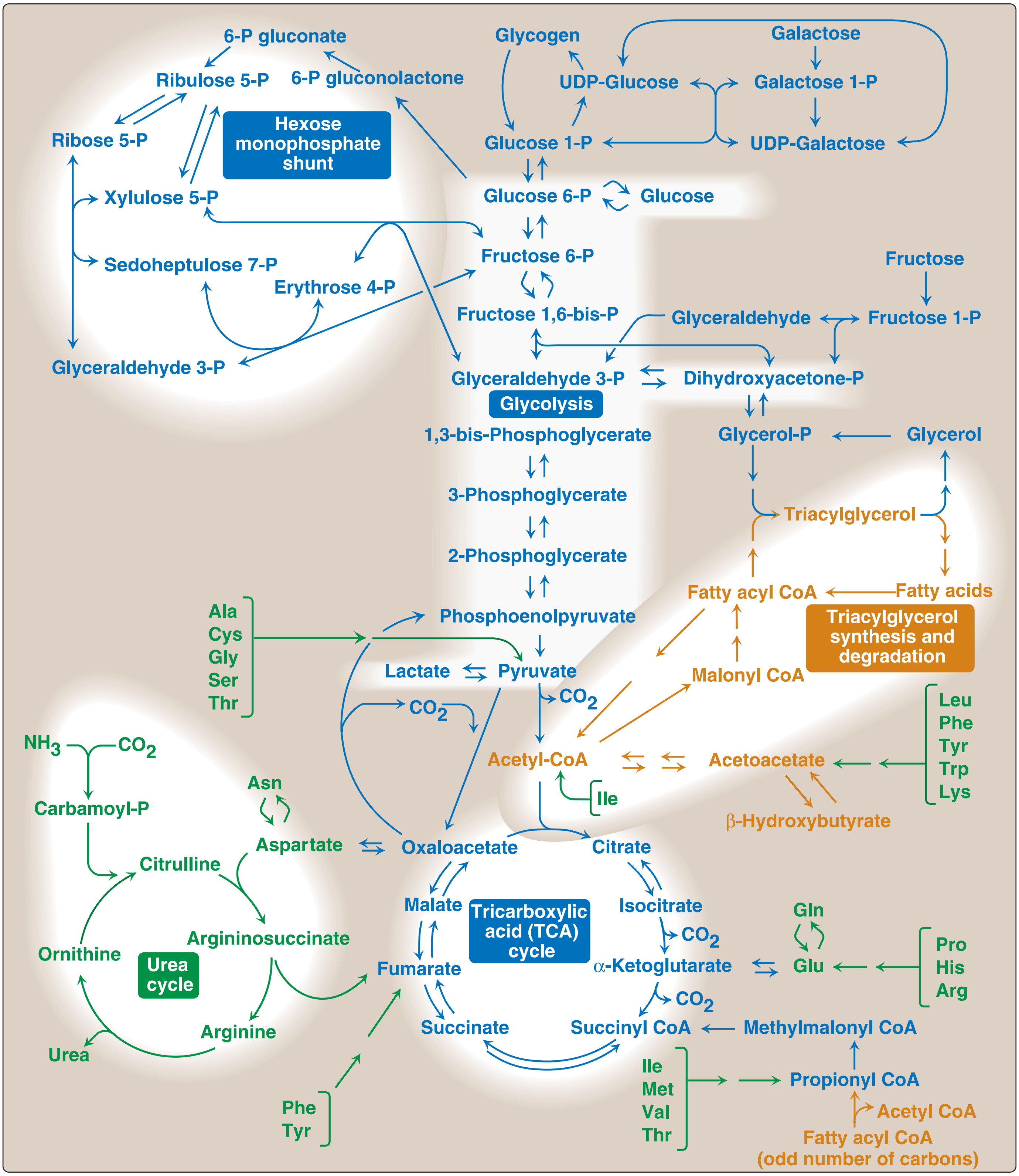

6-P gluconate
Ribulose 5-P
6-P gluconolactone
Ribose 5-P
Hexose monophosphate shunt
Xylulose 5-P
Sedoheptulose 7-P
Erythrose 4-P
Glyceraldehyde 3-P
Glycogen
UDP-Glucose
Galactose
Galactose 1-P
Glucose 1-P
UDP-Galactose
Glucose 6-P
Glucose
Fructose 6-P
Fructose 1,6-bis-P
Fructose
Glyceraldehyde
Fructose 1-P
Glyceraldehyde 3-P
Dihydroxyacetone-P
Glycolysis
1,3-bis-Phosphoglycerate
Glycerol-P
Glycerol
3-Phosphoglycerate
Triacylglycerol
2-Phosphoglycerate
Fatty acyl CoA
Fatty acids
Ala
Cys
Gly
Ser
Thr
Phosphoenolpyruvate
Triacylglycerol synthesis and degradation
Lactate
Pyruvate
Malonyl CoA
CO_2
CO_2
NH_3
CO_2
Acetyl-CoA
Acetoacetate
Leu
Phe
Tyr
Trp
Lys
Ile
β-Hydroxybutyrate
Asn
Carbamoyl-P
Aspartate
Oxaloacetate
Citrate
Citrulline
Malate
Tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle
Isocitrate
Gln
Argininosuccinate
CO_2
Ornithine
Urea cycle
Fumarate
α-Ketoglutarate
Glu
Pro
His
Arg
CO_2
Succinate
Succinyl CoA
Methylmalonyl CoA
Arginine
Urea
Ile
Met
Val
Thr
Propionyl CoA
Phe
Tyr
Acetyl CoA
Fatty acyl CoA (odd number of carbons)

Figure 8.2

Important reactions of intermediary metabolism. Several important pathways to be discussed in later chapters are highlighted. Curved reaction arrows (⟲) indicate forward and reverse reactions that are catalyzed by different enzymes. The straight arrows (⇆) indicate forward and reverse reactions that are catalyzed by the same enzyme. **Blue text** = intermediates of carbohydrate metabolism; **brown text** = intermediates of lipid metabolism; **green text** = intermediates of protein metabolism.

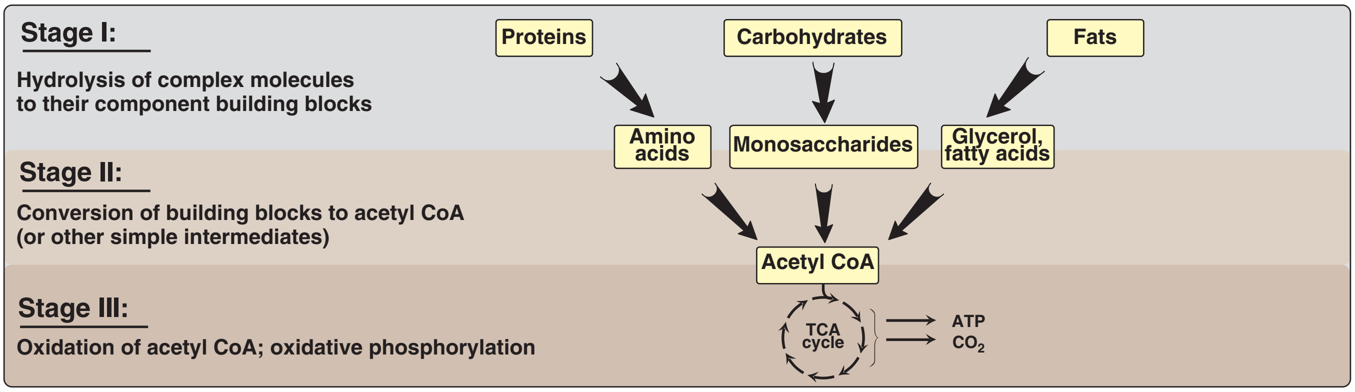

Stage I:
Hydrolysis of complex molecules to their component building blocks
Proteins
Carbohydrates
Fats
Amino acids
Monosaccharides
Glycerol, fatty acids
Stage II:
Conversion of building blocks to acetyl CoA (or other simple intermediates)
Acetyl CoA
Stage III:
Oxidation of acetyl CoA; oxidative phosphorylation
TCA cycle
ATP
CO_2

Figure 8.3
Three stages of catabolism.

1. **Hydrolysis of complex molecules:** In the first stage, complex molecules are broken down into their component building blocks. For example, proteins are degraded to amino acids, polysaccharides to monosaccharides, and fats (triacylglycerols) to free fatty acids and glycerol.

2. **Conversion of building blocks to simple intermediates:** In the second stage, these diverse building blocks are further degraded to acetyl coenzyme A (CoA) and a few other, simple molecules. Some energy is captured as ATP, but the amount is small compared with the energy produced during the third stage of catabolism.

3. **Oxidation of acetyl CoA:** The tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle (see p. 109) is the final common pathway in the oxidation of fuel molecules that produce acetyl CoA. Oxidation of acetyl CoA generates large amounts of ATP via oxidative phosphorylation as electrons flow from NADH and $FADH_2$ to oxygen (see p. 73).

C. Anabolic pathways

Anabolic reactions combine small molecules, such as amino acids, to form complex molecules, such as proteins (Figure 8.4). Anabolic reactions require energy (are endergonic), which is generally provided by the breakdown of ATP to adenosine diphosphate (ADP) and inorganic phosphate (P_i). Anabolic reactions often involve chemical reductions in which the reducing power is most frequently provided by the electron donor NADPH (see p. 147). Note that catabolism is a convergent process—that is, a wide variety of molecules are transformed into a few common end products. By contrast, anabolism is a divergent process in which a few biosynthetic precursors form a wide variety of polymeric or complex products.

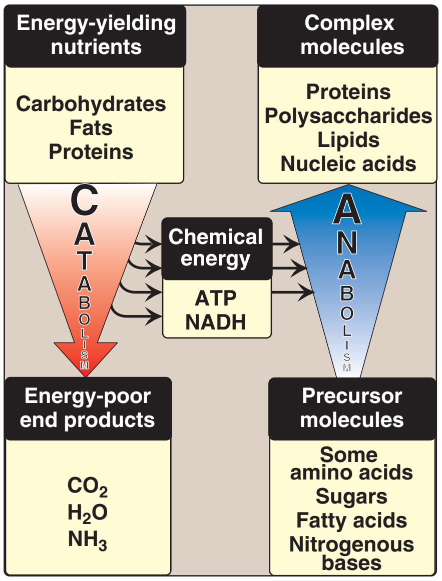

Energy-yielding nutrients
Carbohydrates
Fats
Proteins
Complex molecules
Proteins
Polysaccharides
Lipids
Nucleic acids
CATABOLISM
Chemical energy
ATP
NADH
ANABOLISM
Energy-poor end products
CO_2
H_2O
NH_3
Precursor molecules
Some amino acids
Sugars
Fatty acids
Nitrogenous bases

Figure 8.4
Comparison of catabolic and anabolic pathways.

II. REGULATION OF METABOLISM

The pathways of metabolism must be coordinated so that the production of energy or the synthesis of end products meets the needs of the cell. Furthermore, individual cells do not function in isolation but, rather, are part of a community of interacting tissues. Thus, a sophisticated communication system has evolved to coordinate the functions of the body. Regulatory signals that inform an individual cell of the metabolic state of the body as a whole include hormones, neurotransmitters, and the availability of nutrients. These, in turn, influence signals generated within the cell (Figure 8.5).

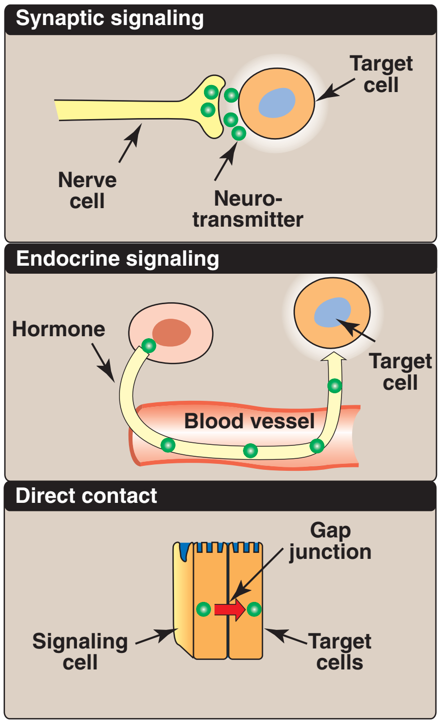


Figure 8.5
Some commonly used mechanisms for transmission of regulatory signals between cells.

A. Signals from within the cell (intracellular)

The rate of a metabolic pathway can respond to regulatory signals that arise from within the cell. For example, the rate of a pathway may be influenced by the availability of substrates, product inhibition, or alterations in the levels of allosteric activators or inhibitors. These intracellular signals typically elicit rapid responses, and are important for the moment-to-moment regulation of metabolism.

B. Communication between cells (intercellular)

The ability to respond to extracellular signals is essential for the survival and development of all organisms. Signaling between cells provides for long-range integration of metabolism, and usually results in a response that is slower than is seen with signals that originate within the cell. Communication between cells can be mediated, for example, by surface-to-surface contact and, in some tissues, by formation of gap junctions, allowing direct communication between the cytoplasms of adjacent cells. However, for energy metabolism, the most important route of communication is chemical signaling between cells by bloodborne hormones or by neurotransmitters.

C. Second messenger systems

Hormones or neurotransmitters can be thought of as signals, and their receptors as signal detectors. Each component serves as a link in the communication between extracellular events and chemical changes within the cell. Many receptors signal their recognition of a bound ligand by initiating a series of reactions that ultimately result in a specific intracellular response. "Second messenger" molecules—so named because they intervene between the original messenger (the neurotransmitter or hormone) and the ultimate effect on the cell—are part of the cascade of events that translates hormone or neurotransmitter binding into a cellular response. Two of the most widely recognized second messenger systems are the calcium/phosphatidylinositol system (see p. 205), and the *adenylyl cyclase* system, which is particularly important in regulating the pathways of intermediary metabolism.

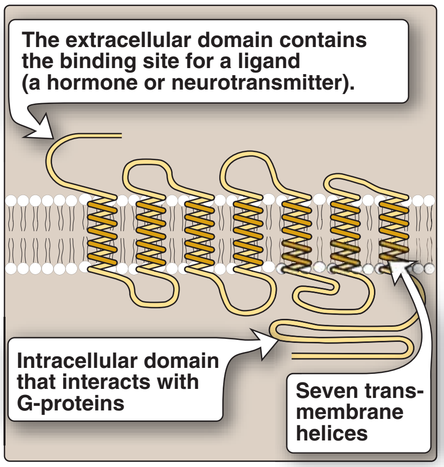

The extracellular domain contains the binding site for a ligand (a hormone or neurotransmitter).
Intracellular domain that interacts with G-proteins
Seven trans-membrane helices

Figure 8.6
Structure of a typical G protein-coupled receptor (GPCR) of the plasma membrane.

D. Adenylyl cyclase

The recognition of a chemical signal by some membrane receptors, such as the β- and α_2-adrenergic receptors, triggers either an increase or a decrease in the activity of *adenylyl cyclase* (*adenylate cyclase*). This is a membrane-bound enzyme that converts ATP to 3',5'-adenosine monophosphate (also called cyclic AMP or cAMP). The chemical signals are most often hormones or neurotransmitters, each of which binds to a unique type of membrane receptor. Therefore, tissues that respond to more than one chemical signal must have several different receptors, each of which can be linked to *adenylyl cyclase*. These receptors, known as G protein-coupled receptors (GPCR), are characterized by an extracellular ligand-binding region, seven transmembrane helices, and an intracellular domain that interacts with G proteins (Figure 8.6).

1. **GTP-dependent regulatory proteins:** The effect of the activated, occupied GPCR on second messenger formation is not direct but, rather, is mediated by specialized trimeric proteins (α, β, γ subunits) of the cell membrane. These proteins, referred to as G proteins because they bind guanosine nucleotides (GTP and GDP), form a link in the chain of communication between the receptor and *adenylyl cyclase*. In the inactive form of a G protein, the α-subunit is bound to GDP (Figure 8.7). Binding of ligand causes a conformational change in the receptor, triggering replacement of this GDP with GTP. The GTP-bound form of the α subunit dissociates from the $\beta\gamma$ subunits and moves to *adenylyl cyclase*, which is thereby activated. Many molecules of active Gα protein are formed by one activated receptor. [Note: The ability of a hormone or neurotransmitter to stimulate or inhibit *adenylyl cyclase* depends on the type of Gα protein that is linked to the receptor. One family of G proteins, designated G_s, stimulates *adenylyl cyclase*; another family, designated G_i, inhibits the enzyme (not shown in Figure 8.7).] The actions of the Gα–GTP complex are short-lived because Gα has an inherent *GTPase* activity, resulting in the rapid hydrolysis of GTP to GDP. This causes inactivation of the Gα, its dissociation from *adenylyl cyclase* and reassociation with the $\beta\gamma$ dimer.

> Toxins from Vibrio cholerae (cholera) and Bordetella pertussis (whooping cough) cause inappropriate activation of *adenylyl cyclase* through covalent modification (ADP-ribosylation) of different G proteins. With cholera, the *GTPase* activity of Gα_s is inhibited. With whooping cough, Gα_i is inactivated.

2. **Protein kinases:** The next key link in the cAMP second messenger system is the activation by cAMP of a family of enzymes called cAMP-independent *protein kinases*, for example, *protein kinase A* (Figure 8.8). Cyclic AMP activates *protein kinase A* by binding to its two regulatory subunits, causing the release of active catalytic subunits. The active subunits catalyze the transfer of phosphate from ATP to specific serine or threonine residues of protein substrates. The phosphorylated proteins may act directly on the cell's ion channels, or, if enzymes, may become activated or inhibited. *Protein kinase A* can also phosphorylate proteins that bind to DNA, causing changes in gene expression. [Note: Several types of *protein kinases* are not cAMP-dependent, for example, *protein kinase C* described on p. 205.]

3. **Dephosphorylation of proteins:** The phosphate groups added to proteins by *protein kinases* are removed by *protein phosphatases*—enzymes that hydrolytically cleave phosphate esters (see Figure 8.8). This ensures that changes in protein activity induced by phosphorylation are not permanent.

4. **Hydrolysis of cAMP:** cAMP is rapidly hydrolyzed to 5'-AMP by *cAMP phosphodiesterase*, one of a family of enzymes that cleave the cyclic 3',5'-phosphodiester bond. 5'-AMP is not an intracellular signaling molecule. Thus, the effects of neurotransmitter- or hormone-mediated

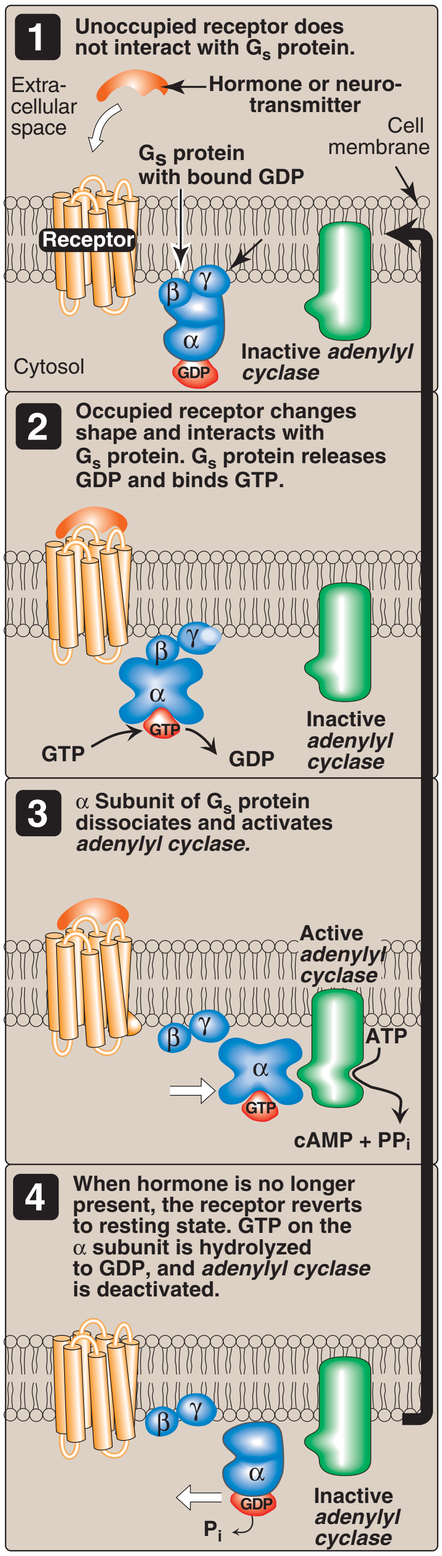

1
Unoccupied receptor does not interact with G$_s$ protein.
Extra-cellular space
Hormone or neuro-transmitter
Cell membrane
G$_s$ protein with bound GDP
Receptor
β
γ
α
GDP
Cytosol
Inactive *adenylyl cyclase*
2
Occupied receptor changes shape and interacts with G$_s$ protein. G$_s$ protein releases GDP and binds GTP.
β
γ
α
GTP
GTP
GDP
Inactive *adenylyl cyclase*
3
α Subunit of G$_s$ protein dissociates and activates *adenylyl cyclase.*
Active *adenylyl cyclase*
β
γ
α
GTP
ATP
cAMP + PP$_i$
4
When hormone is no longer present, the receptor reverts to resting state. GTP on the α subunit is hydrolyzed to GDP, and *adenylyl cyclase* is deactivated.
β
γ
α
GDP
P$_i$
Inactive *adenylyl cyclase*

Figure 8.7
The recognition of chemical signals by certain membrane receptors triggers an increase (or, less often, a decrease) in the activity of *adenylyl cyclase*.

increases of cAMP are rapidly terminated if the extracellular signal is removed. [Note: *Phosphodiesterase* is inhibited by methylxanthine derivatives, such as theophylline and caffeine.[1]]

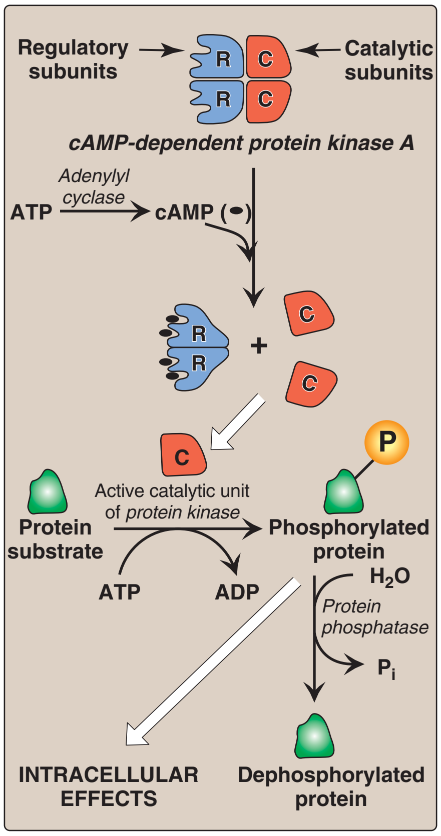

Regulatory subunits
Catalytic subunits
R
C
R
C
cAMP-dependent protein kinase A
Adenylyl cyclase
ATP
cAMP
R
R
+
C
C
C
P
Active catalytic unit of protein kinase
Protein substrate
Phosphorylated protein
ATP
ADP
H_2O
Protein phosphatase
P_i
INTRACELLULAR EFFECTS
Dephosphorylated protein

Figure 8.8
Actions of cAMP.

III. OVERVIEW OF GLYCOLYSIS

The glycolytic pathway is employed by all tissues for the breakdown of glucose to provide energy (in the form of ATP) and intermediates for other metabolic pathways. Glycolysis is at the hub of carbohydrate metabolism because virtually all sugars—whether arising from the diet or from catabolic reactions in the body—can ultimately be converted to glucose (Figure 8.9A). Pyruvate is the end product of glycolysis in cells with mitochondria and an adequate supply of oxygen. This series of ten reactions is called aerobic glycolysis because oxygen is required to reoxidize the NADH formed during the oxidation of glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate (Figure 8.9B). Aerobic glycolysis sets the stage for the oxidative decarboxylation of pyruvate to acetyl CoA, a major fuel of the TCA (or citric acid) cycle. Alternatively, pyruvate is reduced to lactate as NADH is oxidized to NAD^+ (Figure 8.9C). This conversion of glucose to lactate is called anaerobic glycolysis because it can occur without the participation of oxygen. Anaerobic glycolysis allows the production of ATP in tissues that lack mitochondria (for example, red blood cells) or in cells deprived of sufficient oxygen.

IV. TRANSPORT OF GLUCOSE INTO CELLS

Glucose cannot diffuse directly into cells, but enters by one of two transport mechanisms: a Na^+-independent, facilitated diffusion transport system or a Na^+-monosaccharide cotransporter system.

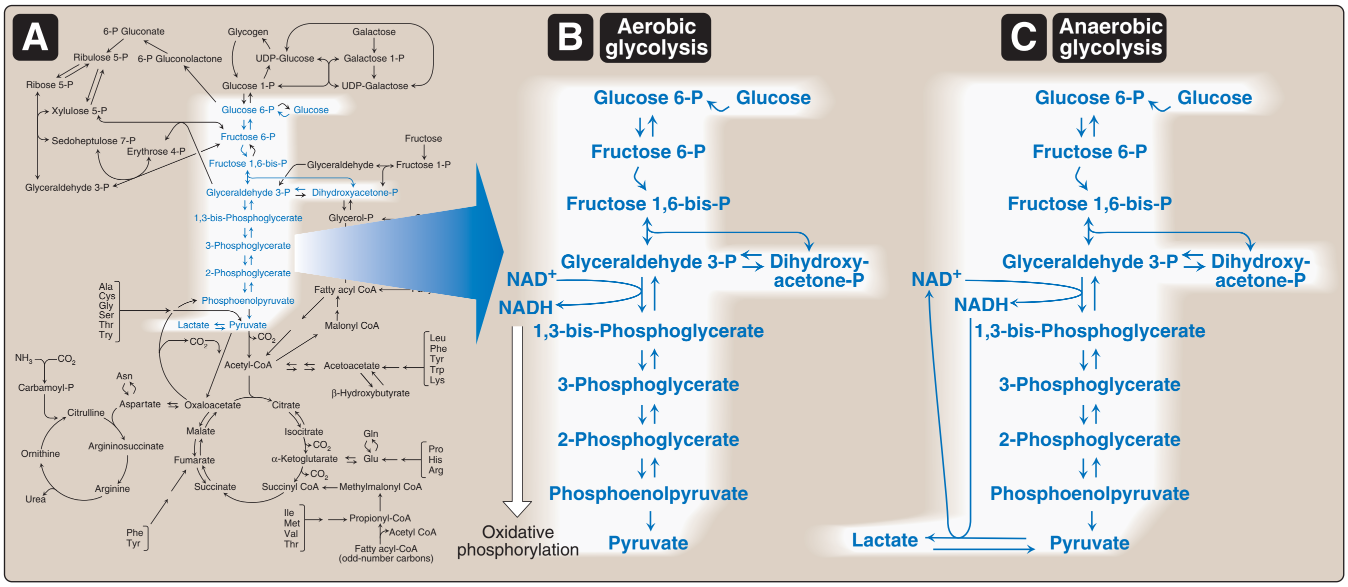

A
6-P Gluconate
Ribulose 5-P
6-P Gluconolactone
Ribose 5-P
Xylulose 5-P
Sedoheptulose 7-P
Erythrose 4-P
Glyceraldehyde 3-P
Glycogen
UDP-Glucose
Glucose 1-P
Galactose
Galactose 1-P
UDP-Galactose
Glucose 6-P
Glucose
Fructose 6-P
Fructose 1,6-bis-P
Fructose
Glyceraldehyde
Fructose 1-P
Glyceraldehyde 3-P
Dihydroxyacetone-P
1,3-bis-Phosphoglycerate
Glycerol-P
3-Phosphoglycerate
2-Phosphoglycerate
Phosphoenolpyruvate
Fatty acyl CoA
Ala
Cys
Gly
Ser
Thr
Try
Lactate
Pyruvate
Malonyl CoA
CO_2
CO_2
NH_3
CO_2
Carbamoyl-P
Acetyl-CoA
Acetoacetate
β-Hydroxybutyrate
Leu
Phe
Tyr
Trp
Lys
Asn
Aspartate
Oxaloacetate
Citrate
Citrulline
Ornithine
Argininosuccinate
Arginine
Urea
Malate
Fumarate
Succinate
Isocitrate
CO_2
α-Ketoglutarate
CO_2
Succinyl CoA
Gln
Glu
Pro
His
Arg
Methylmalonyl CoA
Phe
Tyr
Ile
Met
Val
Thr
Propionyl-CoA
Acetyl CoA
Fatty acyl-CoA (odd-number carbons)
B
Aerobic glycolysis
Glucose 6-P
Glucose
Fructose 6-P
Fructose 1,6-bis-P
Glyceraldehyde 3-P
Dihydroxy-acetone-P
NAD^+
NADH
1,3-bis-Phosphoglycerate
3-Phosphoglycerate
2-Phosphoglycerate
Phosphoenolpyruvate
Oxidative phosphorylation
Pyruvate
C
Anaerobic glycolysis
Glucose 6-P
Glucose
Fructose 6-P
Fructose 1,6-bis-P
Glyceraldehyde 3-P
Dihydroxy-acetone-P
NAD^+
NADH
1,3-bis-Phosphoglycerate
3-Phosphoglycerate
2-Phosphoglycerate
Phosphoenolpyruvate
Lactate
Pyruvate

Figure 8.9
A. Glycolysis shown as one of the essential pathways of energy metabolism. B. Reactions of aerobic glycolysis. C. Reactions of anaerobic glycolysis.

INFO LINK

[1] See Chapter 10 in ***Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Pharmacology*** for a discussion of the use of methylxanthine derivatives as drugs.

A. Na$^+$-independent facilitated diffusion transport

This system is mediated by a family of 14 glucose transporters in cell membranes. They are designated GLUT-1 to GLUT-14 (glucose transporter isoforms 1–14). These transporters exist in the membrane in two conformational states (Figure 8.10). Extracellular glucose binds to the transporter, which then alters its conformation, transporting glucose across the cell membrane.

1. **Tissue specificity of GLUT gene expression:** The glucose transporters display a tissue-specific pattern of expression. For example, GLUT-3 is the primary glucose transporter in neurons. GLUT-1 is abundant in erythrocytes and blood brain barrier, but is low in adult muscle, whereas GLUT-4 is abundant in adipose tissue and skeletal muscle. [Note: The number of GLUT-4 transporters active in these tissues is increased by insulin. (See p. 311 for a discussion of insulin and glucose transport.)] The other GLUT isoforms also have tissue-specific distributions.

2. **Specialized functions of GLUT isoforms:** In facilitated diffusion, glucose movement follows a concentration gradient, that is, from a high glucose concentration to a lower one. For example, GLUT-1, GLUT-3, and GLUT-4 are primarily involved in glucose uptake from the blood. In contrast, GLUT-2, which is found in the liver and kidney, can either transport glucose into these cells when blood glucose levels are high, or transport glucose from these cells when blood glucose levels are low (for example, during fasting). [Note: GLUT-2 is also found in pancreatic β cells.] GLUT-5 is unusual in that it is the primary transporter for fructose (instead of glucose) in the small intestine and the testes.

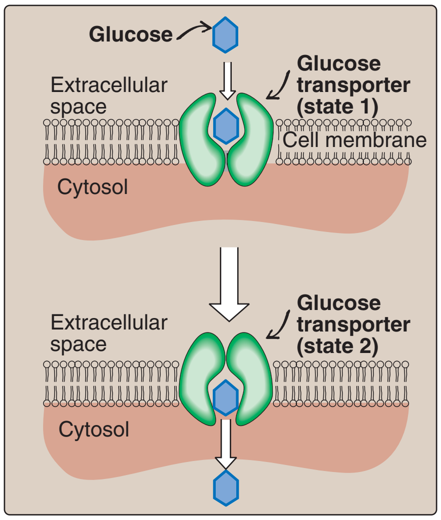


Figure 8.10
Schematic representation of the facilitated transport of glucose through a cell membrane. [Note: GLUT proteins contain 12 transmembrane helices.]

B. Na$^+$-monosaccharide cotransporter system

This is an energy-requiring process that transports glucose "against" a concentration gradient—that is, from low glucose concentrations outside the cell to higher concentrations within the cell. This system is a carrier-mediated process in which the movement of glucose is coupled to the concentration gradient of Na$^+$, which is transported into the cell at the same time. The carrier is a sodium-dependent–glucose transporter or SGLT. This type of transport occurs in the epithelial cells of the intestine (see p. 87), renal tubules, and choroid plexus. [Note: The choroid plexus, part of the blood brain barrier, also contains GLUT-1.]

V. REACTIONS OF GLYCOLYSIS

The conversion of glucose to pyruvate occurs in two stages (Figure 8.11). The first five reactions of glycolysis correspond to an energy investment phase in which the phosphorylated forms of intermediates are synthesized at the expense of ATP. The subsequent reactions of glycolysis constitute an energy generation phase in which a net of two molecules of ATP are formed by substrate-level phosphorylation (see p. 102) per glucose molecule metabolized.

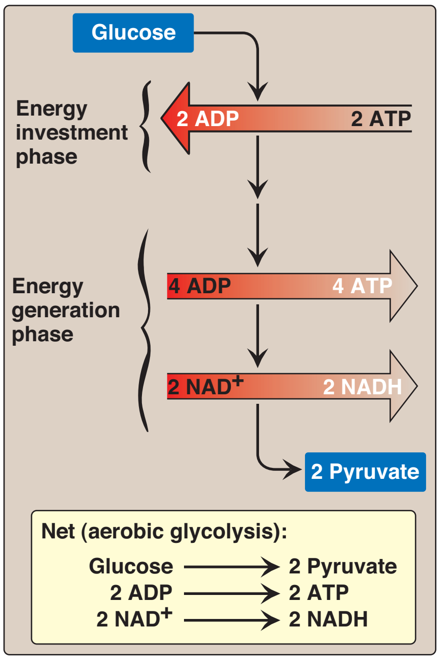


Figure 8.11
Two phases of aerobic glycolysis.

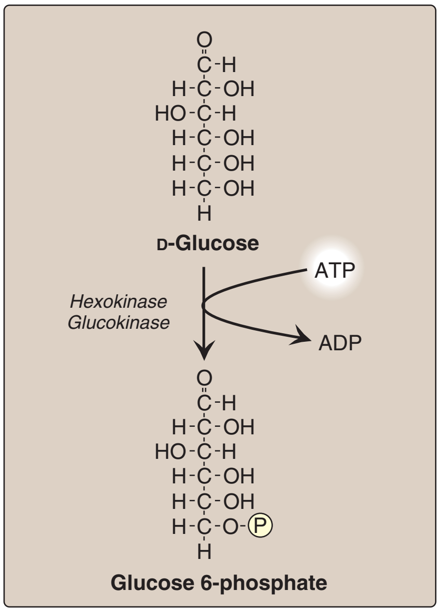


Figure 8.12
Energy investment phase: phosphorylation of glucose.

A. Phosphorylation of glucose

Phosphorylated sugar molecules do not readily penetrate cell membranes, because there are no specific transmembrane carriers for these compounds, and because they are too polar to diffuse through the lipid core of membranes. The irreversible phosphorylation of glucose (Figure 8.12), therefore, effectively traps the sugar as cytosolic glucose 6-phosphate, thus committing it to further metabolism in the cell. Mammals have several isozymes of the enzyme *hexokinase* that catalyze the phosphorylation of glucose to glucose 6-phosphate.

1. **Hexokinase:** In most tissues, the phosphorylation of glucose is catalyzed by *hexokinase*, one of three regulatory enzymes of glycolysis (see also *phosphofructokinase* and *pyruvate kinase*). *Hexokinase* has broad substrate specificity and is able to phosphorylate several hexoses in addition to glucose. *Hexokinase* is inhibited by the reaction product, glucose 6-phosphate, which accumulates when further metabolism of this hexose phosphate is reduced. *Hexokinase* has a low K_m (and, therefore, a high affinity, see p. 59) for glucose. This permits the efficient phosphorylation and subsequent metabolism of glucose even when tissue concentrations of glucose are low (Figure 8.13). *Hexokinase*, however, has a low V_{max} for glucose and, therefore, cannot sequester (trap) cellular phosphate in the form of phosphorylated hexoses, or phosphorylate more sugars than the cell can use.

2. **Glucokinase:** In liver parenchymal cells and β cells of the pancreas, *glucokinase* (also called *hexokinase D*, or *type IV*) is the predominant enzyme responsible for the phosphorylation of glucose. In β cells, *glucokinase* functions as the glucose sensor, determining the threshold for insulin secretion (see p. 310). In the liver, the enzyme facilitates glucose phosphorylation during hyperglycemia. [Note: *Hexokinase* also serves as a glucose sensor in neurons of the hypothalamus, playing a key role in the adrenergic response to hypoglycemia (see p. 315.] Despite the popular but misleading name *glucokinase*, the sugar specificity of the enzyme is similar to that of other *hexokinase* isozymes.

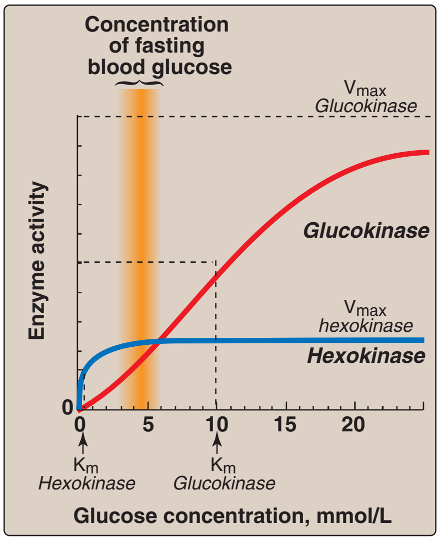


Figure 8.13
Effect of glucose concentration on the rate of phosphorylation catalyzed by *hexokinase* and *glucokinase*.

   a. **Kinetics:** *Glucokinase* differs from *hexokinase* in several important properties. For example, it has a much higher K_m, requiring a higher glucose concentration for half-saturation (see Figure 8.13). Thus, *glucokinase* functions only when the intracellular concentration of glucose in the hepatocyte is elevated, such as during the brief period following consumption of a carbohydrate-rich meal, when high levels of glucose are delivered to the liver via the portal vein. *Glucokinase* has a high V_{max}, allowing the liver to effectively remove the flood of glucose delivered by the portal blood. This prevents large amounts of glucose from entering the systemic circulation following a carbohydrate-rich meal, and thus minimizes hyperglycemia during the absorptive period. [Note: GLUT-2 insures that blood glucose equilibrates rapidly across the membrane of the hepatocyte.]

   b. **Regulation by fructose 6-phosphate and glucose:** *Glucokinase* activity is not directly inhibited by glucose 6-phosphate as are the other *hexokinases*, but rather is indirectly inhibited by fructose 6-phosphate (which is in equilibrium with glucose 6-phosphate, a product of *glucokinase*), and is indirectly stimulated by glucose (a substrate of *glucokinase*) via the following mechanism. Glucokinase regulatory protein (GKRP) in the liver regulates the activity of *glucokinase* through reversible binding. In the presence of fructose 6-phosphate, *glucokinase* is translocated into the nucleus and binds tightly to the regulatory protein, thus rendering the enzyme inactive (Figure 8.14). When glucose levels in the blood (and also in the hepatocyte, as a result of GLUT-2) increase, *glucokinase* is released from the regulatory protein, and the enzyme re-enters the cytosol where it phosphorylates glucose to glucose 6-phosphate. [Note: Fructose 1-phosphate inhibits formation of the *glucokinase*-GKRP complex.]

Glucokinase functions as a glucose sensor in the maintenance of blood glucose homeostasis. Mutations that decrease the activity of *glucokinase* are the cause of a rare form of diabetes, maturity onset diabetes of the young type 2 (MODY 2).

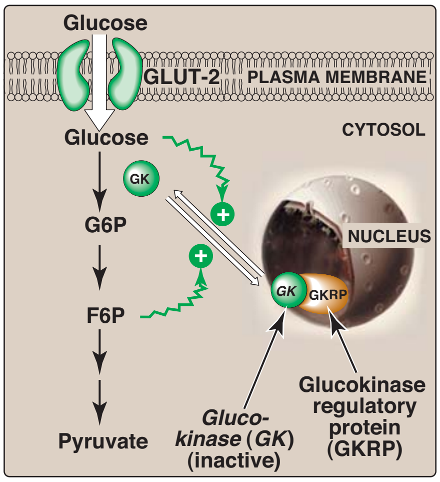


Figure 8.14
Regulation of *glucokinase* activity by glucokinase regulatory protein.

B. Isomerization of glucose 6-phosphate

The isomerization of glucose 6-phosphate to fructose 6-phosphate is catalyzed by *phosphoglucose isomerase* (Figure 8.15). The reaction is readily reversible and is not a rate-limiting or regulated step.

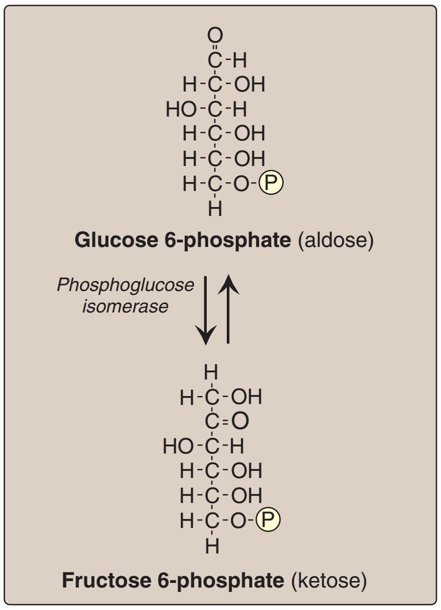


Figure 8.15
Aldose-ketose isomerization of glucose 6-phosphate to fructose 6-phosphate.

C. Phosphorylation of fructose 6-phosphate

The irreversible phosphorylation reaction catalyzed by *phosphofructokinase-1* (*PFK-1*) is the most important control point and the rate-limiting and committed step of glycolysis (Figure 8.16). *PFK-1* is controlled by the available concentrations of the substrates ATP and fructose 6-phosphate, and by regulatory substances described below.

1. **Regulation by energy levels within the cell:** *PFK-1* is inhibited allosterically by elevated levels of ATP, which act as an “energy-rich” signal indicating an abundance of high-energy compounds. Elevated levels of citrate, an intermediate in the TCA cycle (see p. 109), also inhibit *PFK-1*. Conversely, *PFK-1* is activated allosterically by high concentrations of AMP, which signal that the cell’s energy stores are depleted. [Note: Citrate inhibition favors the use of glucose for glycogen synthesis, see p.125.]

2. **Regulation by fructose 2,6-bisphosphate:** Fructose 2,6-bisphosphate is the most potent activator of *PFK-1* (see Figure 8.16), and is able to activate the enzyme even when ATP levels are high. Fructose 2,6-bisphosphate is formed by *phosphofructokinase-2* (*PFK-2*), an enzyme different than *PFK-1*. *PFK-2* is a bifunctional protein that has both the *kinase* activity that produces fructose 2,6-bisphosphate and a *phosphatase* activity that dephosphorylates fructose 2,6-bisphosphate back to fructose 6-phosphate. In liver, the *kinase* domain is active if dephosphorylated and is inactive if phosphorylated (Figure 8.17). [Note: Fructose 2,6-bisphos-

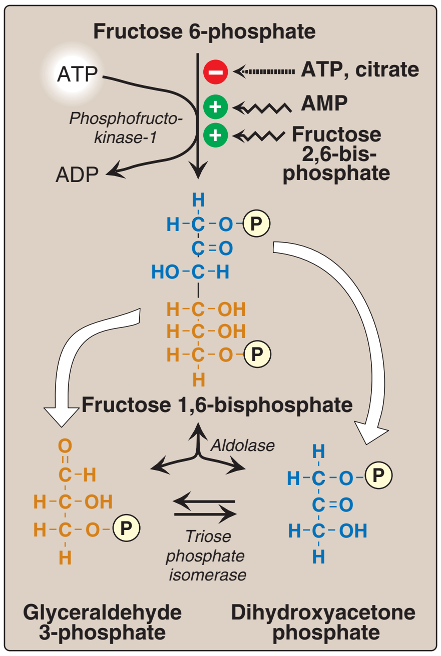

Fructose 6-phosphate
ATP
ADP
Phosphofructo-kinase-1
ATP, citrate
AMP
Fructose 2,6-bis-phosphate
H
H-C-O-P
C=O
HO-C-H
H-C-OH
H-C-OH
H-C-O-P
H
Fructose 1,6-bisphosphate
Aldolase
O
C-H
H-C-OH
H-C-O-P
H
H
H-C-O-P
C=O
H-C-OH
H
Triose phosphate isomerase
Glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate
Dihydroxyacetone phosphate

Figure 8.16
Energy investment phase (continued): Conversion of fructose 6-phosphate to triose phosphates.

phate is an inhibitor of *fructose 1,6-bisphosphatase*, an enzyme of gluconeogenesis (see p. 120 for a discussion of the regulation of gluconeogenesis). The reciprocal actions of fructose 2,6-bisphosphate on glycolysis (activation) and gluconeogenesis (inhibition) ensure that both pathways are not fully active at the same time, preventing a futile cycle in which glucose would be converted to pyruvate followed by resynthesis of glucose from pyruvate.]

a. During the well-fed state: Decreased levels of glucagon and elevated levels of insulin, such as occur following a carbohydrate-rich meal, cause an increase in fructose 2,6-bisphosphate and, thus, in the rate of glycolysis in the liver (see Figure 8.17). Fructose 2,6-bisphosphate, therefore, acts as an intracellular signal, indicating that glucose is abundant.

b. During starvation: Elevated levels of glucagon and low levels of insulin, such as occur during fasting (see p. 327), decrease the intracellular concentration of hepatic fructose 2,6-bisphosphate. This results in a decrease in the overall rate of glycolysis and an increase in gluconeogenesis.

D. Cleavage of fructose 1,6-bisphosphate

Aldolase cleaves fructose 1,6-bisphosphate to dihydroxyacetone phosphate and glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate (see Figure 8.16). The reaction is reversible and not regulated. [Note: *Aldolase B*, the isoform in the liver and kidney, also cleaves fructose 1-phosphate, and functions in the metabolism of dietary fructose (see p. 138).]

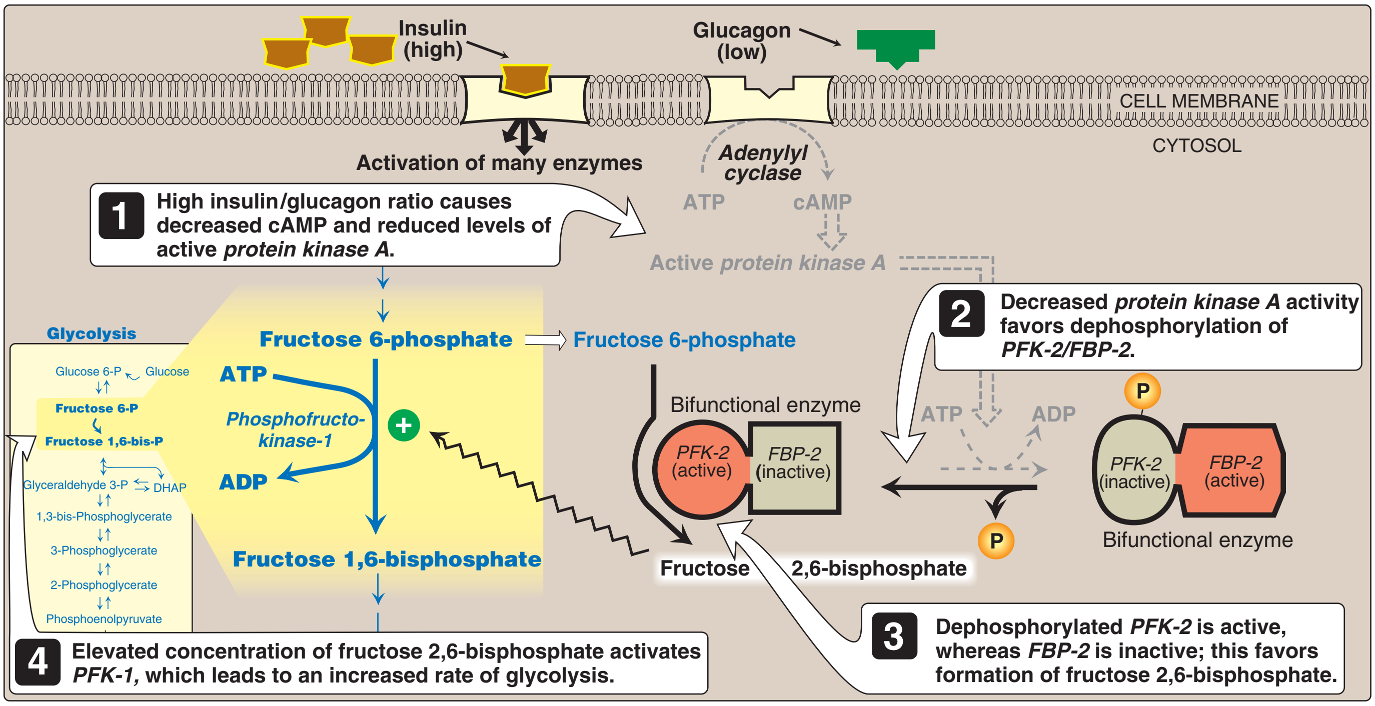

Insulin (high)
Glucagon (low)
CELL MEMBRANE
CYTOSOL
Activation of many enzymes
Adenylyl cyclase
ATP
cAMP
Active protein kinase A
1 High insulin/glucagon ratio causes decreased cAMP and reduced levels of active protein kinase A.
2 Decreased protein kinase A activity favors dephosphorylation of PFK-2/FBP-2.
3 Dephosphorylated PFK-2 is active, whereas FBP-2 is inactive; this favors formation of fructose 2,6-bisphosphate.
4 Elevated concentration of fructose 2,6-bisphosphate activates PFK-1, which leads to an increased rate of glycolysis.
Glycolysis
Glucose 6-P
Glucose
Fructose 6-P
Fructose 1,6-bis-P
Glyceraldehyde 3-P
DHAP
1,3-bis-Phosphoglycerate
3-Phosphoglycerate
2-Phosphoglycerate
Phosphoenolpyruvate
Fructose 6-phosphate
ATP
Phosphofructo-kinase-1
ADP
Fructose 1,6-bisphosphate
Fructose 6-phosphate
Bifunctional enzyme
PFK-2 (active)
FBP-2 (inactive)
ATP
ADP
P
PFK-2 (inactive)
FBP-2 (active)
Bifunctional enzyme
Fructose 2,6-bisphosphate

Figure 8.17
Effect of elevated insulin concentration on the intracellular concentration of fructose 2,6-bisphosphate in liver. *PFK-2 = phosphofructokinase-2*; *FBP-2 = fructose bisphosphatase-2*.

E. Isomerization of dihydroxyacetone phosphate

Triose phosphate isomerase interconverts dihydroxyacetone phosphate and glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate (see Figure 8.16). Dihydroxyacetone phosphate must be isomerized to glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate for further metabolism by the glycolytic pathway. This isomerization results in the net production of two molecules of glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate from the cleavage products of fructose 1,6-bisphosphate.

F. Oxidation of glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate

The conversion of glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate to 1,3-bisphosphoglycerate by *glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate dehydrogenase* is the first oxidation-reduction reaction of glycolysis (Figure 8.18). [Note: Because there is only a limited amount of NAD^+ in the cell, the NADH formed by this reaction must be reoxidized to NAD^+ for glycolysis to continue. Two major mechanisms for oxidizing NADH are: 1) the NADH-linked conversion of pyruvate to lactate (anaerobic, see p. 96), and 2) oxidation of NADH via the respiratory chain (aerobic, see p. 75). The latter requires substrate shuttles (see p. 79.]

1. **Synthesis of 1,3-bisphosphoglycerate (1,3-BPG):** The oxidation of the aldehyde group of glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate to a carboxyl group is coupled to the attachment of P_i to the carboxyl group. The high-energy phosphate group at carbon 1 of 1,3-BPG conserves much of the free energy produced by the oxidation of glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate. The energy of this high-energy phosphate drives the synthesis of ATP in the next reaction of glycolysis.

2. **Mechanism of arsenic poisoning:** The toxicity of arsenic is explained primarily by the inhibition of enzymes such as *pyruvate dehydrogenase*, which require lipoic acid as a coenzyme (see p. 110). However, pentavalent arsenic (arsenate) also can prevent net ATP and NADH production by glycolysis, without inhibiting the pathway itself. The poison does so by competing with inorganic phosphate as a substrate for *glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate dehydrogenase*, forming a complex that spontaneously hydrolyzes to form 3-phosphoglycerate (see Figure 8.18). By bypassing the synthesis of and phosphate transfer from 1,3-BPG, the cell is deprived of energy usually obtained from the glycolytic pathway. [Note: Arsenic also replaces P_i on the F_1 domain of *ATP synthase* (see p. 78), resulting in formation of ADP-arsenate that is rapidly hydrolyzed.]

3. **Synthesis of 2,3-bisphosphoglycerate (2,3-BPG) in red blood cells:** Some of the 1,3-BPG is converted to 2,3-BPG by the action of *bisphosphoglycerate mutase* (see Figure 8.18). 2,3-BPG, which is found in only trace amounts in most cells, is present at high concentration in red blood cells (increases O_2 delivery, see p. 31). 2,3-BPG is hydrolyzed by a *phosphatase* to 3-phosphoglycerate, which is also an intermediate in glycolysis (see Figure 8.18). In the red blood cell, glycolysis is modified by inclusion of these "shunt" reactions.

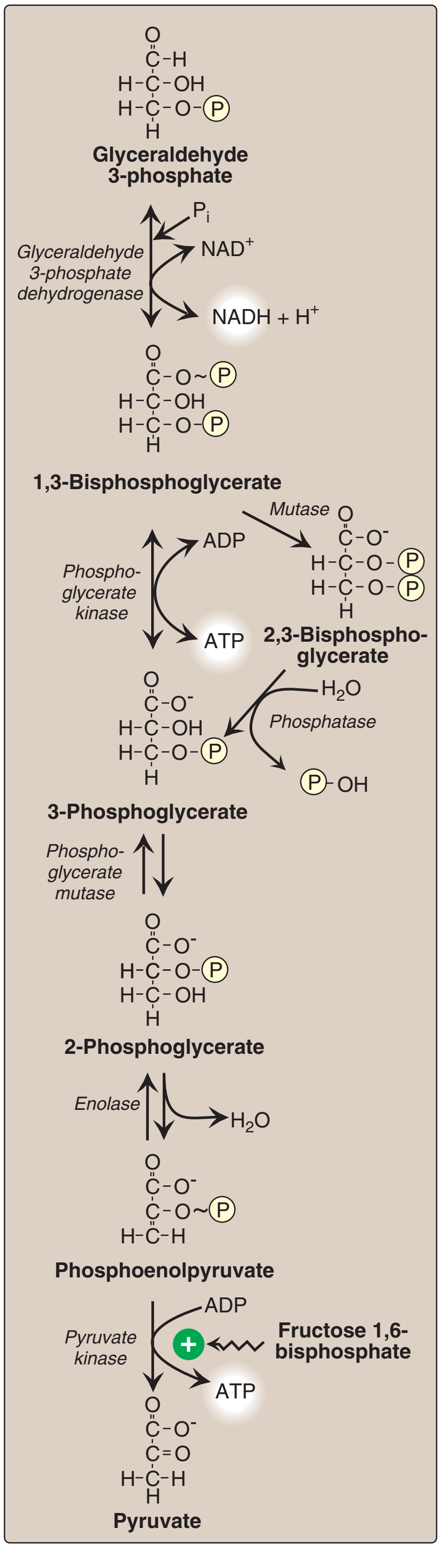

Glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate
P_i
Glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate dehydrogenase
NAD^+
$NADH + H^+$
1,3-Bisphosphoglycerate
Mutase
ADP
Phospho-glycerate kinase
ATP
2,3-Bisphospho-glycerate
H_2O
Phosphatase
P-OH
3-Phosphoglycerate
Phospho-glycerate mutase
2-Phosphoglycerate
Enolase
H_2O
Phosphoenolpyruvate
ADP
Pyruvate kinase
+
Fructose 1,6-bisphosphate
ATP
Pyruvate

Figure 8.18
Energy generating phase: conversion of glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate to pyruvate.

G. Synthesis of 3-phosphoglycerate producing ATP

When 1,3-BPG is converted to 3-phosphoglycerate, the high-energy phosphate group of 1,3-BPG is used to synthesize ATP from ADP (see Figure 8.18). This reaction is catalyzed by *phosphoglycerate kinase*, which, unlike most other *kinases*, is physiologically reversible. Because two molecules of 1,3-BPG are formed from each glucose molecule, this *kinase* reaction replaces the two ATP molecules consumed by the earlier formation of glucose 6-phosphate and fructose 1,6-bisphosphate. [Note: This is an example of substrate-level phosphorylation, in which the energy needed for the production of a high-energy phosphate comes from a substrate rather than from the electron transport chain (see J. below and p. 113 for other examples).]

H. Shift of the phosphate group from carbon 3 to carbon 2

The shift of the phosphate group from carbon 3 to carbon 2 of phosphoglycerate by *phosphoglycerate mutase* is freely reversible (see Figure 8.18).

I. Dehydration of 2-phosphoglycerate

The dehydration of 2-phosphoglycerate by *enolase* redistributes the energy within the 2-phosphoglycerate molecule, resulting in the formation of phosphoenolpyruvate (PEP), which contains a high-energy enol phosphate (see Figure 8.18). The reaction is reversible despite the high-energy nature of the product.

J. Formation of pyruvate producing ATP

The conversion of PEP to pyruvate is catalyzed by *pyruvate kinase*, the third irreversible reaction of glycolysis. The equilibrium of the *pyruvate kinase* reaction favors the formation of ATP (see Figure 8.18). [Note: This is another example of substrate-level phosphorylation.]

1. **Feed-forward regulation:** In liver, *pyruvate kinase* is activated by fructose 1,6-bisphosphate, the product of the *phosphofructokinase* reaction. This feed-forward (instead of the more usual feedback) regulation has the effect of linking the two *kinase* activities: increased *phosphofructokinase* activity results in elevated levels of fructose 1,6-bisphosphate, which activates *pyruvate kinase*.

2. **Covalent modulation of pyruvate kinase:** Phosphorylation by a *cAMP-dependent protein kinase* leads to inactivation of *pyruvate kinase* in the liver (Figure 8.19). When blood glucose levels are low, elevated glucagon increases the intracellular level of cAMP, which causes the phosphorylation and inactivation of *pyruvate kinase*. Therefore, PEP is unable to continue in glycolysis, but instead enters the gluconeogenesis pathway. This, in part, explains the observed inhibition of hepatic glycolysis and stimulation of gluconeogenesis by glucagon. Dephosphorylation of *pyruvate kinase* by a *phosphoprotein phosphatase* results in reactivation of the enzyme.

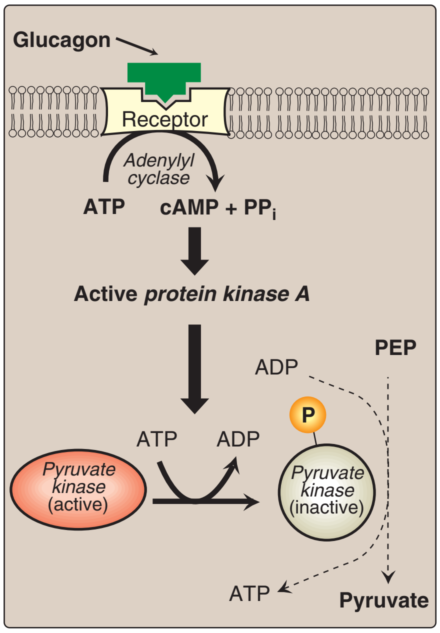


Figure 8.19
Covalent modification of hepatic *pyruvate kinase* results in inactivation of enzyme.

3. **Pyruvate kinase deficiency:** The normal, mature erythrocyte lacks mitochondria and is, therefore, completely dependent on glycolysis for production of ATP. This high-energy compound is required to meet the metabolic needs of the red blood cell, and also to fuel the pumps necessary for the maintenance of the biconcave, flexi-

ble shape of the cell, which allows it to squeeze through narrow capillaries. The anemia observed in glycolytic enzyme deficiencies is a consequence of the reduced rate of glycolysis, leading to decreased ATP production. The resulting alterations in the red blood cell membrane lead to changes in the shape of the cell and, ultimately, to phagocytosis by the cells of the reticuloendothelial system, particularly macrophages of the spleen. The premature death and lysis of red blood cells results in hemolytic anemia. Among patients exhibiting the rare genetic defects of glycolytic enzymes, about 95% show a deficiency in *pyruvate kinase*, and 4% exhibit *phosphoglucose isomerase* deficiency. *PK* deficiency is restricted to the erythrocytes, and produces mild to severe chronic hemolytic anemia (erythrocyte destruction), with the severe form requiring regular cell transfusions. The severity of the disease depends both on the degree of enzyme deficiency (generally 5–25% of normal levels), and on the extent to which the individual's red blood cells compensate by synthesizing increased levels of 2,3-BPG (see p. 31). Almost all individuals with *PK* deficiency have a mutant enzyme that shows abnormal properties—most often altered kinetics (Figure 8.20).

> *Pyruvate kinase* deficiency is the second most common cause (after *glucose 6-phosphate dehydrogenase* deficiency) of enzyme deficiency-related nonspherocytic hemolytic anemia.

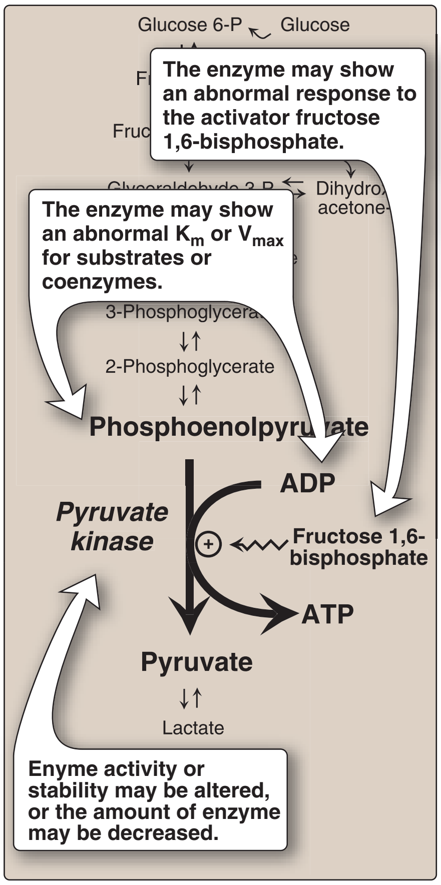

Glucose 6-P
Glucose
The enzyme may show an abnormal response to the activator fructose 1,6-bisphosphate.
Dihydro
acetone-
The enzyme may show an abnormal K_m or V_{max} for substrates or coenzymes.
3-Phosphoglycera
2-Phosphoglycerate
Phosphoenolpyruvate
ADP
Pyruvate kinase
Fructose 1,6-bisphosphate
ATP
Pyruvate
Lactate
Enyme activity or stability may be altered, or the amount of enzyme may be decreased.

Figure 8.20
Alterations observed with various mutant forms of *pyruvate kinase*.

K. Reduction of pyruvate to lactate

Lactate, formed by the action of *lactate dehydrogenase*, is the final product of anaerobic glycolysis in eukaryotic cells (Figure 8.21). The formation of lactate is the major fate for pyruvate in lens and cornea of the eye, kidney medulla, testes, leukocytes and red blood cells, because these are all poorly vascularized and/or lack mitochondria.

1. **Lactate formation in muscle:** In exercising skeletal muscle, NADH production (by *glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate dehydrogenase* and by the three NAD$^+$-linked *dehydrogenases* of the citric acid cycle, see p. 112) exceeds the oxidative capacity of the respiratory chain. This results in an elevated NADH/NAD$^+$ ratio, favoring reduction of pyruvate to lactate. Therefore, during intense exercise, lactate accumulates in muscle, causing a drop in the intracellular pH, potentially resulting in cramps. Much of this lactate eventually diffuses into the bloodstream, and can be used by the liver to make glucose (see p. 118).

2. **Lactate consumption:** The direction of the *lactate dehydrogenase* reaction depends on the relative intracellular concentrations of pyruvate and lactate, and on the ratio of NADH/NAD$^+$ in the cell. For example, in liver and heart, the ratio of NADH/NAD$^+$ is lower than in exercising muscle. These tissues oxidize lactate (obtained from the blood) to pyruvate. In the liver, pyruvate is either converted to glucose by gluconeogenesis or oxidized in the TCA cycle. Heart muscle exclusively oxidizes lactate to CO_2 and H_2O via the citric acid cycle.

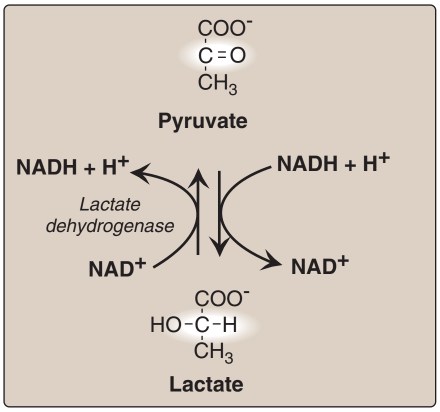

COO^-
C=O
CH_3
Pyruvate
NADH + H$^+$
NADH + H$^+$
Lactate dehydrogenase
NAD$^+$
NAD$^+$
COO^-
HO-C-H
CH_3
Lactate

Figure 8.21
Interconversion of pyruvate and lactate.

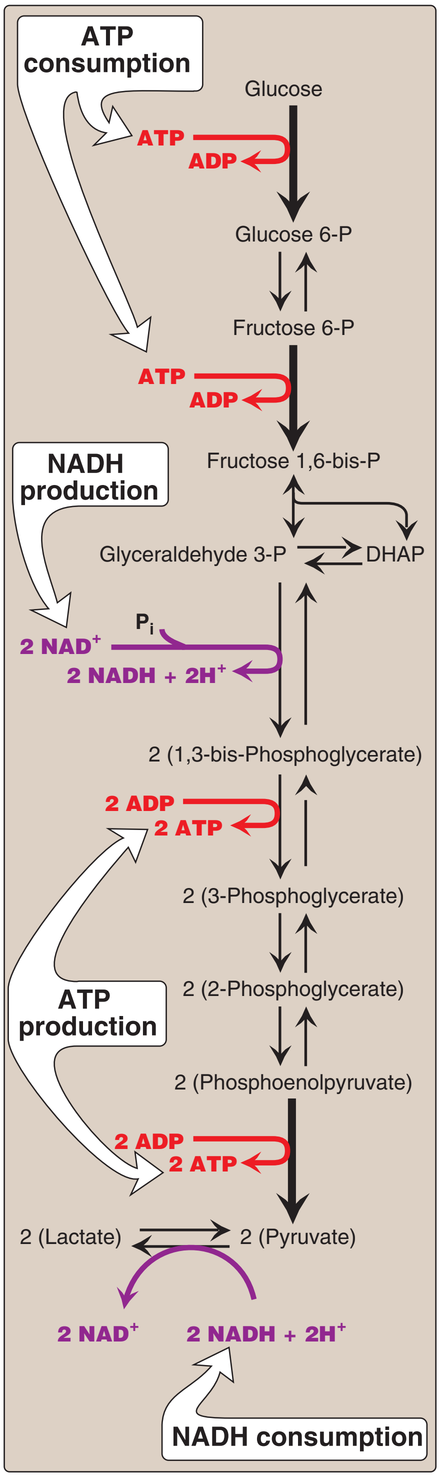


Figure 8.22
Summary of anaerobic glycolysis. Reactions involving the production or consumption of ATP or NADH are indicated. The three irreversible reactions of glycolysis are shown with thick arrows. DHAP = dihydroxyacetone phosphate.

3. **Lactic acidosis:** Elevated concentrations of lactate in the plasma, termed lactic acidosis, occur when there is a collapse of the circulatory system, such as in myocardial infarction, pulmonary embolism, and uncontrolled hemorrhage, or when an individual is in shock. The failure to bring adequate amounts of oxygen to the tissues results in impaired oxidative phosphorylation and decreased ATP synthesis. To survive, the cells use anaerobic glycolysis as a backup system for generating ATP, producing lactic acid as the endproduct. [Note: Production of even meager amounts of ATP may be life-saving during the period required to reestablish adequate blood flow to the tissues.] The excess oxygen required to recover from a period when the availability of oxygen has been inadequate is termed the oxygen debt.

The oxygen debt is often related to patient morbidity or mortality. In many clinical situations, measuring the blood levels of lactic acid allows the rapid, early detection of oxygen debt in patients and the monitoring of their recovery.

L. Energy yield from glycolysis

Despite the production of some ATP during glycolysis, the end products, pyruvate or lactate, still contain most of the energy originally contained in glucose. The TCA cycle is required to release that energy completely (see p. 109).

1. **Anaerobic glycolysis:** Two molecules of ATP are generated for each molecule of glucose converted to two molecules of lactate (Figure 8.22). There is no net production or consumption of NADH.

2. **Aerobic glycolysis:** The direct consumption and formation of ATP is the same as in anaerobic glycolysis—that is, a net gain of two ATP per molecule of glucose. Two molecules of NADH are also produced per molecule of glucose. Ongoing aerobic glycolysis requires the oxidation of most of this NADH by the electron transport chain, producing approximately three ATP for each NADH molecule entering the chain (see p. 77). [Note: NADH cannot cross the inner mitochondrial membrane, and substrate shuttles are required (see p. 79).]

VI. HORMONAL REGULATION OF GLYCOLYSIS

The regulation of glycolysis by allosteric activation or inhibition, or the phosphorylation/dephosphorylation of rate-limiting enzymes, is short-term—that is, they influence glucose consumption over periods of minutes or hours. Superimposed on these moment-to-moment effects are slower, and often more profound, hormonal influences on the amount of enzyme protein synthesized. These effects can result in 10-fold to 20-fold increases in enzyme activity that typically occur over hours to days. Although the current focus is on glycolysis, reciprocal changes occur in the rate-limiting enzymes of gluconeogenesis, which are described in

Chapter 10 (see p. 117). Regular consumption of meals rich in carbohydrate or administration of insulin initiates an increase in the amount of *glucokinase*, *phosphofructokinase*, and *pyruvate kinase* in liver (Figure 8.23). These changes reflect an increase in gene transcription, resulting in increased enzyme synthesis. High activity of these three enzymes favors the conversion of glucose to pyruvate, a characteristic of the well-fed state (see p. 321). Conversely, gene transcription and synthesis of *glucokinase*, *phosphofructokinase,* and *pyruvate kinase* are decreased when plasma glucagon is high and insulin is low, for example, as seen in fasting or diabetes.

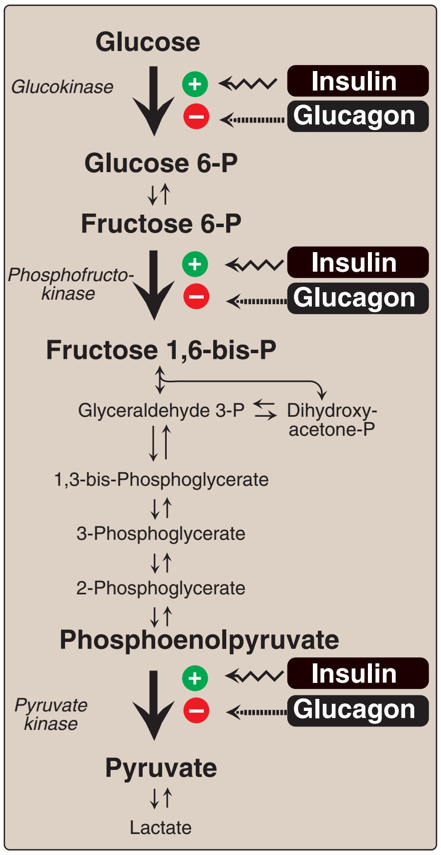


Figure 8.23
Effect of insulin and glucagon on the synthesis of key enzymes of glycolysis in liver.

VII. ALTERNATE FATES OF PYRUVATE

A. Oxidative decarboxylation of pyruvate

Oxidative decarboxylation of pyruvate by *pyruvate dehydrogenase complex* is an important pathway in tissues with a high oxidative capacity, such as cardiac muscle (Figure 8.24). *Pyruvate dehydrogenase* irreversibly converts pyruvate, the end product of glycolysis, into acetyl CoA, a major fuel for the TCA cycle (see p. 109) and the building block for fatty acid synthesis (see p. 183).

B. Carboxylation of pyruvate to oxaloacetate

Carboxylation of pyruvate to oxaloacetate (OAA) by *pyruvate carboxylase* is a biotin-dependent reaction (see Figure 8.24). This reaction is important because it replenishes the citric acid cycle intermediates, and provides substrate for gluconeogenesis (see p. 118).

C. Reduction of pyruvate to ethanol (microorganisms)

The conversion of pyruvate to ethanol occurs by the two reactions summarized in Figure 8.24. The decarboxylation of pyruvate by *pyruvate decarboxylase* occurs in yeast and certain other microorganisms, but not in humans. The enzyme requires thiamine pyrophosphate as a coenzyme, and catalyzes a reaction similar to that described for *pyruvate dehydrogenase* (see p. 110).

VIII. CHAPTER SUMMARY

Most pathways can be classified as either **catabolic** (**degrade** complex molecules to a few simple products) or **anabolic** (**synthesize** complex end products from simple precursors). **Catabolic reactions** also **capture chemical energy** in the form of **ATP** from the degradation of energy-rich molecules. **Anabolic reactions require energy**, which is generally provided by the breakdown of ATP. The rate of a metabolic pathway can respond to **regulatory signals**, for example, **allosteric activators** or **inhibitors**, that arise from **within the cell**. Signaling **between cells** provides for the integration of metabolism. The most important route of this communication is **chemical signaling** between cells, for example, by **hormones** or **neurotransmitters**. **Second messenger molecules** convey the intent of a chemical signal (hormone or neurotransmitter) to appropriate intracellular responders. **Adenylyl cyclase** is a membrane-bound enzyme that synthesizes **cAMP** in response to chemical signals, such

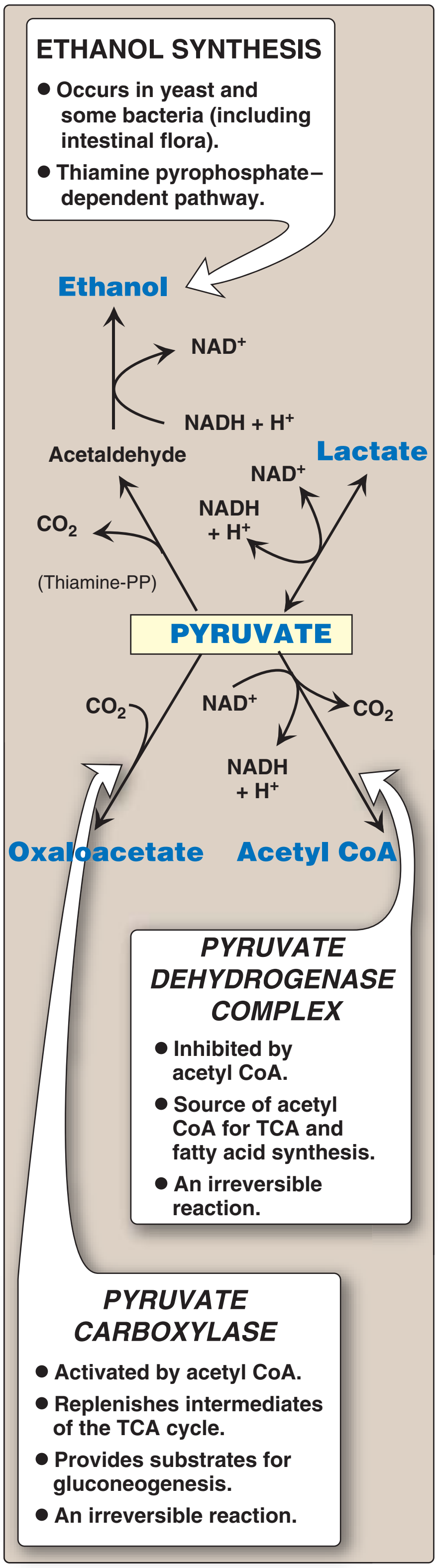

ETHANOL SYNTHESIS
● Occurs in yeast and some bacteria (including intestinal flora).
● Thiamine pyrophosphate–dependent pathway.
Ethanol
NAD+
NADH + H+
Acetaldehyde
Lactate
NAD+
NADH + H+
CO2
(Thiamine-PP)
PYRUVATE
CO2
NAD+
CO2
NADH + H+
Oxaloacetate
Acetyl CoA
PYRUVATE DEHYDROGENASE COMPLEX
● Inhibited by acetyl CoA.
● Source of acetyl CoA for TCA and fatty acid synthesis.
● An irreversible reaction.
PYRUVATE CARBOXYLASE
● Activated by acetyl CoA.
● Replenishes intermediates of the TCA cycle.
● Provides substrates for gluconeogenesis.
● An irreversible reaction.

Figure 8.24
Summary of the metabolic fates of pyruvate.

as the hormones **glucagon** and **epinephrine**. Following binding of a hormone to its **cell-surface receptor**, a GTP-dependent regulatory protein (**G protein**) is activated that, in turn, activates **adenylyl cyclase.** The cAMP produced activates a **protein kinase**, which phosphorylates a cadre of enzymes, causing their activation or deactivation. Phosphorylation is reversed by **protein phosphatases**. **Aerobic glycolysis**, in which **pyruvate** is the end product, occurs in cells with mitochondria and an adequate supply of oxygen. **Anaerobic glycolysis**, in which **lactic acid** is the end product, occurs in cells that lack mitochondria, or in cells deprived of sufficient oxygen. Glucose is transported across membranes by one of 14 **glucose transporter isoforms** (**GLUTs**). **GLUT-1** is abundant in **erythrocytes** and **brain**, **GLUT-4** (which is **insulin-dependent**) is found in **muscle** and **adipose tissue**, and **GLUT-2** is found in **liver** and the **β cells** of the pancreas. The conversion of glucose to pyruvate (**glycolysis**, Figure 8.25) occurs in two stages: an **energy investment phase** in which phosphorylated intermediates are synthesized at the expense of ATP, and an **energy generation phase**, in which ATP is produced. In the energy investment phase, glucose is phosphorylated by **hexokinase** (found in **most tissues**) or **glucokinase** (a hexokinase found in **liver cells** and the **β cells** of the pancreas). **Hexokinase** has a **high affinity** (**low** K_m) and a **small** V_{max} for glucose, and is **inhibited** by **glucose 6-phosphate**. **Glucokinase** has a **large** K_m and a **large** V_{max} for glucose. It is indirectly **inhibited** by **fructose 6-phosphate** and **activated** by **glucose**, and the **transcription** of the glucokinase gene is **enhanced by insulin**. Glucose 6-phosphate is isomerized to fructose 6-phosphate, which is phosphorylated to **fructose 1,6-bisphosphate** by **phosphofructokinase**. This enzyme is **allosterically inhibited** by **ATP** and **citrate**, and **activated** by **AMP**. **Fructose 2,6-bisphosphate**, whose synthesis is **activated** by **insulin**, is the most potent allosteric activator of this enzyme. A total of **two ATP are used** during this phase of glycolysis. Fructose 1,6-bisphosphate is cleaved to form two trioses that are further metabolized by the glycolytic pathway, forming pyruvate. During these reactions, **four ATP** and **two NADH are produced** from ADP and NAD^+. The final step in pyruvate synthesis from phosphoenolpyruvate is catalyzed by **pyruvate kinase**. This enzyme is **allosterically activated** by **fructose 1,6-bisphosphate**, and **hormonally activated** by **insulin** and **inhibited** by **glucagon** via the **cAMP pathway**. **Pyruvate kinase deficiency** accounts for 95% of all inherited defects in glycolytic enzymes. It is restricted to **erythrocytes**, and causes mild to severe **chronic hemolytic anemia**. In **anaerobic glycolysis**, NADH is reoxidized to NAD^+ by the **conversion of pyruvate to lactic acid**. This occurs in cells, such as **erythrocytes**, that have few or no mitochondria, and in tissues, such as **exercising muscle**, where production of NADH exceeds the oxidative capacity of the respiratory chain. Elevated concentrations of lactate in the plasma (**lactic acidosis**) occur when there is a **collapse of the circulatory system**, or when an individual is in **shock**. Pyruvate can be: 1) **oxidatively decarboxylated** by **pyruvate dehydrogenase**, producing **acetyl CoA**; 2) **carboxylated** to **oxaloacetate** (a TCA cycle intermediate) by **pyruvate carboxylase**; or 3) **reduced** by microorganisms to **ethanol** by **pyruvate decarboxylase**.

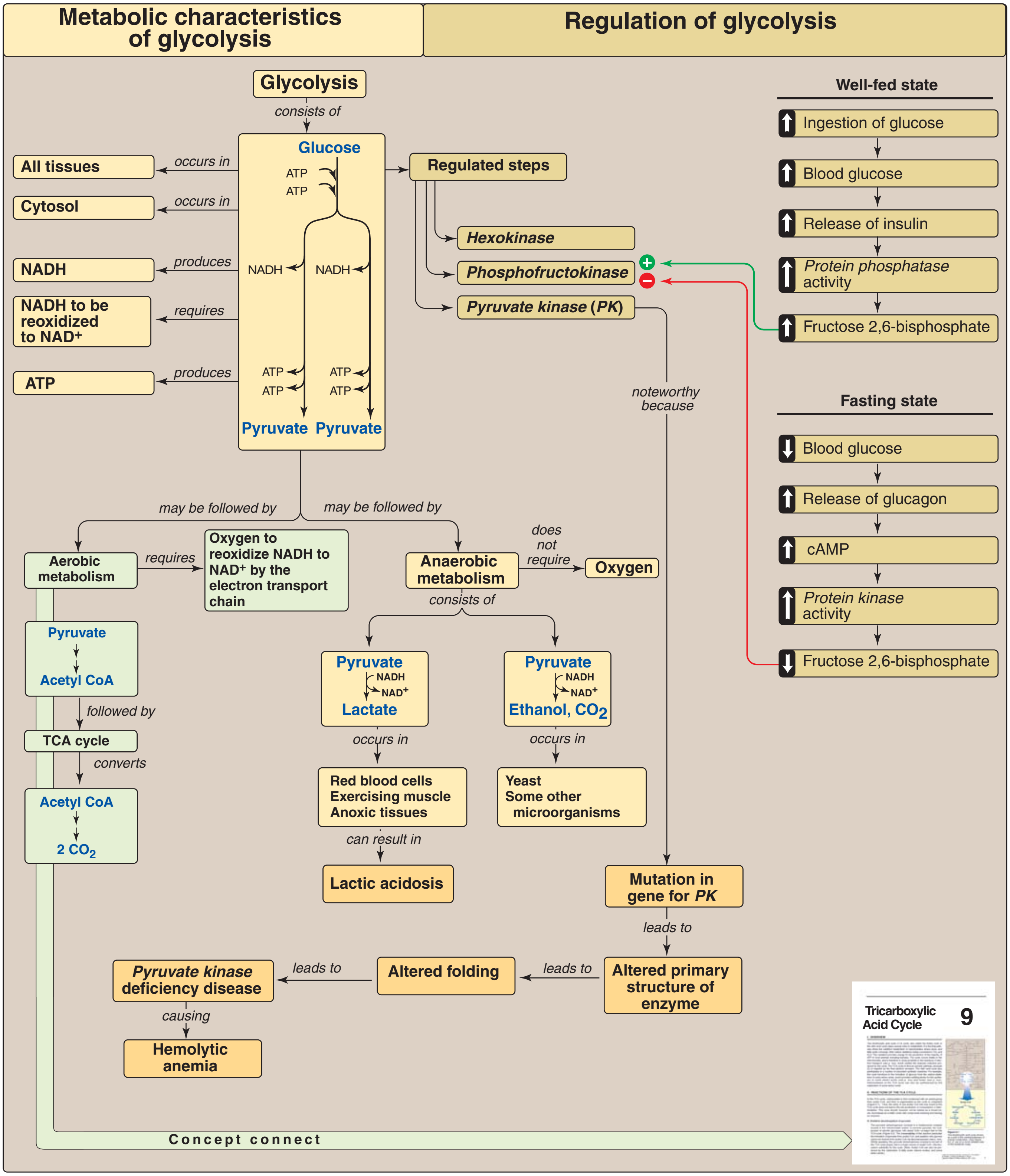

Metabolic characteristics of glycolysis
Regulation of glycolysis
Glycolysis
consists of
Glucose
ATP
ATP
NADH
NADH
ATP
ATP
ATP
ATP
Pyruvate
Pyruvate
All tissues
occurs in
Cytosol
occurs in
NADH
produces
NADH to be reoxidized to NAD+
requires
ATP
produces
Regulated steps
Hexokinase
Phosphofructokinase
Pyruvate kinase (PK)
+
−
noteworthy because
Well-fed state
↑ Ingestion of glucose
↑ Blood glucose
↑ Release of insulin
↑ Protein phosphatase activity
↑ Fructose 2,6-bisphosphate
Fasting state
↓ Blood glucose
↑ Release of glucagon
↑ cAMP
↑ Protein kinase activity
↓ Fructose 2,6-bisphosphate
may be followed by
may be followed by
Aerobic metabolism
requires
Oxygen to reoxidize NADH to NAD+ by the electron transport chain
Anaerobic metabolism
does not require
Oxygen
consists of
Pyruvate
Acetyl CoA
followed by
TCA cycle
converts
Acetyl CoA
2 CO2
Pyruvate
NADH
NAD+
Lactate
Pyruvate
NADH
NAD+
Ethanol, CO2
occurs in
occurs in
Red blood cells
Exercising muscle
Anoxic tissues
Yeast
Some other microorganisms
can result in
Lactic acidosis
Mutation in gene for PK
leads to
Altered primary structure of enzyme
leads to
Altered folding
leads to
Pyruvate kinase deficiency disease
causing
Hemolytic anemia
Concept connect
Tricarboxylic Acid Cycle
9

Figure 8.25
Key concept map for glycolysis.

Study Questions

Choose the ONE best answer.

8.1 Which one of the following statements concerning glycolysis is correct?

A. The conversion of glucose to lactate requires the presence of oxygen.
B. Hexokinase is important in hepatic glucose metabolism only in the absorptive period following consumption of a carbohydrate-containing meal.
C. Fructose 2,6-bisphosphate is a potent inhibitor of phosphofructokinase.
D. The regulated reactions are also the irreversible reactions.
E. The conversion of glucose to lactate yields two ATP and two NADH.

Correct answer = D. Hexokinase, phosphofructokinase, and pyruvate kinase are all irreversible and are the regulated steps in glycolysis. The conversion of glucose to lactate (anaerobic glycolysis) is a process that does not involve a net oxidation or reduction and, thus, oxygen is not required. Glucokinase (not hexokinase) is important in hepatic glucose metabolism only in the absorptive period following consumption of a carbohydrate-containing meal. Fructose 2,6-bisphosphate is a potent activator (not inhibitor) of phosphofructokinase. The conversion of glucose to lactate yields two ATP but no net production of NADH.

8.2 The reaction catalyzed by phosphofructokinase-1:

A. is activated by high concentrations of ATP and citrate.
B. uses fructose 1-phosphate as substrate.
C. is the rate-limiting reaction of the glycolytic pathway.
D. is near equilibrium in most tissues.
E. is inhibited by fructose 2,6-bisphosphate.

Correct answer = C. Phosphofructokinase-1 is the pace-setting enzyme of glycolysis. It is inhibited by ATP and citrate, uses fructose 6-phosphate as substrate, and catalyzes a reaction that is far from equilibrium. The reaction is activated by fructose 2,6-bisphosphate.

8.3 Compared with the resting state, vigorously contracting skeletal muscle shows:

A. an increased conversion of pyruvate to lactate.
B. decreased oxidation of pyruvate to CO_2 and water.
C. a decreased $NADH/NAD^+$ ratio.
D. a decreased concentration of AMP.
E. decreased levels of fructose 2,6-bisphosphate.

Correct answer = A. Vigorously contracting muscle shows an increased formation of lactate and an increased rate of pyruvate oxidation compared with resting skeletal muscle. The levels of AMP and NADH increase, whereas change in the concentration of fructose 2,6-bisphosphate is not a key regulatory factor in skeletal muscle.

8.4 A 43-year-old man presented with symptoms of weakness, fatigue, shortness of breath, and dizziness. His hemoglobin level was less than 7 g/dl (normal for a male being greater than 13.5 g/dl). Red blood cells isolated from the patient showed abnormally low level of lactate production. A deficiency of which one of the following enzymes would be the most likely cause of this patient's anemia?

A. Phosphoglucose isomerase
B. Phosphofructokinase
C. Pyruvate kinase
D. Hexokinase
E. Lactate dehydrogenase

Correct answer = C. Decreased lactate production in the erythrocyte indicates a defect in glycolysis. Among patients exhibiting genetic defects of glycolytic enzymes, about 95% show a deficiency in pyruvate kinase. Pyruvate kinase deficiency is the second most common cause (after glucose 6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency) of enzyme deficiency–related hemolytic anemia.

Tricarboxylic Acid Cycle

9

I. OVERVIEW

The tricarboxylic acid cycle (TCA cycle, also called the Krebs cycle or the citric acid cycle) plays several roles in metabolism. It is the final pathway where the oxidative metabolism of carbohydrates, amino acids, and fatty acids converge, their carbon skeletons being converted to CO_2. This oxidation provides energy for the production of the majority of ATP in most animals, including humans. The cycle occurs totally in the mitochondria and is, therefore, in close proximity to the reactions of electron transport (see p. 73), which oxidize the reduced coenzymes produced by the cycle. The TCA cycle is an aerobic pathway, because O_2 is required as the final electron acceptor. Most of the body's catabolic pathways converge on the TCA cycle (Figure 9.1). Reactions such as the catabolism of some amino acids generate intermediates of the cycle and are called anaplerotic reactions. The citric acid cycle also supplies intermediates for a number of important synthetic reactions. For example, the cycle functions in the formation of glucose from the carbon skeletons of some amino acids, and it provides building blocks for the synthesis of some amino acids (see p. 267) and heme (see p. 278). Therefore, this cycle should not be viewed as a closed circle, but instead as a traffic circle with compounds entering and leaving as required.

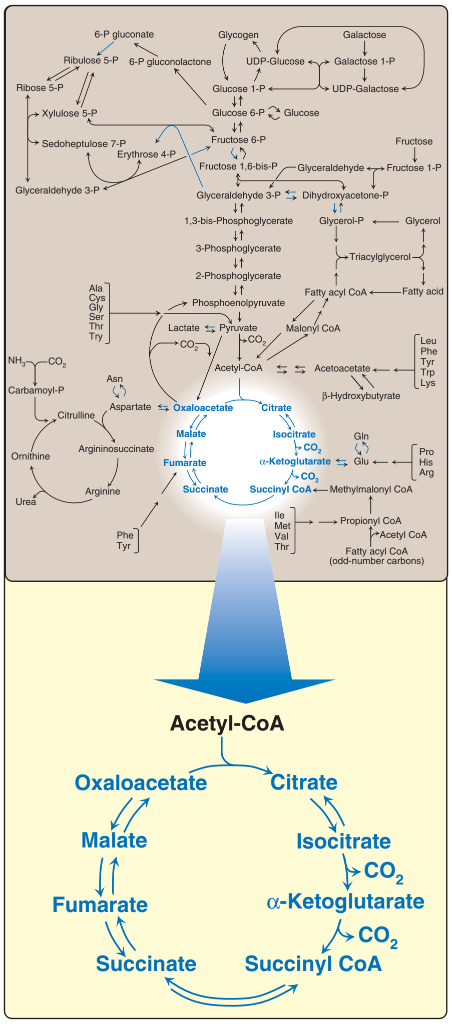

6-P gluconate
Ribulose 5-P
6-P gluconolactone
Ribose 5-P
Xylulose 5-P
Sedoheptulose 7-P
Erythrose 4-P
Glyceraldehyde 3-P
Glycogen
UDP-Glucose
Glucose 1-P
Glucose 6-P
Glucose
Fructose 6-P
Fructose 1,6-bis-P
Galactose
Galactose 1-P
UDP-Galactose
Fructose
Glyceraldehyde
Fructose 1-P
Glyceraldehyde 3-P
Dihydroxyacetone-P
1,3-bis-Phosphoglycerate
Glycerol-P
Glycerol
3-Phosphoglycerate
Triacylglycerol
2-Phosphoglycerate
Fatty acyl CoA
Fatty acid
Ala Cys Gly Ser Thr Try
Phosphoenolpyruvate
Lactate
Pyruvate
CO_2
Malonyl CoA
NH_3
CO_2
Carbamoyl-P
CO_2
Acetyl-CoA
Acetoacetate
Leu Phe Tyr Trp Lys
β-Hydroxybutyrate
Asn
Aspartate
Oxaloacetate
Citrate
Citrulline
Malate
Isocitrate
CO_2
Gln
Ornithine
Argininosuccinate
Fumarate
α-Ketoglutarate
Glu
Pro His Arg
CO_2
Succinate
Succinyl CoA
Methylmalonyl CoA
Arginine
Urea
Ile Met Val Thr
Propionyl CoA
Acetyl CoA
Phe Tyr
Fatty acyl CoA (odd-number carbons)
Acetyl-CoA
Oxaloacetate
Citrate
Malate
Isocitrate
CO_2
Fumarate
α-Ketoglutarate
CO_2
Succinate
Succinyl CoA

Figure 9.1
The tricarboxylic acid cycle shown as a part of the central pathways of energy metabolism. (See Figure 8.2, p. 92 for a more detailed view of the metabolic map.)

II. REACTIONS OF THE TCA CYCLE

In the TCA cycle, oxaloacetate is first condensed with an acetyl group from acetyl coenzyme A (CoA), and then is regenerated as the cycle is completed (Figure 9.1). Thus, the entry of one acetyl CoA into one round of the TCA cycle does not lead to the net production or consumption of intermediates. [Note: Two carbons entering the cycle as acetyl CoA are balanced by two CO_2 exiting.]

A. Oxidative decarboxylation of pyruvate

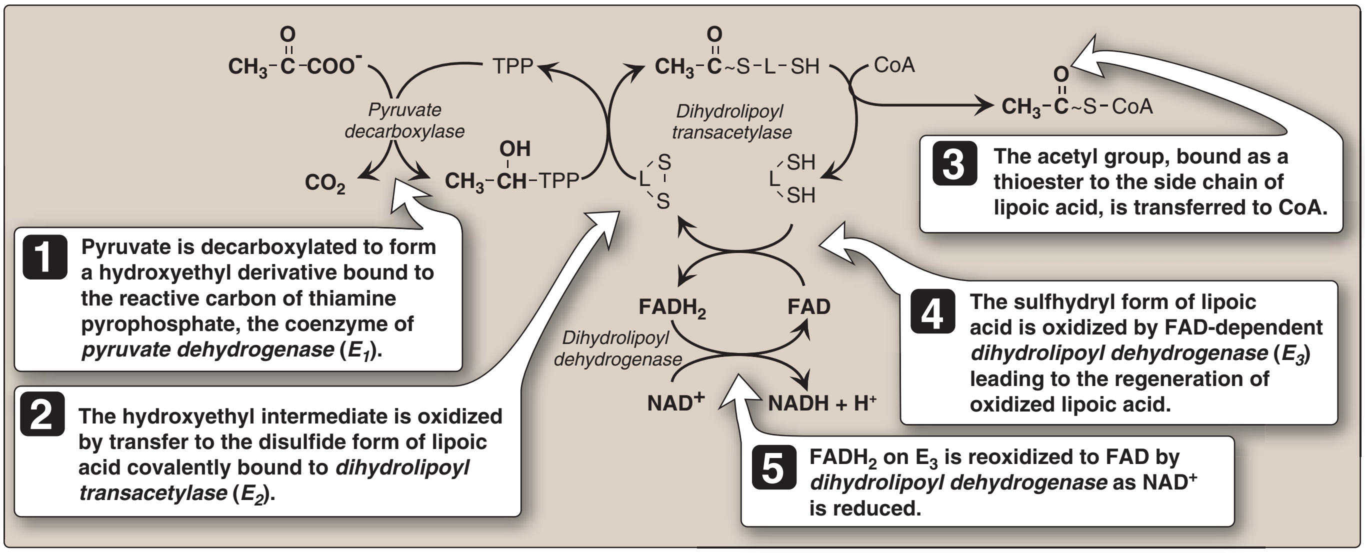
Pyruvate, the endproduct of aerobic glycolysis, must be transported into the mitochondrion before it can enter the TCA cycle. This is accomplished by a specific pyruvate transporter that helps pyruvate cross the inner mitochondrial membrane. Once in the matrix, pyruvate is converted to acetyl CoA by the *pyruvate dehydrogenase complex*, which is a multienzyme complex. Strictly speaking, the *pyruvate dehydrogenase complex* is not part of the TCA cycle proper, but is a major source of acetyl CoA—the two-carbon substrate for the cycle.

1. **Component enzymes:** The *pyruvate dehydrogenase complex* (*PDH complex*) is a multimolecular aggregate of three enzymes, *pyruvate dehydrogenase* (*PDH* or E_1, also called a *decarboxylase*), *dihydrolipoyl transacetylase* (E_2), and *dihydrolipoyl dehydrogenase* (E_3). Each catalyzes a part of the overall reaction (Figure 9.2). Their physical association links the reactions in proper sequence without the release of intermediates. In addition to the enzymes participating in the conversion of pyruvate to acetyl CoA, the complex also contains two tightly bound regulatory enzymes, *pyruvate dehydrogenase kinase* and *pyruvate dehydrogenase phosphatase*.

2. **Coenzymes:** The *PDH complex* contains five coenzymes that act as carriers or oxidants for the intermediates of the reactions shown in Figure 9.2. E_1 requires thiamine pyrophosphate (TPP), E_2 requires lipoic acid and CoA, and E_3 requires FAD and NAD^+.

> Deficiencies of thiamine or niacin can cause serious central nervous system problems. This is because brain cells are unable to produce sufficient ATP (via the TCA cycle) if the *PDH complex* is inactive. Wernicke-Korsakoff, an encephalopathy-psychosis syndrome due to thiamine deficiency, may be seen with alcohol abuse.

3. **Regulation of the pyruvate dehydrogenase complex:** Covalent modification by the two regulatory enzymes that are part of the complex alternately activate and inactivate E_1 (*PDH*). The cyclic AMP-independent *PDH kinase* phosphorylates and, thereby, inhibits E_1, whereas *PDH phosphatase* dephosphorylates and



1 **Pyruvate is decarboxylated to form a hydroxyethyl derivative bound to the reactive carbon of thiamine pyrophosphate, the coenzyme of *pyruvate dehydrogenase* (E_1).**

2 **The hydroxyethyl intermediate is oxidized by transfer to the disulfide form of lipoic acid covalently bound to *dihydrolipoyl transacetylase* (E_2).**

3 **The acetyl group, bound as a thioester to the side chain of lipoic acid, is transferred to CoA.**

4 **The sulfhydryl form of lipoic acid is oxidized by FAD-dependent *dihydrolipoyl dehydrogenase* (E_3) leading to the regeneration of oxidized lipoic acid.**

5 **$FADH_2$ on E_3 is reoxidized to FAD by *dihydrolipoyl dehydrogenase* as NAD^+ is reduced.**

Figure 9.2
Mechanism of action of the *pyruvate dehydrogenase complex.* TPP = thiamine pyrophosphate; L = lipoic acid.

activates E_1 (Figure 9.3). The *kinase* itself is allosterically activated by ATP, acetyl CoA, and NADH. Therefore, in the presence of these high-energy signals, the *PDH complex* is turned off. Pyruvate is a potent inhibitor of *PDH kinase*. Therefore, if pyruvate concentrations are elevated, E_1 will be maximally active. Calcium is a strong activator of *PDH phosphatase*, stimulating E_1 activity. This is particularly important in skeletal muscle, where release of Ca^{2+} during contraction stimulates the *PDH complex*, and thereby energy production. [Note: Although covalent regulation by the *kinase* and *phosphatase* is key, the complex is also subject to product (NADH, acetyl CoA) inhibition.]

4. **Pyruvate dehydrogenase deficiency:** A deficiency in the E_1 component of the *PDH complex,* although rare, is the most common biochemical cause of congenital lactic acidosis. This enzyme deficiency results in an inability to convert pyruvate to acetyl CoA, causing pyruvate to be shunted to lactic acid via *lactate dehydrogenase* (see p. 103). This causes particular problems for the brain, which relies on the TCA cycle for most of its energy, and is particularly sensitive to acidosis. Symptoms are variable and include neurodegeneration, muscle spasticity and, in the neonatal onset form, early death. The E_1 defect is X-linked, but because of the importance of the enzyme in the brain, it affects both males and females. Therefore, the defect is classified as X-linked dominant. There is no proven treatment for *pyruvate dehydrogenase* deficiency: however, dietary restriction of carbohydrate and supplementation with TPP may reduce symptoms in select patients.

> Leigh syndrome (subacute necrotizing encephalomyelopathy) is a rare, progressive neurological disorder that is the result of defects in mitochondrial ATP production, primarily as a result of mutations in the *PDH complex*, the electron transport chain, or *ATP synthase*. Both nuclear and mtDNA can be affected.

5. **Mechanism of arsenic poisoning:** As previously described (see p. 101), arsenic can interfere with glycolysis at the *glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate* step, thereby decreasing ATP production. "Arsenic poisoning" is, however, due primarily to inhibition of enzymes that require lipoic acid as a coenzyme, including E_2 of the *PDH complex*, *α-ketoglutarate dehydrogenase* (see below), and *branched-chain α-keto acid dehydrogenase* (see p. 266). Arsenite (the trivalent form of arsenic) forms a stable complex with the thiol (–SH) groups of lipoic acid, making that compound unavailable to serve as a coenzyme. When it binds to lipoic acid in the *PDH complex*, pyruvate (and consequently lactate) accumulates. Like *pyruvate dehydrogenase* deficiency, this particularly affects the brain, causing neurologic disturbances and death.

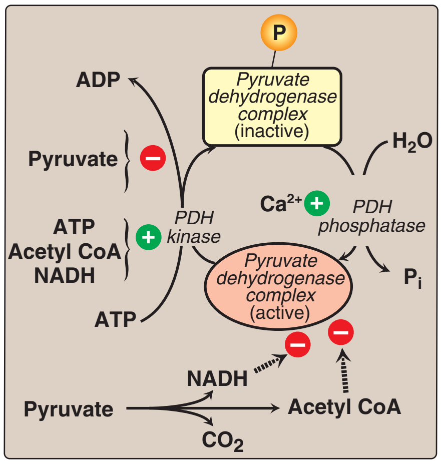

P
ADP
Pyruvate dehydrogenase complex (inactive)
Pyruvate
−
H₂O
ATP
Acetyl CoA
NADH
+
PDH kinase
Ca²⁺ +
PDH phosphatase
Pyruvate dehydrogenase complex (active)
Pᵢ
ATP
−
−
NADH
Pyruvate
Acetyl CoA
CO₂

Figure 9.3
Regulation of *pyruvate dehydrogenase complex.*
[⇢ denotes product inhibition.]

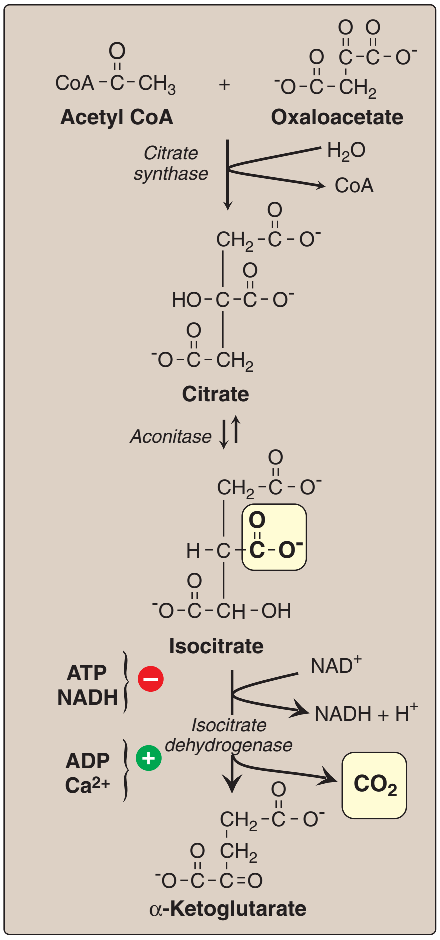

Acetyl CoA
+
Oxaloacetate
Citrate synthase
H₂O
CoA
Citrate
Aconitase
Isocitrate
ATP
NADH
−
NAD⁺
NADH + H⁺
Isocitrate dehydrogenase
ADP
Ca²⁺
+
CO₂
α-Ketoglutarate

Figure 9.4
Formation of α-ketoglutarate from acetyl CoA and oxaloacetate.

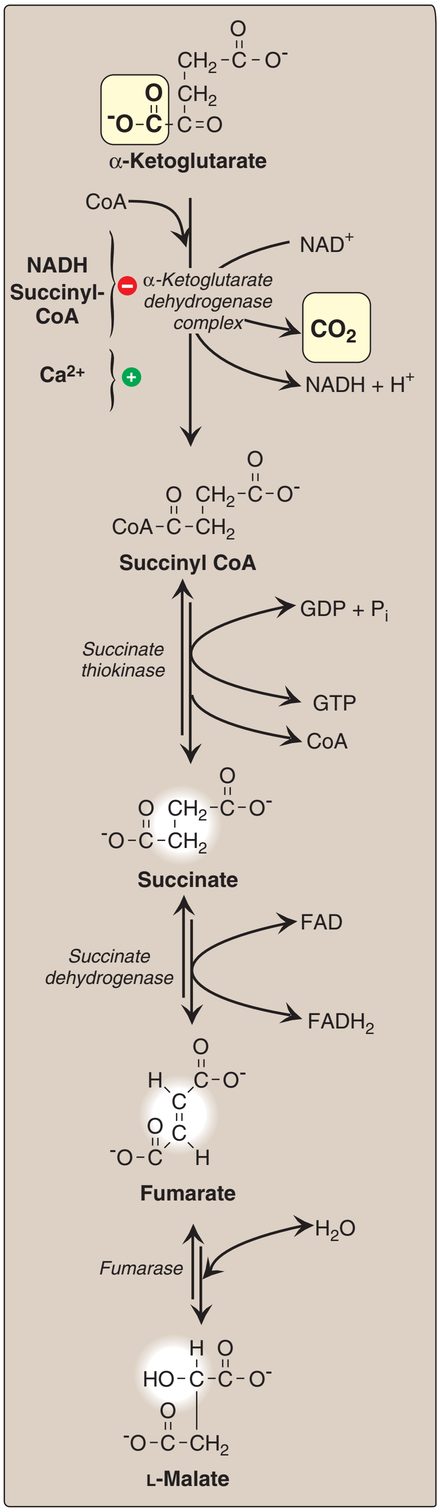


Figure 9.5
Formation of malate from α-ketoglutarate.

B. Synthesis of citrate from acetyl CoA and oxaloacetate

The condensation of acetyl CoA and oxaloacetate to form citrate (a tricarboxylic acid) is catalyzed by *citrate synthase* (Figure 9.4). This aldol condensation has an equilibrium far in the direction of citrate synthesis. In humans, *citrate synthase* is not an allosteric enzyme. It is inhibited by its product, citrate. Substrate availability is another means of regulation for *citrate synthase*. The binding of oxaloacetate causes a conformational change in the enzyme that generates a binding site for acetyl CoA. [Note: Citrate, in addition to being an intermediate in the TCA cycle, provides a source of acetyl CoA for the cytosolic synthesis of fatty acids (see p. 183). Citrate also inhibits *phosphofructokinase*, the rate-limiting enzyme of glycolysis (see p. 99), and activates *acetyl CoA carboxylase* (the rate-limiting enzyme of fatty acid synthesis; see p. 183).]

C. Isomerization of citrate

Citrate is isomerized to isocitrate by *aconitase*, an Fe-S protein (see Figure 9.4). [Note: *Aconitase* is inhibited by fluoroacetate, a compound that is used as a rat poison. Fluoroacetate is converted to fluoroacetyl CoA, which condenses with oxaloacetate to form fluorocitrate—a potent inhibitor of *aconitase*—resulting in citrate accumulation.]

D. Oxidation and decarboxylation of isocitrate

Isocitrate dehydrogenase catalyzes the irreversible oxidative decarboxylation of isocitrate, yielding the first of three NADH molecules produced by the cycle, and the first release of CO_2 (see Figure 9.4). This is one of the rate-limiting steps of the TCA cycle. The enzyme is allosterically activated by ADP (a low-energy signal) and Ca^{2+}, and is inhibited by ATP and NADH, whose levels are elevated when the cell has abundant energy stores.

E. Oxidative decarboxylation of α-ketoglutarate

The conversion of α-ketoglutarate to succinyl CoA is catalyzed by the *α-ketoglutarate dehydrogenase complex*, a multimolecular aggregate of three enzymes (Figure 9.5). The mechanism of this oxidative decarboxylation is very similar to that used for the conversion of pyruvate to acetyl CoA by the *PDH complex*. The reaction releases the second CO_2 and produces the second NADH of the cycle. The coenzymes required are thiamine pyrophosphate, lipoic acid, FAD, NAD^+, and CoA. Each functions as part of the catalytic mechanism in a way analogous to that described for the *PDH complex* (see p. 110). The equilibrium of the reaction is far in the direction of succinyl CoA—a high-energy thioester similar to acetyl CoA. *α-Ketoglutarate dehydrogenase complex* is inhibited by its products, NADH and succinyl CoA, and activated by Ca^{2+}. However, it is not regulated by phosphorylation/dephosphorylation reactions as described for *PDH complex*. [Note: α-Ketoglutarate is also produced by the oxidative deamination (see p. 252) or transamination of the amino acid, glutamate (see p. 250).]

F. Cleavage of succinyl CoA

Succinate thiokinase (also called *succinyl CoA synthetase*—named for the reverse reaction) cleaves the high-energy thioester bond of succinyl CoA (see Figure 9.5). This reaction is coupled to phosphorylation of guanosine diphosphate (GDP) to guanosine triphosphate (GTP). GTP and ATP are energetically interconvertible by the *nucleoside diphosphate kinase* reaction:

$$\text{GTP} + \text{ADP} \rightleftarrows \text{GDP} + \text{ATP}$$

The generation of GTP by *succinate thiokinase* is another example of substrate-level phosphorylation (see p. 102). [Note: Succinyl CoA is also produced from propionyl CoA derived from the metabolism of fatty acids with an odd number of carbon atoms (see p. 193), and from the metabolism of several amino acids (see pp. 265–266).]

G. Oxidation of succinate

Succinate is oxidized to fumarate by *succinate dehydrogenase*, as FAD (its coenzyme) is reduced to $FADH_2$ (see Figure 9.5). *Succinate dehydrogenase* is the only enzyme of the TCA cycle that is embedded in the inner mitochondrial membrane. As such, it functions as Complex II of the electron transport chain (see p. 75). [Note: FAD, rather than NAD^+, is the electron acceptor because the reducing power of succinate is not sufficient to reduce NAD^+.]

H. Hydration of fumarate

Fumarate is hydrated to malate in a freely reversible reaction catalyzed by *fumarase* (also called *fumarate hydratase*, see Figure 9.5). [Note: Fumarate is also produced by the urea cycle (see p. 254), in purine synthesis (see p. 294), and during catabolism of the amino acids, phenylalanine and tyrosine (see p. 263).]

I. Oxidation of malate

Malate is oxidized to oxaloacetate by *malate dehydrogenase* (Figure 9.6). This reaction produces the third and final NADH of the cycle. The ΔG^0 of the reaction is positive, but the reaction is driven in the direction of oxaloacetate by the highly exergonic *citrate synthase* reaction. [Note: Oxaloacetate is also produced by the transamination of the amino acid, aspartic acid (see p. 250).]

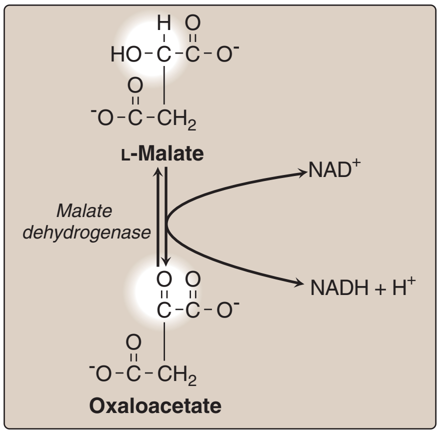


Figure 9.6
Formation of oxaloacetate from malate.

III. ENERGY PRODUCED BY THE TCA CYCLE

Two carbon atoms enter the cycle as acetyl CoA and leave as CO_2. The cycle does not involve net consumption or production of oxaloacetate or of any other intermediate. Four pairs of electrons are transferred during one turn of the cycle: three pairs of electrons reducing three NAD^+ to NADH and one pair reducing FAD to $FADH_2$. Oxidation of one NADH by the electron transport chain leads to formation of approximately three ATP, whereas oxidation of $FADH_2$ yields approximately two ATP (see p. 77). The total yield of ATP from the oxidation of one acetyl CoA is shown in Figure 9.7. Figure 9.8 summarizes the reactions of the TCA cycle.

Energy producing reaction	Number of ATP produced
3 NADH → 3 NAD^+	9
$FADH_2$ → FAD	2
GDP + P_i → GTP	1
	12 ATP/acetyl CoA oxidized

Figure 9.7
Number of ATP molecules produced from the oxidation of one molecule of acetyl CoA (using both substrate-level and oxidative phosphorylation).

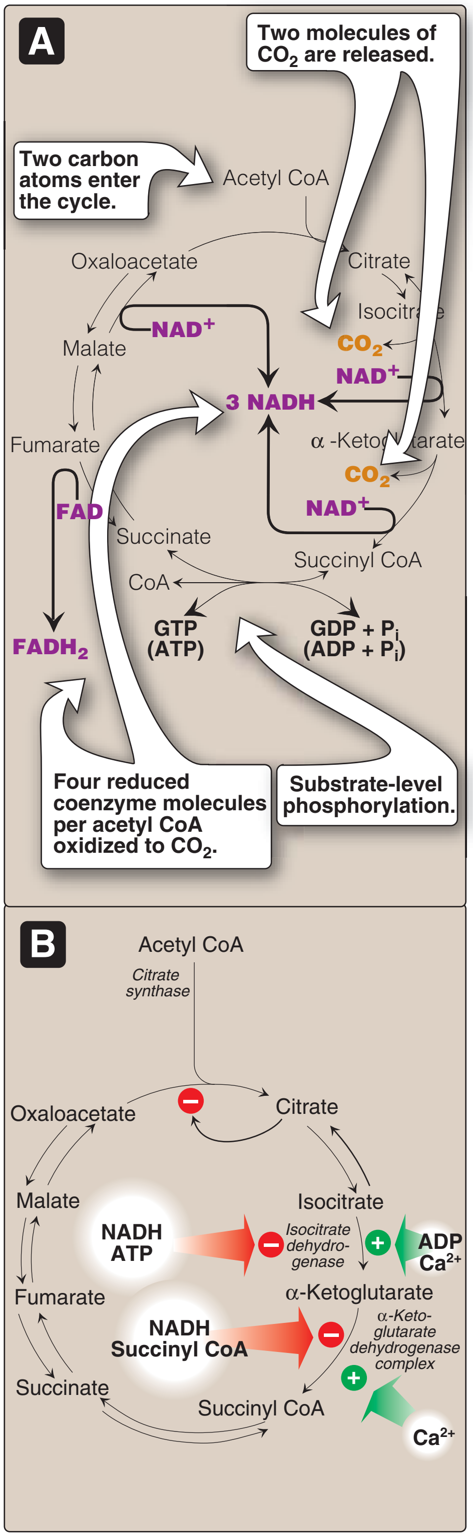

A
Two molecules of CO_2 are released.
Two carbon atoms enter the cycle.
Acetyl CoA
Oxaloacetate
Citrate
Isocitrate
NAD^+
Malate
CO_2
NAD^+
3 NADH
Fumarate
α -Ketoglutarate
CO_2
FAD
NAD^+
Succinate
Succinyl CoA
CoA
GTP (ATP)
GDP + P_i (ADP + P_i)
$FADH_2$
Four reduced coenzyme molecules per acetyl CoA oxidized to CO_2.
Substrate-level phosphorylation.
B
Acetyl CoA
Citrate synthase
Oxaloacetate
Citrate
Malate
Isocitrate
NADH ATP
Isocitrate dehydrogenase
ADP Ca^{2+}
Fumarate
α-Ketoglutarate
NADH Succinyl CoA
α-Ketoglutarate dehydrogenase complex
Succinate
Succinyl CoA
Ca^{2+}

Figure 9.8
A. Production of reduced coenzymes, ATP, and CO_2 in the citric acid cycle. B. Inhibitors and activators of the cycle.

IV. REGULATION OF THE TCA CYCLE

In contrast to glycolysis, which is regulated primarily by *phosphofructokinase,* the TCA cycle is controlled by the regulation of several enzyme activities (see Figure 9.8). The most important of these regulated enzymes are those that catalyze reactions with highly negative ΔG^0: *citrate synthase*, *isocitrate dehydrogenase*, and *α-ketoglutarate dehydrogenase complex*. Reducing equivalents needed for oxidative phosphorylation are generated by the *pyruvate dehydrogenase complex* and the TCA cycle, and both processes are upregulated in response to a rise in ADP.

V. CHAPTER SUMMARY

Pyruvate is **oxidatively decarboxylated** by **pyruvate dehydrogenase (PDH) complex**, producing **acetyl CoA**, which is the major fuel for the tricarboxylic acid cycle (TCA cycle, Figure 9.9). This multienzyme complex requires five coenzymes: **thiamine pyrophosphate**, **lipoic acid**, **FAD**, **NAD^+**, and **coenzyme A**. PDH complex is regulated by covalent modification of E_1 (pyruvate dehydrogenase, PDH) by PDH kinase and PDH phosphatase: phosphorylation inhibits PDH. PDH kinase is allosterically activated by ATP, acetyl CoA, and NADH and inhibited by pyruvate; the phosphatase is activated by Ca^{2+}. **Pyruvate dehydrogenase deficiency** is the most common biochemical cause of **congenital lactic acidosis**. The central nervous system is particularly affected in this is **X-linked dominant** disorder. **Arsenic poisoning** causes inactivation of PDH complex by binding to lipoic acid. **Citrate** is synthesized from **oxaloacetate** and **acetyl CoA** by **citrate synthase**. This enzyme is subject to product inhibition by citrate. Citrate is isomerized to **isocitrate** by **aconitase**. **Isocitrate** is oxidized and decarboxylated by **isocitrate dehydrogenase** to **α-ketoglutarate**, producing **CO_2** and **NADH**. The enzyme is inhibited by ATP and NADH, and activated by ADP and Ca^{2+}. **α-Ketoglutarate** is oxidatively decarboxylated to **succinyl CoA** by the **α-ketoglutarate dehydrogenase complex**, producing **CO_2** and **NADH**. The enzyme is very similar to pyruvate dehydrogenase and uses the same coenzymes. α-Ketoglutarate dehydrogenase complex is activated by calcium and inhibited by NADH and succinyl CoA, but is not covalently regulated. **Succinyl CoA** is cleaved by **succinate thiokinase** (also called **succinyl CoA synthetase**), producing **succinate** and **GTP**. This is an example of **substrate-level phosphorylation**. **Succinate** is oxidized to **fumarate** by **succinate dehydrogenase**, producing **$FADH_2$**. **Fumarate** is hydrated to **malate** by **fumarase** (**fumarate hydratase**), and **malate** is oxidized to **oxaloacetate** by **malate dehydrogenase**, producing **NADH**. **Three NADH**, **one $FADH_2$**, and **one GTP** (whose terminal phosphate can be transferred to ADP by nucleoside diphosphate kinase, producing ATP) are produced by one round of the TCA cycle. The generation of acetyl CoA by the oxidation of pyruvate via the PDH complex also produces an NADH. Oxidation of these NADHs and $FADH_2$ by the electron transport chain yields 14 ATP. An additional ATP (GTP) comes from substrate level phosphorylation in the TCA cycle. Therefore, a total of 15 ATPs are produced from the complete mitochondrial oxidation of pyruvate to CO_2.

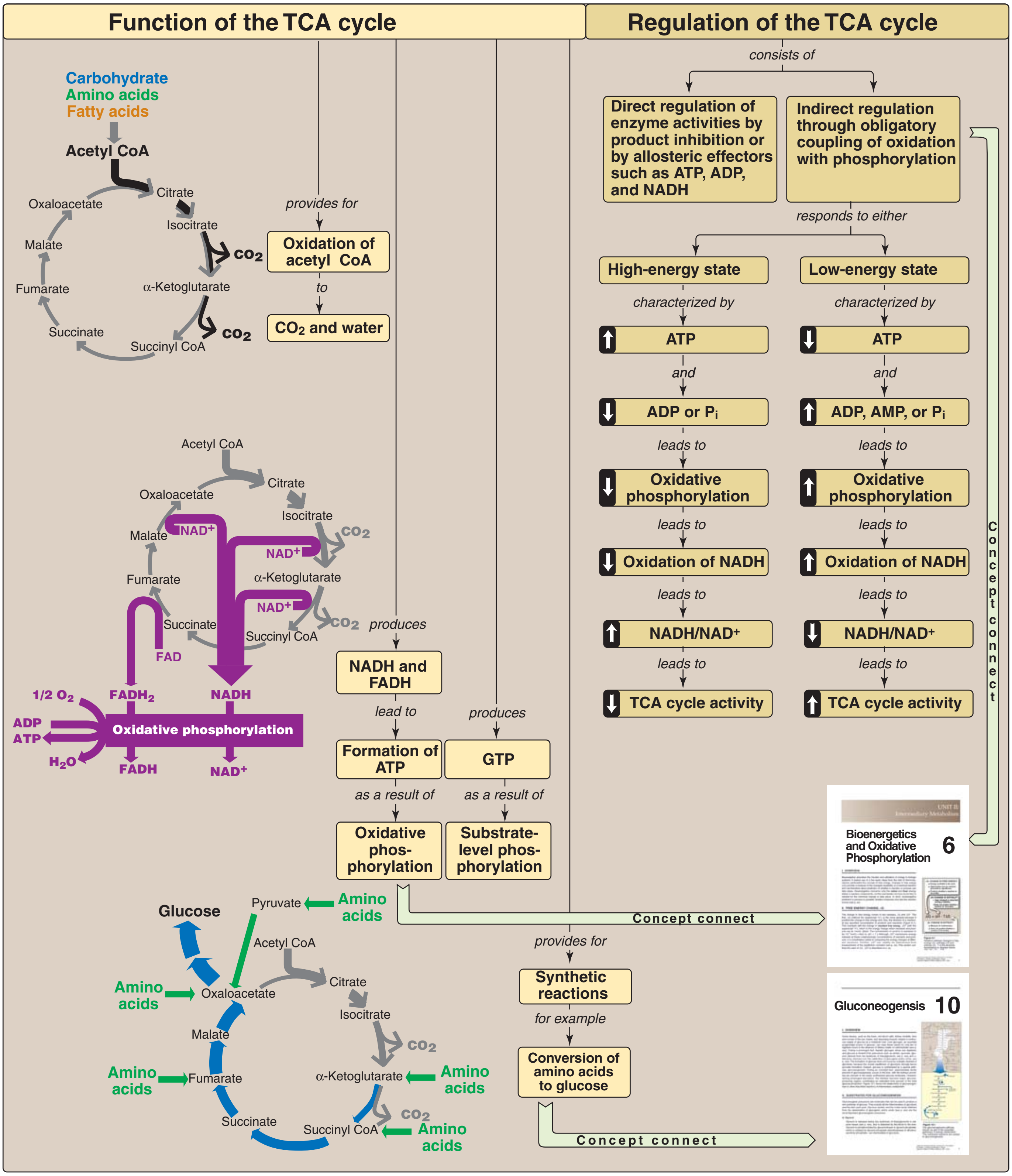

Function of the TCA cycle
Regulation of the TCA cycle
Carbohydrate
Amino acids
Fatty acids
Acetyl CoA
Citrate
Isocitrate
CO2
α-Ketoglutarate
CO2
Succinyl CoA
Succinate
Fumarate
Malate
Oxaloacetate
provides for
Oxidation of acetyl CoA
to
CO2 and water
Acetyl CoA
Citrate
Isocitrate
NAD+
CO2
NAD+
α-Ketoglutarate
NAD+
CO2
Succinyl CoA
Succinate
FAD
Fumarate
Malate
Oxaloacetate
NAD+
FADH2
NADH
1/2 O2
ADP
ATP
H2O
Oxidative phosphorylation
FADH
NAD+
produces
NADH and FADH
lead to
Formation of ATP
as a result of
Oxidative phos-phorylation
produces
GTP
as a result of
Substrate-level phos-phorylation
Concept connect
Glucose
Pyruvate
Amino acids
Acetyl CoA
Citrate
Isocitrate
CO2
Amino acids
Oxaloacetate
Malate
Amino acids
Fumarate
α-Ketoglutarate
Amino acids
CO2
Succinate
Succinyl CoA
Amino acids
provides for
Synthetic reactions
for example
Conversion of amino acids to glucose
Concept connect
consists of
Direct regulation of enzyme activities by product inhibition or by allosteric effectors such as ATP, ADP, and NADH
Indirect regulation through obligatory coupling of oxidation with phosphorylation
responds to either
High-energy state
characterized by
↑ ATP
and
↓ ADP or Pi
leads to
↓ Oxidative phosphorylation
leads to
↓ Oxidation of NADH
leads to
↑ NADH/NAD+
leads to
↓ TCA cycle activity
Low-energy state
characterized by
↓ ATP
and
↑ ADP, AMP, or Pi
leads to
↑ Oxidative phosphorylation
leads to
↑ Oxidation of NADH
leads to
↓ NADH/NAD+
leads to
↑ TCA cycle activity
Concept connect
UNIT II Intermediary Metabolism
Bioenergetics and Oxidative Phosphorylation 6
Gluconeogensis 10

Figure 9.9
Key concept map for the tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle.

Study Questions

Choose the ONE correct answer.

9.1 The conversion of pyruvate to acetyl CoA and CO_2:

A. is reversible.
B. involves the participation of lipoic acid.
C. is activated when pyruvate dehydrogenase (PDH, E_1) of the pyruvate dehydrogenase complex is phosphorylated by PDH kinase in the presence of ATP.
D. occurs in the cytosol.
E. depends on the coenzyme biotin.

Correct answer = B. Lipoic acid is an intermediate acceptor of the acetyl group formed in the reaction. Pyruvate dehydrogenase complex catalyzes an irreversible reaction that is inhibited when the PDH (E1) component is phosphorylated. The enzyme complex is located in the mitochondrial matrix. Biotin is utilized by carboxylases.

9.2 Which one of the following conditions decreases the oxidation of acetyl CoA by the citric acid cycle?

A. A low ATP/ADP ratio
B. A low NADH concentration due to rapid oxidation to NAD^+ through the respiratory chain
C. A low NAD^+/NADH ratio
D. A high concentration of AMP
E. A low GTP/GDP ratio

Correct answer = C. A low NAD^+/NADH ratio limits the rates of the NAD^+-requiring dehydrogenases. A low ATP/ADP or GTP/GDP ratio stimulates the cycle. AMP does not directly affect the cycle.

9.3 The following is the sum of three steps in the citric acid cycle.

$$A + B + FAD + H_2O \rightarrow C + FADH_2 + NADH$$

Choose the lettered answer that corresponds to the missing "A", "B", and "C" in the equation.

	Reactant A	Reactant B	Reactant C
A.	Succinyl CoA	GDP	Succinate
B.	Succinate	NAD^+	Oxaloacetate
C.	Fumarate	NAD^+	Oxaloacetate
D.	Succinate	NAD^+	Malate
E.	Fumarate	GTP	Malate

Correct answer = B. Succinate + NAD^+ + FAD → oxaloacetate + NADH + $FADH_2$

9.4 A 1-month-old male showed abnormalities of the nervous system and lactic acidosis. Enzyme assay for pyruvate dehydrogenase (PDH) activity on extracts of cultured skin fibroblasts showed 5% of normal activity, with a low concentration (1×10^{-4} mM) of thiamine pyrophosphate (TPP), but 80% of normal activity when the assay contained a high (0.4 mM) concentration of TPP. Which one of the following statements concerning this patient is most correct?

A. Elevated levels of lactate and pyruvate in the blood reliably predict the presence of PDH deficiency.
B. The patient is expected to show disturbances in fatty acid degradation.
C. A diet consisting of high carbohydrate intake would be expected to be beneficial in this patient.
D. Alanine concentration in the blood is expected to be less than normal.
E. Administration of thiamine is expected to reduce his serum lactate concentration and improve his clinical symptoms.

Correct answer = E. The patient appears to have a thiamine-responsive PDH deficiency. The enzyme fails to bind thiamine pyrophosphate at low concentration, but shows significant activity at a high concentration of the coenzyme. This mutation, which affects the K_m of the enzyme for the coenzyme, is present in some, but not all, cases of PDH deficiency. All inborn errors of PDH are associated with elevated levels of lactate, pyruvate, and alanine (the transamination product of pyruvate). Patients routinely show neuroanatomic defects, developmental delay, and often early death. Elevated lactate and pyruvate are also observed in pyruvate carboxylase deficiency, another rare defect in pyruvate metabolism. Because PDH is an integral part of carbohydrate metabolism, a diet low in carbohydrates would be expected to blunt the effects of the enzyme deficiency. By contrast, fatty acid degradation occurs via conversion to acetyl CoA by β-oxidation, a process that does not involve pyruvate as an intermediate. Thus, fatty acid metabolism is not disturbed in this enzyme deficiency.

Gluconeogenesis

10

I. OVERVIEW

Some tissues, such as the brain, red blood cells, kidney medulla, lens and cornea of the eye, testes, and exercising muscle, require a continuous supply of glucose as a metabolic fuel. Liver glycogen, an essential postprandial source of glucose, can meet these needs for only 10–18 hours in the absence of dietary intake of carbohydrate (see p. 329). During a prolonged fast, however, hepatic glycogen stores are depleted, and glucose is formed from precursors such as lactate, pyruvate, glycerol (derived from the backbone of triacylglycerols, see p. 190), and α-ketoacids (derived from the catabolism of glucogenic amino acids, see p. 261). The formation of glucose does not occur by a simple reversal of glycolysis, because the overall equilibrium of glycolysis strongly favors pyruvate formation. Instead, glucose is synthesized by a special pathway, gluconeogenesis, that requires both mitochondrial and cytosolic enzymes. During an overnight fast, approximately 90% of gluconeogenesis occurs in the liver, with the kidneys providing 10% of the newly synthesized glucose molecules. However, during prolonged fasting, the kidneys become major glucose-producing organs, contributing an estimated 40% of the total glucose production. Figure 10.1 shows the relationship of gluconeogenesis to other important reactions of intermediary metabolism.

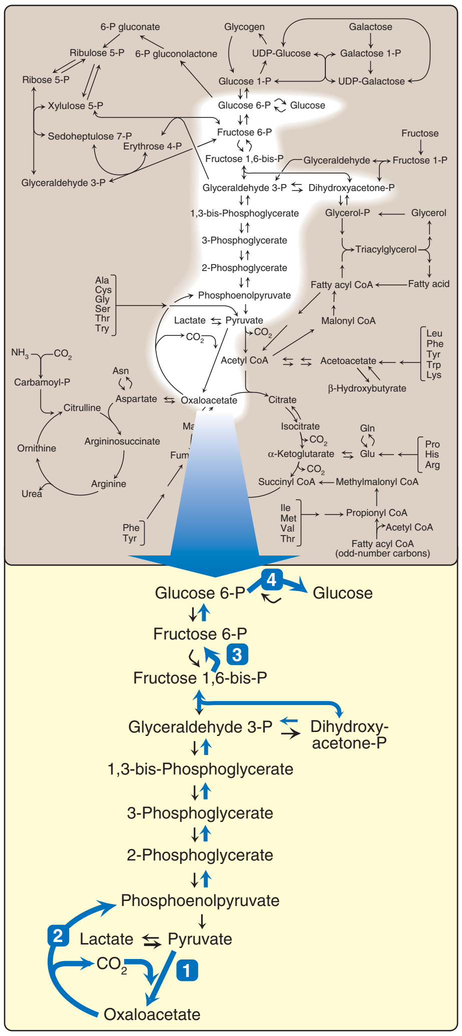


Figure 10.1
The gluconeogenesis pathway shown as part of the essential pathways of energy metabolism. The numbered reactions are unique to gluconeogenesis. (See Figure 8.2, p. 92, for a more detailed map of metabolism.)

II. SUBSTRATES FOR GLUCONEOGENESIS

Gluconeogenic precursors are molecules that can be used to produce a net synthesis of glucose. They include intermediates of glycolysis and the tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle. Glycerol, lactate, and the α-keto acids obtained from the transamination of glucogenic amino acids are the most important gluconeogenic precursors.

A. Glycerol

Glycerol is released during the hydrolysis of triacylglycerols in adipose tissue (see p. 190), and is delivered by the blood to the liver. Glycerol is phosphorylated by *glycerol kinase* to glycerol phosphate, which is oxidized by *glycerol phosphate dehydrogenase* to dihydroxyacetone phosphate—an intermediate of glycolysis. [Note: Adipocytes cannot phosphorylate glycerol because they essentially lack *glycerol kinase*.]

B. Lactate

Lactate is released into the blood by exercising skeletal muscle, and by cells that lack mitochondria, such as red blood cells. In the Cori cycle, bloodborne glucose is converted by exercising muscle to lactate, which diffuses into the blood. This lactate is taken up by the liver and reconverted to glucose, which is released back into the circulation (Figure 10.2).

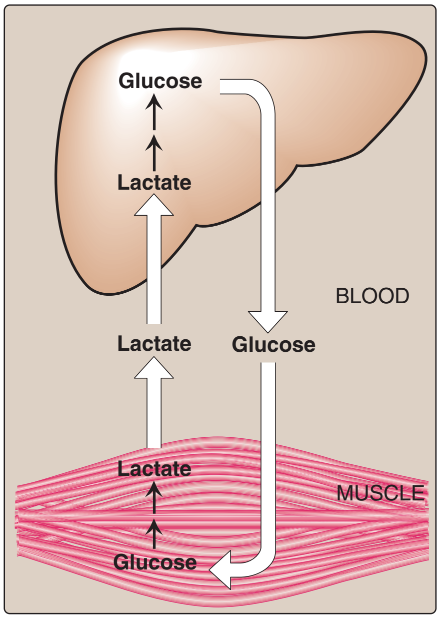


Figure 10.2
The Cori cycle.

C. Amino acids

Amino acids derived from hydrolysis of tissue proteins are the major sources of glucose during a fast. α-Ketoacids, such as α-ketoglutarate, are derived from the metabolism of glucogenic amino acids (see p. 261). These α-ketoacids can enter the TCA cycle and form oxaloacetate (OAA)—a direct precursor of phosphoenolpyruvate (PEP). [Note: Acetyl coenzyme A (CoA) and compounds that give rise only to acetyl CoA (for example, acetoacetate and amino acids such as lysine and leucine) cannot give rise to a net synthesis of glucose. This is due to the irreversible nature of the *pyruvate dehydrogenase* reaction, which converts pyruvate to acetyl CoA (see p. 109). These compounds give rise instead to ketone bodies (see p. 195) and are therefore termed ketogenic.]

III. REACTIONS UNIQUE TO GLUCONEOGENESIS

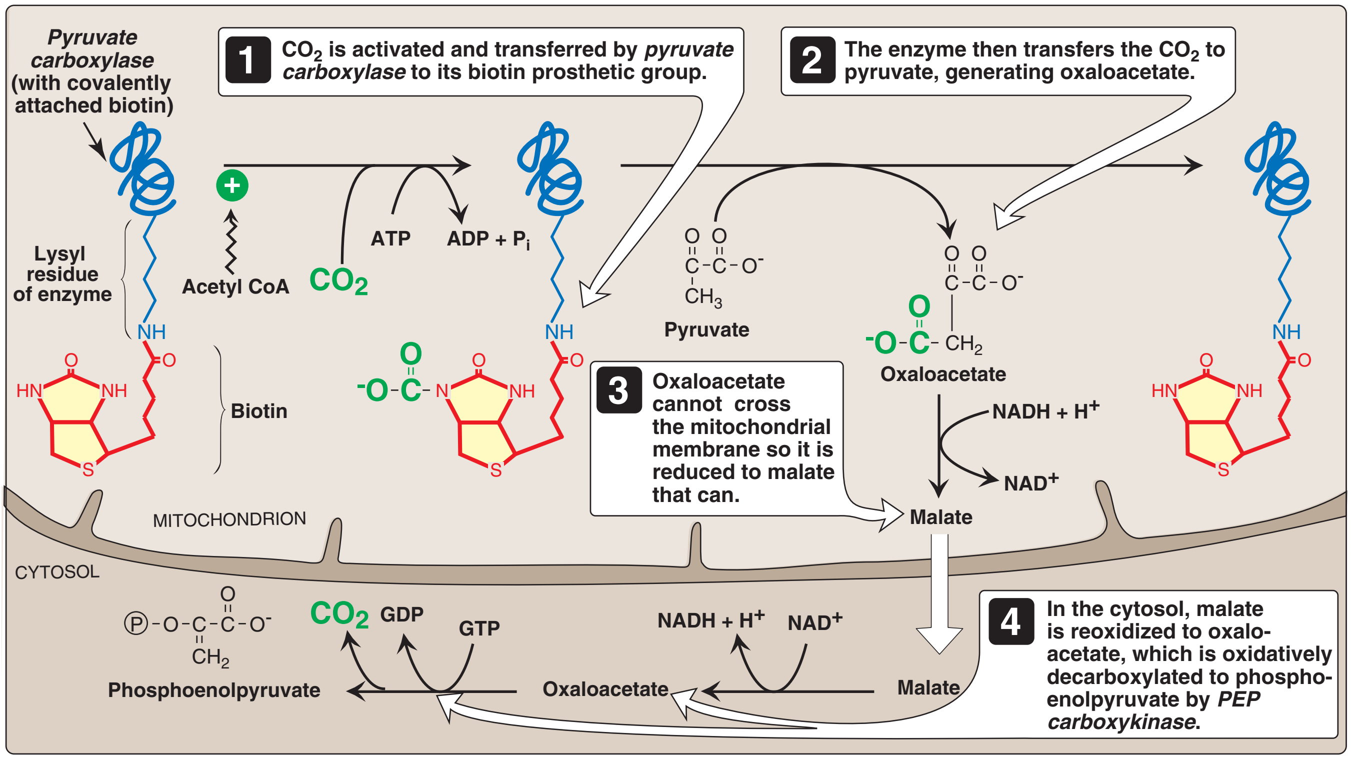
Seven glycolytic reactions are reversible and are used in the synthesis of glucose from lactate or pyruvate. However, three of the reactions are irreversible and must be circumvented by four alternate reactions that energetically favor the synthesis of glucose. These reactions, unique to gluconeogenesis, are described below.

A. Carboxylation of pyruvate

The first “roadblock” to overcome in the synthesis of glucose from pyruvate is the irreversible conversion in glycolysis of PEP to pyruvate by *pyruvate kinase.* In gluconeogenesis, pyruvate is first carboxylated by *pyruvate carboxylase* to OAA, which is then converted to PEP by the action of *PEP-carboxykinase* (Figure 10.3).

1. **Biotin is a coenzyme:** *Pyruvate carboxylase* requires biotin (see p. 381) covalently bound to the ε-amino group of a lysine residue in the enzyme (see Figure 10.3). Hydrolysis of ATP drives the formation of an enzyme–biotin–CO_2 intermediate. This high-energy complex subsequently carboxylates pyruvate to form OAA. [Note: This reaction occurs in the mitochondria of liver and kidney cells, and has two purposes: to provide an important substrate for gluconeogenesis, and to provide OAA that can replenish the TCA cycle intermediates that may become depleted, depending on the synthetic needs of the cell. Muscle cells also contain *pyruvate carboxylase*, but use the OAA produced only for the latter purpose—they do not synthesize glucose.]

> *Pyruvate carboxylase* is one of several *carboxylases* that require biotin. Others include *acetyl CoA carboxylase* (p. 183), *propionyl CoA carboxylase* (p. 194), and *methylcrotonyl CoA carboxylase* (p. 266).


Pyruvate carboxylase (with covalently attached biotin)
Lysyl residue of enzyme
NH
O
HN
NH
S
Biotin
+
Acetyl CoA
CO_2
ATP
ADP + P_i
O
$^-O-C-N$
Pyruvate
Oxaloacetate
NADH + H^+
NAD$^+$
Malate
MITOCHONDRION
CYTOSOL
Phosphoenolpyruvate
CO_2
GDP
GTP
Oxaloacetate
NADH + H^+
NAD$^+$
Malate

1 CO_2 is activated and transferred by *pyruvate carboxylase* to its biotin prosthetic group.

2 The enzyme then transfers the CO_2 to pyruvate, generating oxaloacetate.

3 Oxaloacetate cannot cross the mitochondrial membrane so it is reduced to malate that can.

4 In the cytosol, malate is reoxidized to oxaloacetate, which is oxidatively decarboxylated to phosphoenolpyruvate by *PEP carboxykinase*.

Figure 10.3
Activation and transfer of CO_2 to pyruvate, followed by transport of oxaloacetate to the cytosol and subsequent decarboxylation. Alternatively, OAA can be converted to PEP that is transported out of the mitochondria.

2. **Allosteric regulation:** *Pyruvate carboxylase* is allosterically activated by acetyl CoA. Elevated levels of acetyl CoA in mitochondria signal a metabolic state in which the increased synthesis of OAA is required. For example, this occurs during fasting, when OAA is used for the synthesis of glucose by gluconeogenesis in the liver and kidney. Conversely, at low levels of acetyl CoA, *pyruvate carboxylase* is largely inactive, and pyruvate is primarily oxidized by the *pyruvate dehydrogenase complex* to produce acetyl CoA that can be further oxidized by the TCA cycle (see p. 109).

B. Transport of oxaloacetate to the cytosol

OAA must be converted to PEP for gluconeogenesis to continue. The enzyme that catalyzes this conversion is found in both the mitochondria and the cytosol in humans. The PEP that is generated in the mitochondria is transported to the cytosol by a specific transporter, whereas that generated in the cytosol requires the transport of OAA from the mitochondria to the cytosol. However, OAA is unable to directly cross the inner mitochondrial membrane; it must first be reduced to malate by mitochondrial *malate dehydrogenase*. Malate can be transported from the mitochondria to the cytosol, where it is reoxidized to oxaloacetate by cytosolic *malate dehydrogenase* as NAD$^+$ is reduced (see Figure 10.3). The NADH produced is used in the reduction of 1,3-BPG to glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate (see p. 101), a step common to both glycolysis and gluconeogenesis.

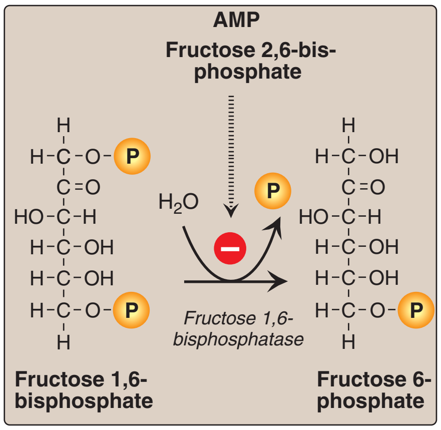

AMP
Fructose 2,6-bisphosphate
H
H-C-O-P
C=O
HO-C-H
H-C-OH
H-C-OH
H-C-O-P
H
H_2O
P
Fructose 1,6-bisphosphatase
H
H-C-OH
C=O
HO-C-H
H-C-OH
H-C-OH
H-C-O-P
H
Fructose 1,6-bisphosphate
Fructose 6-phosphate

Figure 10.4
Dephosphorylation of fructose 1,6-bisphosphate.

C. Decarboxylation of cytosolic oxaloacetate

Oxaloacetate is decarboxylated and phosphorylated to PEP in the cytosol by *PEP-carboxykinase* (also referred to as *PEPCK*). The reaction is driven by hydrolysis of guanosine triphosphate (GTP, see Figure 10.3). The combined actions of *pyruvate carboxylase* and *PEP-carboxykinase* provide an energetically favorable pathway from pyruvate to PEP. Then, PEP is acted on by the reactions of glycolysis running in the reverse direction until it becomes fructose 1,6-bisphosphate.

> The pairing of carboxylation with decarboxylation, as seen in gluconeogenesis, drives reactions that would otherwise be energetically unfavorable. A similar strategy is used in fatty acid synthesis (see pp. 183–184).

D. Dephosphorylation of fructose 1,6-bisphosphate

Hydrolysis of fructose 1,6-bisphosphate by *fructose 1,6-bisphosphatase* bypasses the irreversible *phosphofructokinase-1* reaction, and provides an energetically favorable pathway for the formation of fructose 6-phosphate (Figure 10.4). This reaction is an important regulatory site of gluconeogenesis.

1. **Regulation by energy levels within the cell:** *Fructose 1,6-bisphosphatase* is inhibited by elevated levels of adenosine monophosphate (AMP), which signal an “energy-poor” state in the cell.

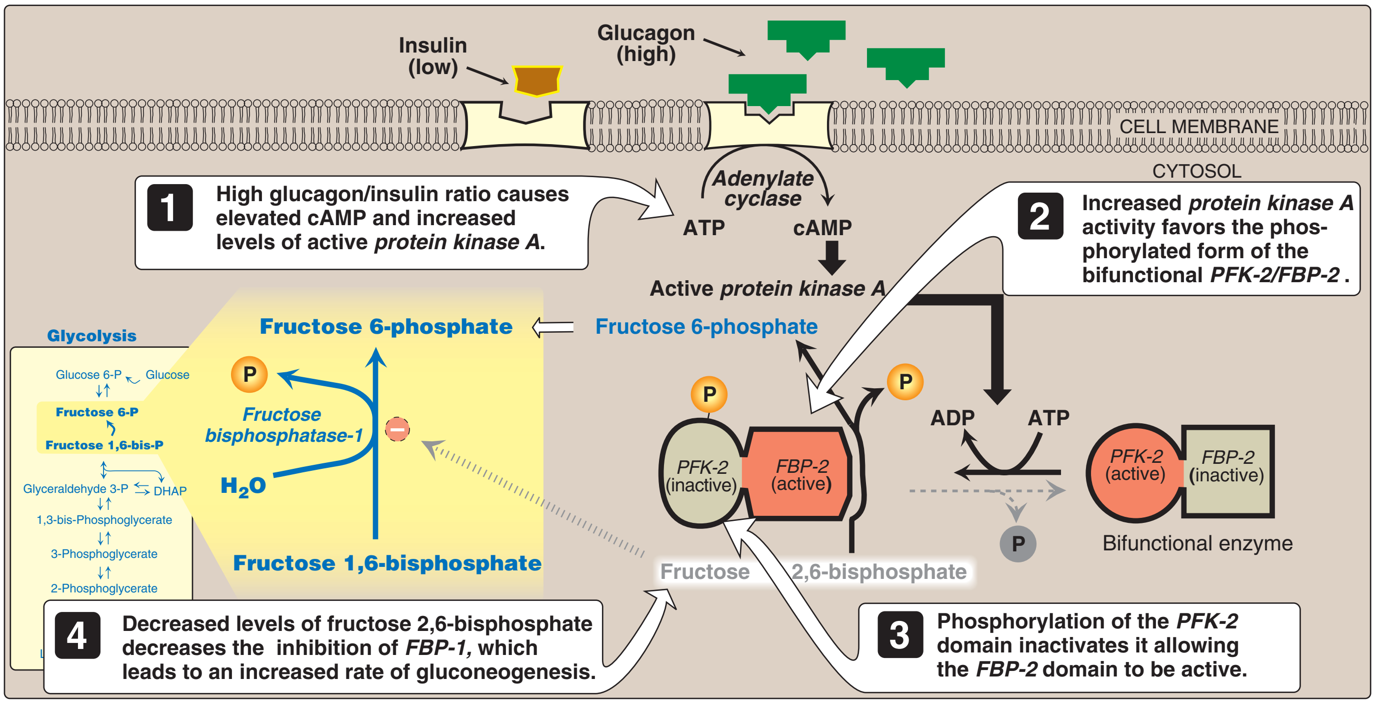

Insulin (low)
Glucagon (high)
CELL MEMBRANE
CYTOSOL
Adenylate cyclase
ATP
cAMP
Active protein kinase A
1 High glucagon/insulin ratio causes elevated cAMP and increased levels of active protein kinase A.
2 Increased protein kinase A activity favors the phosphorylated form of the bifunctional PFK-2/FBP-2.
Glycolysis
Glucose 6-P
Glucose
Fructose 6-P
Fructose 1,6-bis-P
Glyceraldehyde 3-P
DHAP
1,3-bis-Phosphoglycerate
3-Phosphoglycerate
2-Phosphoglycerate
Fructose 6-phosphate
P
Fructose bisphosphatase-1
H_2O
Fructose 1,6-bisphosphate
Fructose 6-phosphate
P
PFK-2 (inactive)
FBP-2 (active)
P
ADP
ATP
P
PFK-2 (active)
FBP-2 (inactive)
Bifunctional enzyme
Fructose 2,6-bisphosphate
3 Phosphorylation of the PFK-2 domain inactivates it allowing the FBP-2 domain to be active.
4 Decreased levels of fructose 2,6-bisphosphate decreases the inhibition of FBP-1, which leads to an increased rate of gluconeogenesis.

Figure 10.5
Effect of elevated glucagon on the intracellular concentration of fructose 2,6-bisphosphate in the liver. *PFK-2 = phosphofructokinase-2*; *FBP-2 = fructose bisphosphatase-2*.

Conversely, high levels of ATP and low concentrations of AMP stimulate gluconeogenesis, an energy-requiring pathway.

2. **Regulation by fructose 2,6-bisphosphate:** *Fructose 1,6-bisphosphatase*, found in liver and kidney, is inhibited by fructose 2,6-bisphosphate, an allosteric effector whose concentration is influenced by the level of circulating glucagon (Figure 10.5). [Note: The signals that inhibit (low energy, high fructose 2,6-bisphosphate) or favor (high energy, low fructose 2,6-bisphosphate) gluconeogenesis have the opposite effect on glycolysis, providing reciprocal control of the pathways that synthesize and oxidize glucose (see p. 100).]

E. Dephosphorylation of glucose 6-phosphate

Hydrolysis of glucose 6-phosphate by *glucose 6-phosphatase* bypasses the irreversible *hexokinase* reaction, and provides an energetically favorable pathway for the formation of free glucose (Figure 10.6). Liver and kidney are the only organs that release free glucose from glucose 6-phosphate. This process actually requires two proteins: *glucose 6-phosphate translocase*, which transports glucose 6-phosphate across the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) membrane, and the ER enzyme, *glucose 6-phosphatase* (found only in gluconeogenic cells), which removes the phosphate, producing free glucose (see Figure 10.6). [Note: These proteins are also required for the final step of glycogen degradation (see p. 130). Type Ia glycogen storage disease (see p. 130), due to an inherited deficiency of *glucose 6-phosphatase*, is characterized by severe fasting hypoglycemia, because free glucose is unable to be produced from either gluconeogenesis or glycogenolysis.] Specific transporters are responsible for releasing free glucose and phosphate back into the cytosol and, for glucose, into blood. [Note: Muscle lacks *glucose 6-phosphatase*, and therefore muscle glycogen can not be used to maintain blood glucose levels.]

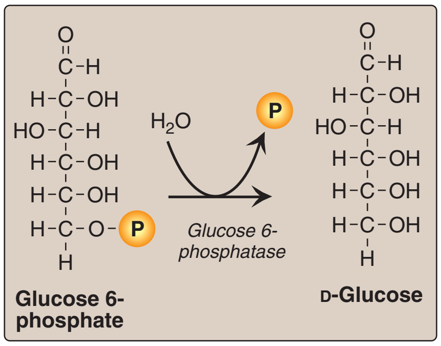


Figure 10.6
Dephosphorylation of glucose 6-phosphate allows release of free glucose from liver and kidney into blood.

F. Summary of the reactions of glycolysis and gluconeogenesis

Of the 11 reactions required to convert pyruvate to free glucose, seven are catalyzed by reversible glycolytic enzymes (Figure 10.7). The irreversible reactions of glycolysis catalyzed by *hexokinase*, *phosphofructokinase-1*, and *pyruvate kinase* are circumvented by *glucose 6-phosphatase*, *fructose 1,6-bisphosphatase*, and *pyruvate carboxylase/PEP-carboxykinase*. In gluconeogenesis, the equilibria of the seven reversible reactions of glycolysis are pushed in favor of glucose synthesis as a result of the essentially irreversible formation of PEP, fructose 6-phosphate, and glucose catalyzed by the gluconeogenic enzymes. [Note: The stoichiometry of gluconeogenesis from pyruvate couples the cleavage of six high-energy phosphate bonds and the oxidation of two NADH with the formation of each molecule of glucose (see Figure 10.7).]

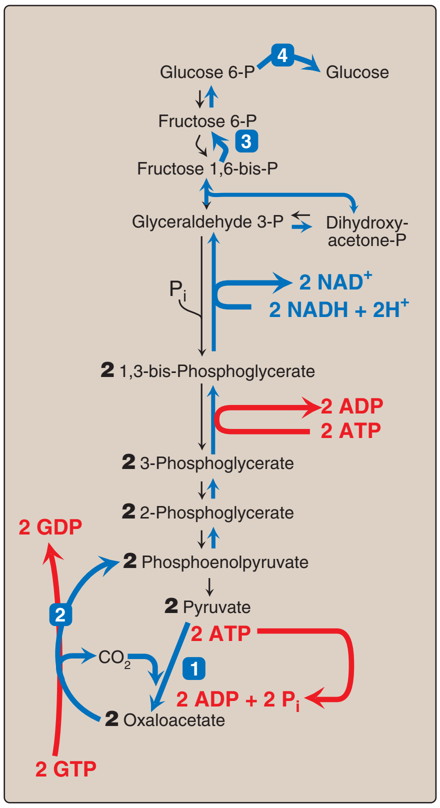


Figure 10.7
Summary of the reactions of glycolysis and gluconeogenesis, showing the energy requirements of gluconeogenesis.

IV. REGULATION OF GLUCONEOGENESIS

The moment-to-moment regulation of gluconeogenesis is determined primarily by the circulating level of glucagon, and by the availability of gluconeogenic substrates. In addition, slow adaptive changes in enzyme activity result from an alteration in the rate of enzyme synthesis or degradation, or both. [Note: Hormonal control of the glucoregulatory system is presented in Chapter 23.]

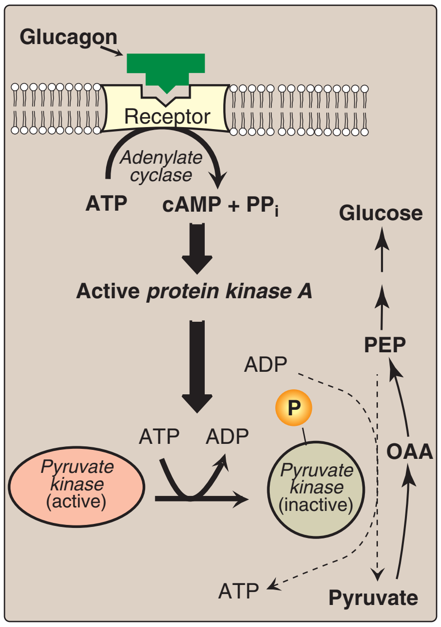


Figure 10.8
Covalent modification of *pyruvate kinase* results in inactivation of the enzyme. OAA = oxaloacetate. [Note: Only the hepatic isozyme is subject to covalent regulation.]

A. Glucagon

This hormone from the α cells of pancreatic islets (see p. 313) stimulates gluconeogenesis by three mechanisms.

1. **Changes in allosteric effectors:** Glucagon lowers the level of fructose 2,6-bisphosphate, resulting in activation of *fructose 1,6-bisphosphatase* and inhibition of *phosphofructokinase-1,* thus favoring gluconeogenesis over glycolysis (see Figure 10.5). [Note: See p. 100 for the role of fructose 2,6-bisphosphate in the regulation of glycolysis.]

2. **Covalent modification of enzyme activity:** Glucagon binds its G protein-coupled receptor (see p. 95) and, via an elevation in cyclic AMP (cAMP) level and *cAMP-dependent protein kinase* activity, stimulates the conversion of hepatic *pyruvate kinase* to its inactive (phosphorylated) form. This decreases the conversion of PEP to pyruvate, which has the effect of diverting PEP to the synthesis of glucose (Figure 10.8).

3. **Induction of enzyme synthesis:** Glucagon increases the transcription of the gene for *PEP-carboxykinase*, thereby increasing the availability of this enzyme as levels of its substrate rise during fasting. [Note: Insulin causes decreased transcription of the mRNA for this enzyme.]

B. Substrate availability

The availability of gluconeogenic precursors, particularly glucogenic amino acids, significantly influences the rate of hepatic glucose synthesis. Decreased levels of insulin favor mobilization of amino acids from muscle protein, and provide the carbon skeletons for gluconeogenesis. In addition, ATP and NADH, coenzymes-cosubstrates required for gluconeogenesis, are primarily provided by the catabolism of fatty acids.

C. Allosteric activation by acetyl CoA

Allosteric activation of hepatic *pyruvate carboxylase* by acetyl CoA occurs during fasting. As a result of increased lipolysis in adipose tissue, the liver is flooded with fatty acids (see p. 330). The rate of formation of acetyl CoA by β-oxidation of these fatty acids exceeds the capacity of the liver to oxidize it to CO_2 and H_2O. As a result, acetyl CoA accumulates and leads to activation of *pyruvate carboxylase*. [Note: Acetyl CoA inhibits *pyruvate dehydrogenase* (by activating *PDH kinase*, see p. 111). Thus, this single compound can divert pyruvate toward gluconeogenesis and away from the TCA cycle.]

D. Allosteric inhibition by AMP

Fructose 1,6-bisphosphatase is inhibited by AMP—a compound that activates *phosphofructokinase-1*. This results in a reciprocal regulation of glycolysis and gluconeogenesis seen previously with fructose 2,6-bisphosphate (see p. 121). [Note: Elevated AMP thus stimulates pathways that oxidize nutrients to provide energy for the cell.]

V. CHAPTER SUMMARY

Gluconeogenic precursors include the **intermediates of glycolysis** and the **citric acid cycle**, **glycerol** released during the hydrolysis of triacylglycerols in adipose tissue, **lactate** released into the blood by cells that lack mitochondria and by exercising skeletal muscle, and **α-ketoacids** derived from the metabolism of glucogenic amino acids (Figure 10.9). Seven of the reactions of glycolysis are reversible and are used for gluconeogenesis in the liver and kidneys. Three reactions are **physiologically irreversible** and must be circumvented. These reactions are catalyzed by the glycolytic enzymes **pyruvate kinase**, **phosphofructokinase**, and **hexokinase**. **Pyruvate** is converted to oxaloacetate (OAA) and then to **phosphoenolpyruvate** (**PEP**) by **pyruvate carboxylase** and **PEP-carboxykinase**. The carboxylase requires **biotin** and **ATP**, and is allosterically activated by **acetyl CoA**. PEP-carboxykinase requires **GTP**. The transcription of its mRNA is increased by glucagon and decreased by insulin. **Fructose 1,6-bisphosphate** is converted to **fructose 6-phosphate** by **fructose 1,6-bisphosphatase**. This enzyme is **inhibited** by elevated levels of **AMP** and **activated** when **ATP** levels are elevated. The enzyme is also **inhibited** by **fructose 2,6-bisphosphate**, the primary allosteric activator of glycolysis. **Glucose 6-phosphate** is converted to **glucose** by **glucose 6-phosphatase**. This enzyme of the ER is required for the final step in gluconeogenesis, as well as hepatic and renal glycogen degradation. A deficiency of this enzyme results in severe, fasting hypoglycemia.

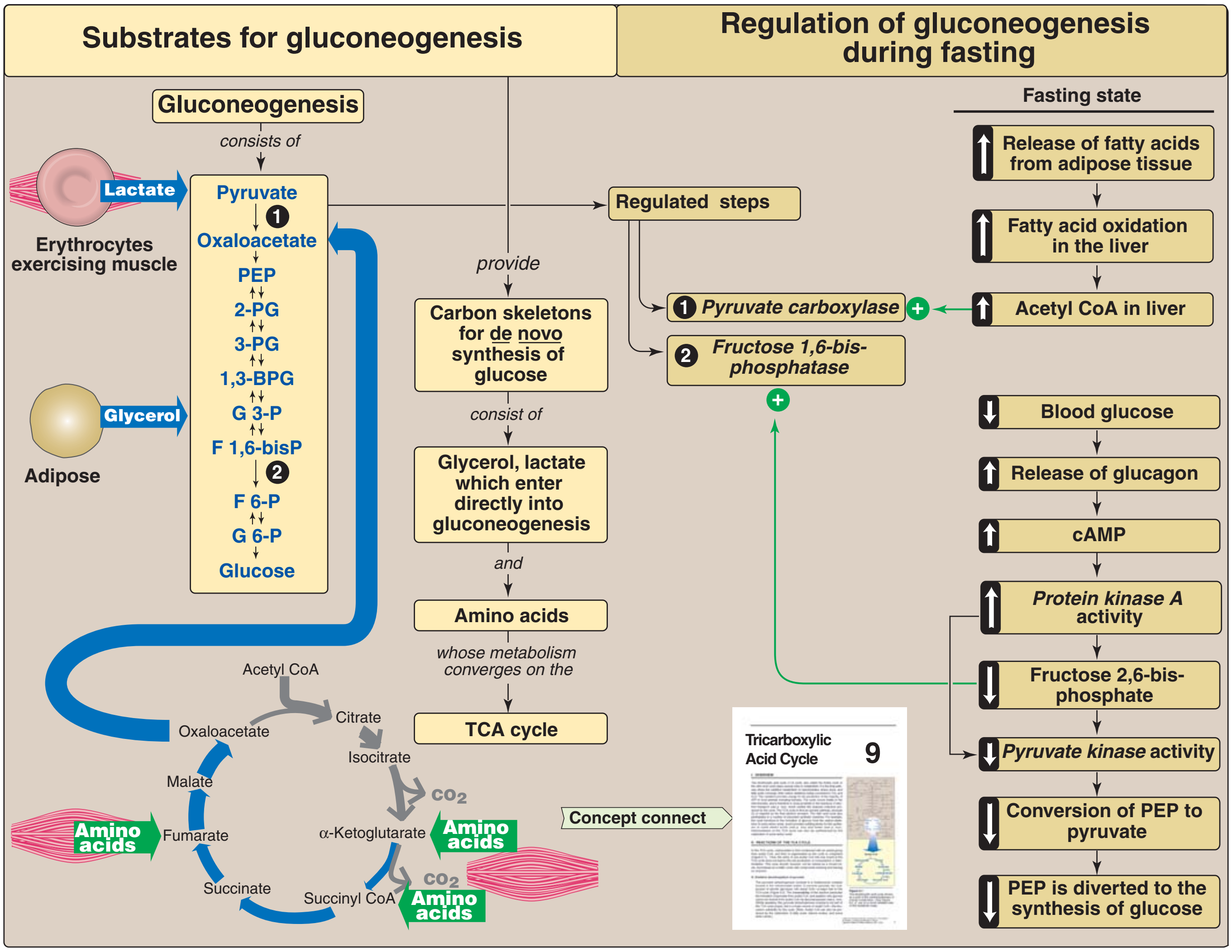

Substrates for gluconeogenesis
Regulation of gluconeogenesis during fasting
Gluconeogenesis
consists of
Lactate
Erythrocytes exercising muscle
Pyruvate
1
Oxaloacetate
PEP
2-PG
3-PG
1,3-BPG
G 3-P
F 1,6-bisP
2
F 6-P
G 6-P
Glucose
Glycerol
Adipose
provide
Carbon skeletons for de novo synthesis of glucose
consist of
Glycerol, lactate which enter directly into gluconeogenesis
and
Amino acids
whose metabolism converges on the
TCA cycle
Acetyl CoA
Citrate
Isocitrate
CO2
Oxaloacetate
Malate
Fumarate
Amino acids
α-Ketoglutarate
Amino acids
Succinate
Succinyl CoA
CO2
Amino acids
Regulated steps
1 Pyruvate carboxylase
+
2 Fructose 1,6-bis-phosphatase
+
Fasting state
Release of fatty acids from adipose tissue
Fatty acid oxidation in the liver
Acetyl CoA in liver
Blood glucose
Release of glucagon
cAMP
Protein kinase A activity
Fructose 2,6-bis-phosphate
Pyruvate kinase activity
Conversion of PEP to pyruvate
PEP is diverted to the synthesis of glucose
Concept connect
Tricarboxylic Acid Cycle
9

Figure 10.9
Key concept map for gluconeogenesis.

Study Questions

Choose the ONE correct answer.

10.1 The synthesis of glucose from pyruvate by gluconeogenesis:

A. occurs exclusively in the cytosol.
B. is inhibited by an elevated level of glucagon.
C. requires the participation of biotin.
D. involves lactate as an intermediate.
E. requires the oxidation/reduction of FAD.

Correct answer = C. Biotin is the coenzyme-prosthetic group of pyruvate carboxylase. The carboxylation of pyruvate occurs in the mitochondria. Glucagon stimulates gluconeogenesis. Lactate is not an intermediate in the conversion of pyruvate to glucose; however, pyruvate can be produced from lactate. FAD is not involved in gluconeogenesis.

10.2 Which one of the following statements concerning gluconeogenesis is correct?

A. It occurs in muscle.
B. It is stimulated by fructose 2,6-bisphosphate.
C. It is inhibited by elevated levels of acetyl CoA.
D. It is important in maintaining blood glucose during the normal overnight fast.
E. It uses carbon skeletons provided by degradation of fatty acids.

Correct answer = D. During the overnight fast, glycogen is partially depleted and gluconeogenesis provides blood glucose. Gluconeogenesis is inhibited by fructose 2,6-bisphosphate and stimulated by elevated levels of acetyl CoA. Degradation of fatty acids yields acetyl CoA, which cannot be converted to glucose. This is because there is no net gain of carbons from acetyl CoA in the TCA cycle, and the PDH reaction is physiologically irreversible. Carbon skeletons of most amino acids are, however, gluconeogenic.

10.3 Which one of the following reactions is unique to gluconeogenesis?

A. Lactate → pyruvate
B. Phosphoenolpyruvate → pyruvate
C. Oxaloacetate → phosphoenolpyruvate
D. Glucose 6-phosphate → fructose 6-phosphate
E. 1,3-Bis-phosphoglycerate → 3-phosphoglycerate

Correct answer = C. The other reactions are common to both gluconeogenesis and glycolysis.

10.4 The metabolism of ethanol by alcohol dehydrogenase (ADH) produces NADH. What effect is the change in the $NAD^+/NADH$ expected to have on gluconeogenesis? Explain.

The increase in NADH as ethanol is oxidized, will decrease the availability of OAA because the reversible oxidation of malate to OAA by malate dehydrogenase of the TCA cycle is driven in the reverse direction by the high availability of NADH. Additionally, the reversible reduction of pyruvate to lactate by lactate dehydrogenase of glycolysis is driven in the forward direction by NADH. Thus, two important gluconeogenic substrates, OAA and pyruvate, are decreased as a result of the increase in NADH during ethanol metabolism. This will result in a decrease in gluconeogenesis.

10.5 Given that acetyl CoA cannot be a substrate for gluconeogenesis, why is its production in fatty acid oxidation essential for gluconeogenesis?

Acetyl CoA inhibits pyruvate dehydrogenase and activates pyruvate carboxylase, pushing pyruvate to gluconeogenesis.

10.6 What effect does AMP have on gluconeogenesis and glycolysis? What enzymes are affected?

AMP inhibits gluconeogenesis through inhibition of fructose 1,6-bisphosphatase and favors glycolysis through activation of phosphofructokinase-1. (Fructose 2,6-bisphosphate has a similar effect on these enzymes.)

Glycogen Metabolism

11

I. OVERVIEW

A constant source of blood glucose is an absolute requirement for human life. Glucose is the greatly preferred energy source for the brain, and the required energy source for cells with few or no mitochondria, such as mature erythrocytes. Glucose is also essential as an energy source for exercising muscle, where it is the substrate for anaerobic glycolysis. Blood glucose can be obtained from three primary sources: the diet, degradation of glycogen, and gluconeogenesis. Dietary intake of glucose and glucose precursors, such as starch, monosaccharides, and disaccharides, is sporadic and, depending on the diet, is not always a reliable source of blood glucose. In contrast, gluconeogenesis (see p. 117) can provide sustained synthesis of glucose, but it is somewhat slow in responding to a falling blood glucose level. Therefore, the body has developed mechanisms for storing a supply of glucose in a rapidly mobilizable form, namely, glycogen. In the absence of a dietary source of glucose, this sugar is rapidly released from liver and kidney glycogen. Similarly, muscle glycogen is extensively degraded in exercising muscle to provide that tissue with an important energy source. When glycogen stores are depleted, specific tissues synthesize glucose de novo, using amino acids from the body's proteins as a primary source of carbons for the gluconeogenic pathway. Figure 11.1 shows the reactions of glycogen synthesis and degradation as part of the essential pathways of energy metabolism.

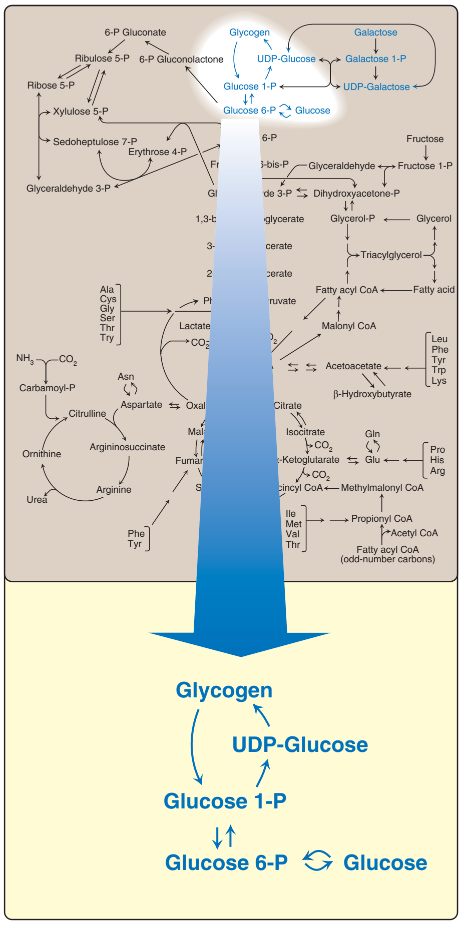

6-P Gluconate
Ribulose 5-P
6-P Gluconolactone
Ribose 5-P
Xylulose 5-P
Sedoheptulose 7-P
Erythrose 4-P
Glyceraldehyde 3-P
Glycogen
UDP-Glucose
Glucose 1-P
Glucose 6-P
Glucose
Galactose
Galactose 1-P
UDP-Galactose
Fructose
Fructose 1-P
Glyceraldehyde
Dihydroxyacetone-P
Glycerol-P
Glycerol
Triacylglycerol
Fatty acyl CoA
Fatty acid
Malonyl CoA
Ala
Cys
Gly
Ser
Thr
Try
Lactate
CO_2
NH_3
Carbamoyl-P
Citrulline
Ornithine
Urea
Arginine
Argininosuccinate
Asn
Aspartate
Acetoacetate
β-Hydroxybutyrate
Leu
Phe
Tyr
Trp
Lys
Citrate
Isocitrate
Gln
Glu
Pro
His
Arg
Methylmalonyl CoA
Ile
Met
Val
Thr
Propionyl CoA
Acetyl CoA
Fatty acyl CoA
(odd-number carbons)
Phe
Tyr
Glycogen
UDP-Glucose
Glucose 1-P
Glucose 6-P
Glucose

Figure 11.1
Glycogen synthesis and degradation shown as a part of the essential reactions of energy metabolism (see Figure 8.2, p. 92, for a more detailed view of the overall reactions of metabolism).

II. STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION OF GLYCOGEN

The main stores of glycogen in the body are found in skeletal muscle and liver, although most other cells store small amounts of glycogen for their own use. The function of muscle glycogen is to serve as a fuel reserve for the synthesis of adenosine triphosphate (ATP) during muscle contraction. That of liver glycogen is to maintain the blood glucose concentration, particularly during the early stages of a fast (Figure 11.2, and see p. 329).

A. Amounts of liver and muscle glycogen

Approximately 400 g of glycogen make up 1–2% of the fresh weight of resting muscle, and approximately 100 g of glycogen make up to 10% of the fresh weight of a well-fed adult liver. What limits the production of glycogen at these levels is not clear. However, in some

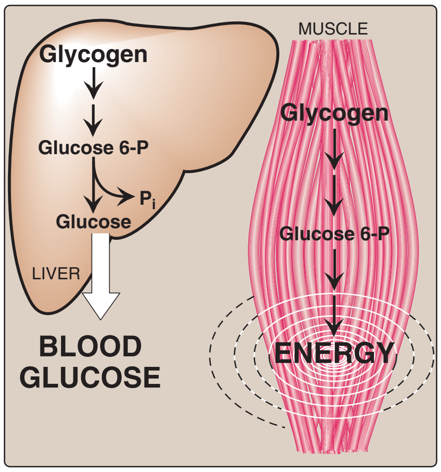


Figure 11.2
Functions of muscle and liver glycogen.

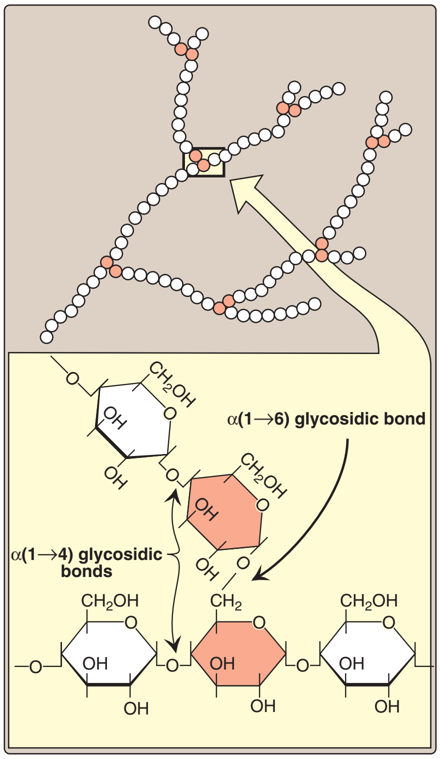


Figure 11.3
Branched structure of glycogen, showing α(1→4) and α(1→6) glycosidic bonds.

glycogen storage diseases (see Figure 11.8), the amount of glycogen in the liver and/or muscle can be significantly higher.

B. Structure of glycogen

Glycogen is a branched-chain polysaccharide made exclusively from α-D-glucose. The primary glycosidic bond is an α(1→4) linkage. After an average of eight to ten glucosyl residues, there is a branch containing an α(1→6) linkage (Figure 11.3). A single molecule of glycogen can have a molecular mass of up to 10^8 daltons. These molecules exist in discrete cytoplasmic granules that also contain most of the enzymes necessary for glycogen synthesis and degradation.

C. Fluctuation of glycogen stores

Liver glycogen stores increase during the well-fed state (see p. 323), and are depleted during a fast (see p. 329). Muscle glycogen is not affected by short periods of fasting (a few days) and is only moderately decreased in prolonged fasting (weeks). Muscle glycogen is synthesized to replenish muscle stores after they have been depleted following strenuous exercise. [Note: Glycogen synthesis and degradation are cytosolic processes that go on continuously. The differences between the rates of these two processes determine the levels of stored glycogen during specific physiologic states.]

III. SYNTHESIS OF GLYCOGEN (GLYCOGENESIS)

Glycogen is synthesized from molecules of α-D-glucose. The process occurs in the cytosol, and requires energy supplied by ATP (for the phosphorylation of glucose) and uridine triphosphate (UTP).

A. Synthesis of UDP-glucose

α-D-Glucose attached to uridine diphosphate (UDP) is the source of all the glucosyl residues that are added to the growing glycogen molecule. UDP-glucose (Figure 11.4) is synthesized from glucose 1-phosphate and UTP by *UDP-glucose pyrophosphorylase* (Figure 11.5). The high-energy bond in pyrophosphate (PP$_i$), the second product of the reaction, is hydrolyzed to two inorganic phosphates (P$_i$) by *pyrophosphatase*, which ensures that the *UDP-glucose pyrophosphorylase* reaction proceeds in the direction of UDP-glucose production. [Note: Glucose 6-phosphate is converted to glucose 1-phosphate by *phosphoglucomutase.* Glucose 1,6-bisphosphate is an obligatory intermediate in this reaction (Figure 11.6).]

B. Synthesis of a primer to initiate glycogen synthesis

Glycogen synthase is responsible for making the α(1→4) linkages in glycogen. This enzyme cannot initiate chain synthesis using free glucose as an acceptor of a molecule of glucose from UDP-glucose. Instead, it can only elongate already existing chains of glucose. Therefore, a fragment of glycogen can serve as a primer in cells whose glycogen stores are not totally depleted. In the absence of a glycogen fragment, a protein, called *glycogenin*, can serve as an acceptor of glucose residues from UDP-glucose (see Figure 11.5). The side chain hydroxyl group of a specific tyrosine serves as the site at which the initial glucosyl unit is attached. The reaction is catalyzed by *glycogenin* itself via autoglucosylation; thus, *glycogenin* is an enzyme. *Glycogenin* then catalyzes the transfer of the next few molecules of glucose from UDP-glucose, producing a short, α(1→4)-linked glucosyl chain. This short chain serves as a primer that is able to be elongated by *glycogen synthase* as described below [Note: *Glycogenin* stays associated with and forms the core of a glycogen granule.]

C. Elongation of glycogen chains by glycogen synthase

Elongation of a glycogen chain involves the transfer of glucose from UDP-glucose to the nonreducing end of the growing chain, forming a new glycosidic bond between the anomeric hydroxyl of carbon 1 of the activated glucose and carbon 4 of the accepting glucosyl residue (see Figure 11.5). [Note: The nonreducing end of a carbohydrate chain is one in which the anomeric carbon of the terminal sugar is linked by a glycosidic bond to another compound, making the terminal sugar nonreducing (see p. 84).] The enzyme responsible for making the α(1→4) linkages in glycogen is *glycogen synthase*. [Note: The UDP released when the new α(1→4) glycosidic bond is made can be phosphorylated to UTP by *nucleoside diphosphate kinase* (UDP + ATP ⇄ UTP + ADP, see p. 296).]

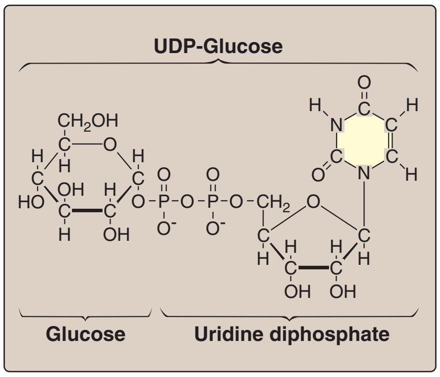

UDP-Glucose
Glucose
Uridine diphosphate

Figure 11.4
The structure of UDP-glucose, a nucleotide sugar.

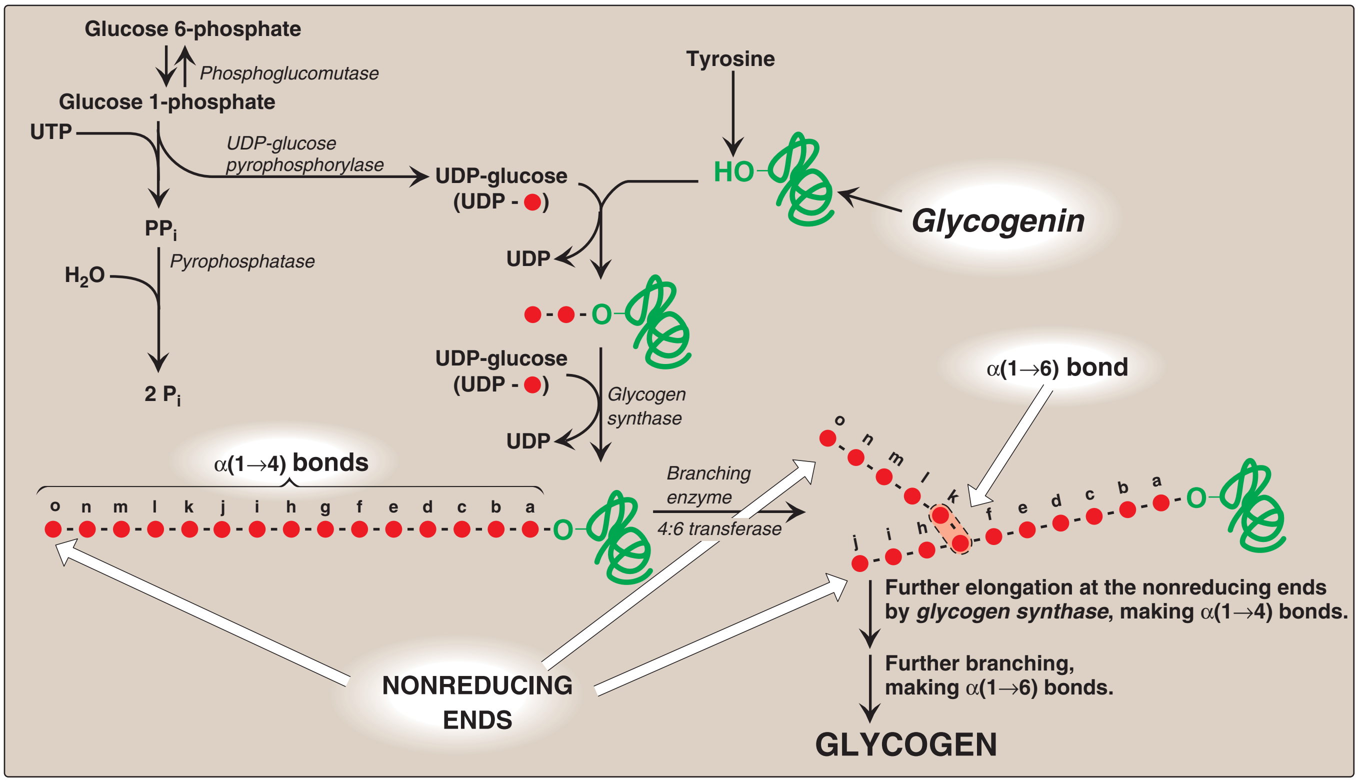

Glucose 6-phosphate
Phosphoglucomutase
Glucose 1-phosphate
UTP
UDP-glucose pyrophosphorylase
UDP-glucose (UDP - ●)
PPi
Pyrophosphatase
H2O
2 Pi
Tyrosine
HO
Glycogenin
UDP
UDP-glucose (UDP - ●)
Glycogen synthase
UDP
α(1→4) bonds
o n m l k j i h g f e d c b a
Branching enzyme
4:6 transferase
α(1→6) bond
NONREDUCING ENDS
Further elongation at the nonreducing ends by glycogen synthase, making α(1→4) bonds.
Further branching, making α(1→6) bonds.
GLYCOGEN

Figure 11.5
Glycogen synthesis.

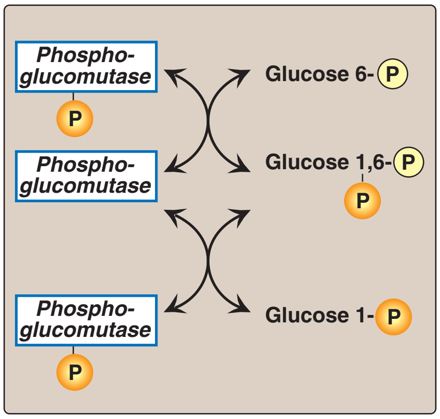


Figure 11.6
Interconversion of glucose 6-phosphate and glucose 1-phosphate by *phosphoglucomutase*.

D. Formation of branches in glycogen

If no other synthetic enzyme acted on the chain, the resulting structure would be a linear (unbranched) molecule of glucosyl residues attached by α(1→4) linkages. Such a compound is found in plant tissues, and is called amylose. In contrast, glycogen has branches located, on average, eight glucosyl residues apart, resulting in a highly branched, tree-like structure (see Figure 11.3) that is far more soluble than the unbranched amylose. Branching also increases the number of nonreducing ends to which new glucosyl residues can be added (and also, as described later, from which these residues can be removed), thereby greatly accelerating the rate at which glycogen synthesis can occur, and dramatically increasing the size of the molecule.

1. **Synthesis of branches:** Branches are made by the action of the branching enzyme, *amylo-α(1→4) → α(1→6)-transglucosidase*. This enzyme removes a chain of six to eight glucosyl residues from the nonreducing end of the glycogen chain, breaking an α(1→4) bond to another residue on the chain, and attaches it to a non-terminal glucosyl residue by an α(1→6) linkage, thus functioning as a *4:6 transferase*. The resulting new, nonreducing end (see "j" in Figure 11.5), as well as the old nonreducing end from which the six to eight residues were removed (see "o" in Figure 11.5), can now be further elongated by *glycogen synthase*.

2. **Synthesis of additional branches:** After elongation of these two ends has been accomplished by *glycogen synthase*, their terminal six to eight glucosyl residues can be removed and used to make additional branches.

IV. DEGRADATION OF GLYCOGEN (GLYCOGENOLYSIS)

The degradative pathway that mobilizes stored glycogen in liver and skeletal muscle is not a reversal of the synthetic reactions. Instead, a separate set of cytosolic enzymes is required. When glycogen is degraded, the primary product is glucose 1-phosphate, obtained by breaking α(1→4) glycosidic bonds. In addition, free glucose is released from each α(1→6)-linked glucosyl residue.

A. Shortening of chains

Glycogen phosphorylase sequentially cleaves the α(1→4) glycosidic bonds between the glucosyl residues at the nonreducing ends of the glycogen chains by simple phosphorolysis (producing glucose 1-phosphate) until four glucosyl units remain on each chain before a branch point (Figure 11.7). [Note: This enzyme contains a molecule of covalently bound pyridoxal phosphate (PLP) that is required as a coenzyme.] The resulting structure is called a limit dextrin, and *phosphorylase* cannot degrade it any further (Figure 11.8).

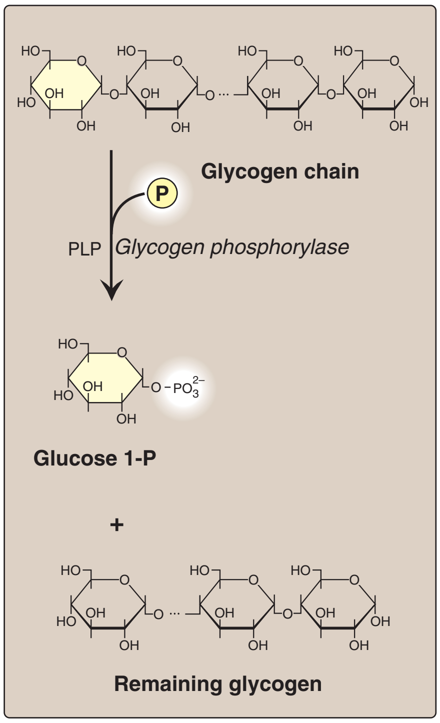
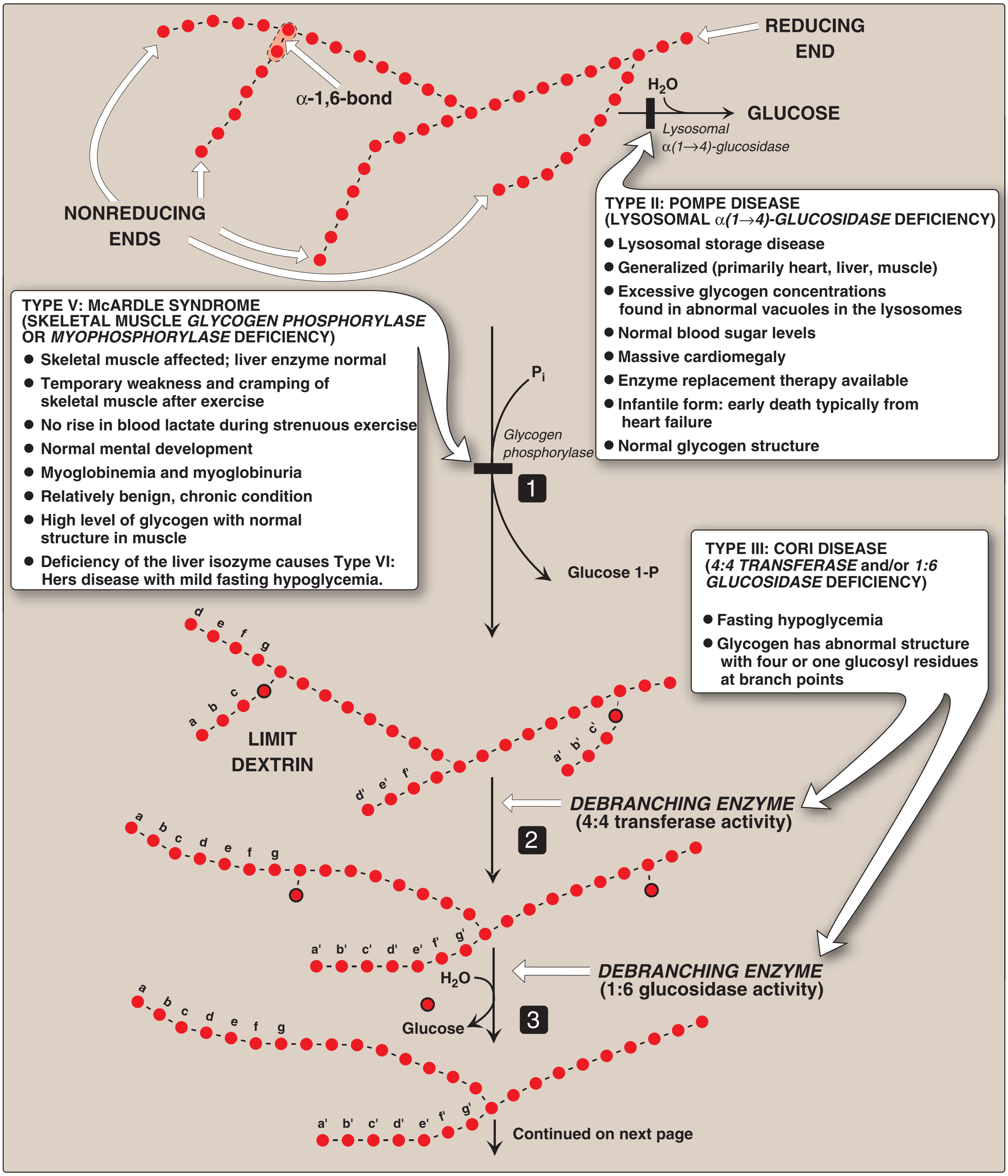


Figure 11.7
Cleavage of an α(1→4)-glycosidic bond. PLP= pyridoxal phosphate.

B. Removal of branches

Branches are removed by the two enzymic activities of a single bifunctional protein, the debranching enzyme (see Figure 11.8). First, *oligo-α(1→4)→α(1→4)-glucan transferase* activity removes the


REDUCING END
α-1,6-bond
NONREDUCING ENDS
H_2O
GLUCOSE
Lysosomal α(1→4)-glucosidase
P_i
Glycogen phosphorylase
1
Glucose 1-P
d e f g
a b c
LIMIT DEXTRIN
a' b' c'
d' e' f'
DEBRANCHING ENZYME (4:4 transferase activity)
2
a b c d e f g
a' b' c' d' e' f' g'
DEBRANCHING ENZYME (1:6 glucosidase activity)
H_2O
Glucose
3
a b c d e f g
a' b' c' d' e' f' g'
Continued on next page

TYPE II: POMPE DISEASE (LYSOSOMAL α*(1→4)-GLUCOSIDASE* DEFICIENCY)

- **Lysosomal storage disease**
- **Generalized (primarily heart, liver, muscle)**
- **Excessive glycogen concentrations found in abnormal vacuoles in the lysosomes**
- **Normal blood sugar levels**
- **Massive cardiomegaly**
- **Enzyme replacement therapy available**
- **Infantile form: early death typically from heart failure**
- **Normal glycogen structure**

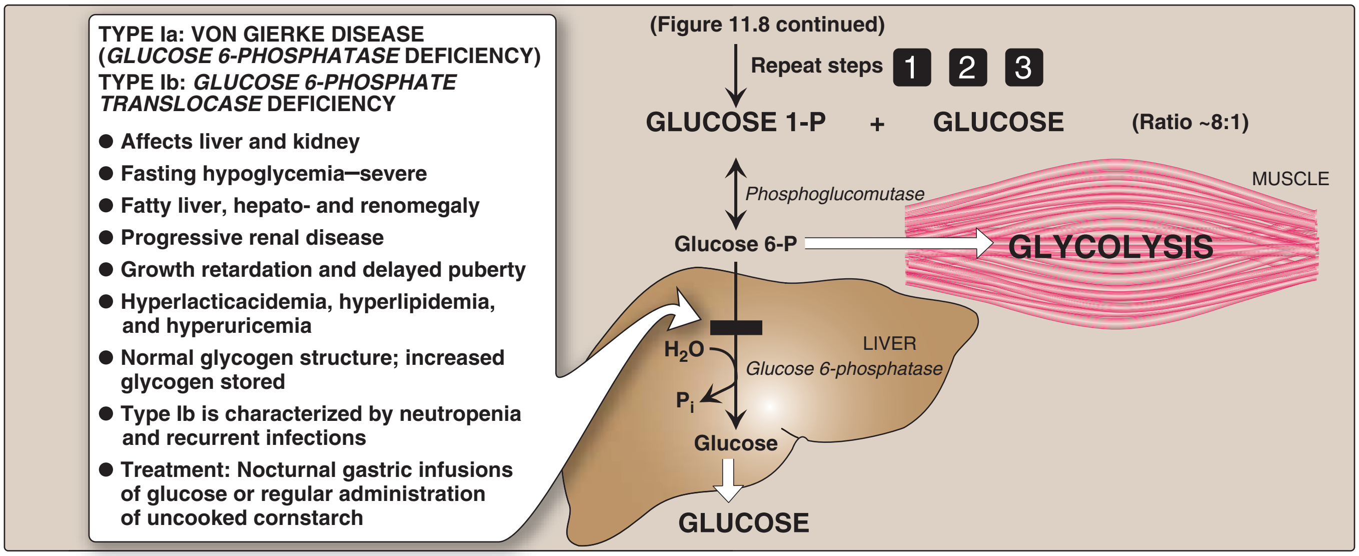
TYPE V: McARDLE SYNDROME (SKELETAL MUSCLE *GLYCOGEN PHOSPHORYLASE* OR *MYOPHOSPHORYLASE* DEFICIENCY)

- **Skeletal muscle affected; liver enzyme normal**
- **Temporary weakness and cramping of skeletal muscle after exercise**
- **No rise in blood lactate during strenuous exercise**
- **Normal mental development**
- **Myoglobinemia and myoglobinuria**
- **Relatively benign, chronic condition**
- **High level of glycogen with normal structure in muscle**
- **Deficiency of the liver isozyme causes Type VI: Hers disease with mild fasting hypoglycemia.**

TYPE III: CORI DISEASE (*4:4 TRANSFERASE* and/or *1:6 GLUCOSIDASE* DEFICIENCY)

- **Fasting hypoglycemia**
- **Glycogen has abnormal structure with four or one glucosyl residues at branch points**

Figure 11.8
Glycogen degradation, showing some of the glycogen storage diseases (GSD). [Note: A GSD can also be caused by defects in *branching enzyme*, an enzyme of synthesis, resulting in Type IV: Andersen disease and causing death in early childhood.](*Continued on next page.*)



TYPE Ia: VON GIERKE DISEASE (*GLUCOSE 6-PHOSPHATASE* DEFICIENCY)
TYPE Ib: *GLUCOSE 6-PHOSPHATE TRANSLOCASE* DEFICIENCY

- Affects liver and kidney
- Fasting hypoglycemia—severe
- Fatty liver, hepato- and renomegaly
- Progressive renal disease
- Growth retardation and delayed puberty
- Hyperlacticacidemia, hyperlipidemia, and hyperuricemia
- Normal glycogen structure; increased glycogen stored
- Type Ib is characterized by neutropenia and recurrent infections
- Treatment: Nocturnal gastric infusions of glucose or regular administration of uncooked cornstarch

(Figure 11.8 continued)

Figure 11.8 (*Continued*)

outer three of the four glucosyl residues attached at a branch. It next transfers them to the nonreducing end of another chain, lengthening it accordingly. Thus, an α(1→4) bond is broken and an α(1→4) bond is made, and the enzyme functions as a *4:4 transferase*. Next, the remaining single glucose residue attached in an α(1→6) linkage is removed hydrolytically by *amylo-α(1→6)-glucosidase* activity, releasing free glucose. The glucosyl chain is now available again for degradation by *glycogen phosphorylase* until four glucosyl units from the next branch are reached.

C. Conversion of glucose 1-phosphate to glucose 6-phosphate

Glucose 1-phosphate, produced by *glycogen phosphorylase*, is converted in the cytosol to glucose 6-phosphate by *phosphoglucomutase*—a reaction that produces glucose 1,6-bisphosphate as a temporary but essential intermediate (see Figure 11.6). In the liver, glucose 6-phosphate is transported into the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) by *glucose 6-phosphate translocase*. There it is converted to glucose by *glucose 6-phosphatase*—the same enzyme used in the last step of gluconeogenesis (see p. 121). The glucose then moves from the ER to the cytosol. Hepatocytes release glycogen-derived glucose into the blood to help maintain blood glucose levels until the gluconeogenic pathway is actively producing glucose. [Note: In the muscle, glucose 6-phosphate cannot be dephosphorylated because of a lack of *glucose 6-phosphatase*. Instead, it enters glycolysis, providing energy needed for muscle contraction.]

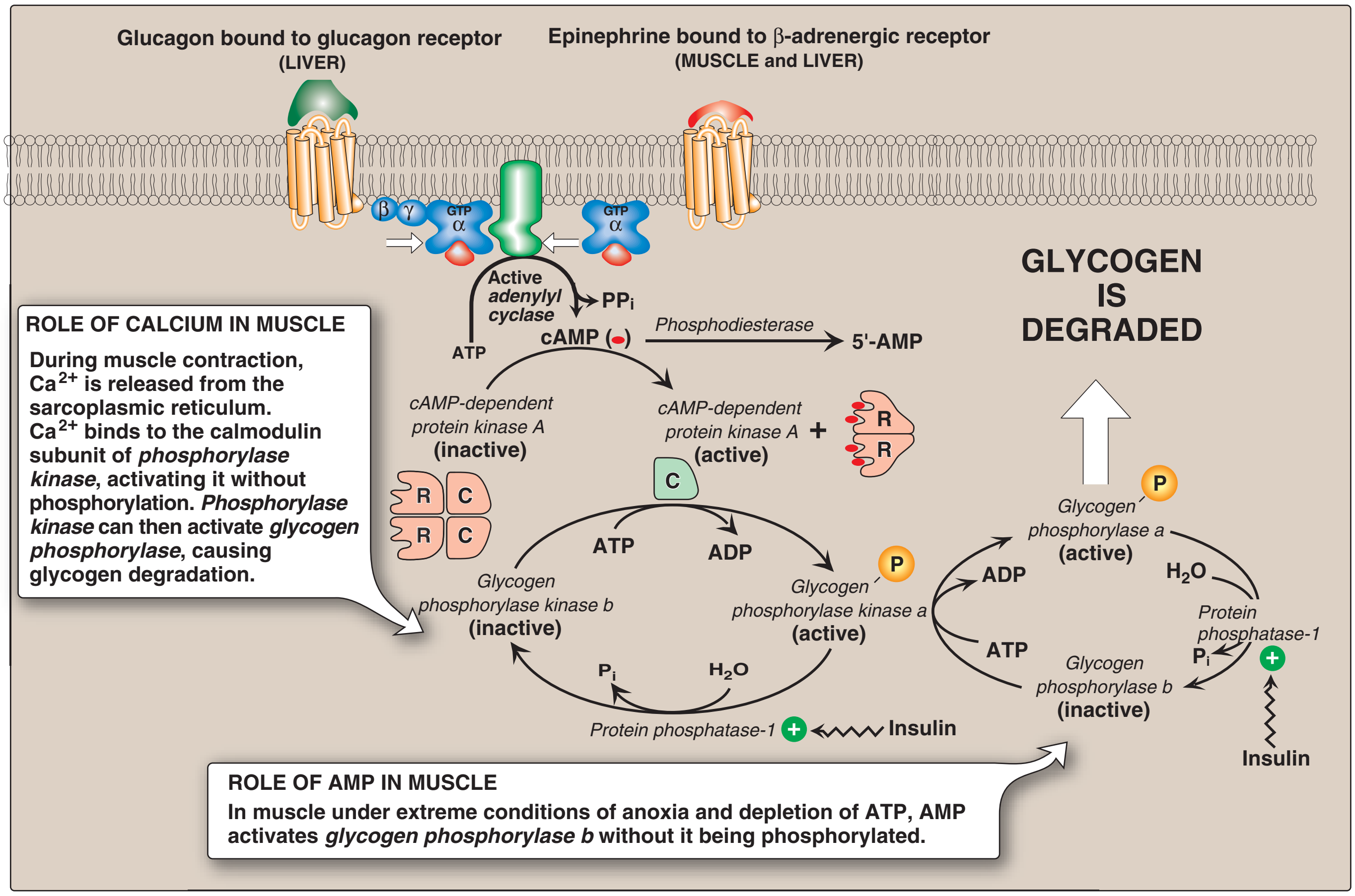
D. Lysosomal degradation of glycogen

A small amount (1–3%) of glycogen is continuously degraded by the lysosomal enzyme, α(*1→4*)*-glucosidase* (*acid maltase*). The purpose of this pathway is unknown. However, a deficiency of this enzyme causes accumulation of glycogen in vacuoles in the lysosomes, resulting in the serious glycogen storage disease Type II: Pompe disease (see Figure 11.8). [Note: Type II: Pompe disease is the only glycogen storage disease that is a lysosomal storage disease.]

> Lysosomal storage diseases are genetic disorders characterized by the accumulation of abnormal amounts of carbohydrates or lipids primarily due to their decreased lysosomal degradation.

V. REGULATION OF GLYCOGEN SYNTHESIS AND DEGRADATION

Because of the importance of maintaining blood glucose levels, the synthesis and degradation of its glycogen storage form are tightly regulated. In the liver, glycogenesis accelerates during periods when the body has been well fed, whereas glycogenolysis accelerates during periods of fasting. In skeletal muscle, glycogenolysis occurs during active exercise, and glycogenesis begins as soon as the muscle is again at rest. Regulation of glycogen synthesis and degradation is accomplished on two levels. First, *glycogen synthase* and *glycogen phosphorylase* are hormonally regulated to meet the needs of the body as a whole. Second, the pathways of glycogen synthesis and degradation are allosterically controlled to meet the needs of a particular tissue.


Glucagon bound to glucagon receptor
(LIVER)
Epinephrine bound to β-adrenergic receptor
(MUSCLE and LIVER)
β
γ
GTP
α
GTP
α
Active adenylyl cyclase
PPi
ATP
cAMP
Phosphodiesterase
5'-AMP
GLYCOGEN IS DEGRADED
cAMP-dependent protein kinase A
(inactive)
cAMP-dependent protein kinase A
(active)
+
R
R
C
R
C
R
C
ATP
ADP
P
Glycogen phosphorylase kinase b
(inactive)
Glycogen phosphorylase kinase a
(active)
Pi
H2O
Protein phosphatase-1
+
Insulin
P
Glycogen phosphorylase a
(active)
ADP
ATP
H2O
Protein phosphatase-1
Pi
+
Glycogen phosphorylase b
(inactive)
Insulin

ROLE OF CALCIUM IN MUSCLE

During muscle contraction, Ca^{2+} is released from the sarcoplasmic reticulum. Ca^{2+} binds to the calmodulin subunit of *phosphorylase kinase*, activating it without phosphorylation. *Phosphorylase kinase* can then activate *glycogen phosphorylase*, causing glycogen degradation.

ROLE OF AMP IN MUSCLE

In muscle under extreme conditions of anoxia and depletion of ATP, AMP activates *glycogen phosphorylase b* without it being phosphorylated.

Figure 11.9
Stimulation and inhibition of glycogen degradation.

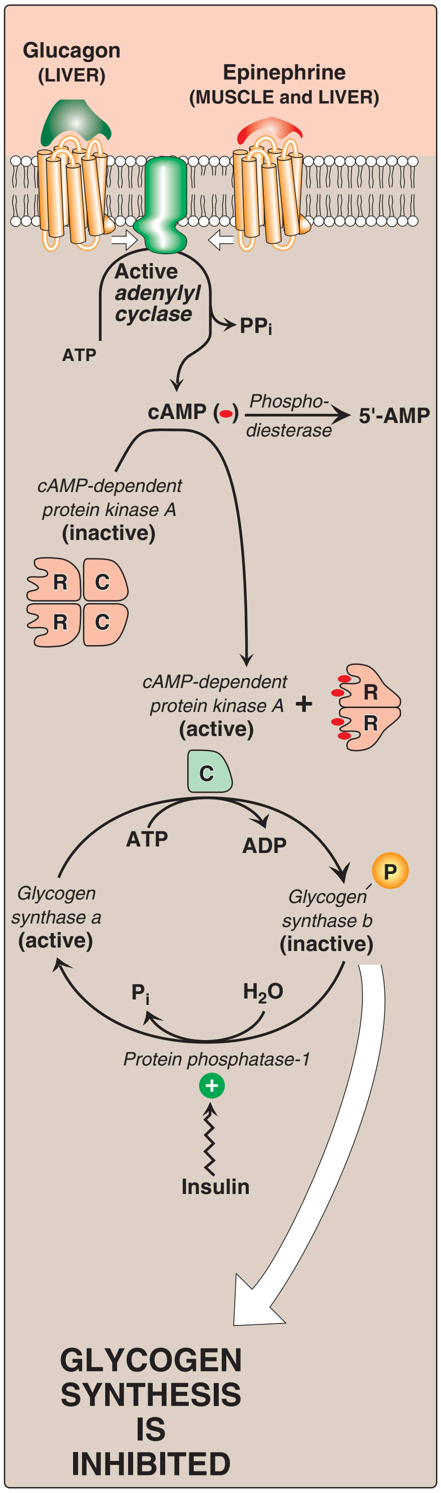


Figure 11.10
Hormonal regulation of glycogen synthesis. [Note: In contrast to *glycogen phosphorylase*, *glycogen synthase* is inactivated by phosphorylation.]

A. Activation of glycogen degradation by cAMP-directed pathway

The binding of hormones, such as glucagon or epinephrine, to plasma membrane G protein-coupled receptors (GPCR) signals the need for glycogen to be degraded—either to elevate blood glucose levels or to provide energy for exercising muscle.

1. **Activation of protein kinase A:** Binding of glucagon or epinephrine to their specific hepatocyte GPCR, or of epinephrine to specific myocyte GPCR, results in the G protein-mediated activation of *adenylyl cyclase*. This enzyme catalyzes the synthesis of cAMP, which activates *cAMP-dependent protein kinase A* (*PKA*), as described on page 95. *PKA* is a tetramer, having two regulatory subunits (R) and two catalytic subunits (C). cAMP binds to the regulatory subunit dimer, releasing individual catalytic subunits that are active (Figure 11.9). *PKA* then phosphorylates several enzymes of glycogen metabolism, affecting their activity. [Note: When cAMP is removed, the inactive tetramer, R_2C_2, is again formed.]

2. **Activation of phosphorylase kinase:** *Phosphorylase kinase* exists in two forms: an inactive "b" form and an active "a" form. Active *PKA* phosphorylates the inactive "b" form of *phosphorylase kinase*, producing the active "a" form (see Figure 11.9). [Note: The phosphorylated enzyme can be inactivated by the hydrolytic removal of its phosphate by *protein phosphatase-1*. This enzyme is activated by a signal cascade initiated by insulin (see p. 311). Insulin also activates the *phosphodiesterase* that degrades cAMP, thus opposing the effects of glucagon and epinephrine.]

3. **Activation of glycogen phosphorylase:** *Glycogen phosphorylase* also exists in two forms: the dephosphorylated, inactive "b" form and the phosphorylated, active "a" form. Active *phosphorylase kinase* phosphorylates *glycogen phosphorylase b* to its active "a" form, which then begins glycogenolysis (see Figure 11.9). *Phosphorylase a* is reconverted to *phosphorylase b* by the hydrolysis of its phosphate by *protein phosphatase-1*. [Note: *Protein phosphatase-1* is inactivated by inhibitor proteins that bind in response to their phosphorylation and activation by *PKA*.]

4. **Summary of the regulation of glycogen degradation:** The cascade of reactions listed above results in glycogenolysis. The large number of sequential steps serves to amplify the effect of the hormonal signal, that is, a few hormone molecules binding to their receptors result in a number of *protein kinase A* molecules being activated that can each activate many *phosphorylase kinase* molecules. This causes the production of many active *glycogen phosphorylase a* molecules that can degrade glycogen.

B. Inhibition of glycogen synthesis by a cAMP-directed pathway

The regulated enzyme in glycogenesis is *glycogen synthase*. It also exists in two forms, the active "a" form and the inactive "b" form. However, for *glycogen synthase*, in contrast to *phosphorylase kinase* and *glycogen phosphorylase*, the active form is dephosphorylated whereas the inactive form is phosphorylated (Figure 11.10). *Glycogen synthase a* is converted to the inactive “b” form by phosphorylation at several sites on the enzyme, with the level of inactivation proportional to its degree of phosphorylation. This conversion process is catalyzed by several different *protein kinases* that are regulated by cAMP or other signaling mechanisms (see C below). *Glycogen synthase b* can be reconverted to the “a” form by *protein phosphatase-1*, which removes the phosphate groups hydrolytically.

C. Allosteric regulation of glycogen synthesis and degradation

In addition to hormonal signals, *glycogen synthase* and *glycogen phosphorylase* respond to the levels of metabolites and energy needs of the cell. Glycogenesis is stimulated when substrate availability and energy levels are high, whereas glycogenolysis is increased when glucose and energy levels are low. This allosteric regulation allows a rapid response to the needs of a cell, and can override the effects of hormone-mediated covalent regulation.

1. Regulation of glycogen synthesis and degradation in the well-fed state:

In the well-fed state, *glycogen synthase b* in both liver and muscle is allosterically activated by glucose 6-phosphate which is present in elevated concentrations (Figure 11.11). In contrast, *glycogen phosphorylase a* is allosterically inhibited by glucose 6-phosphate, as well as by ATP, a high-energy signal in the cell. [Note: In liver, but not muscle, non-phosphorylated glucose is also an allosteric inhibitor of *glycogen phosphorylase a*, making it a better substrate for *protein phosphatase-1*.]

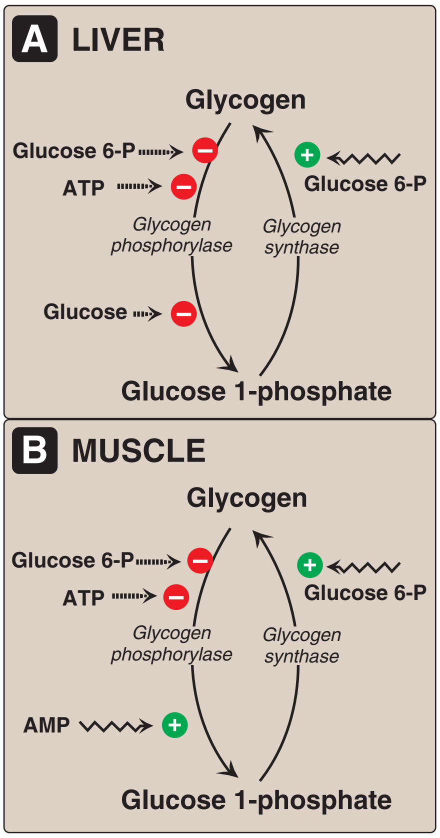


Figure 11.11
Allosteric regulation of glycogen synthesis and degradation.
A. Liver. B. Muscle. [Note: Ca^{2+} indirectly activates phosphorylase in both muscle and liver by directly activating *phosphorylase kinase*.]

2. Activation of glycogen degradation by calcium: Ca^{2+} is released into the cytoplasm in muscle in response to neural stimulation and in liver in response to epinephrine binding to α_1-adrenergic receptors. The Ca^{2+} binds to calmodulin, the most widely distributed member of a family of small, calcium-binding proteins. The binding of four molecules of Ca^{2+} to calmodulin triggers a conformational change such that the activated Ca^{2+}-calmodulin complex binds to and activates protein molecules—often enzymes—that are inactive in the absence of this complex (see Figure 11.12). Thus, calmodulin functions as an essential subunit of many complex proteins. One such protein is *phosphorylase kinase b*, which is activated by the Ca^{2+}-calmodulin complex without the need for the *kinase* to be phosphorylated by *PKA.* [Note: Epinephrine at β-adrenergic receptors signals through a rise in cAMP, not calcium (see p. 131).]

a. Calcium activation of muscle phosphorylase kinase: During muscle contraction, there is a rapid and urgent need for ATP. This energy is supplied by the degradation of muscle glycogen to glucose, which can then enter glycolysis. Nerve impulses cause membrane depolarization, which promotes Ca^{2+} release from the sarcoplasmic reticulum into the sarcoplasm of myocytes. The Ca^{2+} binds calmodulin and the complex activates muscle *phosphorylase kinase b* (see Figure 11.9).

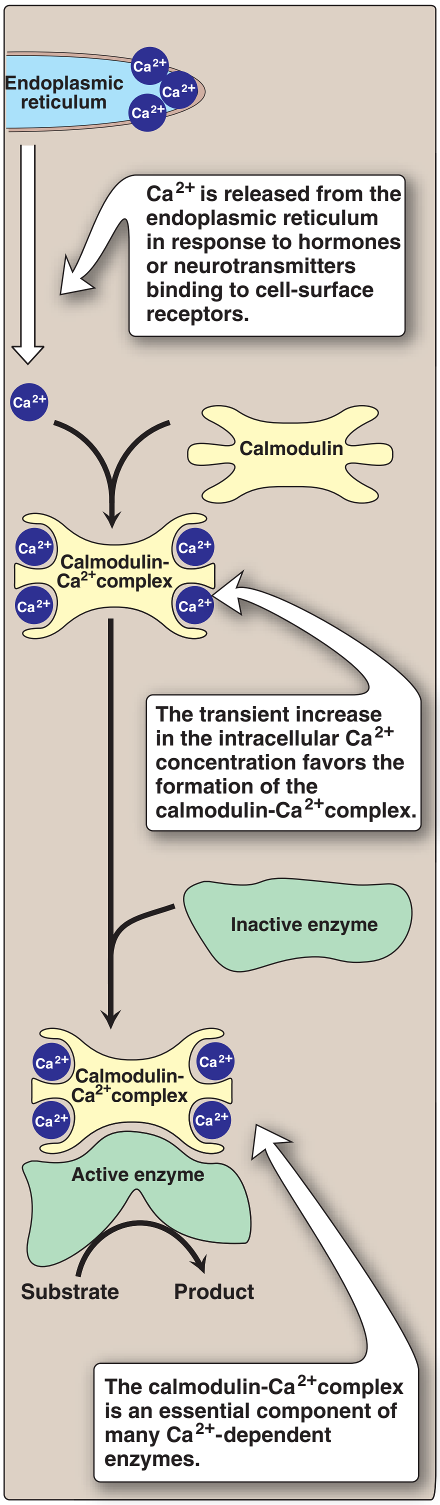

Endoplasmic reticulum
Ca2+
Ca2+ is released from the endoplasmic reticulum in response to hormones or neurotransmitters binding to cell-surface receptors.
Calmodulin
Calmodulin-Ca2+ complex
The transient increase in the intracellular Ca2+ concentration favors the formation of the calmodulin-Ca2+ complex.
Inactive enzyme
Calmodulin-Ca2+ complex
Active enzyme
Substrate
Product
The calmodulin-Ca2+ complex is an essential component of many Ca2+-dependent enzymes.

Figure 11.12
Calmodulin mediates many effects of intracellular calcium.

b. **Calcium activation of liver phosphorylase kinase:** During "fight or flight" situations, epinephrine is released from the adrenal medulla and signals the need for blood glucose. This glucose initially comes from hepatic glycogenolysis. Binding of epinephrine to hepatocyte α-adrenergic G protein-coupled receptors activates a phospholipid-dependent cascade (see p. 205) that results in movement of Ca^{2+} from the ER into the cytoplasm. A Ca^{2+}-calmodulin complex forms and activates hepatic *phosphorylase kinase b*. [Note: The released Ca^{2+} also helps to activate *protein kinase C* that can phosphorylate (thus inactivate) *glycogen synthase a*.]

3. **Activation of glycogen degradation in muscle by AMP:** Muscle *glycogen phosphorylase* is active in the presence of the high AMP concentrations that occur in the muscle under extreme conditions of anoxia and ATP depletion. AMP binds to *glycogen phosphorylase b*, causing its activation without phosphorylation (see Figure 11.9). [Note: Recall that AMP also activates *PFK-1* of glycolysis (see p. 99).]

VI. GLYCOGEN STORAGE DISEASES

These are a group of genetic diseases that result from a defect in an enzyme required for glycogen synthesis or degradation. They result either in formation of glycogen that has an abnormal structure, or in the accumulation of excessive amounts of normal glycogen in specific tissues as a result of impaired degradation. A particular enzyme may be defective in a single tissue, such as liver (resulting in hypoglycemia) or muscle (muscle weakness), or the defect may be more generalized, affecting liver, muscle, kidney, intestine, and myocardium. The severity of the glycogen storage diseases (GSDs) ranges from fatal in infancy to mild disorders that are not life-threatening. Some of the more prevalent GSDs are illustrated in Figure 11.8.

VII. CHAPTER SUMMARY

The **main stores** of glycogen in the body are found in **skeletal muscle**, where they serve as a **fuel reserve** for the synthesis of ATP during **muscle contraction**, and in the **liver**, where they are used to **maintain the blood glucose** concentration, particularly during the **early stages of a fast**. Glycogen is a **highly branched** polymer of **α-D-glucose**. The primary glycosidic bond is an **α(1→4) linkage**. After about eight to ten glucosyl residues, there is a **branch** containing an **α(1→6) linkage**. **UDP-glucose**, the **building block** of glycogen, is synthesized from **glucose 1-phosphate** and **UTP** by **UDP-glucose pyrophosphorylase** (Figure 11.13). Glucose from UDP-glucose is transferred to the nonreducing ends of glycogen chains by primer-requiring **glycogen synthase**, which makes **α(1→4) linkages**. The primer is made by glycogenin. **Branches** are formed by **amylo-α(1→4)→α(1→6)-transglucosidase**, which transfers a chain of six to eight glucosyl residues from the nonreducing end of the glycogen chain (**breaking** an **α(1→4) linkage**), and attaches it with an **α(1→6) linkage** to another residue in the chain.

PLP-requiring **glycogen phosphorylase** cleaves the **α(1→4) bonds** between glucosyl residues at the **nonreducing ends** of the glycogen chains, producing **glucose 1-phosphate**. This sequential degradation continues until four glucosyl units remain on each chain before a branch point. The resulting structure is called a **limit dextrin** that is degraded by the bifunctional debranching enzyme. **Oligo-α(1→4)→α(1→4)-glucan transferase** (common name, **glucosyl 4:4 transferase**) removes the outer three of the four glucosyl residues attached at a branch, and transfers them to the nonreducing end of another chain where they can be converted to glucose 1-phosphate by glycogen phosphorylase. Next, the remaining single glucose residue attached in an **α(1→4) linkage** is removed hydrolytically by the **amylo-(1→6) glucosidase** activity of debranching enzyme, releasing **free glucose**. **Glucose 1-phosphate** is converted to **glucose 6-phosphate** by **phosphoglucomutase**. In the **muscle**, glucose 6-phosphate enters glycolysis. In the **liver**, the phosphate is removed by **glucose 6-phosphatase**, releasing **free glucose** that can be used to maintain blood glucose levels at the beginning of a fast. A **deficiency** of the **phosphatase** causes **glycogen storage disease Type 1a** (**Von Gierke disease**). This disease results in an inability of the liver to provide free glucose to the body during a fast. It affects both glycogen degradation and gluconeogenesis. Glycogen synthesis and degradation are reciprocally regulated to meet whole-body needs by the same hormonal signals, namely, an **elevated insulin** level results in overall **increased glycogenesis** and **decreased glycogenolysis**, whereas an **elevated glucagon** (or **epinephrine**) level causes **increased glycogenolysis** and **decreased glycogenesis**. Key enzymes are phosphorylated by a family of **protein kinases**, some of which are **cAMP-dependent** (a compound increased by glucagon and epinephrine). Phosphate groups are removed by protein phosphatase-1 (activated when insulin levels are elevated). **Glycogen synthase, phosphorylase kinase** and **phosphorylase** are also **allosterically regulated** to meet tissues needs. In the well-fed state, **glycogen synthase** is **activated** by **glucose 6-phosphate**, but **glycogen phosphorylase** is inhibited by **glucose 6-phosphate**, as well as by **ATP**. In the liver, glucose also serves an an allosteric inhibitor of glycogen phosphorylase. The **Ca^{2+}** released from the endoplasmic reticulum in muscle during exercise and in liver in response to epinephrine **activates phosphorylase kinase** by binding to the enzyme's **calmodulin** subunit. This allows the enzyme to activate **glycogen phosphorylase**, thereby causing glycogen degradation.

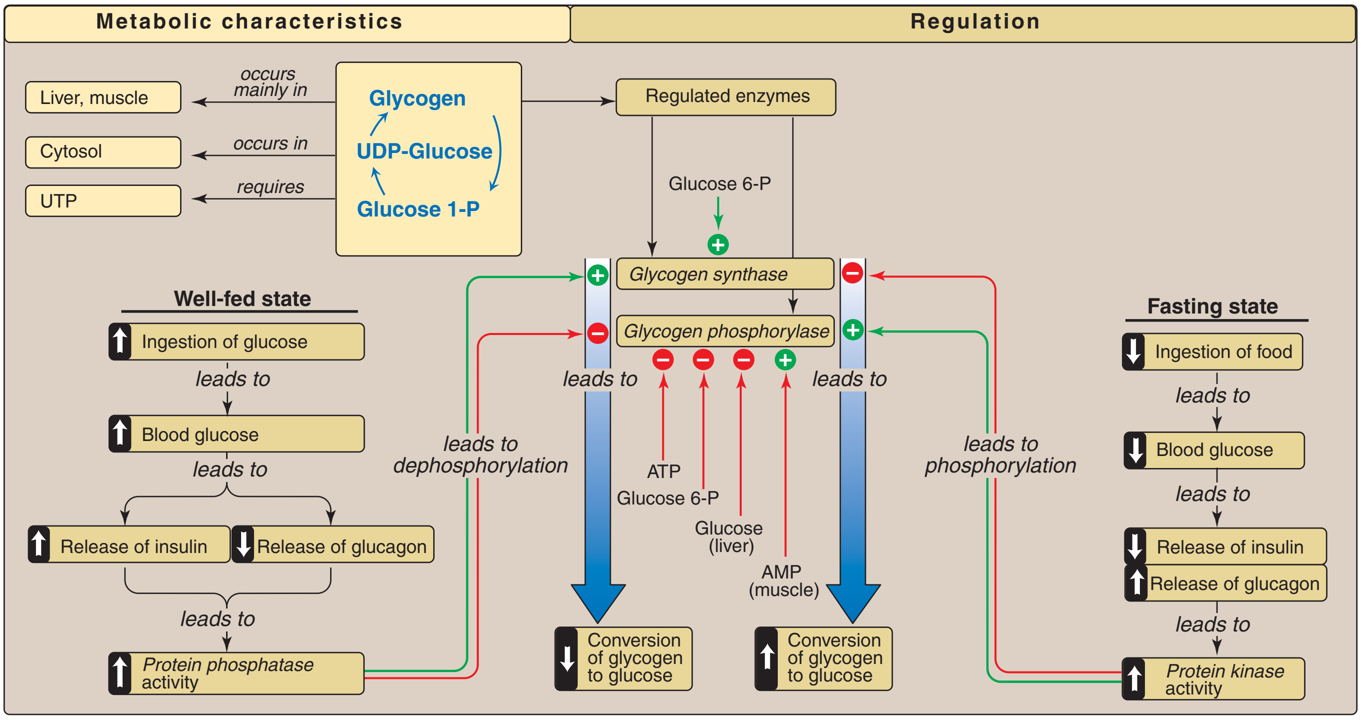

Metabolic characteristics
Regulation
Liver, muscle
occurs mainly in
Cytosol
occurs in
UTP
requires
Glycogen
UDP-Glucose
Glucose 1-P
Regulated enzymes
Glucose 6-P
Glycogen synthase
Glycogen phosphorylase
leads to
leads to
ATP
Glucose 6-P
Glucose (liver)
AMP (muscle)
Well-fed state
Ingestion of glucose
leads to
Blood glucose
leads to
Release of insulin
Release of glucagon
leads to
Protein phosphatase activity
leads to dephosphorylation
Conversion of glycogen to glucose
Conversion of glycogen to glucose
leads to phosphorylation
Fasting state
Ingestion of food
leads to
Blood glucose
leads to
Release of insulin
Release of glucagon
leads to
Protein kinase activity

Figure 11.13
Key concept map for glycogen metabolism in liver. [Note: *Glycogen phosphorylase* is phosphorylated by *phosphorylase kinase,* the "b" form of which can be activated by Ca^{2+}.]

Study Questions

Choose the ONE correct answer.

11.1 A 2-year-old boy was brought into the emergency room, suffering from severe fasting hypoglycemia. On physical examination, he was found to have hepatomegaly. Laboratory tests indicated that he also had hyperlacticacidemia and hyperuricemia. A liver biopsy indicated that hepatocytes contained greater than normal amounts of glycogen that was of normal structure. Enzyme assay likely confirmed a deficiency in which of the following enzymes?

A. Glycogen synthase
B. Glycogen phosphorylase
C. Glucose 6-phosphatase
D. Amylo-$\alpha(1\rightarrow 6)$-glucosidase
E. Amylo-$\alpha(1\rightarrow 4)\rightarrow\alpha(1\rightarrow 6)$-transglucosidase

Correct answer = C. A deficiency of glucose 6-phosphatase (Von Gierke disease) prevents the liver from releasing free glucose into the blood, causing severe fasting hypoglycemia, hyperlacticacidemia, and hyperuricemia. A deficiency of glycogen phosphorylase would result in a decrease in glycogen degradation, causing fasting hypoglycemia, but not the other symptoms. A deficiency of glycogen synthase would result in lower amounts of stored glycogen. Amylo-$\alpha(1\rightarrow 6)$-glucosidase removes single glucosyl residues attached to the glycogen chain through an $\alpha(1\rightarrow 6)$-glycosidic bond. A deficiency in this enzyme would result in a decreased ability of the cell to completely degrade glycogen branches. Amylo-$\alpha(1\rightarrow 4)\rightarrow\alpha(1\rightarrow 6)$-transglucosidase deficiency would decrease the ability of the cell to make branches.

11.2 The hormones, epinephrine and glucagon have which one of the following effects on glycogen metabolism in the liver?

A. The net synthesis of glycogen is increased.
B. Glycogen phosphorylase is phosphorylated and active, whereas glycogen synthase is phosphorylated and inactive.
C. Both glycogen phosphorylase and glycogen synthase are activated by phosphorylation but at significantly different rates.
D. Glycogen phosphorylase is inactivated by a rise in Ca^{2+}, whereas glycogen synthase is activated.
E. cAMP-dependent protein kinase A is activated, whereas phosphorylase kinase is inactivated.

Correct answer = B. Epinephrine and glucagon both cause increased glycogen degradation in the liver through covalent modification (phosphorylation) of key enzymes of glycogen metabolism. Glycogen phosphorylase is phosphorylated and active ("a" form), whereas glycogen synthase is phosphorylated and inactive ("b" form). cAMP-dependent protein kinase A is active and phosphorylates (and activates) its substrate, phosphorylase kinase. It is phosphorylase kinase a that directly phosphorylates and activates phosphorylase.

11.3 In contracting skeletal muscle, a sudden elevation of the cytosolic Ca^{2+} concentration will result in:

A. activation of cAMP-dependent protein kinase A.
B. dissociation of cAMP-dependent protein kinase A into catalytic and regulatory subunits.
C. inactivation of phosphorylase kinase caused by the action of protein phosphatase-1.
D. direct activation of phosphorylase kinase b.
E. direct activation of glycogen phosphorylase b.
F. conversion of cAMP to AMP by phosphodiesterase.

Correct answer = D. Ca^{2+} released from the sarcoplasmic reticulum during exercise binds to the calmodulin subunit of phosphorylase kinase, thereby allosterically activating the "b" form of this enzyme. The other choices are not caused by an elevation of cytosolic calcium.

11.4 Explain why the hypoglycemia seen with Type Ia glycogen storage disease (glucose 6-phosphatase deficiency) is severe, whereas that seen with Type VI (liver phosphorylase deficiency) is mild.

With Type Ia, the liver is unable to generate free glucose either from glycogenolysis or gluconeogenesis because both processes produce glucose 6-phosphate. With Type VI, liver is still able to produce free glucose from gluconeogenesis; glycogenolysis, however, is inhibited.

Metabolism of Monosaccharides and Disaccharides

12

I. OVERVIEW

Glucose is the most common monosaccharide consumed by humans, and its metabolism has been discussed extensively. However, two other monosaccharides—fructose and galactose—occur in significant amounts in the diet (primarily in disaccharides), and make important contributions to energy metabolism. In addition, galactose is an important component of cell structural carbohydrates. Figure 12.1 shows the metabolism of fructose and galactose as part of the essential pathways of energy metabolism in the body.

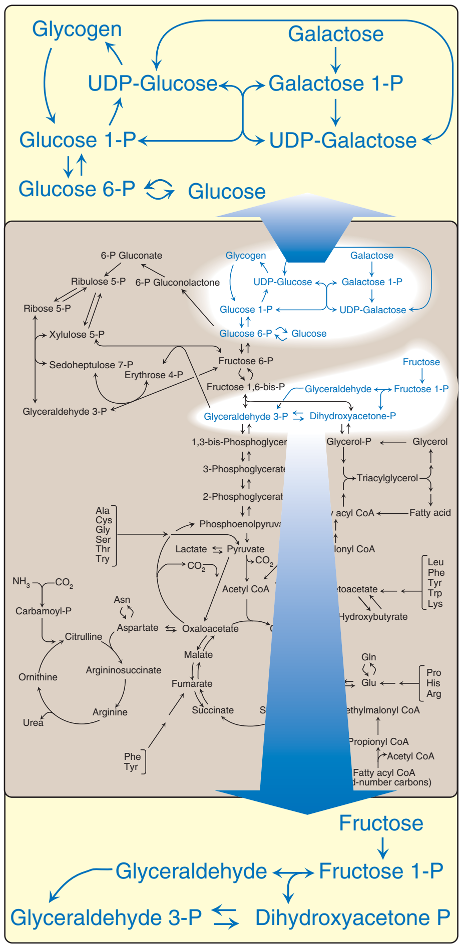


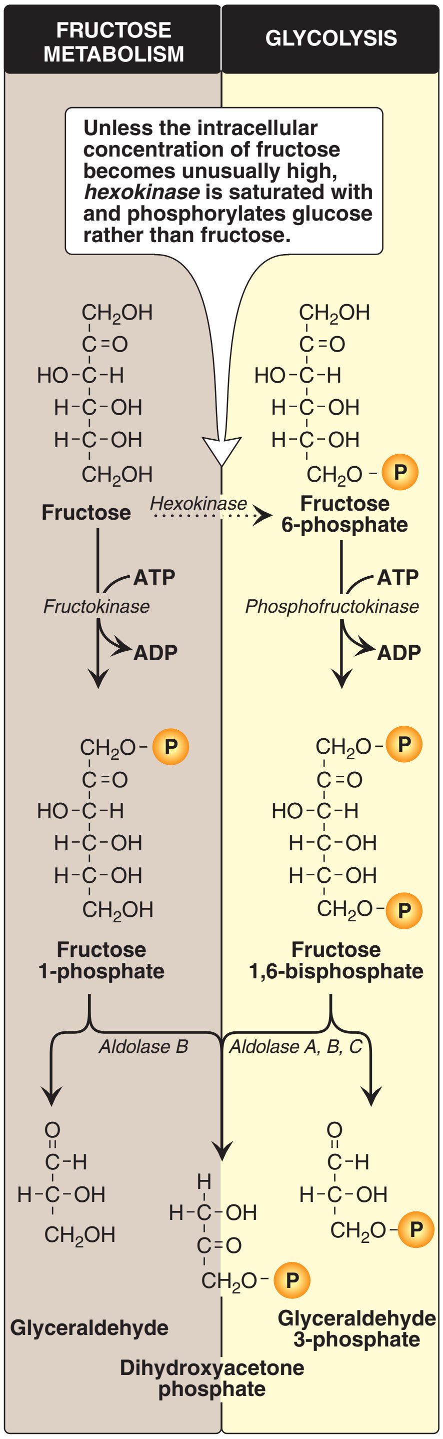
Figure 12.1
Galactose and fructose metabolism as part of the essential pathways of energy metabolism (see Figure 8.2, p. 92, for a more detailed view of the overall reactions of metabolism).

II. FRUCTOSE METABOLISM

About 10% of the calories contained in the Western diet are supplied by fructose (approximately 55 g/day). The major source of fructose is the disaccharide sucrose, which, when cleaved in the intestine, releases equimolar amounts of fructose and glucose. Fructose is also found as a free monosaccharide in many fruits, in honey, and in high-fructose corn syrup (55% fructose/45% glucose typically), which is used to sweeten soft drinks and many foods. Entry of fructose into cells is not insulin-dependent (unlike that of glucose into certain tissues, see p. 97), and, in contrast to glucose, fructose does not promote the secretion of insulin.

A. Phosphorylation of fructose

For fructose to enter the pathways of intermediary metabolism, it must first be phosphorylated (Figure 12.2). This can be accomplished by either *hexokinase* or *fructokinase* (also called *ketohexokinase*). *Hexokinase* phosphorylates glucose in most cells of the body (see p. 98), and several additional hexoses can serve as substrates for this enzyme. However, it has a low affinity (that is, a high K_m, see p. 59) for fructose. Therefore, unless the intracellular concentration of fructose becomes unusually high, the normal presence of saturating concentrations of glucose means that little fructose is converted to fructose 6-phosphate by *hexokinase*. *Fructokinase* provides the primary mechanism for fructose phosphorylation (see Figure 12.2). It is found in the liver (which processes most of the dietary fructose), kidney, and the small intestinal mucosa, and converts fructose to fructose 1-phosphate, using ATP as the phosphate donor. [Note: These three tissues also contain *aldolase B*, discussed below.]



Unless the intracellular concentration of fructose becomes unusually high, *hexokinase* is saturated with and phosphorylates glucose rather than fructose.

Figure 12.2
Phosphorylation products of fructose and their cleavage.

B. Cleavage of fructose 1-phosphate

Fructose 1-phosphate is not phosphorylated to fructose 1,6-bisphosphate as is fructose 6-phosphate (see p. 99), but is cleaved by *aldolase B* (also called *fructose 1-phosphate aldolase*) to dihydroxyacetone phosphate (DHAP) and glyceraldehyde. [Note: Humans express three *aldolases*, *A*, *B* and *C*, the products of three different genes. *Aldolase A* (found in most tissues), *aldolase B* (in liver), and *aldolase C* (in brain) all cleave fructose 1,6-bisphosphate produced during glycolysis to DHAP and glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate (see p. 100), but only *aldolase B* cleaves fructose 1-phosphate.] DHAP can directly enter glycolysis or gluconeogenesis, whereas glyceraldehyde can be metabolized by a number of pathways, as illustrated in Figure 12.3.

C. Kinetics of fructose metabolism

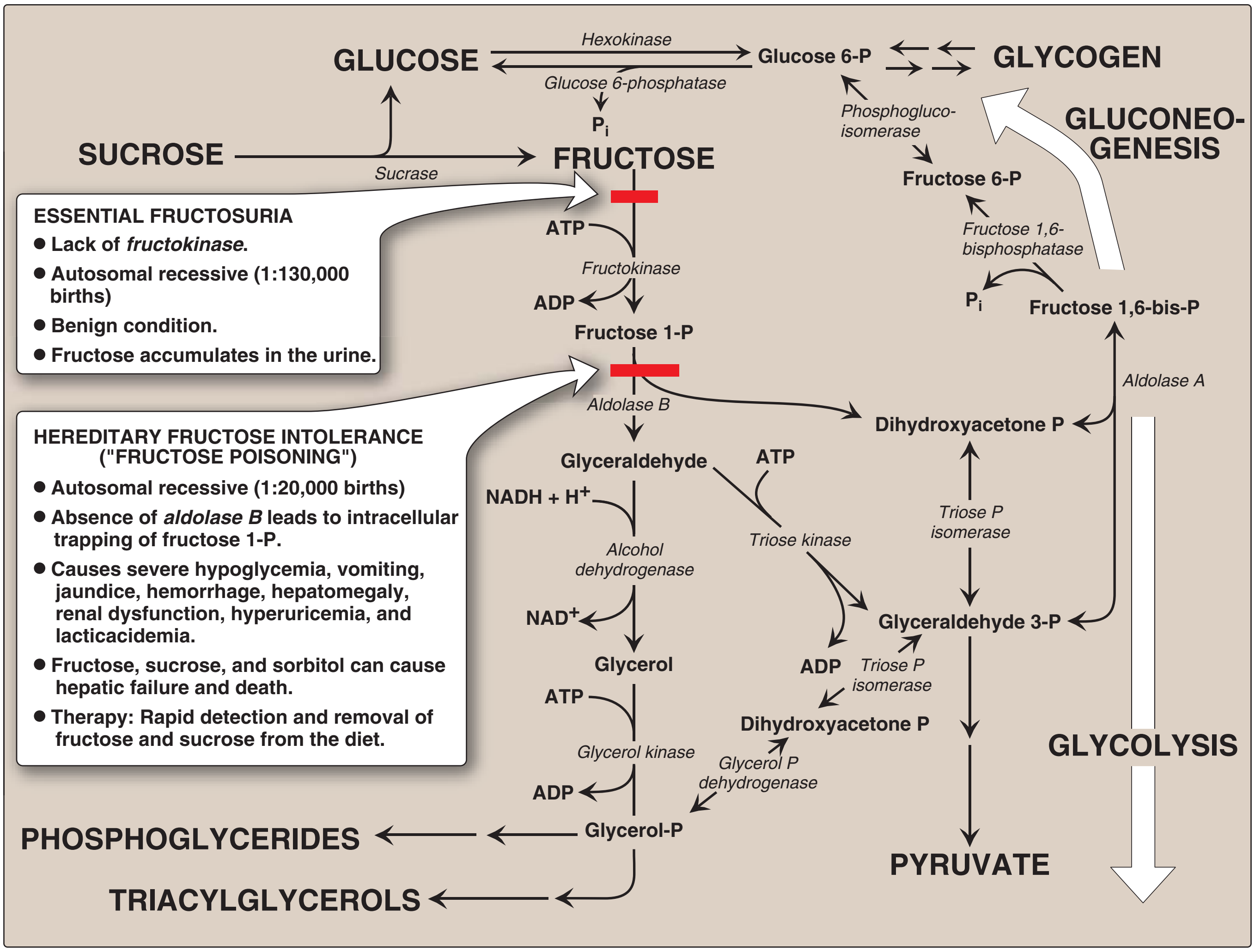
The rate of fructose metabolism is more rapid than that of glucose because the trioses formed from fructose 1-phosphate bypass *phosphofructokinase-1*—the major rate-limiting step in glycolysis (see p. 99).

D. Disorders of fructose metabolism

A deficiency of one of the key enzymes required for the entry of fructose into intermediary metabolic pathways can result in either a benign condition as a result of *fructokinase* deficiency (essential fructosuria), or a severe disturbance of liver and kidney metabolism as a result of *aldolase B* deficiency (hereditary fructose intolerance, HFI), which is estimated to occur in 1:20,000 live births (see Figure 12.3). The first symptoms of HFI appear when a baby is weaned from milk (see p. 142) and begins to be fed food containing sucrose or fructose. Fructose 1-phosphate accumulates, resulting in a drop in the level of inorganic phosphate (P_i) and, therefore, of ATP. As ATP falls, AMP rises. In the absence of P_i, AMP is degraded, causing hyperuricemia (and lactic acidosis, see p. 299). The decreased availability of hepatic ATP affects gluconeogenesis (causing hypoglycemia with vomiting), and protein synthesis (causing a decrease in blood clotting factors and other essential proteins). Kidney function may also be affected. Diagnosis of HFI can be made on the basis of fructose in the urine, enzyme assay or by DNA-based testing (see Chapter 33). In some states HFI is part of the newborn screening panel. With HFI, sucrose and sorbitol (a sugar alcohol), as well as fructose, must be removed from the diet to prevent liver failure and possible death. Individuals with HFI display an aversion to sweets and, consequently, have an absence of dental caries.

E. Conversion of mannose to fructose 6-phosphate

Mannose, the C-2 epimer of glucose (see p. 84), is an important component of glycoproteins (see p. 166). *Hexokinase* phosphorylates mannose, producing mannose 6-phosphate, which, in turn, is (reversibly) isomerized to fructose 6-phosphate by *phosphomannose isomerase*. [Note: There is little mannose in dietary carbohydrates. Most intracellular mannose is synthesized from fructose, or is preexisting mannose produced by the degradation of structural carbohydrates and salvaged by *hexokinase*.]


Hexokinase
GLUCOSE
Glucose 6-P
GLYCOGEN
Glucose 6-phosphatase
P_i
Phosphogluco-isomerase
GLUCONEO-GENESIS
SUCROSE
Sucrase
FRUCTOSE
Fructose 6-P
ATP
Fructokinase
ADP
Fructose 1-P
Fructose 1,6-bisphosphatase
P_i
Fructose 1,6-bis-P
Aldolase A
Aldolase B
Dihydroxyacetone P
Glyceraldehyde
ATP
$NADH + H^+$
Triose kinase
Triose P isomerase
Alcohol dehydrogenase
NAD^+
Glyceraldehyde 3-P
Glycerol
ADP
Triose P isomerase
ATP
Dihydroxyacetone P
GLYCOLYSIS
Glycerol kinase
Glycerol P dehydrogenase
ADP
PHOSPHOGLYCERIDES
Glycerol-P
PYRUVATE
TRIACYLGLYCEROLS

ESSENTIAL FRUCTOSURIA

- Lack of *fructokinase*.
- Autosomal recessive (1:130,000 births)
- Benign condition.
- Fructose accumulates in the urine.

HEREDITARY FRUCTOSE INTOLERANCE ("FRUCTOSE POISONING")

- Autosomal recessive (1:20,000 births)
- Absence of *aldolase B* leads to intracellular trapping of fructose 1-P.
- Causes severe hypoglycemia, vomiting, jaundice, hemorrhage, hepatomegaly, renal dysfunction, hyperuricemia, and lacticacidemia.
- Fructose, sucrose, and sorbitol can cause hepatic failure and death.
- Therapy: Rapid detection and removal of fructose and sucrose from the diet.

Figure 12.3
Summary of fructose metabolism.

F. Conversion of glucose to fructose via sorbitol

Most sugars are rapidly phosphorylated following their entry into cells. They are thereby trapped within the cells, because organic phosphates cannot freely cross membranes without specific transporters. An alternate mechanism for metabolizing a monosaccharide is to convert it to a polyol (sugar alcohol) by the reduction of an aldehyde group, thereby producing an additional hydroxyl group.

1. **Synthesis of sorbitol:** *Aldose reductase* reduces glucose, producing sorbitol (glucitol, Figure 12.4). This enzyme is found in many tissues, including the lens, retina, Schwann cells of peripheral nerves, liver, kidney, placenta, red blood cells, and in cells of the ovaries and seminal vesicles. In cells of the liver, ovaries, and seminal vesicles, there is a second enzyme, *sorbitol dehydrogenase,* which can oxidize the sorbitol to produce fructose (see Figure 12.4). The two-reaction pathway from glucose to fructose in the seminal vesicles is for the benefit of sperm cells, which use fructose as a major carbohydrate energy source. The pathway

from sorbitol to fructose in the liver provides a mechanism by which any available sorbitol is converted into a substrate that can enter glycolysis or gluconeogenesis.

2. **The effect of hyperglycemia on sorbitol metabolism:** Because insulin is not required for the entry of glucose into the cells listed in the previous paragraph, large amounts of glucose may enter these cells during times of hyperglycemia, for example, in uncontrolled diabetes. Elevated intracellular glucose concentrations and an adequate supply of NADPH cause *aldose reductase* to produce a significant increase in the amount of sorbitol, which cannot pass efficiently through cell membranes and, therefore, remains trapped inside the cell (see Figure 12.4). This is exacerbated when *sorbitol dehydrogenase* is low or absent, for example, in retina, lens, kidney, and nerve cells. As a result, sorbitol accumulates in these cells, causing strong osmotic effects and, therefore, cell swelling as a result of water retention. Some of the pathologic alterations associated with diabetes can be attributed, in part, to this phenomenon, including cataract formation, peripheral neuropathy, and microvascular problems leading to nephropathy and retinopathy. (See p. 344 for a discussion of the complications of diabetes.)

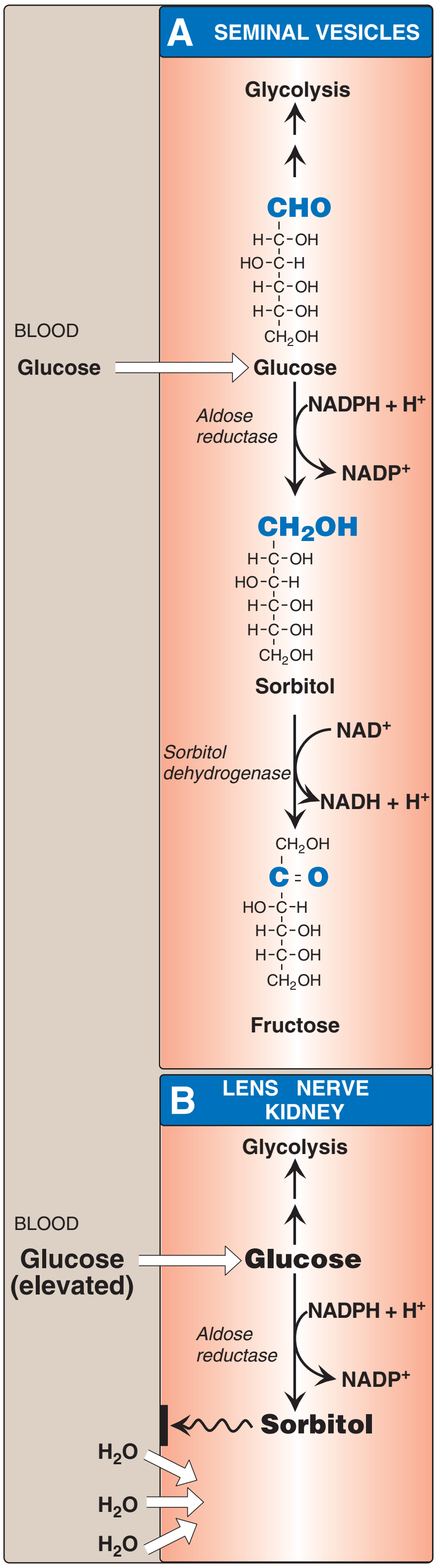

A SEMINAL VESICLES
Glycolysis
CHO
H-C-OH
HO-C-H
H-C-OH
H-C-OH
CH2OH
BLOOD
Glucose
Glucose
Aldose reductase
NADPH + H+
NADP+
CH2OH
H-C-OH
HO-C-H
H-C-OH
H-C-OH
CH2OH
Sorbitol
Sorbitol dehydrogenase
NAD+
NADH + H+
CH2OH
C = O
HO-C-H
H-C-OH
H-C-OH
CH2OH
Fructose
B LENS NERVE KIDNEY
Glycolysis
BLOOD
Glucose (elevated)
Glucose
Aldose reductase
NADPH + H+
NADP+
Sorbitol
H2O
H2O
H2O

Figure 12.4
Sorbitol metabolism.

III. GALACTOSE METABOLISM

The major dietary source of galactose is lactose (galactosyl β-1,4-glucose) obtained from milk and milk products. [Note: The digestion of lactose by *β-galactosidase* (*lactase*) of the intestinal mucosal cell membrane was discussed on p. 87.] Some galactose can also be obtained by lysosomal degradation of complex carbohydrates, such as glycoproteins and glycolipids, which are important membrane components. Like fructose, the entry of galactose into cells is not insulin-dependent.

A. Phosphorylation of galactose

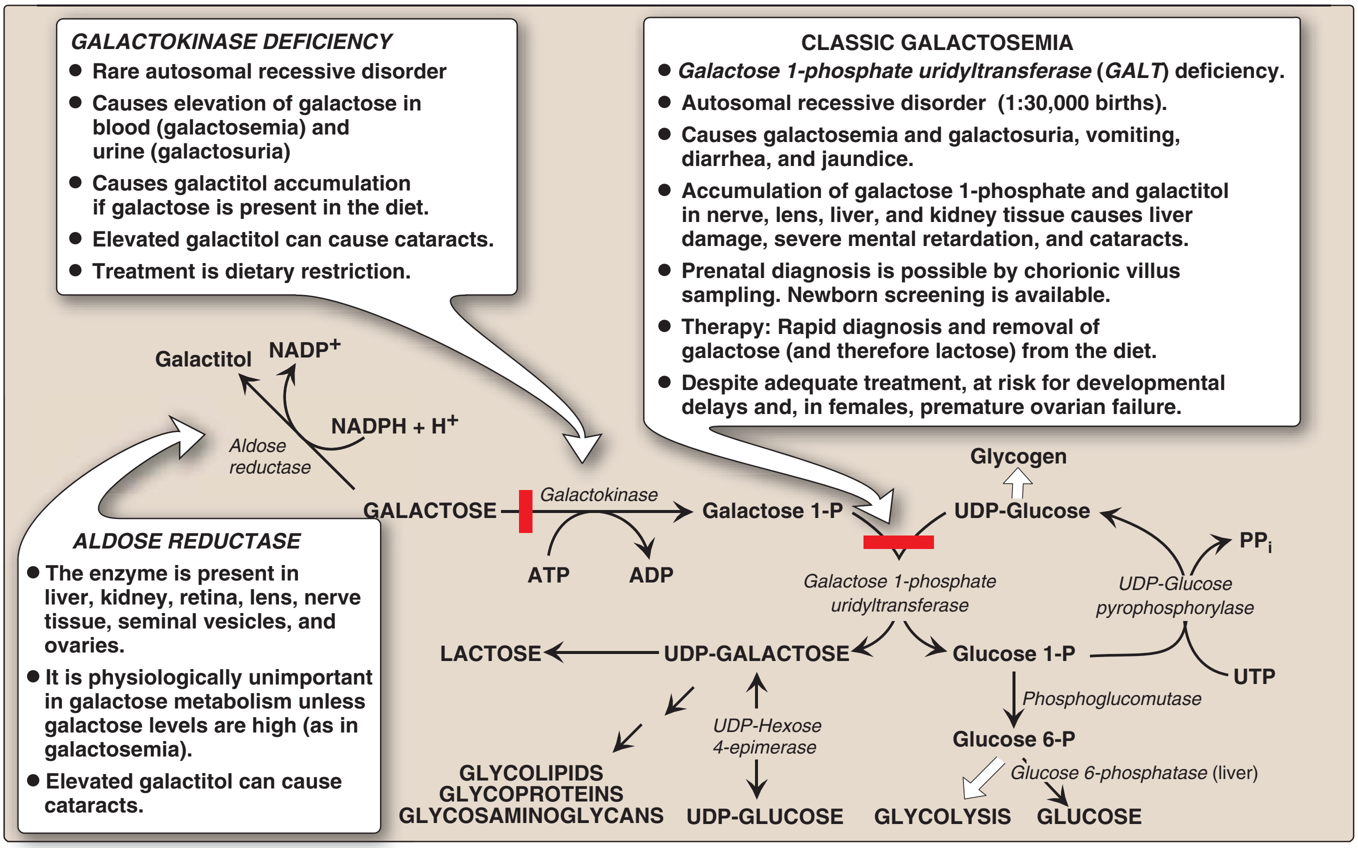
Like fructose, galactose must be phosphorylated before it can be further metabolized. Most tissues have a specific enzyme for this purpose, *galactokinase*, which produces galactose 1-phosphate (Figure 12.5). As with other *kinases*, ATP is the phosphate donor.

B. Formation of UDP-galactose

Galactose 1-phosphate cannot enter the glycolytic pathway unless it is first converted to UDP-galactose (see Figure 12.5). This occurs in an exchange reaction, in which UDP-glucose reacts with galactose 1-phosphate, producing UDP-galactose and glucose 1-phosphate (Figure 12.6). The enzyme that catalyzes this reaction is *galactose 1-phosphate uridyltransferase* (*GALT*).

C. Use of UDP-galactose as a carbon source for glycolysis or gluconeogenesis

For UDP-galactose to enter the mainstream of glucose metabolism, it must first be converted to its C-4 epimer, UDP-glucose, by *UDP-hexose 4-epimerase.* This "new" UDP-glucose (produced from the original UDP-galactose) can then participate in many biosynthetic



GALACTOKINASE DEFICIENCY

- **Rare autosomal recessive disorder**
- **Causes elevation of galactose in blood (galactosemia) and urine (galactosuria)**
- **Causes galactitol accumulation if galactose is present in the diet.**
- **Elevated galactitol can cause cataracts.**
- **Treatment is dietary restriction.**

CLASSIC GALACTOSEMIA

- ***Galactose 1-phosphate uridyltransferase* (*GALT*) deficiency.**
- **Autosomal recessive disorder (1:30,000 births).**
- **Causes galactosemia and galactosuria, vomiting, diarrhea, and jaundice.**
- **Accumulation of galactose 1-phosphate and galactitol in nerve, lens, liver, and kidney tissue causes liver damage, severe mental retardation, and cataracts.**
- **Prenatal diagnosis is possible by chorionic villus sampling. Newborn screening is available.**
- **Therapy: Rapid diagnosis and removal of galactose (and therefore lactose) from the diet.**
- **Despite adequate treatment, at risk for developmental delays and, in females, premature ovarian failure.**

ALDOSE REDUCTASE

- **The enzyme is present in liver, kidney, retina, lens, nerve tissue, seminal vesicles, and ovaries.**
- **It is physiologically unimportant in galactose metabolism unless galactose levels are high (as in galactosemia).**
- **Elevated galactitol can cause cataracts.**

Galactitol
NADP$^+$
NADPH + H$^+$
Aldose reductase
GALACTOSE
Galactokinase
ATP
ADP
Galactose 1-P
Glycogen
UDP-Glucose
PP$_i$
Galactose 1-phosphate uridyltransferase
UDP-Glucose pyrophosphorylase
LACTOSE
UDP-GALACTOSE
Glucose 1-P
UTP
Phosphoglucomutase
UDP-Hexose 4-epimerase
Glucose 6-P
Glucose 6-phosphatase (liver)
GLYCOLIPIDS
GLYCOPROTEINS
GLYCOSAMINOGLYCANS
UDP-GLUCOSE
GLYCOLYSIS
GLUCOSE

Figure 12.5
Metabolism of galactose.

reactions, as well as being used in the *GALT* reaction described above. (See Figure 12.5 for a summary of this interconversion.) [Note: Rare deficiencies of the *epimerase* are known.]

D. Role of UDP-galactose in biosynthetic reactions

UDP-galactose can serve as the donor of galactose units in a number of synthetic pathways, including synthesis of lactose (see below), glycoproteins (see p. 166), glycolipids (see p. 210), and glycosaminoglycans (see p. 160). [Note: If galactose is not provided by the diet (for example, when it cannot be released from lactose as a result of a lack of *β-galactosidase* in people who are lactose-intolerant), all tissue requirements for UDP-galactose can be met by the action of *UDP-hexose 4-epimerase* on UDP-glucose, which is efficiently produced from glucose 1-phosphate (see Figure 12.5).]

E. Disorders of galactose metabolism

GALT is deficient in individuals with classic galactosemia (see Figure 12.5). In this disorder, galactose 1-phosphate and, therefore, galactose accumulate in cells. Physiologic consequences are similar to those found in hereditary fructose intolerance (see p. 138), but a broader spectrum of tissues is affected. The accumulated galactose is shunted into side pathways such as that of galactitol production.

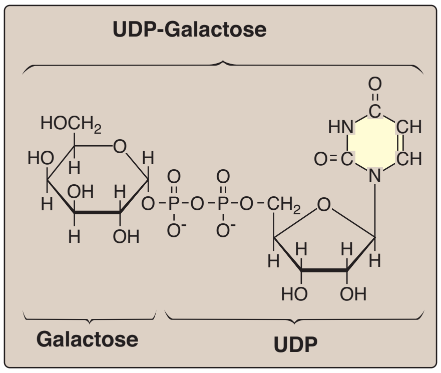

UDP-Galactose
HOCH$_2$
HO
O
H
OH
H
H
OH
O
O
O-P-O-P-O-CH$_2$
O$^-$
O$^-$
HN
CH
O=C
CH
N
H
H
H
H
HO
OH
Galactose
UDP

Figure 12.6
Structure of UDP-galactose.

This reaction is catalyzed by *aldose reductase,* the same enzyme that converts glucose to sorbitol (see p. 139). [Note: A deficiency in *galactokinase* results in a less severe disorder of galactosemia metabolism, although cataracts are common (see Figure 12.5).]

IV. LACTOSE SYNTHESIS

Lactose is a disaccharide that consists of a molecule of β-galactose attached by a β(1→4) linkage to glucose. Therefore, lactose is galactosyl β(1→4)-glucose. Lactose, known as the "milk sugar," is produced by the mammary glands of most mammals. Therefore, milk and other dairy products are the dietary sources of lactose. Lactose is synthesized in the Golgi by *lactose synthase (UDP-galactose:glucose galactosyltransferase)*, which transfers galactose from UDP-galactose to glucose, releasing UDP (Figure 12.7). This enzyme is composed of two proteins, A and B. Protein A is a *β-D-galactosyltransferase,* and is found in a number of body tissues. In tissues other than the lactating mammary gland, this enzyme transfers galactose from UDP-galactose to N-acetyl-D-glucosamine, forming the same β(1→4) linkage found in lactose, and producing N-acetyllactosamine—a component of the structurally important N-linked glycoproteins (see p. 167). In contrast, protein B is found only in lactating mammary glands. It is α-lactalbumin, and its synthesis is stimulated by the peptide hormone, prolactin. Protein B forms a complex with the enzyme, protein A, changing the specificity of that *transferase* so that lactose, rather than N-acetyllactosamine, is produced (see Figure 12.7).

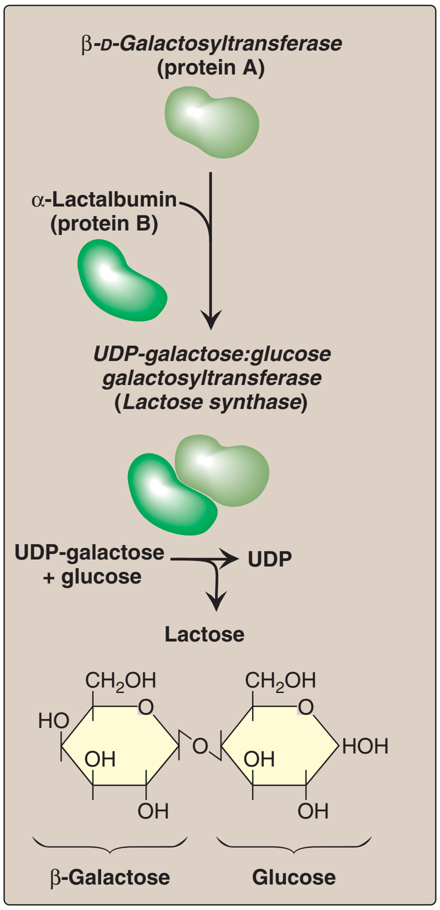

β-D-Galactosyltransferase (protein A)
α-Lactalbumin (protein B)
UDP-galactose:glucose galactosyltransferase (*Lactose synthase*)
UDP-galactose + glucose
UDP
Lactose
CH2OH
O
HO
OH
OH
HOH
β-Galactose
Glucose

Figure 12.7
Lactose synthesis.

V. CHAPTER SUMMARY

The major source of fructose is **sucrose**, which when cleaved releases equimolar amounts of fructose and glucose (Figure 12.8). Entry of fructose into cells is **insulin-independent**. Fructose is first phosphorylated to **fructose 1-phosphate** by **fructokinase**, and then cleaved by **aldolase B** to **dihydroxyacetone phosphate** and **glyceraldehyde**. These enzymes are found in the **liver**, **kidney**, and **small intestinal mucosa**. A **deficiency** of **fructokinase** causes a benign condition (**essential fructosuria**), but a **deficiency** of **aldolase B** causes **hereditary fructose intolerance (HFI)**, in which **severe hypoglycemia** and **liver failure** lead to **death** if fructose (and sucrose) in the diet is not severely limited. **Mannose**, an important component of **glycoproteins**, is phosphorylated by **hexokinase** to **mannose 6-phosphate**, which is reversibly isomerized to **fructose 6-phosphate** by **phosphomannose isomerase**. **Glucose** can be reduced to **sorbitol** (**glucitol**) by **aldose reductase** in many tissues, including the **lens**, **retina**, **Schwann cells**, **liver**, **kidney**, **ovaries**, and **seminal vesicles**. In cells of the **liver**, **ovaries**, and **seminal vesicles**, a second enzyme, **sorbitol dehydrogenase**, can oxidize sorbitol to produce **fructose**. **Hyperglycemia** results in the accumulation of sorbitol in those cells lacking sorbitol dehydrogenase. The resulting **osmotic events** cause cell swelling, and may contribute to the **cataract formation**, **peripheral**

neuropathy, **nephropathy**, and **retinopathy** seen in **diabetes**. The major dietary source of galactose is **lactose**. The entry of galactose into cells is not insulin-dependent. Galactose is first phosphorylated by **galactokinase** (deficiency results in cataracts) to **galactose 1-phosphate**. This compound is converted to **UDP-galactose** by **galactose 1-phosphate uridyltransferase (GALT)**, with the nucleotide supplied by UDP-glucose. A **deficiency** of this enzyme causes **classic galactosemia**. Galactose 1-phosphate accumulates, and excess galactose is converted to **galactitol** by **aldose reductase**. This causes **liver damage**, **severe mental retardation**, and **cataracts**. Treatment requires removal of galactose (and lactose) from the diet. For UDP-galactose to enter the mainstream of glucose metabolism, it must first be converted to UDP-glucose by **UDP-hexose 4-epimerase**. This enzyme can also be used to produce UDP-galactose from UDP-glucose when the former is required for the synthesis of structural carbohydrates. **Lactose** is a disaccharide that consists of **galactose** and **glucose**. Milk and other dairy products are the dietary sources of lactose. Lactose is synthesized by **lactose synthase** from **UDP-galactose** and **glucose** in the **lactating mammary gland**. The enzyme has two subunits, **protein A** (which is a **galactosyl transferase** found in most cells where it synthesizes **N-acetyllactosamine**) and **protein B** (**α-lactalbumin**, which is found only in the lactating mammary glands, and whose synthesis is stimulated by the peptide hormone, **prolactin**). When both subunits are present, the transferase produces lactose.

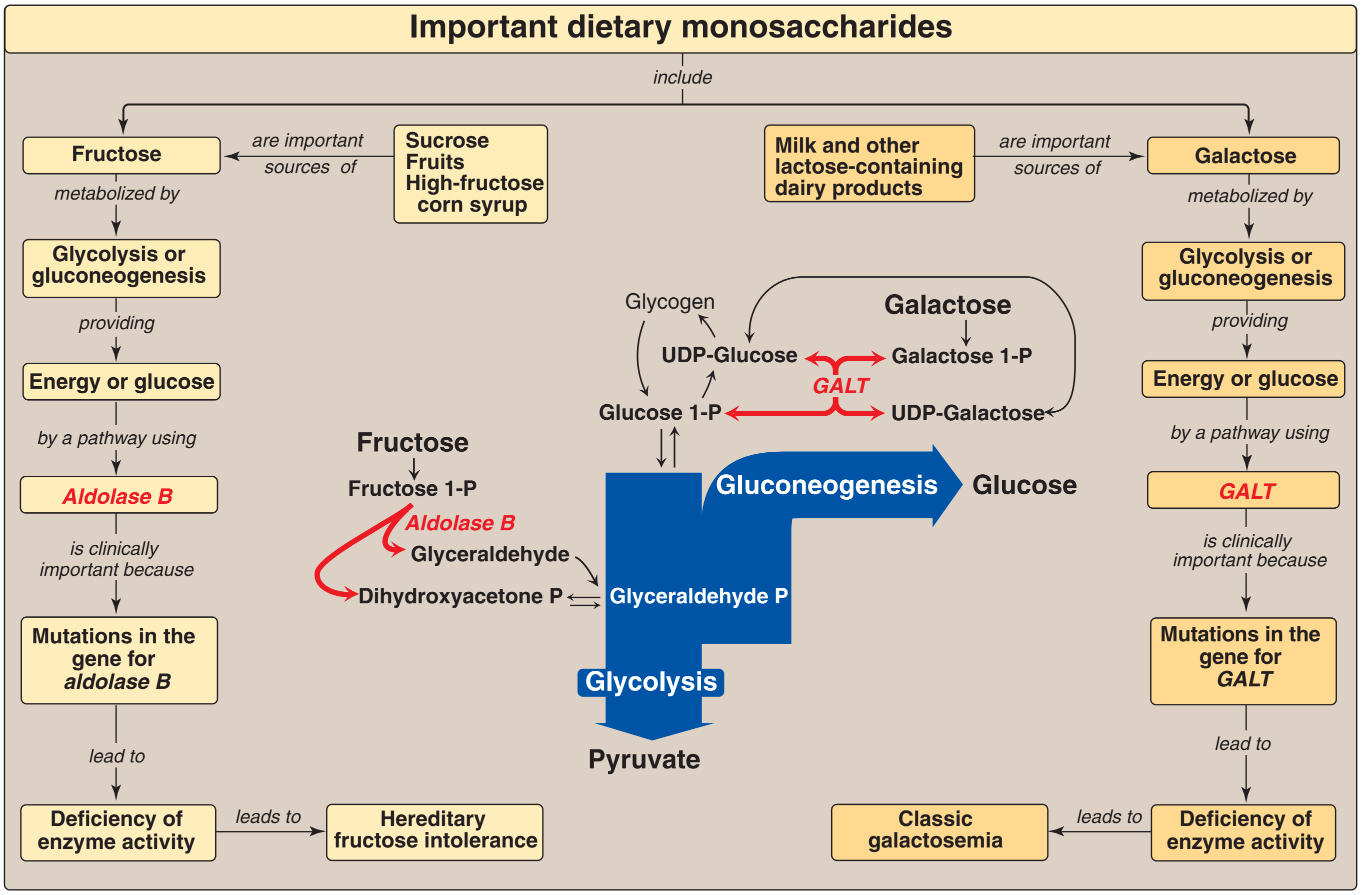

Important dietary monosaccharides
include
Fructose
are important sources of
Sucrose
Fruits
High-fructose corn syrup
Milk and other lactose-containing dairy products
are important sources of
Galactose
metabolized by
Glycolysis or gluconeogenesis
providing
Energy or glucose
by a pathway using
Aldolase B
is clinically important because
Mutations in the gene for aldolase B
lead to
Deficiency of enzyme activity
leads to
Hereditary fructose intolerance
metabolized by
Glycolysis or gluconeogenesis
providing
Energy or glucose
by a pathway using
GALT
is clinically important because
Mutations in the gene for GALT
lead to
Deficiency of enzyme activity
leads to
Classic galactosemia
Glycogen
Galactose
UDP-Glucose
Galactose 1-P
GALT
Glucose 1-P
UDP-Galactose
Fructose
Fructose 1-P
Aldolase B
Glyceraldehyde
Dihydroxyacetone P
Glyceraldehyde P
Gluconeogenesis
Glucose
Glycolysis
Pyruvate

Figure 12.8
Key concept map for metabolism of fructose and galactose. [Note: *GALT* is *galactose 1-phosphate uridyltransferase*.]

Study Questions

Choose the ONE correct answer

12.1 Following the intravenous injection of lactose into a rat, none of the lactose is metabolized. However, ingestion of lactose leads to rapid metabolism of this disaccharide. The difference in these observations is a result of:

A. the presence of lactase in the serum.
B. the absence of hepatic galactokinase.
C. the absence of maltase in the serum.
D. the presence of lactase in the intestine.

Correct answer = D. Lactase and maltase are intestinal enzymes not found in the serum. Therefore, ingested lactose is degraded, but injected lactose is not. If hepatic galactokinase is absent, the galactose segment of the lactose is not metabolized, but the glucose segment of the lactose can still be metabolized.

12.2 A female with classic galactosemia due to GALT deficiency is able to produce lactose in breast milk because:

A. free (nonphosphorylated) galactose is the acceptor of glucose transferred by lactose synthase in the synthesis of lactose.
B. galactose can be produced from a glucose metabolite by epimerization.
C. hexokinase can efficiently phosphorylate dietary galactose to galactose 1-phosphate.
D. the enzyme deficient in galactosemia is activated by a hormone produced in the mammary gland.
E. galactose can be produced from fructose by isomerization.

Correct answer = B. UDP-hexose 4-epimerase converts UDP-glucose to UDP-galactose, thus providing the appropriate form of galactose for lactose synthesis. UDP-galactose, not free galactose, is the source of the galactose portion of lactose. Galactose is not converted to galactose 1-phosphate by hexokinase. Galactosemia is the result of a deficiency in GALT. Isomerization of fructose to galactose does not occur in the human body.

12.3 A 5-month-old boy is brought to his physician because of vomiting, night sweats, and tremors. History revealed that these symptoms began after fruit juices were introduced to his diet as he was being weaned off breast milk. The physical examination was remarkable for hepatomegaly. Tests on the baby's urine were positive for reducing sugar but negative for glucose. The infant most likely suffers from:

A. aldolase B deficiency.
B. fructokinase deficiency.
C. galactokinase deficiency.
D. β-galactosidase deficiency.
E. glucose 6-phosphatase deficiency.

Correct answer = A. The symptoms suggest fructose intolerance, a deficiency in aldolase B. Deficiencies in fructokinase or galactokinase result in relatively benign conditions characterized by elevated levels of fructose or galactose in the blood and urine. Deficiency in β–galactosidase (lactase) results in a decreased ability to degrade lactose (milk sugar). Congenital lactase deficiency is quite rare and would have presented much earlier in this baby, and with different symptoms. Typical lactase deficiency (adult hypolactasia) presents at a later age. The symptoms of glucose 6-phosphatase deficiency would result from fasting, and would not be related to ingestion of fruit juice.

12.4 Lactose synthesis is essential in the production of milk by mammary glands. In lactose synthesis:

A. galactose from galactose 1-P is transferred to glucose by galactosyltransferase (protein A), generating lactose.
B. protein A is used exclusively in the synthesis of lactose.
C. α-lactalbumin (protein B) regulates the sugar specificity of protein A by increasing its K_m for glucose.
D. protein B expression is stimulated by prolactin.

Correct answer = D. The expression of α-lactalbumin (protein B) is increased by the hormone, prolactin. UDP-galactose is the form used by the galactosyltransferase (protein A). Protein A is also involved in the synthesis of the amino sugar, N-acetyllactosamine. Protein B increases the affinity of protein A for glucose, and so decreases the K_m.

Pentose Phosphate Pathway and NADPH

13

I. OVERVIEW

The pentose phosphate pathway (also called the hexose monophosphate pathway, or 6-phosphogluconate pathway) occurs in the cytosol of the cell. It includes two, irreversible oxidative reactions, followed by a series of reversible sugar–phosphate interconversions (Figure 13.1). No ATP is directly consumed or produced in the cycle. Carbon 1 of glucose 6-phosphate is released as CO_2, and two NADPH are produced for each glucose 6-phosphate molecule entering the oxidative part of the pathway. The rate and direction of the reversible reactions of the pentose phosphate pathway are determined by the supply of and demand for intermediates of the cycle. The pathway provides a major portion of the body's NADPH, which functions as a biochemical reductant. It also produces ribose 5-phosphate, required for the biosynthesis of nucleotides (see p. 293), and provides a mechanism for the metabolic use of five-carbon sugars obtained from the diet or the degradation of structural carbohydrates in the body.

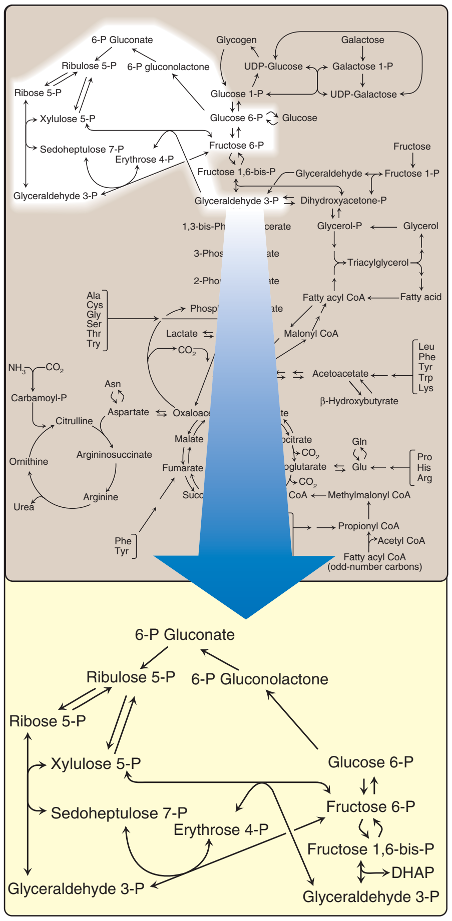


Figure 13.1
Hexose monophosphate pathway shown as a component of the metabolic map (see Figure 8.2, p. 92 for a more detailed view of the metabolic pathway).

II. IRREVERSIBLE OXIDATIVE REACTIONS

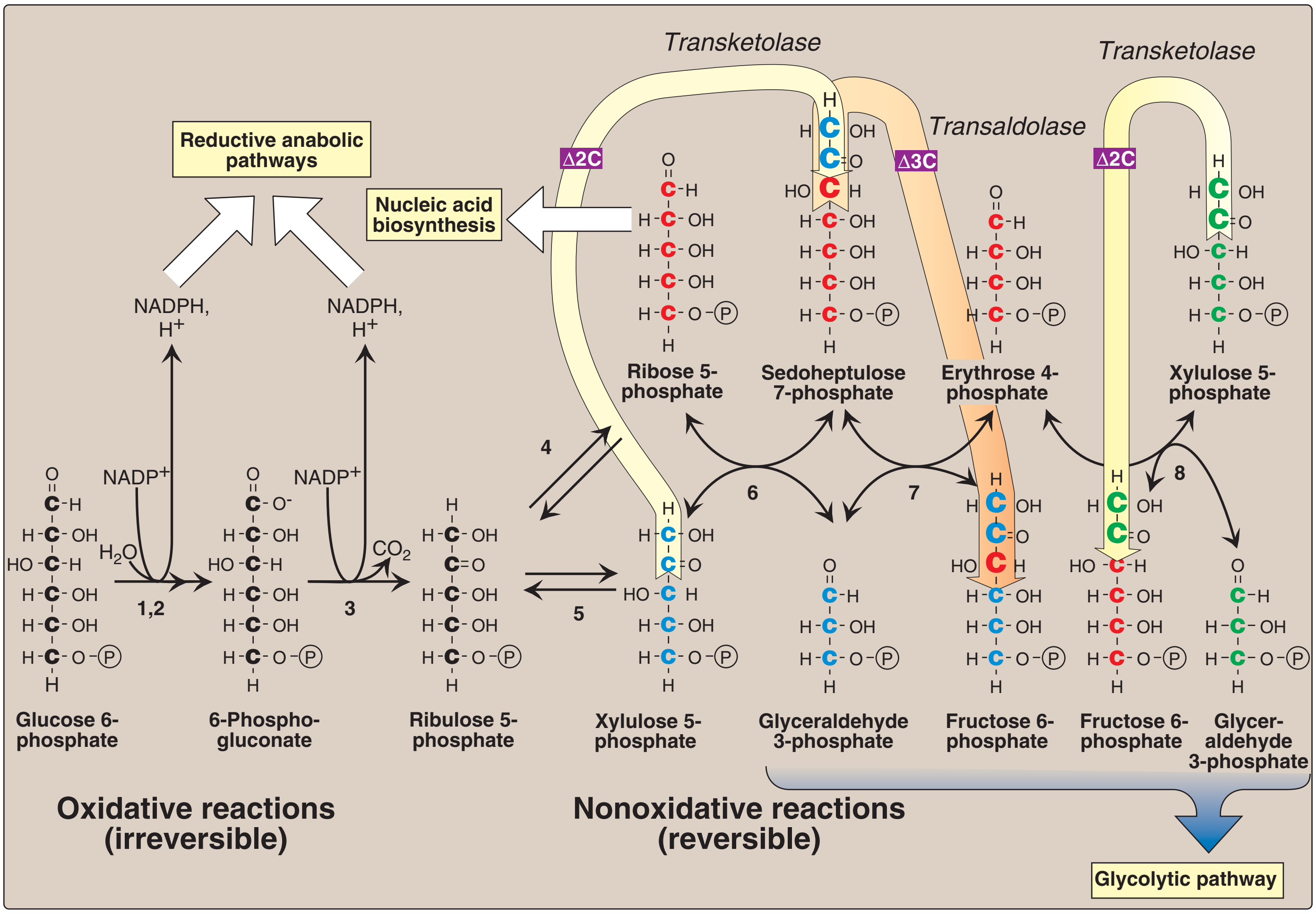
The oxidative portion of the pentose phosphate pathway consists of three reactions that lead to the formation of ribulose 5-phosphate, CO_2, and two molecules of NADPH for each molecule of glucose 6-phosphate oxidized (Figure 13.2). This portion of the pathway is particularly important in the liver, lactating mammary glands, and adipose, which are active in the NADPH-dependent biosynthesis of fatty acids (see p. 186), in the testes, ovaries, placenta and adrenal cortex, which are active in the NADPH-dependent biosynthesis of steroid hormones (see p. 237), and in erythrocytes, which require NADPH to keep glutathione reduced (see p. 152).

A. Dehydrogenation of glucose 6-phosphate

Glucose 6-phosphate dehydrogenase (*G6PD*) catalyzes an irreversible oxidation of glucose 6-phosphate to 6-phosphogluconolactone in a reaction that is specific for $NADP^+$ as its coenzyme. The pentose phosphate pathway is regulated primarily at the *G6PD* reaction. NADPH is a potent competitive inhibitor of the enzyme, and, under most metabolic conditions, the ratio of NADPH/NADP$^+$ is sufficiently high to substantially inhibit enzyme activity. However, with increased demand for NADPH, the ratio of NADPH/NADP$^+$ decreases and flux through the cycle increases in response to the enhanced activity of *G6PD*. Insulin upregulates expression of the gene for *G6PD*, and flux through the pathway increases in the well-fed state.

B. Formation of ribulose 5-phosphate

6-Phosphogluconolactone is hydrolyzed by *6-phosphogluconolactone hydrolase.* The reaction is irreversible and not rate-limiting. The oxidative decarboxylation of the product, 6-phosphogluconate is catalyzed by *6-phosphogluconate dehydrogenase.* This irreversible reaction produces a pentose sugar–phosphate (ribulose 5-phosphate), CO_2 (from carbon 1 of glucose), and a second molecule of NADPH (see Figure 13.2).



Transketolase
Transketolase
Transaldolase
Δ2C
Δ3C
Δ2C
Reductive anabolic pathways
Nucleic acid biosynthesis
NADPH, H+
NADPH, H+
NADP+
NADP+
H2O
CO2
1,2
3
4
5
6
7
8
Glucose 6-phosphate
6-Phosphogluconate
Ribulose 5-phosphate
Ribose 5-phosphate
Sedoheptulose 7-phosphate
Erythrose 4-phosphate
Xylulose 5-phosphate
Xylulose 5-phosphate
Glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate
Fructose 6-phosphate
Fructose 6-phosphate
Glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate
Oxidative reactions (irreversible)
Nonoxidative reactions (reversible)
Glycolytic pathway

Figure 13.2
Reactions of the hexose monophosphate pathway. Enzymes numbered above are: 1,2) *glucose 6-phosphate dehydrogenase* and *6-phosphogluconolactone hydrolase*, 3) *6-phosphogluconate dehydrogenase*, 4) *ribose 5-phosphate isomerase*, 5) *phosphopentose epimerase*, 6) and 8) *transketolase* (coenzyme: thiamine pyrophosphate), and 7) *transaldolase*. Δ2C = two carbons are transferred in *transketolase* reactions; Δ3C = three carbons are transferred in the *transaldolase* reaction.

III. REVERSIBLE NONOXIDATIVE REACTIONS

The nonoxidative reactions of the pentose phosphate pathway occur in all cell types synthesizing nucleotides and nucleic acids. These reactions catalyze the interconversion of sugars containing three to seven carbons (see Figure 13.2). These reversible reactions permit ribulose 5-phosphate (produced by the oxidative portion of the pathway) to be converted either to ribose 5-phosphate (needed for nucleotide synthesis, see p. 293) or to intermediates of glycolysis—fructose 6-phosphate and glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate. For example, many cells that carry out reductive biosynthetic reactions have a greater need for NADPH than for ribose 5-phosphate. In this case, *transketolase* (which transfers two-carbon units in a thiamine pyrophosphate (TPP)-requiring reaction) and *transaldolase* (which transfers three-carbon units) convert the ribulose 5-phosphate produced as an endproduct of the oxidative reactions to glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate and fructose 6-phosphate, which are intermediates of glycolysis. In contrast, under conditions in which the demand for ribose for incorporation into nucleotides and nucleic acids is greater than the need for NADPH, the nonoxidative reactions can provide the biosynthesis of ribose 5-phosphate from glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate and fructose 6-phosphate in the absence of the oxidative steps (Figure 13.3).

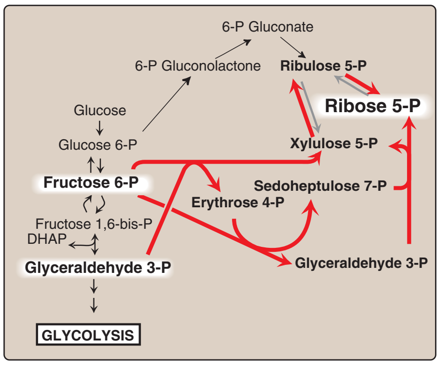


Figure 13.3
Formation of ribose 5-phosphate from intermediates of glycolysis.

In addition to *transketolases*, thiamine pyrophosphate is required by the enzyme complexes *pyruvate dehydrogenase*, *α-ketoglutarate dehydrogenase* of the TCA cycle, and *branched-chain α-keto acid dehydrogenase* of branched-chain amino acid metabolism (see p. 266).

IV. USES OF NADPH

The coenzyme $NADP^+$ differs from NAD^+ only by the presence of a phosphate group on one of the ribose units (Figure 13.4). This seemingly small change in structure allows $NADP^+$ to interact with $NADP^+$-specific enzymes that have unique roles in the cell. For example, in the cytosol of hepatocytes the steady-state ratio of $NADP^+$/NADPH is approximately 0.1, which favors the use of NADPH in reductive biosynthetic reactions. This contrasts with the high ratio of NAD^+/NADH (approximately 1000), which favors an oxidative role for NAD^+. This section summarizes some important $NADP^+$ or NADPH-specific functions.

A. Reductive biosynthesis

NADPH can be thought of as a high-energy molecule, much in the same way as NADH. However, the electrons of NADPH are destined for use in reductive biosynthesis, rather than for transfer to oxygen as is the case with NADH (see p. 75). Thus, in the metabolic transformations of the pentose phosphate pathway, part of the energy of glucose 6-phosphate is conserved in NADPH—a molecule with a negative reduction potential (see p. 77) that, therefore, can be used in reactions requiring an electron donor.

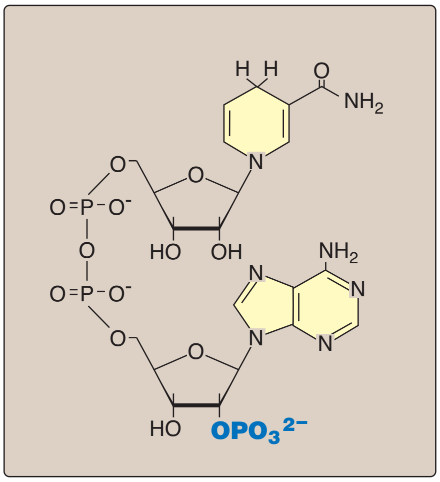


Figure 13.4
Structure of NADPH.

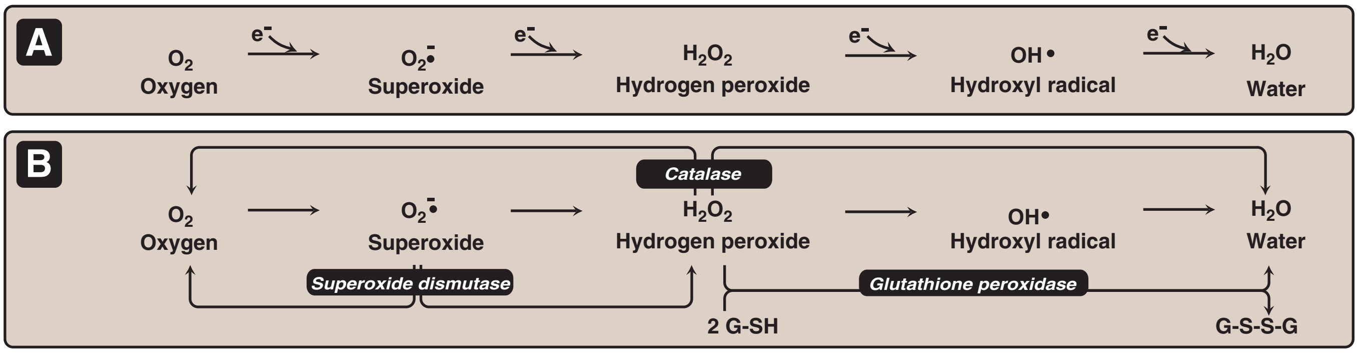

A
O_2
Oxygen
e^-
$O_2^{\bullet -}$
Superoxide
e^-
H_2O_2
Hydrogen peroxide
e^-
OH•
Hydroxyl radical
e^-
H_2O
Water
B
Catalase
O_2
Oxygen
$O_2^{\bullet -}$
Superoxide
H_2O_2
Hydrogen peroxide
OH•
Hydroxyl radical
H_2O
Water
Superoxide dismutase
Glutathione peroxidase
2 G-SH
G-S-S-G

Figure 13.5

A. Formation of reactive intermediates from molecular oxygen. B. Actions of antioxidant enzymes. G-SH = reduced glutathione; G-S-S-G = oxidized glutathione.

B. Reduction of hydrogen peroxide

Hydrogen peroxide is one of a family of reactive oxygen species (ROS) that are formed from the partial reduction of molecular oxygen (Figure 13.5A). These compounds are formed continuously as by-products of aerobic metabolism, through reactions with drugs and environmental toxins, or when the level of antioxidants is diminished, all creating the condition of oxidative stress. The highly reactive oxygen intermediates can cause serious chemical damage to DNA, proteins, and unsaturated lipids, and can lead to cell death. These ROS have been implicated in a number of pathologic processes, including reperfusion injury, cancer, inflammatory disease, and aging. The cell has several protective mechanisms that minimize the toxic potential of these compounds.

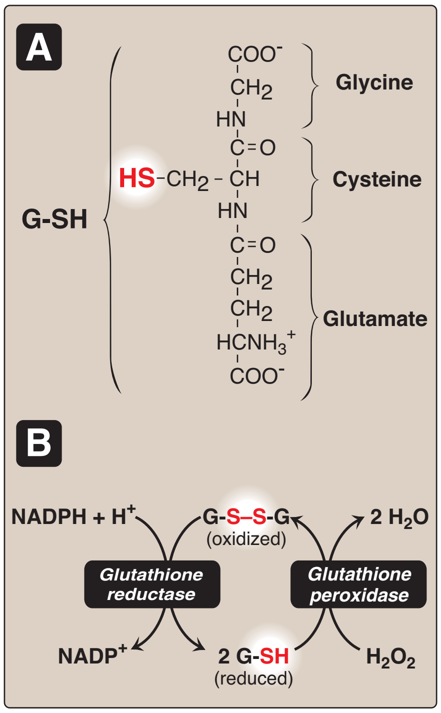

A
COO^-
CH_2
HN
C=O
HS
$-CH_2-CH$
HN
C=O
CH_2
CH_2
$HCNH_3^+$
COO^-
Glycine
Cysteine
Glutamate
G-SH
B
NADPH + H^+
G-S–S-G
(oxidized)
2 H_2O
Glutathione reductase
Glutathione peroxidase
$NADP^+$
2 G-SH
(reduced)
H_2O_2

Figure 13.6

A. Structure of glutathione (G-SH). [Note: Glutamate is linked to cysteine through a γ-carboxyl, rather than an α-carboxyl.] B. Glutathione-mediated reduction of hydrogen peroxide by NADPH.

1. **Enzymes that catalyze antioxidant reactions:** Reduced glutathione, a tripeptide-thiol (γ-glutamylcysteinylglycine) present in most cells, can chemically detoxify hydrogen peroxide (Figure 13.5B). This reaction, catalyzed by the selenium-requiring *glutathione peroxidase*, forms oxidized glutathione, which no longer has protective properties. The cell regenerates reduced glutathione in a reaction catalyzed by *glutathione reductase,* using NADPH as a source of reducing equivalents. Thus, NADPH indirectly provides electrons for the reduction of hydrogen peroxide (Figure 13.6). [Note: Erythrocytes are totally dependent on the pentose phosphate pathway for their supply of NADPH because, unlike other cell types, erythrocytes do not have an alternate source for this essential coenzyme.] Additional enzymes, such as *superoxide dismutase* and *catalase*, catalyze the conversion of other toxic oxygen intermediates to harmless products (see Figure 13.5B). As a group, these enzymes serve as a defense system to guard against the toxic effects of reactive oxygen species.

2. **Antioxidant chemicals:** A number of intracellular reducing agents, such as ascorbate (see p. 377), vitamin E (see p. 391), and β-carotene (see p. 382), are able to reduce and, thus, detoxify oxygen intermediates in the laboratory. Consumption of foods rich in these antioxidant compounds has been correlated with a

reduced risk for certain types of cancers, as well as decreased frequency of certain other chronic health problems. Thus, it is tempting to speculate that the effects of these compounds are, in part, an expression of their ability to quench the toxic effect of oxygen intermediates. However, clinical trials with antioxidants as dietary supplements have failed to show clear beneficial effects. In the case of dietary supplementation with β-carotene, the rate of lung cancer in smokers increased rather than decreased. Thus, the health-promoting effects of dietary fruits and vegetables probably reflects a complex interaction among many naturally occurring compounds, which has not been duplicated by consumption of isolated antioxidant compounds.

C. Cytochrome P450 monooxygenase system

Monooxygenases (*mixed function oxidases*) incorporate one atom from molecular oxygen into a substrate (creating a hydroxyl group), with the other atom being reduced to water. In the *cytochrome P450 monooxygenase* system, NADPH provides the reducing equivalents required by this series of reactions (Figure 13.7). This system performs different functions in two separate locations in cells. The overall reaction catalyzed by a cytochrome P450 enzyme is:

$$\text{R-H} + \text{O}_2 + \text{NADPH} + \text{H}^+ \rightarrow \text{R-OH} + \text{H}_2\text{O} + \text{NADP}^+$$

where R may be a steroid, drug, or other chemical. [Note: Cytochrome P450s (CYPs) are actually a superfamily of related, heme-containing *monooxygenase* enzymes that participate in a broad variety of reactions. The name P450 reflects the absorbance at 450 nm by the protein.]

1. **Mitochondrial system:** The function of the mitochondrial *cytochrome P450 monooxygenase* system found associated with the inner mitochondrial membrane is the biosynthesis of steroid hormones. In steroidogenic tissues, such as the placenta, ovaries, testes, and adrenal cortex, it is used to hydroxylate intermediates in the conversion of cholesterol to steroid hormones, a process that makes these hydrophobic compounds more water-soluble (see p. 237). The liver uses this same system in bile acid synthesis (see p. 224) and in the hydroxylation of cholecalciferol to 25-hydroxycholecalciferol (vitamin D_3, see p. 386), and the kidney uses it to hydroxylate vitamin D_3 to its biologically active 1,25-dihydroxylated form.

2. **Microsomal system:** An extremely important function of the microsomal *cytochrome P450 monooxygenase* system found associated with the membranes of the smooth endoplasmic reticulum (particularly in the liver) is the detoxification of foreign compounds (xenobiotics). These include numerous drugs and such varied pollutants as petroleum products and pesticides. The microsomal system can be used to hydroxylate these toxins, again using NADPH as the source of reducing equivalents. The purpose of these modifications is two-fold. First, it may itself activate or inactivate a drug or second, make a toxic compound more soluble, thus facilitating its excretion in the urine or feces. Frequently, however,

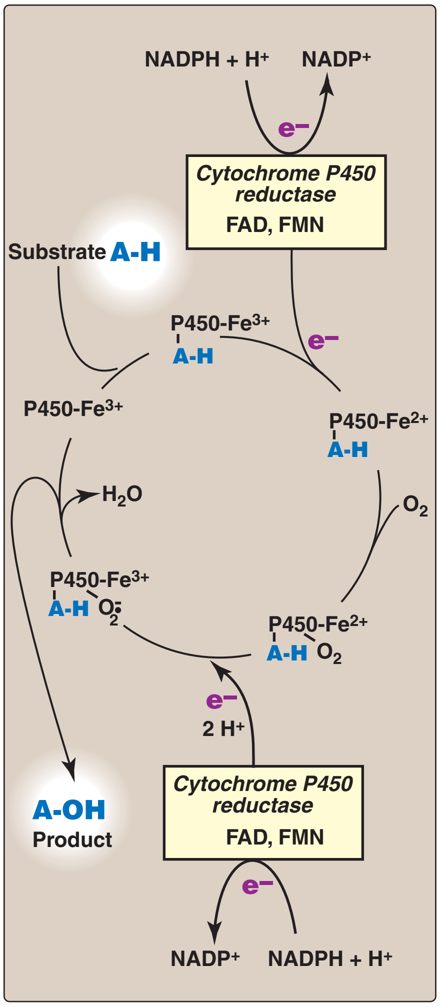


Figure 13.7
Cytochrome P450 monooxygenase cycle. Electrons move from NADPH to FAD to FMN and then to the heme iron.

the new hydroxyl group will serve as a site for conjugation with a polar molecule, such as glucuronic acid (see p. 161), which will significantly increase the compound's solubility.

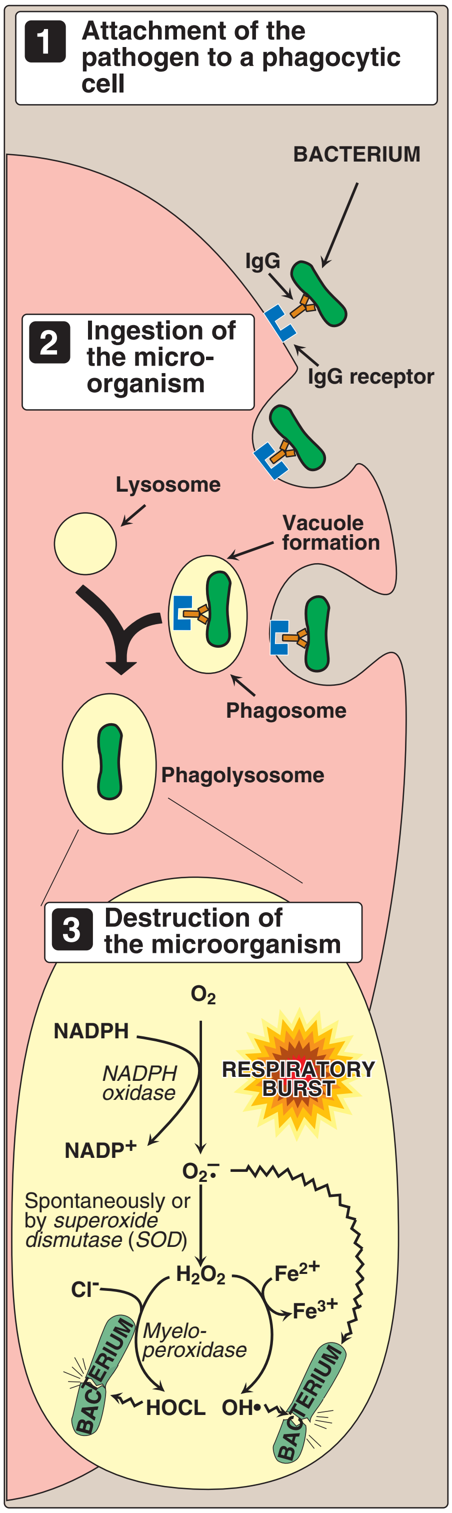

1 Attachment of the pathogen to a phagocytic cell
BACTERIUM
IgG
IgG receptor
2 Ingestion of the micro-organism
Lysosome
Vacuole formation
Phagosome
Phagolysosome
3 Destruction of the microorganism
O_2
NADPH
NADPH oxidase
NADP+
RESPIRATORY BURST
$O_2^{\bar{\bullet}}$
Spontaneously or by superoxide dismutase (SOD)
H_2O_2
Cl^-
Fe^{2+}
Fe^{3+}
Myelo-peroxidase
HOCL
OH•
BACTERIUM
BACTERIUM

Figure 13.8
Phagocytosis and the oxygen-dependent pathway of microbial killing. IgG = the antibody immunoglobulin G.

D. Phagocytosis by white blood cells

Phagocytosis is the ingestion by receptor-mediated endocytosis of microorganisms, foreign particles, and cellular debris by cells such as neutrophils and macrophages (monocytes). It is an important body defense mechanism, particularly in bacterial infections. Neutrophils and monocytes are armed with both oxygen-independent and oxygen-dependent mechanisms for killing bacteria.

1. **Oxygen-independent mechanism:** Oxygen-independent mechanisms use pH changes in phagolysosomes and lysosomal enzymes to destroy pathogens.

2. **Oxygen-dependent system:** Oxygen-dependent mechanisms include the enzymes, *NADPH oxidase* and *myeloperoxidase* (*MPO*) that work together in killing bacteria (Figure 13.8). Overall, the *MPO* system is the most potent of the bactericidal mechanisms. An invading bacterium is recognized by the immune system and attacked by antibodies that bind it to a receptor on a phagocytic cell. After internalization of the microorganism has occurred, *NADPH oxidase*, located in the leukocyte cell membrane, is activated and reduces molecular oxygen from the surrounding tissue into superoxide ($O_2^{\bar{\bullet}}$), a free radical. The rapid consumption of molecular oxygen that accompanies formation of superoxide is referred to as the respiratory burst. [Note: Active *NADPH oxidase* is a membrane-associated complex containing a flavocytochrome plus additional peptides that translocate from the cytoplasm upon activation of the leukocyte. Electrons move from NADPH to O_2, via FAD and heme, generating $O_2^{\bar{\bullet}}$. Genetic deficiencies in *NADPH oxidase* cause chronic granulomatous disease (CGD) characterized by severe, persistent infections. and the formation of granulomas (nodular areas of inflammation) that sequester the bacteria that were not destroyed.] Next, superoxide is converted to hydrogen peroxide (a ROS), either spontaneously or catalyzed by *superoxide dismutase* (*SOD*). In the presence of *MPO*, a heme-containing lysosomal enzyme present within the phagolysosome, peroxide plus chloride ions are converted to hypochlorous acid (HOCl, the major component of household bleach), which kills the bacteria. The peroxide can also be partially reduced to the hydroxyl radical (OH•), a ROS, or be fully reduced to water by *catalase* or *glutathione peroxidase*. [Note: Deficiencies in *MPO* do not confer increased susceptibility to infection because peroxide from *NADPH oxidase* is bactericidal.]

E. Synthesis of nitric oxide

Nitric oxide (NO) is recognized as a mediator in a broad array of biologic systems. NO is the endothelium-derived relaxing factor, which causes vasodilation by relaxing vascular smooth muscle. NO also acts as a neurotransmitter, prevents platelet aggregation, and plays an essential role in macrophage function. [Note: NO is a free radical gas that is often confused with nitrous oxide (N_2O), the “laughing gas” that is used as an anesthetic and is chemically stable.] NO has a very short half-life in tissues (3–10 seconds) because it reacts with oxygen and superoxide, and then is converted into nitrates and nitrites including peroxynitrite ($O{=}NOO^-$), a reactive nitrogen species (RNS).

1. **Synthesis of NO:** Arginine, O_2, and NADPH are substrates for cytosolic *NO synthase* (Figure 13.9). Flavin mononucleotide (FMN), flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD), heme, and tetrahydrobiopterin (see p. 268) are coenzymes for the enzyme, and NO and citrulline are products of the reaction. Three *NO synthases* have been identified. Two are constitutive (synthesized at a constant rate regardless of physiologic demand), Ca^{2+}-calmodulin-dependent enzymes. They are found primarily in endothelium (*eNOS*), and neural tissue (*nNOS*), and constantly produce low levels of NO. An inducible, Ca^{2+}-independent enzyme (*iNOS*) can be expressed in many cells, including hepatocytes, macrophages, monocytes, and neutrophils. The specific inducers for *iNOS* vary with cell type, and include tumor necrosis factor-α, bacterial endotoxins, and inflammatory cytokines. These compounds have been shown to promote synthesis of *iNOS*, which can result in large amounts of NO being produced over hours or even days.

2. **Actions of NO on vascular endothelium:** NO is an important mediator in the control of vascular smooth muscle tone. NO is synthesized by *eNOS* in endothelial cells, and diffuses to vascular smooth muscle, where it activates the cytosolic form of *guanylate cyclase* (also known as *guanylyl cyclase*) to form cGMP. [Note: This reaction is analogous to the formation of cAMP by *adenylate cyclase* (see p. 94), except that this *guanylate cyclase* is not membrane-associated.] The resultant rise in cGMP causes activation of *protein kinase G*, which phosphorylates Ca^{2+} channels, causing decreased entry of Ca^{2+} into smooth muscle cells. This decreases the calcium-calmodulin activation of *myosin light-chain kinase*, thereby decreasing smooth muscle contraction and favoring relaxation. Vasodilator nitrates, such as nitroglycerin and nitroprusside, are metabolized to nitric oxide, which causes relaxation of vascular smooth muscle and, therefore, lowers blood pressure. Thus, NO can be envisioned as an endogenous nitrovasodilator. [Note: Sildenafil citrate, used in the treatment of erectile dysfunction, inhibits the *phosphodiesterase* that inactivates cGMP.]

3. **Role of NO in mediating macrophage bactericidal activity:** In macrophages, *iNOS* activity is normally low, but synthesis of the enzyme is significantly stimulated by bacterial lipopolysaccharide and γ-interferon release in response to infection. Activated macrophages form superoxide radicals (see p. 150) that combine with NO to form intermediates that decompose, forming the highly bactericidal OH• radical.

4. **Other functions of NO:** NO is a potent inhibitor of platelet aggregation (by activating the cGMP pathway). It is also characterized as a neurotransmitter in the brain.

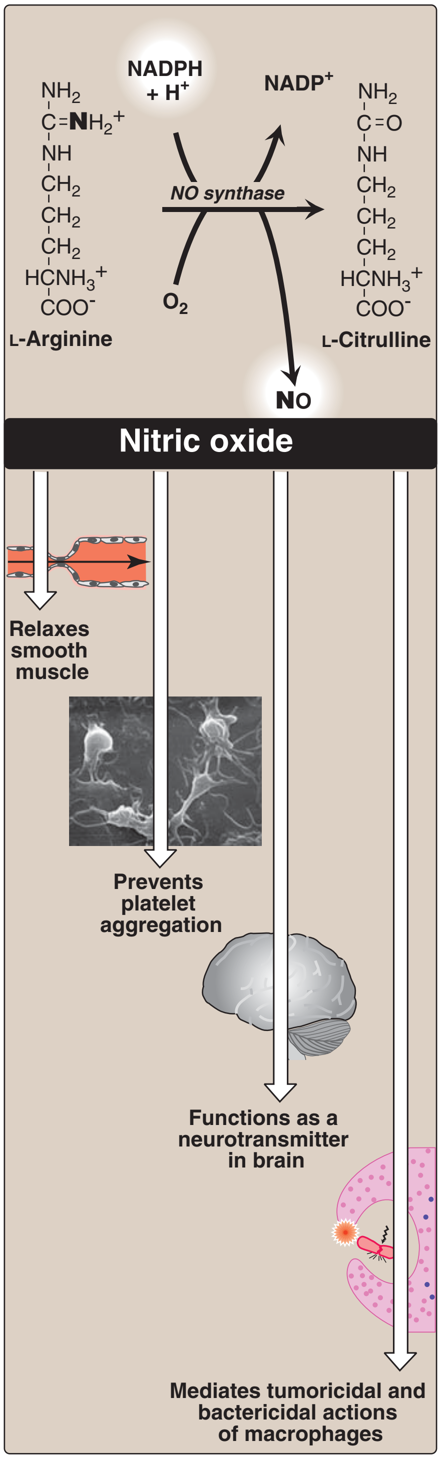


Figure 13.9
Synthesis and some of the actions of nitric oxide. [Note: FMN, FAD, heme, and tetrahydrobiopterin are additional coenzymes required by *NOS*.]

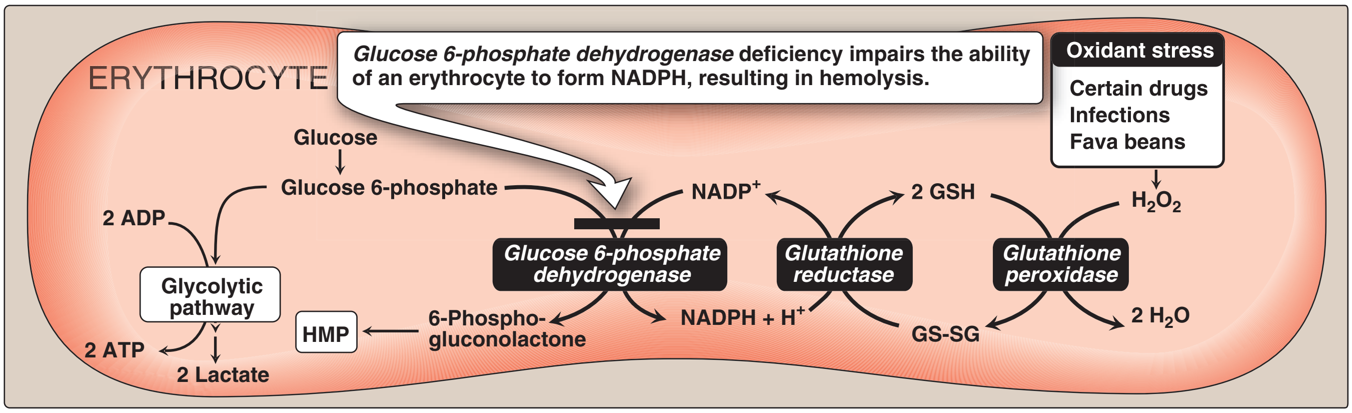

ERYTHROCYTE
Glucose 6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency impairs the ability of an erythrocyte to form NADPH, resulting in hemolysis.
Oxidant stress
Certain drugs
Infections
Fava beans
Glucose
Glucose 6-phosphate
2 ADP
Glycolytic pathway
2 ATP
2 Lactate
HMP
6-Phosphogluconolactone
Glucose 6-phosphate dehydrogenase
NADP$^+$
NADPH + H$^+$
Glutathione reductase
2 GSH
GS-SG
Glutathione peroxidase
H_2O_2
2 H_2O

Figure 13.10
Pathways of glucose 6-phosphate metabolism in the erythrocyte. HMP = hexose monophosphate pathway.

V. GLUCOSE 6-P DEHYDROGENASE DEFICIENCY

Glucose 6-phosphate dehydrogenase (*G6PD*) deficiency is an inherited disease characterized by hemolytic anemia caused by the inability to detoxify oxidizing agents. *G6PD* deficiency is the most common disease-producing enzyme abnormality in humans, affecting more than 400 million individuals worldwide. This deficiency has the highest prevalence in the Middle East, tropical Africa and Asia, and parts of the Mediterranean. *G6PD* deficiency is X-linked, and is, in fact, a family of deficiencies caused by more than 400 different mutations in the gene coding for *G6PD*. Only some of these mutations cause clinical symptoms. [Note: In addition to hemolytic anemia, a clinical manifestation of *G6PD* deficiency is neonatal jaundice appearing 1–4 days after birth. The jaundice, which may be severe, typically results from increased production of unconjugated bilirubin (see p. 285).] The life span of individuals with a severe form of *G6PD* deficiency may be somewhat shortened as a result of complications arising from chronic hemolysis. This negative effect of *G6PD* deficiency has been balanced in evolution by an advantage in survival—an increased resistance to falciparum malaria shown by female carriers of the mutation. [Note: Sickle cell trait and β-thalassemia minor also confer resistance.]

A. Role of G6PD in red blood cells

Diminished *G6PD* activity impairs the ability of the cell to form the NADPH that is essential for the maintenance of the reduced glutathione pool. This results in a decrease in the cellular detoxification of free radicals and peroxides formed within the cell (Figure 13.10). Glutathione also helps maintain the reduced states of sulfhydryl groups in proteins, including hemoglobin. Oxidation of those sulfhydryl groups leads to the formation of denatured proteins that form insoluble masses (called Heinz bodies) that attach to the red cell membranes (Figure 13.11). Additional oxidation of membrane proteins causes the red cells to be rigid (less deformable), and they are removed from the circulation by macrophages in the spleen and liver. Although *G6PD* deficiency occurs in all cells of the affected individual, it is most severe in erythrocytes, where the pen-

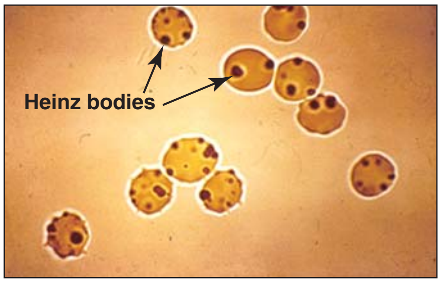

Heinz bodies

Figure 13.11
Heinz bodies in erythrocytes of a patient with *G6PD* deficiency.

tose phosphate pathway provides the only means of generating NADPH. Other tissues have alternative sources for NADPH production (such as *NADP$^+$-dependent malate dehydrogenases*, see Figure 16.11, p. 187) that can keep glutathione reduced. The erythrocyte has no nucleus or ribosomes and cannot renew its supply of the enzyme. Thus, red blood cells are particularly vulnerable to enzyme variants with diminished stability.

B. Precipitating factors in G6PD deficiency

Most individuals who have inherited one of the many *G6PD* mutations do not show clinical manifestations, that is, they are asymptomatic. However, some patients with *G6PD* deficiency develop hemolytic anemia if they are treated with an oxidant drug, ingest fava beans, or contract a severe infection.

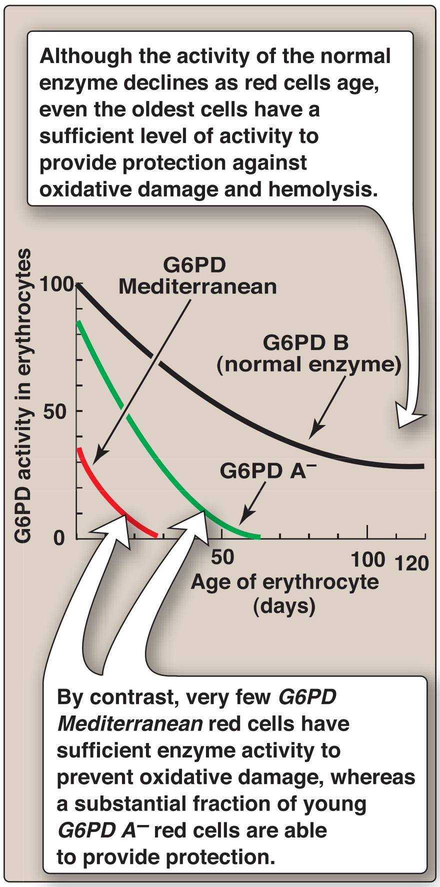
1. **Oxidant drugs:** Commonly used drugs that produce hemolytic anemia in patients with *G6PD* deficiency are best remembered from the mnemonic AAA—Antibiotics (for example, sulfamethoxazole and chloramphenicol), Antimalarials (for example, primaquine but not quinine), and Antipyretics (for example, acetanilid but not acetaminophen).
2. **Favism:** Some forms of *G6PD* deficiency, for example the Mediterranean variant, are particularly susceptible to the hemolytic effect of the fava (broad) bean, a dietary staple in the Mediterranean region. Favism, the hemolytic effect of ingesting fava beans, is not observed in all individuals with *G6PD* deficiency, but all patients with favism have *G6PD* deficiency.
3. **Infection:** Infection is the most common precipitating factor of hemolysis in *G6PD* deficiency. The inflammatory response to infection results in the generation of free radicals in macrophages, which can diffuse into the red blood cells and cause oxidative damage.

C. Properties of the variant enzymes

Almost all *G6PD* variants are caused by point mutations in the gene for *G6PD*. Some mutations do not disrupt the structure of the enzyme's active site and, hence, do not affect enzymic activity. However, many mutant enzymes show altered kinetic properties. For example, variant enzymes may show decreased catalytic activity, decreased stability, or an alteration of binding affinity for NADP$^+$, NADPH, or glucose 6-phosphate. The severity of the disease usually correlates with the amount of residual enzyme activity in the patient's red blood cells. For example, variants can be classified as shown in Figure 13.12. *G6PD* A$^-$ is the prototype of the moderate (Class III) form of the disease. The red cells contain an unstable but kinetically normal *G6PD*, with most of the enzyme activity present in the reticulocytes and younger erythrocytes (Figure 13.13). The oldest cells, therefore, have the lowest level of enzyme activity, and are preferentially removed in a hemolytic episode. *G6PD* Mediterranean is the prototype of a more severe (Class II) deficiency in which the enzyme has decreased stability resulting in decreased enzymic activity. Class I mutations (rare) are the most severe and are associated with chronic nonspherocytic anemia, which occurs even in the absence of oxidative stress.

Class	Clinical symptoms	Residual enzyme activity
I	Very severe (Chronic hemolytic anemia)	<10%
II	Severe (Episodic hemolytic anemia)	<10%
III	Moderate	10–60%
IV	None	>60%

Figure 13.12
Classification of *G6PD* deficiency variants. Note: Class V mutations (not shown in table) result in overproduction of *G6PD*.



Although the activity of the normal enzyme declines as red cells age, even the oldest cells have a sufficient level of activity to provide protection against oxidative damage and hemolysis.

By contrast, very few *G6PD Mediterranean* red cells have sufficient enzyme activity to prevent oxidative damage, whereas a substantial fraction of young *G6PD A$^-$* red cells are able to provide protection.

Figure 13.13
Decline of erythrocyte *G6PD* activity with cell age for the three most commonly encountered forms of the enzyme.

D. Molecular biology of G6PD

The cloning of the gene for *G6PD* and the sequencing of its DNA (see p. 467) have permitted the identification of mutations that cause *G6PD* deficiency. More than 400 different mutations or mutation combinations have been identified in this gene, a finding that explains the numerous biochemical variants that have been described. Most mutations that result in enzymic deficiency are missense mutations (see p. 433) in the coding region. Both *G6PD* A^- and *G6PD* Mediterranean represent mutant enzymes that differ from the respective normal variants by a single amino acid. Large deletions or frameshift mutations have not been identified, suggesting that complete absence of *G6PD* activity is probably lethal.

VI. CHAPTER SUMMARY

The pentose phosphate pathway includes two irreversible oxidative reactions followed by a series of reversible sugar–phosphate interconversions (Figure 13.14). No ATP is directly consumed or produced in the cycle. The NADPH-producing **oxidative portion** of the pentose phosphate pathway is particularly important in liver, mammary glands, and adipose, which are active in the biosynthesis of fatty acids; in the placenta, ovaries, testes, and adrenal cortex, which are active in the synthesis of steroid hormones; in erythrocytes, which require reduced glutathione. **Glucose 6-phosphate** is irreversibly converted to **ribulose 5-phosphate**, and **two NADPH** are produced. The regulated step is **glucose 6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD)**, which is strongly **inhibited by NADPH**. **Reversible nonoxidative reactions** interconvert sugars. This part of the pathway is the **source of ribose 5-phosphate**, required for nucleotide and nucleic acid synthesis. Because the reactions are reversible, they can be entered from fructose 6-phosphate and glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate (glycolytic intermediates) if ribose is needed and glucose 6-phosphate dehydrogenase is inhibited. **NADPH** is a source of reducing equivalents in **reductive biosynthesis**, such as the production of fatty acids and steroids. It is also required for the **reduction of hydrogen peroxide**, providing the reducing equivalents required by **glutathione (GSH)**. GSH is used by **glutathione peroxidase** to reduce peroxide to water. The oxidized glutathione is reduced by **glutathione reductase**, using NADPH as the source of electrons. NADPH provides reducing equivalents for the mitochondrial **cytochrome P450 monooxygenase system**, which is used in steroid hormone synthesis in steroidogenic tissue, **bile acid synthesis** in liver, and **vitamin D activation in liver and kidney**. The microsomal system uses NADPH to **detoxify** foreign compounds (xenobiotics), such as drugs and a variety of pollutants. NADPH provides the reducing equivalents for phagocytes in the process of eliminating invading microorganisms. **NADPH oxidase** uses molecular oxygen and NADPH electrons to produce **superoxide radicals**, which, in turn, can be converted to peroxide by superoxide dismutase. **Myeloperoxidase** catalyzes the formation of bactericidal hypochlorous acid from peroxide and chloride ion. A genetic defect in NADPH oxidase causes **chronic granulomatous** disease characterized by severe, persistent, infections and formation of granulomas. NADPH is required for the synthesis of **nitric oxide** (**NO**), an important molecule that causes **vasodilation** by relaxing vascular smooth muscle, acts as a **neurotransmitter**, prevents **platelet aggregation**, and helps mediate **macrophage bactericidal activity**. **G6PD deficiency** impairs the ability of the cell to form the NADPH that is essential for the maintenance of the reduced glutathione pool. The cells most affected are the **red blood cells** because they do not have additional sources of NADPH. G6PD deficiency is an X-linked **genetic disease** characterized by **hemolytic anemia**. **Free radicals** and **peroxides** formed within the cells cannot be neutralized, causing denaturation of cytosolic protein (for example, hemoglobin, forming Heinz bodies) and membrane proteins. The cells become rigid, and they are removed by the reticuloendothelial system of the spleen and liver. Babies with G6PD deficiency may experience **neonatal jaundice**. Hemolytic anemia can be caused by the production of free radicals and peroxides following the taking of **oxidant drugs**, ingestion of **fava beans**, or severe **infections.** The degree of severity of the anemia depends on the amount of residual enzyme. Class I mutations, the most severe, are associated with **chronic nonspherocytic anemia**. Class II mutations (for example, **G6PD Mediterranean**) are also severe. Class III mutations (such as **G6PD A^-**) cause a more moderate form of the disease.

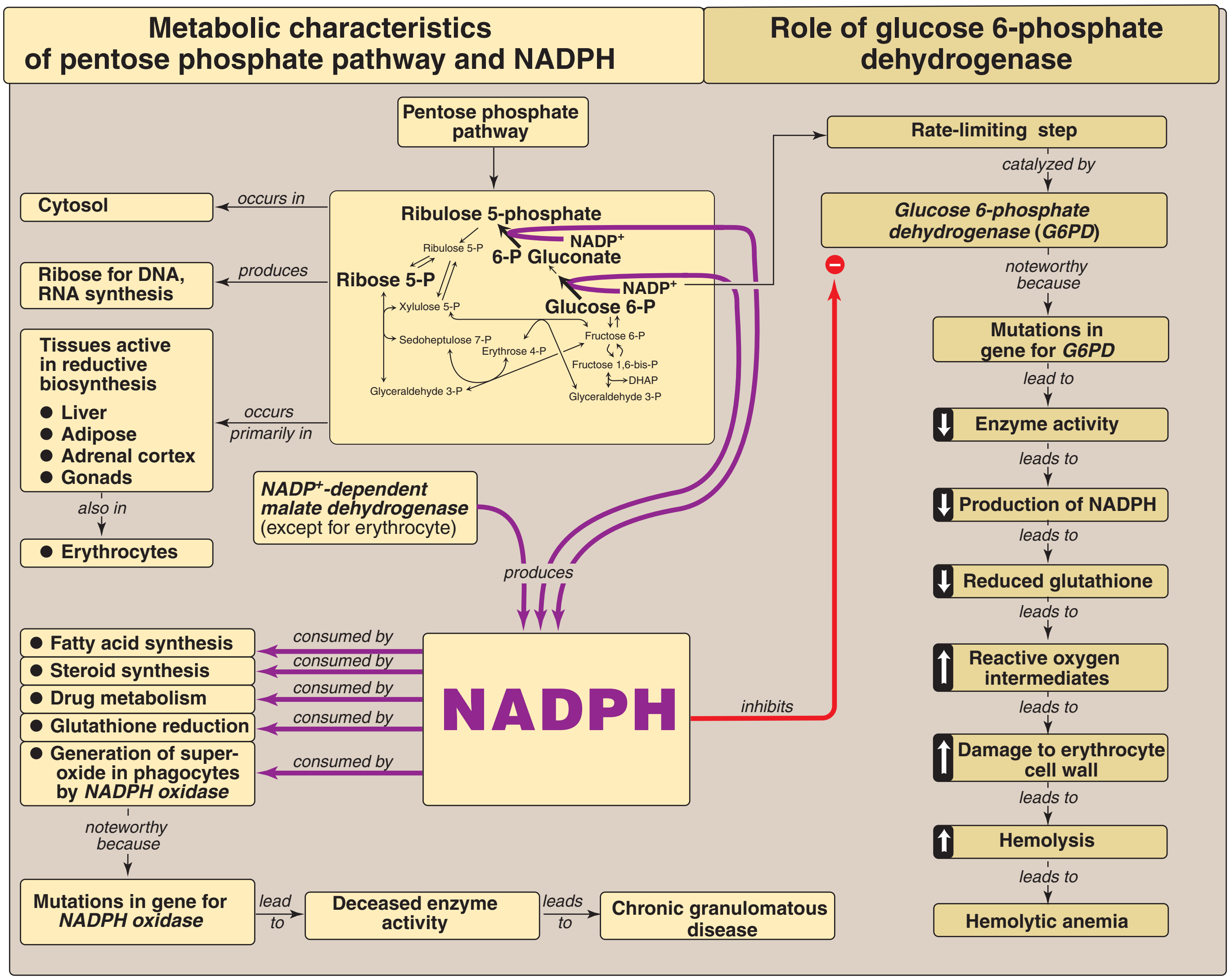

Metabolic characteristics of pentose phosphate pathway and NADPH
Role of glucose 6-phosphate dehydrogenase
Pentose phosphate pathway
Cytosol
occurs in
Ribose for DNA, RNA synthesis
produces
Tissues active in reductive biosynthesis
● Liver
● Adipose
● Adrenal cortex
● Gonads
occurs primarily in
also in
● Erythrocytes
Ribulose 5-phosphate
NADP+
6-P Gluconate
NADP+
Glucose 6-P
Ribose 5-P
Ribulose 5-P
Xylulose 5-P
Sedoheptulose 7-P
Erythrose 4-P
Fructose 6-P
Fructose 1,6-bis-P
DHAP
Glyceraldehyde 3-P
Glyceraldehyde 3-P
NADP+-dependent malate dehydrogenase (except for erythrocyte)
produces
NADPH
● Fatty acid synthesis
● Steroid synthesis
● Drug metabolism
● Glutathione reduction
● Generation of superoxide in phagocytes by NADPH oxidase
consumed by
consumed by
consumed by
consumed by
consumed by
noteworthy because
Mutations in gene for NADPH oxidase
lead to
Deceased enzyme activity
leads to
Chronic granulomatous disease
inhibits
Rate-limiting step
catalyzed by
Glucose 6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD)
noteworthy because
Mutations in gene for G6PD
lead to
Enzyme activity
leads to
Production of NADPH
leads to
Reduced glutathione
leads to
Reactive oxygen intermediates
leads to
Damage to erythrocyte cell wall
leads to
Hemolysis
leads to
Hemolytic anemia

Figure 13.14
Key concept map for the pentose phosphate pathway and NADPH.

Study Questions

Choose the ONE correct answer.

13.1 In preparation for a trip to an area of India where malaria is endemic, a young man is given primaquine prophylactically. Soon thereafter, he develops a hemolytic condition. The most likely cause of the hemolysis is a less-than-normal level of which of the following?

A. Glucose 6-phosphate
B. Oxidized form of NAD
C. Reduced form of glutathione
D. Ribose 5-phosphate
E. Ribulose 5-phosphate

Correct answer = C. Glutathione is essential for red cell integrity and is maintained in its functional (reduced) form by NADPH-dependent glutathione reductase. The NADPH is generated by the oxidative portion of pentose phosphate pathway. Individuals with a deficiency of the initiating and regulated enzyme (G6PD) of this pathway have a decreased ability to generate NADPH, and thus a decreased ability to keep glutathione functional. When treated with an oxidant drug such as primaquine, some patients with G6PD deficiency develop a hemolytic anemia. Primaquine does not affect glucose 6-phosphate levels. NAD$^+$ is neither produced by the pentose phosphate pathway nor used as a coenzyme by glutathione reductase. Ribulose 5-phosphate, another product of the oxidative portion of the pentose phosphate pathway, can be isomerized to ribose 5-phosphate, but a deficiency in either does not cause hemolysis.

13.2 In male patients who are hemizygous for glucose 6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) deficiency, pathophysiologic consequences are more apparent in erythrocytes (RBC) than in other cells, such as in the liver. Which one of the following provides the most reasonable explanation for this different response by these individual tissue types?

A. Excess glucose 6-phosphate in the liver, but not in RBCs, can be channeled to glycogen, thus averting cellular damage.

B. Liver cells, in contrast to RBCs, have alternative mechanisms for supplying the NADPH required for keeping metabolic and cellular integrity.

C. Glucose 6-phosphatase activity in RBCs decreases the level of glucose 6-phosphate, thus resulting in cell damage. This does not happen in the hepatocyte.

D. Because RBCs do not have mitochondria, production of ATP required to keep cell integrity depends exclusively on the routing of glucose 6-phosphate to the pentose phosphate pathway.

E. The catalytic properties of the liver enzyme are significantly different than those of the RBC enzyme.

13.3 A G6PD A^- individual was treated with primaquine from day 0 to day 120 (Figure 13.15). Hemolysis occurred immediately after initiation of drug therapy, as indicated by progressive anemia, hemoglobinuria, and reticulocytosis. However, despite continued administration of the drug, the hemolysis spontaneously decreased and red cell survival improved with time. Red cell G6PD activity measured 2 months after termination of therapy was 10% of normal. Which one of the following statements about this patient is correct?

A. The patient will continue to be resistant to drug-induced hemolysis after 6 months or longer.

B. Erythrocytes in this patient exhibit a longer lifetime than in normal individuals.

C. During the period of peak hemolysis, erythrocytes from the patient will show no G6PD activity.

D. The intracellular concentration of NADPH in the patient's erythrocytes is greater than normal.

E. The patient shows increased bone marrow erythropoiesis.

Correct answer = B. Cellular damage is directly related to decreased ability of the cell to regenerate reduced glutathione, for which large amounts of NADPH are needed, and RBC have no other means of generating NADPH. Catalytic properties of G6PD in liver and RBCs are very similar. The pentose phosphate pathway does not generate ATP. RBCs do not have glucose 6-phosphatase.

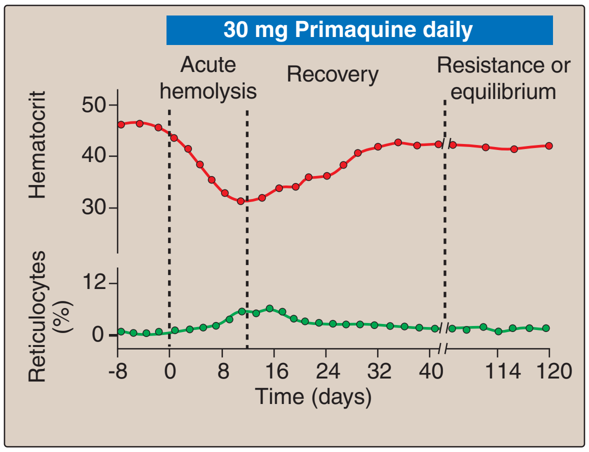


Figure 13.15

The course of primaquine-induced hemolysis in a patient with G6PD deficiency.

Correct answer = E. As red cells age, the activity of G6PD declines (see Figure 13.13). Despite this loss of enzyme activity, normal old red blood cells contain sufficient G6PD activity to generate NADPH and thereby sustain GSH levels in the face of oxidant stress. In contrast, the G6PD variants with hemolysis have much shorter half-lives. The clinical correlate of this age-related enzyme instability is that hemolysis in patients with G6PD A^- generally is mild and limited to the older deficient erythrocytes. The anemia is self-limited because the older, vulnerable population of erythrocytes is replaced by younger RBCs with sufficient G6PD activity to withstand an oxidative assault. Although red cell survival remains shortened as long as use of the drug continues, compensation by the erythroid marrow effectively abolishes the anemia in subjects with G6PD A^-. The individual's continuing sensitivity to the effects of the drug is revealed by discontinuing the drug for several months to allow the rate of red cell production by the bone marrow to normalize; during this phase, the older red cells are able to survive, and the red cell population is rendered sensitive to drug-induced hemolysis.

Glycosaminoglycans, Proteoglycans, and Glycoproteins

14

I. OVERVIEW OF GLYCOSAMINOGLYCANS

Glycosaminoglycans are large complexes of negatively charged heteropolysaccharide chains. They are generally associated with a small amount of protein, forming proteoglycans, which typically consist of over 95% carbohydrate. [Note: This is in comparison to the glycoproteins, which consist primarily of protein with a small amount of carbohydrate (see p. 165).] Glycosaminoglycans have the special ability to bind large amounts of water, thereby producing the gel-like matrix that forms the basis of the body's ground substance, which, along with fibrous structural proteins such as collagen and elastin, and adhesive proteins such as fibronectin, make up the extracellular matrix (ECM). The hydrated glycosaminoglycans serve as a flexible support for the ECM, interacting with the structural and adhesive proteins, and as a molecular sieve, influencing movement of materials through the ECM. The viscous, lubricating properties of mucous secretions also result from the presence of glycosaminoglycans, which led to the original naming of these compounds as mucopolysaccharides.

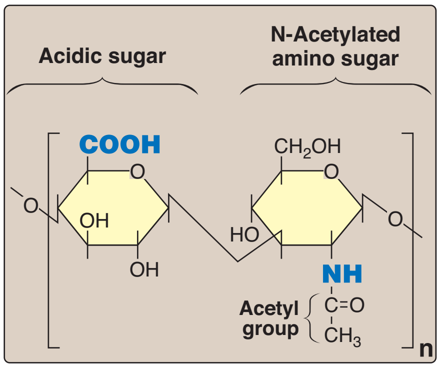


Figure 14.1
Repeating disaccharide unit.

II. STRUCTURE OF GLYCOSAMINOGLYCANS

Glycosaminoglycans (GAGs) are long, unbranched, heteropolysaccharide chains generally composed of a repeating disaccharide unit [acidic sugar–amino sugar]$_n$ (Figure 14.1). The amino sugar is either D-glucosamine or D-galactosamine, in which the amino group is usually acetylated, thus eliminating its positive charge. The amino sugar may also be sulfated on carbon 4 or 6 or on a nonacetylated nitrogen. The acidic sugar is either D-glucuronic acid or its C-5 epimer, L-iduronic acid (Figure 14.2). [Note: A single exception is keratan sulfate, in which galactose rather than an acidic sugar is present.] These acidic sugars contain carboxyl groups that are negatively charged at physiologic pH and, together with the sulfate groups, give GAGs their strongly negative nature.

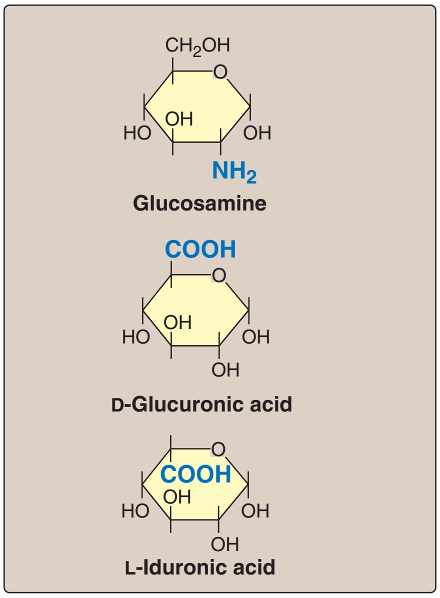


Figure 14.2
Some monosaccharide units found in glycosaminoglycans.

A. Relationship between glycosaminoglycan structure and function

Because of their large number of negative charges, these heteropolysaccharide chains tend to be extended in solution. They repel each other, and are surrounded by a shell of water molecules. When brought together, they "slip" past each other, much as two magnets with the same polarity seem to slip past each other. This produces the "slippery" consistency of mucous secretions and synovial fluid. When a solution of glycosaminoglycans is compressed, the water is "squeezed out" and the glycosaminoglycans are forced to occupy a smaller volume. When the compression is released, the glycosaminoglycans spring back to their original, hydrated volume because of the repulsion of their negative charges. This property contributes to the resilience of synovial fluid and the vitreous humor of the eye (Figure 14.3).

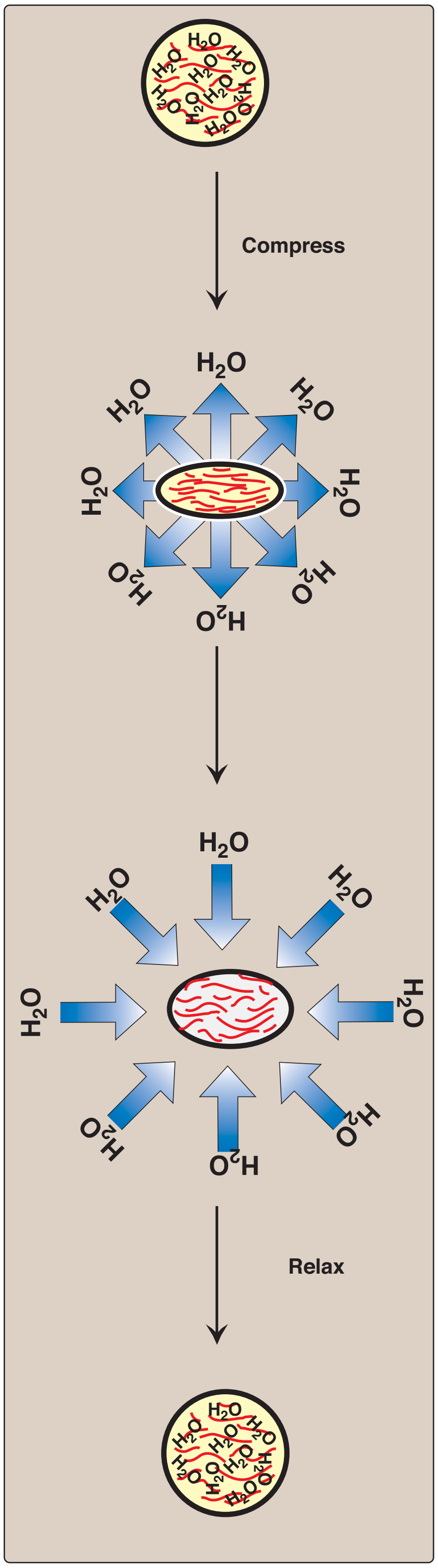


Figure 14.3
Resilience of glycosaminoglycans.

B. Classification of the glycosaminoglycans

The six major classes of glycosaminoglycans are divided according to monomeric composition, type of glycosidic linkages, and degree and location of sulfate units. The structure of the glycosaminoglycans and their distribution in the body is illustrated in Figure 14.4.

C. Structure of proteoglycans

All of the glycosaminoglycans, except hyaluronic acid, are found covalently attached to protein, forming proteoglycan monomers.

1. **Structure of proteoglycan monomers:** A proteoglycan monomer found in cartilage consists of a core protein to which the linear glycosaminoglycan chains are covalently attached. These chains, which may each be composed of more than 100 monosaccharides, extend out from the core protein, and remain separated from each other because of charge repulsion. The resulting structure resembles a "bottle brush" (Figure 14.5). In cartilage proteoglycan, the species of glycosaminoglycans include chondroitin sulfate and keratan sulfate. [Note: Proteoglycans are now grouped into gene families that code for core proteins with common structural features. The aggrecan family (aggrecan, versecan, neurocan, and brevican), abundant in cartilage, is an example.]

2. **Linkage between the carbohydrate chain and the protein:** This linkage is most commonly through a trihexoside (galactose-galactose-xylose) and a serine residue, respectively. An O-glycosidic bond is formed between the xylose and the hydroxyl group of the serine (Figure 14.6).

3. **Proteoglycan aggregates:** The proteoglycan monomers associate with a molecule of hyaluronic acid to form proteoglycan aggregates. The association is not covalent, but occurs primarily through ionic interactions between the core protein and the hyaluronic acid. The association is stabilized by additional small proteins called link proteins (Figure 14.7).

III. SYNTHESIS OF GLYCOSAMINOGLYCANS

The polysaccharide chains are elongated by the sequential addition of alternating acidic and amino sugars donated by their UDP-derivatives. The reactions are catalyzed by a family of specific *glycosyltransferases*. The synthesis of the glycosaminoglycans is analogous to that of glycogen (see p. 126) except that the glycosaminoglycans are produced for export from the cell. Their synthesis occurs, therefore, primarily in the Golgi, rather than in the cytosol.

CHONDROITIN 4- AND 6-SULFATES

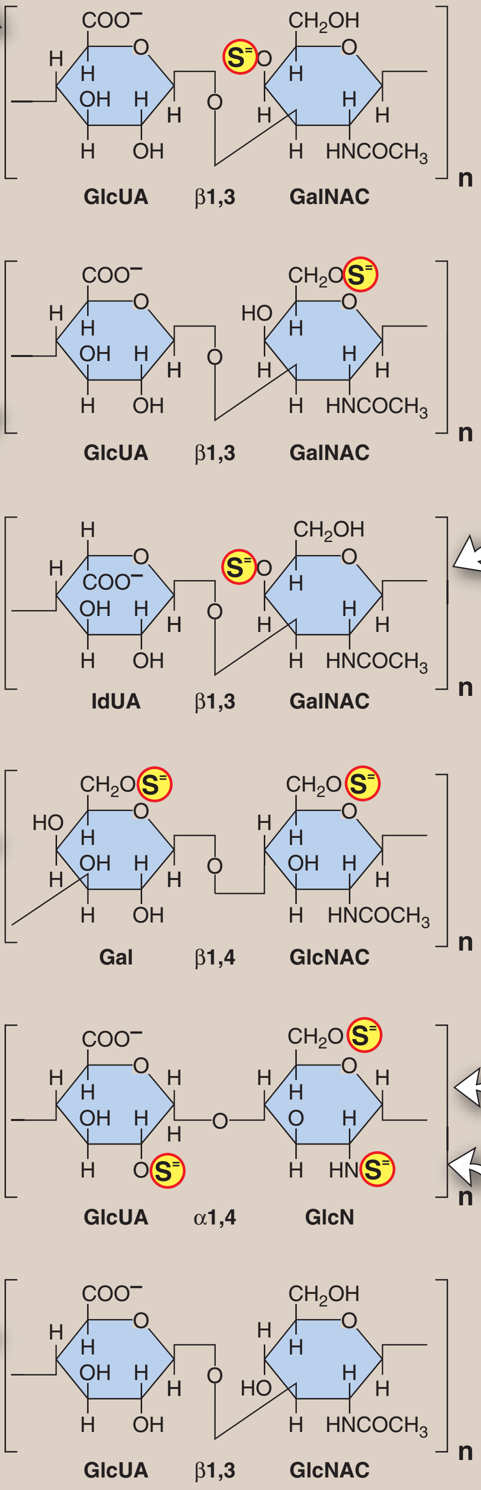
- **Disaccharide unit:** N-acetylgalactosamine with sulfate on either C-4 or C-6, and glucuronic acid.
- **Most abundant GAGs in the body.**
- **Found in cartilage, tendons, ligaments, and aorta.**
- **Form proteoglycan aggregates, often aggregating noncovalently with hyaluronic acid.**
- **In cartilage, they bind collagen and hold fibers in a tight, strong network.**

KERATAN SULFATES I and II

- **Disaccharide unit:** N-acetylglucosamine and galactose (no uronic acid). Sulfate content is variable and may be present on C-6 of either sugar.
- **Most heterogeneous GAGs because they contain additional monosaccharides such as L-fucose, N-acetylneuraminic acid, and mannose.**
- **KS II is found in loose connective tissue proteoglycan aggregates with chondroitin sulfate. KS I is found in cornea.**

HYALURONIC ACID (HYALURONATE)

- **Disaccharide unit:** N-acetylglucosamine and glucuronic acid.
- **Different from other GAGs: Unsulfated, not covalently attached to protein, and only GAG not limited to animal tissue, but also found in bacteria.**
- **Serves as a lubricant and shock absorber.**
- **Found in synovial fluid of joints, vitreous humor of the eye, the umbilical cord, loose connective tissue and cartilage.**



DERMATAN SULFATE

- **Disaccharide unit:** N-acetylgalactosamine and L-iduronic acid (with variable amounts of glucuronic acid).
- **Found in skin, blood vessels, and heart valves.**

HEPARIN

- **Disaccharide unit:** Glucosamine and glucuronic or iduronic acid. Most glucosamine residues are bound in sulfamide linkages. Sulfate is also found on C-3 or C-6 of glucosamine and C-2 of uronic acid (an average of 2.5 Ⓢ per disaccharide unit).
- **α-Linkage joins the sugars.**
- **Unlike other GAGs that are extracellular compounds, heparin is an intracellular component of mast cells that line arteries, especially in liver, lungs, and skin.**
- **Serves as an anticoagulant.**

HEPARAN SULFATE

- **Disaccharide unit:** Same as heparin except some glucosamines are acetylated and there are fewer sulfate groups.
- **Extracellular GAG, found in basement membrane and as a ubiquitous component of cell surfaces.**

Figure 14.4
Structure and distribution of glycosaminoglycans (GAGs). Sulfate groups (Ⓢ) are shown in all possible positions. GlcUA = glucuronic acid; IdUA = iduronic acid; GalNAC = N-acetylgalactosamine; GlcNAC = N-acetylglucosamine; GlcN = glucosamine; Gal = galactose.

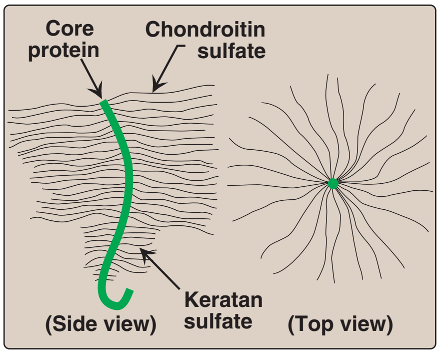

Core protein
Chondroitin sulfate
Keratan sulfate
(Side view)
(Top view)

Figure 14.5
"Bottle-brush" model of a cartilage proteoglycan monomer.

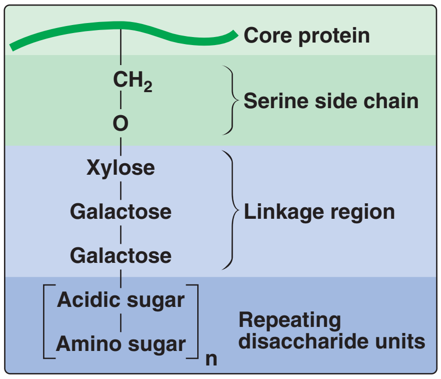

Core protein
CH2
O
Serine side chain
Xylose
Galactose
Galactose
Linkage region
Acidic sugar
Amino sugar
n
Repeating disaccharide units

Figure 14.6
Linkage region of glycosaminoglycans.

A. Synthesis of amino sugars

Amino sugars are essential components of glycosaminoglycans, glycoproteins, glycolipids, and certain oligosaccharides, and are also found in some antibiotics. The synthetic pathway of amino sugars is very active in connective tissues, where as much as 20% of glucose flows through this pathway.

1. **N-Acetylglucosamine (GlcNAc) and N-acetylgalactosamine (GalNAc):** The monosaccharide fructose 6-phosphate is the precursor of GlcNAc, GalNAc, and the sialic acids, including N-acetylneuraminic acid (NANA, a nine-carbon, acidic monosaccharide). In each of these sugars, a hydroxyl group of the precursor is replaced by an amino group donated by glutamine (Figure 14.8). [Note: The amino groups are then almost always acetylated.] The UDP-derivatives of GlcNAc and GalNAc are synthesized by reactions analogous to those described for UDP-glucose synthesis (see p. 126). These nucleotide sugars are the activated forms of the monosaccharides that can be used to elongate the carbohydrate chains.

2. **N-Acetylneuraminic acid:** N-Acetylneuraminic acid (NANA) is a member of the family of sialic acids, each of which is acylated at a different site. These compounds are usually found as terminal carbohydrate residues of oligosaccharide side chains of glycoproteins, glycolipids, or, less frequently, of glycosaminoglycans. The carbons and nitrogens in NANA come from N-acetylmannosamine and phosphoenolpyruvate (an intermediate in the glycolytic pathway, see p. 102). [Note: Before NANA can be added to a growing oligosaccharide, it must be converted into its active form by reacting with cytidine triphosphate (CTP). The enzyme *CMP-NANA synthetase* catalyzes the reaction. This is the only nucleotide sugar in human metabolism in which the carrier nucleotide is a monophosphate.]

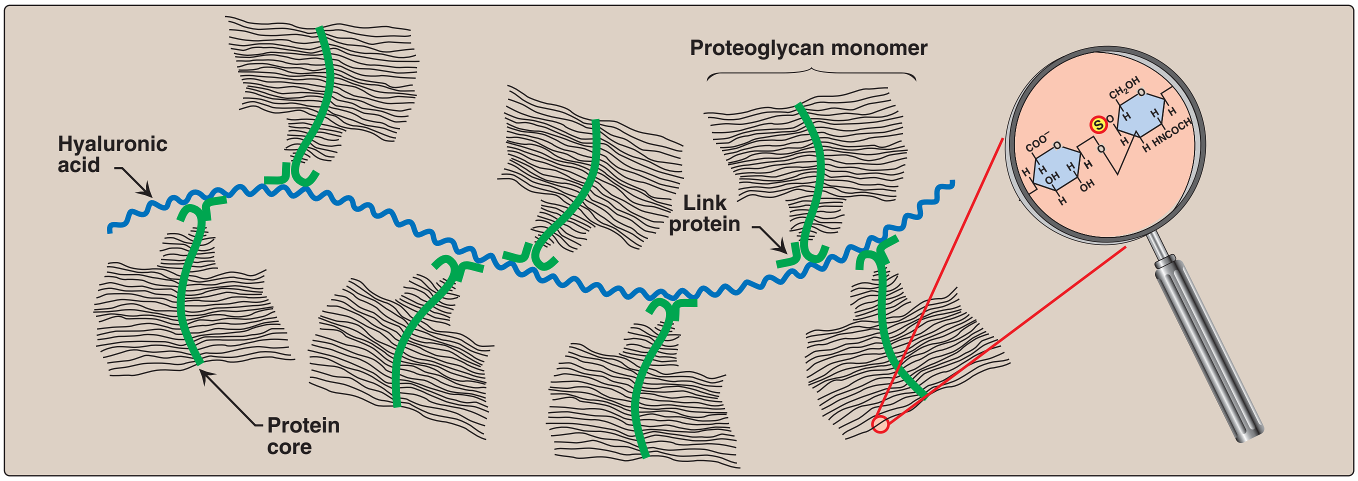

Proteoglycan monomer
Hyaluronic acid
Link protein
Protein core
CH2OH
COO−
S
HNCOCH3
OH
H
O

Figure 14.7
Proteoglycan aggregate.

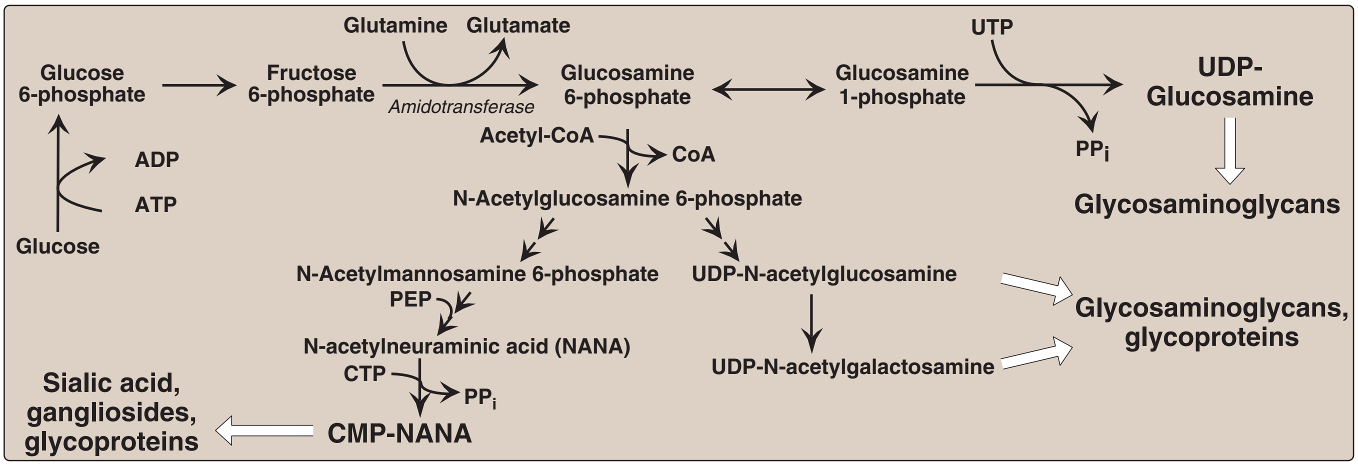

Glucose
6-phosphate
Fructose
6-phosphate
Glutamine
Glutamate
Amidotransferase
Glucosamine
6-phosphate
Glucosamine
1-phosphate
UTP
PP$_i$
UDP-Glucosamine
Glycosaminoglycans
ADP
ATP
Glucose
Acetyl-CoA
CoA
N-Acetylglucosamine 6-phosphate
N-Acetylmannosamine 6-phosphate
PEP
N-acetylneuraminic acid (NANA)
CTP
PP$_i$
CMP-NANA
Sialic acid, gangliosides, glycoproteins
UDP-N-acetylglucosamine
UDP-N-acetylgalactosamine
Glycosaminoglycans, glycoproteins

Figure 14.8
Synthesis of the amino sugars.

B. Synthesis of acidic sugars

D-Glucuronic acid, whose structure is that of glucose with an oxidized carbon 6 ($–CH_2OH \rightarrow –COOH$), and its C-5 epimer, L-iduronic acid, are essential components of glycosaminoglycans. Glucuronic acid is also required in detoxification reactions of a number of insoluble compounds, such as bilirubin (see p. 282), steroids, and several drugs, including morphine. In plants and mammals (other than guinea pigs and primates, including humans), glucuronic acid serves as a precursor of ascorbic acid (vitamin C). The uronic acid pathway also provides a mechanism by which dietary D-xylulose can enter the central metabolic pathways.

1. **Glucuronic acid:** Glucuronic acid can be obtained in small amounts from the diet. It can also be obtained from the intracellular lysosomal degradation of glycosaminoglycans, or via the uronic acid pathway. The endproduct of glucuronic acid metabolism in humans is D-xylulose 5-phosphate, which can enter the hexose monophosphate pathway and produce the glycolytic intermediates glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate and fructose 6-phosphate (Figure 14.9; see also Figure 13.2, p. 146). The active form of glucuronic acid that donates the sugar in glycosaminoglycan synthesis and other glucuronylating reactions is UDP-glucuronic acid, which is produced by oxidation of UDP-glucose (Figure 14.10).

2. **L-Iduronic acid synthesis:** Synthesis of L-iduronic acid residues occurs after D-glucuronic acid has been incorporated into the carbohydrate chain. *Uronosyl 5-epimerase* causes epimerization of the D- to the L-sugar.

C. Synthesis of the core protein

The core protein is synthesized on and enters the rough endoplasmic reticulum (RER). The protein is then glycosylated by bound *glycosyltransferases* located in the Golgi.

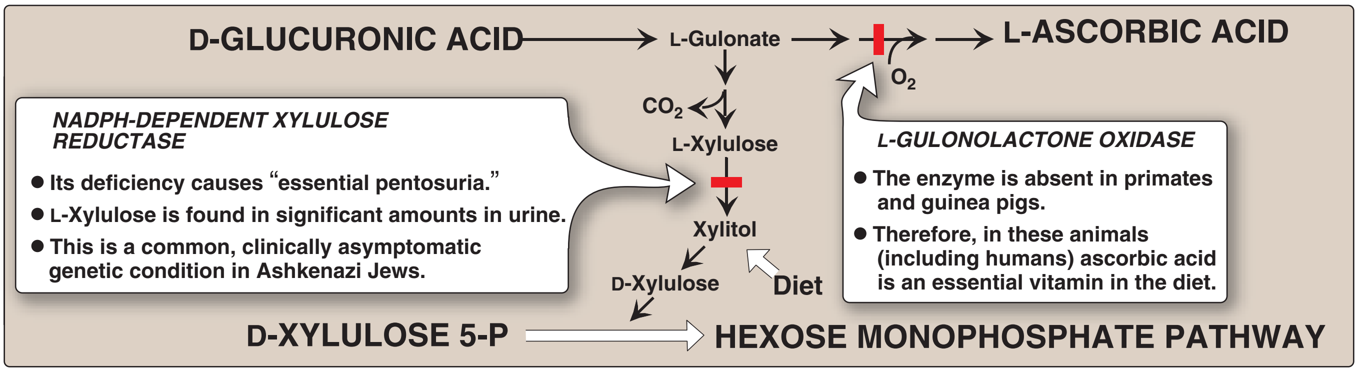

D-GLUCURONIC ACID
L-Gulonate
L-ASCORBIC ACID
O_2
CO_2
L-Xylulose
NADPH-DEPENDENT XYLULOSE REDUCTASE
● Its deficiency causes "essential pentosuria."
● L-Xylulose is found in significant amounts in urine.
● This is a common, clinically asymptomatic genetic condition in Ashkenazi Jews.
L-GULONOLACTONE OXIDASE
● The enzyme is absent in primates and guinea pigs.
● Therefore, in these animals (including humans) ascorbic acid is an essential vitamin in the diet.
Xylitol
D-Xylulose
Diet
D-XYLULOSE 5-P
HEXOSE MONOPHOSPHATE PATHWAY

Figure 14.9
Uronic acid pathway.

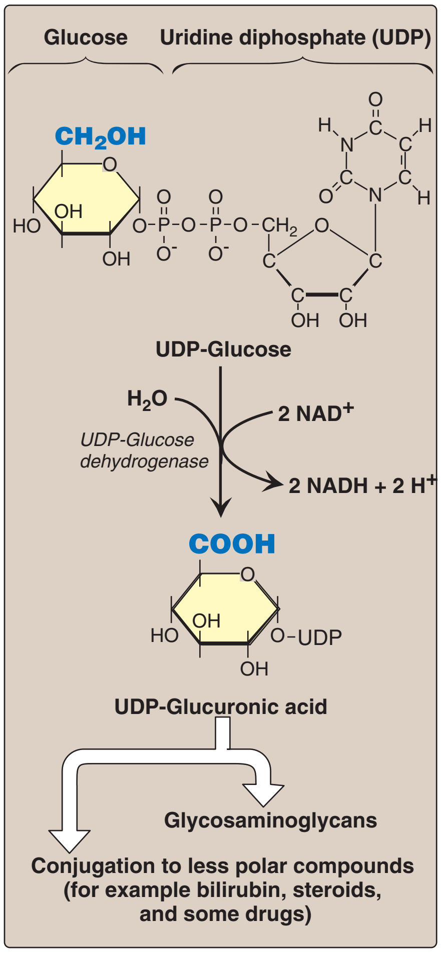

Glucose
Uridine diphosphate (UDP)
CH_2OH
UDP-Glucose
H_2O
UDP-Glucose dehydrogenase
2 NAD^+
2 NADH + 2 H^+
COOH
O–UDP
UDP-Glucuronic acid
Glycosaminoglycans
Conjugation to less polar compounds (for example bilirubin, steroids, and some drugs)

Figure 14.10
Oxidation of UDP-glucose to UDP-glucuronic acid.

D. Synthesis of the carbohydrate chain

Carbohydrate chain formation begins by synthesis of a short linkage region on the core protein on which carbohydrate chain synthesis will be initiated. The most common linkage region is formed by the transfer of a xylose from UDP-xylose to the hydroxyl group of a serine (or threonine) catalyzed by *xylosyltransferase*. Two galactose molecules are then added, completing the trihexoside. This is followed by sequential addition of alternating acidic and amino sugars (Figure 14.11), and epimerization of some D-glucuronyl to L-iduronyl residues.

E. Addition of sulfate groups

Sulfation of the carbohydrate chain occurs after the monosaccharide to be sulfated has been incorporated into the growing carbohydrate chain. The source of the sulfate is 3'-phosphoadenosyl-5'-phosphosulfate (PAPS, a molecule of AMP with a sulfate group attached to the 5'-phosphate). *Sulfotransferases* cause the sulfation of the carbohydrate chain at specific sites. [Note: An example of the synthesis of a sulfated glycosaminoglycan, chondroitin sulfate, is shown in Figure 14.11.] PAPS is also the sulfur donor in glycosphingolipid synthesis.

> A defect in the sulfation of the growing glycosaminoglycan chains results in one of several autosomal recessive disorders (chondrodystrophies) that affect the proper development and maintenance of the skeletal system.

IV. DEGRADATION OF GLYCOSAMINOGLYCANS

Glycosaminoglycans are degraded in lysosomes, which contain hydrolytic enzymes that are most active at a pH of approximately 5. [Note: Therefore, as a group, these enzymes are called *acid hydrolases*.] The low pH optimum is a protective mechanism that prevents the enzymes from destroying the cell should leakage occur into the cytosol where the pH is neutral. With the exception of keratan sulfate, which has a half-life of greater than 120 days, the glycosaminoglycans have a relatively short half-life, ranging from about 3 days for hyaluronic acid to 10 days for chondroitin and dermatan sulfate.

A. Phagocytosis of extracellular glycosaminoglycans

Because glycosaminoglycans are extracellular or cell-surface compounds, they must first be engulfed by an invagination of the cell membrane (phagocytosis), forming a vesicle inside of which the glycosaminoglycans are to be degraded. This vesicle then fuses with a lysosome, forming a single digestive vesicle in which the glycosaminoglycans are efficiently degraded (see p. 150 for a discussion of phagocytosis).

B. Lysosomal degradation of glycosaminoglycans

The lysosomal degradation of glycosaminoglycans requires a large number of *acid hydrolases* for complete digestion. First, the polysaccharide chains are cleaved by *endoglycosidases*, producing oligosaccharides. Further degradation of the oligosaccharides occurs sequentially from the nonreducing end of each chain (see p. 127), the last group (sulfate or sugar) added during synthesis being the first group removed. Examples of some of these enzymes and the bonds they hydrolyze are shown in Figure 14.12.

V. MUCOPOLYSACCHARIDOSES

The mucopolysaccharidoses are hereditary diseases (1:25,000 births) caused by a deficiency of any one of the lysosomal *hydrolases* normally involved in the degradation of heparan sulfate and/or dermatan sulfate (see Figure 14.12). They are progressive disorders characterized by accumulation of glycosaminoglycans in various tissues, causing a range of symptoms, such as skeletal and extracellular matrix deformities, and mental retardation. Children who are homozygous for any one of these diseases are apparently normal at birth, then gradually deteriorate. In severe cases, death occurs in childhood. All are autosomal recessive diseases except Hunter syndrome, which is X-linked. Incomplete lysosomal degradation of glycosaminoglycans results in the presence of oligosaccharides in the urine. These fragments can be used to diagnose the specific mucopolysaccharidosis by identifying the structure present on the nonreducing end of the oligosaccharide, as that residue would have been the substrate for the missing enzyme. Diagnosis is confirmed by measuring the patient's cellular level of the lysosomal *hydrolases*. Bone marrow and cord blood transplants have been used to treat Hurler and Hunter syndromes. Here the transplanted macrophages produce the enzymes needed to degrade glycosaminoglycans in the extracellular space. Enzyme replacement therapy (ERT) is currently available for both syndromes.

In addition to the degradation of glycosaminoglycans, lysosomal *endo*- and *exoglycosidases* are also involved in the degradation of glycoproteins (see p. 170) and glycolipids (see p. 210). Deficiencies in these enzymes result in the accumulation of partially degraded carbohydrates in the lysosomes, leading to cell and tissue damage.

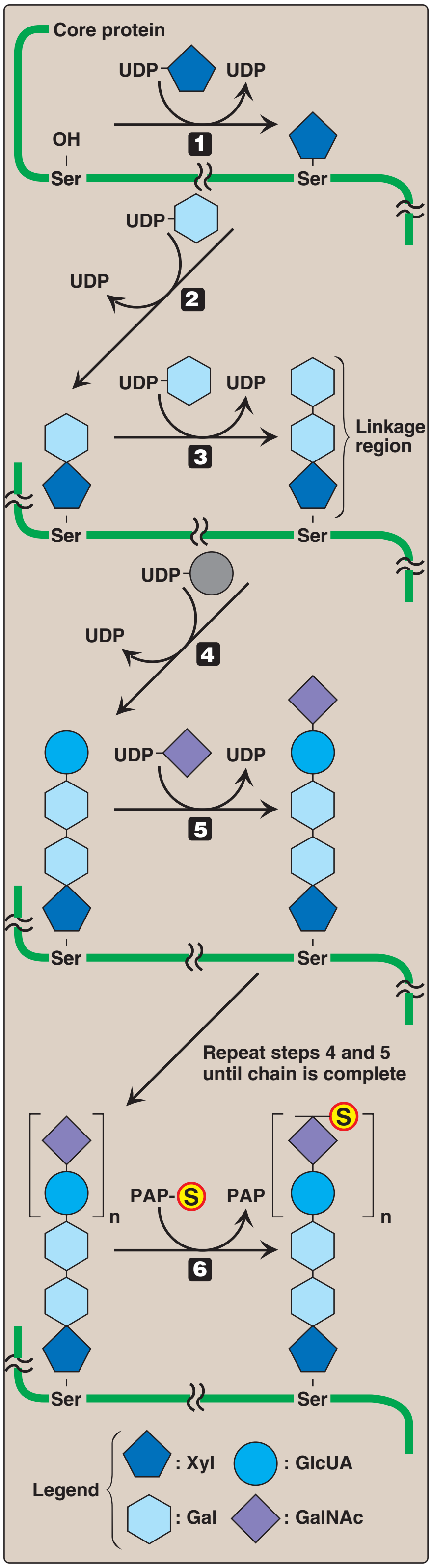
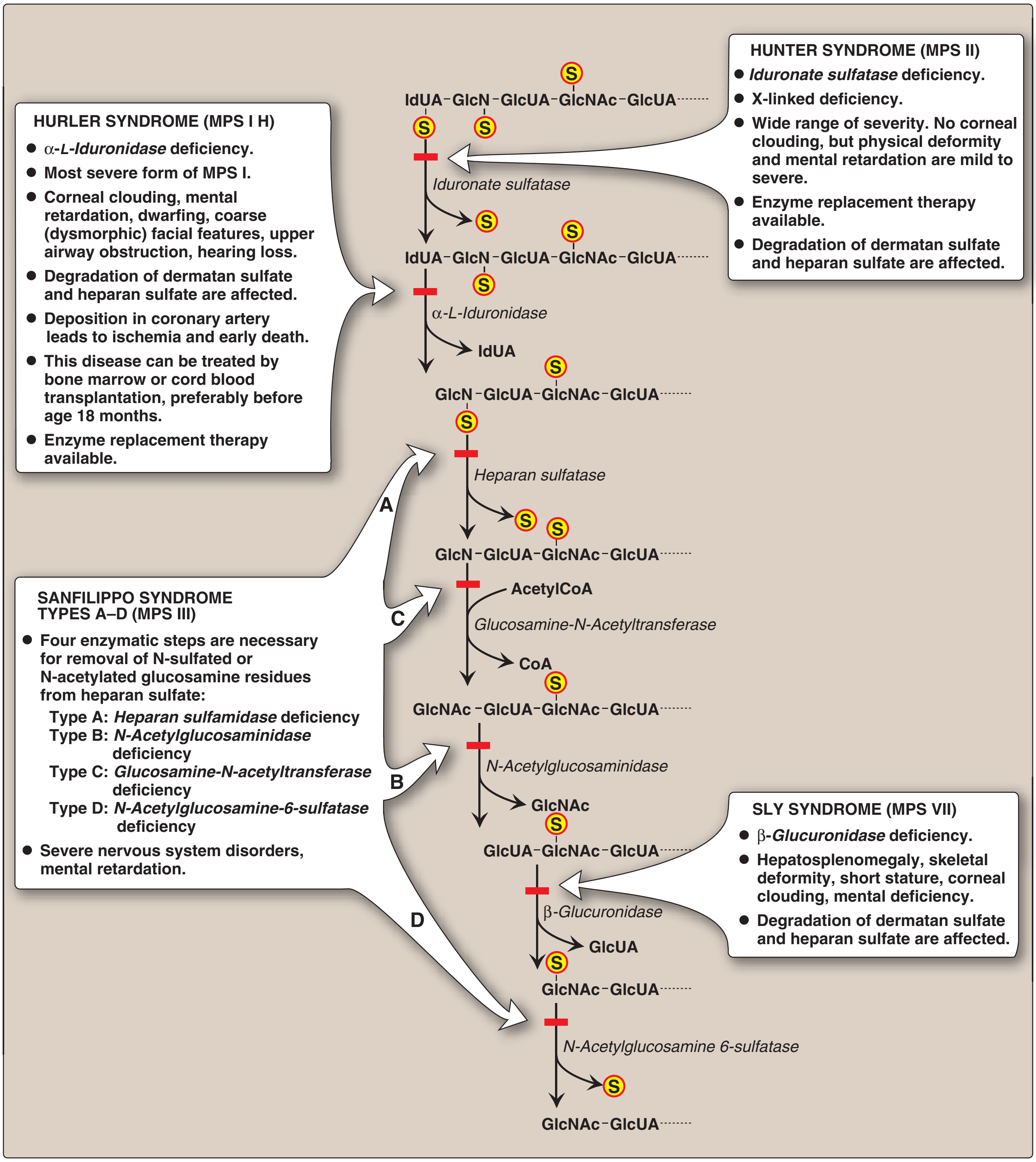


Figure 14.11
Synthesis of chondroitin sulfate.


S
IdUA-GlcN-GlcUA-GlcNAc-GlcUA
S S
Iduronate sulfatase
S
S
IdUA-GlcN-GlcUA-GlcNAc-GlcUA
S
α-L-Iduronidase
IdUA
S
GlcN-GlcUA-GlcNAc-GlcUA
S
Heparan sulfatase
A
S S
GlcN-GlcUA-GlcNAc-GlcUA
AcetylCoA
C
Glucosamine-N-Acetyltransferase
CoA
S
GlcNAc-GlcUA-GlcNAc-GlcUA
B
N-Acetylglucosaminidase
GlcNAc
S
GlcUA-GlcNAc-GlcUA
β-Glucuronidase
D
GlcUA
S
GlcNAc-GlcUA
N-Acetylglucosamine 6-sulfatase
S
GlcNAc-GlcUA

HURLER SYNDROME (MPS I H)

- *α-L-Iduronidase* deficiency.
- Most severe form of MPS I.
- Corneal clouding, mental retardation, dwarfing, coarse (dysmorphic) facial features, upper airway obstruction, hearing loss.
- Degradation of dermatan sulfate and heparan sulfate are affected.
- Deposition in coronary artery leads to ischemia and early death.
- This disease can be treated by bone marrow or cord blood transplantation, preferably before age 18 months.
- Enzyme replacement therapy available.

HUNTER SYNDROME (MPS II)

- *Iduronate sulfatase* deficiency.
- X-linked deficiency.
- Wide range of severity. No corneal clouding, but physical deformity and mental retardation are mild to severe.
- Enzyme replacement therapy available.
- Degradation of dermatan sulfate and heparan sulfate are affected.

SANFILIPPO SYNDROME TYPES A–D (MPS III)

- Four enzymatic steps are necessary for removal of N-sulfated or N-acetylated glucosamine residues from heparan sulfate:
  - Type A: *Heparan sulfamidase* deficiency
  - Type B: *N-Acetylglucosaminidase* deficiency
  - Type C: *Glucosamine-N-acetyltransferase* deficiency
  - Type D: *N-Acetylglucosamine-6-sulfatase* deficiency
- Severe nervous system disorders, mental retardation.

SLY SYNDROME (MPS VII)

- β-*Glucuronidase* deficiency.
- Hepatosplenomegaly, skeletal deformity, short stature, corneal clouding, mental deficiency.
- Degradation of dermatan sulfate and heparan sulfate are affected.

Figure 14.12
Degradation of the glycosaminoglycan heparan sulfate by lysosomal enzymes, indicating sites of enzyme deficiencies in some representative mucopolysaccharidoses. [Note: Deficiencies in the degradation of keratan sulfate result in Morquio syndrome, A and B.]

VI. OVERVIEW OF GLYCOPROTEINS

Glycoproteins are proteins to which oligosaccharides are covalently attached. They differ from the proteoglycans in that the length of the glycoprotein's carbohydrate chain is relatively short (usually two to ten sugar residues in length, although they can be longer), whereas it can be very long in the glycosaminoglycans (see p. 157). In addition, whereas glycosaminoglycans have diglucosyl repeat units, the carbohydrates of glycoproteins do not have serial repeats. The glycoprotein carbohydrate chains are often branched instead of linear, and may or may not be negatively charged. Glycoproteins contain highly variable amounts of carbohydrate. For example, immunoglobulin IgG, contains less than 4% of its mass as carbohydrate, whereas human gastric glycoprotein (mucin) contains more than 80% carbohydrate. Membrane-bound glycoproteins participate in a broad range of cellular phenomena, including cell surface recognition (by other cells, hormones, and viruses), cell surface antigenicity (such as the blood group antigens), and as components of the extracellular matrix and of the mucins of the gastrointestinal and urogenital tracts, where they act as protective biologic lubricants. In addition, almost all of the globular proteins present in human plasma are glycoproteins. (See Figure 14.13 for a summary of some of the functions of glycoproteins.)

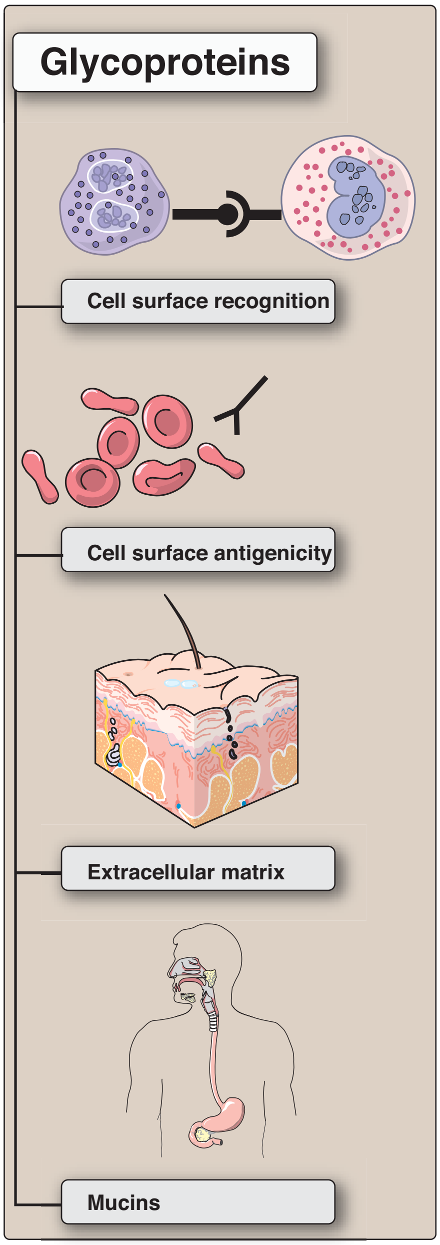


Figure 14.13
Functions of glycoproteins.

VII. STRUCTURE OF GLYCOPROTEIN OLIGOSACCHARIDES

The oligosaccharide components of glycoproteins are generally branched heteropolymers composed primarily of D-hexoses, with the addition in some cases of neuraminic acid, and of L-fucose—a 6-deoxyhexose.

A. Structure of the linkage between carbohydrate and protein

The oligosaccharide may be attached to the protein through an N- or an O-glycosidic link (see p. 86). In the former case, the sugar chain is attached to the amide group of an asparagine side chain, and in the latter case, to the hydroxyl group of either a serine or threonine R-group. [Note: In the case of collagen, there is an O-glycosidic linkage between galactose or glucose and the hydroxyl group of hydroxylysine (see p. 47).]

B. N- and O-linked oligosaccharides

A glycoprotein may contain only one type of glycosidic linkage (N- or O-linked), or may have both O- and N-linked oligosaccharides within the same molecule.

1. **O-Linked oligosaccharides:** The O-linked oligosaccharides may have one or more of a wide variety of sugars arranged in either a linear or a branched pattern. Many O-linked oligosaccharides are found in extracellular glycoproteins or as membrane glycoprotein components. For example, O-linked oligosaccharides on the surface of RBCs help provide the ABO blood group determinants.

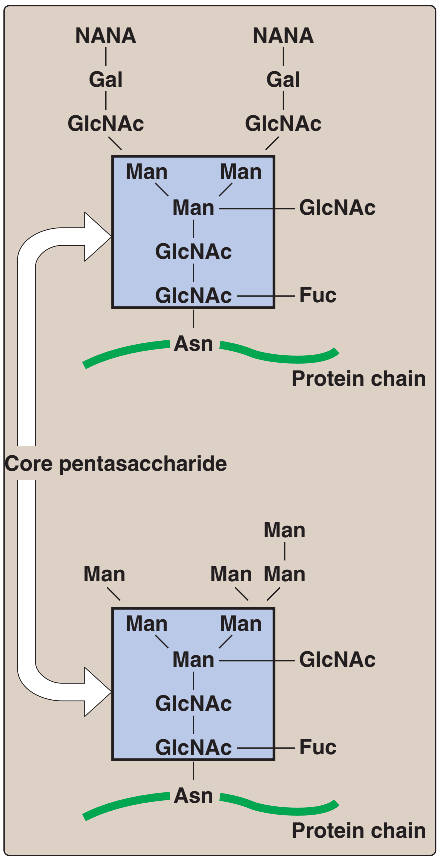


Figure 14.14
Complex (top) and high-mannose (bottom) oligosaccharides. [Note: Members of each class contain the same pentasaccharide core.]

2. **N-linked oligosaccharides:** The N-linked oligosaccharides fall into two broad classes: complex oligosaccharides and high-mannose oligosaccharides. Both contain the same core pentasaccharide shown in Figure 14.14, but the complex oligosaccharides contain a diverse group of additional sugars, for example, N-acetylglucosamine (GlcNAc), L-fucose (Fuc), and N-acetylneuraminic acid (NANA), whereas the high-mannose oligosaccharides contain primarily mannose (Man).

VIII. SYNTHESIS OF GLYCOPROTEINS

Proteins destined to function in the cytoplasm are synthesized on free cytosolic ribosomes. However, proteins, including many glycoproteins, that are destined for cellular membranes, lysosomes, or to be exported from the cell, are synthesized on ribosomes attached to the RER. These proteins contain specific signal sequences that act as molecular "address labels," targeting the proteins to their proper destinations. An N-terminal hydrophobic sequence initially directs these proteins to the RER, allowing the growing polypeptide to be extruded into the lumen. The proteins are then transported via secretory vesicles to the Golgi complex, which acts as a sorting center (Figure 14.15). In the Golgi those glycoproteins that are to be secreted from the cell (or are targeted for lysosomes) are packaged into vesicles that fuse with the cell (or lysosomal) membrane and release their contents. Those that are destined to become components of the cell membrane are integrated into the Golgi membrane, which buds off, forming vesicles that add their membrane-bound glycoproteins to the cell membrane. [Note: The membrane glycoproteins are thus oriented with the carbohydrate portion on the outside of the cell (see Figure 14.15).]

A. Carbohydrate components of glycoproteins

The precursors of the carbohydrate components of glycoproteins are nucleotide sugars, which include UDP-glucose, UDP-galactose, UDP-N-acetylglucosamine, and UDP-N-acetylgalactosamine. In addition, GDP-mannose, GDP-L-fucose (which is synthesized from GDP-mannose), and CMP-N-acetylneuraminic acid may donate sugars to the growing chain. [Note: When NANA is present, the oligosaccharide has a negative charge at physiologic pH.] The oligosaccharides are covalently attached to specific amino acid R-groups of the protein, where the three-dimensional structure of the protein determines whether or not a specific amino acid R-group is glycosylated.

B. Synthesis of O-linked glycosides

The synthesis of the O-linked glycosides is very similar to that of the glycosaminoglycans (see p. 158). First, the protein to which the oligosaccharides are to be attached is synthesized on the RER, and extruded into its lumen. Glycosylation begins with the transfer of an N-acetylgalactosamine (from UDP-N-acetylgalactosamine) onto the R-group of a specific serine or threonine.

1. **Role of glycosyltransferases:** The *glycosyltransferases* responsible for the stepwise synthesis of the oligosaccharides are bound to the membranes of the Golgi apparatus. They act in a specific order,

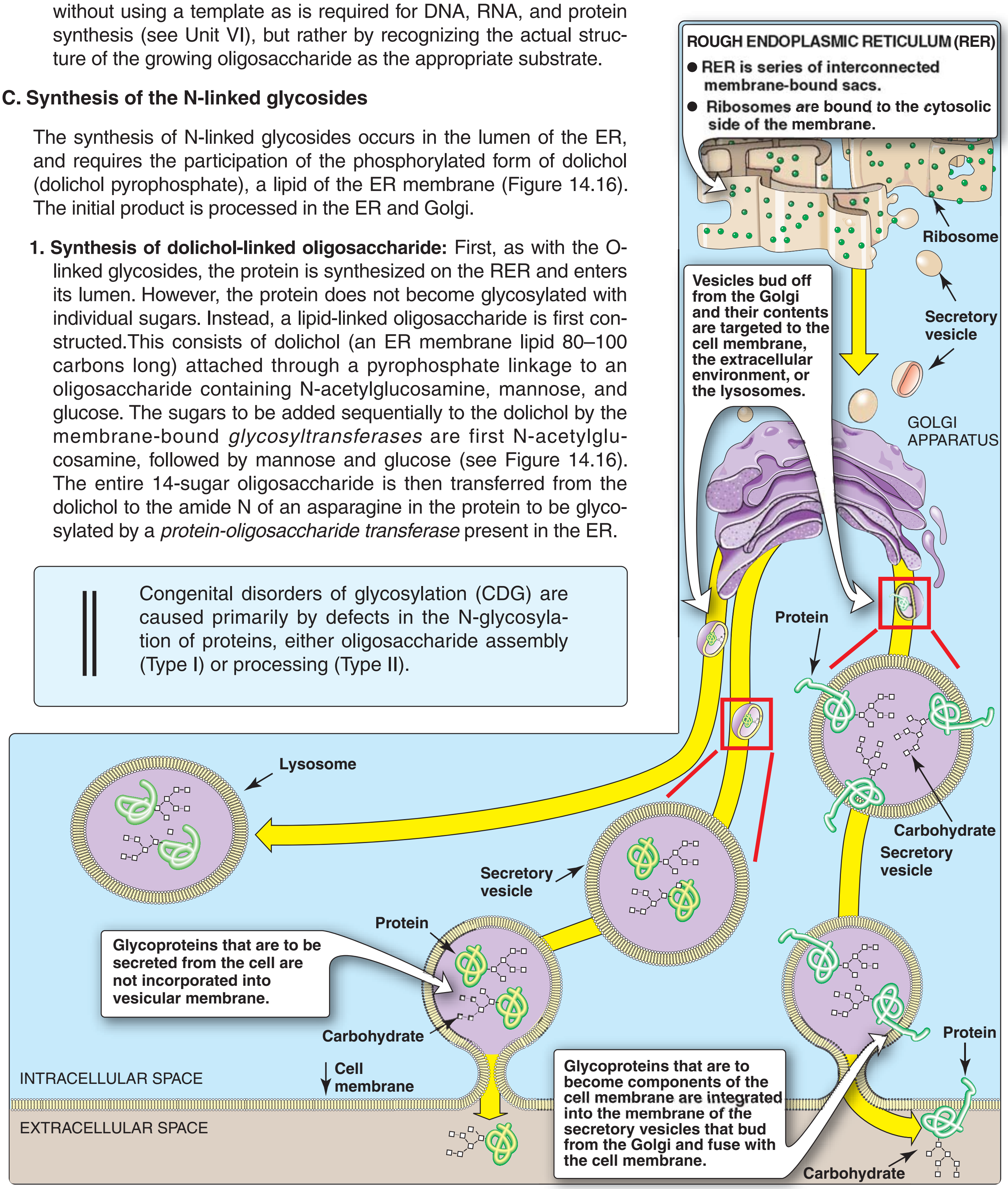
without using a template as is required for DNA, RNA, and protein synthesis (see Unit VI), but rather by recognizing the actual structure of the growing oligosaccharide as the appropriate substrate.

C. Synthesis of the N-linked glycosides

The synthesis of N-linked glycosides occurs in the lumen of the ER, and requires the participation of the phosphorylated form of dolichol (dolichol pyrophosphate), a lipid of the ER membrane (Figure 14.16). The initial product is processed in the ER and Golgi.

1. **Synthesis of dolichol-linked oligosaccharide:** First, as with the O-linked glycosides, the protein is synthesized on the RER and enters its lumen. However, the protein does not become glycosylated with individual sugars. Instead, a lipid-linked oligosaccharide is first constructed.This consists of dolichol (an ER membrane lipid 80–100 carbons long) attached through a pyrophosphate linkage to an oligosaccharide containing N-acetylglucosamine, mannose, and glucose. The sugars to be added sequentially to the dolichol by the membrane-bound *glycosyltransferases* are first N-acetylglucosamine, followed by mannose and glucose (see Figure 14.16). The entire 14-sugar oligosaccharide is then transferred from the dolichol to the amide N of an asparagine in the protein to be glycosylated by a *protein-oligosaccharide transferase* present in the ER.

Congenital disorders of glycosylation (CDG) are caused primarily by defects in the N-glycosylation of proteins, either oligosaccharide assembly (Type I) or processing (Type II).



ROUGH ENDOPLASMIC RETICULUM (RER)
- RER is series of interconnected membrane-bound sacs.
- Ribosomes are bound to the cytosolic side of the membrane.

Vesicles bud off from the Golgi and their contents are targeted to the cell membrane, the extracellular environment, or the lysosomes.

Glycoproteins that are to be secreted from the cell are not incorporated into vesicular membrane.

Glycoproteins that are to become components of the cell membrane are integrated into the membrane of the secretory vesicles that bud from the Golgi and fuse with the cell membrane.

Figure 14.15
Transport of glycoproteins through the Golgi apparatus and their subsequent release or incorporation into a lysosome or the cell membrane.

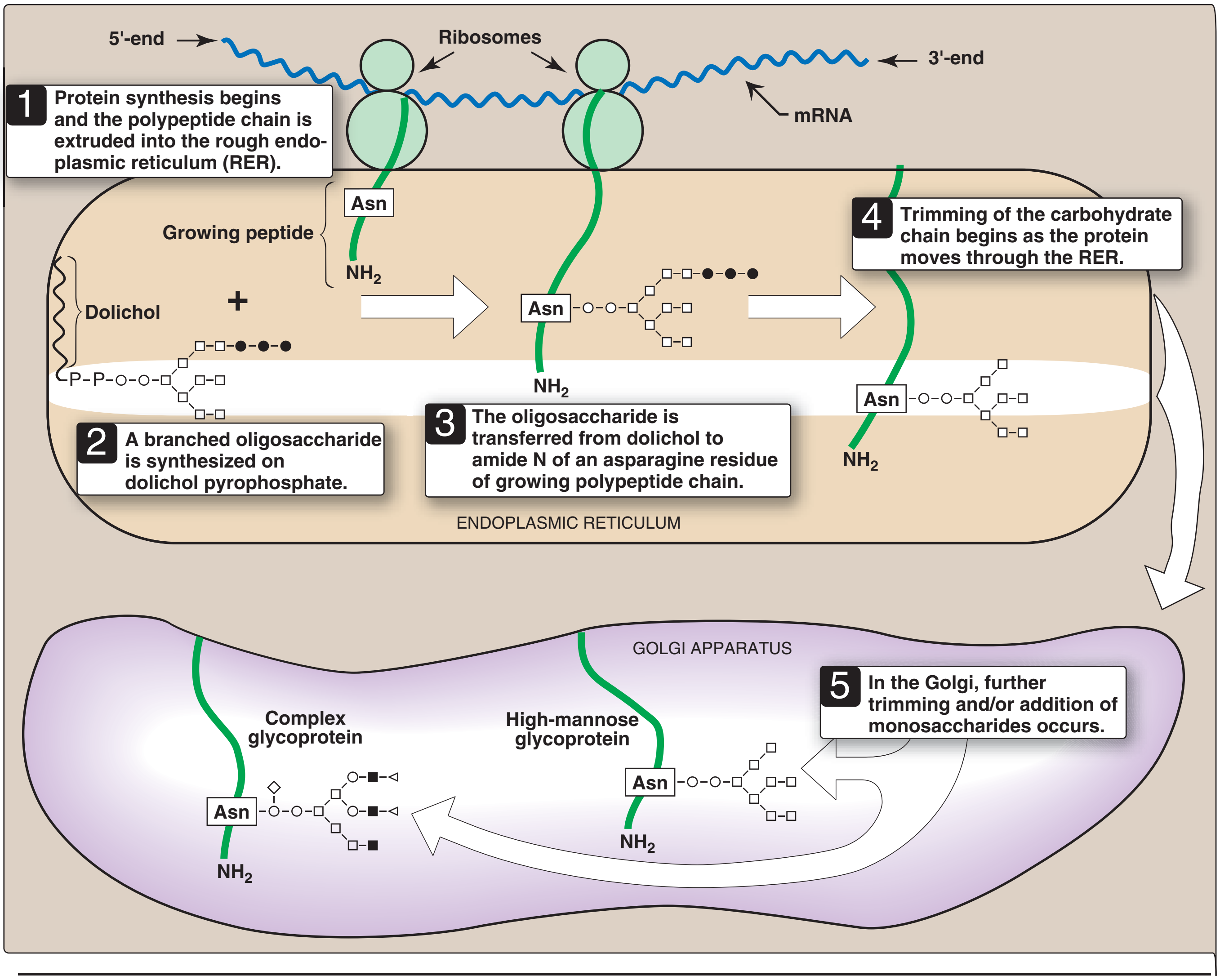
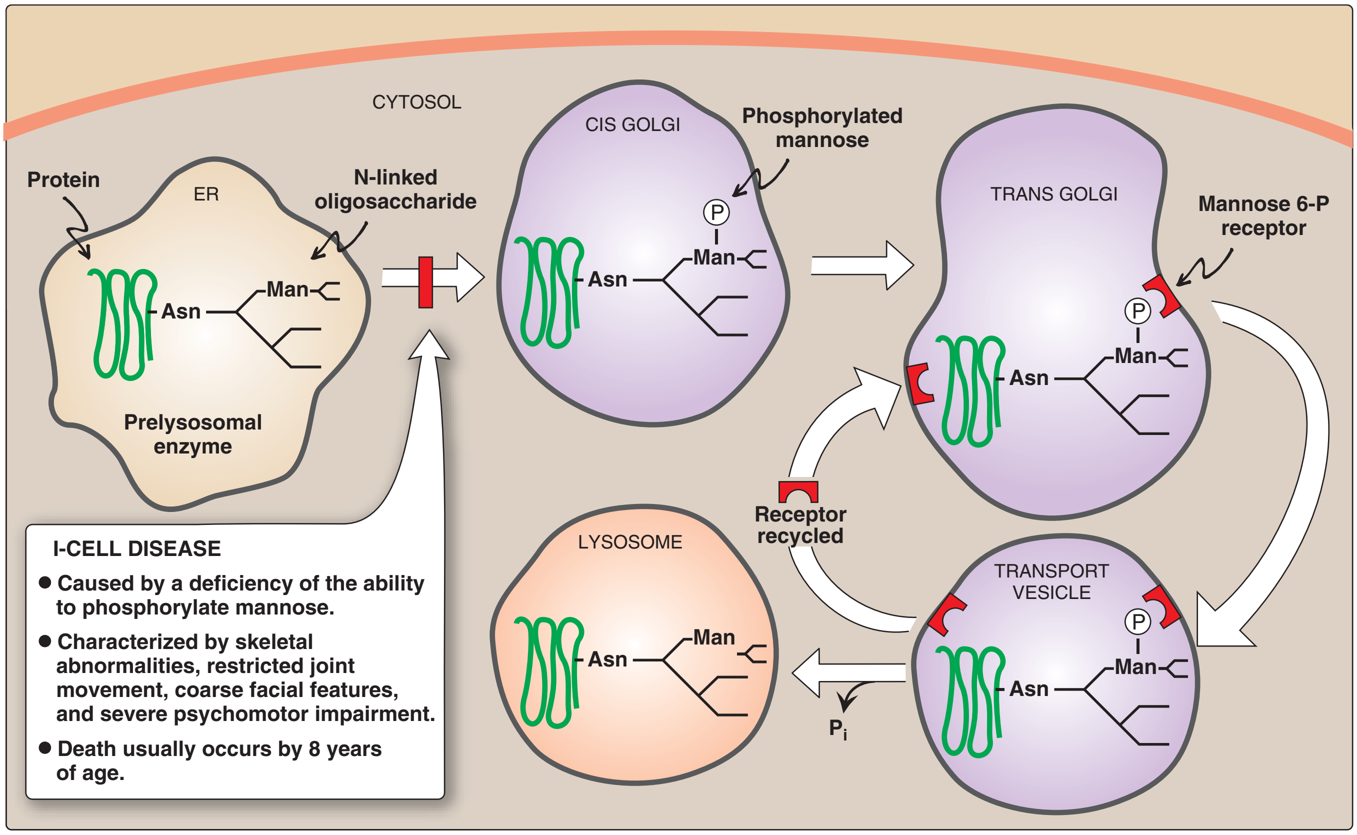

5'-end
Ribosomes
3'-end
mRNA
1 Protein synthesis begins and the polypeptide chain is extruded into the rough endoplasmic reticulum (RER).
Growing peptide
Asn
NH2
Dolichol
+
P-P-O-O-□
2 A branched oligosaccharide is synthesized on dolichol pyrophosphate.
Asn
NH2
3 The oligosaccharide is transferred from dolichol to amide N of an asparagine residue of growing polypeptide chain.
4 Trimming of the carbohydrate chain begins as the protein moves through the RER.
Asn
NH2
ENDOPLASMIC RETICULUM
GOLGI APPARATUS
5 In the Golgi, further trimming and/or addition of monosaccharides occurs.
Complex glycoprotein
Asn
NH2
High-mannose glycoprotein
Asn
NH2

Figure 14.16
Synthesis of N-linked glycoproteins. ○ = N-acetylglucosamine; □ = mannose; ● = glucose; ■ = N-acetylgalactosamine; ◇ or ◁ for example, fucose or N-acetylneuraminic acid.

2. **Final processing of N-linked oligosaccharides:** After incorporation into the protein, the N-linked oligosaccharide is processed by the removal of specific mannosyl and glucosyl residues as the glycoprotein moves through the RER. Finally, the oligosaccharide chains are completed in the Golgi by addition of a variety of sugars (for example, N-acetylglucosamine, N-acetylgalactosamine, and additional mannoses, and then fucose or NANA as terminal groups) to produce a complex glycoprotein, or they are not processed further, leaving branched, mannose-containing chains in a high-mannose glycoprotein (see Figure 14.16). The ultimate fate of N-linked glycoproteins is the same as that of the O-linked, for example, they can be released by the cell, or become part of a cell membrane. In addition N-linked glycoproteins can be translocated to the lysosomes. [Note: Nonenzymatic glycosylation of proteins is known as glycation (see p. 345).]


CYTOSOL
Protein
ER
N-linked oligosaccharide
Asn
Man
Prelysosomal enzyme
CIS GOLGI
Phosphorylated mannose
P
TRANS GOLGI
Mannose 6-P receptor
Receptor recycled
LYSOSOME
TRANSPORT VESICLE
P_i

I-CELL DISEASE

- **Caused by a deficiency of the ability to phosphorylate mannose.**
- **Characterized by skeletal abnormalities, restricted joint movement, coarse facial features, and severe psychomotor impairment.**
- **Death usually occurs by 8 years of age.**

Figure 14.17
Mechanism for transport of N-linked glycoproteins to the lysosomes.

3. **Enzymes destined for lysosomes:** N-linked glycoproteins being processed through the Golgi can be phosphorylated at one or more specific mannosyl residues. Mannose 6-P receptors, located in the Golgi apparatus, bind the mannose 6-P residues of these targeted enzymes, which are then packaged into vesicles and sent to the lysosomes. I-cell disease is a rare syndrome in which the *acid hydrolase* enzymes normally found in lysosomes are absent, resulting in an accumulation of substrates normally degraded by lysosomal enzymes within these vesicles. [Note: I-cell disease is so-named because of the large inclusion bodies seen in cells of patients with this disease.] In addition, high amounts of lysosomal enzymes are found in the patient's plasma, suggesting that the targeting process to lysosomes (rather than the synthetic pathway of these enzymes) is deficient. It has been determined that individuals with I-cell disease are lacking the enzymic ability to phosphorylate the mannose residues of potential lysosomal enzymes, causing an incorrect targeting of these proteins to extracellular sites, rather than lysosomal vesicles (Figure 14.17). I-cell disease, a lysosomal storage disease, is characterized by skeletal abnormalities, restricted joint movement, coarse (dysmorphic) facial features, and severe psychomotor impairment. Death usually occurs by 8 years of age.

IX. LYSOSOMAL DEGRADATION OF GLYCOPROTEINS

Degradation of glycoproteins is similar to that of the glycosaminoglycans (see p. 162). The lysosomal *acid hydrolases* are each generally specific for the removal of one component of the glycoprotein. They are primarily exoenzymes that remove their respective groups in sequence in the reverse order of their incorporation (“last on, first off”). If any one degradative enzyme is missing, degradation by the other exoenzymes cannot continue. A group of very rare, autosomal recessive genetic diseases called the glycoprotein storage diseases (oligosaccharidoses), caused by a deficiency of any one of the degradative enzymes, results in accumulation of partially degraded structures in the lysosomes. For example, α-mannosidosis type 1 is a progressive, fatal deficiency of the enzyme, *α-mannosidase*. Presentation is similar to Hurler syndrome, and immune deficiency is also seen. Mannose-rich oligosaccharide fragments appear in the urine. Diagnosis is by enzyme assay.

X. CHAPTER SUMMARY

Glycosaminoglycans are **long**, **negatively charged**, **unbranched**, **heteropolysaccharide chains** generally composed of a **repeating disaccharide unit** [acidic sugar–amino sugar]$_n$ (Figure 14.18). The **amino sugar** is either **D-glucosamine** or **D-galactosamine** in which the amino group is usually acetylated, thus eliminating its positive charge. The amino sugar may also be sulfated on carbon 4 or 6 or on a nonacetylated nitrogen. The **acidic sugar** is either **D-glucuronic acid** or its C-5 epimer, **L-iduronic acid**. These compounds **bind large amounts of water**, thereby producing the gel-like matrix that forms the basis of the body’s **ground substance.** The viscous, lubricating properties of **mucous secretions** are also caused by the presence of glycosaminoglycans, which led to the original naming of these compounds as **mucopolysaccharides.** As essential components of cell surfaces, glycosaminoglycans play an important role in mediating **cell–cell signaling** and **adhesion**. There are **six major classes** of glycosaminoglycans, including **chondroitin 4- and 6-sulfates**, **keratan sulfate**, **dermatan sulfate**, **heparin**, **heparan sulfate**, and **hyaluronic acid**. All of the glycosaminoglycans, except hyaluronic acid, are found covalently attached to protein, forming **proteoglycan monomers**, which consist of a **core protein** to which the linear glycosaminoglycan chains are covalently attached. The proteoglycan monomers associate with a molecule of **hyaluronic acid** to form **proteoglycan aggregates**. Glycosaminoglycans are synthesized in the **Golgi**. The polysaccharide chains are elongated by the sequential addition of alternating acidic and amino sugars, donated by their **UDP-derivatives**. D-glucuronate maybe epimerized to L-iduronate. The last step in synthesis is sulfation of some of the amino sugars. The source of the sulfate is **3'-phosphoadenosyl-5'-phosphosulfate**. Glycosaminoglycans are **degraded** by **lysosomal hydrolases**. They are first broken down to oligosaccharides, which are degraded sequentially from the nonreducing end of each chain. A **deficiency** of any one of the hydrolases results in a **mucopolysaccharidosis**. These are hereditary disorders in which glycosaminoglycans accumulate in tissues, causing symptoms such as **skeletal** and **extracellular matrix deformities**, and **mental retardation**. Examples of these genetic diseases include **Hunter** and **Hurler syndromes**. **Glycoproteins** are proteins to which **oligosaccharides** are covalently attached. They differ from the proteoglycans in that the length of the glycoprotein’s carbohydrate chain is relatively short (usually two to ten sugar residues long, although they can be longer), may be branched, and does not contain serial disaccharide units. **Membrane-bound** glycoproteins participate in a broad range of cellular phenomena, including **cell surface recognition** (by other cells, hormones, and viruses), **cell surface antigenicity** (such as the blood group antigens), and as components of the **extracellular matrix** and of the **mucins** of the gastrointestinal and urogenital tracts, where they act as protective biologic lubricants. In addition, almost all of the globular proteins present in human plasma are glycoproteins. Glycoproteins are **synthesized** in the **endoplasmic reticulum** and the **Golgi**. The precursors of the carbohydrate components of glycoproteins are **nucleotide sugars**. **O–linked glycoproteins** are synthesized in the Golgi by the sequential transfer of sugars from their nucleotide carriers to the protein. **N–linked glycoproteins** contain varying amounts of **mannose**.

They are synthesized by the transfer of a preformed oligosaccharide from its ER membrane lipid carrier, **dolichol**, to the protein. A deficiency in the phosphorylation of mannose residues in N–linked glycoprotein pre-enzymes destined for the lysosomes results in **I–cell disease**. Glycoproteins are degraded in lysosomes by acid hydrolases. A deficiency of any one of these enzymes results in a lysosomal **glycoprotein storage disease** (**oligosaccharidosis**), resulting in accumulation of partially degraded structures in the lysosome.

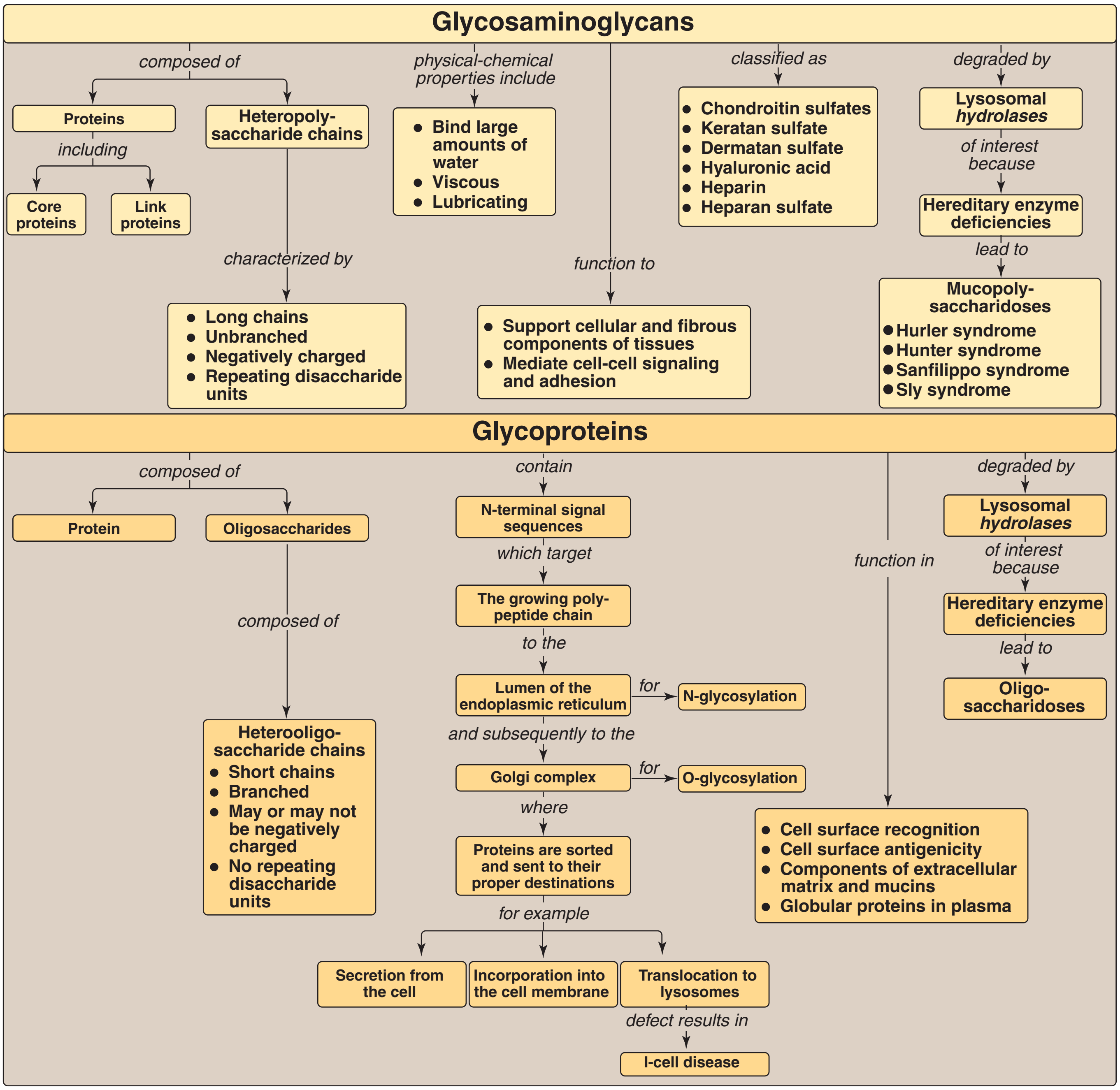

Glycosaminoglycans
composed of
Proteins
including
Core proteins
Link proteins
Heteropoly-saccharide chains
characterized by
Long chains
Unbranched
Negatively charged
Repeating disaccharide units
physical-chemical properties include
Bind large amounts of water
Viscous
Lubricating
function to
Support cellular and fibrous components of tissues
Mediate cell-cell signaling and adhesion
classified as
Chondroitin sulfates
Keratan sulfate
Dermatan sulfate
Hyaluronic acid
Heparin
Heparan sulfate
degraded by
Lysosomal hydrolases
of interest because
Hereditary enzyme deficiencies
lead to
Mucopoly-saccharidoses
Hurler syndrome
Hunter syndrome
Sanfilippo syndrome
Sly syndrome
Glycoproteins
composed of
Protein
Oligosaccharides
composed of
Heterooligo-saccharide chains
Short chains
Branched
May or may not be negatively charged
No repeating disaccharide units
contain
N-terminal signal sequences
which target
The growing poly-peptide chain
to the
Lumen of the endoplasmic reticulum
for
N-glycosylation
and subsequently to the
Golgi complex
for
O-glycosylation
where
Proteins are sorted and sent to their proper destinations
for example
Secretion from the cell
Incorporation into the cell membrane
Translocation to lysosomes
defect results in
I-cell disease
function in
Cell surface recognition
Cell surface antigenicity
Components of extracellular matrix and mucins
Globular proteins in plasma
degraded by
Lysosomal hydrolases
of interest because
Hereditary enzyme deficiencies
lead to
Oligo-saccharidoses

Figure 14.18
Key concept map for glycosaminoglycans and glycoproteins.

Study Questions

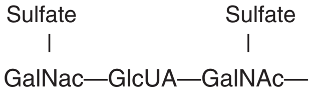
Choose the ONE correct answer.

14.1 Mucopolysaccharidoses are inherited lysosomal storage diseases. They are caused by:

A. an increased rate of synthesis of the carbohydrate component of proteoglycans.
B. the synthesis of polysaccharides with an altered structure.
C. defects in the degradation of the GAGs in proteoglycans.
D. the synthesis of abnormally small amounts of protein cores.
E. an insufficient amount of proteolytic enzymes.

Correct answer = C. In mucopolysaccharidoses, synthesis of proteoglycans is unaffected, both in terms of the structure and the amount of material synthesized. The diseases are caused by a deficiency of one of the lysosomal, hydrolytic enzymes responsible for the degradation of glycosaminoglycans (not the core protein).

14.2 The presence of the following compound in the urine of a patient suggests a deficiency in which one of the enzymes listed below?



$$\overset{\text{Sulfate}}{\overset{|}{\text{GalNac}}}\text{—GlcUA—}\overset{\text{Sulfate}}{\overset{|}{\text{GalNAc}}}\text{—}$$

A. Galactosidase
B. Glucosidase
C. Glucuronidase
D. Mannosidase
E. Sulfatase

Correct answer = E. Degradation of glycoproteins follows the rule "last on, first off." Because sulfation is the last step in the synthesis of this sequence, a sulfatase is required for the next step in the degradation of the compound shown.

14.3 An 8-month-old boy with coarse facial features, skeletal abnormalities, and delays in both growth and development is diagnosed with I-cell disease based on his presentation, and on histologic and biochemical testing. I-cell disease is the consequence of:

A. decreased production of cell-surface glycoproteins.
B. an inability to ubiquitinate proteins.
C. an inability to glycosylate proteins.
D. incorrect targeting of lysosomal proteins.
E. increased synthesis of proteoglycans.

Correct answer = D. I-cell disease is a lysosomal storage disease caused by a defect in the gene that initiates the synthesis of the mannose 6-phosphate signal that targets acid hydrolases to the lysosome, resulting in accumulation of materials within the lysosome due to decreased degradation. None of the other choices relate in any way to I-cell disease or lysosomal function.

14. 4 Distinguish between glycoproteins and proteoglycans.

Glycoproteins are proteins to which short, branched, oligosaccharide chains are attached. Proteoglycans consist of a core protein to which long, unbranched, glycosaminoglycan (GAG) chains are attached. GAGs are large complexes of negatively charged heteropolysaccharides composed of repeating [acidic sugar-amino sugar]n disaccharide units.

UNIT III:
Lipid Metabolism

Metabolism of Dietary Lipids

15

I. OVERVIEW

Lipids are a heterogeneous group of water-insoluble (hydrophobic) organic molecules that can be extracted from tissues by nonpolar solvents (Figure 15.1). Because of their insolubility in aqueous solutions, body lipids are generally found compartmentalized, as in the case of membrane-associated lipids or droplets of triacylglycerol in white adipocytes, or transported in plasma in association with protein, as in lipoprotein particles (see p. 227), or on albumin. Lipids are a major source of energy for the body, and they also provide the hydrophobic barrier that permits partitioning of the aqueous contents of cells and subcellular structures. Lipids serve additional functions in the body, for example, some fat-soluble vitamins have regulatory or coenzyme functions, and the prostaglandins and steroid hormones play major roles in the control of the body's homeostasis. Not surprisingly, deficiencies or imbalances of lipid metabolism can lead to some of the major clinical problems encountered by physicians, such as atherosclerosis and obesity.

II. DIGESTION, ABSORPTION, SECRETION, AND UTILIZATION OF DIETARY LIPIDS

The average daily intake of lipids by U.S. adults is about 81 g, of which more than 90% is normally triacylglycerol (TAG, formerly called triglyceride). The remainder of the dietary lipids consists primarily of cholesterol, cholesteryl esters, phospholipids, and unesterified ("free") fatty acids. The digestion of dietary lipids is summarized in Figure 15.2.

A. Processing of dietary lipid in the stomach

The digestion of lipids begins in the stomach, catalyzed by an acid-stable *lipase* (*lingual lipase*) that originates from glands at the back of the tongue. TAG molecules, particularly those containing fatty acids of short- or medium-chain length (fewer than 12 carbons, such as are found in milk fat), are the primary target of this enzyme. These same TAGs are also degraded by a separate *gastric lipase*, secreted by the gastric mucosa. Both enzymes are relatively acid-

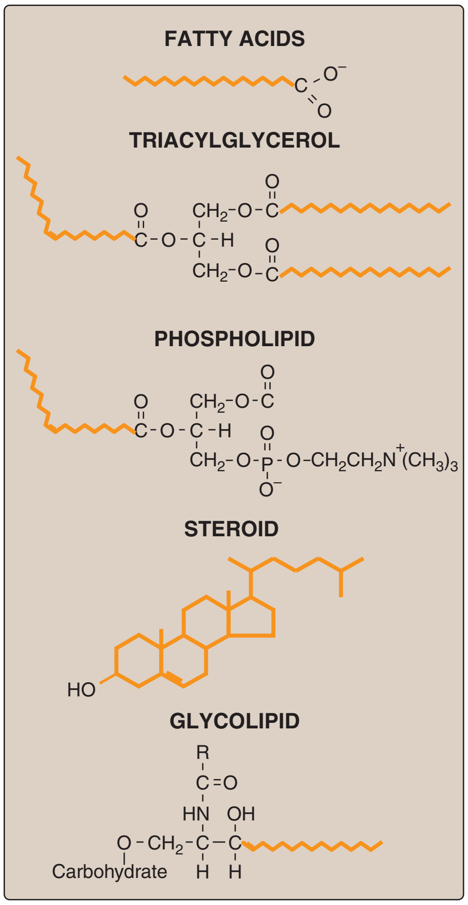


Figure 15.1
Structures of some common classes of lipids. Hydrophobic portions of the molecules are shown in orange.

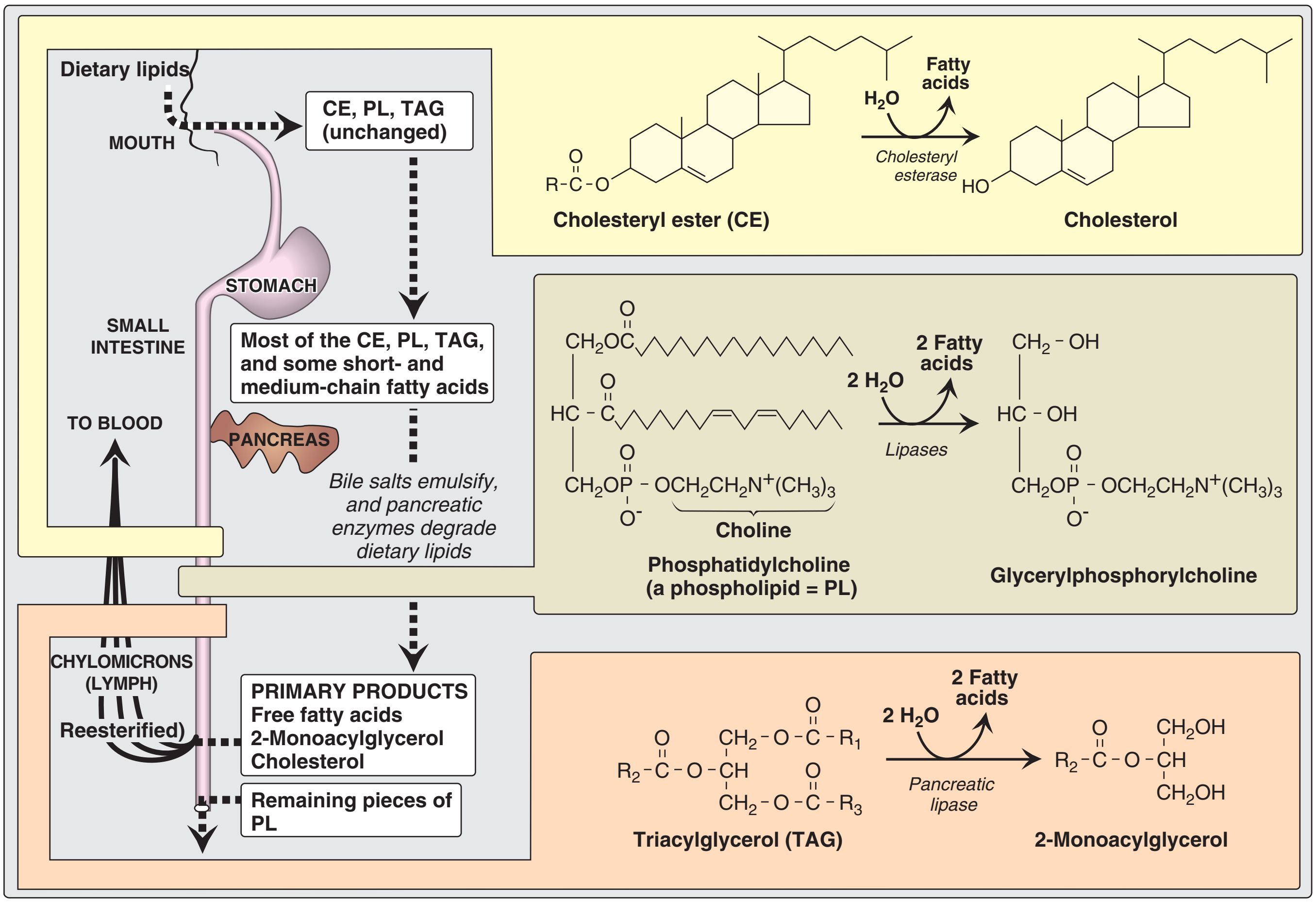

Dietary lipids
MOUTH
CE, PL, TAG (unchanged)
STOMACH
SMALL INTESTINE
Most of the CE, PL, TAG, and some short- and medium-chain fatty acids
TO BLOOD
PANCREAS
Bile salts emulsify, and pancreatic enzymes degrade dietary lipids
CHYLOMICRONS (LYMPH)
Reesterified)
PRIMARY PRODUCTS
Free fatty acids
2-Monoacylglycerol
Cholesterol
Remaining pieces of PL
Cholesteryl ester (CE)
H2O
Fatty acids
Cholesteryl esterase
Cholesterol
2 H2O
2 Fatty acids
Lipases
Choline
Phosphatidylcholine (a phospholipid = PL)
Glycerylphosphorylcholine
Pancreatic lipase
Triacylglycerol (TAG)
2-Monoacylglycerol

Figure 15.2
Overview of lipid digestion.

stable, with pH optimums of pH 4 to pH 6. These "*acid lipases*" play a particularly important role in lipid digestion in neonates, for whom milk fat is the primary source of calories. They also become important digestive enzymes in individuals with pancreatic insufficiency, such as those with cystic fibrosis (see below). *Lingual* and *gastric lipases* aid these patients in degrading TAG molecules (especially those with short- to medium-chain fatty acids) despite a near or complete absence of *pancreatic lipase* (see below).

1. **Cystic fibrosis (CF):** This is the most common lethal genetic disease in Caucasians of Northern European ancestry, and has a prevalence of about 1:3,000 births. This autosomal recessive disorder is caused by mutations to the gene for the CF transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) protein that functions as a chloride channel on epithelium. Defective CFTR results in decreased secretion of chloride and increased reabsorption of sodium and water. In the pancreas, the decreased hydration results in thickened secretions such that pancreatic enzymes are not able to reach the intestine, leading to pancreatic insufficiency. Treatment includes replacement of these enzymes and supplementation with fat-soluble vitamins. [Note: CF also causes chronic lung infections with progressive pulmonary disease.]

B. Emulsification of dietary lipid in the small intestine

The critical process of emulsification of dietary lipids occurs in the duodenum. Emulsification increases the surface area of the hydrophobic lipid droplets so that the digestive enzymes, which work at the interface of the droplet and the surrounding aqueous solution, can act effectively. Emulsification is accomplished by two complementary mechanisms, namely, use of the detergent properties of the bile salts, and mechanical mixing due to peristalsis. Bile salts, made in the liver and stored in the gallbladder, are derivatives of cholesterol (see p. 224). They consist of a sterol ring structure with a side chain to which a molecule of glycine or taurine is covalently attached by an amide linkage (Figure 15.3). These emulsifying agents interact with the dietary lipid particles and the aqueous duodenal contents, thereby stabilizing the particles as they become smaller, and preventing them from coalescing. A more complete discussion of bile salt metabolism is given on p. 225.

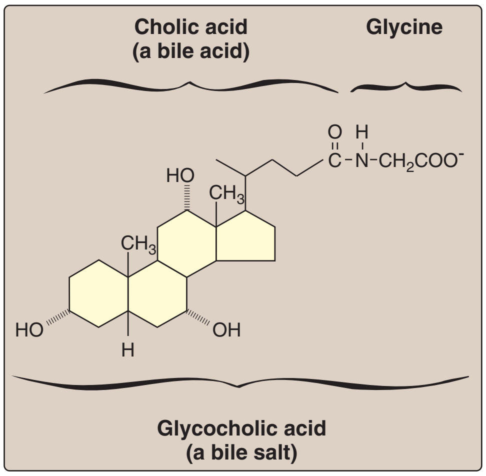


Figure 15.3
Structure of glycocholic acid.

C. Degradation of dietary lipids by pancreatic enzymes

The dietary TAG, cholesteryl esters, and phospholipids are enzymically degraded ("digested") by pancreatic enzymes, whose secretion is hormonally controlled.

1. **TAG degradation:** TAG molecules are too large to be taken up efficiently by the mucosal cells of the intestinal villi. They are, therefore, acted upon by an *esterase*, *pancreatic lipase*, which preferentially removes the fatty acids at carbons 1 and 3. The primary products of hydrolysis are thus a mixture of 2-monoacylglycerol and free fatty acids (see Figure 15.2). [Note: This enzyme is found in high concentrations in pancreatic secretions (2–3% of the total protein present), and it is highly efficient catalytically, thus insuring that only severe pancreatic deficiency, such as that seen in cystic fibrosis, results in significant malabsorption of fat.] A second protein, *colipase*, also secreted by the pancreas, binds the *lipase* at a ratio of 1:1, and anchors it at the lipid-aqueous interface. *Colipase* restores activity to *lipase* in the presence of inhibitory substances like bile acids that bind the micelles. [Note: *Colipase* is secreted as the zymogen, procolipase, which is activated in the intestine by *trypsin*.] Orlistat, an antiobesity drug, inhibits *gastric* and *pancreatic lipases,* thereby decreasing fat absorption, resulting in loss of weight.[1]

2. **Cholesteryl ester degradation:** Most dietary cholesterol is present in the free (nonesterified) form, with 10–15% present in the esterified form. Cholesteryl esters are hydrolyzed by pancreatic *cholesteryl ester hydrolase* (*cholesterol esterase*), which produces cholesterol plus free fatty acids (see Figure 15.2). *Cholesteryl ester hydrolase* activity is greatly increased in the presence of bile salts.

3. **Phospholipid degradation:** Pancreatic juice is rich in the proenzyme of *phospholipase* A_2 that, like procolipase, is activated by *trypsin* and, like *cholesteryl ester hydrolase*, requires bile salts for optimum activity. *Phospholipase* A_2 removes one fatty acid from carbon 2 of a phospholipid, leaving a lysophospholipid. For example, phosphatidylcholine (the predominant phospholipid during digestion) becomes lysophosphatidylcholine. The remaining fatty

---

INFO LINK [1] See Chapter 29 in ***Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Pharmacology*** for a discussion of orlistat.

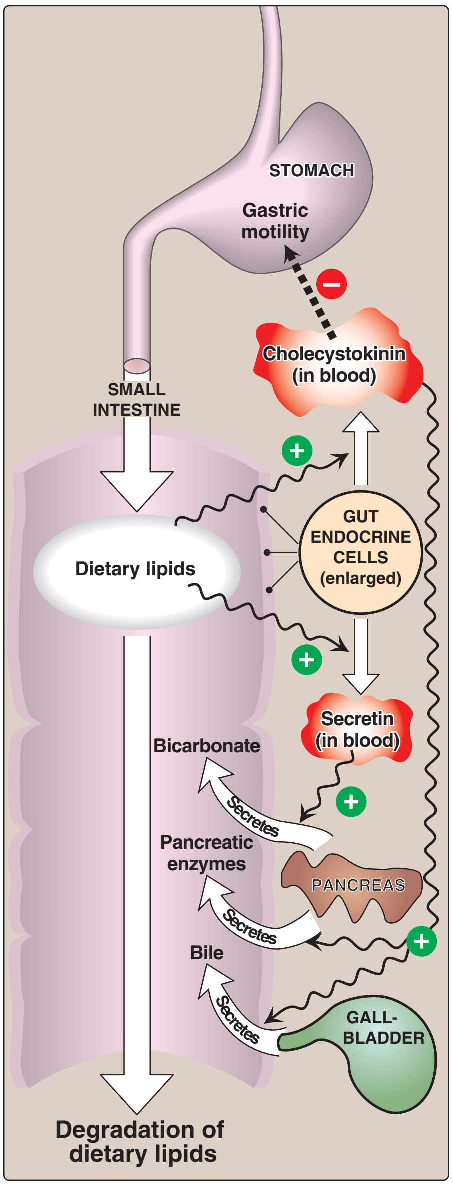


Figure 15.4
Hormonal control of lipid digestion in the small intestine.

acid at carbon 1 can be removed by *lysophospholipase*, leaving a glycerylphosphoryl base (for example, glycerylphosphorylcholine, see Figure 15.2) that may be excreted in the feces, further degraded, or absorbed.

4. **Control of lipid digestion:** Pancreatic secretion of the hydrolytic enzymes that degrade dietary lipids in the small intestine is hormonally controlled (Figure 15.4). Cells in the mucosa of the lower duodenum and jejunum produce a small peptide hormone, cholecystokinin (CCK), in response to the presence of lipids and partially digested proteins entering these regions of the upper small intestine. CCK acts on the gallbladder (causing it to contract and release bile—a mixture of bile salts, phospholipids, and free cholesterol), and on the exocrine cells of the pancreas (causing them to release digestive enzymes). It also decreases gastric motility, resulting in a slower release of gastric contents into the small intestine (see p. 353). Other intestinal cells produce another small peptide hormone, secretin, in response to the low pH of the chyme entering the intestine. Secretin causes the pancreas and the liver to release a solution rich in bicarbonate that helps neutralize the pH of the intestinal contents, bringing them to the appropriate pH for digestive activity by pancreatic enzymes.

D. Absorption of lipids by intestinal mucosal cells (enterocytes)

Free fatty acids, free cholesterol, and 2-monoacylglycerol are the primary products of lipid digestion in the jejunum. These, plus bile salts and fat-soluble vitamins (A, D, E, and K), form mixed micelles—disk-shaped clusters of amphipathic lipids that coalesce with their hydrophobic groups on the inside and their hydrophilic groups on the outside. Mixed micelles are, therefore, soluble in the aqueous environment of the intestinal lumen (Figure 15.5). These particles approach the primary site of lipid absorption, the brush border membrane of the enterocytes (mucosal cell). This membrane is separated from the liquid contents of the intestinal lumen by an unstirred water layer that mixes poorly with the bulk fluid. The hydrophilic surface of the micelles facilitates the transport of the hydrophobic lipids through the unstirred water layer to the brush border membrane where they are absorbed. Bile salts are absorbed in the ileum. [Note: Relative to other dietary lipids, cholesterol is only poorly absorbed by the enterocytes. Drug therapy (for example, with ezetimibe[2]) can further reduce cholesterol absorption in the small intestine.] Short- and medium-chain length fatty acids do not require the assistance of mixed micelles for absorption by the intestinal mucosa.

E. Resynthesis of TAG and cholesteryl esters

The mixture of lipids absorbed by the enterocytes migrates to the endoplasmic reticulum where biosynthesis of complex lipids takes place. Fatty acids are first converted into their activated form by *fatty acyl-CoA synthetase* (*thiokinase*) (Figure 15.6). Using the fatty acyl CoA derivatives, the 2-monoacylglycerols absorbed by the enterocytes are converted to TAGs by the enzyme complex, *TAG synthase*. This complex synthesizes TAG by the consecutive actions of two enzyme activities—*acyl CoA:monoacylglycerol acyltrans-*

INFO LINK [2] See Chapter 21 in ***Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Pharmacology*** for a discussion of ezetimibe (Zetia).

ferase and *acyl CoA:diacylglycerol acyltransferase*. Lysophospholipids are reacylated to form phospholipids by a family of *acyltransferases*, and cholesterol is esterified to a fatty acid primarily by *acyl CoA:cholesterol acyltransferase* (see p. 232). [Note: Virtually all long-chain fatty acids entering the enterocytes are used in this fashion to form TAGs, phospholipids, and cholesteryl esters. Short- and medium-chain length fatty acids are not converted to their CoA derivatives, and are not reesterified to 2-monoacylglycerol. Instead, they are released into the portal circulation, where they are carried by serum albumin to the liver.]

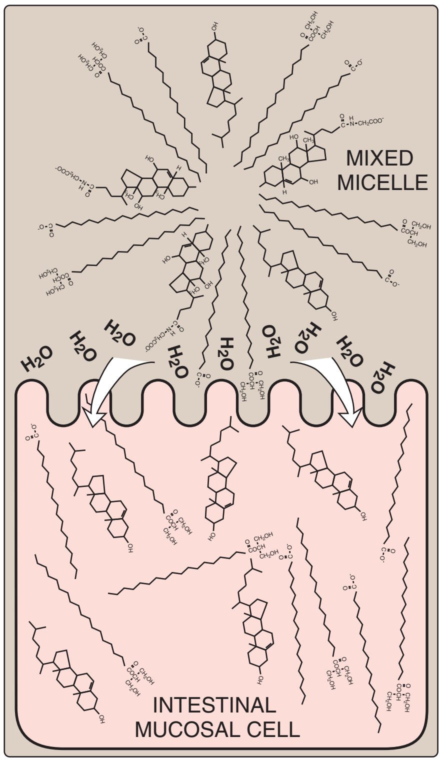

MIXED MICELLE
H_2O
H_2O
H_2O
H_2O
H_2O
H_2O
H_2O
H_2O
H_2O
INTESTINAL MUCOSAL CELL

Figure 15.5
Absorption of lipids contained in a mixed micelle by an intestinal mucosal cell. [Note: The micelle itself is not taken up.]

F. Lipid malabsorption

Lipid malabsorption, resulting in increased lipid (including the fat-soluble vitamins and essential fatty acids, see p. 182) in the feces (that is, steatorrhea), can be caused by disturbances in lipid digestion and/or absorption (Figure 15.7). Such disturbances can result from several conditions, including CF (causing poor digestion) and shortened bowel (causing decreased absorption).

> The ability of short- and medium-chain length fatty acids to be taken up by enterocytes without the aid of mixed micelles has made them important in dietary therapy for individuals with malabsorption disorders.

G. Secretion of lipids from enterocytes

The newly resynthesized TAGs and cholesteryl esters are very hydrophobic, and aggregate in an aqueous environment. It is, therefore, necessary that they be packaged as particles of lipid droplets surrounded by a thin layer composed of phospholipids, unesterified cholesterol, and a molecule of the characteristic protein, apolipoprotein B-48 (see p. 228). This layer stabilizes the particle and increases its solubility, thereby preventing multiple particles from

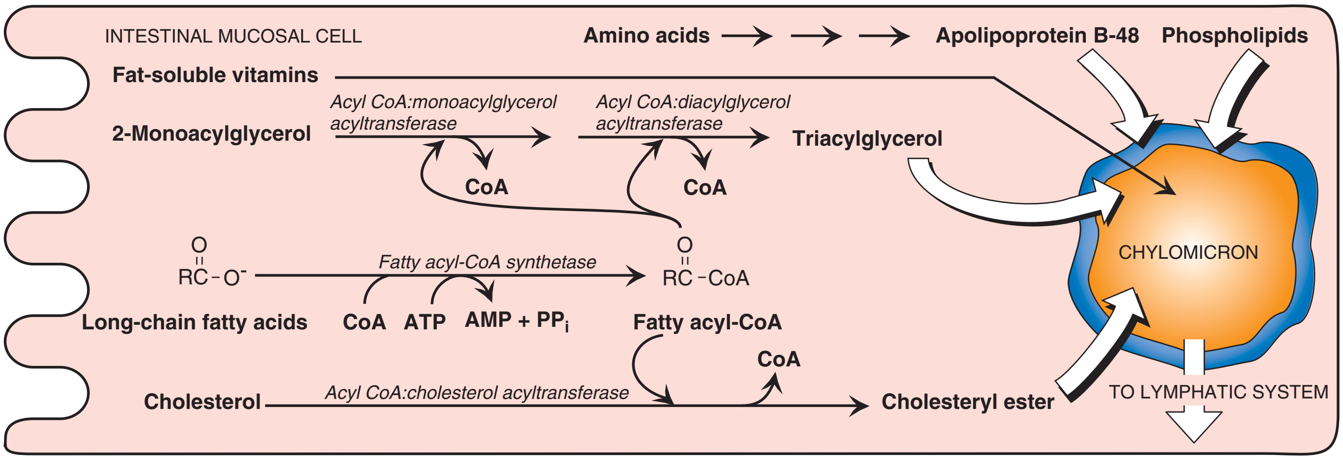

INTESTINAL MUCOSAL CELL
Amino acids
Apolipoprotein B-48
Phospholipids
Fat-soluble vitamins
Acyl CoA:monoacylglycerol acyltransferase
Acyl CoA:diacylglycerol acyltransferase
2-Monoacylglycerol
Triacylglycerol
CoA
CoA
RC-O⁻
Fatty acyl-CoA synthetase
RC-CoA
CHYLOMICRON
Long-chain fatty acids
CoA
ATP
AMP + PPi
Fatty acyl-CoA
CoA
Cholesterol
Acyl CoA:cholesterol acyltransferase
Cholesteryl ester
TO LYMPHATIC SYSTEM

Figure 15.6
Assembly and secretion of chylomicrons by intestinal mucosal cells. [Note: Short- and medium-chain length fatty acids do not require incorporation into micelles and directly enter into the blood.]

coalescing. [Note: Microsomal TAG transfer protein is essential for the assembly of these TAG-rich apolipoprotein B–containing lipoprotein particles in the endoplasmic reticulum.] The particles are released by exocytosis from enterocytes into the lacteals (lymphatic vessels originating in the villi of the small intestine). The presence of these particles in the lymph after a lipid-rich meal gives it a milky appearance. This lymph is called chyle (as opposed to chyme—the name given to the semifluid mass of partially digested food that passes from the stomach to the duodenum), and the particles are named chylomicrons. Chylomicrons follow the lymphatic system to the thoracic duct, and are then conveyed to the left subclavian vein, where they enter the blood. The steps in the production of chylomicrons are summarized in Figure 15.6. (For a more detailed description of chylomicron structure and metabolism, see p. 228.)

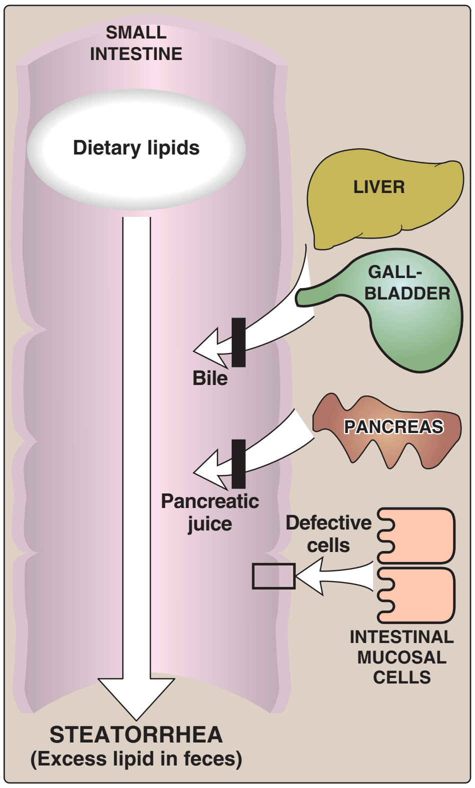


Figure 15.7
Possible causes of steatorrhea.

H. Use of dietary lipids by the tissues

Triacylglycerol contained in chylomicrons is broken down primarily in the capillaries of skeletal muscle and adipose tissues, but also those of the heart, lung, kidney, and liver. Triacylglycerol in chylomicrons is degraded to free fatty acids and glycerol by *lipoprotein lipase*. This enzyme is synthesized primarily by adipocytes and muscle cells. It is secreted and becomes associated with the luminal surface of endothelial cells of the capillary beds of the peripheral tissues. [Note: Familial *lipoprotein lipase* deficiency (Type I hyperlipoproteinemia) is a rare, autosomal recessive disorder caused by a deficiency of *lipoprotein lipase* or its coenzyme, apolipoprotein C-II (see p. 228). The result is fasting chylomicronemia and hypertriacylglycerolemia.]

1. **Fate of free fatty acids:** The free fatty acids derived from the hydrolysis of TAG may either directly enter adjacent muscle cells or adipocytes, or they may be transported in the blood in association with serum albumin until they are taken up by cells. [Note: Serum albumin is a large protein secreted by the liver. It transports a number of primarily hydrophobic compounds in the circulation, including free fatty acids and some drugs.] Most cells can oxidize fatty acids to produce energy (see p. 190). Adipocytes can also reesterify free fatty acids to produce TAG molecules, which are stored until the fatty acids are needed by the body (see p. 188).

2. **Fate of glycerol:** Glycerol that is released from TAG is used almost exclusively by the liver to produce glycerol 3-phosphate, which can enter either glycolysis or gluconeogenesis by oxidation to dihydroxyacetone phosphate (see p. 190).

3. **Fate of the remaining chylomicron components:** After most of the TAG has been removed, the chylomicron remnants (which contain cholesteryl esters, phospholipids, apolipoproteins, fat-soluble vitamins, and some TAG) bind to receptors on the liver (see p. 230) and are then endocytosed. The remnants are then hydrolyzed to their component parts. Cholesterol and the nitrogenous bases of phospholipids (for example, choline) can be recycled by the body. [Note: If removal of remnants by the liver is decreased due to impaired binding to their receptor, they accumulate in the plasma. This is seen in Type III hyperlipoproteinemia (rare, also called familial dysbetalipoproteinemia, see p. 231).]

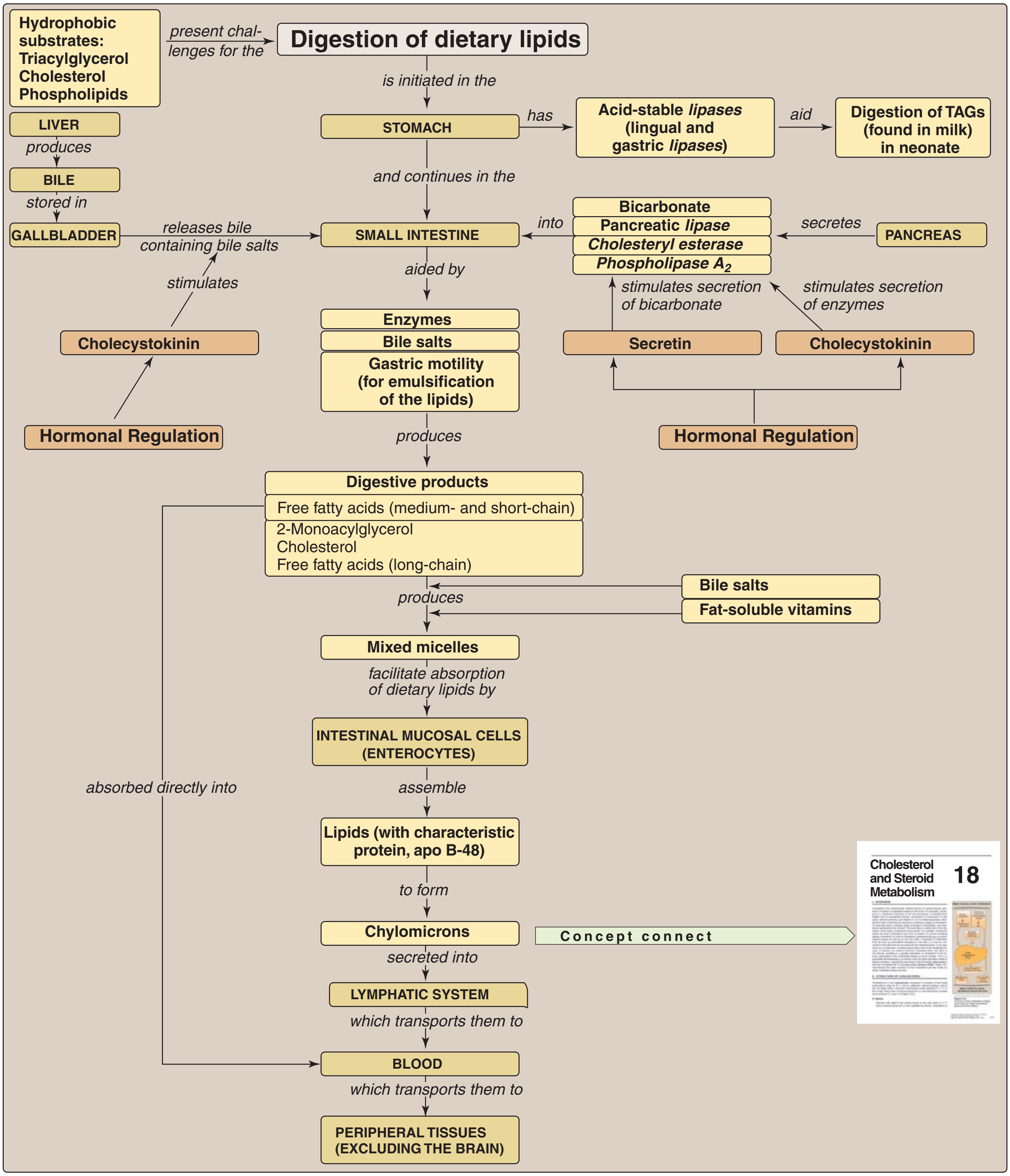

Hydrophobic substrates: Triacylglycerol Cholesterol Phospholipids
present challenges for the
Digestion of dietary lipids
is initiated in the
STOMACH
has
Acid-stable *lipases* (lingual and gastric *lipases*)
aid
Digestion of TAGs (found in milk) in neonate
and continues in the
LIVER
produces
BILE
stored in
GALLBLADDER
releases bile containing bile salts
SMALL INTESTINE
into
Bicarbonate
Pancreatic *lipase*
Cholesteryl esterase
Phospholipase A$_2$
secretes
PANCREAS
stimulates
aided by
stimulates secretion of bicarbonate
stimulates secretion of enzymes
Cholecystokinin
Enzymes
Bile salts
Gastric motility (for emulsification of the lipids)
Secretin
Cholecystokinin
Hormonal Regulation
Hormonal Regulation
produces
Digestive products
Free fatty acids (medium- and short-chain)
2-Monoacylglycerol
Cholesterol
Free fatty acids (long-chain)
Bile salts
Fat-soluble vitamins
produces
Mixed micelles
facilitate absorption of dietary lipids by
INTESTINAL MUCOSAL CELLS (ENTEROCYTES)
absorbed directly into
assemble
Lipids (with characteristic protein, apo B-48)
to form
Chylomicrons
Concept connect
Cholesterol and Steroid Metabolism
18
secreted into
LYMPHATIC SYSTEM
which transports them to
BLOOD
which transports them to
PERIPHERAL TISSUES (EXCLUDING THE BRAIN)

Figure 15.8
Key concept map for metabolism of dietary lipids. apo = apolipoprotein; TAGs = triacylglycerols.

III. CHAPTER SUMMARY

The digestion of **dietary lipids** begins in the **stomach** and continues in the **small intestine** (Figure 15.8). The **hydrophobic nature** of lipids requires that the dietary lipids—particularly those that contain long-chain length fatty acids (LCFA)—be **emulsified** for efficient degradation. Triacylglycerols (TAG) obtained from milk contain **short-** to **medium-chain length fatty acids** that can be degraded in the **stomach** by the acid lipases (**lingual lipase** and **gastric lipase**). Cholesteryl esters (CE), phospholipids (PL), and TAG containing LCFAs are degraded in the **small intestine** by enzymes secreted by the **pancreas**. The most important of these enzymes are **pancreatic lipase**, **phospholipase A_2**, and **cholesteryl esterase**. The dietary lipids are **emulsified** in the small intestine using **peristaltic action**, and **bile salts**, which serve as a detergent. The primary products resulting from enzymatic degradation of dietary lipid are **2-monoacylglycerol**, unesterified **cholesterol**, and **free fatty acids**. These compounds, plus the fat-soluble vitamins, form **mixed micelles** that facilitate the absorption of dietary lipids by **intestinal mucosal cells** (**enterocytes**). These cells resynthesize TAG, CE, and PL, and also synthesize protein (**apolipoprotein B-48**), all of which are then assembled with the fat-soluble vitamins into **chylomicrons**. These **serum lipoprotein** particles are released into the **lymph**, which carries them to the **blood**. Short- and medium chain fatty acids enter blood directly. Thus, dietary lipids are transported to the peripheral tissues. Problems with fat absorption cause steatorrhea. A deficiency in the ability to degrade chylomicron components, or remove their remnants after TAG has been removed, results in accumulation of these particles in blood.

Study Questions

15.1 Which one of the following statements about the digestion of lipids is correct?

A. Lipid digestion begins with acid-stable lipases that primarily use TAG with long to very long-chain fatty acids as substrates.

B. Large lipid droplets are emulsified (have their surface area increased) in the mouth through the act of chewing (mastication).

C. Colipase facilitates the binding of bile salts to mixed micelles, maximizing the activity of pancreatic lipase.

D. The peptide hormone secretin causes the gallbladder to contract and release bile.

E. Patients with cystic fibrosis have difficulties with digestion because their thickened pancreatic secretions are less able to reach the small intestine, the primary site of lipid digestion.

F. Formation of chylomicrons is independent of protein synthesis in the intestinal mucosa.

Correct answer = E. Patients with CF, a genetic disease due to a deficiency of functional CFTR, have thickened secretions that impede the flow of pancreatic enzymes into the duodenum. The acid-stable lipases, lingual and gastric lipase, use as substrates TAG with short to medium-chain fatty acids that are abundant in milk. Emulsification occurs through peristalsis that provides mechanical mixing, and bile salts that function as detergents. Colipase restores activity to pancreatic lipase in the presence of inhibitory bile acids that bind the micelles. CCK (cholecystokinin) is the hormone that causes contraction of the gallbladder and release of stored bile; secretin causes release of bicarbonate. Chylomicron formation requires synthesis of the protein apolipoprotein B-48.

15.2 Which one of the following statements about the absorption of lipids from the intestine is correct?

A. Dietary triacylglycerol must be completely hydrolyzed to free fatty acids and glycerol before absorption.

B. The TAG carried by chylomicrons is degraded to free fatty acids and glycerol by lipoprotein lipase on the endothelial surface of capillaries in muscle and adipose primarily.

C. Fatty acids that contain ten carbons or less are absorbed and enter the circulation primarily via the lymphatic system.

D. Deficiencies in the ability to absorb fat result in excessive amounts of chylomicrons in the blood.

Correct answer = B. The TAG in chylomicrons are degraded to fatty acids and glycerol by lipoprotein lipase on the endothelial surface of capillaries in muscle and adipose, thus providing a source of fatty acids to these tissues for degradation or storage. In the duodenum, TAG are degraded to 1 monoacylglycerol + 2 free fatty acids that get absorbed. Medium and short chain fatty acids enter directly into blood; they do not get packaged into chylomicrons. Chylomicrons contain dietary lipids that were digested and absorbed, thus a defect in fat absorption would result in decreased production of chylomicrons.

Fatty Acid and Triacylglycerol Metabolism

16

I. OVERVIEW

Fatty acids exist “free” in the body (that is, they are unesterified), and are also found as fatty acyl esters in more complex molecules, such as triacylglycerols. Low levels of free fatty acids occur in all tissues, but substantial amounts can sometimes be found in the plasma, particularly during fasting. Plasma free fatty acids (transported on serum albumin) are in route from their point of origin (triacylglycerol of adipose tissue or circulating lipoproteins) to their site of consumption (most tissues). Free fatty acids can be oxidized by many tissues—particularly liver and muscle—to provide energy. Fatty acids are also structural components of membrane lipids, such as phospholipids and glycolipids (see p. 201). Fatty acids are attached to certain intracellular proteins to enhance the ability of those proteins to associate with membranes (see p. 206). Fatty acids are also precursors of the hormone-like prostaglandins (see p. 213). Esterified fatty acids, in the form of triacylglycerols stored in adipose cells, serve as the major energy reserve of the body. Figure 16.1 illustrates the metabolic pathways of fatty acid synthesis and degradation, and their relationship to carbohydrate metabolism.

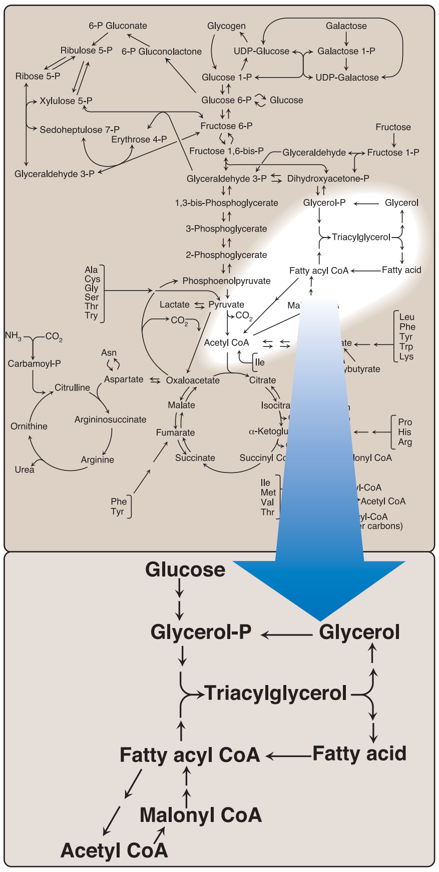


Figure 16.1
Triacylglycerol synthesis and degradation.

II. STRUCTURE OF FATTY ACIDS

A fatty acid consists of a hydrophobic hydrocarbon chain with a terminal carboxyl group that has a pK_a of about 4.8 (Figure 16.2). At physiologic pH, the terminal carboxyl group (–COOH) ionizes, becoming $–COO^-$. This anionic group has an affinity for water, giving the fatty acid its amphipathic nature (having both a hydrophilic and a hydrophobic region). However, for long-chain fatty acids (LCFAs), the hydrophobic portion is predominant. These molecules are highly water-insoluble, and must be transported in the circulation in association with protein. More than 90% of the fatty acids found in plasma are in the form of fatty acid esters (primarily triacylglycerol, cholesteryl esters, and phospholipids) contained in circulating lipoprotein particles (see p. 227). Unesterified (free) fatty acids are transported in the circulation in association with albumin.

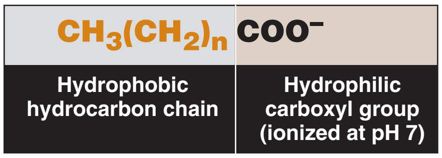

$CH_3(CH_2)_n$
COO^-
Hydrophobic hydrocarbon chain
Hydrophilic carboxyl group (ionized at pH 7)

Figure 16.2
Structure of a fatty acid.

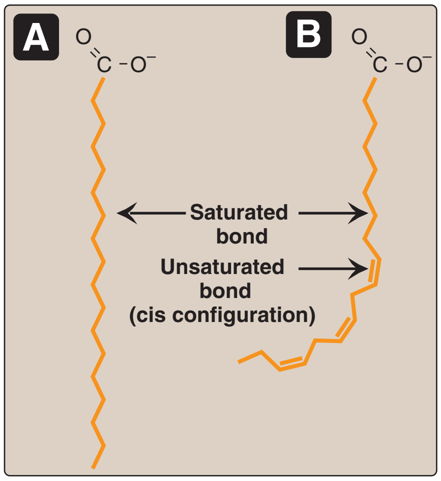


Figure 16.3
A saturated (A) and an unsaturated (B) fatty acid. Orange denotes hydrophobic portions of the molecules. [Note: Cis double bonds cause a fatty acid to "kink."]

A. Saturation of fatty acids

Fatty acid chains may contain no double bonds—that is, be saturated—or contain one or more double bonds—that is, be mono- or polyunsaturated. When double bonds are present, they are nearly always in the cis rather than in the trans configuration. (See p. 363 for a discussion of the dietary occurrence of cis and trans unsaturated fatty acids.) The introduction of a cis double bond causes the fatty acid to bend or "kink" at that position (Figure 16.3). If the fatty acid has two or more double bonds, they are always spaced at three-carbon intervals. [Note: In general, addition of double bonds decreases the melting temperature (T_m) of a fatty acid, whereas increasing the chain length increases the T_m. Because membrane lipids typically contain LCFA, the presence of double bonds in some fatty acids helps maintain the fluid nature of those lipids.]

B. Chain lengths of fatty acids

The common names and structures of some fatty acids of physiologic importance are listed in Figure 16.4. The carbon atoms are numbered, beginning with the carboxyl carbon as carbon 1. The number before the colon indicates the number of carbons in the chain, and those after the colon indicate the numbers and positions (relative to the carboxyl end) of double bonds. For example, as shown in Figure 16.5A, arachidonic acid, 20:4(5,8,11,14), is 20 carbons long and has 4 double bonds (between carbons 5–6, 8–9, 11–12, and 14–15). [Note: Carbon 2, the carbon to which the carboxyl group is attached, is also called the α-carbon, carbon 3 is the β-carbon, and carbon 4 is the γ-carbon. The carbon of the terminal methyl group is called the ω-carbon regardless of the chain length.] The double bonds in a fatty acid can also be denoted relative to the ω (or methyl-terminal) end of the chain. Arachidonic acid is referred to as an ω-6 fatty acid acid (also an n-6, Figure 16.5A) because the terminal double bond is six bonds in from the ω end (Figure 16.5B). Another ω-6 fatty acid is the essential linoleic acid, 18:2(9,12). In contrast, α-linolenic acid, 18:3(9,12,15), is an essential ω-3 fatty acid. (See p. 363 for a discussion of the nutritional significance of ω-3 and ω-6 fatty acids.)

Fatty acids with chain lengths of four to ten carbons are found in significant quantities in milk.

Structural lipids and triacylglycerols contain primarily fatty acids of at least 16 carbons.

COMMON NAME	STRUCTURE
Formic acid	1
Acetic acid	2:0
Propionic acid	3:0
Butyric acid	4:0
Capric acid	10:0
Palmitic acid	16:0
Palmitoleic acid	16:1(9)
Stearic acid	18:0
Oleic acid	18:1(9)
Linoleic acid	18:2(9,12)
α-Linolenic acid	18:3(9,12,15)
Arachidonic acid	20:4(5, 8,11,14)
Lignoceric acid	24:0
Nervonic acid	24:1(15)

Precursor of prostaglandins

Essential fatty acids

Figure 16.4
Some fatty acids of physiologic importance.

C. Essential fatty acids

Two fatty acids are dietary essentials in humans because of our inability to synthesize them: linoleic acid, which is the precursor of ω-6 arachidonic acid, the substrate for prostaglandin synthesis (see p. 213), and α-linolenic acid, the precursor of other ω-3 fatty acids important for growth and development. Plants provide us with the essential fatty acids. [Note: Arachidonic acid becomes essential if linoleic acid is deficient in the diet.]

Essential fatty acid deficiency can result in a scaly dermatitis (ichthyosis), as well as visual and neurologic abnormalities. Essential fatty acid deficiency, however, is rare.

III. DE NOVO SYNTHESIS OF FATTY ACIDS

A large proportion of the fatty acids used by the body is supplied by the diet. Carbohydrates and protein obtained from the diet in excess of the body's needs for these compounds can be converted to fatty acids, which are stored as triacylglycerols. (See p. 321 for a discussion of the metabolism of dietary nutrients in the well-fed state.) In adult humans, fatty acid synthesis occurs primarily in the liver and lactating mammary glands and, to a lesser extent, in adipose tissue. This cytosolic process incorporates carbons from acetyl coenzyme A (CoA) into the growing fatty acid chain, using adenosine triphosphate (ATP) and reduced nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADPH).

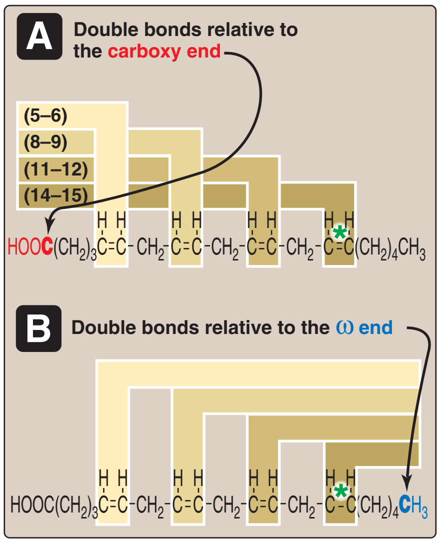

A
Double bonds relative to the carboxy end
(5–6)
(8–9)
(11–12)
(14–15)
H H H H H H H H
HOOC(CH2)3C=C-CH2-C=C-CH2-C=C-CH2-C=C(CH2)4CH3
*
B
Double bonds relative to the ω end
H H H H H H H H
HOOC(CH2)3C=C-CH2-C=C-CH2-C=C-CH2-C=C(CH2)4CH3
*

Figure 16.5
Arachidonic acid, illustrating the position of the double bonds. Arachidonic acid, 20:4(5,8,11,14) is an n-6 fatty acid because the double bond furthest from the carboxy end (carbon 1) is 14 carbons from that end: 20-14 = 6. It is also referred to as an ω-6 fatty acid because the terminal double bond is six bonds in from the ω end. Thus, the "ω" and "n" designations are equivalent (see *).

A. Production of cytosolic acetyl CoA

The first step in de novo fatty acid synthesis is the transfer of acetate units from mitochondrial acetyl CoA to the cytosol. Mitochondrial acetyl CoA is produced by the oxidation of pyruvate (see p. 109), and by the catabolism of fatty acids (see p. 190), ketone bodies (see p. 196), and certain amino acids (see p. 266). The CoA portion of acetyl CoA, however, cannot cross the inner mitochondrial membrane; only the acetyl portion enters the cytosol. It does so as part of citrate produced by the condensation of oxaloacetate (OAA) and acetyl CoA (Figure 16.6). [Note: This process of translocation of citrate from the mitochondrion to the cytosol, where it is cleaved by *ATP-citrate lyase* to produce cytosolic acetyl CoA and OAA, occurs when the mitochondrial citrate concentration is high. This is observed when *isocitrate dehydrogenase* is inhibited by the presence of large amounts of ATP, causing citrate and isocitrate to accumulate (see p. 112). Therefore, cytosolic citrate may be viewed as a high-energy signal.] Because a large amount of ATP is needed for fatty acid synthesis, the increase in both ATP and citrate enhances this pathway.

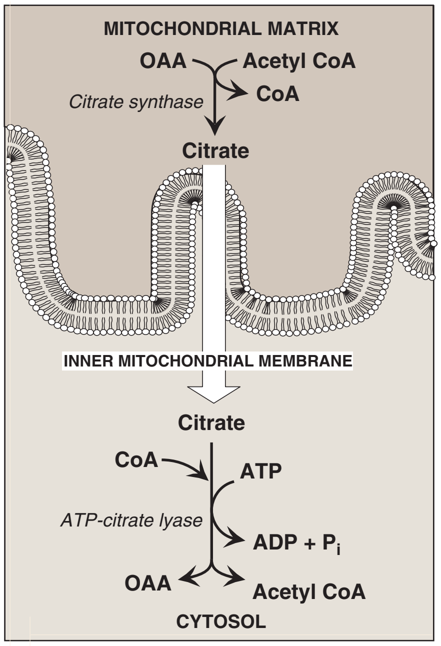


Figure 16.6
Production of cytosolic acetyl CoA.

B. Carboxylation of acetyl CoA to form malonyl CoA

The energy for the carbon-to-carbon condensations in fatty acid synthesis is supplied by the process of carboxylation and then decarboxylation of acetyl groups in the cytosol. The carboxylation of acetyl CoA to form malonyl CoA is catalyzed by *acetyl CoA carboxylase* (Figure 16.7), and requires CO_2 and ATP. The coenzyme is the vitamin, biotin, which is covalently bound to a lysyl residue of the *carboxylase* (see Figure 28.16).

1. **Short-term regulation of acetyl CoA carboxylase (ACC):** This carboxylation is both the rate-limiting and the regulated step in fatty acid synthesis (see Figure 16.7). The inactive form of *ACC* is a protomer (dimer). The enzyme undergoes allosteric activation by citrate, which causes dimers to polymerize, and allosteric inactivation by long-chain fatty acyl CoA (the end product of the pathway), which causes its depolymerization. A second mechanism of short-term regulation is by reversible phosphorylation. *AMP-activated protein kinase* (*AMPK*) phosphorylates and inactivates *ACC*. *AMPK* itself is allosterically activated by AMP and covalently activated by phosphorylation via several *kinases*. At least one of these

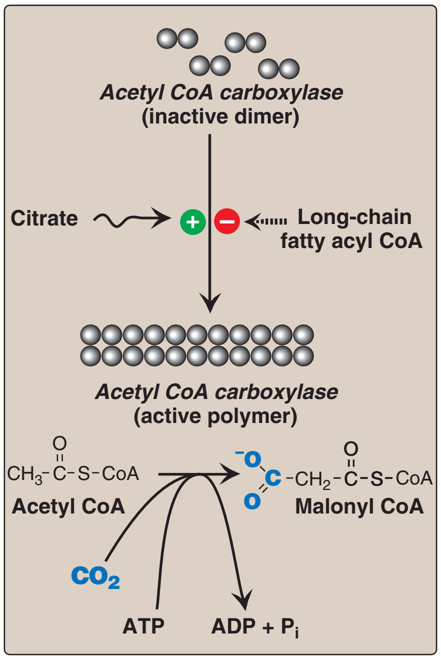

Acetyl CoA carboxylase
(inactive dimer)
Citrate
Long-chain fatty acyl CoA
Acetyl CoA carboxylase
(active polymer)
CH3-C-S-CoA
Acetyl CoA
-O-C-CH2-C-S-CoA
Malonyl CoA
CO2
ATP
ADP + Pi

Figure 16.7
Allosteric regulation of malonyl CoA synthesis by *acetyl CoA carboxylase* (*ACC*).The carboxyl group contributed by dissolved CO_2 is shown in blue.

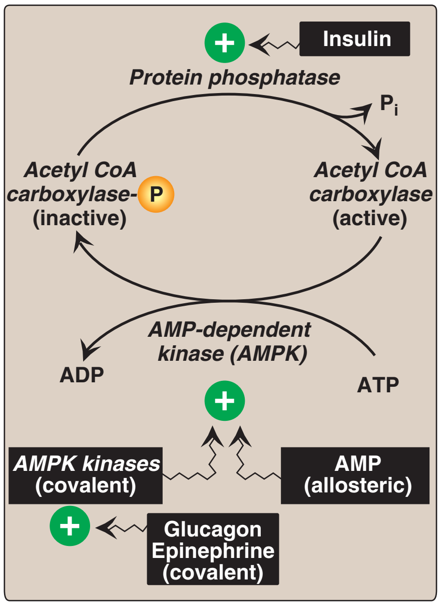

Insulin
Protein phosphatase
Pi
Acetyl CoA carboxylase-P (inactive)
Acetyl CoA carboxylase (active)
AMP-dependent kinase (AMPK)
ADP
ATP
AMPK kinases (covalent)
AMP (allosteric)
Glucagon
Epinephrine
(covalent)

Figure 16.8
Covalent regulation (phosphorylation) of *acetyl CoA carboxylase* (*ACC*) by *AMP-dependent kinase* (*AMPK*), which itself is regulated both covalently and allosterically.

AMPK kinases is activated by *cAMP-dependent protein kinase A* (*PKA*). Thus, in the presence of counterregulatory hormones, such as epinephrine and glucagon, *ACC* is phosphorylated and, thereby, inactivated (Figure 16.8). In the presence of insulin, *ACC* is dephosphorylated and, thereby, activated. [Note: This is analogous to the regulation of *glycogen synthase*, see p. 131.]

2. **Long-term regulation of acetyl CoA carboxylase:** Prolonged consumption of a diet containing excess calories (particularly high-calorie, high-carbohydrate diets) causes an increase in *ACC* synthesis, thus increasing fatty acid synthesis. Conversely, a low-calorie or a high-fat diet causes a reduction in fatty acid synthesis by decreasing the synthesis of *ACC*. [Note: Synthesis of the *carboxylase* is upregulated by insulin via a sterol response element binding protein, SREBP-1. The function and regulation of SREBPs are described on p. 222. *Fatty acid synthase* (see below) is similarly regulated by diet and SREBP-1.] Metformin, used in the treatment of type 2 diabetes, lowers serum TAG through activation of *AMPK* resulting in inhibition of *ACC* activity (by phosphorylation) and inhibition of *ACC* and *fatty acid synthase* expression (by decreasing SREBP-1). Metformin also lowers blood glucose by increasing *AMPK*-mediated uptake of glucose by muscle.

C. Fatty acid synthase: a multifunctional enzyme in eukaryotes

The remaining series of reactions of fatty acid synthesis in eukaryotes is catalyzed by the multifunctional, dimeric enzyme, *fatty acid synthase* (*FAS*). Each *FAS* monomer is a multicatalytic polypeptide with seven different enzymic activities plus a domain that covalently binds a molecule of 4'-phosphopantetheine. [Note: 4'-Phosphopantetheine, a derivative of the vitamin pantothenic acid (see p. 381), carries acyl units on its terminal thiol (–SH) group during fatty acid synthesis. It also is a component of CoA.] In prokaryotes, *FAS* is a multienzyme complex, and the 4'-phosphopantetheine domain is a separate protein, referred to as the acyl carrier protein (ACP). ACP is used below to refer to the phosphopantetheine-containing domain of eukaryotic *FAS*. The reaction numbers in brackets below refer to Figure 16.9. [Note: The enzyme activities listed are separate catalytic domains present in each multicatalytic *FAS* monomer.]

[1] A molecule of acetate is transferred from acetyl CoA to the –SH group of the ACP. Domain: *Acetyl CoA-ACP acetyltransacylase.*

[2] Next, this two-carbon fragment is transferred to a temporary holding site, the thiol group of a cysteine residue on the enzyme.

[3] The now-vacant ACP accepts a three-carbon malonate unit from malonyl CoA. Domain: *Malonyl CoA-ACP transacylase.*

[4] The acetyl group on the cysteine residue condenses with the malonyl group on ACP as the CO_2 originally added by *acetyl CoA carboxylase* is released. The result is a four-carbon unit attached to the ACP domain. The loss of free energy from the decarboxylation drives the reaction. Domain: *3-Ketoacyl-ACP synthase.*

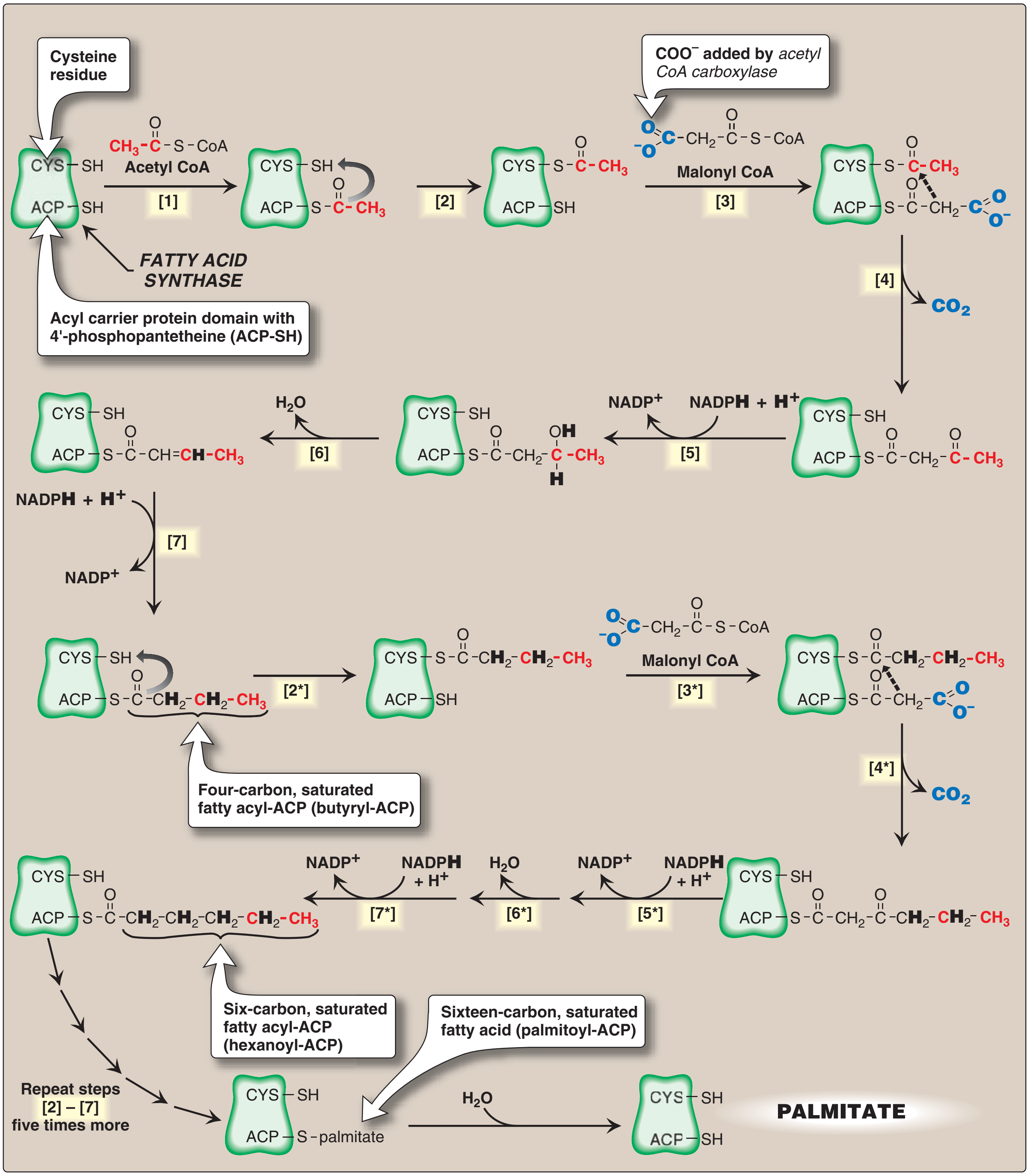

Cysteine residue
COO⁻ added by acetyl CoA carboxylase
CYS–SH
ACP–SH
Acetyl CoA
[1]
[2]
Malonyl CoA
[3]
[4]
CO2
FATTY ACID SYNTHASE
Acyl carrier protein domain with 4'-phosphopantetheine (ACP-SH)
NADP+
NADPH + H+
[5]
H2O
[6]
[7]
[2*]
[3*]
[4*]
[5*]
[6*]
[7*]
Four-carbon, saturated fatty acyl-ACP (butyryl-ACP)
Six-carbon, saturated fatty acyl-ACP (hexanoyl-ACP)
Sixteen-carbon, saturated fatty acid (palmitoyl-ACP)
Repeat steps [2] – [7] five times more
ACP–S-palmitate
PALMITATE

Figure 16.9
Synthesis of palmitate (16:0) by multifunctional *fatty acid synthase* (*FAS*). [Note: Numbers in brackets correspond to bracketed numbers in the text. A second repetition of the steps is indicated by numbers with an asterisk (*). Carbons provided directly by acetyl CoA are shown in red.]

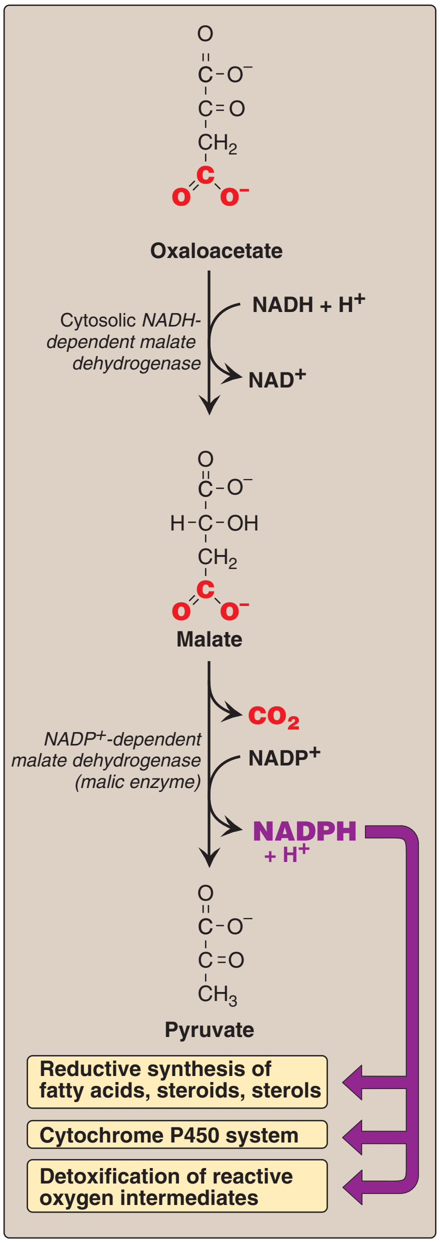

Oxaloacetate
Cytosolic NADH-dependent malate dehydrogenase
NADH + H+
NAD+
Malate
CO2
NADP+-dependent malate dehydrogenase (malic enzyme)
NADP+
NADPH + H+
Pyruvate
Reductive synthesis of fatty acids, steroids, sterols
Cytochrome P450 system
Detoxification of reactive oxygen intermediates

Figure 16.10
Cytosolic conversion of oxaloacetate to pyruvate with the generation of NADPH. [Note: The pentose phosphate pathway is the primary source of the NADPH.]

The next three reactions convert the 3-ketoacyl group to the corresponding saturated acyl group by a pair of reductions requiring NADPH and a dehydration step.

[5] The keto group is reduced to an alcohol. Domain: *3-Ketoacyl-ACP reductase.*

[6] A molecule of water is removed to introduce a double bond between carbons 2 and 3 (the α- and β-carbons). Domain: *3-Hydroxyacyl-ACP dehydratase.*

[7] The double bond is reduced. Domain: *Enoyl-ACP reductase.*

The result of these seven steps is production of a four-carbon compound (butyryl) whose three terminal carbons are fully saturated, and which remains attached to the ACP. These seven steps are repeated, beginning with the transfer of the butyryl chain from the ACP to the Cys residue [2*], the attachment of a molecule of malonate to the ACP [3*], and the condensation of the two molecules liberating CO_2 [4*]. The carbonyl group at the β-carbon (carbon 3—the third carbon from the sulfur) is then reduced [5*], dehydrated [6*], and reduced [7*], generating hexanoyl-ACP. This cycle of reactions is repeated five more times, each time incorporating a two-carbon unit (derived from malonyl CoA) into the growing fatty acid chain at the carboxyl end. When the fatty acid reaches a length of 16 carbons, the synthetic process is terminated with palmitoyl-S-ACP. [Note: Shorter-length fatty acids are important end-products in the lactating mammary gland.] *Palmitoyl thioesterase* cleaves the thioester bond, releasing a fully saturated molecule of palmitate (16:0). [Note: All the carbons in palmitic acid have passed through malonyl CoA except the two donated by the original acetyl CoA, which are found at the methyl-group (ω) end of the fatty acid. This underscores the rate-limiting nature of the *acetyl CoA carboxylase* reaction.]

D. Major sources of the NADPH required for fatty acid synthesis

The hexose monophosphate pathway (see p. 145) is the major supplier of NADPH for fatty acid synthesis. Two NADPH are produced for each molecule of glucose that enters this pathway. The cytosolic conversion of malate to pyruvate, in which malate is oxidized and decarboxylated by cytosolic *malic enzyme* (*NADP+-dependent malate dehydrogenase*), also produces cytosolic NADPH (and CO_2, Figure 16.10). [Note: Malate can arise from the reduction of OAA by cytosolic *NADH-dependent malate dehydrogenase* (see Figure 16.10). One source of the cytosolic NADH required for this reaction is that produced during glycolysis (see p. 101). OAA, in turn, can arise from citrate. Recall from Figure 16.6 that citrate was shown to move from the mitochondria into the cytosol, where it is cleaved into acetyl CoA and OAA by *ATP-citrate lyase*.] A summary of the interrelationship between glucose metabolism and palmitate synthesis is shown in Figure 16.11.

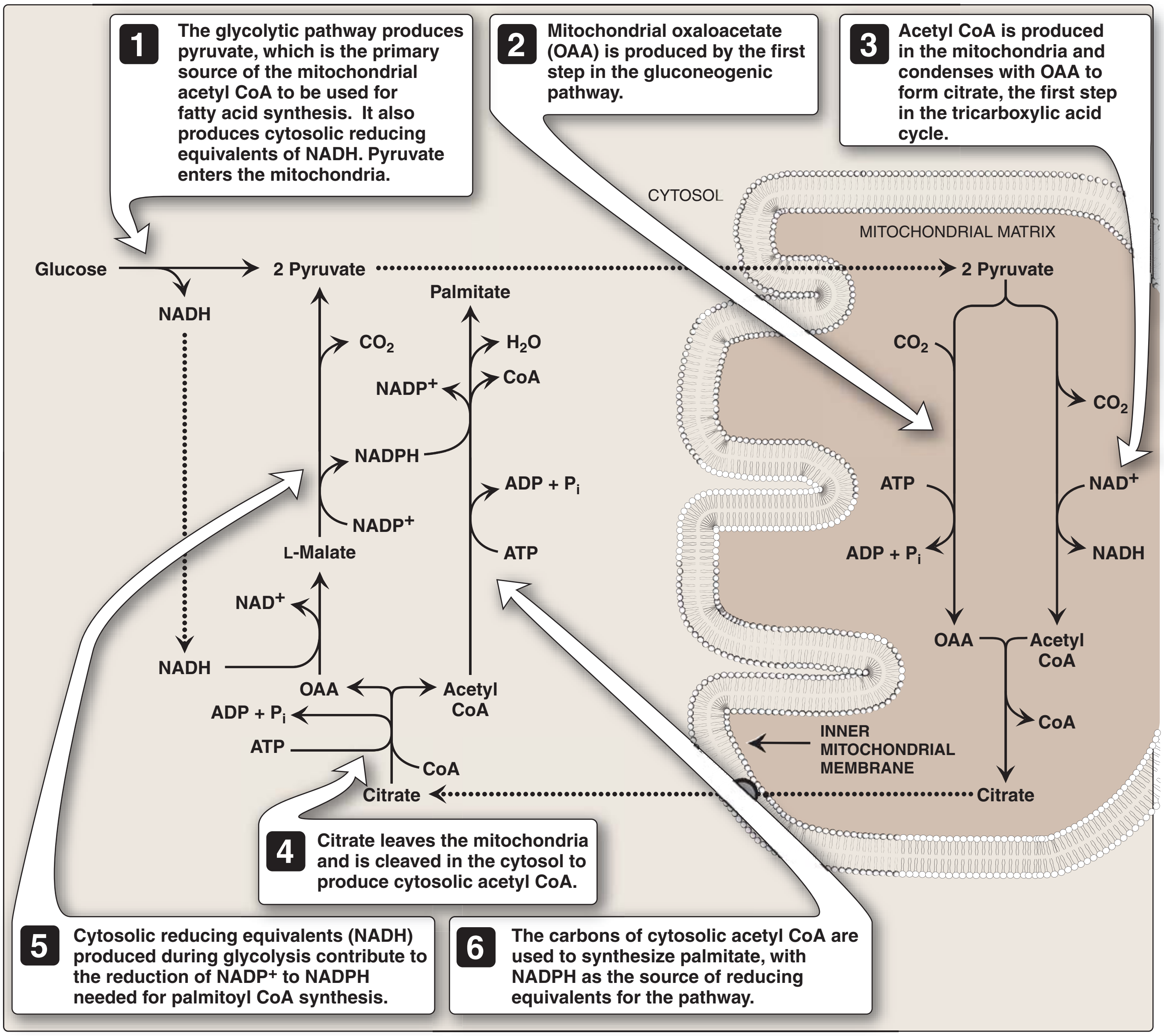

1
The glycolytic pathway produces pyruvate, which is the primary source of the mitochondrial acetyl CoA to be used for fatty acid synthesis. It also produces cytosolic reducing equivalents of NADH. Pyruvate enters the mitochondria.
2
Mitochondrial oxaloacetate (OAA) is produced by the first step in the gluconeogenic pathway.
3
Acetyl CoA is produced in the mitochondria and condenses with OAA to form citrate, the first step in the tricarboxylic acid cycle.
CYTOSOL
MITOCHONDRIAL MATRIX
Glucose
2 Pyruvate
NADH
Palmitate
CO2
H2O
NADP+
CoA
NADPH
ADP + Pi
NADP+
L-Malate
ATP
NAD+
NADH
OAA
Acetyl CoA
ADP + Pi
ATP
CoA
Citrate
2 Pyruvate
CO2
CO2
ATP
NAD+
ADP + Pi
NADH
OAA
Acetyl CoA
CoA
INNER MITOCHONDRIAL MEMBRANE
Citrate
4
Citrate leaves the mitochondria and is cleaved in the cytosol to produce cytosolic acetyl CoA.
5
Cytosolic reducing equivalents (NADH) produced during glycolysis contribute to the reduction of NADP+ to NADPH needed for palmitoyl CoA synthesis.
6
The carbons of cytosolic acetyl CoA are used to synthesize palmitate, with NADPH as the source of reducing equivalents for the pathway.

Figure 16.11
Interrelationship between glucose metabolism and palmitate synthesis.

E. Further elongation of fatty acid chains

Although palmitate, a 16-carbon, fully saturated long-chain length fatty acid (16:0), is the primary endproduct of *fatty acid synthase* activity, it can be further elongated by the addition of two-carbon units in the smooth endoplasmic reticulum (SER). Elongation requires a system of separate enzymes rather than a multifunctional enzyme. Malonyl CoA is the two-carbon donor and NADPH supplies the electrons. The brain has additional elongation capabilities, allowing it to produce the very-long-chain fatty acids (over 22 carbons) that are required for synthesis of brain lipids.

F. Desaturation of fatty acid chains

Enzymes (*desaturases*) also present in the SER are responsible for desaturating long-chain fatty acids (that is, adding cis double bonds). The desaturation reactions require NADH, cytochrome b_5 and its FAD-linked *reductase*. The first double bond is typically inserted between carbons 9 and 10, producing primarily 18:1(9) and small amounts of 16:1(9). A variety of polyunsaturated fatty acids can be made through additional desaturation combined with elongation.

Humans have carbon 9, 6, 5 and 4 *desaturases*, but lack the ability to introduce double bonds from carbon 10 to the ω end of the chain. This is the basis for the nutritional essentiality of the polyunsaturated linoleic and linolenic acids.

G. Storage of fatty acids as components of triacylglycerols

Mono-, di-, and triacylglycerols consist of one, two, or three molecules of fatty acid esterified to a molecule of glycerol. Fatty acids are esterified through their carboxyl groups, resulting in a loss of negative charge and formation of "neutral fat." [Note: If a species of acylglycerol is solid at room temperature, it is called a "fat"; if liquid, it is called an "oil."]

1. **Structure of triacylglycerol (TAG):** The three fatty acids esterified to a glycerol molecule are usually not of the same type. The fatty acid on carbon 1 is typically saturated, that on carbon 2 is typically unsaturated, and that on carbon 3 can be either. Recall that the presence of the unsaturated fatty acid(s) decrease(s) the melting temperature (T_m) of the lipid. An example of a TAG molecule is shown in Figure 16.12.

2. **Storage of TAG:** Because TAGs are only slightly soluble in water and cannot form stable micelles by themselves, they coalesce within adipocytes to form oily droplets that are nearly anhydrous. These cytosolic lipid droplets are the major energy reserve of the body.

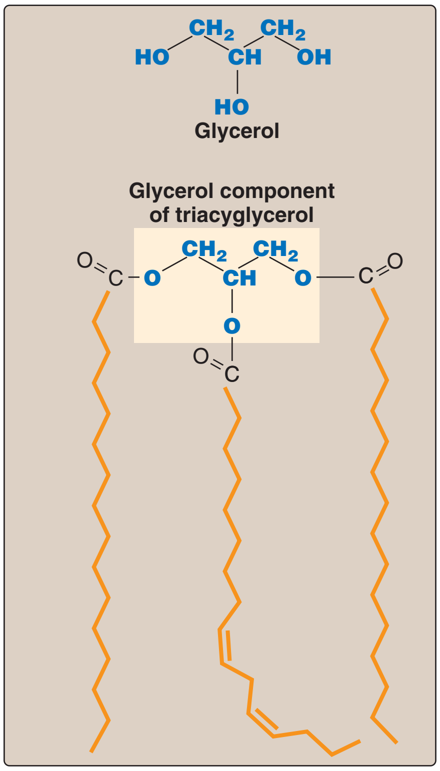

Glycerol
Glycerol component of triacyglycerol

Figure 16.12
A triacylglycerol with an unsaturated fatty acid on carbon 2.

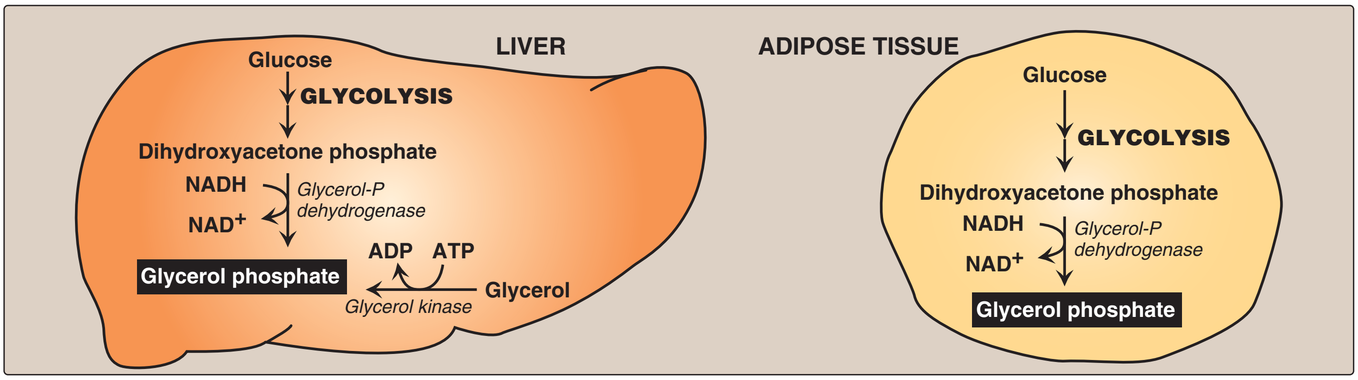

LIVER
Glucose
GLYCOLYSIS
Dihydroxyacetone phosphate
NADH
NAD+
Glycerol-P dehydrogenase
Glycerol phosphate
ADP
ATP
Glycerol
Glycerol kinase
ADIPOSE TISSUE
Glucose
GLYCOLYSIS
Dihydroxyacetone phosphate
NADH
NAD+
Glycerol-P dehydrogenase
Glycerol phosphate

Figure 16.13
Pathways for production of glycerol phosphate in liver and adipose tissue.

3. **Synthesis of glycerol phosphate:** Glycerol phosphate is the initial acceptor of fatty acids during TAG synthesis. There are two pathways for glycerol phosphate production (Figure 16.13). In both liver (the primary site of TAG synthesis) and adipose tissue, glycerol phosphate can be produced from glucose, using first the reactions of the glycolytic pathway to produce dihydroxyacetone phosphate (DHAP, see p. 101). Next, DHAP is reduced by *glycerol phosphate dehydrogenase* to glycerol phosphate. A second pathway found in the liver, but not in adipose tissue, uses *glycerol kinase* to convert free glycerol to glycerol phosphate (see Figure 16.13). [Note: The glucose transporter in adipocytes (GLUT-4) is insulin-dependent (see p. 312). Thus, when plasma glucose—and, therefore, plasma insulin—levels are low, adipocytes have only a limited ability to synthesize glycerol phosphate, and cannot produce TAG.]

4. **Conversion of a free fatty acid to its activated form:** A fatty acid must be converted to its activated form (attached to CoA) before it can participate in metabolic processes such as TAG synthesis. This reaction, illustrated in Figure 15.6, is catalyzed by a family of *fatty acyl CoA synthetases* (*thiokinases*).

5. **Synthesis of a molecule of TAG from glycerol phosphate and fatty acyl CoA:** This pathway involves four reactions, shown in Figure 16.14. These include the sequential addition of two fatty acids from fatty acyl CoA, the removal of phosphate, and the addition of the third fatty acid.

H. Different fates of TAG in the liver and adipose tissue

In white adipose tissue, TAG is stored in a nearly anhydrous form as fat droplets in the cytosol of the cells. It serves as "depot fat," ready for mobilization when the body requires it for fuel. Little TAG is stored in the liver. Instead, most is exported, packaged with other lipids and apoproteins to form lipoprotein particles called very-low-density lipoproteins (VLDL). Nascent VLDL are secreted directly into the blood where they mature and function to deliver the endogenously derived lipids to the peripheral tissues. [Note: Recall that chylomicrons deliver primarily dietary (exogenously derived) lipids.] Plasma lipoproteins are discussed in Chapter 18.

IV. MOBILIZATION OF STORED FATS AND OXIDATION OF FATTY ACIDS

Fatty acids stored in adipose tissue, in the form of neutral TAG, serve as the body's major fuel storage reserve. TAGs provide concentrated stores of metabolic energy because they are highly reduced and largely anhydrous. The yield from the complete oxidation of fatty acids to CO_2 and H_2O is 9 kcal/g fat (as compared to 4 kcal/g protein or carbohydrate, see Figure 27.5). [Note: Fatty acids are also supplied to tissues by lipoproteins (see p. 228).]

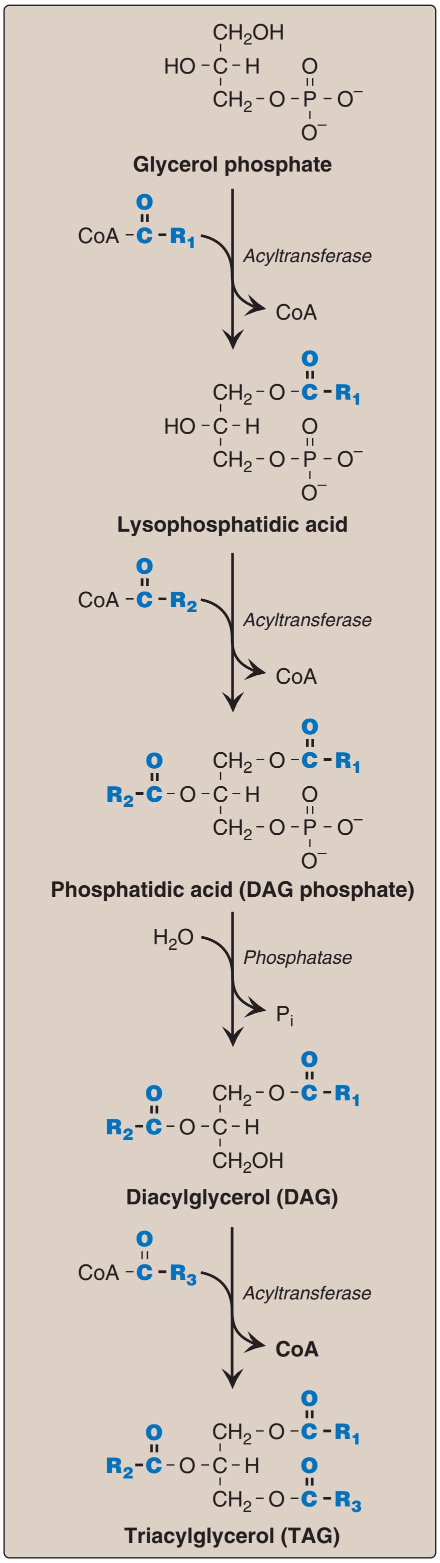


Figure 16.14
Synthesis of triacylglycerol.

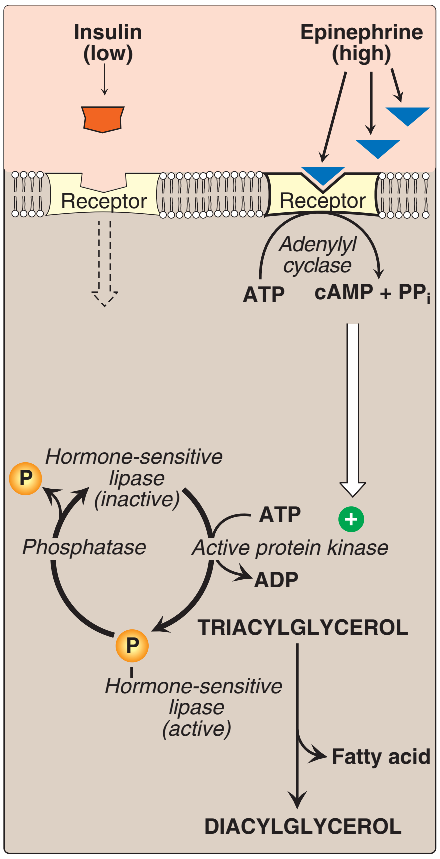


Figure 16.15
Hormonal regulation of triacylglycerol degradation in the adipocyte.

A. Release of fatty acids from TAG

The mobilization of stored fat requires the hydrolytic release of fatty acids and glycerol from their TAG form. This process is initiated by *hormone-sensitive lipase*, which removes a fatty acid from carbon 1 and/or carbon 3 of the TAG. Additional *lipases* specific for diacylglycerol or monoacylglycerol remove the remaining fatty acid(s).

1. **Activation of hormone-sensitive lipase (HSL):** This enzyme is activated when phosphorylated by a *3′,5′-cyclic AMP(cAMP)–dependent protein kinase*. 3',5'-Cyclic AMP is produced in the adipocyte when one of several hormones (such as epinephrine or glucagon) binds to receptors on the cell membrane, and activates *adenylyl cyclase* (Figure 16.15). The process is similar to that of the activation of *glycogen phosphorylase* (see Figure 11.10). [Note: Because *acetyl CoA carboxylase* is inhibited by hormone-directed phosphorylation when the cAMP-mediated cascade is activated (see Figure 16.8), fatty acid synthesis is turned off when TAG degradation is turned on.] In the presence of high plasma levels of insulin and glucose, *HSL* is dephosphorylated, and becomes inactive.

2. **Fate of glycerol:** The glycerol released during TAG degradation cannot be metabolized by adipocytes because they apparently lack *glycerol kinase*. Rather, glycerol is transported through the blood to the liver, where it can be phosphorylated. The resulting glycerol phosphate can be used to form TAG in the liver, or can be converted to DHAP by reversal of the *glycerol phosphate dehydrogenase* reaction illustrated in Figure 16.13. DHAP can participate in glycolysis or gluconeogenesis.

3. **Fate of fatty acids:** The free (unesterified) fatty acids move through the cell membrane of the adipocyte, and bind to plasma albumin. They are transported to the tissues, enter cells, get activated to their CoA derivatives, and are oxidized for energy. Regardless of their levels, plasma free fatty acids (FFA) cannot be used for fuel by erythrocytes, which have no mitochondria. Brain, too, does not use fatty acids for energy, but the reasons are less clear. [Note: Over 50% of the fatty acids released from adipose TAG are reesterified to glycerol 3-phosphate. White adipose does not express *glycerol kinase*, and the phosphorylated glycerol is produced by glyceroneogenesis, an incomplete version of gluconeogenesis: pyruvate to PEP to OAA to DHAP to glycerol 3-phosphate. The process reduces plasma FFA, molecules associated with insulin resistance in type 2 diabetes and obesity (see p. 343).]

B. β-Oxidation of fatty acids

The major pathway for catabolism of fatty acids is a mitochondrial pathway called β-oxidation, in which two-carbon fragments are successively removed from the carboxyl end of the fatty acyl CoA, producing acetyl CoA, NADH, and $FADH_2$.

1. **Transport of long-chain fatty acids (LCFA) into the mitochondria:** After a LCFA enters a cell, it is converted in the cytosol to its CoA derivative by *long-chain fatty acyl CoA synthetase* (*thiokinase*), an enzyme of the outer mitochondrial membrane. Because β-oxida-

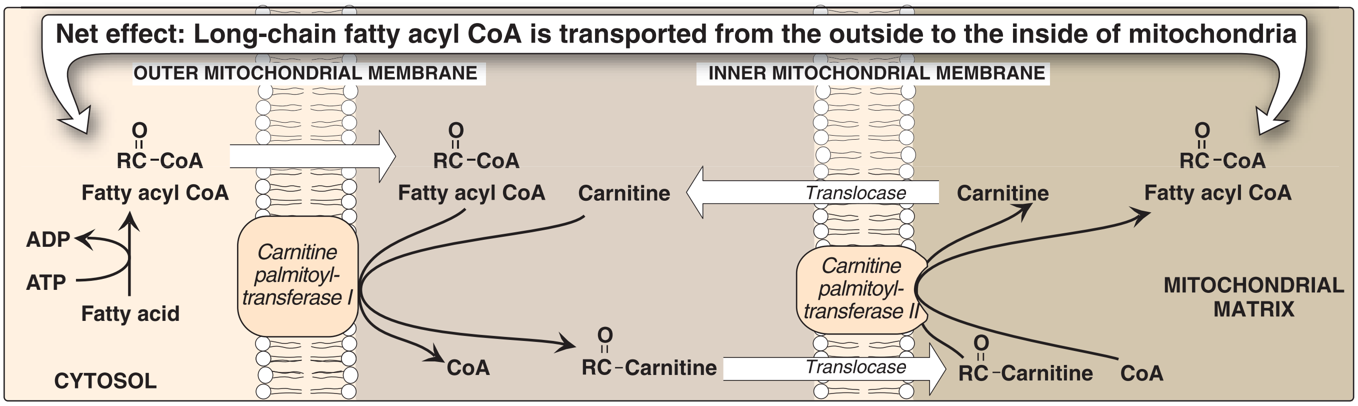

Net effect: Long-chain fatty acyl CoA is transported from the outside to the inside of mitochondria
OUTER MITOCHONDRIAL MEMBRANE
INNER MITOCHONDRIAL MEMBRANE
RC-CoA
Fatty acyl CoA
ADP
ATP
Fatty acid
Carnitine palmitoyl-transferase I
RC-CoA
Fatty acyl CoA
Carnitine
CoA
RC-Carnitine
Translocase
Carnitine palmitoyl-transferase II
Translocase
Carnitine
RC-CoA
Fatty acyl CoA
MITOCHONDRIAL MATRIX
RC-Carnitine
CoA
CYTOSOL

Figure 16.16
Carnitine shuttle. [Note: *Long-chain fatty acyl CoA synthetase* is in the outer mitochondrial membrane; active site faces the cytosol.]

tion occurs in the mitochondrial matrix, the fatty acid must be transported across the inner mitochondrial membrane that is impermeable to CoA. Therefore, a specialized carrier transports the long-chain acyl group from the cytosol into the mitochondrial matrix. This carrier is carnitine, and this rate-limiting transport process is called the carnitine shuttle (Figure 16.16).

a. **Steps in LCFA translocation:** First, the acyl group is transferred from CoA to carnitine by *carnitine palmitoyltransferase I* (*CPT-I*)—an enzyme of the outer mitochondrial membrane. [Note: *CPT-I* is also known as *CAT-I* for *carnitine acyltransferase I*.] This reaction forms acylcarnitine, and regenerates free CoA. Second, the acylcarnitine is transported into the mitochondrial matrix in exchange for free carnitine by *carnitine–acylcarnitine translocase*. *Carnitine palmitoyltransferase II* (*CPT-II*, or *CAT-II*)—an enzyme of the inner mitochondrial membrane—catalyzes the transfer of the acyl group from carnitine to CoA in the mitochondrial matrix, thus regenerating free carnitine.

b. **Inhibitor of the carnitine shuttle:** Malonyl CoA inhibits *CPT-I*, thus preventing the entry of long-chain acyl groups into the mitochondrial matrix. Therefore, when fatty acid synthesis is occurring in the cytosol (as indicated by the presence of malonyl CoA), the newly made palmitate cannot be transferred into the mitochondria and degraded. [Note: Muscle, though it does not synthesize fatty acids, contains the mitochondrial isoform of *acetyl CoA carboxylase* (*ACC2*), allowing muscle to regulate β-oxidation.] Fatty acid oxidation is also regulated by the acetyl CoA to CoA ratio: as the ratio increases, the CoA-requiring *thiolase* reaction decreases (Figure 16.17).

c. **Sources of carnitine:** Carnitine can be obtained from the diet, where it is found primarily in meat products. Carnitine can also be synthesized from the amino acids lysine and methionine by an enzymatic pathway found in the liver and kidney but not in skeletal or heart muscle. Therefore, these latter tissues are totally dependent on uptake of carnitine provided by endogenous synthesis or the diet, and distributed by the blood. [Note: Skeletal muscle contains about 97% of all carnitine in the body.]

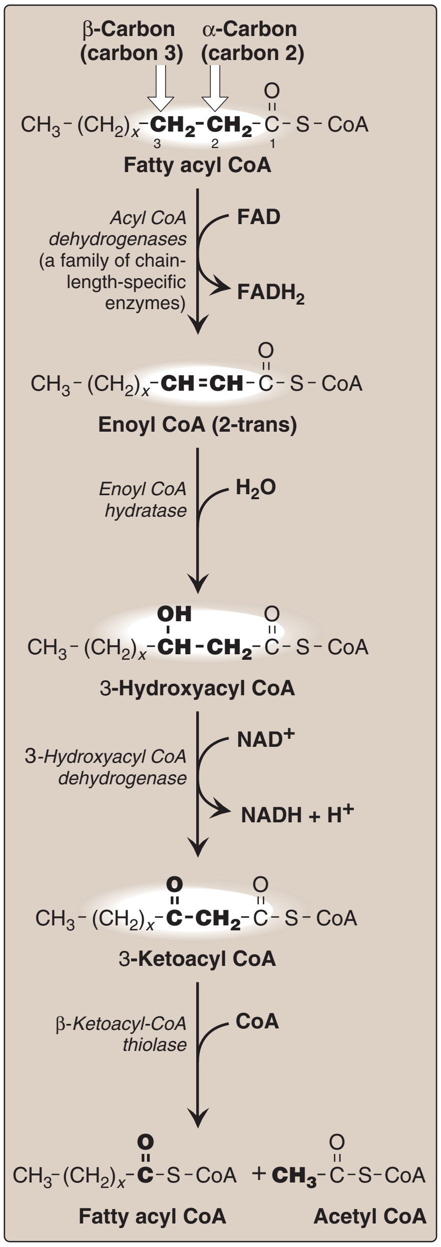

β-Carbon (carbon 3)
α-Carbon (carbon 2)
CH3-(CH2)x-CH2-CH2-C(=O)-S-CoA
3 2 1
Fatty acyl CoA
Acyl CoA dehydrogenases (a family of chain-length-specific enzymes)
FAD
FADH2
CH3-(CH2)x-CH=CH-C(=O)-S-CoA
Enoyl CoA (2-trans)
Enoyl CoA hydratase
H2O
CH3-(CH2)x-CH(OH)-CH2-C(=O)-S-CoA
3-Hydroxyacyl CoA
3-Hydroxyacyl CoA dehydrogenase
NAD+
NADH + H+
CH3-(CH2)x-C(=O)-CH2-C(=O)-S-CoA
3-Ketoacyl CoA
β-Ketoacyl-CoA thiolase
CoA
CH3-(CH2)x-C(=O)-S-CoA + CH3-C(=O)-S-CoA
Fatty acyl CoA
Acetyl CoA

Figure 16.17
Enzymes involved in the β-oxidation of fatty acyl CoA. [Note: *Enoyl CoA hydratase* requires a trans double bond between carbon 2 and carbon 3.]

d. Carnitine deficiencies: Such deficiencies result in a decreased ability of tissues to use LCFA as a metabolic fuel. Secondary carnitine deficiency occurs in many situations, including: 1) in patients with liver disease causing decreased synthesis of carnitine; 2) in individuals suffering from malnutrition or those on strictly vegetarian diets; 3) in those with an increased requirement for carnitine as a result of, for example, pregnancy, severe infections, burns, or trauma; or 4) in those undergoing hemodialysis, which removes carnitine from the blood. Congenital deficiencies in one of the components of the *carnitine palmitoyltransferase* system, in renal tubular reabsorption of carnitine, or in carnitine uptake by cells cause primary carnitine deficiency. Genetic *CPT-I* deficiency affects the liver, where an inability to use LCFA for fuel greatly impairs that tissue's ability to synthesize glucose during a fast. This can lead to severe hypoglycemia, coma, and death. *CPT-II* deficiency occurs primarily in cardiac and skeletal muscle, where symptoms of carnitine deficiency range from cardiomyopathy to muscle weakness with myoglobinemia following prolonged exercise. [Note: This is an example of how the impaired flow of a metabolite from one cell compartment to another results in pathology.] Treatment includes avoidance of prolonged fasts, adopting a diet high in carbohydrate and low in LCFA, but supplemented with medium-chain fatty acids and carnitine.

2. **Entry of short- and medium-chain fatty acids into the mitochondria:** Fatty acids shorter than 12 carbons can cross the inner mitochondrial membrane without the aid of carnitine or the *CPT* system. Once inside the mitochondria, they are activated to their CoA derivatives by matrix enzymes, and are oxidized. [Note: Medium-chain fatty acids are plentiful in human milk. Because their oxidation is not dependent on *CPT-I*, it is not subject to inhibition by malonyl CoA.]

3. **Reactions of β-oxidation:** The first cycle of β-oxidation is shown in Figure 16.17. It consists of a sequence of four reactions involving the β-carbon (carbon 3) that results in shortening the fatty acid chain by two carbons. The steps include an oxidation that produces $FADH_2$, a hydration step, a second oxidation that produces NADH, and a thiolytic cleavage that releases a molecule of acetyl CoA. Each step is catalyzed by enzymes with chain-length specificity. These four steps are repeated for saturated fatty acids of even-numbered carbon chains (n/2) – 1 times (where n is the number of carbons), each cycle producing an acetyl group plus one NADH and one $FADH_2$. The final thiolytic cleavage produces two acetyl groups. [Note: Acetyl CoA is a positive allosteric effector of *pyruvate carboxylase* (see p. 119), thus linking fatty acid oxidation and gluconeogenesis.]

4. **Energy yield from fatty acid oxidation:** The energy yield from the β-oxidation pathway is high. For example, the oxidation of a molecule of palmitoyl CoA to CO_2 and H_2O produces 8 acetyl CoA, 7 NADH, and 7 $FADH_2$, from which 131 ATP can be generated; however, activation of the fatty acid requires 2 ATP. Thus, the net yield from palmitate is 129 ATP (Figure 16.18). A comparison of the processes of synthesis and degradation of long-chain saturated fatty acids with an even number of carbon atoms is provided in Figure 16.19.

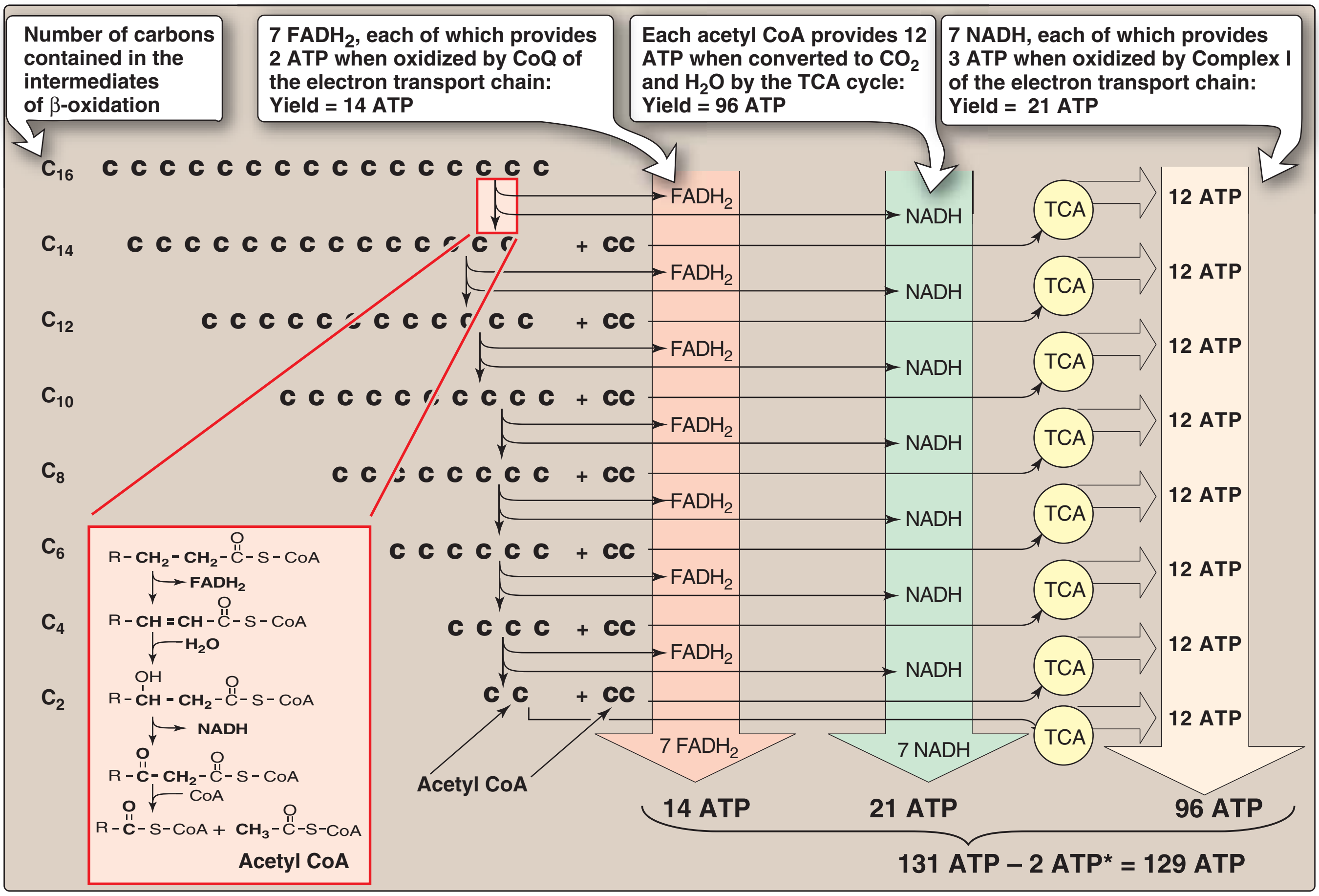

Number of carbons contained in the intermediates of β-oxidation
7 FADH2, each of which provides 2 ATP when oxidized by CoQ of the electron transport chain: Yield = 14 ATP
Each acetyl CoA provides 12 ATP when converted to CO2 and H2O by the TCA cycle: Yield = 96 ATP
7 NADH, each of which provides 3 ATP when oxidized by Complex I of the electron transport chain: Yield = 21 ATP
C16
C14
C12
C10
C8
C6
C4
C2
+ CC
FADH2
NADH
TCA
12 ATP
7 FADH2
7 NADH
Acetyl CoA
R-CH2-CH2-C(=O)-S-CoA
FADH2
R-CH=CH-C(=O)-S-CoA
H2O
R-CH(OH)-CH2-C(=O)-S-CoA
NADH
R-C(=O)-CH2-C(=O)-S-CoA
CoA
R-C(=O)-S-CoA + CH3-C(=O)-S-CoA
Acetyl CoA
14 ATP
21 ATP
96 ATP
131 ATP – 2 ATP* = 129 ATP

Figure 16.18
Summary of the energy yield from the oxidation of palmitoyl CoA (16 carbons). CC = acetyl CoA. *Activation of palmitate to palmitoyl CoA requires the equivalent of 2 ATP.

5. Medium-chain fatty acyl CoA dehydrogenase (MCAD) deficiency: In mitochondria, there are four *fatty acyl CoA dehydrogenase* species, each with a specificity for either short-, medium-, long-, or very-long-chain fatty acids. *MCAD* deficiency, an autosomal recessive disorder, is one of the most common inborn errors of metabolism, and the most common inborn error of fatty acid oxidation, being found in 1:14,000 births worldwide, with a higher incidence in Northern Europeans. It results in decreased ability to oxidize fatty acids with six to ten carbons (these accumulate and can be measured in urine), and severe hypoglycemia (because the tissues must increase their reliance on glucose). Treatment includes avoidance of fasting. *MCAD* deficiency has been identified as the cause of some cases originally reported as sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS) or Reye syndrome.

6. Oxidation of fatty acids with an odd number of carbons: The β-oxidation of a saturated fatty acid with an odd number of carbon atoms proceeds by the same reaction steps as that of fatty acids with an even number, until the final three carbons are reached. This compound, propionyl CoA, is metabolized by a three-step pathway (Figure 16.20). [Note: Propionyl CoA is also produced during the metabolism of certain amino acids (see Figure 20.10).]

	SYNTHESIS	DEGRADATION
Greatest flux through pathway	After carbohydrate-rich meal	In starvation
Hormonal state favoring pathway	High insulin/glucagon ratio	Low insulin/glucagon ratio
Major tissue site	Primarily liver	Muscle, liver
Subcellular location	Primarily cytosol	Primarily mitochondria
Carriers of acyl/acetyl groups between mitochondria and cytosol	Citrate (mitochondria to cytosol)	Carnitine (cytosol to mitochondria)
Phosphopantetheine-containing active carriers	Acyl carrier protein domain, coenzyme A	Coenzyme A
Oxidation/reduction coenzymers	NADPH (reduction)	NAD^+, FAD (oxidation)
Two-carbon donor/product	Malonyl CoA: donor of one acetyl group	Acetyl CoA: product of β-oxidation
Activator	Citrate	
Inhibitor	Long-chain fatty acyl CoA (inhibits *acetyl CoA carboxylase*)	Malonyl CoA (inhibits *carnitine palmitoyltransferase-I*)
Product of pathway	Palmitate	Acetyl CoA
Repetitive four-step process	Condensation, reduction dehydration, reduction	Dehydrogenation, hydration dehydrogenation, thiolysis

Figure 16.19
Comparison of the synthesis and degradation of long-chain, even-numbered, saturated fatty acids.

a. **Synthesis of D-methylmalonyl CoA:** First, propionyl CoA is carboxylated, forming D-methylmalonyl CoA. The enzyme *propionyl CoA carboxylase* has an absolute requirement for the coenzyme biotin, as do most other *carboxylases* (see p. 381).

b. **Formation of L-methylmalonyl CoA:** Next, the D-isomer is converted to the L-form by the enzyme, *methylmalonyl CoA racemase*.

c. **Synthesis of succinyl CoA:** Finally, the carbons of L-methylmalonyl CoA are rearranged, forming succinyl CoA, which can enter the tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle (see p. 109). [Note: This is the only example of a glucogenic precursor generated from fatty acid oxidation.] The enzyme, *methylmalonyl CoA mutase*, requires a coenzyme form of vitamin B_{12} (deoxyadenosylcobalamin) for its action. The *mutase* reaction is one of only two reactions in the body that require vitamin B_{12} (see p. 375). [Note: In patients with vitamin B_{12} deficiency, both propionate and methylmalonate are excreted in the urine. Two types of heritable methylmalonic acidemia and aciduria have been described: one in which the *mutase* is missing or deficient (or has reduced affinity for the coenzyme), and one in which the patient is unable to convert vitamin B_{12} into its coenzyme form. Either type results in metabolic acidosis, with developmental retardation seen in some patients.]

7. **Oxidation of unsaturated fatty acids:** The oxidation of unsaturated fatty acids provides less energy than that of saturated fatty acids because unsaturated fatty acids are less highly reduced and, therefore, fewer reducing equivalents can be produced from these structures. Oxidation of monounsaturated fatty acids, such as 18:1(9) (oleic acid) requires one additional enzyme, *3,2-enoyl CoA isomerase*, which converts the 3-trans derivative obtained after three rounds of β-oxidation to the 2-trans derivative required as a substrate by the *enoyl CoA hydratase*. Oxidation of polyunsaturated fatty acids, such as 18:2(9,12) (linoleic acid), requires an *NADPH-dependent 2,4-dienoyl CoA reductase* in addition to the *isomerase*.

8. **β-Oxidation in the peroxisome:** Very-long-chain fatty acids (VLCFA), or those 22 carbons long or longer, undergo a preliminary β-oxidation in peroxisomes. The shortened fatty acid (linked to carnitine) diffuses to a mitochondrion for further oxidation. In contrast to mitochondrial β-oxidation, the initial dehydrogenation in peroxisomes is catalyzed by an FAD-containing *acyl CoA oxidase*. The $FADH_2$ produced is oxidized by molecular oxygen, which is reduced to H_2O_2; thus, no ATP is generated by this step. The H_2O_2 is reduced to H_2O by *catalase* (see p. 148). [Note: Genetic defects either in the ability to target matrix proteins to peroxisomes (resulting in Zellweger syndrome—a peroxisomal biogenesis disorder) or in the ability to transport VLCFA across the peroxisomal membrane (resulting in X-linked adrenoleukodystrophy), lead to accumulation of VLCFA in the blood and tissues.]

C. α-Oxidation of fatty acids

Branched-chain, 20 carbon fatty acid, phytanic acid: This is not a substrate for *acyl CoA dehydrogenase* because of the methyl group on its β carbon (Figure 16.21). Instead, it is hydroxylated at the α-carbon by *phytanoyl CoA α-hydroxylase* (*PhyH*), carbon 1 is released as CO_2, and the product, 19 carbon pristanic acid, is activated to its CoA derivative and undergoes β-oxidation. Refsum disease is a rare, autosomal recessive disorder caused by a deficiency of peroxisomal *PhyH*. This results in the accumulation of phytanic acid in the plasma and tissues. The symptoms are primarily neurologic, and the treatment involves dietary restriction to halt disease progression. [Note: ω-Oxidation (at the methyl terminus) also is known, and generates dicarboxylic acids. Normally a minor pathway of the ER, its up-regulation is seen with conditions such as MCAD deficiency that limit fatty acid β-oxidation.]

V. KETONE BODIES: AN ALTERNATE FUEL FOR CELLS

Liver mitochondria have the capacity to convert acetyl CoA derived from fatty acid oxidation into ketone bodies. The compounds categorized as ketone bodies are acetoacetate, 3-hydroxybutyrate (also called β-hydroxybutyrate), and acetone (a nonmetabolized side product, Figure 16.22). [Note: The two functional ketone bodies are actually organic acids.] Acetoacetate and 3-hydroxybutyrate are transported in the blood to the peripheral tissues. There they can be reconverted to acetyl CoA, which can be oxidized by the TCA cycle. Ketone bodies

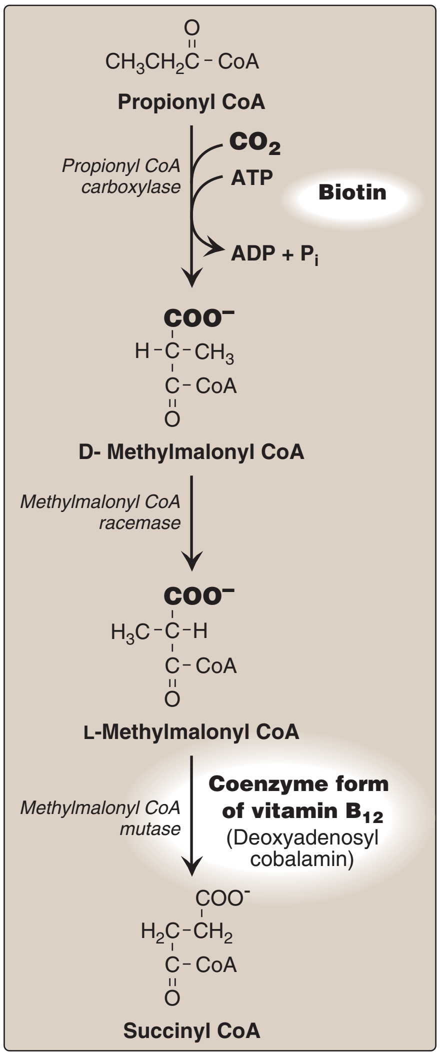


Figure 16.20
Metabolism of propionyl CoA.

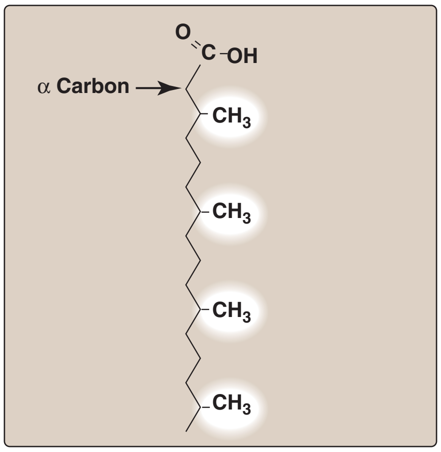


Figure 16.21
Phytanic acid—a branched-chain fatty acid.

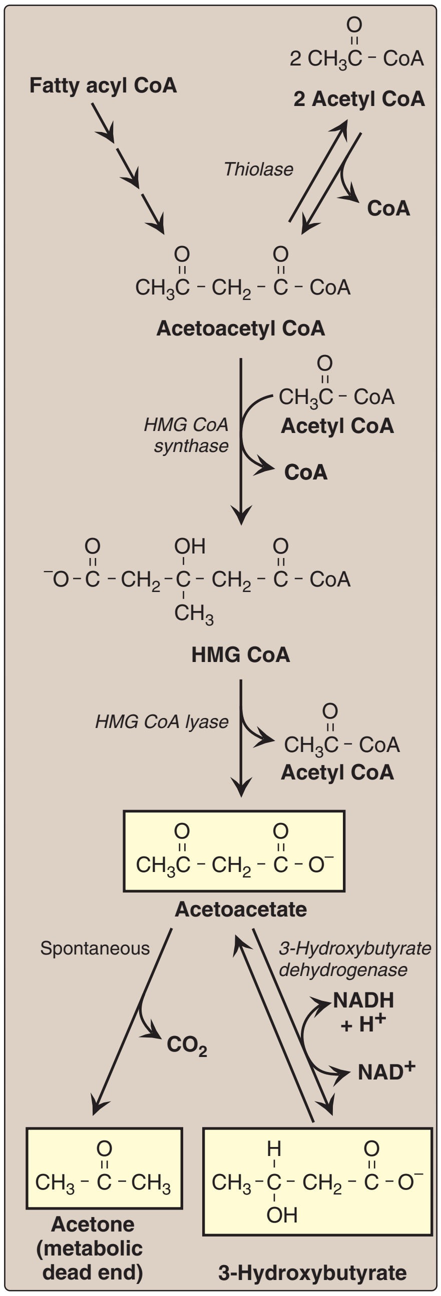

Fatty acyl CoA
$2\ CH_3C(=O)-CoA$
2 Acetyl CoA
Thiolase
CoA
$CH_3C(=O)-CH_2-C(=O)-CoA$
Acetoacetyl CoA
HMG CoA synthase
$CH_3C(=O)-CoA$
Acetyl CoA
CoA
$^{-}O-C(=O)-CH_2-C(OH)(CH_3)-CH_2-C(=O)-CoA$
HMG CoA
HMG CoA lyase
$CH_3C(=O)-CoA$
Acetyl CoA
$CH_3C(=O)-CH_2-C(=O)-O^{-}$
Acetoacetate
Spontaneous
CO_2
3-Hydroxybutyrate dehydrogenase
NADH + H^+
NAD^+
$CH_3-C(=O)-CH_3$
Acetone (metabolic dead end)
$CH_3-CH(OH)-CH_2-C(=O)-O^{-}$
3-Hydroxybutyrate

Figure 16.22
Synthesis of ketone bodies. HMG = hydroxymethylglutaryl CoA.

are important sources of energy for the peripheral tissues because 1) they are soluble in aqueous solution and, therefore, do not need to be incorporated into lipoproteins or carried by albumin as do the other lipids; 2) they are produced in the liver during periods when the amount of acetyl CoA present exceeds the oxidative capacity of the liver; and 3) they are used in proportion to their concentration in the blood by extrahepatic tissues, such as the skeletal and cardiac muscle and renal cortex. Even the brain can use ketone bodies to help meet its energy needs if the blood levels rise sufficiently; thus, ketone bodies spare glucose.This is particularly important during prolonged periods of fasting (see p. 332). [Note: Disorders of fatty acid oxidation present with the general picture of hypoketosis (due to decreased availability of acetyl CoA) and hypoglycemia (due to increased reliance on glucose for energy.]

A. Synthesis of ketone bodies by the liver: ketogenesis

During a fast, the liver is flooded with fatty acids mobilized from adipose tissue. The resulting elevated hepatic acetyl CoA produced primarily by fatty acid degradation inhibits *pyruvate dehydrogenase* (see p. 111), and activates *pyruvate carboxylase* (see p. 119). The OAA thus produced is used by the liver for gluconeogenesis rather than for the TCA cycle. Therefore, acetyl CoA is channeled into ketone body synthesis. [Note: Fatty acid oxidation decreases the NAD^+ to NADH ratio, and the rise in NADH shifts OAA to malate (see p. 113). This pushes acetyl CoA away from gluconeogenesis and into ketogenesis (Figure 16.24).]

1. **Synthesis of 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl (HMG) CoA:** The first synthetic step, formation of acetoacetyl CoA, occurs by reversal of the *thiolase* reaction of fatty acid oxidation (see Figure 16.17). Mitochondrial *HMG CoA synthase* combines a third molecule of acetyl CoA with acetoacetyl CoA to produce HMG CoA. [Note: HMG CoA is also a precursor of cholesterol (see p. 220). These pathways are separated by location in, and conditions of, the cell.] *HMG CoA synthase* is the rate-limiting step in the synthesis of ketone bodies, and is present in significant quantities only in the liver.

2. **Synthesis of the ketone bodies:** HMG CoA is cleaved to produce acetoacetate and acetyl CoA, as shown in Figure 16.22. Acetoacetate can be reduced to form 3-hydroxybutyrate with NADH as the hydrogen donor. Acetoacetate can also spontaneously decarboxylate in the blood to form acetone—a volatile, biologically nonmetabolized compound that can be released in the breath. The equilibrium between acetoacetate and 3-hydroxybutyrate is determined by the NAD^+/NADH ratio. Because this ratio is low during fatty acid oxidation, 3-hydroxybutyrate synthesis is favored. [Note: The generation of free CoA during ketogenesis allows fatty acid oxidation to continue.]

B. Use of ketone bodies by the peripheral tissues: ketolysis

Although the liver constantly synthesizes low levels of ketone bodies, their production becomes much more significant during fasting

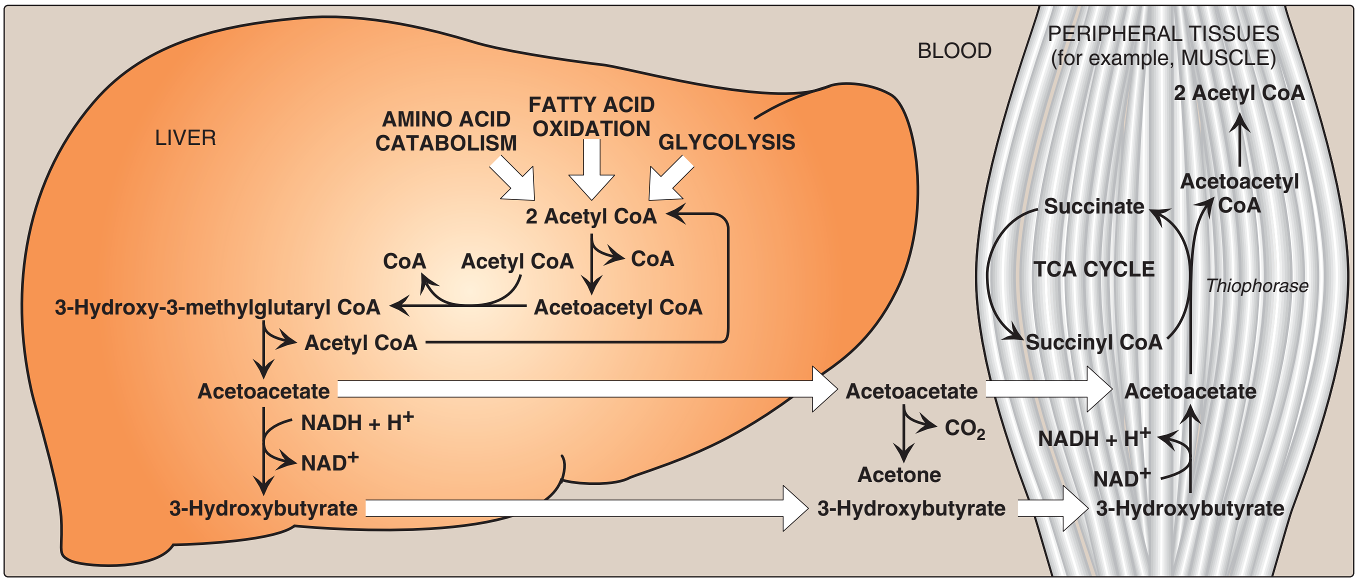

LIVER
BLOOD
PERIPHERAL TISSUES
(for example, MUSCLE)
AMINO ACID CATABOLISM
FATTY ACID OXIDATION
GLYCOLYSIS
2 Acetyl CoA
CoA
Acetyl CoA
CoA
3-Hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl CoA
Acetoacetyl CoA
Acetyl CoA
Acetoacetate
NADH + H$^+$
NAD$^+$
3-Hydroxybutyrate
Acetoacetate
CO$_2$
Acetone
3-Hydroxybutyrate
2 Acetyl CoA
Acetoacetyl CoA
Succinate
TCA CYCLE
Thiophorase
Succinyl CoA
Acetoacetate
NADH + H$^+$
NAD$^+$
3-Hydroxybutyrate

Figure 16.23
Ketone body synthesis in the liver and use in peripheral tissues. [Note: *Thiophorase* is also known as *succinyl CoA: acetoacetate CoA transferase*.]

when ketone bodies are needed to provide energy to the peripheral tissues. 3-Hydroxybutyrate is oxidized to acetoacetate by *3-hydroxybutyrate dehydrogenase*, producing NADH (Figure 16.23). Acetoacetate is then provided with a CoA molecule taken from succinyl CoA by *succinyl CoA:acetoacetate CoA transferase* (*thiophorase*). This reaction is reversible, but the product, acetoacetyl CoA, is actively removed by its conversion to two acetyl CoA. Extrahepatic tissues, including the brain but excluding cells lacking mitochondria (for example, red blood cells), efficiently oxidize acetoacetate and 3-hydroxybutyrate in this manner. In contrast, although the liver actively produces ketone bodies, it lacks *thiophorase* and, therefore, is unable to use ketone bodies as fuel.

C. Excessive production of ketone bodies in diabetes mellitus

When the rate of formation of ketone bodies is greater than the rate of their use, their levels begin to rise in the blood (ketonemia) and, eventually, in the urine (ketonuria). This is seen most often in cases of uncontrolled, type 1 diabetes mellitus. In diabetic individuals with severe ketosis, urinary excretion of the ketone bodies may be as high as 5,000 mg/24 hr, and the blood concentration may reach 90 mg/dl (versus less than 3 mg/dl in normal individuals). A frequent symptom of diabetic ketoacidosis is a fruity odor on the breath, which results from increased production of acetone. An elevation of the ketone body concentration in the blood results in acidemia. [Note: The carboxyl group of a ketone body has a pK$_a$ of about 4. Therefore, each ketone body loses a proton (H$^+$) as it circulates in the blood, which lowers the pH of the body. Also, excretion of glucose and ketone bodies in the urine results in dehydration of the body. Therefore, the increased number of H$^+$, circulating in a decreased volume of plasma, can cause severe acidosis (ketoacidosis).] Ketoacidosis may also be seen in cases of fasting (see p. 330).

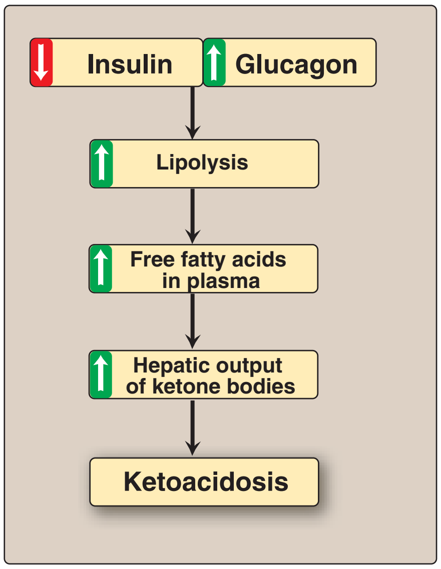

Insulin
Glucagon
Lipolysis
Free fatty acids in plasma
Hepatic output of ketone bodies
Ketoacidosis

Figure 16.24
Mechanism of diabetic ketoacidosis seen in type 1 diabetes.

VI. CHAPTER SUMMARY

Generally a linear hydrocarbon chain with a terminal carboxyl group, a fatty acid can be **saturated** or **unsaturated**. Two fatty acids are essential (must be obtained from the diet): **linoleic** and **α-linolenic acids**. Fatty acids are synthesized in the cytosol of **liver** following a meal containing excess carbohydrate and protein. Carbons used to synthesize fatty acids are provided by **acetyl CoA**, energy by **ATP**, and reducing equivalents by **NADPH** (Figure 16.25). **Citrate** carries two-carbon acetyl units from the mitochondrial matrix to the cytosol. The regulated step in fatty acid synthesis is catalyzed by **acetyl CoA carboxylase**, which requires **biotin**. **Citrate** is the allosteric **activator** and **long-chain fatty acyl CoA** is the **inhibitor**. The enzyme can also be activated in the presence of **insulin** and inactivated by **AMPK** in response to **epinephrine**, **glucagon**, or a **rise in AMP**. The rest of the steps in fatty acid synthesis are catalyzed by the multifunctional enzyme, **fatty acid synthase**, which produces **palmitoyl CoA** from acetyl CoA and malonyl CoA, with NADPH (from the pentose phosphate pathway) as the source of reducing equivalents. Fatty acids can be elongated and desaturated in the ER. When fatty acids are required by the body for energy, adipose cell **hormone-sensitive lipase** (**activated** by **epinephrine** or **glucagon**, and **inhibited** by **insulin**) initiates degradation of stored triacylglycerol. Fatty acids are carried by **serum albumin** to the liver and peripheral tissues, where oxidation of the fatty acids provides energy. The **glycerol** backbone of the degraded triacylglycerol is carried by the blood to the **liver**, where it serves as an important **gluconeogenic precursor**. Fatty acid degradation (**β-oxidation**) occurs in **mitochondria**. The **carnitine shuttle** is required to transport LCFA from the cytosol to the mitochondrial matrix. A translocase and the enzymes **carnitine palmitoyltransferases I** and **II** are required. Carnitine palmitoyltransferase I is **inhibited** by **malonyl CoA**. This prevents fatty acids being synthesized in the cytosol from malonyl CoA from being transported into the mitochondria where they would be degraded. Once in the mitochondria, fatty acids are oxidized, producing acetyl CoA, NADH, and $FADH_2$. The first step in the β-oxidation pathway is catalyzed by one of a family of four acyl CoA dehydrogenases, each of which has a specificity for either short-, medium-, long-, or very-long-chain fatty acids. **Medium-chain fatty acyl CoA dehydrogenase** (**MCAD**) **deficiency** is one of the most common inborn errors of metabolism. It causes a decrease in fatty acid oxidation (process stops once a medium chain fatty acid is produced), resulting in hypoketonemia and severe hypoglycemia. Oxidation of fatty acids with an odd number of carbons proceeds two carbons at a time (producing acetyl CoA) until three carbons remain (**propionyl CoA**). This compound is converted to **methylmalonyl CoA** (a reaction requiring **biotin**), which is then converted to **succinyl CoA** (a gluconeogenic precursor) by methylmalonyl CoA mutase (requiring **vitamin B_{12}**). A genetic error in the mutase or vitamin B_{12} deficiency causes **methylmalonic acidemia** and **aciduria**. β-Oxidation of VLCFA and α-oxidation of branched-chain fatty acids occur in the peroxisome. ω-Oxidation occurs in the ER. Liver mitochondria can convert acetyl CoA derived from fatty acid oxidation into the ketone bodies, **acetoacetate** and **3-hydroxybutyrate**. Peripheral tissues possessing mitochondria can oxidize 3-hydroxybutyrate to acetoacetate, which can be reconverted to acetyl CoA, thus producing energy for the cell. Unlike fatty acids, ketone bodies are utilized by the **brain** and, therefore, are important fuels during a fast. The liver lacks the ability to degrade ketone bodies, and so synthesizes them specifically for the peripheral tissues. **Ketoacidosis** occurs when the rate of formation of ketone bodies is greater than their rate of use, as is seen in cases of uncontrolled, **type 1 diabetes mellitus**.

Study Questions

Choose the ONE correct answer.

16.1 Triacylglycerol molecules stored in adipose tissue represent the major reserve of substrate providing energy during a prolonged fast. During such a fast:

A. the stored fatty acids are released from adipose tissue into the plasma as components of the serum lipoprotein particle, VLDL.

B. free fatty acids are produced at a high rate in the plasma by the action of lipoprotein lipase on chylomicrons.

C. glycerol produced by the degradation of triacylglycerol is an important direct source of energy for adipocytes and fibroblasts.

D. hormone-sensitive lipase is phosphorylated and activated by a cAMP-activated protein kinase.

Correct answer = D. Hormone-sensitive lipase is phosphorylated by cAMP-activated protein kinase, which is itself activated by epinephrine or glucagon. Fatty acids released from adipose tissue are carried in the plasma by serum albumin, not VLDL. During a fast, the amount of circulating triacylglycerol (found in chylomicrons and VLDL) will be low. Therefore, there is little substrate for lipoprotein lipase. The glycerol produced during triacylglycerol degradation cannot be metabolized by adipocytes or fibroblasts, but rather must go to the liver where it can be phosphorylated (by glycerol kinase).

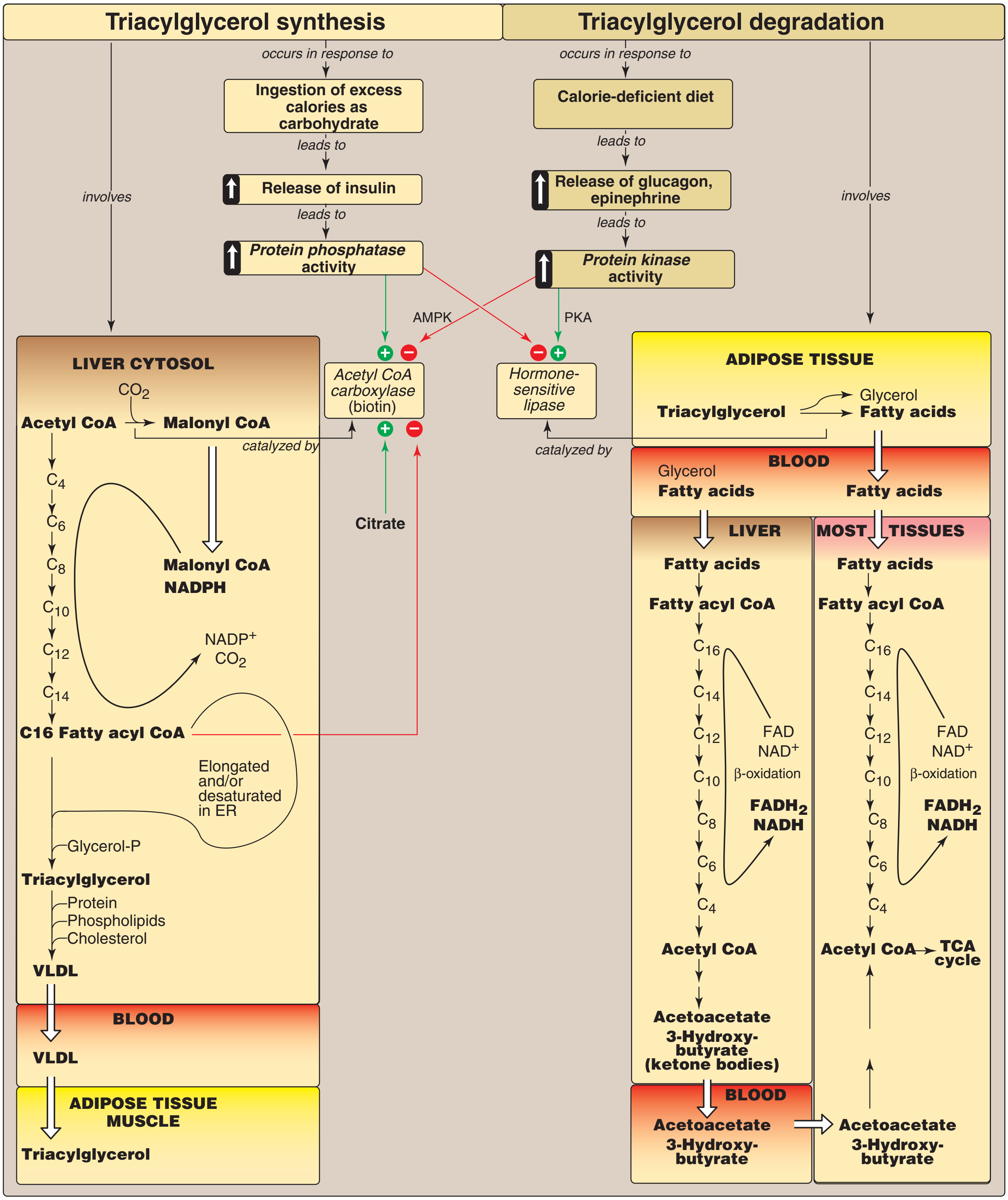

Triacylglycerol synthesis
Triacylglycerol degradation
occurs in response to
Ingestion of excess calories as carbohydrate
leads to
Release of insulin
leads to
Protein phosphatase activity
occurs in response to
Calorie-deficient diet
leads to
Release of glucagon, epinephrine
leads to
Protein kinase activity
involves
involves
AMPK
PKA
LIVER CYTOSOL
CO_2
Acetyl CoA
Malonyl CoA
catalyzed by
Acetyl CoA carboxylase (biotin)
Citrate
Hormone-sensitive lipase
catalyzed by
C_4
C_6
C_8
C_{10}
C_{12}
C_{14}
Malonyl CoA
NADPH
$NADP^+$
CO_2
C16 Fatty acyl CoA
Elongated and/or desaturated in ER
Glycerol-P
Triacylglycerol
Protein
Phospholipids
Cholesterol
VLDL
BLOOD
VLDL
ADIPOSE TISSUE MUSCLE
Triacylglycerol
ADIPOSE TISSUE
Triacylglycerol
Glycerol
Fatty acids
BLOOD
Glycerol
Fatty acids
Fatty acids
LIVER
Fatty acids
Fatty acyl CoA
C_{16}
C_{14}
C_{12}
C_{10}
C_8
C_6
C_4
FAD
NAD^+
β-oxidation
$FADH_2$
NADH
Acetyl CoA
Acetoacetate
3-Hydroxy-butyrate
(ketone bodies)
MOST TISSUES
Fatty acids
Fatty acyl CoA
C_{16}
C_{14}
C_{12}
C_{10}
C_8
C_6
C_4
FAD
NAD^+
β-oxidation
$FADH_2$
NADH
Acetyl CoA
TCA cycle
BLOOD
Acetoacetate
3-Hydroxy-butyrate
Acetoacetate
3-Hydroxy-butyrate

Figure 16.25
Key concept map for fatty acid and triacylglycerol metabolism.

16.2 A low level of carbon dioxide labeled with ^{14}C is accidentally released into the atmosphere surrounding industrial workers as they resume work following the lunch hour. Unknowingly, they breathe the contaminated air for 1 hour. Which of the following compounds will be radioactively labeled?

A. All of the carbon atoms of newly synthesized fatty acid.
B. About one half of the carbon atoms of newly synthesized fatty acids.
C. The carboxyl atom of newly synthesized fatty acids.
D. About one third of the carbons of newly synthesized malonyl CoA.
E. One half of the carbon atoms of newly synthesized acetyl CoA.

Correct answer = D. Malonyl CoA (three carbons) is synthesized from acetyl CoA (two carbons) by the addition of CO_2, using the enzyme acetyl CoA carboxylase. Because CO_2 is subsequently removed during fatty acid synthesis, the radioactive label will not appear at any position in newly synthesized fatty acids.

16.3 A teenager, concerned about his weight, attempts to maintain a fat-free diet for a period of several weeks. If his ability to synthesize various lipids were examined, he would be found to be most deficient in his ability to synthesize:

A. triacylglycerol.
B. phospholipids.
C. cholesterol.
D. sphingolipids.
E. prostaglandins.

Correct answer = E. Prostaglandins are synthesized from arachidonic acid. Arachidonic acid is synthesized from linoleic acid, an essential fatty acid obtained by humans from dietary lipids. The teenager would be able to synthesize all other compounds, but presumably in somewhat depressed amounts.

16.4 A 6-month-old boy was hospitalized following a seizure. History revealed that for several days prior, his appetite was decreased due to a “stomach virus”. At admission, his blood glucose was 24 mg/dl (age-referenced normal is 60-100). His urine was negative for ketone bodies, but positive for a variety of dicarboxylic acids. A tentative diagnosis of medium-chain fatty acyl CoA dehydrogenase (MCAD) deficiency is made. In patients with MCAD deficiency, the fasting hypoglycemia is a consequence of:

A. decreased acetyl CoA production.
B. decreased ability to convert acetyl CoA to glucose.
C. increased conversion of acetyl CoA to acetoacetate.
D. increased production of ATP and NADH.

Correct answer = A. Impaired oxidation of fatty acids less than 12 carbons in length results in decreased production of acetyl CoA, the allosteric activator of pyruvate carboxylase, a gluconeogenic enzyme; thus, glucose levels fall. Acetyl CoA cannot be used for the net synthesis of glucose. Acetoacetate is a ketone body, and with MCAD deficiency ketogenesis is decreased. Impaired fatty acid oxidation means that less ATP and NADH are made, and both are needed for gluconeogenesis.

16.5 Explain why with Zellweger syndrome both very long chain fatty acids (VLCFA) and phytanic acid accumulate, whereas with X-linked adrenoleukodystrophy (X-ALD) only VLCFA accumulate.

Zellweger syndrome is caused by an inability to target matrix proteins to the peroxisome; thus, all peroxisomal activities are affected because functional peroxisomes are not able to be formed. In X-ALD, the defect is an inability to transport VLCFA into the peroxisome—other peroxisomal functions such as α oxidation are normal.

Complex Lipid Metabolism

17

I. OVERVIEW OF PHOSPHOLIPIDS

Phospholipids are polar, ionic compounds composed of an alcohol that is attached by a phosphodiester bridge to either diacylglycerol or sphingosine. Like fatty acids, phospholipids are amphipathic in nature, that is, each has a hydrophilic head (the phosphate group plus whatever alcohol is attached to it, for example, serine, ethanolamine, and choline, highlighted in blue in Figure 17.1A), and a long, hydrophobic tail (containing fatty acids or fatty acid–derived hydrocarbons, shown in orange in Figure 17.1A). Phospholipids are the predominant lipids of cell membranes. In membranes, the hydrophobic portion of a phospholipid molecule is associated with the nonpolar portions of other membrane constituents, such as glycolipids, proteins, and cholesterol. The hydrophilic (polar) head of the phospholipid extends outward, interacting with the intracellular or extracellular aqueous environment (see Figure 17.1A). Membrane phospholipids also function as a reservoir for intracellular messengers, and, for some proteins, phospholipids serve as anchors to cell membranes. Nonmembrane-bound phospholipids serve additional functions in the body, for example, as components of lung surfactant and essential components of bile, where their detergent properties aid in the solubilization of cholesterol.

II. STRUCTURE OF PHOSPHOLIPIDS

There are two classes of phospholipids: those that have glycerol as a backbone and those that contain sphingosine. Both classes are found as structural components of membranes, and both play a role in the generation of lipid-signaling molecules.

A. Glycerophospholipids

Phospholipids that contain glycerol are called glycerophospholipids (or phosphoglycerides). Glycerophospholipids constitute the major class of phospholipids. All contain (or are derivatives of) phosphatidic acid (diacylglycerol with a phosphate group on the third carbon, Figure 17.1B). Phosphatidic acid is the simplest phosphoglyceride, and is the precursor of the other members of this group.

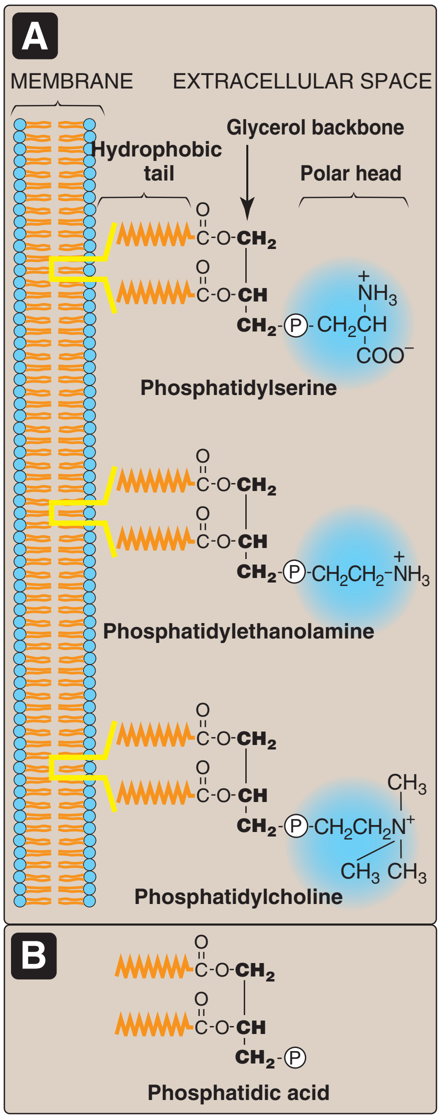

A
MEMBRANE
EXTRACELLULAR SPACE
Glycerol backbone
Hydrophobic tail
Polar head
C-O-CH₂
C-O-CH
CH₂-Ⓟ-CH₂CH
NH₃⁺
COO⁻
Phosphatidylserine
CH₂-Ⓟ-CH₂CH₂-NH₃⁺
Phosphatidylethanolamine
CH₂-Ⓟ-CH₂CH₂N⁺
CH₃ CH₃ CH₃
Phosphatidylcholine
B
CH₂-Ⓟ
Phosphatidic acid

Figure 17.1
A. Structures of some glycerophospholipids. B. Phosphatidic acid. Ⓟ = phosphate, PO_4^{1-}.

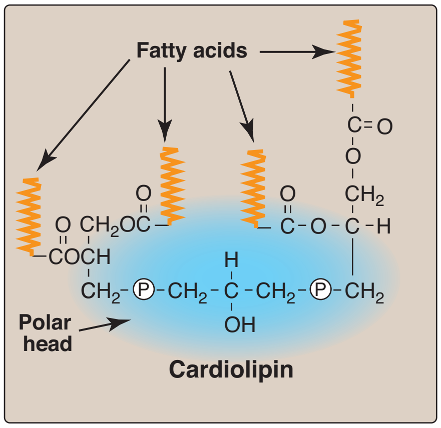


Figure 17.2
Structure of cardiolipin.

1. **Glycerophospholipids are formed from phosphatidic acid (PA) and an alcohol:** The phosphate group on PA can be esterified to another compound containing an alcohol group (see Figure 17.1). For example:

Serine	+	PA	→	phosphatidylserine
Ethanolamine	+	PA	→	phosphatidylethanolamine (cephalin)
Choline	+	PA	→	phosphatidylcholine (lecithin)
Inositol	+	PA	→	phosphatidylinositol
Glycerol	+	PA	→	phosphatidylglycerol

2. **Cardiolipin:** Two molecules of PA esterified through their phosphate groups to an additional molecule of glycerol is called cardiolipin (diphosphatidylglycerol, Figure 17.2). Cardiolipin is found in bacteria and eukaryotes. In eukaryotes, cardiolipin is virtually exclusive to the inner mitochondrial membrane, where it appears to be required for the maintenance of certain respiratory complexes of the electron transport chain. [Note: Cardiolipin is antigenic, and is recognized by antibodies raised against *Treponema pallidum*, the bacterium that causes syphilis.]

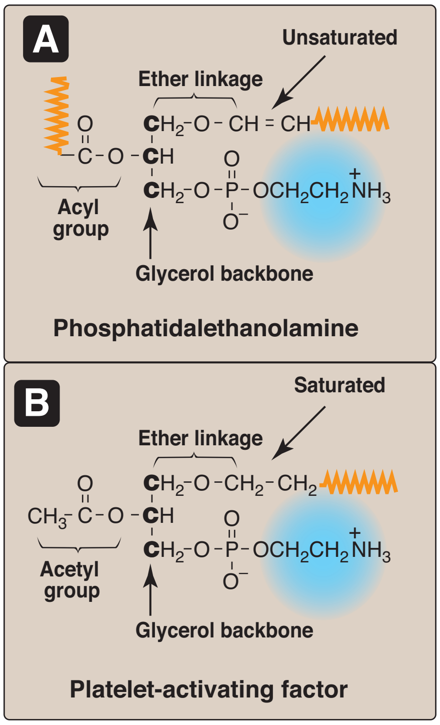


Figure 17.3
A. The plasmalogen phosphatidalethanolamine. B. Platelet-activating factor.

3. **Plasmalogens:** When the fatty acid at carbon 1 of a glycerophospholipid is replaced by an unsaturated alkyl group attached by an ether (rather than by an ester) linkage to the core glycerol molecule, a plasmalogen is produced. For example, phosphatidalethanolamine (abundant in nerve tissue, Figure 17.3A) is the plasmalogen that is similar in structure to phosphatidylethanolamine. Phosphatidalcholine (abundant in heart muscle) is the other quantitatively significant ether lipid in mammals.

4. **Platelet-activating factor (PAF):** This is an unusual ether glycerophospholipid, with a saturated alkyl group in an ether link to carbon 1 and an acetyl residue (rather than a fatty acid) at carbon 2 of the glycerol backbone (Figure 17.3B). PAF is synthesized and released by a variety of cell types. It binds to surface receptors, triggering potent thrombotic and acute inflammatory events. For example, PAF activates inflammatory cells and mediates hypersensitivity, acute inflammatory, and anaphylactic reactions. It causes platelets to aggregate and degranulate, and neutrophils and alveolar macrophages to generate superoxide radicals (see p. 148 for a discussion of the role of superoxides in killing bacteria). [Note: PAF is one of the most potent bioactive molecules known, causing effects at concentrations as low as 10^{-12} mol/L.]

B. Sphingophospholipids: sphingomyelin

The backbone of sphingomyelin is the amino alcohol sphingosine, rather than glycerol (Figure 17.4). A long-chain fatty acid is attached to the amino group of sphingosine through an amide linkage, producing a ceramide, which can also serve as a precursor of glycolipids (see p. 209). The alcohol group at carbon 1 of sphingosine is esterified to phosphorylcholine, producing sphingomyelin, the only significant sphingophospholipid in humans. Sphingomyelin is an important constituent of the myelin of nerve fibers. [Note: The myelin sheath is a layered, membranous structure that insulates and protects neuronal fibers of the central nervous system.]

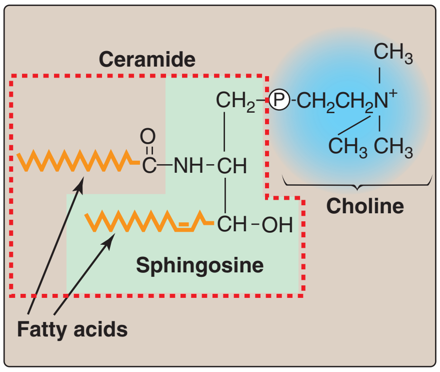


Figure 17.4
Structure of sphingomyelin, showing sphingosine (in green box) and ceramide components (in dashed box).

III. PHOSPHOLIPID SYNTHESIS

Glycerophospholipid synthesis involves either the donation of phosphatidic acid from CDP-diacylglycerol to an alcohol, or the donation of the phosphomonoester of the alcohol from CDP-alcohol to 1,2-diacylglycerol (Figure 17.5). [Note: CDP is the nucleotide cytidine diphosphate (see p. 292).] In both cases, the CDP-bound structure is considered an "activated intermediate," and cytidine monophosphate (CMP) is released as a side product of glycerophospholipid synthesis. A key concept in phosphoglyceride synthesis, therefore, is activation—either of diacylglycerol or the alcohol to be added—by linkage with CDP. [Note: This is similar in principle to the activation of sugars by their attachment to uridine diphosphate (UDP) (see p. 126).] The fatty acids esterified to the glycerol alcohol groups can vary widely, contributing to the heterogeneity of this group of compounds. Most phospholipids are synthesized in the smooth endoplasmic reticulum. From there, they are transported to the Golgi apparatus and then to membranes of organelles or the plasma membrane, or are secreted from the cell by exocytosis. [Note: Ether lipid synthesis occurs in peroxisomes.]

A. Synthesis of phosphatidic acid (PA)

PA is the precursor of many other phosphoglycerides. The steps in its synthesis from glycerol phosphate and two fatty acyl coenzyme A (CoA) molecules were illustrated in Figure 16.14, p. 189, in which PA is shown as a precursor of triacylglycerol.

> Essentially all cells except mature erythrocytes can synthesize phospholipids, whereas triacylglycerol synthesis occurs essentially only in liver, adipose tissue, lactating mammary glands, and intestinal mucosal cells.

B. Synthesis of phosphatidylethanolamine (PE) and phosphatidylcholine (PC)

PC and PE are the most abundant phospholipids in most eukaryotic cells. The primary route of their synthesis uses choline and ethanolamine obtained either from the diet or from the turnover of the body's phospholipids. [Note: In the liver, PC also can be synthesized from phosphatidylserine (PS) and PE (see below).]

1. **Synthesis of PE and PC from preexisting choline and ethanolamine:** These synthetic pathways involve the phosphorylation of choline or ethanolamine by *kinases*, followed by conversion to the activated form, CDP-choline or CDP-ethanolamine. Finally, choline-phosphate or ethanolamine-phosphate is transferred from the nucleotide (leaving CMP) to a molecule of diacylglycerol (see Figure 17.5).

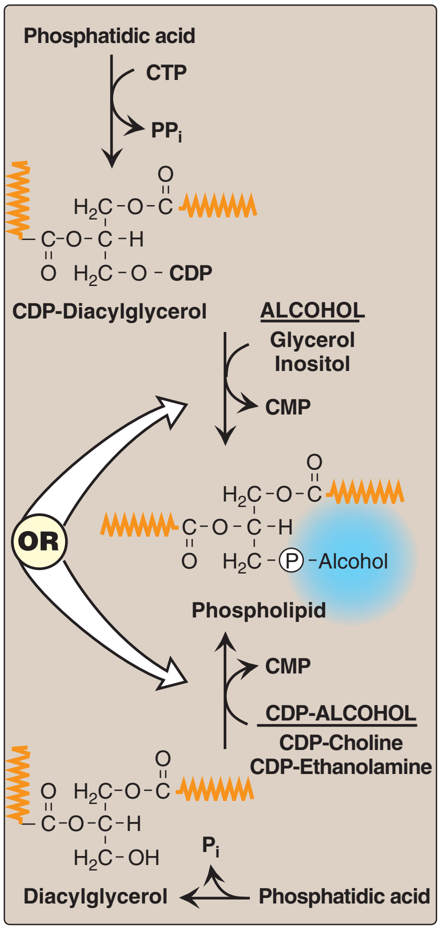


Figure 17.5
Activation of either diacylglycerol or an alcohol by linkage to a nucleoside diphosphate (CDP) promotes phospholipid synthesis.

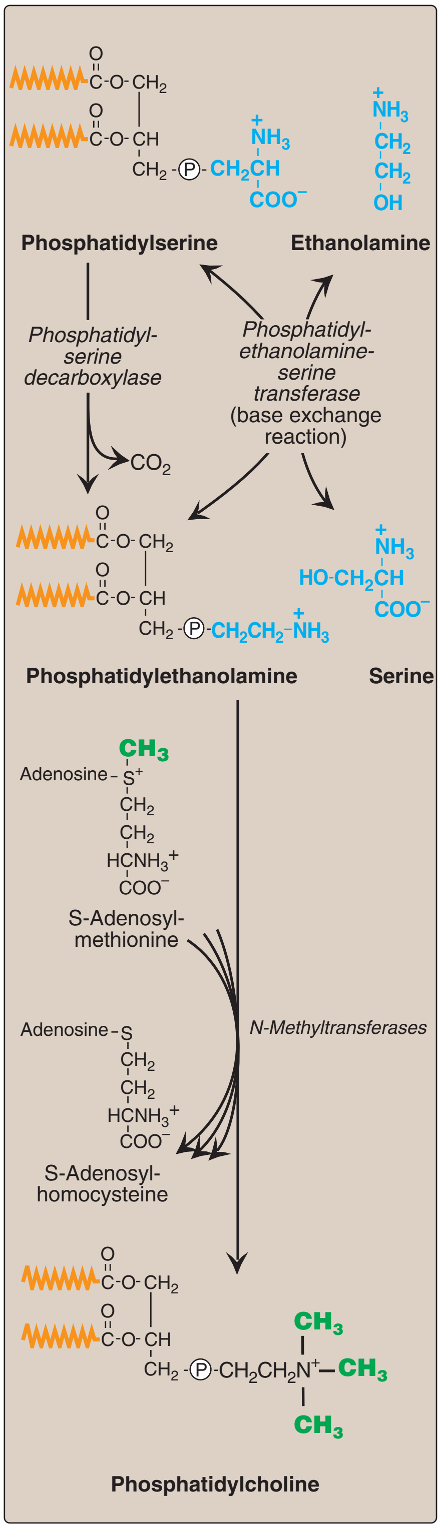


Figure 17.6
Synthesis of phosphatidylcholine from phosphatidylserine in the liver.

a. **Significance of choline reutilization:** The reutilization of choline is important because, whereas humans can synthesize choline de novo, the amount made is insufficient for our needs. Thus, choline is an essential dietary nutrient with an Adequate Intake (see p. 358) of 550 mg for men and 425 mg for women. [Note: Choline is also used for the synthesis of acetylcholine—a neurotransmitter.]

b. **Role of PC in lung surfactant:** The pathway described above is the principal pathway for the synthesis of dipalmitoylphosphatidylcholine (DPPC, or dipalmitoyl lecithin). In DPPC, positions 1 and 2 on the glycerol are occupied by palmitate. DPPC, made and secreted by Type II pneumocytes, is the major lipid component of lung surfactant—the extracellular fluid layer lining the alveoli. Surfactant serves to decrease the surface tension of this fluid layer, reducing the pressure needed to reinflate alveoli, thereby preventing alveolar collapse (atelectasis). [Note: Surfactant is a complex mixture of lipids (90%) and proteins (10%), with DPPC being the major component for reducing surface tension.] Respiratory distress syndrome (RDS) in preterm infants is associated with insufficient surfactant production and/or secretion, and is a significant cause of all neonatal deaths in Western countries.

Lung maturity of the fetus can be gauged by determining the ratio of DPPC to sphingomyelin, usually written as the L (for lecithin)/S ratio, in amniotic fluid. A ratio of two or above is evidence of maturity, because it reflects the major shift from sphingomyelin to DPPC synthesis that occurs in the pneumocytes at about 32 weeks of gestation.

Lung maturation can be accelerated by giving the mother glucocorticoids shortly before delivery. Administration of natural or synthetic surfactant (by intratracheal instillation) is also used in the prevention and treatment of infant RDS. RDS due to an insufficient amount of surfactant can also occur in adults whose surfactant-producing pneumocytes have been damaged or destroyed, for example, by infection or trauma.

2. **Synthesis of PC from phosphatidylserine (PS) in the liver:** The liver requires a mechanism for producing PC, even when free choline levels are low, because it exports significant amounts of PC in the bile and as a component of serum lipoproteins. To provide the needed PC, PS is decarboxylated to PE by *PS decarboxylase*, an enzyme requiring pyridoxal phosphate as a coenzyme. PE then undergoes three methylation steps to produce PC, as illustrated in Figure 17.6. S-adenosylmethionine is the methyl group donor (see p. 264).

C. Phosphatidylserine (PS)

The primary pathway for synthesis of PS in mammalian tissues is provided by the base exchange reaction, in which the ethanolamine of PE is exchanged for free serine (see Figure 17.6). This reaction, although reversible, is used primarily to produce the PS required for membrane synthesis.

D. Phosphatidylinositol (PI)

PI is synthesized from free inositol and CDP-diacylglycerol as shown in Figure 17.5. PI is an unusual phospholipid in that it often contains stearic acid on carbon 1 and arachidonic acid on carbon 2 of the glycerol. PI, therefore, serves as a reservoir of arachidonic acid in membranes and, thus, provides the substrate for prostaglandin synthesis when required (see p. 213 for a discussion of these compounds).

1. **Role of PI in signal transmission across membranes:** The phosphorylation of membrane-bound phosphatidylinositol produces polyphosphoinositides, for example, phosphatidylinositol 4,5-bisphosphate (PIP_2, Figure 17.7). The degradation of PIP_2 by *phospholipase C* occurs in response to the binding of a variety of neurotransmitters, hormones, and growth factors to receptors on the cell membrane (Figure 17.8). The products of this degradation, inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate (IP_3) and diacylglycerol (DAG), mediate the mobilization of intracellular calcium and the activation

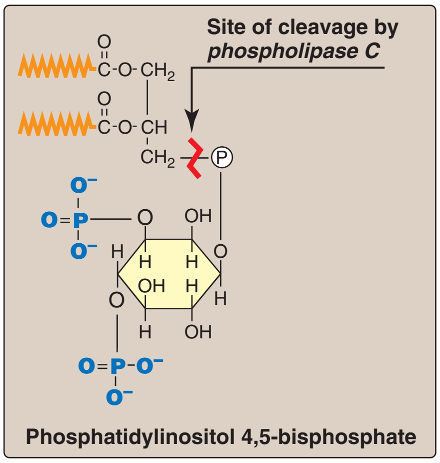
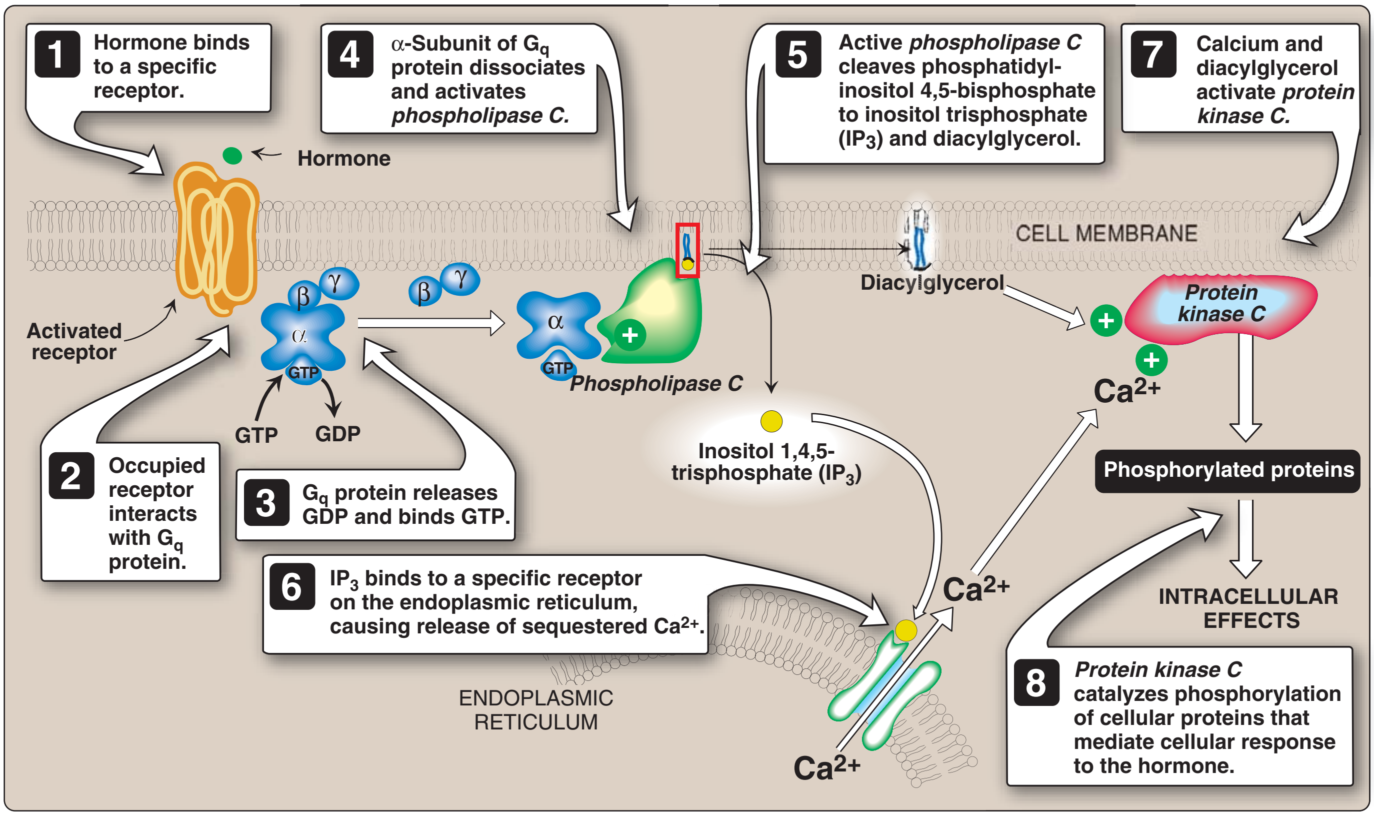

Site of cleavage by
phospholipase C
O
C-O-CH2
O
C-O-CH
CH2
P
O⁻
O=P—O
O⁻
OH
H
H
H
O
OH
H
O
H
H
OH
O=P-O⁻
O⁻
Phosphatidylinositol 4,5-bisphosphate

Figure 17.7
Structure of phosphatidylinositol 4,5-bisphosphate (PIP_2). Cleavage by *phospholipase C* produces IP_3 and DAG.


Hormone
CELL MEMBRANE
Activated receptor
β
γ
α
GTP
GTP
GDP
β
γ
α
GTP
Phospholipase C
+
Diacylglycerol
Protein kinase C
+
+
Ca^{2+}
Inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate (IP_3)
Phosphorylated proteins
INTRACELLULAR EFFECTS
Ca^{2+}
Ca^{2+}
ENDOPLASMIC RETICULUM

1 Hormone binds to a specific receptor.

2 Occupied receptor interacts with G_q protein.

3 G_q protein releases GDP and binds GTP.

4 α-Subunit of G_q protein dissociates and activates *phospholipase C.*

5 Active *phospholipase C* cleaves phosphatidylinositol 4,5-bisphosphate to inositol trisphosphate (IP_3) and diacylglycerol.

6 IP_3 binds to a specific receptor on the endoplasmic reticulum, causing release of sequestered Ca^{2+}.

7 Calcium and diacylglycerol activate *protein kinase C.*

8 *Protein kinase C* catalyzes phosphorylation of cellular proteins that mediate cellular response to the hormone.

Figure 17.8
Role of inositol trisphosphate and diacylglycerol in intracellular signaling.

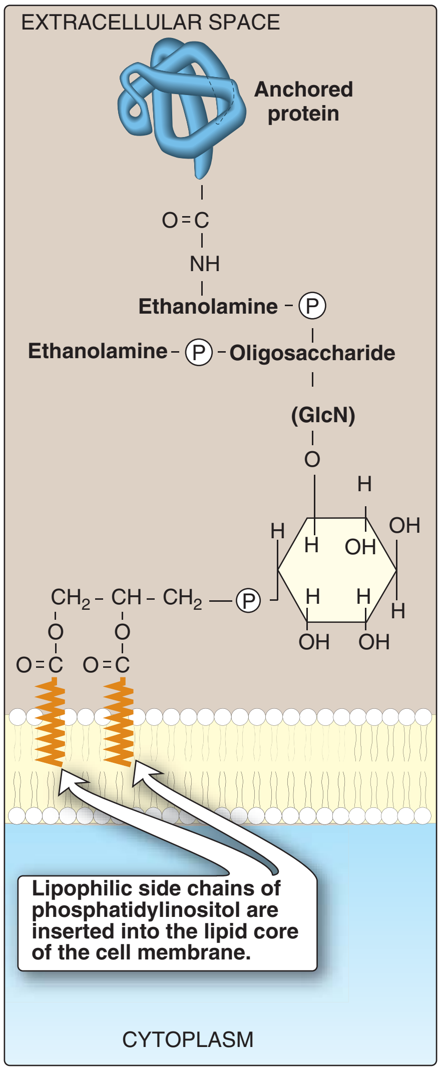

EXTRACELLULAR SPACE
Anchored protein
O=C
NH
Ethanolamine - P
Ethanolamine - P - Oligosaccharide
(GlcN)
O
H
H
H
OH
OH
H
H
H
OH
OH
CH2 - CH - CH2 — P
O
O
O=C
O=C
Lipophilic side chains of phosphatidylinositol are inserted into the lipid core of the cell membrane.
CYTOPLASM

Figure 17.9
Example of a glycosyl phosphatidylinositol (GPI) membrane protein anchor. GlcN = glucosamine.

of *protein kinase C*, respectively, which act synergistically to evoke specific cellular responses. Signal transmission across the membrane is thus accomplished.

2. **Role of PI in membrane protein anchoring:** Specific proteins can be covalently attached via a carbohydrate bridge to membrane-bound PI (Figure 17.9). [Note: Examples of such proteins include *alkaline phosphatase* (a digestive enzyme found on the surface of the small intestine that attacks organic phosphates), and *acetylcholine esterase* (an enzyme of the postsynaptic membrane that degrades the neurotransmitter acetylcholine). Cell surface proteins bound to glycosyl phosphatidylinositol (GPI) are also found in a variety of parasitic protozoans (for example, trypanosomes and leishmania).] Being attached to a membrane lipid (rather than being an integral part of the membrane) allows GPI-anchored proteins increased lateral mobility on the surface of the plasma membrane. The protein can be cleaved from its anchor by the action of *phospholipase C* (see Figure 17.8), releasing diacylglycerol. [Note: A deficiency in the synthesis of GPI in hematopoietic cells results in a hemolytic disease, paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria.]

E. Phosphatidylglycerol and cardiolipin

Phosphatidylglycerol occurs in relatively large amounts in mitochondrial membranes and is a precursor of cardiolipin. It is synthesized by a two-step reaction from CDP-diacylglycerol and glycerol 3-phosphate. Cardiolipin (diphosphatidylglycerol, see Figure 17.2) is composed of two molecules of phosphatidic acid connected by a molecule of glycerol. It is synthesized by the transfer of diacylglycerophosphate from CDP-diacylglycerol to a preexisting molecule of phosphatidylglycerol.

F. Sphingomyelin

Sphingomyelin, a sphingosine-based phospholipid, is a major structural lipid in the membranes of nerve tissue. The synthesis of sphingomyelin is shown in Figure 17.10. Briefly, palmitoyl CoA condenses with serine, as CoA and the carboxyl group (as CO_2) of serine are lost. [Note: This reaction, like the decarboxylation reactions involved in the synthesis of PE from PS, and of regulators from amino acids—for example, the catecholamines from tyrosine (see p. 286)—requires pyridoxal phosphate (a derivative of vitamin B_6) as a coenzyme (see p. 378).] The product is reduced in an NADPH-requiring reaction to sphinganine, which is acylated at the amino group with one of a variety of long-chain fatty acids, and then desaturated to produce a ceramide—the immediate precursor of sphingomyelin.

> A ceramide containing a fatty acid 30 carbons long is a major component of skin, and regulates skin's water permeability.

Phosphorylcholine from phosphatidylcholine is transferred to the ceramide, producing sphingomyelin and diacylglycerol. [Note: Sphingomyelin of the myelin sheath contains predominantly longer-

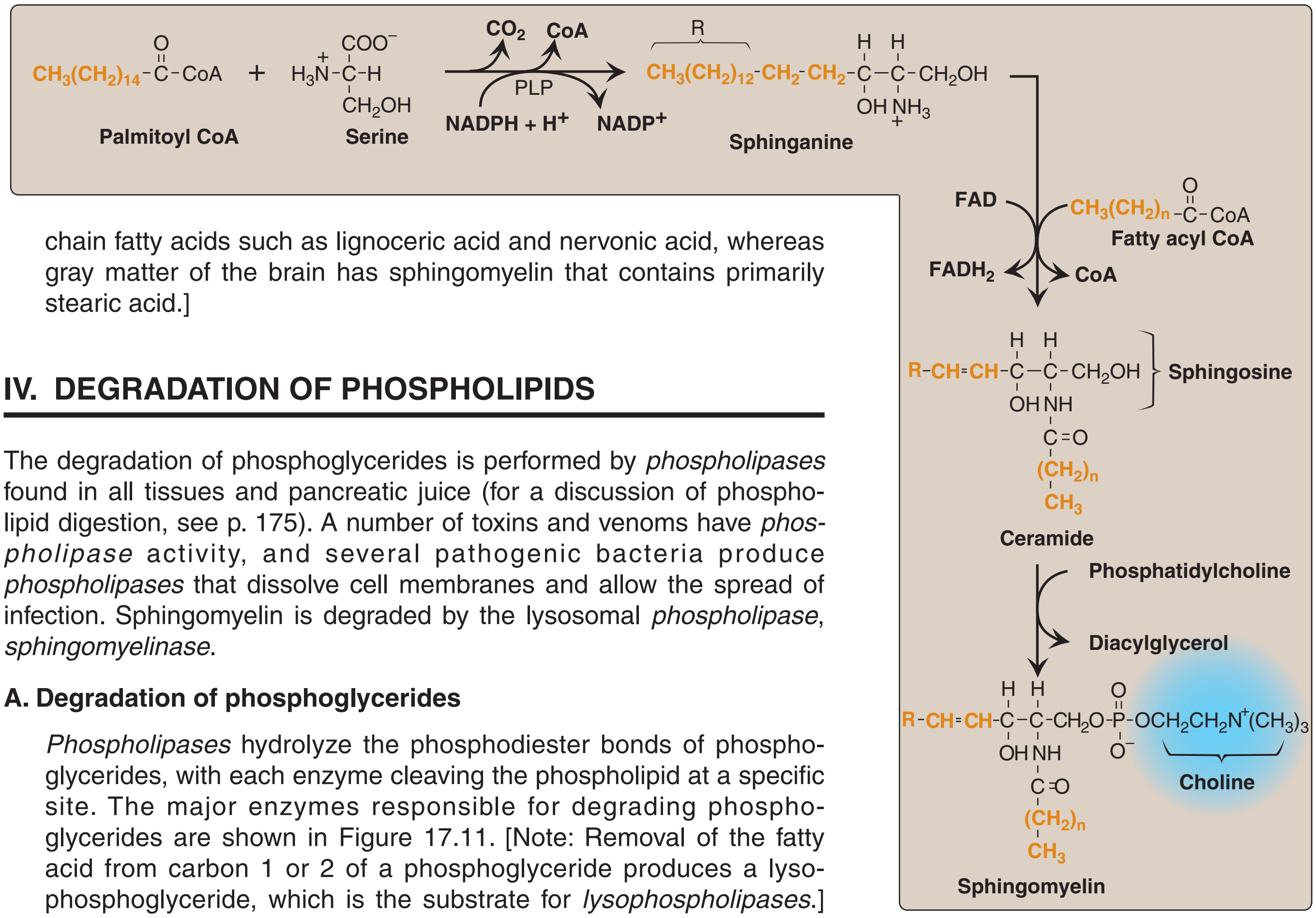


Figure 17.10
Synthesis of sphingomyelin. PLP = pyridoxal phosphate.

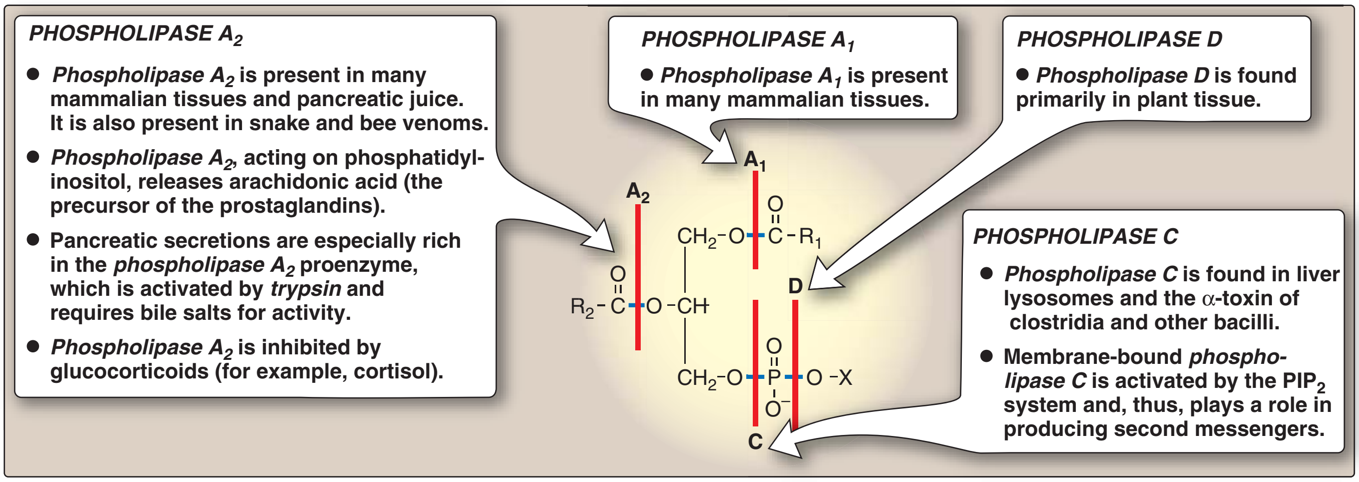
chain fatty acids such as lignoceric acid and nervonic acid, whereas gray matter of the brain has sphingomyelin that contains primarily stearic acid.]

IV. DEGRADATION OF PHOSPHOLIPIDS

The degradation of phosphoglycerides is performed by *phospholipases* found in all tissues and pancreatic juice (for a discussion of phospholipid digestion, see p. 175). A number of toxins and venoms have *phospholipase* activity, and several pathogenic bacteria produce *phospholipases* that dissolve cell membranes and allow the spread of infection. Sphingomyelin is degraded by the lysosomal *phospholipase*, *sphingomyelinase*.

A. Degradation of phosphoglycerides

Phospholipases hydrolyze the phosphodiester bonds of phosphoglycerides, with each enzyme cleaving the phospholipid at a specific site. The major enzymes responsible for degrading phosphoglycerides are shown in Figure 17.11. [Note: Removal of the fatty acid from carbon 1 or 2 of a phosphoglyceride produces a lysophosphoglyceride, which is the substrate for *lysophospholipases*.] *Phospholipases* release molecules that can serve as messengers (for example, DAG and IP_3), or that are the substrates for synthesis of messengers (for example, arachidonic acid). [Note: *Phospholipases* are responsible not only for degrading phospholipids, but also for "remodeling" them. For example, *phospholipases A_1* and *A_2*



PHOSPHOLIPASE A_2

- ***Phospholipase A_2*** **is present in many mammalian tissues and pancreatic juice. It is also present in snake and bee venoms.**
- ***Phospholipase A_2*****, acting on phosphatidylinositol, releases arachidonic acid (the precursor of the prostaglandins).**
- **Pancreatic secretions are especially rich in the *phospholipase A_2* proenzyme, which is activated by *trypsin* and requires bile salts for activity.**
- ***Phospholipase A_2*** **is inhibited by glucocorticoids (for example, cortisol).**

PHOSPHOLIPASE A_1

- ***Phospholipase A_1*** **is present in many mammalian tissues.**

PHOSPHOLIPASE D

- ***Phospholipase D*** **is found primarily in plant tissue.**

PHOSPHOLIPASE C

- ***Phospholipase C*** **is found in liver lysosomes and the α-toxin of clostridia and other bacilli.**
- **Membrane-bound *phospholipase C* is activated by the PIP_2 system and, thus, plays a role in producing second messengers.**

Figure 17.11
Degradation of glycerophospholipids by *phospholipases*.

remove specific fatty acids from membrane-bound phospholipids; these can be replaced with alternative fatty acids using *fatty acyl CoA transferase*. This mechanism is used as one way to create the unique lung surfactant, DPCC (see p. 204), and to insure that carbon 2 of PI (and sometimes of PC) is bound to arachidonic acid.]

B. Degradation of sphingomyelin

Sphingomyelin is degraded by *sphingomyelinase*, a lysosomal enzyme that hydrolytically removes phosphorylcholine, leaving a ceramide. The ceramide is, in turn, cleaved by *ceramidase* into sphingosine and a free fatty acid (Figure 17.12). [Note: The ceramide and sphingosine released regulate signal transduction pathways, in part by influencing the activity of *protein kinase C* and, thus, the phosphorylation of its protein substrates. They also promote apoptosis.] Niemann-Pick disease (Types A and B) is an autosomal recessive disease caused by the inability to degrade sphingomyelin. The deficient enzyme is *sphingomyelinase*—a type of *phospholipase C*. In the severe infantile form (Type A—less than 1% normal activity), the liver and spleen are the primary sites of lipid deposits and are, therefore, tremendously enlarged. The lipid consists primarily of the sphingomyelin that cannot be degraded (Figure 17.13). Infants with this lysosomal storage disease experience rapid and progressive neurodegeneration as a result of deposition of sphingomyelin in the central nervous system, and they die in early childhood. A less severe variant (Type B—5% or more) causes little to no damage to neural tissue, but lungs, spleen, liver, and bone marrow are affected, resulting in a chronic form of the disease, with a life expectancy into adulthood. Although Niemann-Pick disease occurs in all ethnic groups, Type A occurs with greater frequency in the Ashkenazi Jewish population than in the general population.

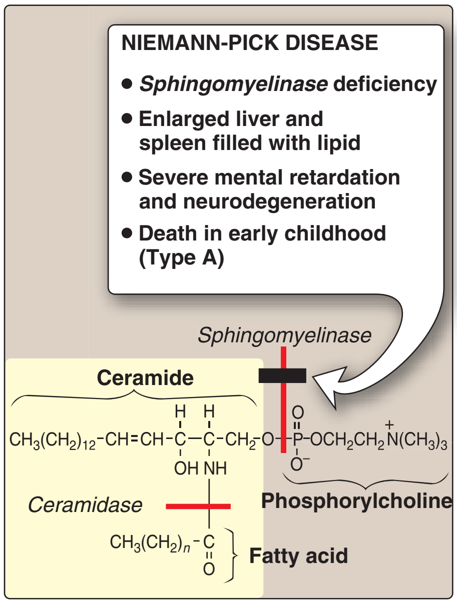

NIEMANN-PICK DISEASE
• *Sphingomyelinase* deficiency
• Enlarged liver and spleen filled with lipid
• Severe mental retardation and neurodegeneration
• Death in early childhood (Type A)
Sphingomyelinase
Ceramide
$CH_3(CH_2)_{12}$-CH=CH-C-C-CH_2-O-P-$OCH_2CH_2\overset{+}{N}(CH_3)_3$
H H
OH NH
O
O^-
Ceramidase
Phosphorylcholine
$CH_3(CH_2)_n$-C=O
Fatty acid

Figure 17.12
Degradation of sphingomyelin.

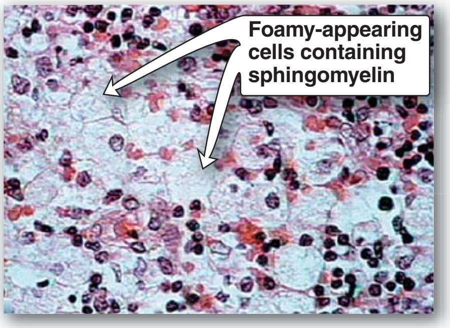

Foamy-appearing cells containing sphingomyelin

Figure 17.13
Accumulation of lipids in spleen cells from a patient with Niemann-Pick disease.

V. OVERVIEW OF GLYCOLIPIDS

Glycolipids are molecules that contain both carbohydrate and lipid components. Like the phospholipid sphingomyelin, glycolipids are derivatives of ceramides in which a long-chain fatty acid is attached to the amino alcohol sphingosine. They are, therefore, more precisely called glycosphingolipids. [Note: Ceramides, then, are the precursors of both phosphorylated and glycosylated sphingolipids.] Like the phospholipids, glycosphingolipids are essential components of all membranes in the body, but they are found in greatest amounts in nerve tissue. They are located in the outer leaflet of the plasma membrane, where they interact with the extracellular environment. As such, they play a role in the regulation of cellular interactions, growth, and development.

> When cells are transformed (that is, when their cell division and growth are dysregulated), there is a dramatic change in the glycosphingolipid composition of the plasma membrane.

Glycosphingolipids are antigenic, and they have been identified as a source of blood group antigens, various embryonic antigens specific for particular stages of fetal development, and some tumor antigens. [Note: The carbohydrate portion of a glycolipid is the antigenic determinant.] They also serve as cell surface receptors for cholera and tetanus toxins, as well as for certain viruses and microbes. Genetic disorders associated with an inability to properly degrade the glycosphingolipids result in lysosomal accumulation of these compounds.

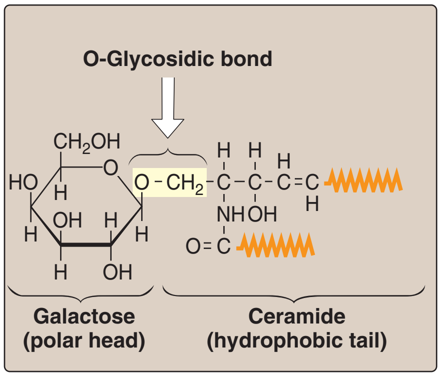

O-Glycosidic bond
CH_2OH
HO
O
H
OH
H
H
H
OH
$O-CH_2-C-C-C=C$
H H
H
NH OH
H
O=C
Galactose (polar head)
Ceramide (hydrophobic tail)

Figure 17.14
Structure of a neutral glycosphingolipid, galactocerebroside (〰 is a fatty acid hydrocarbon chain).

VI. STRUCTURE OF GLYCOSPHINGOLIPIDS

The glycosphingolipids differ from sphingomyelin in that they do not contain phosphate, and the polar head function is provided by a monosaccharide or oligosaccharide attached directly to the ceramide by an O-glycosidic bond (Figure 17.14). The number and type of carbohydrate moieties present help determine the type of glycosphingolipid.

A. Neutral glycosphingolipids

The simplest neutral (uncharged) glycosphingolipids are the cerebrosides. These are ceramide monosaccharides that contain either a molecule of galactose (galactocerebroside—the most common cerebroside found in membranes, see Figure 17.14) or glucose (glucocerebroside, which serves primarily as an intermediate in the synthesis and degradation of the more complex glycosphingolipids). [Note: Members of a group of galactocerebrosides (or glucocerebrosides) may also differ from each other in the type of fatty acid attached to the sphingosine.] As their name implies, cerebrosides are found predominantly in the brain and peripheral nervous tissue, with high concentrations in the myelin sheath. Ceramide oligosaccharides (or globosides) are produced by attaching additional monosaccharides (including GalNAc) to a glucocerebroside. Examples of these compounds include:

Cerebroside (glucocerebroside):	Cer-Glc
Globoside (lactosylceramide):	Cer-Glc-Gal
Globoside (Forssman antigen):	Cer-Glc-Gal-Gal-GalNac-GalNac

(Cer = ceramide, Glc = glucose, Gal = galactose, GalNac = N-acetylgalactosamine)

B. Acidic glycosphingolipids

Acidic glycosphingolipids are negatively charged at physiologic pH. The negative charge is provided by N-acetylneuraminic acid (NANA, a sialic acid, see Figure 17.15) in gangliosides, or by sulfate groups in sulfatides.

1. **Gangliosides:** These are the most complex glycosphingolipids, and are found primarily in the ganglion cells of the central nervous system, particularly at the nerve endings. They are derivatives of ceramide oligosaccharides, and contain one or more molecules of NANA. The notation for these compounds is G (for ganglioside),

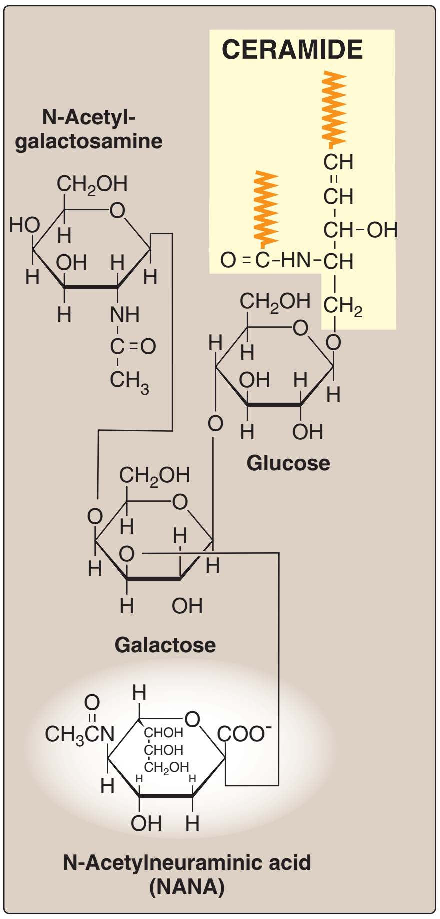

CERAMIDE
N-Acetyl-galactosamine
CH_2OH
HO
O
H
OH H
H
H
H
NH
C=O
CH_3
CH
CH
CH-OH
O=C-HN-CH
CH_2OH
CH_2
O
O
H
H
OH H
H
O
H OH
Glucose
CH_2OH
O
O
H
H
O
H
H
H
H OH
Galactose
H
O
CH_3CN
O
CHOH
CHOH
CH_2OH
COO^-
H
H H
OH H
N-Acetylneuraminic acid (NANA)

Figure 17.15
Structure of the ganglioside G_{M2}.

plus a subscript M, D, T, or Q to indicate whether there is one (mono), two (di), three (tri), or four (quatro) molecules of NANA in the ganglioside, respectively. Additional numbers and letters in the subscript designate the monomeric sequence of the carbohydrate attached to the ceramide. (See Figure 17.15 for the structure of G_{M2}.) Gangliosides are of medical interest because several lipid storage disorders involve the accumulation of NANA-containing glycosphingolipids in cells (see Figure 17.20, p. 212).

2. **Sulfatides:** Sulfoglycosphingolipids (sulfatides) are cerebrosides that contain sulfated galactosyl residues, and are therefore negatively charged at physiologic pH. Sulfatides are found predominantly in nerve tissue and kidney.

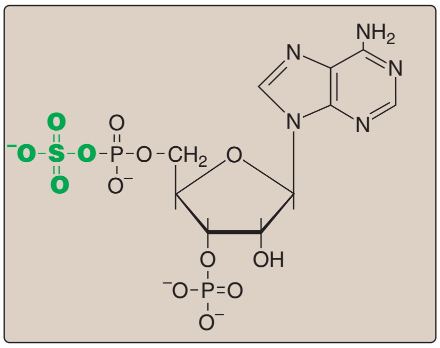


Figure 17.16
Structure of 3'-phosphoadenosine-5'-phosphosulfate (PAPS).

VII. SYNTHESIS AND DEGRADATION OF GLYCOSPHINGOLIPIDS

Synthesis of glycosphingolipids occurs primarily in the Golgi by sequential addition of glycosyl monomers transferred from UDP–sugar donors to the acceptor molecule. The mechanism is similar to that used in glycoprotein synthesis (see p. 166).

A. Enzymes involved in synthesis

The enzymes involved in the synthesis of glycosphingolipids are *glycosyl transferases*, each specific for a particular sugar nucleotide and acceptor. [Note: These enzymes may recognize both glycosphingolipids and glycoproteins as substrates.]

B. Addition of sulfate groups

A sulfate group from the sulfate carrier, 3'-phosphoadenosine-5'-phosphosulfate (PAPS, Figure 17.16), is added by a *sulfotransferase* to the 3'-hydroxyl group of the galactose in a galactocerebroside. Galactocerebroside 3-sulfate is the major sulfatide in the brain (Figure 17.17). [Note: PAPS is also the sulfur donor in glycosaminoglycan synthesis (see p. 162), and steroid hormone catabolism (see p. 240).] An overview of the synthesis of sphingolipids is shown in Figure 17.18.

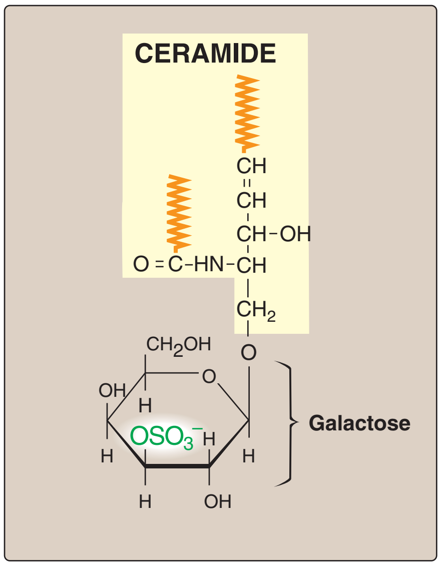


Figure 17.17
Structure of galactocerebroside 3-sulfate.

C. Degradation of glycosphingolipids

Glycosphingolipids are internalized by endocytosis as described for the glycosaminoglycans. All of the enzymes required for the degradative process are present in lysosomes, which fuse with the endocytotic vesicles. The lysosomal enzymes hydrolytically and irreversibly cleave specific bonds in the glycosphingolipid. As seen with the glycosaminoglycans (see p. 163) and glycoproteins (see p. 170), degradation is a sequential process following the rule “last on, first off,” in which the last group added during synthesis is the first group removed in degradation. [Note: Defects in the degradation of the polysaccharide chains in these three glycoconjugates also result in lysosomal storage diseases.]

D. Sphingolipidoses

In a normal individual, synthesis and degradation of glycosphingolipids are balanced, so that the amount of these compounds pre-

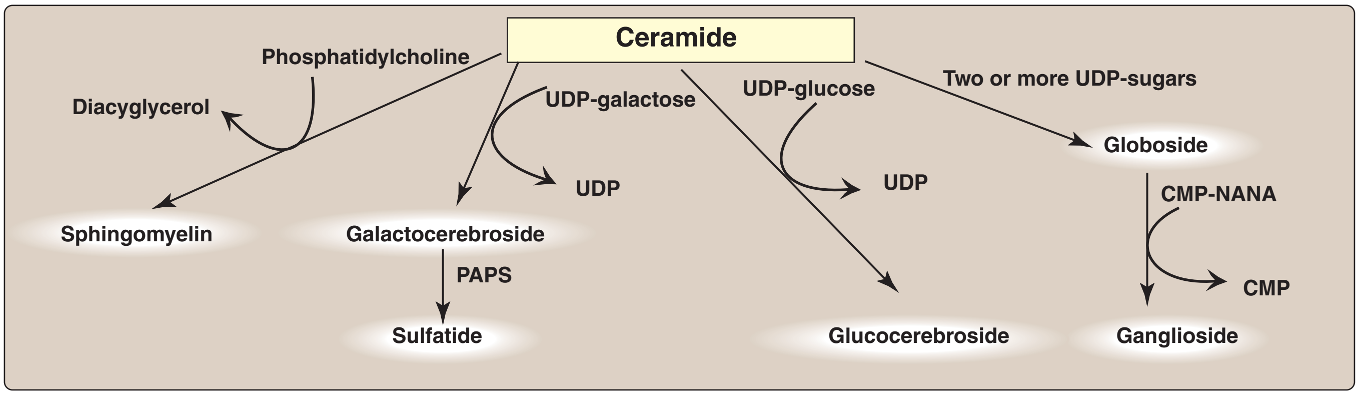

Ceramide
Phosphatidylcholine
Diacyglycerol
Sphingomyelin
UDP-galactose
UDP
Galactocerebroside
PAPS
Sulfatide
UDP-glucose
UDP
Glucocerebroside
Two or more UDP-sugars
Globoside
CMP-NANA
CMP
Ganglioside

Figure 17.18
Overview of sphingolipid synthesis.

sent in membranes is constant. If a specific lysosomal *hydrolase* required for degradation is partially or totally missing, a sphingolipid accumulates. Lysosomal lipid storage diseases caused by these deficiencies are called sphingolipidoses. The result of a specific *hydrolase* deficiency may be seen dramatically in nerve tissue, where neurologic deterioration can lead to early death. [Note: Ganglioside turnover in the central nervous system is extensive during neonatal development.] Figure 17.20 provides an outline of the pathway of sphingolipid degradation and descriptions of some sphingolipidoses.

1. **Common properties:** A specific lysosomal hydrolytic enzyme is deficient in each disorder. Therefore, usually only a single sphingolipid (the substrate for the deficient enzyme) accumulates in the involved organs in each disease. [Note: The rate of biosynthesis of the accumulating lipid is normal.] The disorders are progressive and, although many are fatal in childhood, extensive phenotypic variability is seen leading to the designation of different clinical types, such as Types A and B in Niemann-Pick disease. Genetic variability is also seen because a given disorder can be caused by any one of a variety of mutations within a single gene. The sphingolipidoses are autosomal recessive diseases, except for Fabry disease, which is X-linked. The incidence of the sphingolipidoses is low in most populations, except for Gaucher and Tay-Sachs diseases, which, like Niemann-Pick disease, show a high frequency in the Ashkenazi Jewish population.

2. **Diagnosis and treatment:** A specific sphingolipidosis can be diagnosed by measuring enzyme activity in cultured fibroblasts or peripheral leukocytes, or by analysis of DNA (see p. 473). Histologic examination of the affected tissue is also useful. [Note: Shell-like inclusion bodies are seen in Tay-Sachs, and a wrinkled tissue paper appearance of the cytosol is seen in Gaucher disease (Figure 17.19).] Prenatal diagnosis, using cultured amniocytes or chorionic villi, is available. Gaucher disease, in which macrophages become engorged with glucocerebroside, and Fabry disease, in which globosides accumulate in the vascular endothelial lysosomes of the brain, heart, kidneys, and skin, are treated by recombinant human enzyme replacement therapy, but the mone-

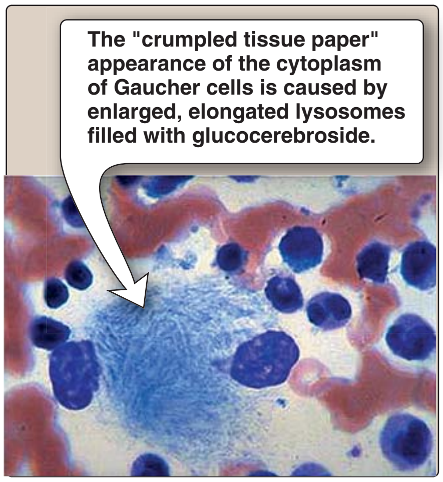
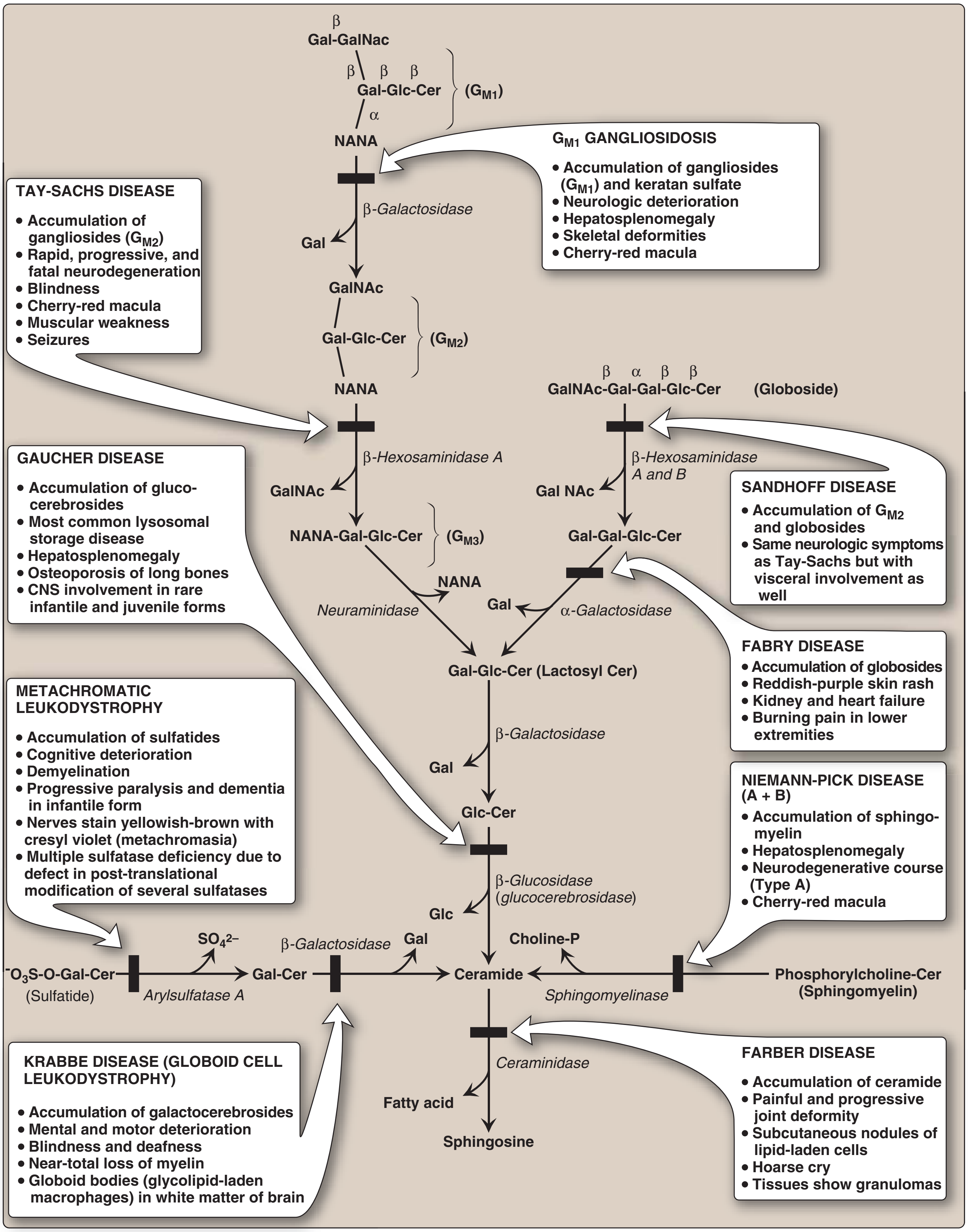

The "crumpled tissue paper" appearance of the cytoplasm of Gaucher cells is caused by enlarged, elongated lysosomes filled with glucocerebroside.

Figure 17.19
Aspirated bone marrow cells from patient with Gaucher disease.


β
Gal-GalNac
β β β
Gal-Glc-Cer
α
(GM1)
NANA
β-Galactosidase
Gal
GalNAc
Gal-Glc-Cer
(GM2)
NANA
β α β β
GalNAc-Gal-Gal-Glc-Cer
(Globoside)
β-Hexosaminidase A
GalNAc
β-Hexosaminidase A and B
Gal NAc
NANA-Gal-Glc-Cer
(GM3)
Gal-Gal-Glc-Cer
NANA
Neuraminidase
Gal
α-Galactosidase
Gal-Glc-Cer (Lactosyl Cer)
β-Galactosidase
Gal
Glc-Cer
β-Glucosidase (glucocerebrosidase)
Glc
SO4 2–
β-Galactosidase
Gal
Choline-P
⁻O3S-O-Gal-Cer
(Sulfatide)
Arylsulfatase A
Gal-Cer
Ceramide
Sphingomyelinase
Phosphorylcholine-Cer (Sphingomyelin)
Ceraminidase
Fatty acid
Sphingosine

G_{M1} GANGLIOSIDOSIS

- Accumulation of gangliosides (G_{M1}) and keratan sulfate
- Neurologic deterioration
- Hepatosplenomegaly
- Skeletal deformities
- Cherry-red macula

TAY-SACHS DISEASE

- Accumulation of gangliosides (G_{M2})
- Rapid, progressive, and fatal neurodegeneration
- Blindness
- Cherry-red macula
- Muscular weakness
- Seizures

GAUCHER DISEASE

- Accumulation of glucocerebrosides
- Most common lysosomal storage disease
- Hepatosplenomegaly
- Osteoporosis of long bones
- CNS involvement in rare infantile and juvenile forms

SANDHOFF DISEASE

- Accumulation of G_{M2} and globosides
- Same neurologic symptoms as Tay-Sachs but with visceral involvement as well

FABRY DISEASE

- Accumulation of globosides
- Reddish-purple skin rash
- Kidney and heart failure
- Burning pain in lower extremities

METACHROMATIC LEUKODYSTROPHY

- Accumulation of sulfatides
- Cognitive deterioration
- Demyelination
- Progressive paralysis and dementia in infantile form
- Nerves stain yellowish-brown with cresyl violet (metachromasia)
- Multiple sulfatase deficiency due to defect in post-translational modification of several sulfatases

NIEMANN-PICK DISEASE (A + B)

- Accumulation of sphingomyelin
- Hepatosplenomegaly
- Neurodegenerative course (Type A)
- Cherry-red macula

KRABBE DISEASE (GLOBOID CELL LEUKODYSTROPHY)

- Accumulation of galactocerebrosides
- Mental and motor deterioration
- Blindness and deafness
- Near-total loss of myelin
- Globoid bodies (glycolipid-laden macrophages) in white matter of brain

FARBER DISEASE

- Accumulation of ceramide
- Painful and progressive joint deformity
- Subcutaneous nodules of lipid-laden cells
- Hoarse cry
- Tissues show granulomas

Figure 17.20
Degradation of sphingolipids showing the lysosomal enzymes affected in related genetic diseases, the sphingolipidoses. All of the diseases are autosomal recessive except Fabry disease, which is X-linked, and all can be fatal in early life. (Cer = ceramide).

tary cost is extremely high. Gaucher has also been treated by bone marrow transplantation (because macrophages are derived from hematopoietic stem cells), and by substrate reduction therapy through pharmacological reduction of glucosylceramide, the substrate for the deficient enzyme.

VIII. PROSTAGLANDINS AND RELATED COMPOUNDS

Prostaglandins, and the related compounds thromboxanes and leukotrienes, are collectively known as eicosanoids to reflect their origin from polyunsaturated fatty acids with 20 carbons. They are extremely potent compounds that elicit a wide range of responses, both physiologic (inflammatory response) and pathologic (hypersensitivity). They ensure gastric integrity and renal function, regulate smooth muscle contraction (intestine and uterus are key sites) and blood vessel diameter, and maintain platelet homeostasis. Although they have been compared to hormones in terms of their actions, eicosanoids differ from the true hormones in that they are produced in very small amounts in almost all tissues rather than in specialized glands. They also act locally rather than after transport in the blood to distant sites, as occurs with true hormones such as insulin. Eicosanoids are not stored, and they have an extremely short half-life, being rapidly metabolized to inactive products. Their biologic actions are mediated by plasma membrane G protein–coupled receptors (see p. 94), which are different in different organ systems. Examples of prostaglandins and related structures are shown in Figure 17.21.

A. Synthesis of prostaglandins and thromboxanes

The dietary precursor of the prostaglandins is the essential fatty acid, linoleic acid, an ω-6 fatty acid. It is desaturated and elongated to arachidonic acid (also an ω-6), the immediate precursor of the predominant class of prostaglandins (those with two double bonds) in humans (Figure 17.22). [Note: Arachidonic acid is incorporated into membrane-bound phospholipids. It is released by *phospholipase A_2* in response to a variety of signals (Figure 17.23).]

1. **Synthesis of PGH_2:** The first step in prostaglandin synthesis is the oxidative cyclization of free arachidonic acid to yield PGH_2 by *prostaglandin endoperoxide synthase* (*PGH synthase*). This enzyme is an endoplasmic reticulum membrane-bound protein that has two catalytic activities: *fatty acid cyclooxygenase* (*COX*), which requires two molecules of O_2, and *peroxidase*, which is dependent on reduced glutathione (see p. 148). PGH_2 is converted to a variety of prostaglandins and thromboxanes, as shown in Figure 17.23, by cell-specific *synthases*.

   a. **Isozymes of PGH synthase:** Two isozymes, usually denoted as *COX-1* and *COX-2*, of *PGH synthase* are known. *COX-1* is made constitutively in most tissues, and is required for maintenance of healthy gastric tissue, renal homeostasis, and platelet aggregation. *COX-2* is inducible in a limited number of tissues in response to products of activated immune and inflammatory cells. [Note: The increase in prostaglandin synthesis subsequent to the induction of *COX-2* mediates the pain, heat, redness, and swelling of inflammation, and the fever of infection.]

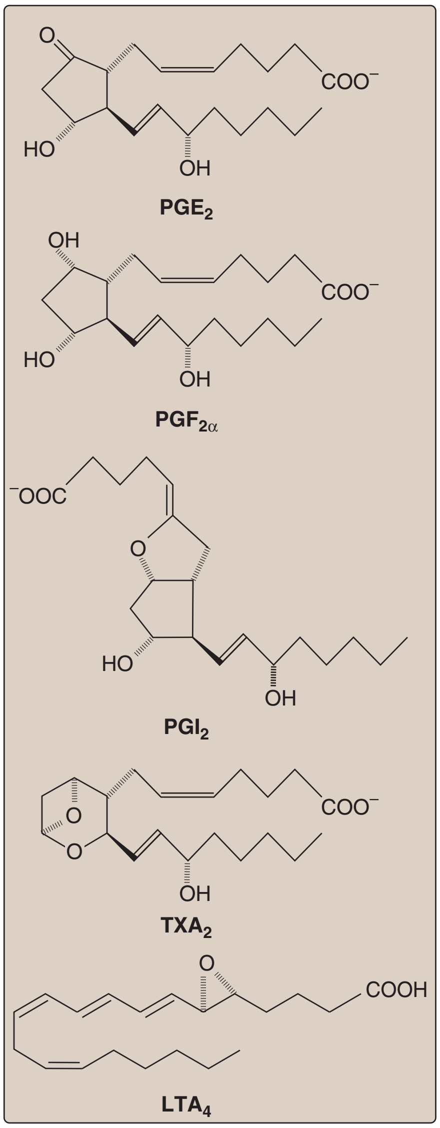


Figure 17.21
Examples of prostaglandin structures. Prostaglandins are named as follows: PG plus a third letter (for example, A, D, E, F), which designates the type and arrangement of functional groups in the molecule. The subscript number indicates the number of double bonds in the molecule. PGI_2 is known as prostacyclin. Thromboxanes are designated by TX and leukotrienes by LT.

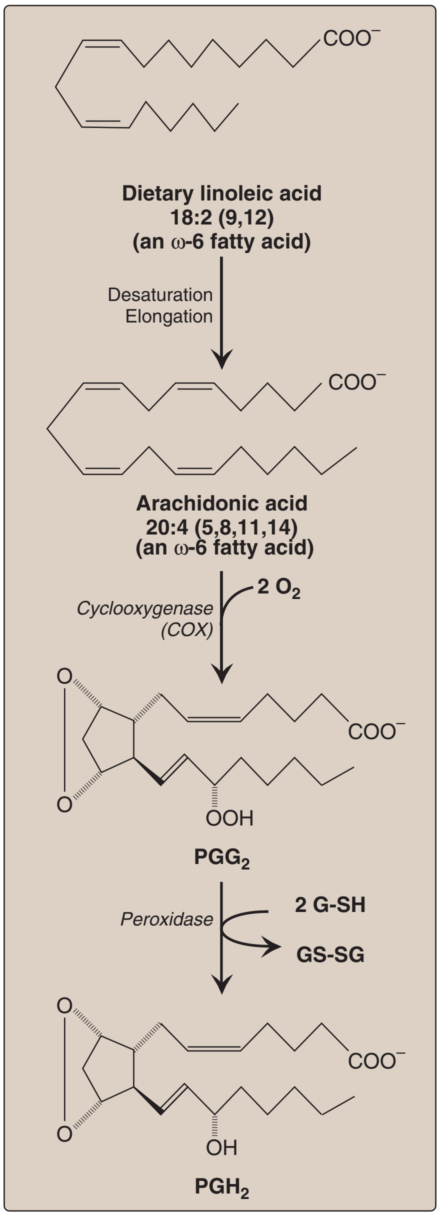


Figure 17.22
Oxidation and cyclization of arachidonic acid by the two catalytic activities of prostaglandin endoperoxide synthase. G-SH = reduced glutathione; GS-SG = oxidized glutathione.

2. **Inhibition of prostaglandin synthesis:** The synthesis of prostaglandins can be inhibited by a number of unrelated compounds. For example, cortisol (a steroidal anti-inflammatory agent) inhibits *phospholipase A_2* activity (see Figure 17.23) and, therefore, the precursor of the prostaglandins, arachidonic acid, is not made available from membrane phospholipids. Aspirin, indomethacin, and phenylbutazone (all nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory agents [NSAIDS]) inhibit both *COX-1* and *COX-2* and, thus, prevent the synthesis of the parent prostaglandin, PGH_2. [Note: Systemic inhibition of *COX-1*, with subsequent damage to the stomach and the kidneys, and impaired clotting of blood, is the basis of aspirin's toxicity.] Inhibitors specific for *COX-2* (for example, celecoxib[1]) were designed to reduce pathologic inflammatory processes while maintaining the physiologic functions of *COX-1*; however, their use has been associated with increased risk of heart attacks.

B. Synthesis of leukotrienes

Arachidonic acid is converted to a variety of linear hydroperoxy acids by a separate pathway involving a family of *lipoxygenases* (LOXs). For example, *5-lipoxygenase* converts arachidonic acid to 5-hydroxy-6,8,11,14 eicosatetraenoic acid (5-HPETE, see Figure 17.23). 5-HPETE is converted to a series of leukotrienes, the nature of the final products varying according to the tissue. Leukotrienes are mediators of allergic response and inflammation. Their synthesis is not affected by NSAIDs. [Note: Aspirin-induced asthma is a response to overproduction of leukotrienes with NSAID use. NSAIDs, however, also favor synthesis of lipoxins (LXs), lipid mediators with anti-inflammatory effects.] Inhibitors of *5-lipoxygenase* and leukotriene receptor antagonists are used in the treatment of asthma.[2]

C. Role of prostaglandins in platelet homeostasis

Thromboxane A_2 (TXA_2) is produced by *COX-1* in activated platelets. It promotes adherence and aggregation of circulating platelets, and contraction of vascular smooth muscle, thus promoting formation of blood clots (thrombi). Prostacyclin (PGI_2), produced by *COX-2* in vascular endothelial cells, inhibits platelet aggregation and stimulates vasodilation, and so impedes thrombogenesis. The opposing effects of TXA_2 and PGI_2 limit thrombi formation to sites of vascular injury. [Note: Aspirin has an antithrombogenic effect. It inhibits *COX-1* (and TXA_2 synthesis) in platelets, and *COX-2* (and PGI_2 synthesis) in endothelial cells by irreversible acetylation of these isozymes (Figure 17.24). The inhibition of *COX-1* cannot be overcome in platelets, which lack nuclei. However, the inhibition of *COX-2* can be overcome in endothelial cells, because they have a nucleus and, therefore, can generate more of the enzyme. This difference is the basis of low-dose aspirin therapy used to lower the risk of stroke and heart attacks by decreasing formation of thrombi.]

---

[1] See Chapter 41 in ***Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Pharmacology*** for a discussion of anti-inflammatory drugs.
[2] See Chapter 27 in ***Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Pharmacology*** for a discussion of the treatment of asthma.

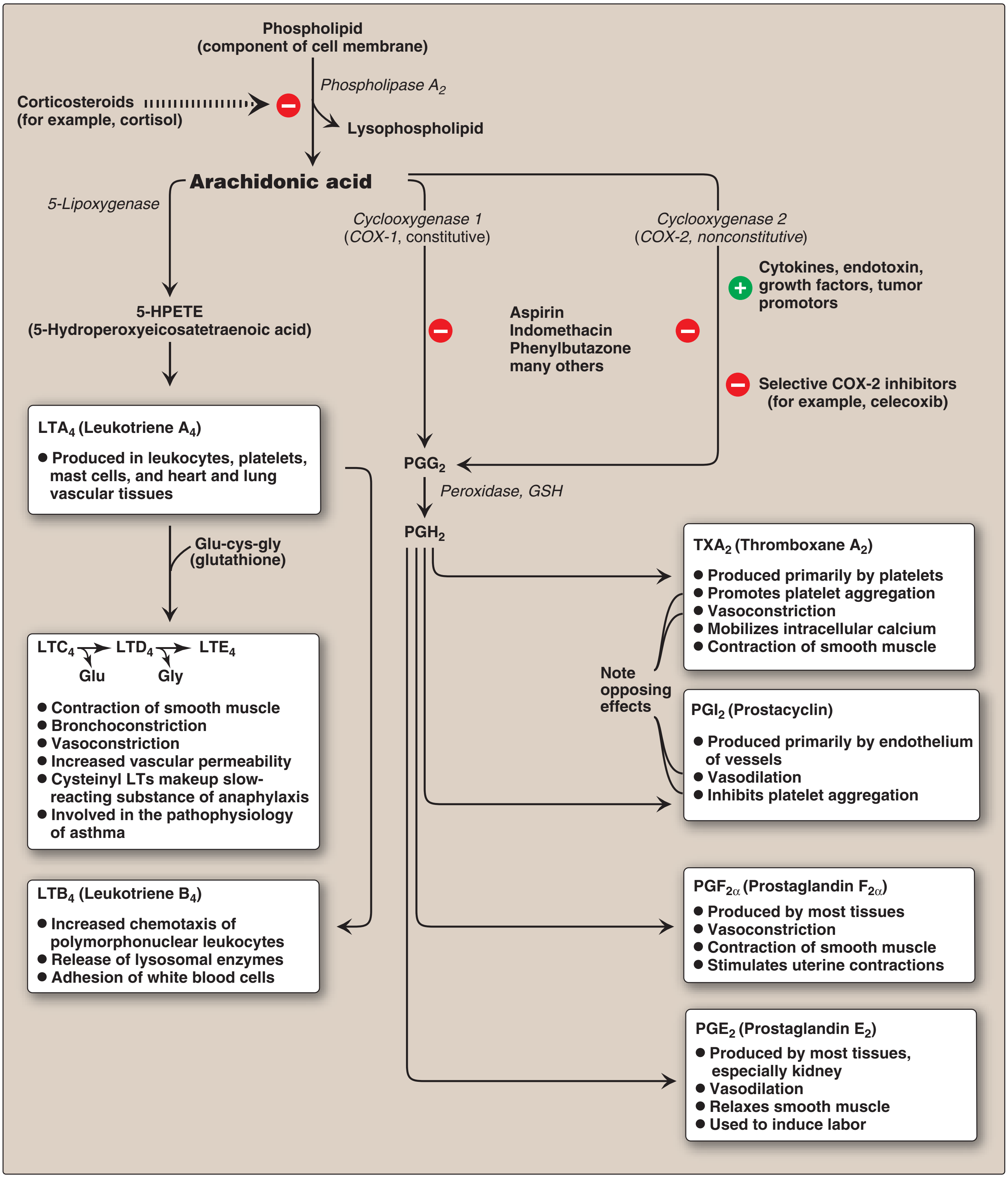

Phospholipid
(component of cell membrane)
Phospholipase A_2
Corticosteroids
(for example, cortisol)
Lysophospholipid
Arachidonic acid
5-Lipoxygenase
Cyclooxygenase 1
(COX-1, constitutive)
Cyclooxygenase 2
(COX-2, nonconstitutive)
Cytokines, endotoxin, growth factors, tumor promotors
5-HPETE
(5-Hydroperoxyeicosatetraenoic acid)
Aspirin
Indomethacin
Phenylbutazone
many others
Selective COX-2 inhibitors
(for example, celecoxib)
LTA_4 (Leukotriene A_4)
Produced in leukocytes, platelets, mast cells, and heart and lung vascular tissues
PGG_2
Peroxidase, GSH
PGH_2
Glu-cys-gly
(glutathione)
TXA_2 (Thromboxane A_2)
Produced primarily by platelets
Promotes platelet aggregation
Vasoconstriction
Mobilizes intracellular calcium
Contraction of smooth muscle
LTC_4
LTD_4
LTE_4
Glu
Gly
Contraction of smooth muscle
Bronchoconstriction
Vasoconstriction
Increased vascular permeability
Cysteinyl LTs makeup slow-reacting substance of anaphylaxis
Involved in the pathophysiology of asthma
Note opposing effects
PGI_2 (Prostacyclin)
Produced primarily by endothelium of vessels
Vasodilation
Inhibits platelet aggregation
LTB_4 (Leukotriene B_4)
Increased chemotaxis of polymorphonuclear leukocytes
Release of lysosomal enzymes
Adhesion of white blood cells
$PGF_{2\alpha}$ (Prostaglandin $F_{2\alpha}$)
Produced by most tissues
Vasoconstriction
Contraction of smooth muscle
Stimulates uterine contractions
PGE_2 (Prostaglandin E_2)
Produced by most tissues, especially kidney
Vasodilation
Relaxes smooth muscle
Used to induce labor

Figure 17.23
Overview of the biosynthesis and function of some important prostaglandins, leukotrienes, and a thromboxane from arachidonic acid.

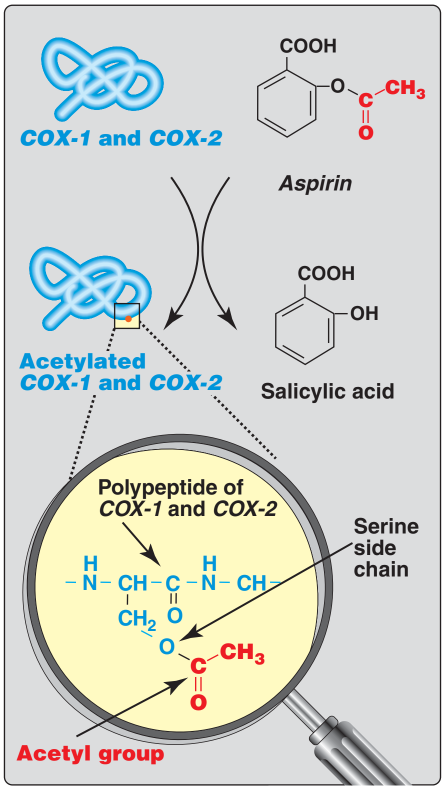


Figure 17.24
Irreversible acetylation of *COX-1 and COX-2* by aspirin.

IX. CHAPTER SUMMARY

Phospholipids are **polar**, **ionic** compounds composed of an **alcohol** (for example, **choline** or **ethanolamine**) attached by a phosphodiester bridge to either **diacylglycerol** (producing **phosphatidylcholine** or **phosphatidylethanolamine)** or to **sphingosine** (Figure 17.25). The alcohol **sphingosine** attached to a long-chain fatty acid produces a **ceramide**. Addition of a **phosphorylcholine** produces the phospholipid **sphingomyelin**, which is the only significant sphingophospholipid in humans. Phospholipids are the predominant lipids of **cell membranes**. Nonmembrane-bound phospholipids serve as components of **lung surfactant** and **bile**. **Dipalmitoylphosphatidylcholine** (**DPPC**, also called **dipalmitoyl lecithin**, **DPPL**) is the major lipid component of **lung surfactant**. Insufficient surfactant production causes **respiratory distress syndrome**. **Phosphatidylinositol** (**PI**) serves as a reservoir for **arachidonic acid** in membranes. The phosphorylation of membrane-bound PI produces **phosphatidylinositol 4,5-bisphosphate** (**PIP$_2$**). This compound is degraded by **phospholipase C** in response to the binding of a variety of neurotransmitters, hormones, and growth factors to membrane receptors. The products of this degradation, **inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate** (**IP$_3$**) and **diacylglycerol** mediate the mobilization of intracellular **calcium** and the activation of **protein kinase C**, which act synergistically to evoke cellular responses. Specific proteins can be covalently attached via a carbohydrate bridge to membrane-bound phosphatidylinositol (**glycosyl phosphatidylinositol**, or **GPI**). A deficiency in the synthesis of GPI in hematopoietic cells results in a hemolytic disease, **paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria**. The **degradation** of phosphoglycerides is performed by **phospholipases** found in all tissues and pancreatic juice. **Sphingomyelin** is degraded to a ceramide plus phosphorylcholine by the lysosomal enzyme **sphingomyelinase**. A deficiency in sphingomyelinase causes **Niemann-Pick (A + B) disease**. **Glycolipids** (glycosphingolipids) are derivatives of **ceramides** to which carbohydrates have been attached. When one sugar molecule is added to the ceramide, a **cerebroside** is produced. If an oligosaccharide is added, a **globoside** is produced. If an acidic N-acetylneuraminic acid (NANA) molecule is added, a **ganglioside** is produced. Glycolipids are found predominantly in cell membranes of the **brain** and **peripheral nervous tissue**, with high concentrations in the **myelin sheath**. They are very **antigenic**. Glycolipids are degraded in the **lysosomes** by hydrolytic enzymes. A deficiency of one of these enzymes produces a **sphingolipidosis**, in each of which a characteristic sphingolipid accumulates. **Prostaglandins** (**PG**), **thromboxanes** (**TX**), and **leukotrienes** (**LT**) are produced in very small amounts in almost all tissues, act locally and have an extremely short half-life. **They serve as mediators of the inflammatory response.** The dietary precursor of the eicosanoids is the essential fatty acid, **linoleic acid**. It is desaturated and elongated to **arachidonic acid**—the immediate precursor of prostaglandins—which is stored in the membrane as a component of a phospholipid, generally phosphatidylinositol. Arachidonic acid is released from the phospholipid by **phospholipase A$_2$**. Synthesis of the **PG** and **TX** begins with the oxidative cyclization of free arachidonic acid to yield PGH$_2$ by **prostaglandin endoperoxide synthase**—an ER membrane protein that has two catalytic activities: **fatty acid cyclooxygenase** (**COX**) and **peroxidase**. Opposing effects of PGI$_2$ and TXA$_2$ limit clot formation. There are two isozymes of the synthase: **COX-1** (constitutive) and **COX-2**. NSAIDs inhibit both. **LT** are linear molecules produced by the **5-lipoxygenase** pathway. They mediate allergic response and are unaffected by NSAIDs.

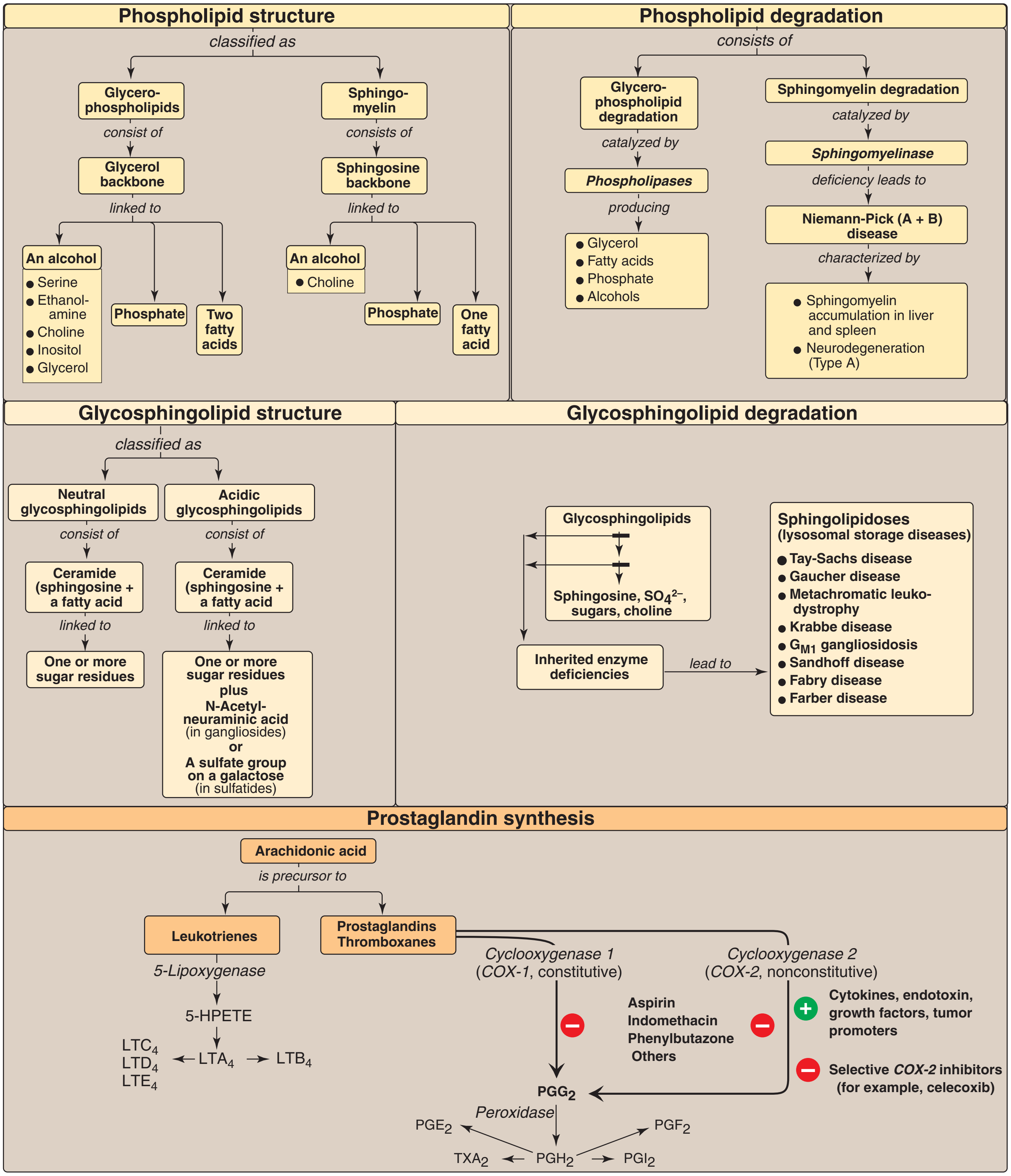

Phospholipid structure
classified as
Glycero-phospholipids
Sphingo-myelin
consist of
consists of
Glycerol backbone
Sphingosine backbone
linked to
linked to
An alcohol
Serine
Ethanol-amine
Choline
Inositol
Glycerol
Phosphate
Two fatty acids
An alcohol
Choline
Phosphate
One fatty acid
Phospholipid degradation
consists of
Glycero-phospholipid degradation
Sphingomyelin degradation
catalyzed by
catalyzed by
Phospholipases
Sphingomyelinase
producing
Glycerol
Fatty acids
Phosphate
Alcohols
deficiency leads to
Niemann-Pick (A + B) disease
characterized by
Sphingomyelin accumulation in liver and spleen
Neurodegeneration (Type A)
Glycosphingolipid structure
classified as
Neutral glycosphingolipids
Acidic glycosphingolipids
consist of
consist of
Ceramide (sphingosine + a fatty acid
Ceramide (sphingosine + a fatty acid
linked to
linked to
One or more sugar residues
One or more sugar residues plus N-Acetyl-neuraminic acid (in gangliosides) or A sulfate group on a galactose (in sulfatides)
Glycosphingolipid degradation
Glycosphingolipids
Sphingosine, SO_4^{2-}, sugars, choline
Inherited enzyme deficiencies
lead to
Sphingolipidoses (lysosomal storage diseases)
Tay-Sachs disease
Gaucher disease
Metachromatic leuko-dystrophy
Krabbe disease
G_{M1} gangliosidosis
Sandhoff disease
Fabry disease
Farber disease
Prostaglandin synthesis
Arachidonic acid
is precursor to
Leukotrienes
Prostaglandins Thromboxanes
5-Lipoxygenase
5-HPETE
LTC_4
LTD_4
LTE_4
LTA_4
LTB_4
Cyclooxygenase 1 (COX-1, constitutive)
Cyclooxygenase 2 (COX-2, nonconstitutive)
Aspirin
Indomethacin
Phenylbutazone
Others
+
Cytokines, endotoxin, growth factors, tumor promoters
−
Selective COX-2 inhibitors (for example, celecoxib)
PGG_2
Peroxidase
PGE_2
PGF_2
TXA_2
PGH_2
PGI_2

Figure 17.25
Key concept map for complex lipids.

Study Questions

Choose the ONE correct answer.

17.1 Aspirin-induced asthma (AIA) is a severe reaction to nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) characterized by bronchoconstriction 30 minutes to several hours after ingestion. It is seen in as many as 20% of adults. Which of the following statements best explains the symptoms seen in patients with AIA?

A. NSAIDs inhibit the activity of the CFTR protein, resulting in thickened secretions that block airways.

B. NSAIDs inhibit COX but not lipoxygenase, resulting in the flow of arachidonic acid to leukotriene synthesis.

C. NSAIDs activate the COX activity of PGH synthase, resulting in increased synthesis of prostaglandins that promote vasodilation.

D. NSAIDs activate phospholipases, resulting in decreased amounts of dipalmytoylphosphatidylcholine and alveolar collapse (atelectasis).

Correct answer = B. NSAIDs inhibit COX but not lipoxygenase, so any arachidonic acid available is used for the synthesis of bronchoconstricting-leukotrienes. NSAIDs have no effect on the CFTR protein, defects in which are the cause of cystic fibrosis. Steroids, not NSAIDs, inhibit phospholipase A_2. COX is inhibited by NSAIDs, not activated. NSAIDs have no effect on phospholipases.

17.2 An infant, born at 28 weeks of gestation, rapidly gave evidence of respiratory distress. Lab and x-ray results supported the diagnosis of infant respiratory distress syndrome (RDS). Which of the following statements about this syndrome is true?

A. It is unrelated to the baby's premature birth.

B. It is a consequence of too few Type II pneumocytes.

C. The lecithin/sphingomyelin ratio in the amniotic fluid is likely to be greater than two.

D. The concentration of dipalmitoylphosphatidylcholine in the amniotic fluid would be expected to be lower than that of a full-term baby.

E. RDS is an easily treated disorder with low mortality.

Correct answer = D. Dipalmitoylphosphatidylcholine (DPPC, or dipalmitoyl lecithin) is the lung surfactant found in mature, healthy lungs. RDS can occur in lungs that make too little of this compound. If the lecithin/sphingomyelin ratio in amniotic is greater than two, a newborn's lungs are considered to be sufficiently mature—premature lungs would be expected to have a ratio lower than two. The RDS would not be due to too few Type II pneumocytes—these cells would simply be secreting sphingomyelin rather than DPPC at 28 weeks of gestation.

17.3 A 25-year-old woman with a history that included hepatosplenomegaly with eventual removal of the spleen, bone and joint pain with several fractures of the femur, and a liver biopsy that showed wrinkled-looking cells with accumulations of glucosylceramides was presented at Grand Rounds. The likely diagnosis for this patient is:

A. Fabry disease.

B. Farber disease.

C. Gaucher disease.

D. Krabbe disease.

E. Niemann-Pick disease.

Correct answer = C. The adult form of Gaucher disease causes hepatosplenomegaly, osteoporosis of the long bones, and the characteristic wrinkled appearance of the cytosol of cells. This is also the sphingolipidosis in which glucosylceramides accumulate. The deficient enzyme is β-glucosidase (a glucocerebrosidase).

Cholesterol and Steroid Metabolism

18

I. OVERVIEW

Cholesterol, the characteristic steroid alcohol of animal tissues, performs a number of essential functions in the body. For example, cholesterol is a structural component of all cell membranes, modulating their fluidity, and, in specialized tissues, cholesterol is a precursor of bile acids, steroid hormones, and vitamin D. It is therefore of critical importance that the cells of the body be assured an appropriate supply of cholesterol. To meet this need, a complex series of transport, biosynthetic, and regulatory mechanisms has evolved. The liver plays a central role in the regulation of the body's cholesterol homeostasis. For example, cholesterol enters the liver's cholesterol pool from a number of sources including dietary cholesterol, as well as cholesterol synthesized de novo by extrahepatic tissues and by the liver itself. Cholesterol is eliminated from the liver as unmodified cholesterol in the bile, or it can be converted to bile salts that are secreted into the intestinal lumen. It can also serve as a component of plasma lipoproteins sent to the peripheral tissues. In humans, the balance between cholesterol influx and efflux is not precise, resulting in a gradual deposition of cholesterol in the tissues, particularly in the endothelial linings of blood vessels. This is a potentially life-threatening occurrence when the lipid deposition leads to plaque formation, causing the narrowing of blood vessels (atherosclerosis) and increased risk of cardio-, cerebro- and peripheral vascular disease. Figure 18.1 summarizes the major sources of liver cholesterol and the routes by which cholesterol leaves the liver.

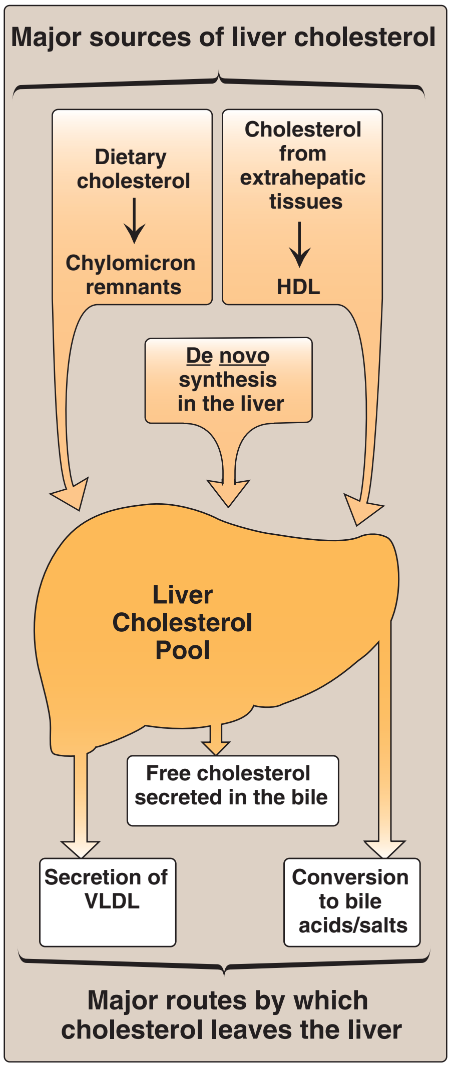

Major sources of liver cholesterol
Dietary cholesterol
Chylomicron remnants
Cholesterol from extrahepatic tissues
HDL
De novo synthesis in the liver
Liver Cholesterol Pool
Free cholesterol secreted in the bile
Secretion of VLDL
Conversion to bile acids/salts
Major routes by which cholesterol leaves the liver

Figure 18.1
Sources of liver cholesterol (influx) and routes by which cholesterol leaves the liver (efflux).

II. STRUCTURE OF CHOLESTEROL

Cholesterol is a very hydrophobic compound. It consists of four fused hydrocarbon rings (A-D) called the "steroid nucleus"), and it has an eight-carbon, branched hydrocarbon chain attached to carbon 17 of the D ring. Ring A has a hydroxyl group at carbon 3, and ring B has a double bond between carbon 5 and carbon 6 (Figure 18.2).

A. Sterols

Steroids with eight to ten carbon atoms in the side chain at carbon 17 and a hydroxyl group at carbon 3 are classified as sterols.

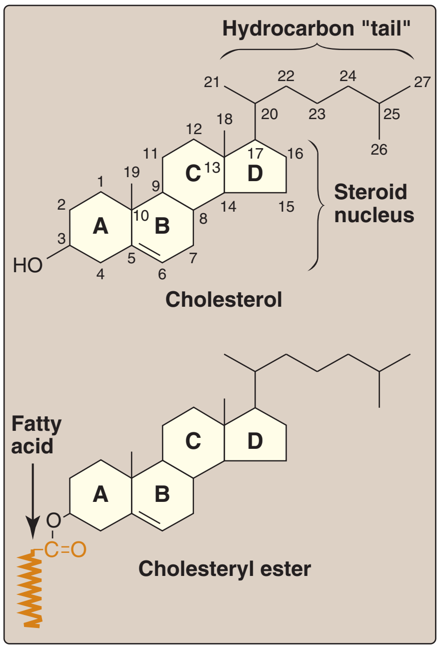


Figure 18.2
Structure of cholesterol and its ester.

Cholesterol is the major sterol in animal tissues. [Note: Plant sterols, such as β-sitosterol are poorly absorbed by humans. After entering the enterocytes, they are actively transported back into the intestinal lumen. Because some cholesterol is transported as well, plant sterols appear to reduce the absorption of dietary cholesterol. This has led to clinically useful dietary treatment of hypercholesteremia. Daily ingestion of plant steroid esters (in the form of commercially available trans fatty acid–free margarine) is one of a number of dietary strategies leading to the reduction of plasma cholesterol levels (see p. 363).]

B. Cholesteryl esters

Most plasma cholesterol is in an esterified form (with a fatty acid attached at carbon 3, see Figure 18.2), which makes the structure even more hydrophobic than free (unesterified) cholesterol. Cholesteryl esters are not found in membranes, and are normally present only in low levels in most cells. Because of their hydrophobicity, cholesterol and its esters must be transported in association with protein as a component of a lipoprotein particle (see p. 227) or be solubilized by phospholipids and bile salts in the bile (see p. 226).

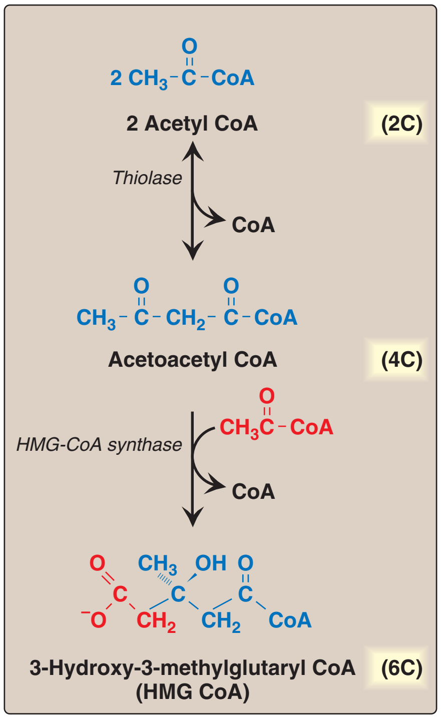


Figure 18.3
Synthesis of HMG CoA.

III. SYNTHESIS OF CHOLESTEROL

Cholesterol is synthesized by virtually all tissues in humans, although liver, intestine, adrenal cortex, and reproductive tissues, including ovaries, testes, and placenta, make the largest contributions to the body's cholesterol pool. As with fatty acids, all the carbon atoms in cholesterol are provided by acetate, and NADPH provides the reducing equivalents. The pathway is endergonic, being driven by hydrolysis of the high-energy thioester bond of acetyl coenzyme A (CoA) and the terminal phosphate bond of adenosine triphosphate (ATP). Synthesis requires enzymes in both the cytosol and the membrane of the smooth endoplasmic reticulum (ER). The pathway is responsive to changes in cholesterol concentration, and regulatory mechanisms exist to balance the rate of cholesterol synthesis within the body against the rate of cholesterol excretion. An imbalance in this regulation can lead to an elevation in circulating levels of plasma cholesterol, with the potential for vascular disease.

A. Synthesis of 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl (HMG) CoA

The first two reactions in the cholesterol synthetic pathway are similar to those in the pathway that produces ketone bodies (see Figure 16.22, p. 196). They result in the production of HMG CoA (Figure 18.3). First, two acetyl CoA molecules condense to form acetoacetyl CoA. Next, a third molecule of acetyl CoA is added, producing HMG CoA, a six-carbon compound. [Note: Liver parenchymal cells contain two isoenzymes of *HMG CoA synthase*. The cytosolic enzyme participates in cholesterol synthesis, whereas the mitochondrial enzyme functions in the pathway for ketone body synthesis.]

B. Synthesis of mevalonate

The next step, the reduction of HMG CoA to mevalonate, is catalyzed by *HMG CoA reductase*, and is the rate-limiting and key regulated step in cholesterol synthesis. It occurs in the cytosol, uses two molecules of NADPH as the reducing agent, and releases CoA, making the reaction irreversible (Figure 18.4). [Note: *HMG CoA reductase* is an intrinsic membrane protein of the ER, with the enzyme's catalytic domain projecting into the cytosol. Regulation of *HMG CoA reductase* activity is discussed below.]

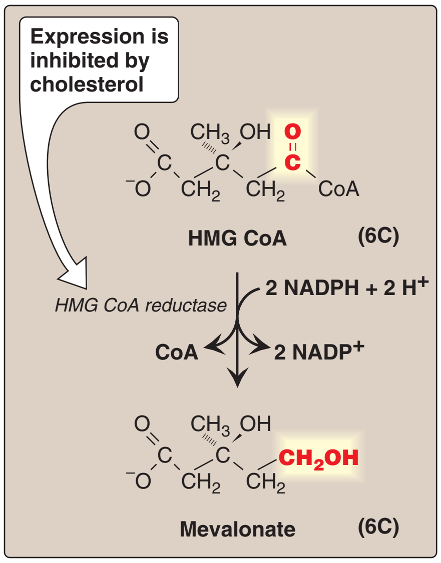


Figure 18.4
Synthesis of mevalonate.

C. Synthesis of cholesterol

The reactions and enzymes involved in the synthesis of cholesterol from mevalonate are illustrated in Figure 18.5. [Note: The numbers shown in brackets below correspond to numbered reactions shown in this figure.]

[1] Mevalonate is converted to 5-pyrophosphomevalonate in two steps, each of which transfers a phosphate group from ATP.

[2] A five-carbon isoprene unit—isopentenyl pyrophosphate (IPP)—is formed by the decarboxylation of 5-pyrophosphomevalonate. The reaction requires ATP. [Note: IPP is the precursor of a family of molecules with diverse functions, the isoprenoids. Cholesterol is a sterol isoprenoid. Nonsterol isoprenoids include dolichol (see p. 167) and ubiquinone (Coenzyme Q) (see p. 75).]

[3] IPP is isomerized to 3,3-dimethylallyl pyrophosphate (DPP).

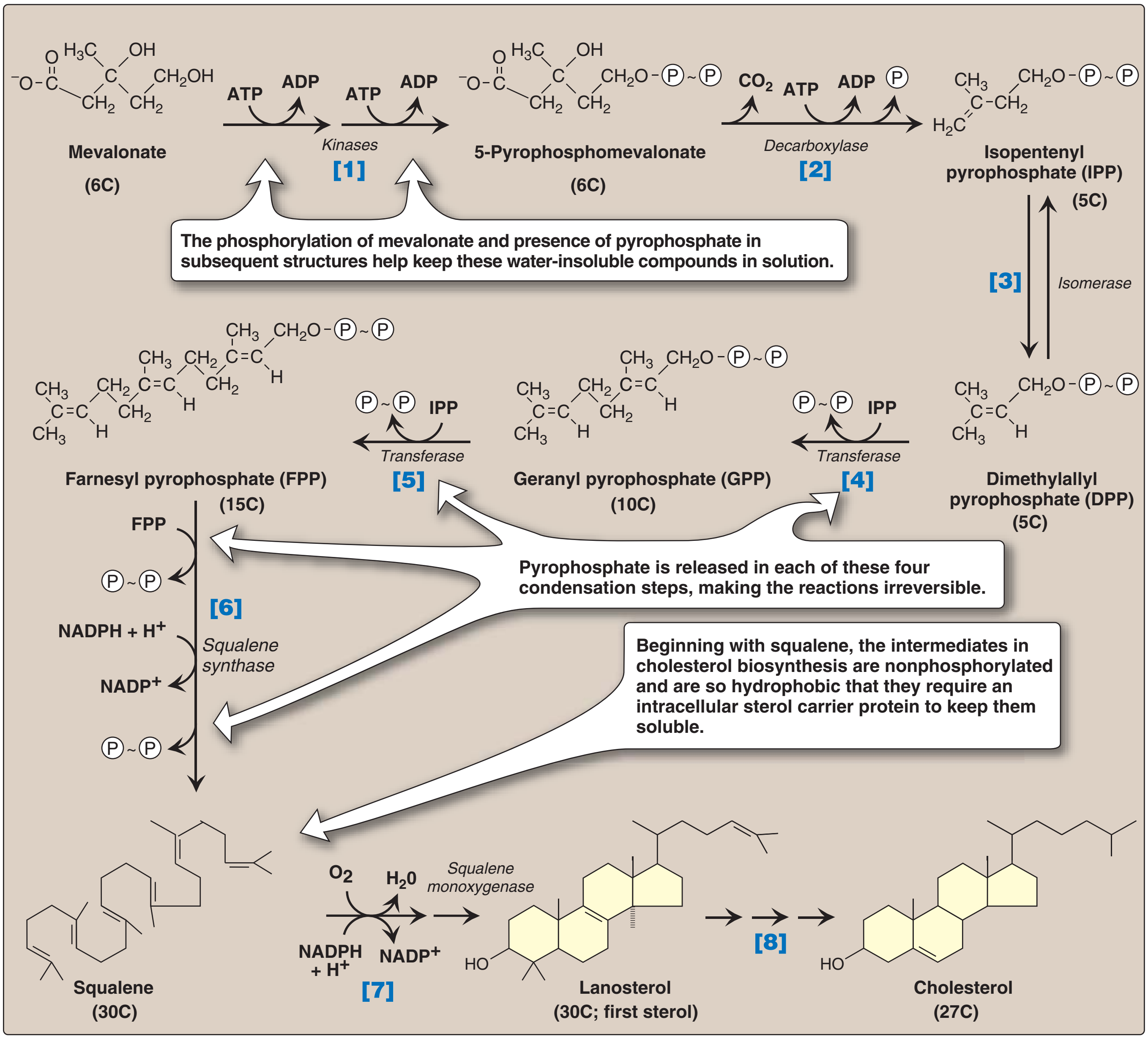
[4] IPP and DPP condense to form ten-carbon geranyl pyrophosphate (GPP).

[5] A second molecule of IPP then condenses with GPP to form 15-carbon farnesyl pyrophosphate (FPP). [Note: Covalent attachment of farnesyl to proteins, a process known as "prenylation," is one mechanism for anchoring proteins to plasma membranes.]

[6] Two molecules of FPP combine, releasing pyrophosphate, and are reduced, forming the 30-carbon compound squalene. [Note: Squalene is formed from six isoprenoid units. Because three ATP are hydrolyzed per mevalonate residue converted to IPP, a total of 18 ATP are required to make the polyisoprenoid squalene.]

[7] Squalene is converted to the sterol lanosterol by a sequence of reactions catalyzed by ER-associated enzymes that use molecular oxygen and NADPH. The hydroxylation of squalene triggers the cyclization of the structure to lanosterol.

[8] The conversion of lanosterol to cholesterol is a multistep process, resulting in the shortening of the carbon chain from 30 to 27 carbons, removal of the two methyl groups at carbon 4, migration of the double bond from carbon 8 to carbon 5, and reduction of the double bond between carbon 24 and carbon 25. [Note: This ER-associated pathway includes several different enzymatic reactions. Smith-Lemli-Opitz syndrome (SLOS), a relatively common autosomal recessive disorder of cholesterol biosynthesis, is caused by a partial deficiency in *7-dehydrocholesterol-7-reductase*—an enzyme involved in the migration of the double bond. SLOS is one of several multisystem, embryonic malformation syndromes associated with impaired cholesterol synthesis.]


Mevalonate
(6C)
ATP
ADP
ATP
ADP
Kinases
[1]
5-Pyrophosphomevalonate
(6C)
CO2
ATP
ADP
P
Decarboxylase
[2]
Isopentenyl pyrophosphate (IPP)
(5C)
[3]
Isomerase
Dimethylallyl pyrophosphate (DPP)
(5C)
P~P
IPP
Transferase
[4]
Geranyl pyrophosphate (GPP)
(10C)
P~P
IPP
Transferase
[5]
Farnesyl pyrophosphate (FPP)
(15C)
FPP
P~P
NADPH + H+
NADP+
P~P
[6]
Squalene synthase
Squalene
(30C)
O2
H20
NADPH + H+
NADP+
Squalene monoxygenase
[7]
HO
Lanosterol
(30C; first sterol)
[8]
HO
Cholesterol
(27C)

The phosphorylation of mevalonate and presence of pyrophosphate in subsequent structures help keep these water-insoluble compounds in solution.

Pyrophosphate is released in each of these four condensation steps, making the reactions irreversible.

Beginning with squalene, the intermediates in cholesterol biosynthesis are nonphosphorylated and are so hydrophobic that they require an intracellular sterol carrier protein to keep them soluble.

Figure 18.5
Synthesis of cholesterol from mevalonate.

D. Regulation of cholesterol synthesis

HMG CoA reductase, the rate-limiting enzyme, is the major control point for cholesterol biosynthesis, and is subject to different kinds of metabolic control.

1. **Sterol-dependent regulation of gene expression:** Expression of the gene for *HMG CoA reductase* is controlled by the transcription factor, SREBP-2 (sterol regulatory element–binding protein-2) that binds DNA at the cis-acting sterol regulatory element (SRE) of the *reductase* gene. SREBP is an integral protein of the ER membrane, and associates with a second ER membrane protein, SCAP (SREBP cleavage–activating protein). When sterol levels in

the cell are low, the SREBP-SCAP complex is sent out of the ER to the Golgi. In the Golgi, SREBP is sequentially acted upon by two *proteases*, which generate a soluble fragment that enters the nucleus, binds the SRE, and functions as a transcription factor. This results in increased synthesis of *HMG CoA reductase* and, therefore, increased cholesterol synthesis (Figure 18.6). If sterols are abundant, however, they bind SCAP at its sterol-sensing domain and induce the binding of SCAP to yet other ER membrane proteins (insigs). This results in the retention of the SCAP-SREBP complex in the ER, thus preventing the activation of SREBP, and leading to down-regulation of cholesterol synthesis.

2. **Sterol-accelerated enzyme degradation:** The *reductase* itself is a sterol-sensing integral protein of the ER membrane. When sterol levels in the cell are high, the *reductase* binds to insig proteins. Binding leads to ubiquitination and proteasomal degradation of the *reductase* (see p. 247).

3. **Sterol-independent phosphorylation/dephosphorylation:** *HMG CoA reductase* activity is controlled covalently through the actions of *adenosine monophosphate (AMP)–activated protein kinase (AMPK,* see p. 183) and a *phosphoprotein phosphatase* (see Figure 18.6). The phosphorylated form of the enzyme is inactive, whereas the dephosphorylated form is active. [Note: *AMPK* is activated by AMP, so cholesterol synthesis, like fatty acid synthesis, is decreased when ATP availability is decreased.]

4. **Hormonal regulation:** The amount (and, therefore, the activity) of *HMG CoA reductase* is controlled hormonally. An increase in insulin and thyroxine favors up-regulation of the expression of the gene for *HMG CoA reductase*. Glucagon and the glucocorticoids have the opposite effect.

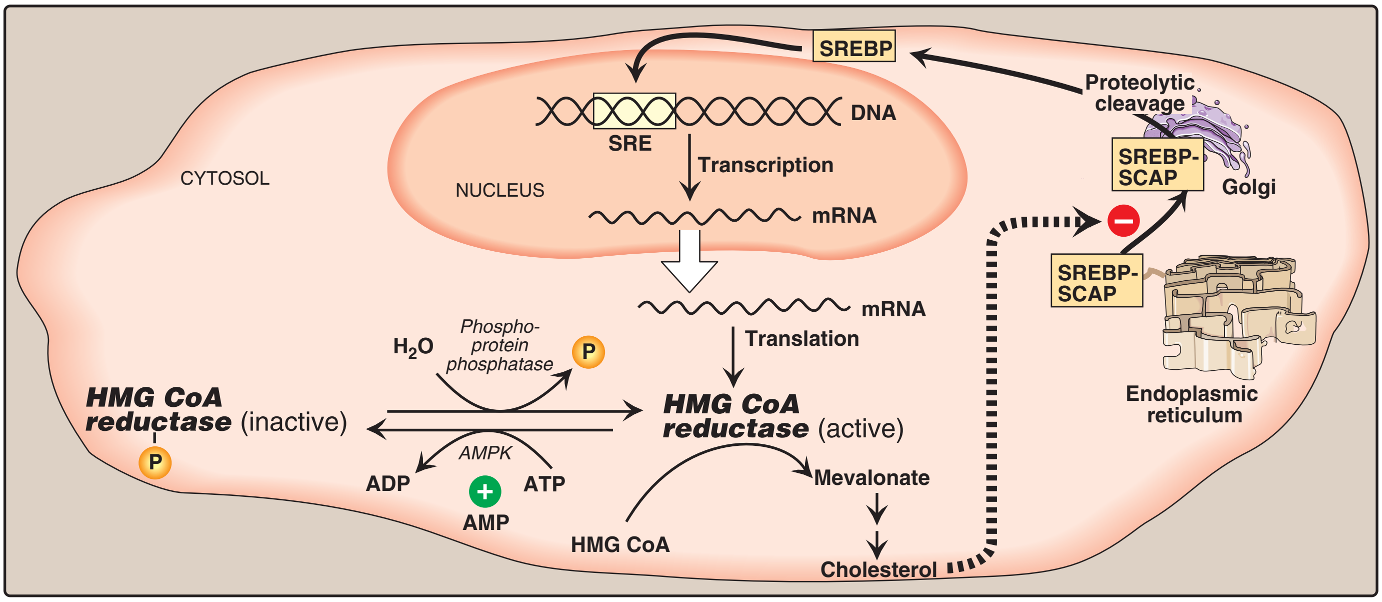

SREBP
Proteolytic cleavage
DNA
SRE
Transcription
CYTOSOL
NUCLEUS
mRNA
SREBP-SCAP
Golgi
SREBP-SCAP
mRNA
Translation
H_2O
Phospho-protein phosphatase
P
HMG CoA reductase (inactive)
P
HMG CoA reductase (active)
AMPK
ADP
ATP
AMP
Mevalonate
HMG CoA
Cholesterol
Endoplasmic reticulum

Figure 18.6
Regulation of *HMG CoA reductase*. SRE = sterol regulatory element; SREBP = sterol regulatory element-binding protein; SCAP = SREBP cleavage–activating protein.

5. **Inhibition by drugs:** The statin drugs (atorvastatin, fluvastatin, lovastatin, pravastatin, rosuvastatin, and simvastatin) are structural analogs of HMG CoA, and are (or are metabolized to) reversible, competitive inhibitors of *HMG CoA reductase* (Figure 18.7). They are used to decrease plasma cholesterol levels in patients with hypercholesterolemia.[1]

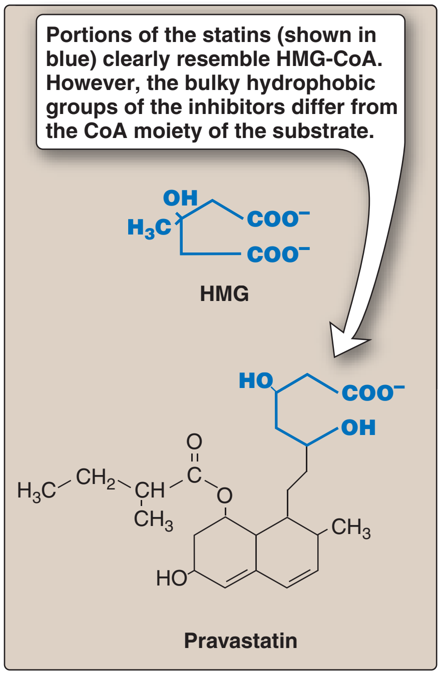

Portions of the statins (shown in blue) clearly resemble HMG-CoA. However, the bulky hydrophobic groups of the inhibitors differ from the CoA moiety of the substrate.

Figure 18.7
Structural similarity of HMG and pravastatin, a clinically useful cholesterol-lowering drug of the “statin” family.

IV. DEGRADATION OF CHOLESTEROL

The ring structure of cholesterol cannot be metabolized to CO_2 and H_2O in humans. Rather, the intact sterol nucleus is eliminated from the body by conversion to bile acids and bile salts, which are excreted in the feces, and by secretion of cholesterol into the bile, which transports it to the intestine for elimination. Some of the cholesterol in the intestine is modified by bacteria before excretion. The primary compounds made are the isomers coprostanol and cholestanol, which are reduced derivatives of cholesterol. Together with cholesterol, these compounds make up the bulk of neutral fecal sterols.

V. BILE ACIDS AND BILE SALTS

Bile consists of a watery mixture of organic and inorganic compounds. Phosphatidylcholine (lecithin, see p. 202) and bile salts (conjugated bile acids) are quantitatively the most important organic components of bile. Bile can either pass directly from the liver where it is synthesized into the duodenum through the common bile duct, or be stored in the gallbladder when not immediately needed for digestion.

A. Structure of the bile acids

The bile acids contain 24 carbons, with two or three hydroxyl groups and a side chain that terminates in a carboxyl group. The carboxyl group has a pK_a of about six and, therefore, is not fully ionized at physiologic pH—hence, the term “bile acid.” The bile acids are amphipathic in that the hydroxyl groups are α in orientation (they lie “below” the plane of the rings) and the methyl groups are β (they lie “above” the plane of the rings). Therefore, the molecules have both a polar and a nonpolar face, and can act as emulsifying agents in the intestine, helping prepare dietary triacylglycerol and other complex lipids for degradation by pancreatic digestive enzymes.

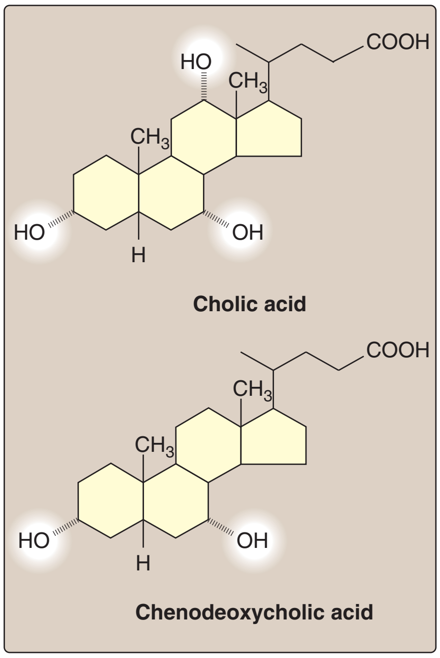


Figure 18.8
Bile acids.

B. Synthesis of bile acids

Bile acids are synthesized in the liver by a multistep, multiorganelle pathway in which hydroxyl groups are inserted at specific positions on the steroid structure, the double bond of the cholesterol B ring is reduced, and the hydrocarbon chain is shortened by three carbons, introducing a carboxyl group at the end of the chain. The most common resulting compounds, cholic acid (a triol) and chenodeoxycholic acid (a diol, Figure 18.8), are called “primary” bile acids. [Note: The rate-limiting step in bile acid synthesis is the introduction of a hydroxyl group at carbon 7 of the steroid nucleus by *cholesterol-7-α-hydroxylase*, an ER-associated cytochrome P450 (CYP) enzyme found only in liver. The enzyme is down-regulated by cholic acid (Figure 18.9)]

---

[1] See Chapter 21 in ***Lippincott’s Illustrated Reviews: Pharmacology*** for a discussion of the statins and other drugs to treat hyperlipidemia.

C. Synthesis of bile salts

Before the bile acids leave the liver, they are conjugated to a molecule of either glycine or taurine (an endproduct of cysteine metabolism) by an amide bond between the carboxyl group of the bile acid and the amino group of the added compound. These new structures include glycocholic and glycochenodeoxycholic acids, and taurocholic and taurochenodeoxycholic acids (Figure 18.10). The ratio of glycine to taurine forms in the bile is approximately 3:1. Addition of glycine or taurine results in the presence of a carboxyl group with a lower pK_a (from glycine) or a sulfonate group (from taurine), both of which are fully ionized (negatively charged) at physiologic pH; thus, the conjugated forms are called bile salts. Bile salts are more effective detergents than bile acids because of their enhanced amphipathic nature. Therefore, only the conjugated forms—that is, the bile salts—are found in the bile. Individuals with genetic deficiencies in the conversion of cholesterol to bile acids are treated with exogenously supplied chenodeoxycholic acid.

> Bile salts provide the only significant mechanism for cholesterol excretion, both as a metabolic product of cholesterol and as a solubilizer of cholesterol in bile.

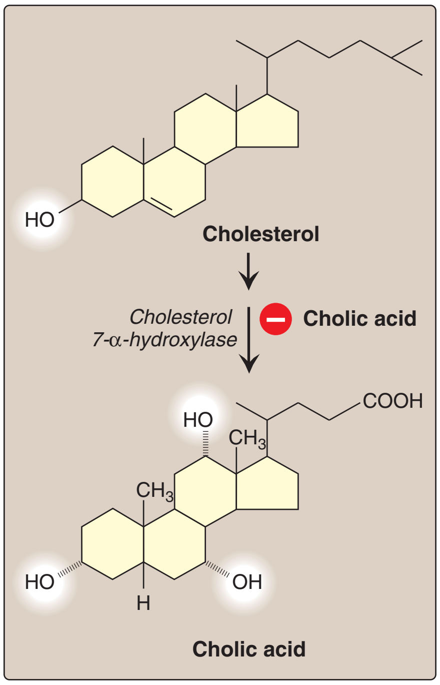


Figure 18.9
Synthesis of cholic acid, a bile acid.

D. Action of intestinal flora on bile salts

Bacteria in the intestine can remove glycine and taurine from bile salts, regenerating bile acids. They can also convert some of the primary bile acids into "secondary" bile acids by removing a hydroxyl group, producing deoxycholic acid from cholic acid and lithocholic acid from chenodeoxycholic acid (Figure 18.11).

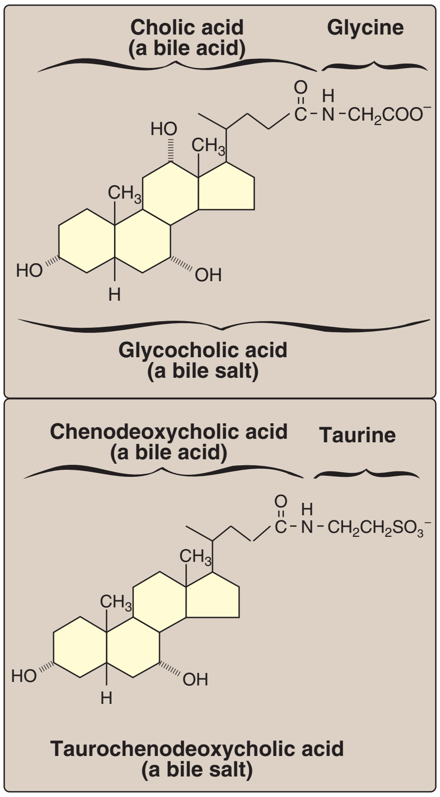

Cholic acid (a bile acid)
Glycine
O
H
C-N-CH_2COO^-
HO
CH_3
CH_3
HO
OH
H
Glycocholic acid (a bile salt)
Chenodeoxycholic acid (a bile acid)
Taurine
O
H
C-N-$CH_2CH_2SO_3^-$
CH_3
CH_3
HO
OH
H
Taurochenodeoxycholic acid (a bile salt)

Figure 18.10
Bile salts. [Note "cholic" in the names.]

E. Enterohepatic circulation

Bile salts secreted into the intestine are efficiently reabsorbed (greater than 95%) and reused. The liver converts both primary and secondary bile acids into bile salts by conjugation with glycine or taurine, and secretes them into the bile. The mixture of bile acids and bile salts is absorbed primarily in the ileum via a Na^+-bile salt cotransporter. They are actively transported out of the ileal mucosal cells into the portal blood, and are efficiently taken up by the hepatocytes via an isoform of the cotransporter. [Note: Bile acids are hydrophobic and require a carrier in the portal blood. Albumin carries them in a noncovalent complex, just as it transports fatty acids in blood (see p. 181).] The continuous process of secretion of bile salts into the bile, their passage through the duodenum where some are converted to bile acids, their uptake in the ileum, and subsequent return to the liver as a mixture of bile acids and salts is termed the enterohepatic circulation (see Figure 18.11). Between 15 and 30 g of bile salts are secreted from the liver into the duodenum each day, yet only about 0.5 g (less than 3%) is lost daily in the feces. Approximately 0.5 g/day is synthesized from cholesterol in the liver to replace the lost bile acids. Bile acid sequestrants, such as cholestyramine, bind bile acids in the gut, prevent their reabsorption,

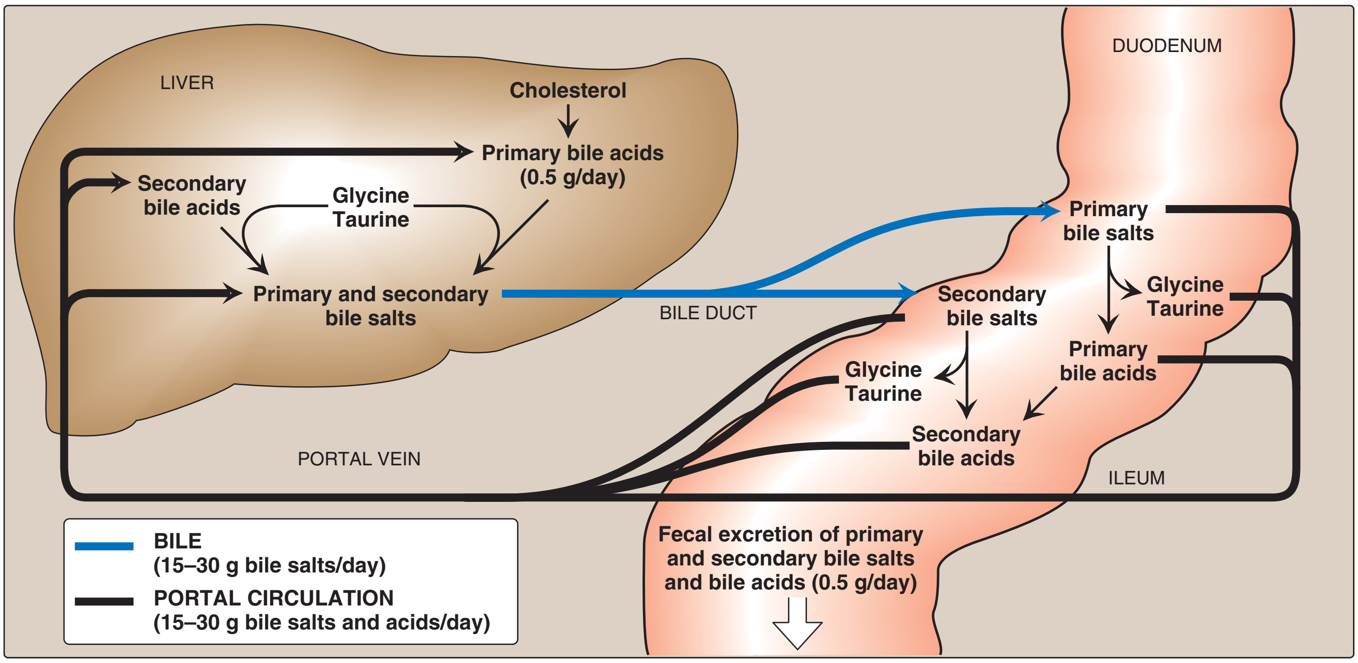

LIVER
Cholesterol
Primary bile acids (0.5 g/day)
Secondary bile acids
Glycine Taurine
Primary and secondary bile salts
BILE DUCT
PORTAL VEIN
DUODENUM
Primary bile salts
Glycine Taurine
Secondary bile salts
Primary bile acids
Glycine Taurine
Secondary bile acids
ILEUM
Fecal excretion of primary and secondary bile salts and bile acids (0.5 g/day)
BILE (15–30 g bile salts/day)
PORTAL CIRCULATION (15–30 g bile salts and acids/day)

Figure 18.11
Enterohepatic circulation of bile salts and bile acids.

and so promote their excretion. They are used in the treatment of hypercholesterolemia because the removal of bile acids relieves the inhibition on bile acid synthesis in the liver, thereby diverting additional cholesterol into that pathway. [Note: Dietary fiber also binds bile acids and increases their excretion (see p. 366).]

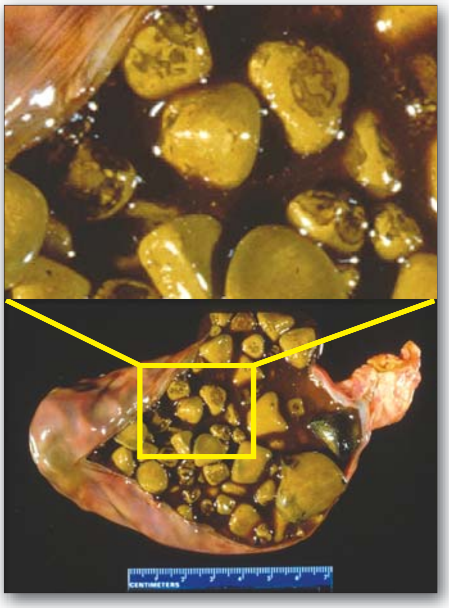

CENTIMETERS

Figure 18.12
Gallbladder with gallstones.

F. Bile salt deficiency: cholelithiasis

The movement of cholesterol from the liver into the bile must be accompanied by the simultaneous secretion of phospholipid and bile salts. If this dual process is disrupted and more cholesterol enters the bile than can be solubilized by the bile salts and phosphatidyl choline present, the cholesterol may precipitate in the gallbladder, leading to cholesterol gallstone disease—cholelithiasis (Figure 18.12). This disorder is typically caused by a decrease of bile acids in the bile, which may result from: 1) gross malabsorption of bile acids from the intestine, as seen in patients with severe ileal disease; 2) obstruction of the biliary tract, interrupting the enterohepatic circulation; 3) severe hepatic dysfunction, leading to decreased synthesis of bile salts, or other abnormalities in bile production; or 4) excessive feedback suppression of bile acid synthesis as a result of an accelerated rate of recycling of bile acids. Cholelithiasis also may result from increased biliary cholesterol excretion, as seen with the use of fibrates. [Note: Fibrates, such as gemfibrozil, are derivatives of fibric acid. They are used to reduce triacylglycerol levels in blood through up-regulation of fatty acid β-oxidation.] Laparoscopic cholecystectomy (surgical removal of the gallbladder through a small incision) is currently the treatment of choice. However, for patients who are unable to undergo surgery, oral administration of chenodeoxycholic acid to supplement the body's supply of bile acids results in a gradual (months to years) dissolution of the gallstones.

VI. PLASMA LIPOPROTEINS

The plasma lipoproteins are spherical macromolecular complexes of lipids and specific proteins (apolipoproteins or apoproteins). The lipoprotein particles include chylomicrons (CM), very-low-density lipoproteins (VLDL), low-density lipoproteins (LDL), and high-density lipoproteins (HDL). They differ in lipid and protein composition, size, density (Figure 18.13), and site of origin. Lipoproteins function both to keep their component lipids soluble as they transport them in the plasma and to provide an efficient mechanism for transporting their lipid contents to (and from) the tissues. In humans, the transport system is less perfect than in other animals and, as a result, humans experience a gradual deposition of lipid—especially cholesterol—in tissues. This is a potentially life-threatening occurrence when the lipid deposition contributes to plaque formation, causing the narrowing of blood vessels (atherosclerosis).

A. Composition of plasma lipoproteins

Lipoproteins are composed of a neutral lipid core (containing triacylglycerol and cholesteryl esters) surrounded by a shell of amphipathic apolipoproteins, phospholipid, and nonesterified (free) cholesterol (Figure 18.14). These amphipathic compounds are oriented so that their polar portions are exposed on the surface of the lipoprotein, thus making the particle soluble in aqueous solution. The triacylglycerol and cholesterol carried by the lipoproteins are obtained either from the diet (exogenous source) or from de novo synthesis (endogenous source). [Note: Lipoprotein particles constantly interchange lipids and apolipoproteins with each other; therefore, the actual apolipoprotein and lipid content of each class of particles can be somewhat variable.]

1. **Size and density of lipoprotein particles:** Chylomicrons are the lipoprotein particles lowest in density and largest in size, and contain the highest percentage of lipid and the lowest percentage of protein. VLDLs and LDLs are successively denser, having higher ratios of protein to lipid. HDL particles are the densest. Plasma lipoproteins can be separated on the basis of their electrophoretic mobility, as shown in Figure 18.15, or on the basis of their density by ultracentrifugation.

2. **Apolipoproteins:** The apolipoproteins associated with lipoprotein particles have a number of diverse functions, such as providing recognition sites for cell-surface receptors, and serving as activators or coenzymes for enzymes involved in lipoprotein metabolism. Some of the apolipoproteins are required as essential structural components of the particles and cannot be removed (in fact, the particles cannot be produced without them), whereas others are transferred freely between lipoproteins. Apolipoproteins are divided by structure and function into five major classes, A through E, with most classes having subclasses, for example, apolipoprotein (or apo) A-I and apo C-II. [Note: Functions of all of the apolipoproteins are not yet known.]

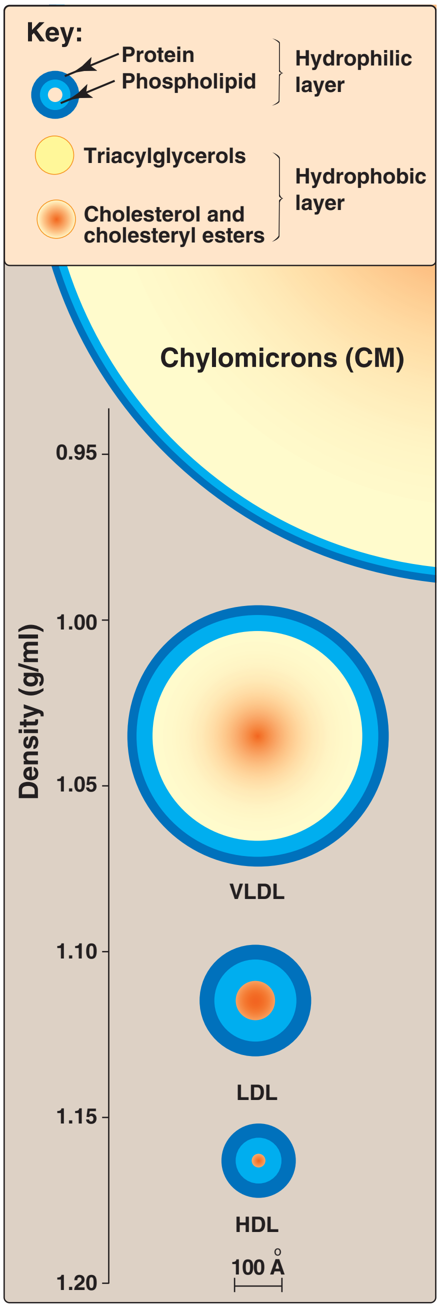


Figure 18.13
Approximate size and density of serum lipoproteins. Each family of lipoproteins exhibits a range of sizes and densities; this figure shows typical values. The width of the rings approximates the amount of each component. [Note: Although cholesterol and its esters are shown as one component in the center of each particle, physically cholesterol is a surface component whereas cholesteryl esters are located in the interior of the lipoproteins.]

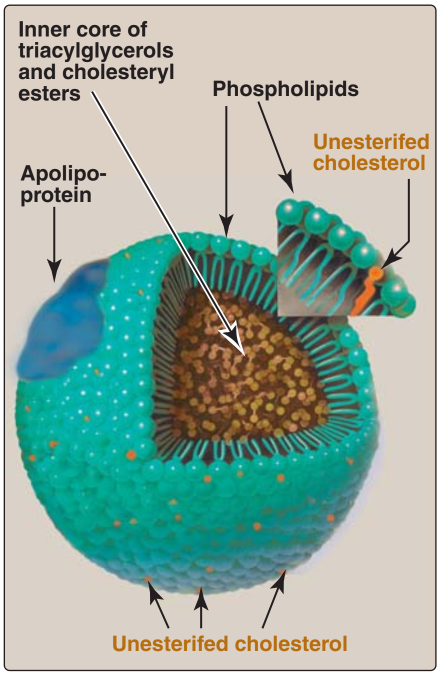


Figure 18.14
Structure of a typical lipoprotein particle.

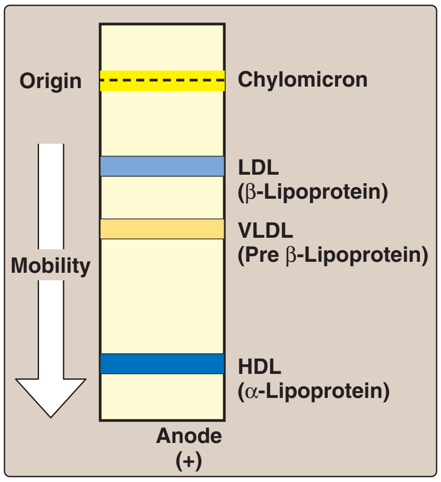


Figure 18.15
Electrophoretic mobility of plasma lipoproteins. The order of LDL and VLDL is reversed if ultracentrifugation is used as the separation technique.

B. Metabolism of chylomicrons

Chylomicrons are assembled in intestinal mucosal cells and carry dietary triacylglycerol, cholesterol, fat-soluble vitamins, and cholesteryl esters (plus additional lipids made in these cells) to the peripheral tissues (Figure 18.16). [Note: TAGs account for close to 90% of the lipids in a chylomicron.]

1. **Synthesis of apolipoproteins:** Apolipoprotein B-48 is unique to chylomicrons. Its synthesis begins on the rough ER; it is glycosylated as it moves through the RER and Golgi. [Note: Apo B-48 is so named because it constitutes the N-terminal, 48% of the protein coded for by the gene for apo B. Apo B-100, which is synthesized by the liver and found in VLDL and LDL, represents the entire protein coded for by the apo B gene. Posttranscriptional editing (see p. 457) of a cytosine to a uracil in intestinal apo B-100 mRNA creates a nonsense codon (see p. 433), allowing translation of only 48% of the mRNA.]

2. **Assembly of chylomicrons:** The enzymes involved in triacylglycerol, cholesterol, and phospholipid synthesis are located in the smooth ER. Assembly of the apolipoproteins and lipid into chylomicrons requires microsomal triacylglycerol transfer protein (MTP, see p. 178), which loads apo B-48 with lipid. This occurs before transition from the ER to the Golgi, where the particles are packaged in secretory vesicles. These fuse with the plasma membrane releasing the lipoproteins, which then enter the lymphatic system and, ultimately, the blood.

3. **Modification of nascent chylomicron particles:** The particle released by the intestinal mucosal cell is called a “nascent” chylomicron because it is functionally incomplete. When it reaches the plasma, the particle is rapidly modified, receiving apolipoprotein E (which is recognized by hepatic receptors) and C. The latter includes apo C-II, which is necessary for the activation of *lipoprotein lipase*, the enzyme that degrades the triacylglycerol contained in the chylomicron (see below). The source of these apolipoproteins is circulating HDL (see Figure 18.16).

4. **Degradation of triacylglycerol by lipoprotein lipase:** *Lipoprotein lipase* is an extracellular enzyme that is anchored by heparan sulfate to the capillary walls of most tissues, but predominantly those of adipose tissue and cardiac and skeletal muscle. Adult liver does not have this enzyme. [Note: A *hepatic lipase* is found on the surface of endothelial cells of the liver. It plays some role in triacylglycerol degradation in CM and VLDL, and is particularly important in HDL metabolism (see p. 236).] *Lipoprotein lipase*, activated by apo C-II on circulating lipoprotein particles, hydrolyzes the triacylglycerol contained in these particles to yield fatty acids and glycerol. The fatty acids are stored (by the adipose) or used for energy (by the muscle). If they are not immediately taken up by a cell, the long-chain fatty acids are transported by serum albumin until their uptake does occur. Glycerol is used by the liver, for example, in lipid synthesis, glycolysis, or gluconeogenesis. [Note: Patients with a deficiency of *lipoprotein lipase* or

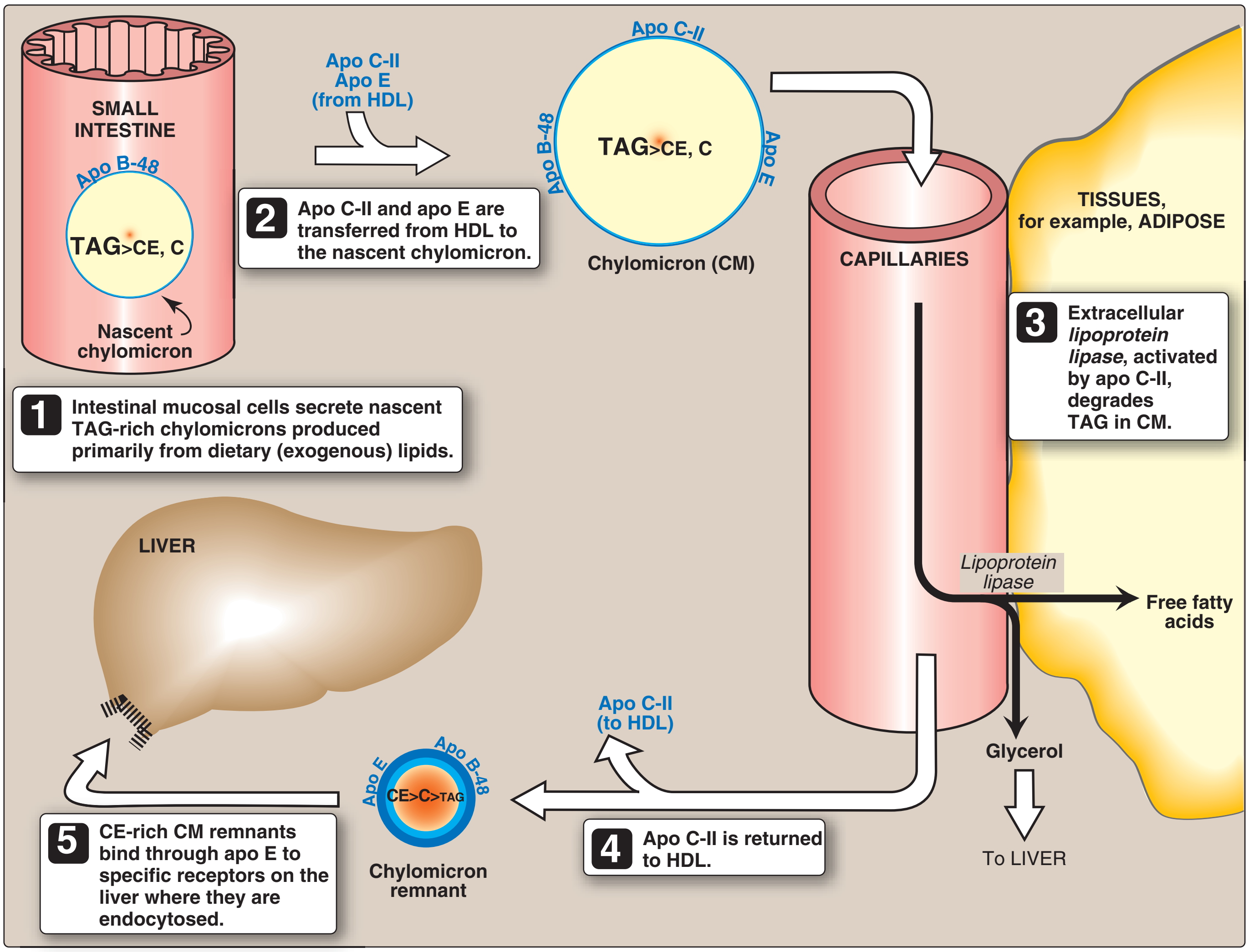

SMALL INTESTINE
Apo B-48
TAG>CE, C
Nascent chylomicron
1 Intestinal mucosal cells secrete nascent TAG-rich chylomicrons produced primarily from dietary (exogenous) lipids.
Apo C-II
Apo E
(from HDL)
2 Apo C-II and apo E are transferred from HDL to the nascent chylomicron.
Apo C-II
Apo B-48
Apo E
TAG>CE, C
Chylomicron (CM)
CAPILLARIES
TISSUES, for example, ADIPOSE
3 Extracellular *lipoprotein lipase*, activated by apo C-II, degrades TAG in CM.
Lipoprotein lipase
Free fatty acids
Glycerol
To LIVER
LIVER
Apo C-II (to HDL)
4 Apo C-II is returned to HDL.
Apo E
Apo B-48
CE>C>TAG
Chylomicron remnant
5 CE-rich CM remnants bind through apo E to specific receptors on the liver where they are endocytosed.

Figure 18.16
Metabolism of chylomicrons. CM = chylomicron; TAG = triacylglycerol; C = cholesterol; CE = cholesteryl esters. Apo B-48, apo C-II, and apo E are apolipoproteins found as specific components of plasma lipoproteins. The lipoproteins are not drawn to scale (see Figure 18.13 for details of the size and density of lipoproteins).

apo C-II (Type 1 hyperlipoproteinemia, or familial *lipoprotein lipase* deficiency) show a dramatic accumulation—1000 mg/dl or greater—of chylomicron-triacylglycerol in the plasma (hypertriacylglycerolemia) even in the fasted state.]

5. **Regulation of lipoprotein lipase activity:** *Lipoprotein lipase* synthesis and transfer to the luminal surface of the capillary is stimulated by insulin (signifying a fed state, see p. 321). Furthermore, isomers of *lipoprotein lipase* have different K_m values for triacylglycerol (reminiscent of the *hexokinase/glucokinase* story, see p. 98). For example, the adipose enzyme has a large K_m (see p. 59), allowing the removal of fatty acids from circulating lipoprotein particles and their storage as triacylglycerols only when plasma lipoprotein concentrations are elevated. Conversely, heart muscle *lipoprotein lipase* has a small K_m, allowing the heart continuing access to the circulating fuel, even when plasma lipoprotein con-

centrations are low. [Note: The highest concentration of *lipoprotein lipase* is in cardiac muscle, reflecting the use of fatty acids to provide much of the energy needed for cardiac function.]

6. **Formation of chylomicron remnants:** As the chylomicron circulates and more than 90% of the triacylglycerol in its core is degraded by *lipoprotein lipase*, the particle decreases in size and increases in density. In addition, the C apoproteins (but not apo E) are returned to HDL. The remaining particle, called a “remnant,” is rapidly removed from the circulation by the liver, whose cell membranes contain lipoprotein receptors that recognize apo E (see Figure 18.16). Chylomicron remnants bind to these receptors and are taken into the hepatocytes by endocytosis. The endocytosed vesicle then fuses with a lysosome, and the apolipoproteins, cholesteryl esters, and other components of the remnant are hydrolytically degraded, releasing amino acids, free cholesterol, and fatty acids. The receptor is recycled. (A more detailed discussion of the mechanism of receptor-mediated endocytosis is illustrated for LDL in Figure 18.20.)

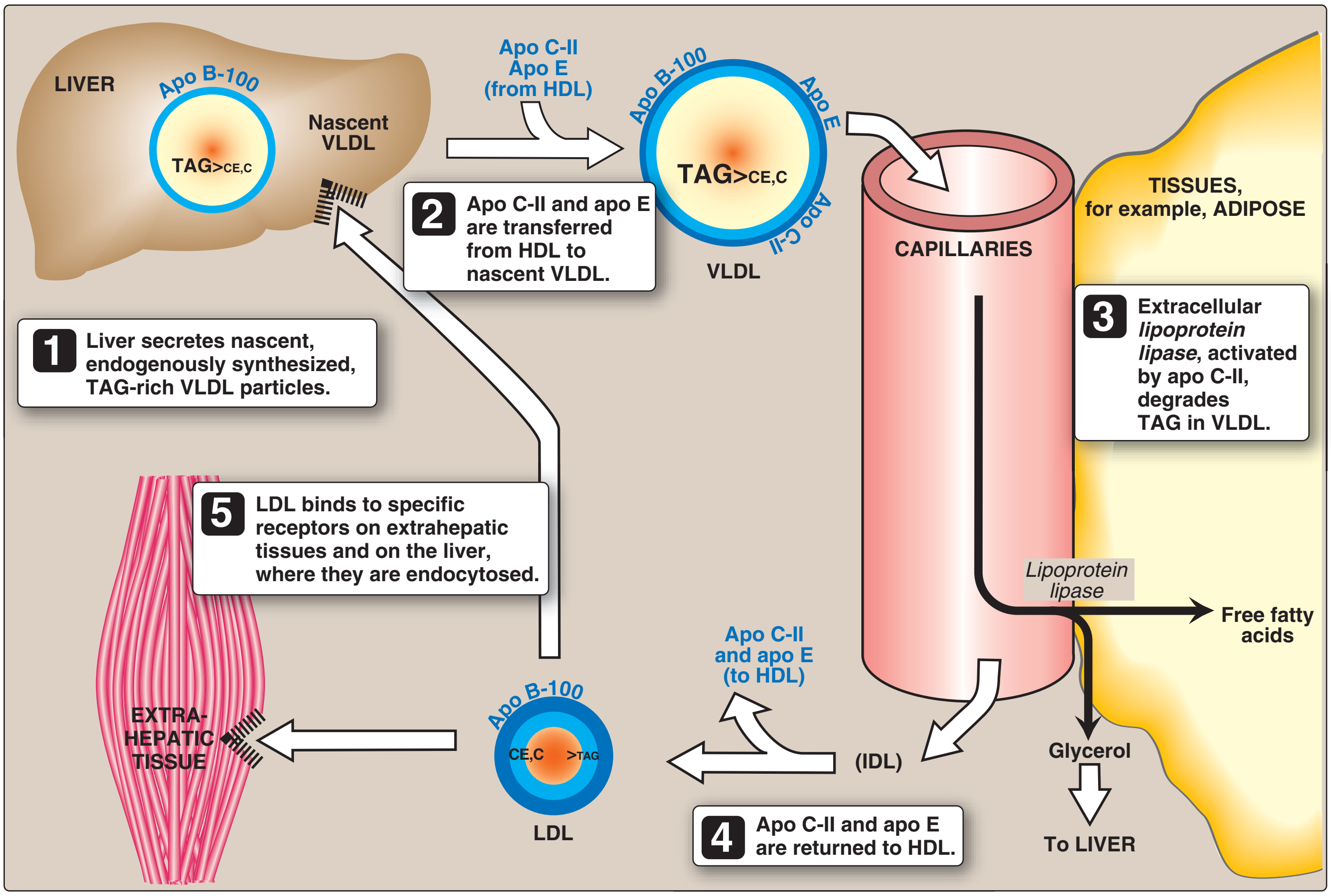

LIVER
Apo B-100
TAG>CE,C
Nascent VLDL
Apo C-II
Apo E
(from HDL)
Apo B-100
Apo E
TAG>CE,C
Apo C-II
VLDL
2 Apo C-II and apo E are transferred from HDL to nascent VLDL.
1 Liver secretes nascent, endogenously synthesized, TAG-rich VLDL particles.
CAPILLARIES
TISSUES, for example, ADIPOSE
3 Extracellular *lipoprotein lipase*, activated by apo C-II, degrades TAG in VLDL.
5 LDL binds to specific receptors on extrahepatic tissues and on the liver, where they are endocytosed.
Lipoprotein lipase
Free fatty acids
Apo C-II and apo E (to HDL)
Apo B-100
CE,C
>TAG
EXTRA-HEPATIC TISSUE
(IDL)
Glycerol
LDL
4 Apo C-II and apo E are returned to HDL.
To LIVER

Figure 18.17
Metabolism of VLDL and LDL. TAG = triacylglycerol; VLDL = very-low-density lipoprotein; LDL = low-density-lipoprotein; IDL = intermediate-density lipoprotein; C = cholesterol; CE = cholesteryl esters. Apo B-100, apo C-II, and apo E are apolipoproteins found as specific components of plasma lipoproteins. Lipoproteins are not drawn to scale (see Figure 18.13 for details of the size and density of lipoproteins).

C. Metabolism of VLDL

VLDLs are produced in the liver (Figure 18.17). They are composed predominantly of endogenous triacylglycerol (approximately 60%), and their function is to carry this lipid from the liver (site of synthesis) to the peripheral tissues. There, the triacylglycerol is degraded by *lipoprotein lipase*, as discussed for chylomicrons (see p. 228). [Note: "Fatty liver" (hepatic steatosis) occurs in conditions in which there is an imbalance between hepatic triacylglycerol synthesis and the secretion of VLDL. Such conditions include obesity, uncontrolled diabetes mellitus, and chronic ethanol ingestion.]

1. **Release of VLDL:** VLDL are secreted directly into the blood by the liver as nascent VLDL particles containing apo B-100. They must obtain apo C-II and apo E from circulating HDL (see Figure 18.17). As with chylomicrons, apo C-II is required for activation of *lipoprotein lipase*. [Note: Abetalipoproteinemia is a rare hypolipoproteinemia caused by a defect in microsomal triacylglycerol transfer protein (MTP), leading to an inability to load apo B with lipid. As a consequence, no VLDL or chylomicrons are formed, and triacylglycerols accumulate in the liver and intestine.]

2. **Modification of circulating VLDL:** As VLDL pass through the circulation, triacylglycerol is degraded by *lipoprotein lipase*, causing the VLDL to decrease in size and become denser. Surface components, including the C and E apoproteins, are returned to HDL, but the particles retain apo B-100. Finally, some triacylglycerols are transferred from VLDL to HDL in an exchange reaction that concomitantly transfers some cholesteryl esters from HDL to VLDL. This exchange is accomplished by *cholesteryl ester transfer protein* (*CETP*, Figure 18.18).

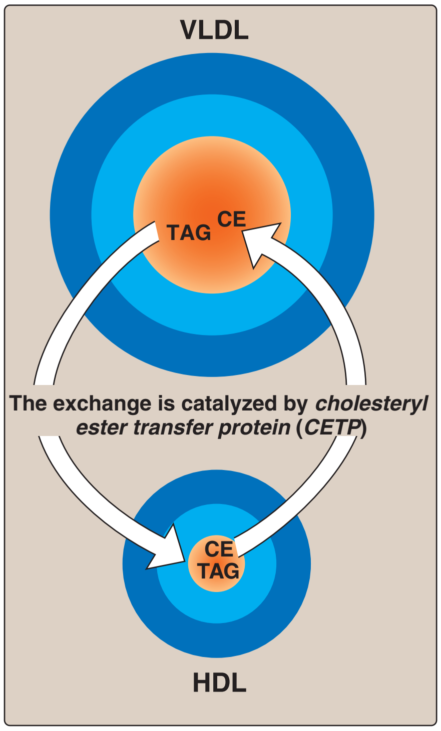

VLDL
TAG
CE
The exchange is catalyzed by *cholesteryl ester transfer protein* (*CETP*)
CE
TAG
HDL

Figure 18.18
Transfer of cholesteryl esters (CE) from HDL to VLDL in exchange for triacylglycerol (TAG).

3. **Production of LDL from VLDL in the plasma:** With these modifications, the VLDL is converted in the plasma to LDL. Intermediate-sized particles, the intermediate-density lipoproteins (IDL) or VLDL remnants, are observed during this transition. IDLs can also be taken up by cells through receptor-mediated endocytosis that uses apo E as the ligand. [Note: Apo E is normally present in three isoforms, E-2, E-3, and E-4. Apo E-2 binds poorly to receptors, and patients who are homozygotic for apo E-2 are deficient in the clearance of chylomicron remnants and IDL. These individuals have familial Type III hyperlipoproteinemia (familial dysbetalipoproteinemia, or broad beta disease), with hypercholesterolemia and premature atherosclerosis. Not yet understood is the fact that the E-4 isoform confers increased susceptibility to and decreased age of onset of late-onset Alzheimer disease, doubling the lifetime risk.]

D. Metabolism of LDL

LDL particles contain much less triacylglycerol than their VLDL predecessors, and have a high concentration of cholesterol and cholesteryl esters (Figure 18.19).

1. **Receptor-mediated endocytosis:** The primary function of LDL particles is to provide cholesterol to the peripheral tissues (or return it to the liver). They do so by binding to cell surface mem-

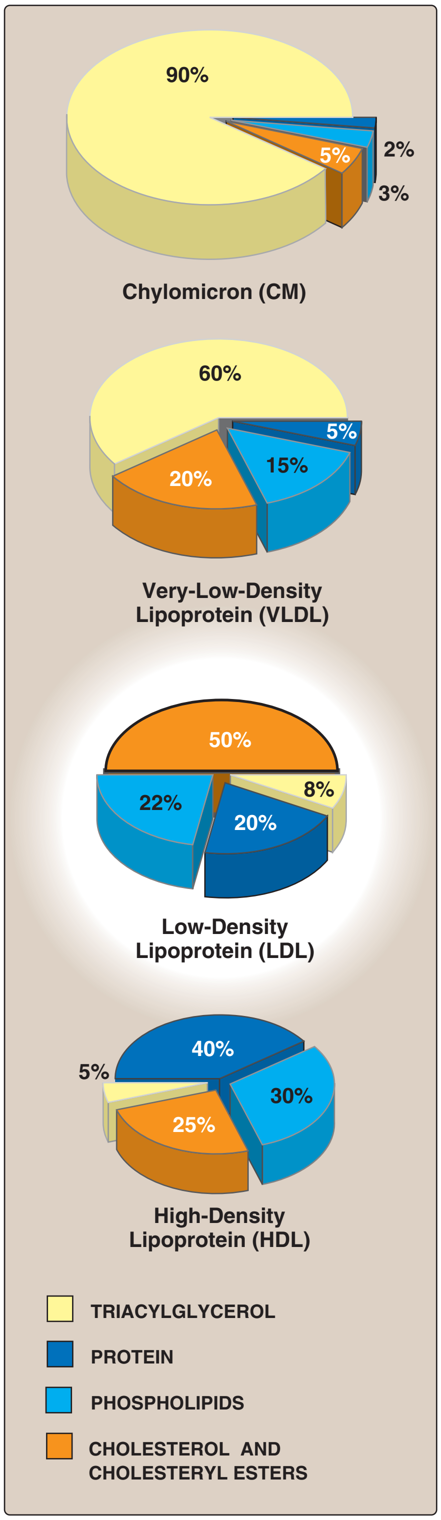


Figure 18.19
Composition of the plasma lipoproteins. Note the high concentration of cholesterol and cholesteryl esters in LDL.

brane LDL receptors that recognize apo B-100 (but not apo B-48). Because these LDL receptors can also bind apo E, they are known as apo B-100/apo E receptors. A summary of the uptake and degradation of LDL particles is presented in Figure 18.20. [Note: The numbers in brackets below refer to corresponding numbers on that figure.] A similar mechanism of receptor-mediated endocytosis is used for the cellular uptake and degradation of chylomicron remnants and IDLs by the liver.

[1] LDL receptors are negatively charged glycoproteins that are clustered in pits on cell membranes. The cytosolic side of the pit is coated with the protein clathrin, which stabilizes the shape of the pit.

[2] After binding, the LDL-receptor complex is internalized by endocytosis. [Note: A deficiency of functional LDL receptors causes a significant elevation in plasma LDL and, therefore, of plasma cholesterol. Patients with such deficiencies have Type II hyperlipidemia (familial hypercholesterolemia, FH) and premature atherosclerosis. FH can also be caused by increased activity of a *protease* that degrades the receptor and by defects in apo B-100 that reduce its binding to the receptor.]

[3] The vesicle containing LDL loses its clathrin coat and fuses with other similar vesicles, forming larger vesicles called endosomes.

[4] The pH of the endosome falls (due to the proton-pumping activity of endosomal *ATPase*), which allows separation of the LDL from its receptor. The receptors then migrate to one side of the endosome, whereas the LDLs stay free within the lumen of the vesicle. [Note: This structure is called CURL—the Compartment for Uncoupling of Receptor and Ligand.]

[5] The receptors can be recycled, whereas the lipoprotein remnants in the vesicle are transferred to lysosomes and degraded by lysosomal *acid hydrolases*, releasing free cholesterol, amino acids, fatty acids, and phospholipids. These compounds can be reutilized by the cell. [Note: Storage diseases caused by rare autosomal recessive deficiencies in the ability to hydrolyze lysosomal cholesteryl esters (Wolman disease), or to transport unesterified cholesterol out of the lysosome (Niemann-Pick disease, Type C) have been identified.]

2. Effect of endocytosed cholesterol on cellular cholesterol homeostasis: The chylomicron remnant-, IDL-, and LDL-derived cholesterol affects cellular cholesterol content in several ways (see Figure 18.20). First, *HMG CoA reductase* is inhibited by high cholesterol, as a result of which, de novo cholesterol synthesis decreases. Second, synthesis of new LDL receptor protein is reduced by decreasing the expression of the LDL receptor gene, thus limiting further entry of LDL cholesterol into cells. [Note: Regulation of the LDL receptor gene involves a SRE and a SREBP (SREBP-2), as was seen in the regulation of the gene for *HMG CoA reductase* (see p. 222).] Third, if the cholesterol is not required immediately for some structural or synthetic purpose, it is esterified by *acyl CoA:cholesterol acyltransferase* (*ACAT*). *ACAT*

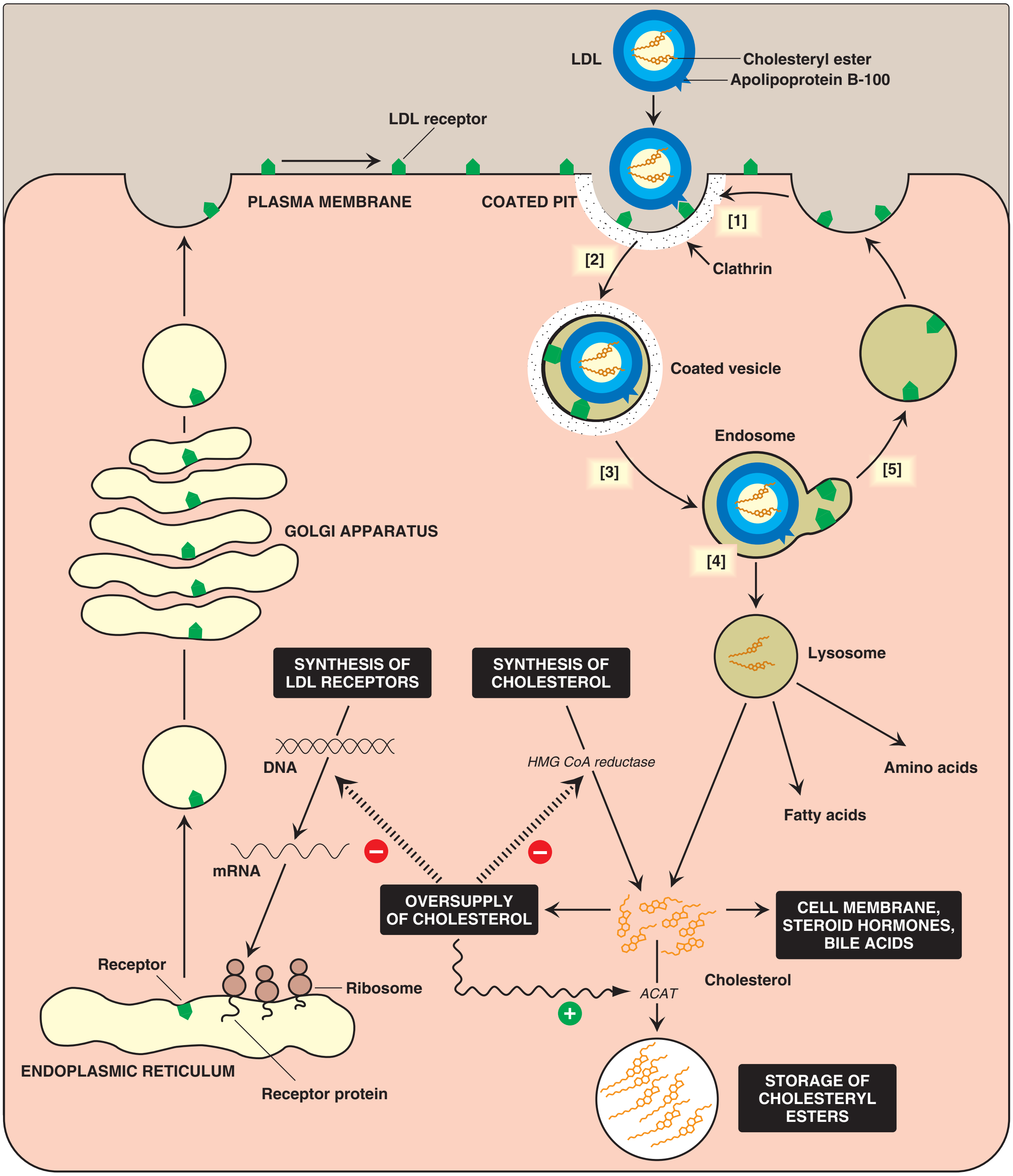

LDL
Cholesteryl ester
Apolipoprotein B-100
LDL receptor
PLASMA MEMBRANE
COATED PIT
[1]
[2]
Clathrin
Coated vesicle
Endosome
[3]
[4]
[5]
GOLGI APPARATUS
Lysosome
SYNTHESIS OF LDL RECEPTORS
SYNTHESIS OF CHOLESTEROL
DNA
HMG CoA reductase
Amino acids
Fatty acids
mRNA
OVERSUPPLY OF CHOLESTEROL
CELL MEMBRANE, STEROID HORMONES, BILE ACIDS
Receptor
Ribosome
ACAT
Cholesterol
ENDOPLASMIC RETICULUM
Receptor protein
STORAGE OF CHOLESTERYL ESTERS

Figure 18.20
Cellular uptake and degradation of LDL. *ACAT = acyl CoA:cholesterol acyltransferase*.

transfers a fatty acid from a fatty acyl CoA derivative to cholesterol, producing a cholesteryl ester that can be stored in the cell (Figure 18.21). The activity of *ACAT* is enhanced in the presence of increased intracellular cholesterol.

3. **Uptake of chemically modified LDL by macrophage scavenger receptors:** In addition to the highly specific and regulated receptor-mediated pathway for LDL uptake described above, macrophages possess high levels of scavenger receptor activity. These receptors, known as scavenger receptor class A (SR-A), can bind a broad range of ligands, and mediate the endocytosis of chemically modified LDL in which the lipid components or apo B have been oxidized. Unlike the LDL receptor, the scavenger receptor is not down-regulated in response to increased intracellular cholesterol. Cholesteryl esters accumulate in macrophages and cause their transformation into "foam" cells, which participate in the formation of atherosclerotic plaque (Figure 18.22).

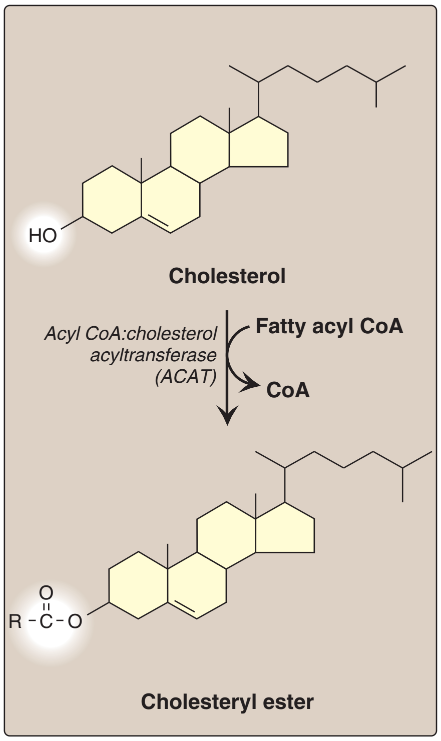


Figure 18.21
Synthesis of intracellular cholesteryl ester by *ACAT*.

E. Metabolism of HDL

HDL comprise a heterogeneous family of lipoproteins with a complex metabolism that is not yet completely understood. HDL particles are formed in blood by the addition of lipid to apo A-1, an apolipoprotein made by the liver and intestine and secreted into blood. Apo A-1 accounts for about 70% of the apoproteins in HDL. HDL perform a number of important functions, including the following:

1. **HDL is a reservoir of apolipoproteins:** HDL particles serve as a circulating reservoir of apo C-II (the apolipoprotein that is transferred to VLDL and chylomicrons, and is an activator of *lipoprotein lipase*), and apo E (the apolipoprotein required for the receptor-mediated endocytosis of IDLs and chylomicron remnants).

2. **HDL uptake of unesterified cholesterol:** Nascent HDL are disk-shaped particles containing primarily phospholipid (largely phosphatidylcholine) and apolipoproteins A, C, and E. They take up cholesterol from non-hepatic (peripheral) tissues and return it to the liver as cholesteryl esters (Figure 18.23). [Note: HDL particles are excellent acceptors of unesterified cholesterol as a result of their high concentration of phospholipids, which are important solubilizers of cholesterol.]

3. **Esterification of cholesterol:** When cholesterol is taken up by HDL, it is immediately esterified by the plasma enzyme *lecithin:cholesterol acyltransferase* (*LCAT*, also known as *PCAT*, in which "P" stands for phosphatidylcholine). This enzyme is synthesized by the liver. *LCAT* binds to nascent HDL, and is activated by apo A-I. *LCAT* transfers the fatty acid from carbon 2 of phosphatidylcholine to cholesterol. This produces a hydrophobic cholesteryl ester, which is sequestered in the core of the HDL, and lysophosphatidylcholine, which binds to albumin. [Note: Esterification maintains the cholesterol concentration gradient, allowing continued efflux of cholesterol to HDL.] As the discoidal nascent HDL accumulates cholesteryl esters, it first becomes a

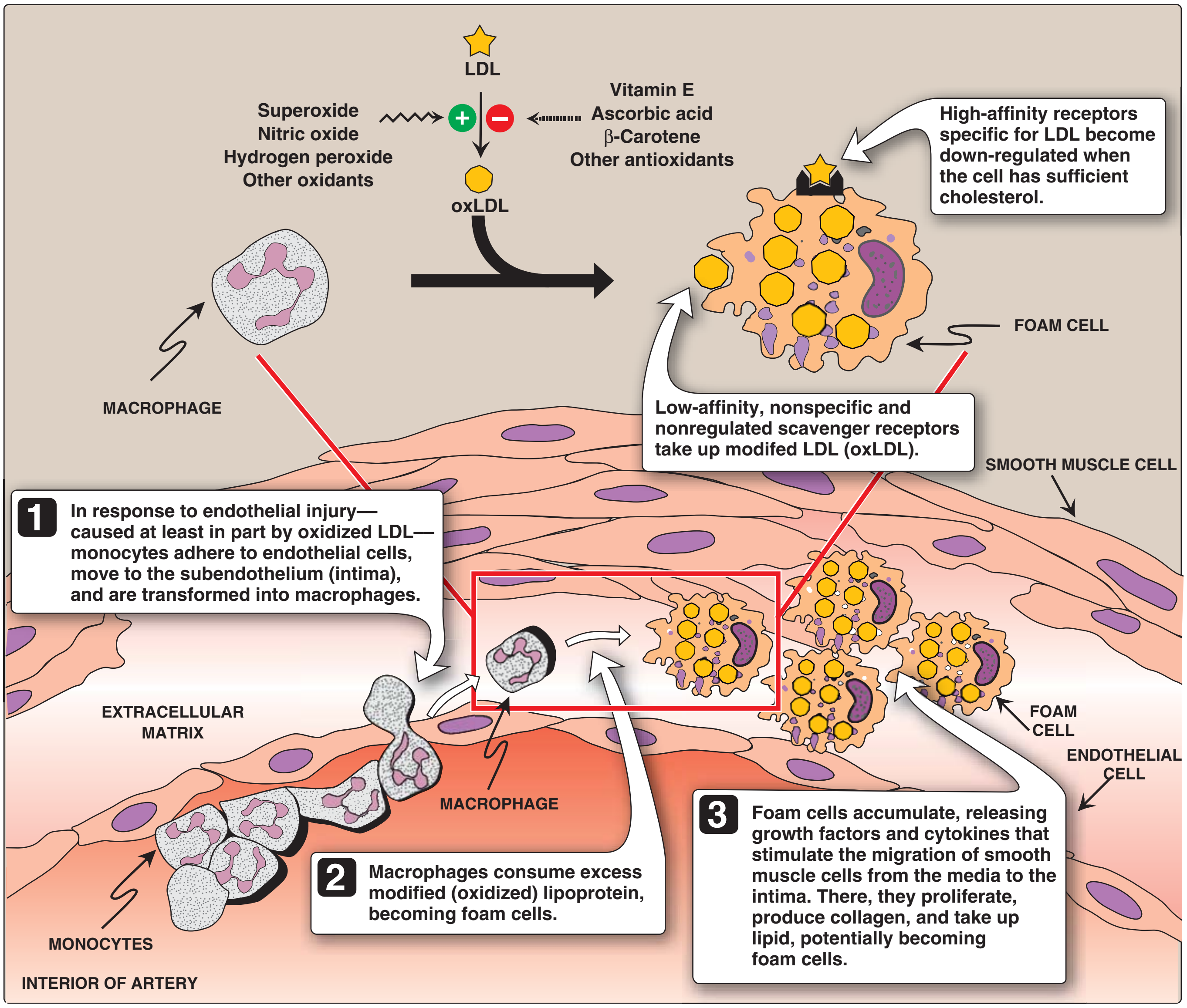

LDL
Superoxide
Nitric oxide
Hydrogen peroxide
Other oxidants
+
−
Vitamin E
Ascorbic acid
β-Carotene
Other antioxidants
oxLDL
High-affinity receptors specific for LDL become down-regulated when the cell has sufficient cholesterol.
MACROPHAGE
FOAM CELL
Low-affinity, nonspecific and nonregulated scavenger receptors take up modifed LDL (oxLDL).
SMOOTH MUSCLE CELL
1
In response to endothelial injury—caused at least in part by oxidized LDL—monocytes adhere to endothelial cells, move to the subendothelium (intima), and are transformed into macrophages.
EXTRACELLULAR MATRIX
FOAM CELL
ENDOTHELIAL CELL
MACROPHAGE
3
Foam cells accumulate, releasing growth factors and cytokines that stimulate the migration of smooth muscle cells from the media to the intima. There, they proliferate, produce collagen, and take up lipid, potentially becoming foam cells.
2
Macrophages consume excess modified (oxidized) lipoprotein, becoming foam cells.
MONOCYTES
INTERIOR OF ARTERY

Figure 18.22
Role of oxidized lipoproteins in plaque formation in arterial wall.

spherical, relatively cholesteryl ester–poor HDL3 and, eventually, a cholesteryl ester–rich HDL2 particle that carries these esters to the liver. *Cholesterol ester transfer protein* (*CETP*, see p. 231) moves some of the cholesteryl esters from HDL to VLDL in exchange for triacylglycerol, relieving product inhibition of *LCAT*. Because VLDL are catabolized to LDL, the cholesteryl esters are ultimately taken up by the liver.

4. **Reverse cholesterol transport:** The selective transfer of cholesterol from peripheral cells to HDL, and from HDL to the liver for bile acid synthesis or disposal via the bile, and to steroidogenic cells for hormone synthesis, is a key component of cholesterol homeostasis. This is, in part, the basis for the inverse relationship seen

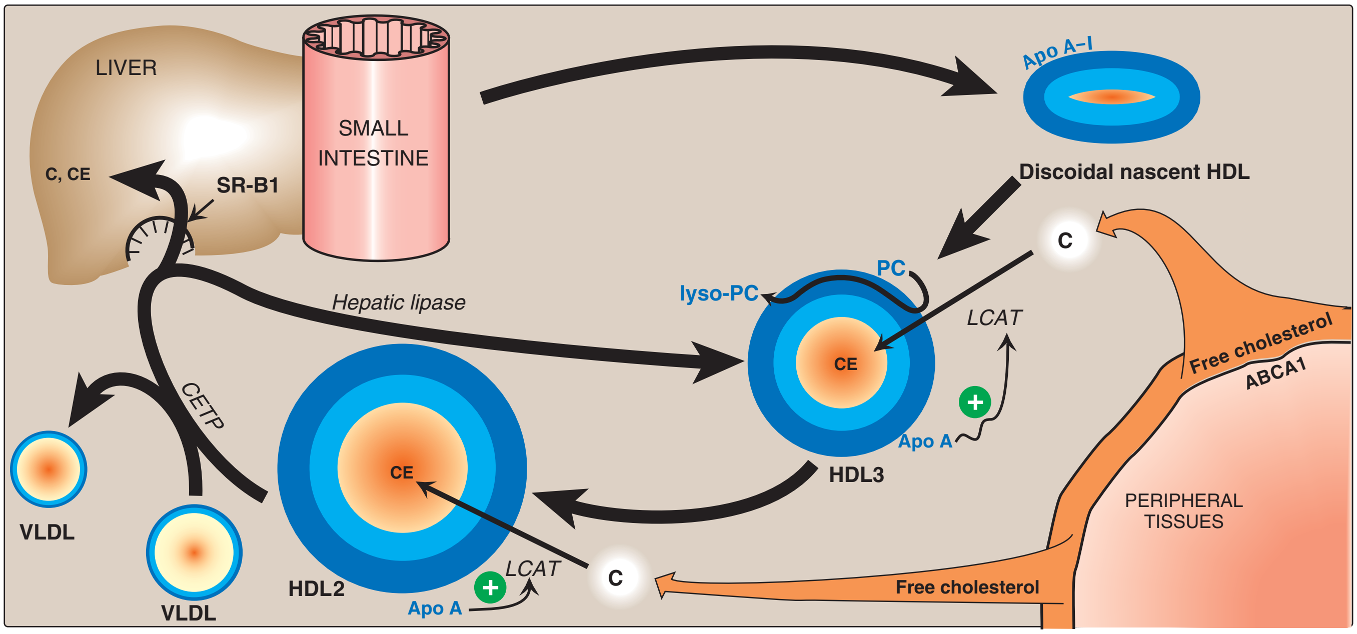


Figure 18.23
Metabolism of HDL. PC = phosphatidylcholine; lyso-PC = lysophosphatidylcholine. *LCAT* = *Lecithin cholesterol transferase*. CETP = cholesteryl ester transfer protein. ABCA1 = transport protein.
[Note: For convenience the size of VLDLs are shown smaller than HDL, whereas VLDLs are larger than HDL.]

between plasma HDL concentration and atherosclerosis, and for HDL's designation as the "good" cholesterol carrier. Reverse cholesterol transport involves efflux of cholesterol from peripheral cells to HDL, esterification of cholesterol by *LCAT*, binding of the cholesteryl ester–rich HDL (HDL2) to liver and steroidogenic cells, the selective transfer of the cholesteryl esters into these cells, and the release of lipid-depleted HDL (HDL3). The efflux of cholesterol from peripheral cells is mediated, at least in part, by the transport protein, ABCA1. [Note: Tangier disease is a very rare deficiency of ABCA1, and is characterized by the virtual absence of HDL particles due to degradation of lipid-poor apo A-1.] The uptake of cholesteryl esters by the liver is mediated by a cell-surface receptor, SR-B1 (scavenger receptor class B type 1) that binds HDL (see p, 234 for SR-A). It is not yet clear as to whether the HDL particle itself is taken up, the cholesteryl esters extracted, and the lipid-poor HDL released back into the blood, or if there is selective uptake of the cholesteryl ester alone. [Note: *Hepatic lipase*, with its ability to degrade both TAG and phospholipids, also participates in the conversion of HDL2 to HDL3.]

ABCA1 is an ATP-binding cassette (ABC) protein. ABC proteins use energy from ATP hydrolysis to transport materials, including lipids, in and out of cells and across intracellular compartments. In addition to Tangier disease, defects in specific ABC proteins result in X-linked adrenoleukodystrophy, respiratory distress syndrome due to decreased surfactant secretion, and cystic fibrosis.

F. Role of lipoprotein (a) in heart disease

Lipoprotein (a), or Lp(a), is a particle that, when present in large quantities in the plasma, is associated with an increased risk of coronary heart disease. Lp(a) is nearly identical in structure to an LDL particle. Its distinguishing feature is the presence of an additional apolipoprotein molecule, apo(a), that is covalently linked at a single site to apo B-100. Circulating levels of Lp(a) are determined primarily by genetics. However, factors such as diet may play some role, as trans fatty acids have been shown to increase Lp(a), and estrogen decreases both LDL and Lp(a). [Note: Apo(a) is structurally homologous to plasminogen—the precursor of a blood *protease* whose target is fibrin, the main protein component of blood clots. It is hypothesized that elevated Lp(a) slows the breakdown of blood clots that trigger heart attacks because it competes with plasminogen for binding to fibrin. Niacin reduces Lp(a) and raises HDL.]

VII. STEROID HORMONES

Cholesterol is the precursor of all classes of steroid hormones: glucocorticoids (for example, cortisol), mineralocorticoids (for example, aldosterone), and sex hormones—androgens, estrogens, and progestins (Figure 18.24). [Note: Glucocorticoids and mineralocorticoids are collectively called corticosteroids.] Synthesis and secretion occur in the adrenal cortex (cortisol, aldosterone, and androgens), ovaries and placenta (estrogens and progestins), and testes (testosterone). Steroid hormones are transported by the blood from their sites of synthesis to their target organs. Because of their hydrophobicity, they must be complexed with a plasma protein. Plasma albumin can act as a nonspecific carrier, and does carry aldosterone. However, specific steroid-carrier plasma proteins bind the steroid hormones more tightly than does albumin, for example, corticosteroid-binding globulin (transcortin) is responsible for transporting cortisol. A number of genetic diseases are caused by deficiencies in specific steps in the biosynthesis of steroid hormones. Some representative diseases are described in Figure 18.25.

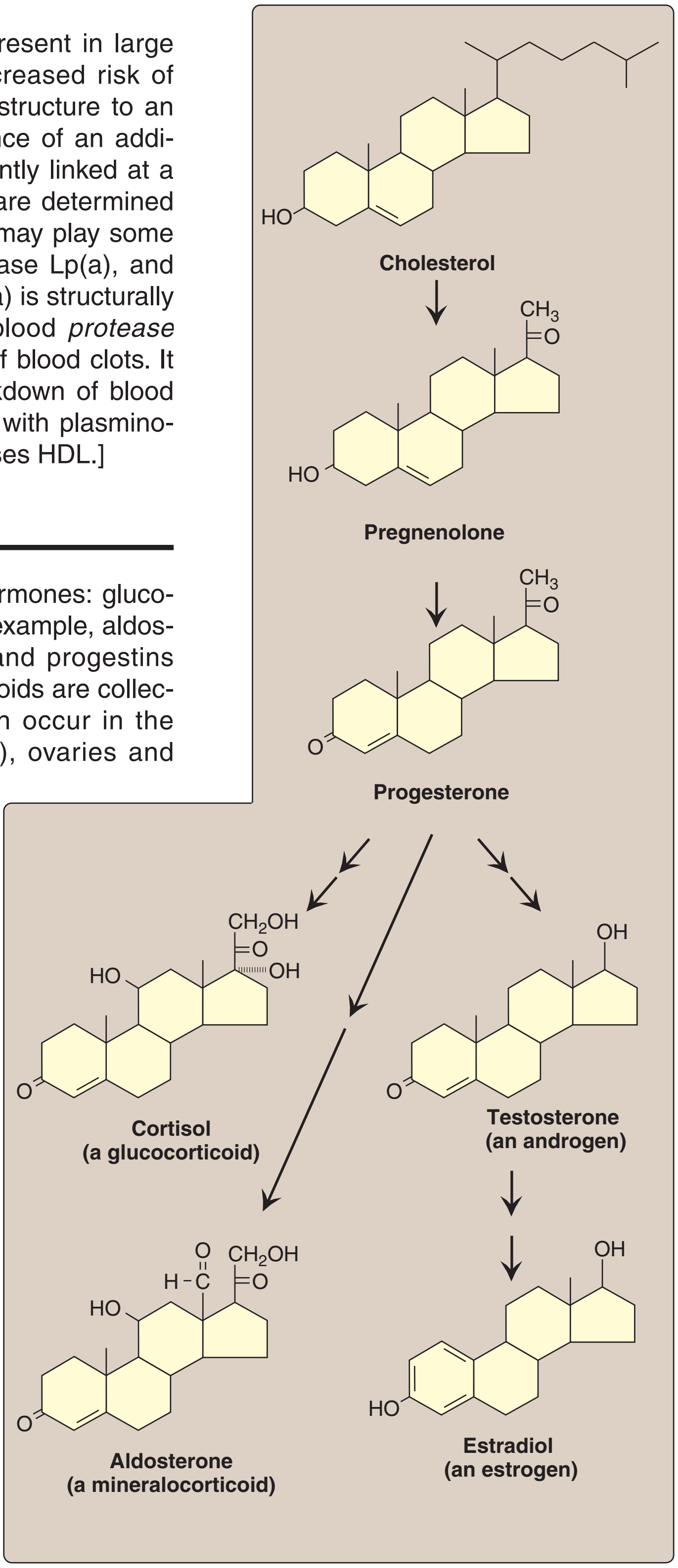
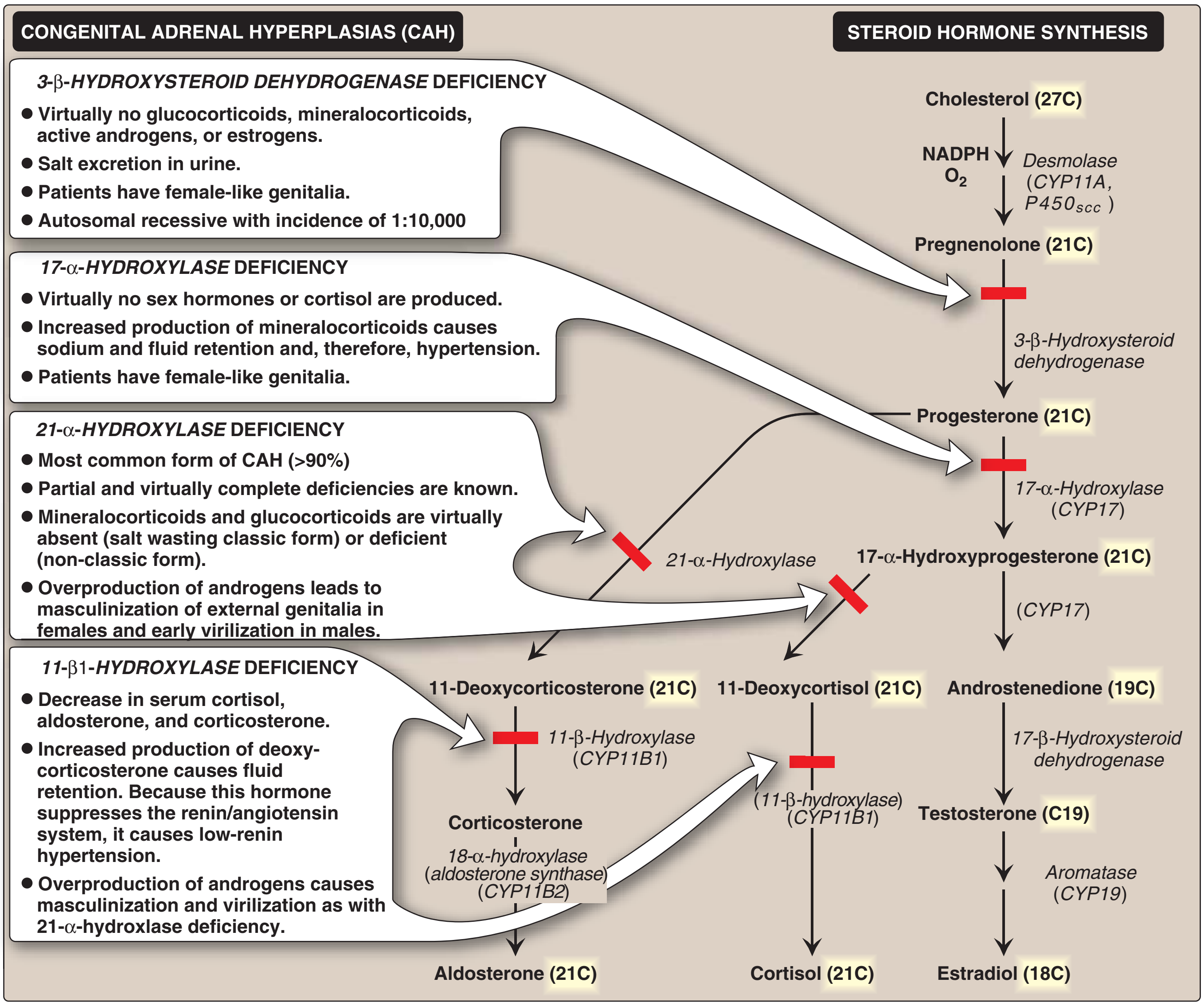


Figure 18.24
Key steroid hormones.

A. Synthesis of steroid hormones

Synthesis involves shortening the hydrocarbon chain of cholesterol, and hydroxylation of the steroid nucleus. The initial and rate-limiting reaction converts cholesterol to the 21-carbon pregnenolone. It is catalyzed by the *cholesterol side-chain cleavage enzyme complex* (*desmolase,* $P450_{SCC}$)—a cytochrome P450 (CYP) mixed function *oxidase* of the inner mitochondrial membrane (see p. 149). NADPH and molecular oxygen are required for the reaction. The cholesterol substrate can be newly synthesized, taken up from lipoproteins, or released from cholesteryl esters stored in the cytosol of steroidogenic tissues. An important control point is the movement of cholesterol into mito-


CONGENITAL ADRENAL HYPERPLASIAS (CAH)
STEROID HORMONE SYNTHESIS
Cholesterol (27C)
NADPH
O_2
Desmolase
(CYP11A, $P450_{scc}$)
Pregnenolone (21C)
3-β-Hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase
Progesterone (21C)
17-α-Hydroxylase (CYP17)
21-α-Hydroxylase
17-α-Hydroxyprogesterone (21C)
(CYP17)
11-Deoxycorticosterone (21C)
11-Deoxycortisol (21C)
Androstenedione (19C)
11-β-Hydroxylase (CYP11B1)
(11-β-hydroxylase) (CYP11B1)
17-β-Hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase
Corticosterone
18-α-hydroxylase (aldosterone synthase) (CYP11B2)
Testosterone (C19)
Aromatase (CYP19)
Aldosterone (21C)
Cortisol (21C)
Estradiol (18C)

***3-β-HYDROXYSTEROID DEHYDROGENASE* DEFICIENCY**

- **Virtually no glucocorticoids, mineralocorticoids, active androgens, or estrogens.**
- **Salt excretion in urine.**
- **Patients have female-like genitalia.**
- **Autosomal recessive with incidence of 1:10,000**

***17-α-HYDROXYLASE* DEFICIENCY**

- **Virtually no sex hormones or cortisol are produced.**
- **Increased production of mineralocorticoids causes sodium and fluid retention and, therefore, hypertension.**
- **Patients have female-like genitalia.**

***21-α-HYDROXYLASE* DEFICIENCY**

- **Most common form of CAH (>90%)**
- **Partial and virtually complete deficiencies are known.**
- **Mineralocorticoids and glucocorticoids are virtually absent (salt wasting classic form) or deficient (non-classic form).**
- **Overproduction of androgens leads to masculinization of external genitalia in females and early virilization in males.**

***11-β1-HYDROXYLASE* DEFICIENCY**

- **Decrease in serum cortisol, aldosterone, and corticosterone.**
- **Increased production of deoxycorticosterone causes fluid retention. Because this hormone suppresses the renin/angiotensin system, it causes low-renin hypertension.**
- **Overproduction of androgens causes masculinization and virilization as with 21-α-hydroxlase deficiency.**

Figure 18.25
Steroid hormone synthesis and associated diseases. [Note: 3-β-*hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase*, *CYP17*, and *CYP11B2* are bifunctional enzymes. Synthesis of testosterone and the estrogens from cholesterol occurs primarily outside of the adrenal gland.]

chondria. This process is mediated by StAR (steroidogenic acute regulatory protein). Pregnenolone is the parent compound for all steroid hormones (see Figure 18.25). Pregnenolone is oxidized and then isomerized to progesterone which is further modified to the other steroid hormones by hydroxylation reactions that occur in the ER and mitochondria. Like *desmolase*, the enzymes primarily are CYP proteins. A defect in the activity or amount of an enzyme in this pathway can lead to a deficiency in the synthesis of hormones beyond the affected step, and to an excess in the hormones or metabolites before that step. Because all members of the pathway have potent biologic activity, serious metabolic imbalances occur if enzyme deficiencies are present (see Figure 18.25). Collectively these disorders are known as the congenital adrenal hyperplasias. [Note: Addison disease, due to autoimmune destruction of the adrenal cortex, is characterized by adrenocortical insufficiency.]

B. Secretion of adrenal cortical steroid hormones

Steroid hormones are secreted on demand from their tissues of origin in response to hormonal signals. The corticosteroids and androgens are made in different regions of the adrenal cortex, and are secreted into blood in response to different signals.

1. **Cortisol:** Its production in the middle layer (zona fasciculata) of the adrenal cortex is controlled by the hypothalamus, to which the pituitary gland is attached (Figure 18.26). In response to severe stress (for example, infection), corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH), produced by the hypothalamus, travels through capillaries to the anterior lobe of the pituitary, where it induces the production and secretion of adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH). The polypeptide ACTH, the "stress hormone," stimulates the adrenal cortex to synthesize and secrete the glucocorticoid cortisol. Cortisol allows the body to respond to stress through its effects on intermediary metabolism (for example, increased gluconeogenesis) and the inflammatory and immune responses. As cortisol levels rise, the release of CRH and ACTH is inhibited. [Note: ACTH binds to a membrane G-protein coupled receptor, resulting in cAMP production and activation of *protein kinase A* (see p. 94). *PKA* phosphorylates the *esterase* that converts cholesteryl ester to cholesterol and stimulates synthesis of StAR protein.]

2. **Aldosterone:** Its production in the outer layer (zona glomerulosa) of the adrenal cortex is induced by a decrease in the plasma Na$^+$/K$^+$ ratio, and by the hormone, angiotensin II. Angiotensin II (an octapeptide) is produced from angiotensin I (a decapeptide) by *angiotensin-converting enzyme* (*ACE*), an enzyme found predominantly in the lungs, but which is also distributed widely in the body. [Note: Angiotensin I is produced in the blood by cleavage of an inactive precursor, angiotensinogen, secreted by the liver. Cleavage is accomplished by the enzyme *renin*, made and secreted by the kidney.] Angiotensin II binds to cell-surface receptors. However, in contrast to ACTH, its effects are mediated through the phosphatidylinositol 4,5-bisphosphate (PIP$_2$) pathway (see p. 205) and not by cAMP. Aldosterone's primary effect is on the kidney tubules, where it stimulates sodium uptake and potassium excretion (Figure 18.27). [Note: An effect of aldosterone is an increase in blood pressure. Competitive inhibitors of *ACE* are used to treat *renin*-dependent hypertension.]

3. **Androgens:** Both the inner (zona reticularis) and middle layers of the adrenal cortex produce androgens, primarily dehydroepiandrosterone and androstenedione. Although adrenal androgens themselves are weak, they are converted in peripheral tissues to testosterone—a stronger androgen—and to estrogens.

> Estrogens are derived from androstenedione and testosterone by *aromatase* (*CYP19*). *Aromatase* inhibitors are used in the treatment of estrogen-responsive breast cancer in postmenopausal women.

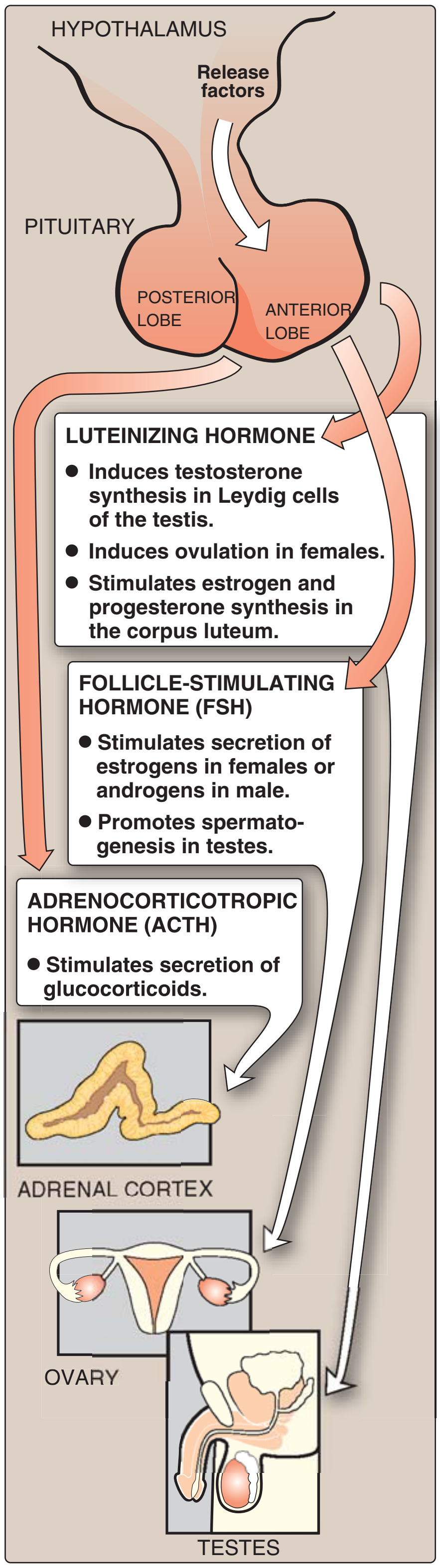

HYPOTHALAMUS
Release factors
PITUITARY
POSTERIOR LOBE
ANTERIOR LOBE
LUTEINIZING HORMONE
● Induces testosterone synthesis in Leydig cells of the testis.
● Induces ovulation in females.
● Stimulates estrogen and progesterone synthesis in the corpus luteum.
FOLLICLE-STIMULATING HORMONE (FSH)
● Stimulates secretion of estrogens in females or androgens in male.
● Promotes spermatogenesis in testes.
ADRENOCORTICOTROPIC HORMONE (ACTH)
● Stimulates secretion of glucocorticoids.
ADRENAL CORTEX
OVARY
TESTES

Figure 18.26
Pituitary hormone stimulation of steroid hormone synthesis and secretion.

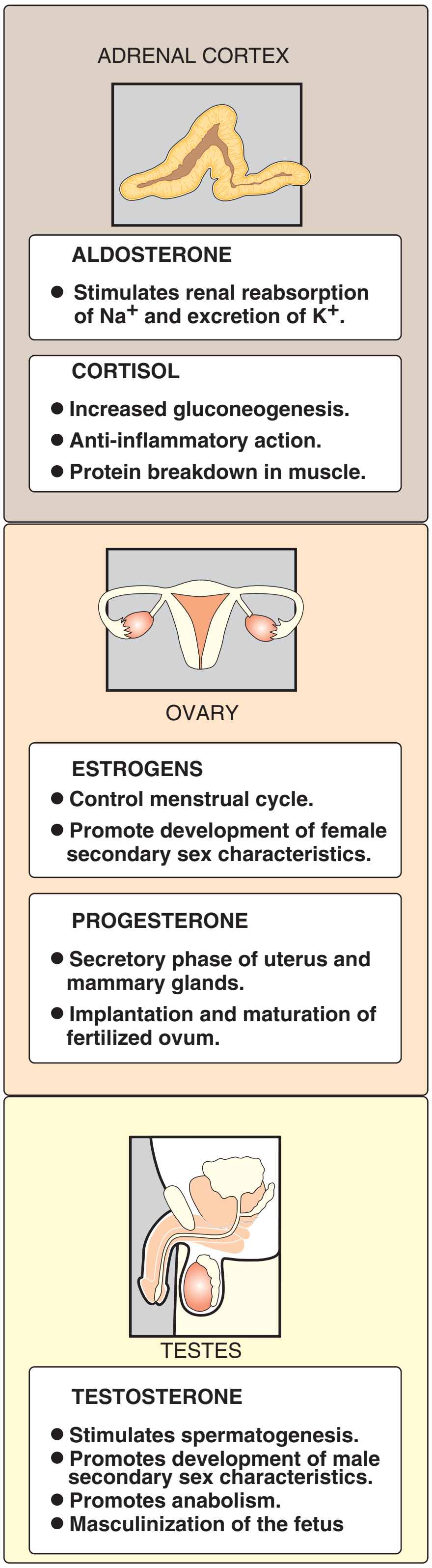

ADRENAL CORTEX
ALDOSTERONE
● Stimulates renal reabsorption of Na+ and excretion of K+.
CORTISOL
● Increased gluconeogenesis.
● Anti-inflammatory action.
● Protein breakdown in muscle.
OVARY
ESTROGENS
● Control menstrual cycle.
● Promote development of female secondary sex characteristics.
PROGESTERONE
● Secretory phase of uterus and mammary glands.
● Implantation and maturation of fertilized ovum.
TESTES
TESTOSTERONE
● Stimulates spermatogenesis.
● Promotes development of male secondary sex characteristics.
● Promotes anabolism.
● Masculinization of the fetus

Figure 18.27
Actions of steroid hormones.

C. Secretion of steroid hormones from gonads

The testes and ovaries synthesize hormones necessary for sexual differentiation and reproduction. A single hypothalamic-releasing factor, gonadotropin-releasing hormone, stimulates the anterior pituitary to release the glycoproteins, luteinizing hormone (LH) and follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH). Like ACTH, LH and FSH bind to surface receptors and cause an increase in cAMP. LH stimulates the testes to produce testosterone and the ovaries to produce estrogens and progesterone (see Figure 18.27). FSH regulates the growth of ovarian follicles and stimulates testicular spermatogenesis.

D. Mechanism of steroid hormone action

Each steroid hormone diffuses across the plasma membrane of its target cell and binds to a specific cytosolic or nuclear receptor. These receptor–ligand complexes accumulate in the nucleus, dimerize, and bind to specific regulatory DNA sequences (hormone-response elements, HRE) in association with coactivator proteins, thereby causing promoter activation and increased transcription of targeted genes (Figure 18.28). An HRE is found in the promoter (or an enhancer element, see p. 424) for genes that respond to a specific steroid hormone, thus ensuring coordinated regulation of these genes. Hormone–receptor complexes can also inhibit transcription in association with corepressors. [Note: The binding of a hormone to its receptor causes a conformational change in the receptor that uncovers its DNA-binding domain, allowing the complex to interact through a zinc-finger motif with the appropriate sequence on the DNA. Receptors for the steroid hormones, plus those for thyroid hormone, retinoic acid (see p. 382), and 1,25-dihydroxycholecalciferol (Vitamin D, see p. 386), are members of a “superfamily” of structurally related gene regulators that function in a similar way.]

E. Further metabolism of steroid hormones

Steroid hormones are generally converted into inactive metabolic excretion products in the liver. Reactions include reduction of unsaturated bonds and the introduction of additional hydroxyl groups. The resulting structures are made more soluble by conjugation with glucuronic acid or sulfate (from 3'-phosphoadenosyl-5'-phosphosulfate, see p. 162). Approximately 20–30% of these metabolites are secreted into the bile and then excreted in the feces, whereas the remainder are released into the blood and filtered from the plasma in the kidney, passing into the urine. These conjugated metabolites are fairly water-soluble and do not need protein carriers.

VIII. CHAPTER SUMMARY

Cholesterol is a **hydrophobic** compound, with a single hydroxyl group—located at carbon 3 of the A ring—to which a fatty acid can be attached, producing an even more hydrophobic **cholesteryl ester**. Cholesterol is synthesized by virtually all human tissues, although primarily by **liver**, **intestine**, **adrenal cortex**, and **reproductive tissues** (Figure 18.29). All the carbon atoms in cholesterol are provided by **acetate**, and **NADPH** provides the reducing equivalents. The pathway is driven by hydrolysis of the high-energy thioester bond of acetyl CoA and the terminal phosphate bond of ATP. Cholesterol is synthesized in the **cytoplasm**.The **rate-limiting and regulated step** in cholesterol synthesis is catalyzed by the SER—membrane protein, hydroxymethylglutaryl (**HMG) CoA reductase**, which produces **mevalonate** from HMG CoA. The enzyme is regulated by a number of mechanisms: 1) **Expression of the gene for HMG CoA reductase** is activated when cholesterol levels are low, via the transcription factor, SREBP-2, bound to a sterol response element (SRE), resulting in increased enzyme and, therefore, more cholesterol synthesis; 2) HMG CoA reductase activity is controlled by **adenosine monophosphate** (**AMP)–activated protein kinase** (**AMPK**, which phosphorylates and **inactivates** HMG CoA reductase) and an **insulin-activated protein phosphatase** (which **activates** HMG CoA reductase); 3) Expression of the gene for the reductase is upregulated by insulin and downregulated by glucagon. Statins are **competitive inhibitors** of HMG CoA reductase. These drugs are used to decrease plasma cholesterol in patients with **hypercholesterolemia**. The ring structure of cholesterol can not be degraded in humans.

Cholesterol can be eliminated from the body either by **conversion to bile salts** or by **secretion into the bile**. **Bile salts** and **phosphatidylcholine** are quantitatively the most important organic components of bile. Bile salts are **conjugated bile acids** produced by the **liver** and **stored in the gallbladder**. The **primary bile acids**, **cholic** or **chenodeoxycholic acids**, are **amphipathic**, and can serve as **emulsifying agents**. The rate-limiting step in bile acid synthesis is catalyzed by **cholesterol-7-α-hydroxylase**, which is **inhibited** by **bile acids**. Before the bile acids leave the liver, they are conjugated to a molecule of either **glycine** or **taurine**, producing the **primary bile salts**: **glycocholic** or **taurocholic acid**, and **glycochenodeoxycholic** or **taurochenodeoxycholic acid.** Bile salts are more amphipathic than bile acids and, therefore, are more effective emulsifiers. In the intestine, bacteria can remove the glycine and taurine, and can remove a hydroxyl group from the steroid nucleus, producing the **secondary bile acids—deoxycholic** and **lithocholic acids.** More than 95% of the bile acids and salts are efficiently reabsorbed from the intestine by a sodium-bile salt cotransporter. They are then actively transported out of the ileal mucosal cells into the portal blood, where they are carried by albumin back to the liver (**enterohepatic circulation; bile acid sequestrants reduce this**) and are taken up by the hepatic form of the cotransporter. In the liver, the primary and secondary bile acids are reconverted to bile salts, and secreted into the bile. If more cholesterol enters the bile than can be solubilized by the available bile salts and phosphatidylcholine, **cholesterol gallstone disease** (**cholelithiasis**) can occur.

The plasma lipoproteins include **chylomicrons (CM)**, **very-low-density lipoproteins** (**VLDL**), **low-density lipoproteins** (**LDL**), and **high-density lipoproteins** (**HDL**). They function to keep lipids (primarily **triacylglycerol** (**TAG**) and **cholesteryl esters**) soluble as they transport them between tissues. Lipoproteins are composed of a **neutral lipid** (**TAG**, **cholesteryl esters**, or both) surrounded by a shell of amphipathic **apolipoproteins**, **phospholipid**, and **nonesterified cholesterol**. **CM** are assembled in **intestinal mucosal cells** from **dietary lipids** (primarily, **TAG**). Each nascent CM particle has one molecule of **apolipoprotein (apo) B-48**. They are released from the cells into the lymphatic system

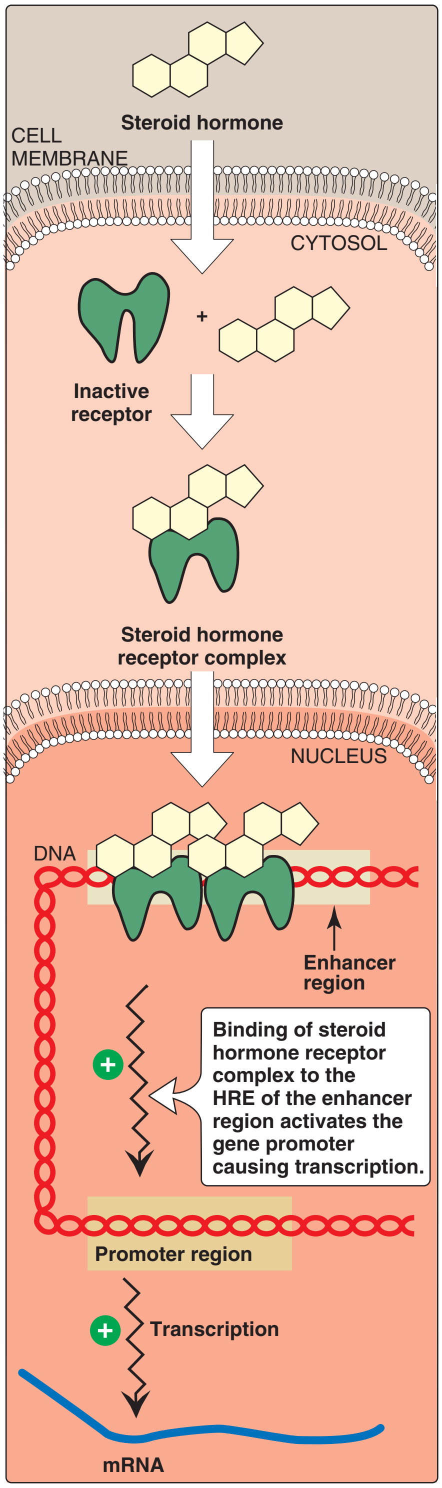

Steroid hormone
CELL MEMBRANE
CYTOSOL
+
Inactive receptor
Steroid hormone receptor complex
NUCLEUS
DNA
Enhancer region
Binding of steroid hormone receptor complex to the HRE of the enhancer region activates the gene promoter causing transcription.
+
Promoter region
+
Transcription
mRNA

Figure 18.28
Activation of transcription by interaction of steroid hormone-receptor complex with hormone response element (HRE).

and travel to the blood, where they receive **apo C-II** and **apo E** from **HDLs**. Apo C-II activates endothelial **lipoprotein lipase**, which degrades the TAG in CM to fatty acids and glycerol. The **fatty acids** that are released are **stored** (in the **adipose**) or used for **energy** (by the **muscle**). The **glycerol** is metabolized by the **liver**. Patients with a **deficiency** of **lipoprotein lipase** or **apo C-II** show a dramatic accumulation of CM in the plasma (**Type I hyperlipoproteinemia or familial lipoprotein lipase deficiency**). After most of the TAG is removed, apo C-II is returned to the HDL, and the **CM remnant**—carrying most of the **dietary cholesterol**—binds to a **receptor** on the **liver** that recognizes **apo E**. The particle is **endocytosed** and its contents degraded by **lysosomal enzymes**. Defective uptake of CM remnants causes Type III hyperlipoproteinemia. **Nascent VLDL** are produced in the **liver**, and are composed predominantly of **TAG**. They contain a single molecule of **apo B-100**. Like nascent CM, VLDL receive **apo C-II** and **apo E** from **HDL** in the plasma. The **function** of VLDL is to **carry hepatic TAG** to the **peripheral tissues** where **lipoprotein lipase** degrades the lipid. As TAG is removed from the VLDL, the particle receives **cholesteryl esters** from **HDL**. This process is accomplished by **cholesteryl ester transfer protein (CETP)**. Eventually, VLDL in the **plasma** is **converted to LDL**—a much smaller, denser particle. Apo C-II and apo E are returned to HDL, but the LDL retains **apo B-100**, which is recognized by **receptors** on **peripheral tissues** and the **liver**. LDL undergo **receptor-mediated endocytosis**, and their contents are degraded in the **lysosomes**. A **deficiency of functional LDL receptors** causes **Type II hyperlipoproteinemia** (**familial hypercholesterolemia**). The endocytosed cholesterol **inhibits HMG CoA reductase** and **decreases synthesis of LDL receptors**. Some of it can also be esterified by **acyl CoA:cholesterol acyltransferase** (**ACAT**) and stored. **HDL** are created by **lipidation of apo A-1** synthesized in the **liver** and **intestine**. They have a number of functions, including: 1) serving as a **circulating reservoir of apo C-II** and **apo E** for chylomicrons and VLDL; 2) removing **unesterified cholesterol** from from peripheral tissues via ABCA1and **esterifying it** using **lecithin:cholesterol acyl transferase (LCAT)**, a liver-synthesized plasma enzyme that is activated by **apo A-1**; and 3) delivering these cholesteryl esters to the liver (**reverse cholesterol transport**) for uptake via SR-B1.

Cholesterol is the precursor of all classes of steroid hormones (**glucocorticoids**, **mineralocorticoids**, and **sex hormones—androgens**, **estrogens**, and **progestins**). **Synthesis**, using primarily **cytochrome P450 (CYP) mixed-function oxidases**, occurs in the **adrenal cortex** (**cortisol**, **aldosterone**, and **androgens**), **ovaries** and **placenta** (**estrogens** and **progestins**), and **testes** (**testosterone**). Each steroid hormone diffuses across the plasma membrane of its target cell and binds to a specific **cytosolic** or **nuclear receptor**. These **receptor–ligand complexes** accumulate in the nucleus, dimerize, and **bind** to specific regulatory DNA sequences (**hormone-response elements**) in association with coactivator proteins, thereby causing **promoter activation** and **increased transcription** of targeted genes. In association with corepressors, **transcription is decreased**.

Study Questions

Choose the ONE correct answer.

18.1 A 35-year-old woman was seen in the emergency room because of recurrent abdominal pain. The history revealed a 2-year pattern of pain in the upper right quadrant, beginning several hours after the ingestion of a meal rich in fried/fatty food. Ultrasonographic examination demonstrated the presence of numerous stones in the gallbladder. The patient initially elected treatment consisting of exogenously supplied chenodeoxycholic acid, but eventually underwent surgery for the removal of the gallbladder, and had a full recovery. The rationale for the initial treatment of this patient with chenodeoxycholic acid is that this compound:

A. interferes with the enterohepatic circulation.
B. inhibits cholesterol synthesis.
C. increases de novo bile acid production.
D. increases cholesterol solubility in bile.

Correct answer = D. Chenodeoxycholic acid is a bile acid used in the treatment of gallstones. It is an amphipathic molecule that can act like an emulsifying agent and help solubilize cholesterol. The compound will not affect the enterohepatic circulation, interfere with cholesterol synthesis, increase bile acid production, or stimulate VLDL production.

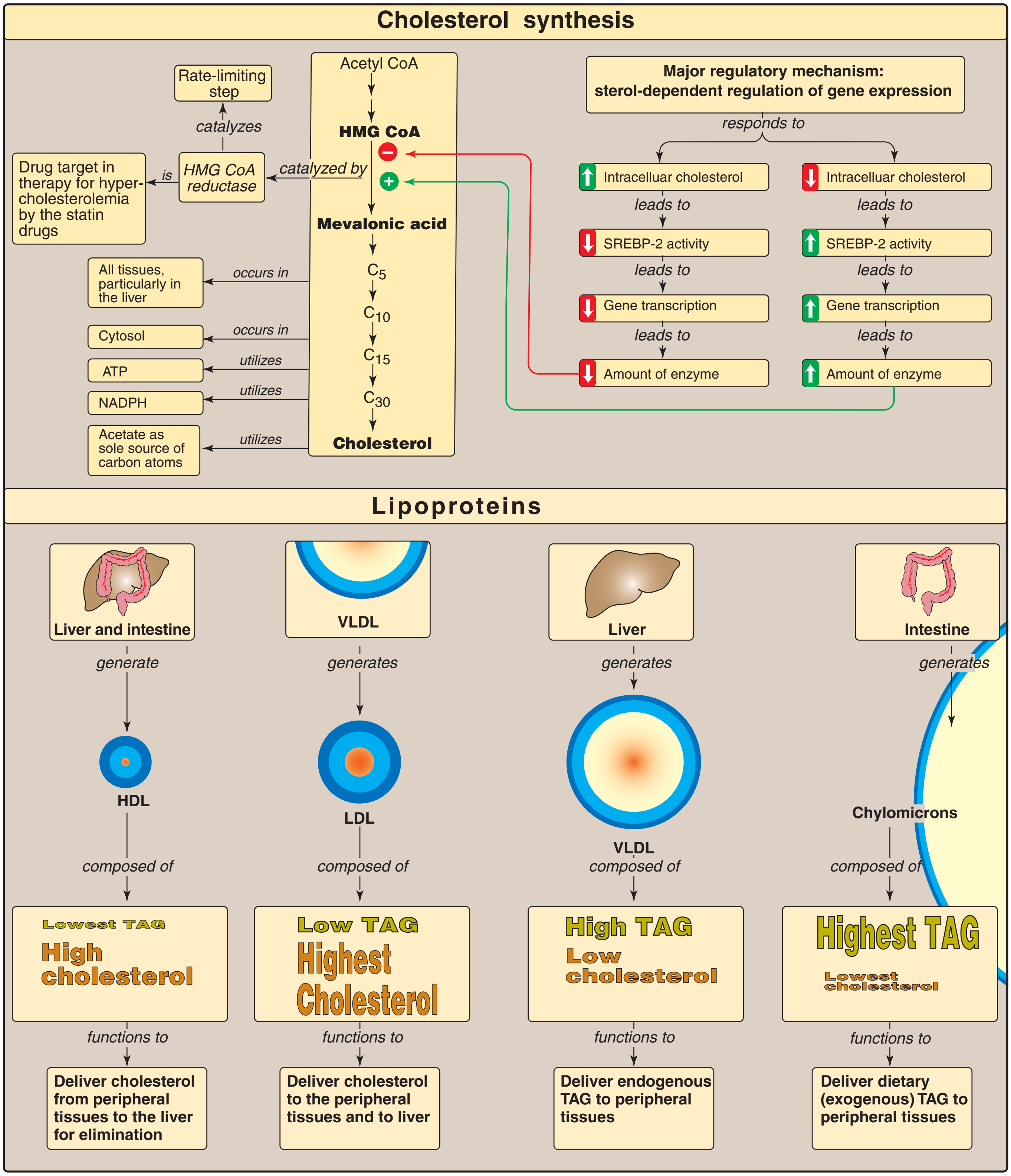

Cholesterol synthesis
Acetyl CoA
HMG CoA
Mevalonic acid
C_5
C_{10}
C_{15}
C_{30}
Cholesterol
Rate-limiting step
catalyzes
HMG CoA reductase
catalyzed by
is
Drug target in therapy for hyper-cholesterolemia by the statin drugs
All tissues, particularly in the liver
occurs in
Cytosol
occurs in
ATP
utilizes
NADPH
utilizes
Acetate as sole source of carbon atoms
utilizes
Major regulatory mechanism: sterol-dependent regulation of gene expression
responds to
Intracelluar cholesterol
leads to
SREBP-2 activity
leads to
Gene transcription
leads to
Amount of enzyme
Intracelluar cholesterol
leads to
SREBP-2 activity
leads to
Gene transcription
leads to
Amount of enzyme
Lipoproteins
Liver and intestine
generate
HDL
composed of
Lowest TAG
High cholesterol
functions to
Deliver cholesterol from peripheral tissues to the liver for elimination
VLDL
generates
LDL
composed of
Low TAG
Highest Cholesterol
functions to
Deliver cholesterol to the peripheral tissues and to liver
Liver
generates
VLDL
composed of
High TAG
Low cholesterol
functions to
Deliver endogenous TAG to peripheral tissues
Intestine
generates
Chylomicrons
composed of
Highest TAG
Lowest cholesterol
functions to
Deliver dietary (exogenous) TAG to peripheral tissues

Figure 18.29
Concept map for cholesterol and the lipoproteins.

For Questions 18.2 and 18.3:

A young girl with a history of severe abdominal pain was taken to her local hospital at 5 a.m. in severe distress. Blood was drawn, and the plasma appeared milky, with the triacylglycerol level in excess of 2,000 mg/dl (normal = 4–150 mg/dl). The patient was placed on a diet severely limited in fat, but supplemented with medium-chain fatty acids.

18.2 Which of the following lipoprotein particles are most likely responsible for the appearance of the patient's plasma?

A. Chylomicrons.
B. Very-low-density lipoproteins.
C. Intermediate-density lipoproteins.
D. Low-density-lipoproteins.
E. High-density-lipoproteins.

18.3 Medium-chain fatty acids are given because they:

A. are more calorically dense than long-chain fatty acids.
B. enter directly into the portal blood, and can be metabolized by the liver.
C. are activators of lipoprotein lipase.
D. are more efficiently packed into serum lipoproteins.
E. can be converted into a variety of gluconeogenic precursors.
E. stimulates VLDL production by the liver.

18.4 Complete the following table for an individual with classic 21-α-hydroxylase deficiency relative to a normal individual.

Measured	Increased	Decreased
Aldosterone		
Cortisol		
Androstenedione		
ACTH		
Blood glucose		
Blood pressure		

How might the results be changed if the individual was deficient in 17-α-hydroxylase, rather than 21-α-hydroxylase?

Correct answer = A. The milky appearance of her blood was a result of triacylglycerol-rich chylomicrons. Because 5 a.m. is presumably several hours after her evening meal, she must have difficulty clearing these lipoprotein particles. IDL, LDL, or HDL contain primarily cholesteryl esters and, if one or more of these particles was elevated, it would cause hypercholesterolemia. VLDL do not cause the described "milky appearance" in plasma.

Correct answer = B. Medium-chain fatty acids are not packaged in chylomicrons, but rather are carried by albumin to the liver where they can be metabolized. They have the same caloric density as long-chain fatty acids, and are generally much more ketogenic than glycogenic. Lipoprotein lipase does not play a role in their metabolism.

Measured	Increased	Decreased
Aldosterone		X
Cortisol		X
Androstenedione	X	
ACTH	X	
Blood glucose		X
Blood pressure		X

21-α-Hydroxylase deficiency causes mineralocorticoids (aldosterone) and glucocorticoids (cortisol) to be virtually absent. Because aldosterone increases blood pressure, and cortisol increases blood glucose, their deficiencies result in a decrease in blood pressure and blood glucose, respectively. Cortisol normally feeds back to inhibit ACTH release by the pituitary, and so its absence results in an elevation in ACTH. The loss of 21-α-hydroxylase pushes progesterone and pregnenolone to androgen synthesis, thus, androstenedione levels rise. With 17-α-hydroxylase deficiency, sex hormone synthesis would be inhibited. Mineralocorticoid production would be increased, leading to hypertension.

UNIT IV:
Nitrogen Metabolism

Amino Acids: Disposal of Nitrogen

19

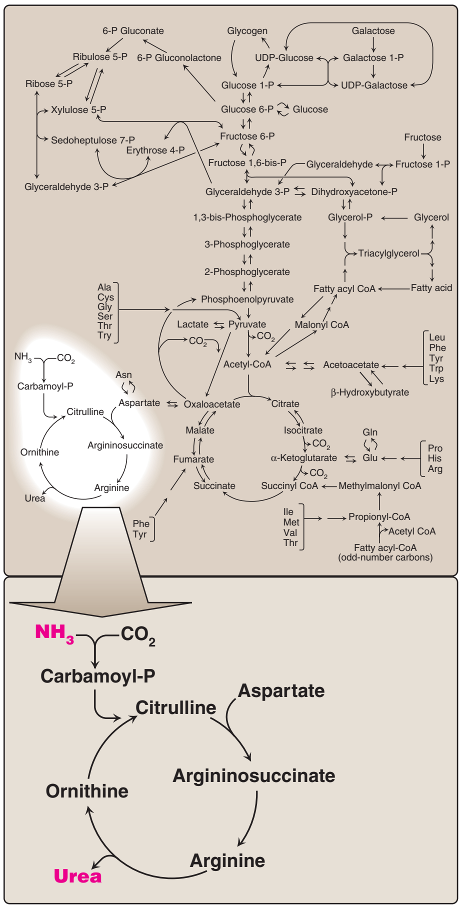

6-P Gluconate
Glycogen
Galactose
Ribulose 5-P
6-P Gluconolactone
UDP-Glucose
Galactose 1-P
Ribose 5-P
Glucose 1-P
UDP-Galactose
Xylulose 5-P
Glucose 6-P
Glucose
Sedoheptulose 7-P
Erythrose 4-P
Fructose 6-P
Fructose
Fructose 1,6-bis-P
Glyceraldehyde
Fructose 1-P
Glyceraldehyde 3-P
Glyceraldehyde 3-P
Dihydroxyacetone-P
1,3-bis-Phosphoglycerate
Glycerol-P
Glycerol
3-Phosphoglycerate
Triacylglycerol
2-Phosphoglycerate
Fatty acyl CoA
Fatty acid
Ala
Cys
Gly
Ser
Thr
Try
Phosphoenolpyruvate
Lactate
Pyruvate
Malonyl CoA
CO2
CO2
Leu
Phe
Tyr
Trp
Lys
NH3
CO2
Acetyl-CoA
Acetoacetate
Carbamoyl-P
Asn
β-Hydroxybutyrate
Aspartate
Oxaloacetate
Citrate
Citrulline
Malate
Isocitrate
Gln
Ornithine
Argininosuccinate
CO2
Fumarate
α-Ketoglutarate
Glu
Pro
His
Arg
CO2
Arginine
Succinate
Succinyl CoA
Methylmalonyl CoA
Urea
Ile
Met
Val
Thr
Propionyl-CoA
Phe
Tyr
Acetyl CoA
Fatty acyl-CoA
(odd-number carbons)
NH3
CO2
Carbamoyl-P
Aspartate
Citrulline
Argininosuccinate
Ornithine
Arginine
Urea

Figure 19.1
Urea cycle shown as part of the essential reactions of energy metabolism. (See Figure 8.2, p. 92, for a more detailed view of the metabolic pathway.)

I. OVERVIEW

Unlike fats and carbohydrates, amino acids are not stored by the body, that is, no protein exists whose sole function is to maintain a supply of amino acids for future use. Therefore, amino acids must be obtained from the diet, synthesized de novo, or produced from normal protein degradation. Any amino acids in excess of the biosynthetic needs of the cell are rapidly degraded. The first phase of catabolism involves the removal of the α-amino groups (usually by transamination and subsequent oxidative deamination), forming ammonia and the corresponding α-keto acid—the "carbon skeletons" of amino acids. A portion of the free ammonia is excreted in the urine, but most is used in the synthesis of urea (Figure 19.1), which is quantitatively the most important route for disposing of nitrogen from the body. In the second phase of amino acid catabolism, described in Chapter 20, the carbon skeletons of the α-ketoacids are converted to common intermediates of energy producing, metabolic pathways. These compounds can be metabolized to CO_2 and water, glucose, fatty acids, or ketone bodies by the central pathways of metabolism described in Chapters 8–13, and 16.

II. OVERALL NITROGEN METABOLISM

Amino acid catabolism is part of the larger process of the metabolism of nitrogen-containing molecules. Nitrogen enters the body in a variety of compounds present in food, the most important being amino acids contained in dietary protein. Nitrogen leaves the body as urea, ammonia, and other products derived from amino acid metabolism. The role of body proteins in these transformations involves two important concepts: the amino acid pool and protein turnover.

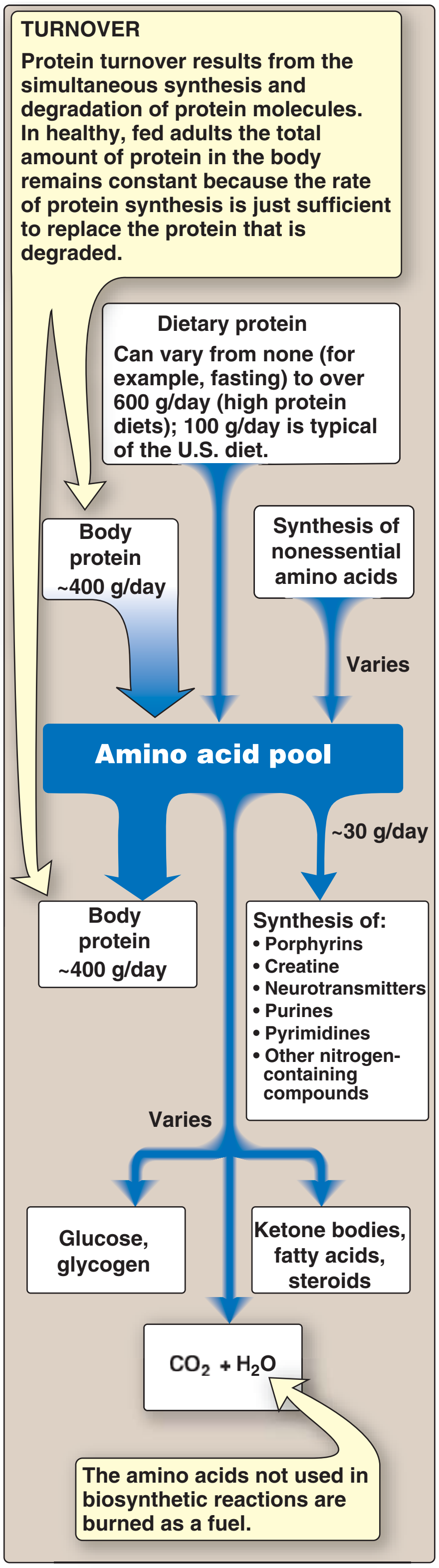

TURNOVER
Protein turnover results from the simultaneous synthesis and degradation of protein molecules. In healthy, fed adults the total amount of protein in the body remains constant because the rate of protein synthesis is just sufficient to replace the protein that is degraded.
Dietary protein
Can vary from none (for example, fasting) to over 600 g/day (high protein diets); 100 g/day is typical of the U.S. diet.
Body protein ~400 g/day
Synthesis of nonessential amino acids
Varies
Amino acid pool
~30 g/day
Body protein ~400 g/day
Synthesis of:
• Porphyrins
• Creatine
• Neurotransmitters
• Purines
• Pyrimidines
• Other nitrogen-containing compounds
Varies
Glucose, glycogen
Ketone bodies, fatty acids, steroids
CO2 + H2O
The amino acids not used in biosynthetic reactions are burned as a fuel.

Figure 19.2
Sources and fates of amino acids.

A. Amino acid pool

Free amino acids are present throughout the body, for example, in cells, blood, and the extracellular fluids. For the purpose of this discussion, envision all these amino acids as if they belonged to a single entity, called the amino acid pool. This pool is supplied by three sources: 1) amino acids provided by the degradation of body proteins, 2) amino acids derived from dietary protein, and 3) synthesis of nonessential amino acids from simple intermediates of metabolism (Figure 19.2). Conversely, the amino pool is depleted by three routes: 1) synthesis of body protein, 2) amino acids consumed as precursors of essential nitrogen-containing small molecules, and 3) conversion of amino acids to glucose, glycogen, fatty acids, ketone bodies, or CO_2 + H_2O (Figure 19.2). Although the amino acid pool is small (comprised of about 90–100 g of amino acids) in comparison with the amount of protein in the body (about 12 kg in a 70-kg man), it is conceptually at the center of whole-body nitrogen metabolism.

> In healthy, well-fed individuals, the input to the amino acid pool is balanced by the output, that is, the amount of amino acids contained in the pool is constant. The amino acid pool is said to be in a steady state, and the individual is said to be in nitrogen balance.

B. Protein turnover

Most proteins in the body are constantly being synthesized and then degraded, permitting the removal of abnormal or unneeded proteins. For many proteins, regulation of synthesis determines the concentration of protein in the cell, with protein degradation assuming a minor role. For other proteins, the rate of synthesis is constitutive, that is, relatively constant, and cellular levels of the protein are controlled by selective degradation.

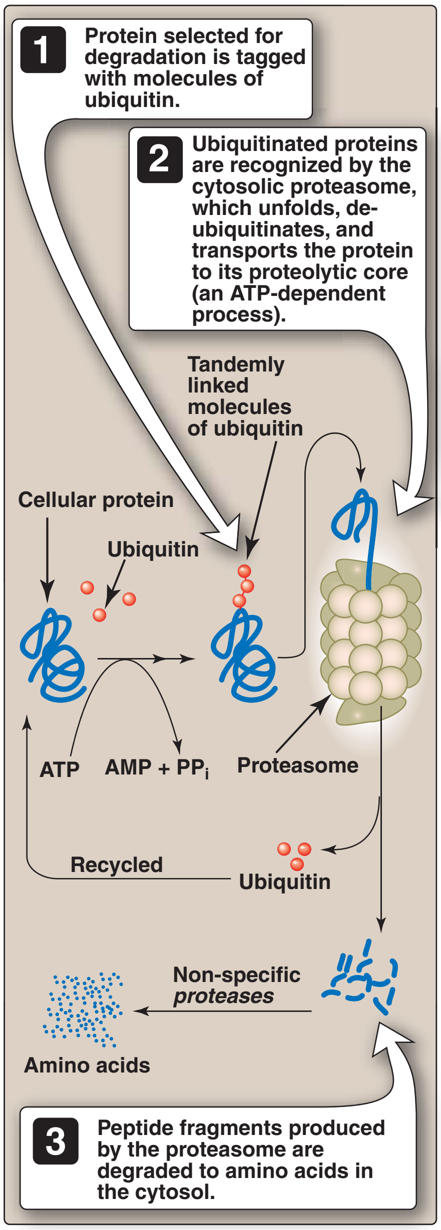
1. **Rate of turnover:** In healthy adults, the total amount of protein in the body remains constant, because the rate of protein synthesis is just sufficient to replace the protein that is degraded. This process, called protein turnover, leads to the hydrolysis and resynthesis of 300–400 g of body protein each day. The rate of protein turnover varies widely for individual proteins. Short-lived proteins (for example, many regulatory proteins and misfolded proteins) are rapidly degraded, having half-lives measured in minutes or hours. Long-lived proteins, with half-lives of days to weeks, constitute the majority of proteins in the cell. Structural proteins, such as collagen, are metabolically stable, and have half-lives measured in months or years.

2. **Protein degradation:** There are two major enzyme systems responsible for degrading damaged or unneeded proteins: the ATP-dependent ubiquitin-proteasome system of the cytosol, and the ATP-independent degradative enzyme system of the lyso-

somes. Proteasomes degrade mainly endogenous proteins, that is, proteins that were synthesized within the cell. Lysosomal enzymes (*acid hydrolases*, see p. 162) degrade primarily extracellular proteins, such as plasma proteins that are taken into the cell by endocytosis, and cell-surface membrane proteins that are used in receptor-mediated endocytosis.

a. **Ubiquitin-proteasome proteolytic pathway:** Proteins selected for degradation by the ubiquitin-proteasome system are first covalently attached to ubiquitin, a small, globular, non-enzymic protein. Ubiquitination of the target substrate occurs through linkage of the α-carboxyl group of the C-terminal glycine of ubiquitin to the ε-amino group of a lysine on the protein substrate by a three-step, enzyme-catalyzed, ATP-dependent process. The consecutive addition of ubiquitin moieties generates a polyubiquitin chain. Proteins tagged with ubiquitin are then recognized by a large, barrel-shaped, macromolecular, proteolytic complex called a proteasome, which functions like a garbage disposal (Figure 19.3). The proteasome unfolds, deubiquitinates, and cuts the target protein into fragments that are then further degraded to amino acids, which enter the amino acid pool. [Note: The ubiquitins are recycled.] It is noteworthy that the selective degradation of proteins by the ubiquitin-proteosome complex (unlike simple hydrolysis by proteolytic enzymes) requires energy in the form of ATP.

b. **Chemical signals for protein degradation:** Because proteins have different half-lives, it is clear that protein degradation cannot be random, but rather is influenced by some structural aspect of the protein. For example, some proteins that have been chemically altered by oxidation or tagged with ubiquitin are preferentially degraded. The half-life of a protein is influenced by the nature of the N-terminal residue. For example, proteins that have serine as the N-terminal amino acid are long-lived, with a half-life of more than 20 hours. In contrast, proteins with aspartate as the N-terminal amino acid have a half-life of only 3 minutes. Additionally, proteins rich in sequences containing proline, glutamate, serine, and threonine (called PEST sequences after the one-letter designations for these amino acids) are rapidly degraded and, therefore, exhibit short intracellular half-lives.



1 Protein selected for degradation is tagged with molecules of ubiquitin.

2 Ubiquitinated proteins are recognized by the cytosolic proteasome, which unfolds, deubiquitinates, and transports the protein to its proteolytic core (an ATP-dependent process).

3 Peptide fragments produced by the proteasome are degraded to amino acids in the cytosol.

Figure 19.3
The ubiquitin-proteasome degradation pathway of proteins.

III. DIGESTION OF DIETARY PROTEINS

Most of the nitrogen in the diet is consumed in the form of protein, typically amounting to 70–100 g/day in the American diet (see Figure 19.2). Proteins are generally too large to be absorbed by the intestine. [Note: An example of an exception to this rule is that newborns can take up maternal antibodies in breast milk.] They must, therefore, be hydrolyzed to yield di- and tripeptides as well as individual amino acids, which can be absorbed. Proteolytic enzymes responsible for degrading proteins are produced by three different organs: the stomach, the pancreas, and the small intestine (Figure 19.4).

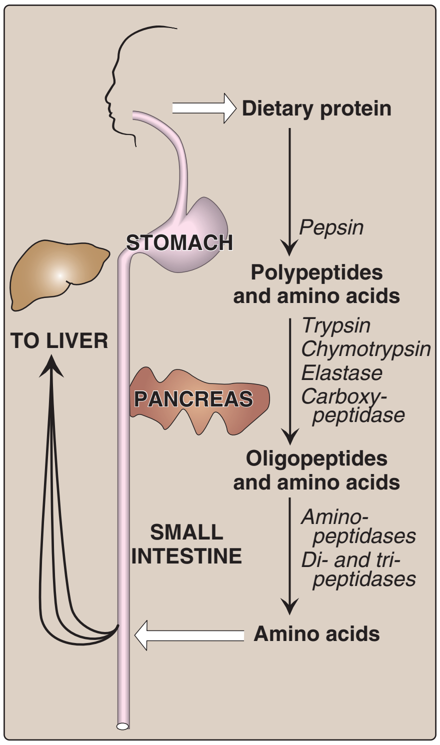


Figure 19.4

Digestion of dietary proteins by the proteolytic enzymes of the gastrointestinal tract.

A. Digestion of proteins by gastric secretion

The digestion of proteins begins in the stomach, which secretes gastric juice—a unique solution containing hydrochloric acid and the proenzyme, pepsinogen.

1. **Hydrochloric acid:** Stomach acid is too dilute (pH 2–3) to hydrolyze proteins. The acid, secreted by the parietal cells, functions instead to kill some bacteria and to denature proteins, thus making them more susceptible to subsequent hydrolysis by *proteases*.

2. **Pepsin:** This acid-stable *endopeptidase* is secreted by the chief cells of the stomach as an inactive zymogen (or proenzyme), pepsinogen. In general, zymogens contain extra amino acids in their sequences that prevent them from being catalytically active. [Note: Removal of these amino acids permits the proper folding required for an active enzyme.] Pepsinogen is activated to *pepsin*, either by HCl, or autocatalytically by other *pepsin* molecules that have already been activated. *Pepsin* releases peptides and a few free amino acids from dietary proteins.

B. Digestion of proteins by pancreatic enzymes

On entering the small intestine, large polypeptides produced in the stomach by the action of *pepsin* are further cleaved to oligopeptides and amino acids by a group of pancreatic *proteases*.

1. **Specificity:** Each of these enzymes has a different specificity for the amino acid R-groups adjacent to the susceptible peptide bond (Figure 19.5). For example, *trypsin* cleaves only when the carbonyl group of the peptide bond is contributed by arginine or lysine. These enzymes, like *pepsin* described above, are synthesized and secreted as inactive zymogens.

2. **Release of zymogens:** The release and activation of the pancreatic zymogens is mediated by the secretion of cholecystokinin and secretin, two polypeptide hormones of the digestive tract (see p. 176).

3. **Activation of zymogens:** *Enteropeptidase* (formerly called *enterokinase*)—an enzyme synthesized by and present on the luminal surface of intestinal mucosal cells of the brush border membrane—converts the pancreatic zymogen trypsinogen to *trypsin* by removal of a hexapeptide from the N-terminus of trypsinogen. *Trypsin* subsequently converts other trypsinogen molecules to *trypsin* by cleaving a limited number of specific peptide bonds in the zymogen. *Enteropeptidase* thus unleashes a cascade of proteolytic activity, because *trypsin* is the common activator of all the pancreatic zymogens (see Figure 19.5).

4. **Abnormalities in protein digestion:** In individuals with a deficiency in pancreatic secretion (for example, due to chronic pancreatitis, cystic fibrosis, or surgical removal of the pancreas), the digestion and absorption of fat and protein are incomplete. This results in the abnormal appearance of lipids (called steatorrhea, see p. 177) and undigested protein in the feces.

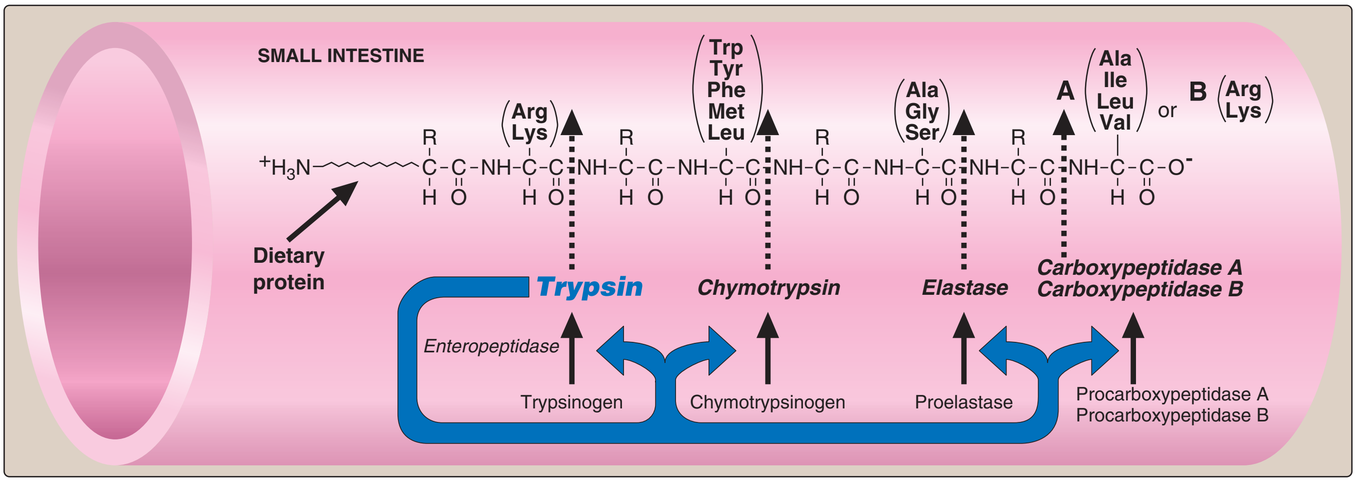

SMALL INTESTINE
Arg
Lys
Trp
Tyr
Phe
Met
Leu
Ala
Gly
Ser
A
Ala
Ile
Leu
Val
or
B
Arg
Lys
R
^+H_3N
C-C-NH-C-C-NH-C-C-NH-C-C-NH-C-C-NH-C-C-NH-C-C-O$^-$
H O
Dietary protein
Trypsin
Chymotrypsin
Elastase
Carboxypeptidase A
Carboxypeptidase B
Enteropeptidase
Trypsinogen
Chymotrypsinogen
Proelastase
Procarboxypeptidase A
Procarboxypeptidase B

Figure 19.5
Cleavage of dietary protein by *proteases* from the pancreas. The peptide bonds susceptible to hydrolysis are shown for each of the five major pancreatic *proteases*. [Note:The first three are serine *endopeptidases*, whereas the last two are *exopeptidases*.]

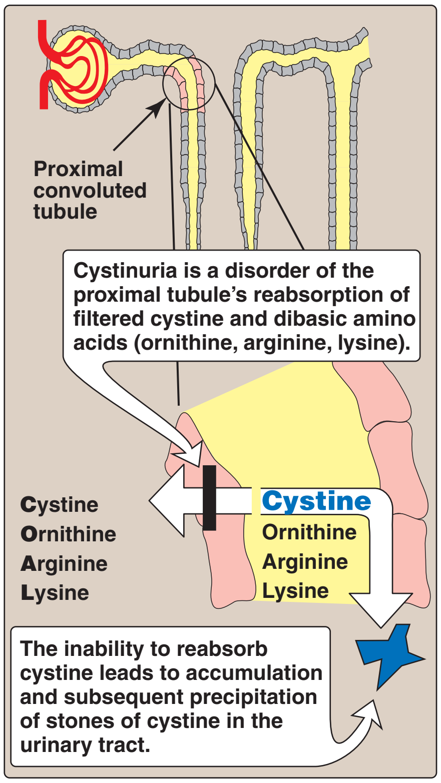
> Celiac disease (celiac sprue) is a disease of malabsorption resulting from immune-mediated damage to the small intestine in response to ingestion of gluten (or gliadin produced from gluten), a protein found in wheat, barley and rye.

C. Digestion of oligopeptides by enzymes of the small intestine

The luminal surface of the intestine contains *aminopeptidase*—an *exopeptidase* that repeatedly cleaves the N-terminal residue from oligopeptides to produce even smaller peptides and free amino acids.

D. Absorption of amino acids and small peptides

Free amino acids are taken into the enterocytes by a Na^+-linked secondary transport system of the apical membrane. Di- and tripeptides, however, are taken up by a H^+-linked transport system. The peptides are hydrolyzed in the cytosol to amino acids that are released into the portal system by facilitated diffusion. Thus, only free amino acids are found in the portal vein after a meal containing protein. These amino acids are either metabolized by the liver or released into the general circulation. [Note: Branched-chain amino acids are important examples of amino acids that are not metabolized by the liver, but instead are sent from the liver primarily to muscle via the blood.]


Proximal convoluted tubule
Cystine
Ornithine
Arginine
Lysine
Cystine
Ornithine
Arginine
Lysine

Cystinuria is a disorder of the proximal tubule's reabsorption of filtered cystine and dibasic amino acids (ornithine, arginine, lysine).

The inability to reabsorb cystine leads to accumulation and subsequent precipitation of stones of cystine in the urinary tract.

Figure 19.6
Genetic defect seen in cystinuria. [Note: Cystinura is distinct from cystinosis, a rare defect in the transport of cystine out of lysosomes that results in the formation of cystine crystals within the lysosome, and tissue damage.]

IV. TRANSPORT OF AMINO ACIDS INTO CELLS

The concentration of free amino acids in the extracellular fluids is significantly lower than that within the cells of the body. This concentration gradient is maintained because active transport systems, driven by the hydrolysis of ATP, are required for movement of amino acids from the extracellular space into cells. At least seven different transport systems are known that have overlapping specificities for different amino acids. The small intestine and the proximal tubule of the kidney have common transport systems for amino acid uptake; therefore, a defect in any one of these systems results in an inability to absorb particular amino acids into the gut and into the kidney tubules. For example, one system is responsible for the uptake of cystine and the dibasic amino acids, ornithine, arginine, and lysine (represented as "COAL"). In the inherited disorder cystinuria, this carrier system is defective, and all four amino acids appear in the urine (Figure 19.6). Cystinuria occurs at a frequency of 1 in 7,000 individuals, making it one of the most common inherited diseases, and the most common genetic error of amino acid transport. The disease expresses itself clinically by the precipitation of cystine to form kidney stones (calculi), which can block the urinary tract. Oral hydration is an important part of treatment for this disorder. [Note: Defects in the transport of tryptophan (and other neutral amino acids) can result in Hartnup disorder and pellagra-like (see p. 380) dermatologic and neurologic symptoms.]

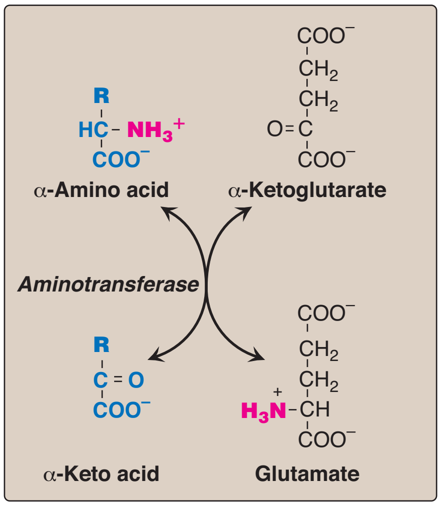


Figure 19.7
Aminotransferase reaction using α-ketoglutarate as the amino-group acceptor.

V. REMOVAL OF NITROGEN FROM AMINO ACIDS

The presence of the α-amino group keeps amino acids safely locked away from oxidative breakdown. Removing the α-amino group is essential for producing energy from any amino acid, and is an obligatory step in the catabolism of all amino acids. Once removed, this nitrogen can be incorporated into other compounds or excreted, with the carbon skeletons being metabolized. This section describes transamination and oxidative deamination—reactions that ultimately provide ammonia and aspartate, the two sources of urea nitrogen (see p. 253).

A. Transamination: the funneling of amino groups to glutamate

The first step in the catabolism of most amino acids is the transfer of their α-amino group to α-ketoglutarate (Figure 19.7). The products are an α-keto acid (derived from the original amino acid) and glutamate. α-Ketoglutarate plays a pivotal role in amino acid metabolism by accepting the amino groups from most amino acids, thus becoming glutamate. Glutamate produced by transamination can be oxidatively deaminated (see below), or used as an amino group donor in the synthesis of nonessential amino acids. This transfer of amino groups from one carbon skeleton to another is catalyzed by a family of enzymes called *aminotransferases* (formerly called *transaminases*). These enzymes are found in the cytosol and mitochondria of cells throughout the body—especially those of the liver, kidney, intestine, and muscle. All amino acids, with the exception of lysine and threonine, participate in transamination at some point in their catabolism. [Note: These two amino acids lose their α-amino groups by deamination (see pp. 265–266).]

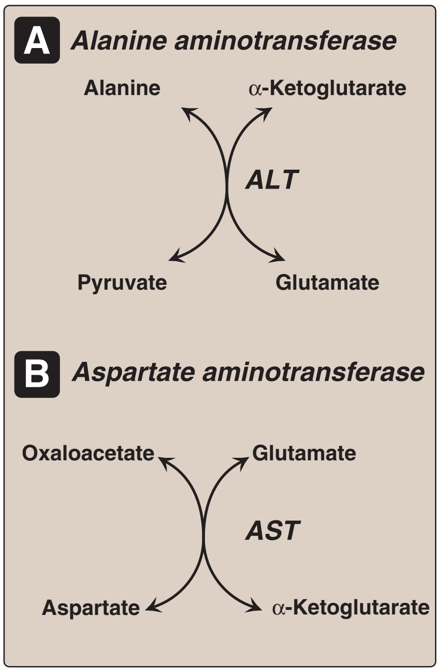


Figure 19.8
Reactions catalyzed during amino acid catabolism. A. *Alanine aminotransferase* (*ALT*). B. *Aspartate aminotransferase* (*AST*).

1. **Substrate specificity of aminotransferases:** Each *aminotransferase* is specific for one or, at most, a few amino group donors. *Aminotransferases* are named after the specific amino group donor, because the acceptor of the amino group is almost always α-ketoglutarate. The two most important *aminotransferase* reactions are catalyzed by *alanine aminotransferase* (*ALT*) *and aspartate aminotransferase* (*AST*), Figure 19.8).

a. **Alanine aminotransferase (ALT)**: *ALT* is present in many tissues. The enzyme catalyzes the transfer of the amino group of alanine to α-ketoglutarate, resulting in the formation of pyruvate and glutamate. The reaction is readily reversible. However, during amino acid catabolism, this enzyme (like most *aminotransferases*) functions in the direction of glutamate synthesis. Thus, glutamate, in effect, acts as a "collector" of nitrogen from alanine.

b. **Aspartate aminotransferase (AST)**: *AST* is an exception to the rule that *aminotransferases* funnel amino groups to form glutamate. During amino acid catabolism, *AST* transfers amino groups from glutamate to oxaloacetate, forming aspartate, which is used as a source of nitrogen in the urea cycle (see p. 253). [Note: The *AST* reaction is also reversible.]

2. **Mechanism of action of aminotransferases:** All *aminotransferases* require the coenzyme pyridoxal phosphate (a derivative of vitamin B_6, see p. 378), which is covalently linked to the ε-amino group of a specific lysine residue at the active site of the enzyme. *Aminotransferases* act by transferring the amino group of an amino acid to the pyridoxal part of the coenzyme to generate pyridoxamine phosphate. The pyridoxamine form of the coenzyme then reacts with an α-keto acid to form an amino acid, at the same time regenerating the original aldehyde form of the coenzyme. Figure 19.9 shows these two component reactions for the reaction catalyzed by *AST*.

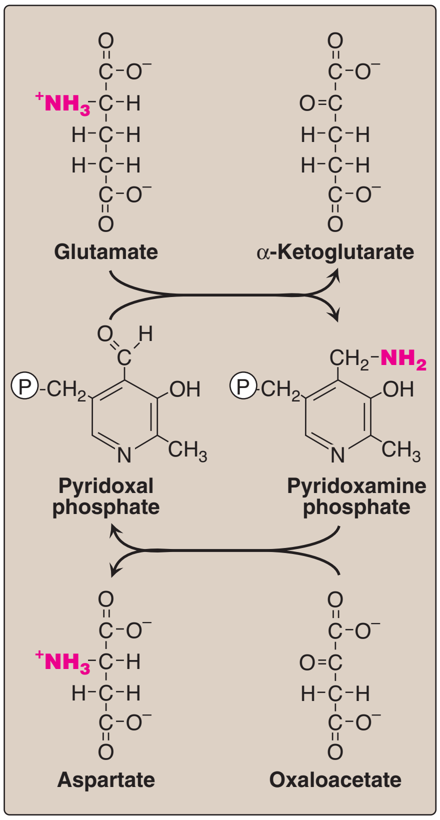


Figure 19.9
Cyclic interconversion of pyridoxal phosphate and pyridoxamine phosphate during the *aspartate aminotransferase* reaction. [Note: Ⓟ = phosphate group.]

3. **Equilibrium of transamination reactions:** For most transamination reactions, the equilibrium constant is near one. This allows the reaction to function in both amino acid degradation through removal of α-amino groups (for example, after consumption of a protein-rich meal) and biosynthesis through addition of amino groups to the carbon skeletons of α-keto acids (for example, when the supply of amino acids from the diet is not adequate to meet the synthetic needs of cells).

4. **Diagnostic value of plasma aminotransferases:** *Aminotransferases* are normally intracellular enzymes, with the low levels found in the plasma representing the release of cellular contents during normal cell turnover. The presence of elevated plasma levels of *aminotransferases* indicates damage to cells rich in these enzymes. For example, physical trauma or a disease process can cause cell lysis, resulting in release of intracellular enzymes into the blood. Two *aminotransferases*—*AST* and *ALT*—are of particular diagnostic value when they are found in the plasma.

a. **Liver disease:** Plasma *AST* and *ALT* are elevated in nearly all liver diseases, but are particularly high in conditions that cause extensive cell necrosis, such as severe viral hepatitis, toxic injury, and prolonged circulatory collapse. *ALT* is more specific than *AST* for liver disease, but the latter is more sensitive because the liver contains larger amounts of *AST*. Serial enzyme measurements are often useful in determining the course of liver damage. Figure 19.10 shows the early release of *ALT* into the serum, following ingestion of a liver

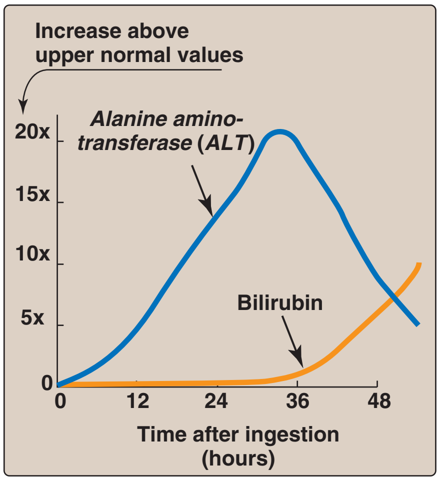


Figure 19.10
Pattern of serum *alanine aminotransferase (ALT)* and bilirubin in the plasma, following poisoning with the toxic mushroom Amanita phalloides.

toxin. [Note: Elevated serum bilirubin results from hepatocellular damage that decreases the hepatic conjugation and excretion of bilirubin (see p. 284).]

b. Nonhepatic disease: *Aminotransferases* may be elevated in nonhepatic disease, such as myocardial infarction and muscle disorders. However, these disorders can usually be distinguished clinically from liver disease.

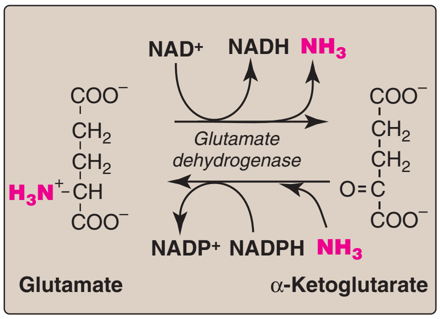

NAD+
NADH
NH3
COO⁻
CH2
CH2
H3N+-CH
COO⁻
Glutamate dehydrogenase
COO⁻
CH2
CH2
O=C
COO⁻
NADP+
NADPH
NH3
Glutamate
α-Ketoglutarate

Figure 19.11
Oxidative deamination by *glutamate dehydrogenase*.

B. Glutamate dehydrogenase: the oxidative deamination of amino acids

In contrast to transamination reactions that transfer amino groups, oxidative deamination by *glutamate dehydrogenase* results in the liberation of the amino group as free ammonia (NH_3) (Figure 19.11). These reactions occur primarily in the liver and kidney. They provide α-keto acids that can enter the central pathway of energy metabolism, and ammonia, which is a source of nitrogen in urea synthesis.

1. **Glutamate dehydrogenase:** As described above, the amino groups of most amino acids are ultimately funneled to glutamate by means of transamination with α-ketoglutarate. Glutamate is unique in that it is the only amino acid that undergoes rapid oxidative deamination—a reaction catalyzed by *glutamate dehydrogenase* (see Figure 19.11). Therefore, the sequential action of transamination (resulting in the collection of amino groups from most amino acids onto α-ketoglutarate to produce glutamate) and the oxidative deamination of that glutamate (regenerating α-ketoglutarate) provide a pathway whereby the amino groups of most amino acids can be released as ammonia.

   a. **Coenzymes:** *Glutamate dehydrogenase* is unusual in that it can use either NAD^+ or $NADP^+$ as a coenzyme (see Figure 19.11). NAD^+ is used primarily in oxidative deamination (the simultaneous loss of ammonia coupled with the oxidation of the carbon skeleton (Figure 19.12A), and NADPH is used in reductive amination (the simultaneous gain of ammonia coupled with the reduction of the carbon skeleton, Figure 19.12B).

   b. **Direction of reactions:** The direction of the reaction depends on the relative concentrations of glutamate, α-ketoglutarate, and ammonia, and the ratio of oxidized to reduced coenzymes. For example, after ingestion of a meal containing protein, glutamate levels in the liver are elevated, and the reaction proceeds in the direction of amino acid degradation and the formation of ammonia (see Figure 19.12A). [Note: the reaction can also be used to synthesize amino acids from the corresponding α-keto acids (see Figure 19.12B).]

   c. **Allosteric regulators:** Guanosine triphosphate (GTP) is an allosteric inhibitor of *glutamate dehydrogenase*, whereas adenosine diphosphate (ADP) is an activator. Thus, when energy levels are low in the cell, amino acid degradation by *glutamate dehydrogenase* is high, facilitating energy production from the carbon skeletons derived from amino acids.

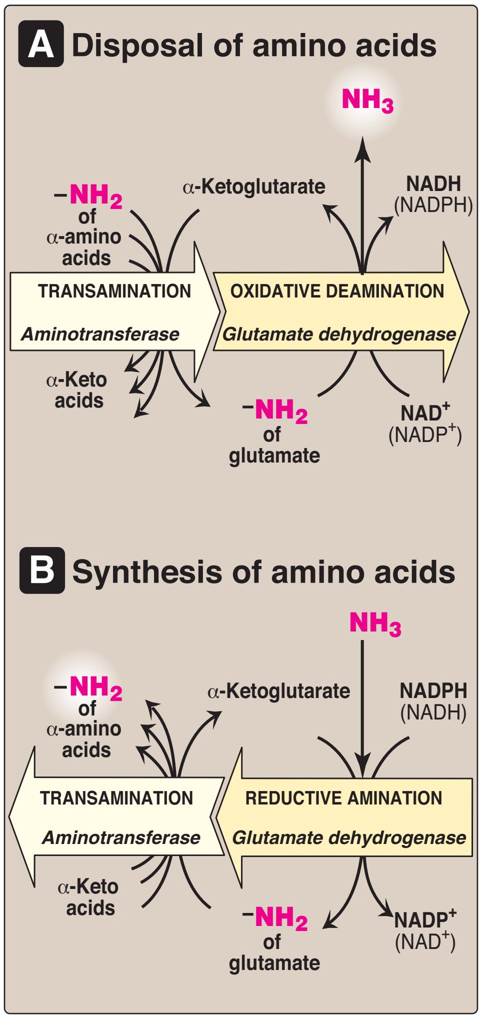

A Disposal of amino acids
NH3
–NH2 of α-amino acids
α-Ketoglutarate
NADH (NADPH)
TRANSAMINATION
Aminotransferase
OXIDATIVE DEAMINATION
Glutamate dehydrogenase
α-Keto acids
–NH2 of glutamate
NAD+ (NADP+)
B Synthesis of amino acids
NH3
–NH2 of α-amino acids
α-Ketoglutarate
NADPH (NADH)
TRANSAMINATION
Aminotransferase
REDUCTIVE AMINATION
Glutamate dehydrogenase
α-Keto acids
–NH2 of glutamate
NADP+ (NAD+)

Figure 19.12
Combined actions of *aminotransferase* and *glutamate dehydrogenase* reactions.

2. **D-Amino acid oxidase:** D-Amino acids (see p. 5) are found in plants and in the cell walls of microorganisms, but are not used in the synthesis of mammalian proteins. D-Amino acids are, however, present in the diet, and are efficiently metabolized by the kidney and liver. *D-Amino acid oxidase* (*DAO*) is an FAD-dependent peroxisomal enzyme that catalyzes the oxidative deamination of these amino acid isomers, producing α-keto acids, ammonia, and hydrogen peroxide. The α-keto acids can enter the general pathways of amino acid metabolism, and be reaminated to L-isomers, or catabolized for energy. [Note: *DAO* degrades D-serine, the isomeric form of serine that modulates NMDA-type glutamate receptors. Increased *DAO* activity has been linked to increased susceptibility to schizophrenia.] *L-amino acid oxidases* are components of several snake venoms.

C. Transport of ammonia to the liver

Two mechanisms are available in humans for the transport of ammonia from the peripheral tissues to the liver for its ultimate conversion to urea. The first, found in most tissues, uses *glutamine synthetase* to combine ammonia (NH_3) with glutamate to form glutamine—a nontoxic transport form of ammonia (Figure 19.13). The glutamine is transported in the blood to the liver where it is cleaved by *glutaminase* to produce glutamate and free ammonia (see p. 256). The second transport mechanism, used primarily by muscle, involves transamination of pyruvate (the end product of aerobic glycolysis) to form alanine (see Figure 19.8). Alanine is transported by the blood to the liver, where it is converted to pyruvate, again by transamination. In the liver, the pathway of gluconeogenesis can use the pyruvate to synthesize glucose, which can enter the blood and be used by muscle—a pathway called the glucose-alanine cycle.

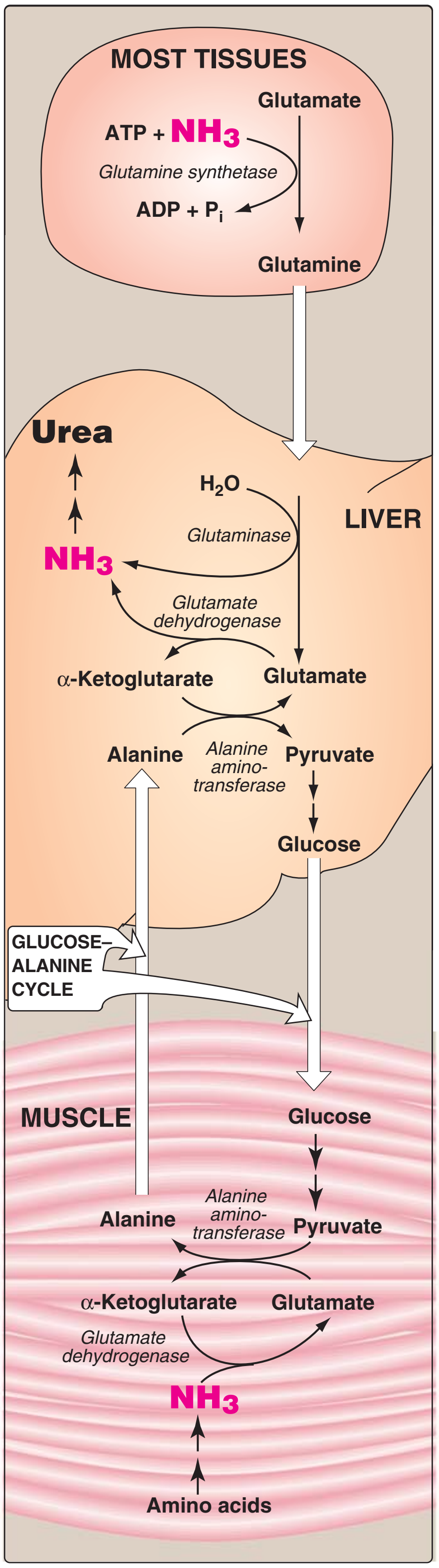

MOST TISSUES
Glutamate
ATP + NH3
Glutamine synthetase
ADP + Pi
Glutamine
Urea
H2O
Glutaminase
LIVER
NH3
Glutamate dehydrogenase
α-Ketoglutarate
Glutamate
Alanine
Alanine amino-transferase
Pyruvate
Glucose
GLUCOSE–ALANINE CYCLE
MUSCLE
Glucose
Alanine
Alanine amino-transferase
Pyruvate
α-Ketoglutarate
Glutamate
Glutamate dehydrogenase
NH3
Amino acids

Figure 19.13
Transport of ammonia from peripheral tissues to the liver.

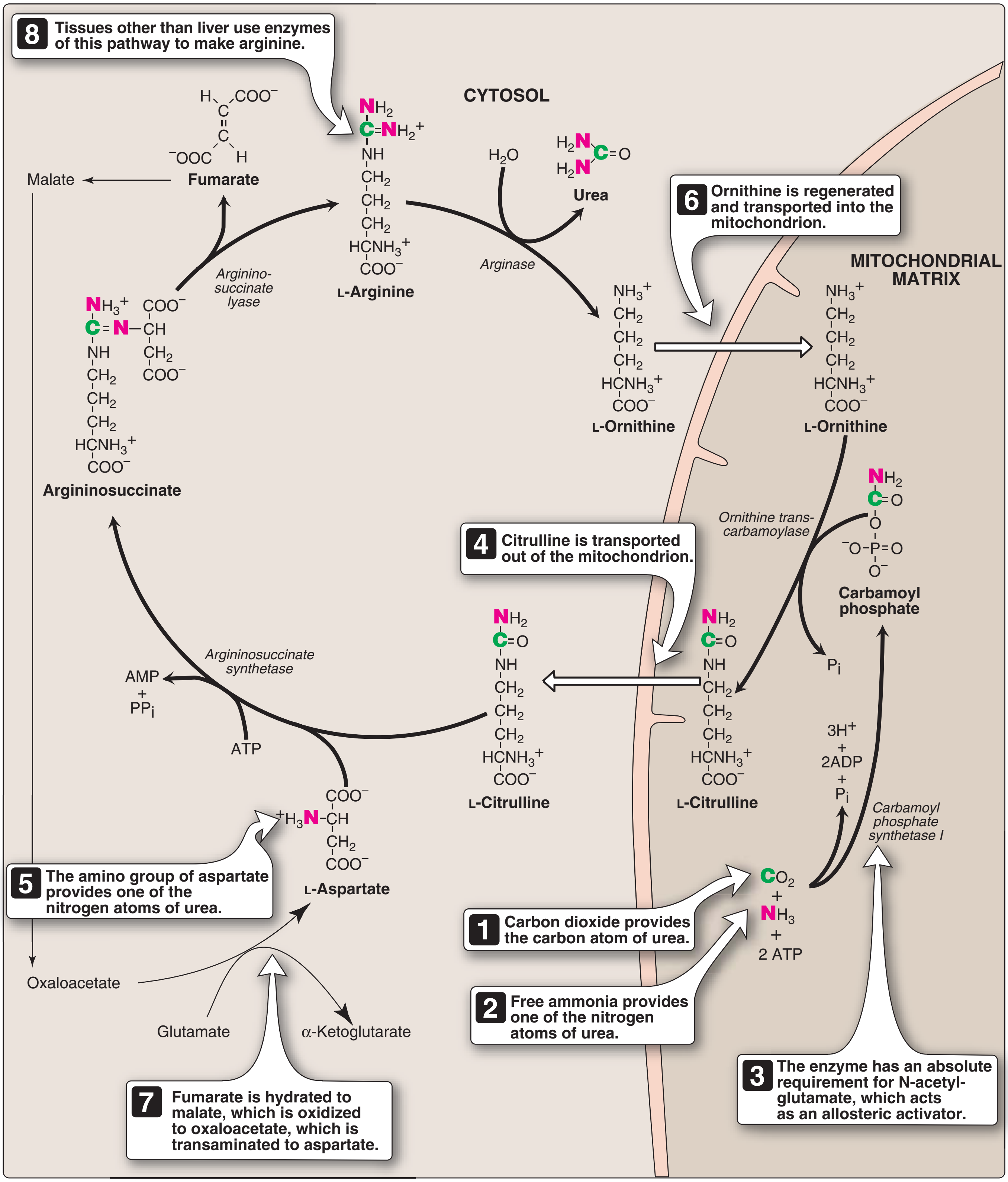
VI. UREA CYCLE

Urea is the major disposal form of amino groups derived from amino acids, and accounts for about 90% of the nitrogen-containing components of urine. One nitrogen of the urea molecule is supplied by free ammonia, and the other nitrogen by aspartate. [Note: Glutamate is the immediate precursor of both ammonia (through oxidative deamination by *glutamate dehydrogenase*) and aspartate nitrogen (through transamination of oxaloacetate by *AST*).] The carbon and oxygen of urea are derived from CO_2. Urea is produced by the liver, and then is transported in the blood to the kidneys for excretion in the urine.

A. Reactions of the cycle

The first two reactions leading to the synthesis of urea occur in the mitochondria, whereas the remaining cycle enzymes are located in the cytosol (Figure 19.14). [Note: Gluconeogenesis (see p. 117) and heme synthesis (see p. 278) also involve both the mitochondrial matrix and the cytosol.]

1. **Formation of carbamoyl phosphate:** Formation of carbamoyl phosphate by *carbamoyl phosphate synthetase I* is driven by cleavage of two molecules of ATP. Ammonia incorporated into carbamoyl phosphate is provided primarily by the oxidative deamina-


CYTOSOL
MITOCHONDRIAL MATRIX
Fumarate
Malate
L-Arginine
H_2O
Urea
Arginase
Argininosuccinate lyase
L-Ornithine
L-Ornithine
Argininosuccinate
Ornithine transcarbamoylase
Carbamoyl phosphate
P_i
L-Citrulline
L-Citrulline
Argininosuccinate synthetase
AMP + PP_i
ATP
L-Aspartate
$3H^+$ + 2ADP + P_i
Carbamoyl phosphate synthetase I
CO_2 + NH_3 + 2 ATP
Oxaloacetate
Glutamate
α-Ketoglutarate

8 Tissues other than liver use enzymes of this pathway to make arginine.

6 Ornithine is regenerated and transported into the mitochondrion.

4 Citrulline is transported out of the mitochondrion.

5 The amino group of aspartate provides one of the nitrogen atoms of urea.

1 Carbon dioxide provides the carbon atom of urea.

2 Free ammonia provides one of the nitrogen atoms of urea.

3 The enzyme has an absolute requirement for N-acetylglutamate, which acts as an allosteric activator.

7 Fumarate is hydrated to malate, which is oxidized to oxaloacetate, which is transaminated to aspartate.

Figure 19.14
Reactions of the urea cycle.

tion of glutamate by mitochondrial *glutamate dehydrogenase* (see Figure 19.11). Ultimately, the nitrogen atom derived from this ammonia becomes one of the nitrogens of urea. *Carbamoyl phosphate synthetase I* requires N-acetylglutamate as a positive allosteric activator (see Figure 19.14). [Note: *Carbamoyl phosphate synthetase II* participates in the biosynthesis of pyrimidines (see p. 302). It does not require N-acetylglutamate, uses glutamine as the nitrogen source, and occurs in the cytosol.]

2. **Formation of citrulline:** The carbamoyl portion of carbamoyl phosphate is transferred to ornithine by *ornithine transcarbamoylase* (*OTC*) as the high-energy phosphate is released as P_i. The reaction product, citrulline, is transported to the cytosol. [Note: Ornithine and citrulline are basic amino acids that participate in the urea cycle, moving across the inner mitochondrial membrane via a cotransporter. They are not incorporated into cellular proteins because there are no codons for these amino acids (see p. 432).] Ornithine is regenerated with each turn of the urea cycle, much in the same way that oxaloacetate is regenerated by the reactions of the citric acid cycle (see p. 109).

3. **Synthesis of argininosuccinate:** *Argininosuccinate synthetase* combines citrulline with aspartate to form argininosuccinate. The α-amino group of aspartate provides the second nitrogen that is ultimately incorporated into urea. The formation of argininosuccinate is driven by the cleavage of ATP to adenosine monophosphate (AMP) and pyrophosphate. This is the third and final molecule of ATP consumed in the formation of urea.

4. **Cleavage of argininosuccinate:** Argininosuccinate is cleaved by *argininosuccinate lyase* to yield arginine and fumarate. The arginine formed by this reaction serves as the immediate precursor of urea. Fumarate produced in the urea cycle is hydrated to malate, providing a link with several metabolic pathways. For example, the malate can be transported into the mitochondria via the malate shuttle, reenter the tricarboxylic acid cycle, and get oxidized to oxaloacetate (OAA), which can be used for gluconeogenesis (see p. 120). Alternatively, the OAA can be converted to aspartate via transamination (see Figure 19.8), and can enter the urea cycle (see Figure 19.14).

5. **Cleavage of arginine to ornithine and urea:** *Arginase* cleaves arginine to ornithine and urea, and occurs almost exclusively in the liver. Thus, whereas other tissues, such as the kidney, can synthesize arginine by these reactions, only the liver can cleave arginine and, thereby, synthesize urea.

6. **Fate of urea:** Urea diffuses from the liver, and is transported in the blood to the kidneys, where it is filtered and excreted in the urine. A portion of the urea diffuses from the blood into the intestine, and is cleaved to CO_2 and NH_3 by bacterial *urease*. This ammonia is partly lost in the feces, and is partly reabsorbed into the blood. In patients with kidney failure, plasma urea levels are elevated, promoting a greater transfer of urea from blood into the gut. The intestinal action of *urease* on this urea becomes a clinically important source of ammonia, contributing to the hyperammonemia often seen in these patients. Oral administration of neomycin reduces the number of intestinal bacteria responsible for this NH_3 production.

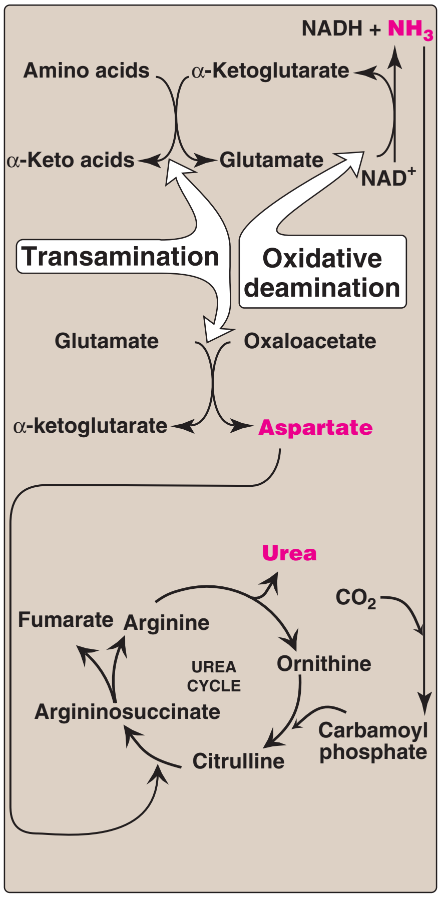


Figure 19.15
Flow of nitrogen from amino acids to urea. Amino groups for urea synthesis are collected in the form of ammonia and aspartate.

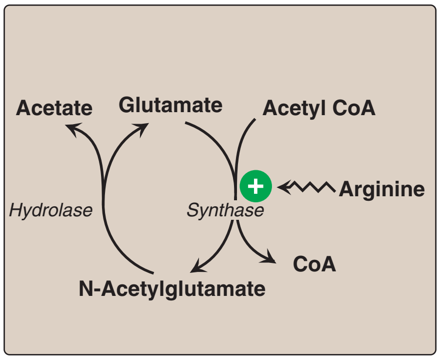


Figure 19.16
Formation and degradation of N-acetylglutamate, an allosteric activator of *carbamoyl phosphate synthetase I*.

B. Overall stoichiometry of the urea cycle

$$\text{Aspartate} + NH_3 + CO_2 + 3\,\text{ATP} + H_2O \longrightarrow$$

$$\text{urea} + \text{fumarate} + 2\,\text{ADP} + \text{AMP} + 2\,P_i + PP_i$$

Four high-energy phosphate bonds are consumed in the synthesis of each molecule of urea; therefore, the synthesis of urea is irreversible, with a large, negative ΔG (see p. 70). [Note: The ATP is replenished by oxidative phosphorylation.] One nitrogen of the urea molecule is supplied by free NH_3, and the other nitrogen by aspartate. Glutamate is the immediate precursor of both ammonia (through oxidative deamination by *glutamate dehydrogenase*) and aspartate nitrogen (through transamination of oxaloacetate by *AST*). In effect, both nitrogen atoms of urea arise from glutamate, which, in turn, gathers nitrogen from other amino acids (Figure 19.15).

C. Regulation of the urea cycle

N-Acetylglutamate is an essential activator for *carbamoyl phosphate synthetase I*—the rate-limiting step in the urea cycle (see Figure 19.14). N-Acetylglutamate is synthesized from acetyl coenzyme A and glutamate by *N-acetylglutamate synthase* (Figure 19.16), in a reaction for which arginine is an activator. Therefore, the intrahepatic concentration of N-acetylglutamate increases after ingestion of a protein-rich meal, which provides both a substrate (glutamate) and the regulator of N-acetylglutamate synthesis. This leads to an increased rate of urea synthesis.

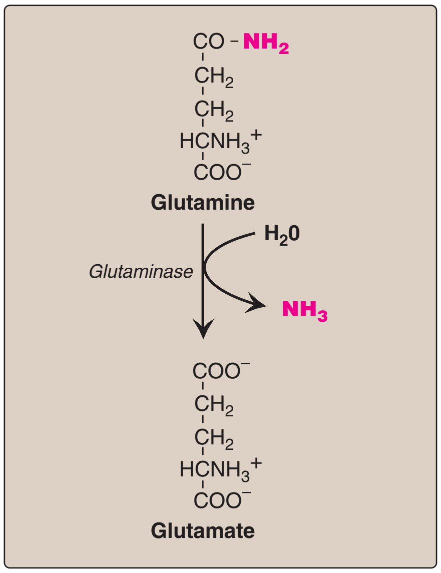


Figure 19.17
Hydrolysis of glutamine to form ammonia.

VII. METABOLISM OF AMMONIA

Ammonia is produced by all tissues during the metabolism of a variety of compounds, and it is disposed of primarily by formation of urea in the liver. However, the level of ammonia in the blood must be kept very low, because even slightly elevated concentrations (hyperammonemia) are toxic to the central nervous system (CNS). There must, therefore, be a metabolic mechanism by which nitrogen is moved from peripheral tissues to the liver for ultimate disposal as urea, while at the same time maintaining low levels of circulating ammonia.

A. Sources of ammonia

Amino acids are quantitatively the most important source of ammonia, because most Western diets are high in protein and provide excess amino acids, which travel to the liver and undergo transdeamination—the linking of *aminotransferase* and *glutamate dehydrogenase* reactions—producing ammonia. However, substantial amounts of ammonia can be obtained from other sources.

1. **From glutamine:** The kidneys generate ammonia from glutamine by the actions of renal *glutaminase* (Figure 19.17) and *glutamate dehydrogenase*. Most of this ammonia is excreted into the urine as NH_4^+, which provides an important mechanism for maintaining the body's acid-base balance through the excretion of protons. Ammonia is also obtained from the hydrolysis of glutamine by intestinal *glutaminase*. The intestinal mucosal cells obtain

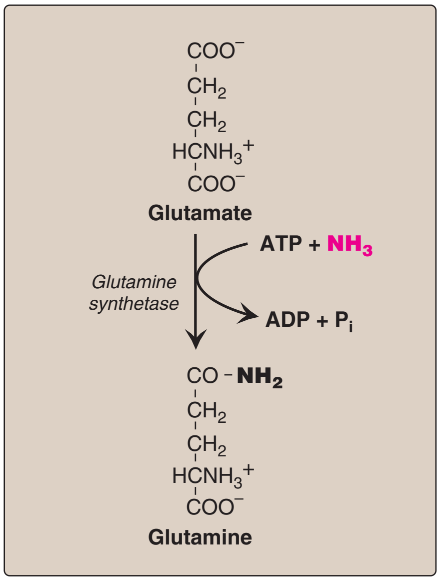


Figure 19.18
Synthesis of glutamine.

glutamine either from the blood or from digestion of dietary protein. [Note: Intestinal glutamine metabolism produces citrulline, which travels to the kidney and is used to synthesize arginine.]

2. **From bacterial action in the intestine:** Ammonia is formed from urea by the action of bacterial *urease* in the lumen of the intestine. This ammonia is absorbed from the intestine by way of the portal vein and is almost quantitatively removed by the liver via conversion to urea.

3. **From amines:** Amines obtained from the diet, and monoamines that serve as hormones or neurotransmitters, give rise to ammonia by the action of *amine oxidase* (see p. 286).

4. **From purines and pyrimidines:** In the catabolism of purines and pyrimidines, amino groups attached to the rings are released as ammonia (see Figure 22.15 and p. 304).

B. Transport of ammonia in the circulation

Although ammonia is constantly produced in the tissues, it is present at very low levels in blood. This is due both to the rapid removal of blood ammonia by the liver, and the fact that many tissues, particularly muscle, release amino acid nitrogen in the form of glutamine or alanine, rather than as free ammonia (see Figure 19.13).

1. **Urea:** Formation of urea in the liver is quantitatively the most important disposal route for ammonia. Urea travels in the blood from the liver to the kidneys, where it passes into the glomerular filtrate.

2. **Glutamine:** This amide of glutamic acid provides a nontoxic storage and transport form of ammonia (Figure 19.18). The ATP-requiring formation of glutamine from glutamate and ammonia by *glutamine synthetase* occurs primarily in the muscle and liver, but is also important in the CNS where it is the major mechanism for the removal of ammonia in the brain. Glutamine is found in plasma at concentrations higher than other amino acids—a finding consistent with its transport function. Circulating glutamine is removed by the liver and the kidneys and deaminated by *glutaminase*. In the liver, the NH_3 produced is detoxified through conversion to urea, and in the kidney it can be used in the excretion of protons. The metabolism of ammonia is summarized in Figure 19.19.

C. Hyperammonemia

The capacity of the hepatic urea cycle exceeds the normal rates of ammonia generation, and the levels of serum ammonia are normally low (5–35 µmol/L). However, when liver function is compromised, due either to genetic defects of the urea cycle or liver disease, blood levels can rise above 1,000 µmol/L. Such hyperammonemia is a medical emergency, because ammonia has a direct neurotoxic effect on the CNS. For example, elevated concentrations of ammonia in the blood cause the symptoms of ammonia intoxication, which include tremors, slurring of speech, somnolence, vomiting, cerebral edema, and blurring of vision. At high concentrations, ammonia can cause coma and death. The two major types of hyperammonemia are:

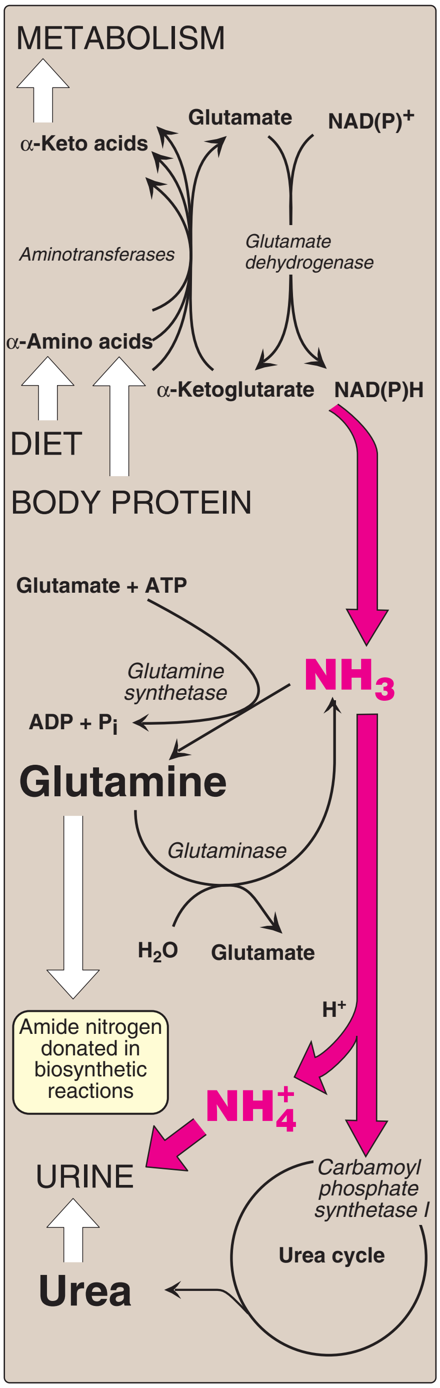


Figure 19.19
Metabolism of ammonia. Urea content in the urine is reported as urinary urea nitrogen or UUN. Urea in blood is reported as BUN (blood urea nitrogen).The enzymes *glutamate dehydrogenase*, *glutamine synthetase*, and *carbamoyl phosphate synthetase I* fix ammonia (NH_3) into organic molecules.

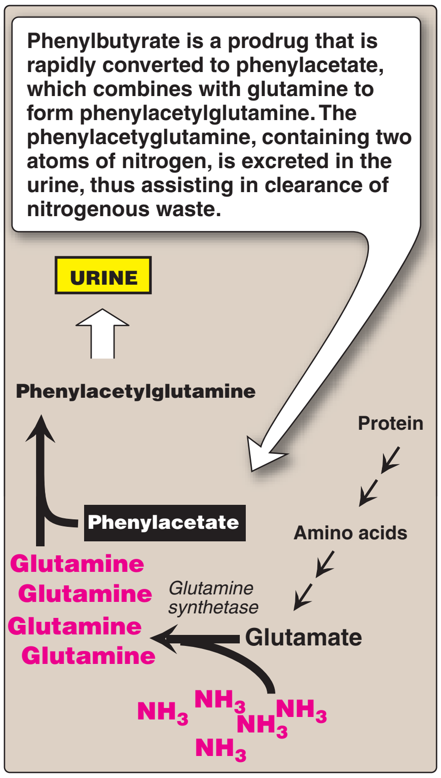

Phenylbutyrate is a prodrug that is rapidly converted to phenylacetate, which combines with glutamine to form phenylacetylglutamine. The phenylacetyglutamine, containing two atoms of nitrogen, is excreted in the urine, thus assisting in clearance of nitrogenous waste.
URINE
Phenylacetylglutamine
Protein
Phenylacetate
Amino acids
Glutamine
Glutamine
Glutamine
Glutamine
Glutamine synthetase
Glutamate
NH3
NH3
NH3
NH3
NH3

Figure 19.20
Treatment of patients with urea cycle defects by administration of phenylbutyrate to aid in excretion of ammonia.

1. **Acquired hyperammonemia:** Liver disease is a common cause of hyperammonemia in adults, and may be due, for example, to viral hepatitis or to hepatotoxins such as alcohol. Cirrhosis of the liver may result in formation of collateral circulation around the liver. As a result, portal blood is shunted directly into the systemic circulation and does not have access to the liver. The conversion of ammonia to urea is, therefore, severely impaired, leading to elevated levels of ammonia.

2. **Congenital hyperammonemia:** Genetic deficiencies of each of the five enzymes of the urea cycle have been described, with an overall prevalence estimated to be 1:25,000 live births. *Ornithine transcarbamoylase* deficiency, which is X-linked, is the most common of these disorders, predominantly affecting males, although female carriers may become symptomatic. All of the other urea cycle disorders follow an autosomal recessive inheritance pattern. In each case, the failure to synthesize urea leads to hyperammonemia during the first weeks following birth. [Note: The hyperammonemia seen with *arginase* deficiency is less severe because arginine contains two waste nitrogens and can be excreted in the urine.] Historically, urea cycle defects had high morbidity (neurological manifestations) and mortality. Treatment included restriction of dietary protein in the presence of sufficient calories to prevent catabolism. Administration of compounds that bind covalently to amino acids, producing nitrogen-containing molecules that are excreted in the urine, has improved survival. For example, phenylbutyrate given orally is converted to phenylacetate. This condenses with glutamine to form phenylacetylglutamine, which is excreted (Figure 19.20).

VIII. CHAPTER SUMMARY

Nitrogen enters the body in a variety of compounds present in food, the most important being amino acids contained in **dietary protein**. **Nitrogen leaves** the body as **urea**, **ammonia**, and other products derived from amino acid metabolism (Figure 19.21). Free amino acids in the body are produced by hydrolysis of dietary protein by proteases in the stomach and intestine, degradation of tissue proteins, and de novo synthesis. This **amino acid pool** is consumed in the synthesis of body protein, metabolized for energy, or its members serve as precursors for other nitrogen-containing compounds. Note that body protein is simultaneously degraded and resynthesized—a process known as **protein turnover**. For many proteins, **regulation of synthesis** determines the concentration of the protein in the cell, whereas the amounts of other proteins are controlled by **selective degradation**. The ATP-dependent **ubiquitin/proteasome** and ATP-independent **lysosomal acid hydrolases** are the two major enzyme systems that are responsible for **degrading damaged or unneeded proteins**. Nitrogen cannot be stored, and amino acids in excess of the biosynthetic needs of the cell are immediately degraded. The first phase of **catabolism** involves the transfer of the α-amino groups by PLP-dependent **transamination**, followed by **oxidative deamination of glutamate**, forming **ammonia** and the corresponding **α-keto acids**. A portion of the **free ammonia** is excreted in the **urine**, some is used in converting glutamate to glutamine, but most is used in the synthesis of **urea**, which is quantitatively the most important route for disposing of nitrogen from the body. The two major causes of **hyperammonemia** (with its CNS effects) are liver disease and inherited deficiencies of enzymes (such as ornithine transcarbamolyase) in the urea cycle.

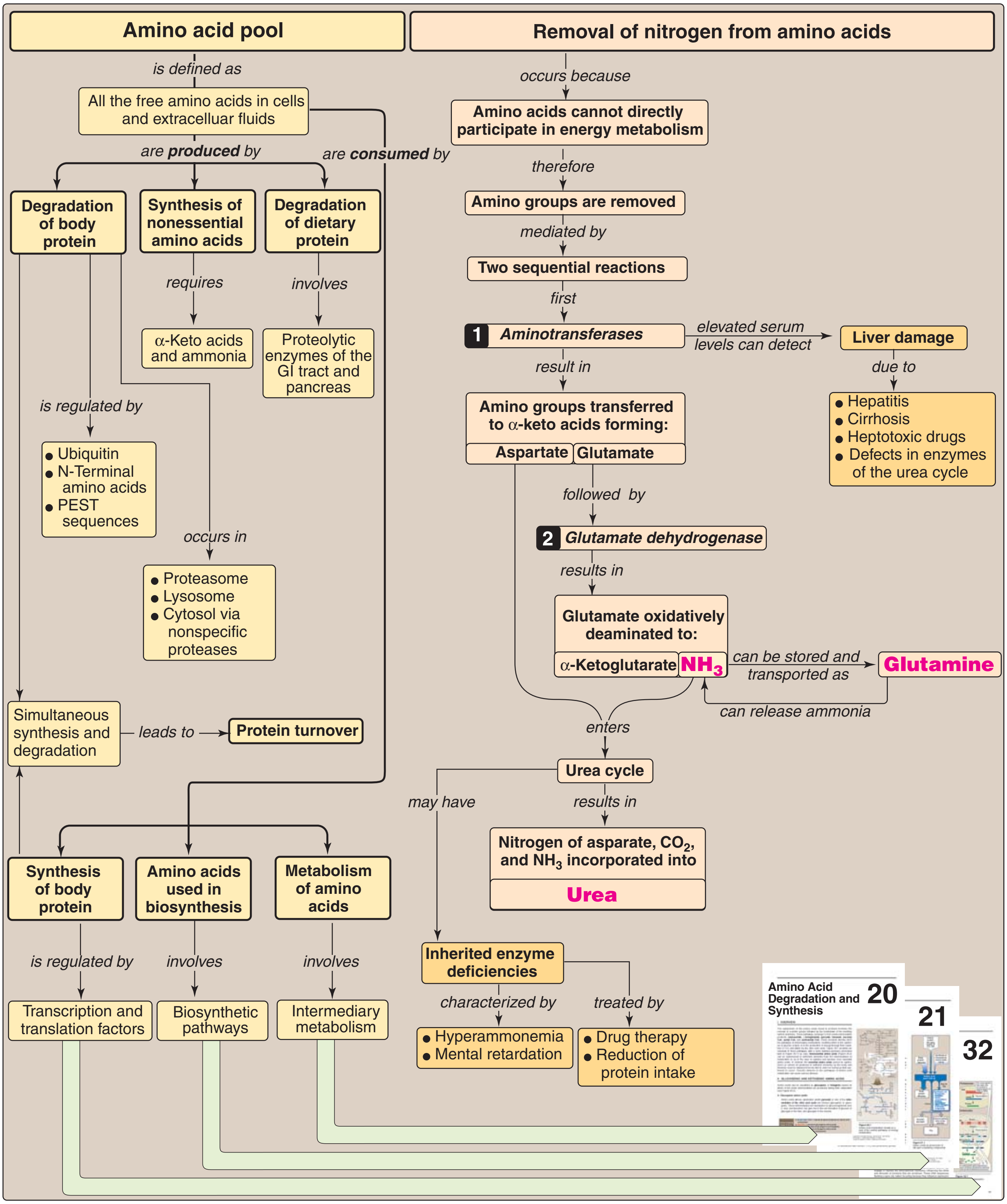
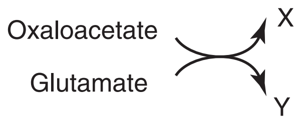

Amino acid pool
is defined as
All the free amino acids in cells and extracelluar fluids
are produced by
are consumed by
Degradation of body protein
Synthesis of nonessential amino acids
Degradation of dietary protein
requires
involves
α-Keto acids and ammonia
Proteolytic enzymes of the GI tract and pancreas
is regulated by
Ubiquitin
N-Terminal amino acids
PEST sequences
occurs in
Proteasome
Lysosome
Cytosol via nonspecific proteases
Simultaneous synthesis and degradation
leads to
Protein turnover
Synthesis of body protein
Amino acids used in biosynthesis
Metabolism of amino acids
is regulated by
involves
involves
Transcription and translation factors
Biosynthetic pathways
Intermediary metabolism
Removal of nitrogen from amino acids
occurs because
Amino acids cannot directly participate in energy metabolism
therefore
Amino groups are removed
mediated by
Two sequential reactions
first
1 Aminotransferases
elevated serum levels can detect
Liver damage
due to
Hepatitis
Cirrhosis
Heptotoxic drugs
Defects in enzymes of the urea cycle
result in
Amino groups transferred to α-keto acids forming:
Aspartate
Glutamate
followed by
2 Glutamate dehydrogenase
results in
Glutamate oxidatively deaminated to:
α-Ketoglutarate
NH_3
can be stored and transported as
Glutamine
can release ammonia
enters
Urea cycle
may have
results in
Nitrogen of asparate, CO_2, and NH_3 incorporated into
Urea
Inherited enzyme deficiencies
characterized by
treated by
Hyperammonemia
Mental retardation
Drug therapy
Reduction of protein intake
Amino Acid Degradation and Synthesis
20
21
32

Figure 19.21
Key concept map for nitrogen metabolism.

Study Questions:

Choose the ONE best answer.

19.1 In the transamination reaction shown below, which of the following are the products, X and Y?



A. Alanine, α-ketoglutarate.
B. Glutamate, α-ketoglutarate.
C. Asparate, α-ketoglutarate.
D. Pyruvate, aspartate.
E. Pyruvate, alanine.

Correct answer = C. Transaminase reactions always have an amino acid and an α-keto acid as substrates. The products of the reaction are also an amino acid (corresponding to the α-keto substrate) and an α-keto acid (corresponding to the amino acid substrate). Three amino acid α-keto acid pairs commonly encountered in metabolism are:

alanine/pyruvate
aspartate/oxaloacetate
glutamate/α-ketoglutarate

In this question, glutamate is deaminated to form α-ketoglutarate, and oxaloacetate is aminated to form aspartate.

19.2 Which one of the following statements about the urea cycle is correct?

A. The two nitrogen atoms that are incorporated into urea enter the cycle as ammonia and alanine.
B. Urea is produced directly by the hydrolysis of ornithine.
C. ATP is required for the reaction in which argininosuccinate is cleaved to form arginine.
D. Urinary urea is increased by a diet rich in protein.
E. The urea cycle occurs exclusively in the cytosol.

Correct answer = D. The amino nitrogen of dietary protein is excreted as urea. The two nitrogens enter the urea cycle as ammonia and aspartate. Urea is produced by the hydrolysis of arginine. The cleavage of argininosuccinate does not require ATP. The urea cycle occurs partly in the mitochondria.

For Questions 19.3 and 19.4:

A female neonate did well until approximately 24 hours of age when she became lethargic. A sepsis workup proved negative. At 56 hours, she started showing focal seizure activity. The plasma ammonia level was found to be 1,100 µmol/L (normal 5–35 µmol/L). Quantitative plasma amino acid levels revealed a marked elevation of argininosuccinate.

19.3 Which one of the following enzymic activities is most likely to be deficient in this patient?

A. Arginase.
B. Argininosuccinate lyase.
C. Argininosuccinate synthase.
D. Carbamoyl phosphate synthetase I.
E. Ornithine transcarbamoylase.

Correct answer = B. Genetic deficiencies of each of the five enzymes of the urea cycle, as well as deficiencies in N-acetylglutamate synthase, have been described. The accumulation of argininosuccinate in the plasma of this patient means that the enzymes required for its synthesis are functional, but the enzyme (argininosuccinate lyase or argininosuccinase) required for its cleavage to arginine plus fumarate is not.

19.4 Which one of the following would also be elevated in the blood of this patient?

A. Asparagine.
B. Glutamine.
C. Lysine.
D. Urea.
E. Uric acid.

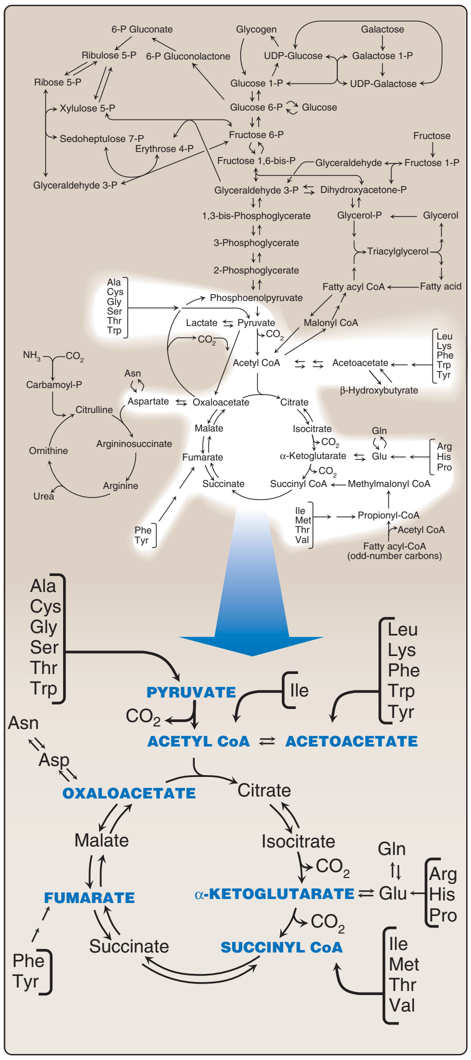
Correct answer = B. With the exception of arginase, deficiencies of the enzymes of the urea cycle result in the failure to synthesize urea and lead to hyperammonemia in the first few weeks after birth. Glutamine will also be elevated because it acts as a nontoxic storage and transport form of ammonia. Thus, elevated glutamine always accompanies hyperammonemia. Asparagine does not serve this sequestering role. Urea would be decreased due to impaired activity of the urea cycle. Lysine and uric acid would not be elevated. Treatment of this patient includes limiting protein in the diet and administering compounds that bind covalently to amino acids, producing nitrogen-containing molecules that are excreted in the urine. For example, phenylbutyrate given orally is converted to phenylacetate. This compound condenses with glutamine to form phenylacetylglutamine, which is excreted.

Amino Acid Degradation and Synthesis

20

I. OVERVIEW

The catabolism of the amino acids involves the removal of α-amino groups, followed by the breakdown of the resulting carbon skeletons. These pathways converge to form seven intermediate products: oxaloacetate, pyruvate, α-ketoglutarate, fumarate, succinyl coenzyme A (CoA), acetyl CoA, and acetoacetate. These products directly enter the pathways of intermediary metabolism, resulting either in the synthesis of glucose or lipid or in the production of energy through their oxidation to CO_2 by the citric acid cycle. Figure 20.1 provides an overview of these pathways, with a more detailed summary presented later in Figure 20.14 (see p. 269). Nonessential amino acids (Figure 20.2) can be synthesized in sufficient amounts from the intermediates of metabolism or, as in the case of cysteine and tyrosine, from essential amino acids. In contrast, the essential amino acids cannot be synthesized (or produced in sufficient amounts) by the body and, therefore, must be obtained from the diet in order for normal protein synthesis to occur. Genetic defects in the pathways of amino acid metabolism can cause serious disease.



6-P Gluconate
Glycogen
Galactose
Ribulose 5-P
6-P Gluconolactone
UDP-Glucose
Galactose 1-P
Ribose 5-P
Glucose 1-P
UDP-Galactose
Xylulose 5-P
Glucose 6-P
Glucose
Sedoheptulose 7-P
Erythrose 4-P
Fructose 6-P
Fructose
Fructose 1,6-bis-P
Glyceraldehyde
Fructose 1-P
Glyceraldehyde 3-P
Glyceraldehyde 3-P
Dihydroxyacetone-P
1,3-bis-Phosphoglycerate
Glycerol-P
Glycerol
3-Phosphoglycerate
Triacylglycerol
2-Phosphoglycerate
Fatty acyl CoA
Fatty acid
Ala
Cys
Gly
Ser
Thr
Trp
Phosphoenolpyruvate
Lactate
Pyruvate
Malonyl CoA
CO2
NH3
CO2
Acetyl CoA
Acetoacetate
Leu
Lys
Phe
Trp
Tyr
Carbamoyl-P
Asn
β-Hydroxybutyrate
Aspartate
Oxaloacetate
Citrate
Citrulline
Malate
Isocitrate
Gln
Ornithine
Argininosuccinate
Fumarate
α-Ketoglutarate
Glu
Arg
His
Pro
Arginine
Succinate
Succinyl CoA
Methylmalonyl CoA
Urea
Ile
Met
Thr
Val
Propionyl-CoA
Acetyl CoA
Phe
Tyr
Fatty acyl-CoA (odd-number carbons)
Ala
Cys
Gly
Ser
Thr
Trp
Leu
Lys
Phe
Trp
Tyr
PYRUVATE
Ile
CO2
Asn
ACETYL CoA
ACETOACETATE
Asp
OXALOACETATE
Citrate
Malate
Isocitrate
Gln
CO2
Arg
FUMARATE
α-KETOGLUTARATE
Glu
His
Pro
CO2
Phe
Tyr
Succinate
SUCCINYL CoA
Ile
Met
Thr
Val

Figure 20.1
Amino acid metabolism shown as a part of the central pathways of energy metabolism. (See figure 8.2, p. 92, for a more detailed view of these processes.

II. GLUCOGENIC AND KETOGENIC AMINO ACIDS

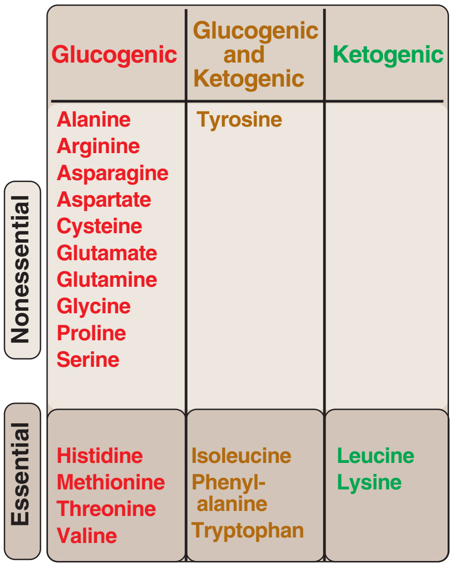
Amino acids can be classified as glucogenic, ketogenic, or both based on which of the seven intermediates are produced during their catabolism (see Figure 20.2).

A. Glucogenic amino acids

Amino acids whose catabolism yields pyruvate or one of the intermediates of the citric acid cycle are termed glucogenic. These intermediates are substrates for gluconeogenesis (see p. 117) and, therefore, can give rise to the net formation of glucose in the liver and kidney.

Color-coding used in this chapter:

- **BLUE CAPS TEXT = names of seven products of amino acid metabolism**
- **Red text = names of glucogenic amino acids**
- **Brown text = names of glucogenic and ketogenic amino acids**
- **Green text = names of ketogenic amino acids**
- **Cyan text = one-carbon compounds**



	Glucogenic	Glucogenic and Ketogenic	Ketogenic
Nonessential	Alanine Arginine Asparagine Aspartate Cysteine Glutamate Glutamine Glycine Proline Serine	Tyrosine	
Essential	Histidine Methionine Threonine Valine	Isoleucine Phenylalanine Tryptophan	Leucine Lysine

Figure 20.2
Classification of amino acids. [Note: Some amino acids can become conditionally essential. For example, supplementation with glutamine and arginine has been shown to improve outcomes in patients with trauma, post-operative infections, and immunosuppression.]

B. Ketogenic amino acids

Amino acids whose catabolism yields either acetoacetate or one of its precursors (acetyl CoA or acetoacetyl CoA) are termed ketogenic (see Figure 20.2). Acetoacetate is one of the ketone bodies, which also include 3-hydroxybutyrate and acetone (see p. 195). Leucine and lysine are the only exclusively ketogenic amino acids found in proteins. Their carbon skeletons are not substrates for gluconeogenesis and, therefore, cannot give rise to the net formation of glucose.

III. CATABOLISM OF THE CARBON SKELETONS OF AMINO ACIDS

The pathways by which amino acids are catabolized are conveniently organized according to which one (or more) of the seven intermediates listed above is produced from a particular amino acid.

A. Amino acids that form oxaloacetate

Asparagine is hydrolyzed by *asparaginase*, liberating ammonia and aspartate (Figure 20.3). Aspartate loses its amino group by transamination to form oxaloacetate (see Figure 20.3). [Note: Some rapidly dividing leukemic cells are unable to synthesize sufficient asparagine to support their growth. This makes asparagine an essential amino acid for these cells, which therefore require asparagine from the blood. *Asparaginase*, which hydrolyzes asparagine to aspartate, can be administered systemically to treat leukemic patients.[1] *Asparaginase* lowers the level of asparagine in the plasma and, therefore, deprives cancer cells of a required nutrient.]

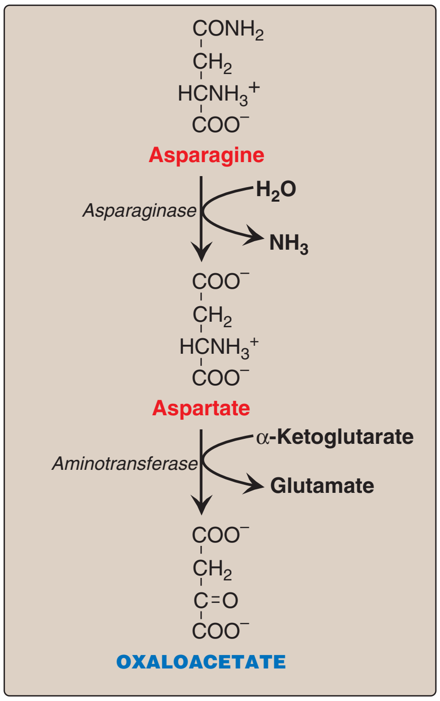


Figure 20.3
Metabolism of asparagine and aspartate. [Note: Recall that carbons from aspartate can form fumarate in the urea cycle (see p. 254).]

B. Amino acids that form α-ketoglutarate via glutamate

1. **Glutamine:** This amino acid is converted to glutamate and ammonia by the enzyme *glutaminase* (see p. 256). Glutamate is converted to α-ketoglutarate by transamination, or through oxidative deamination by *glutamate dehydrogenase* (see p. 252).

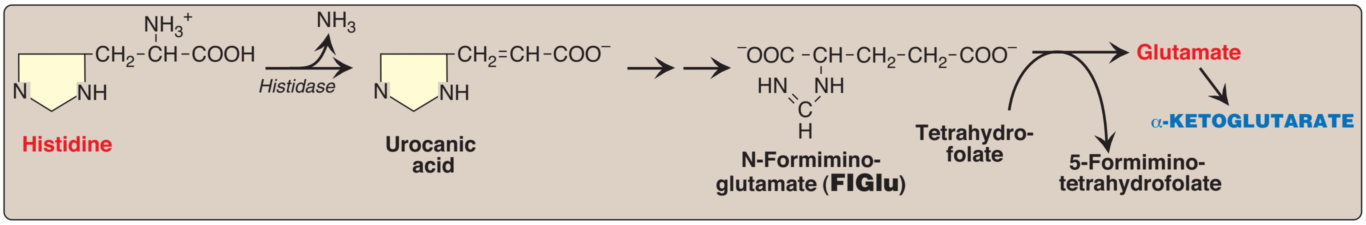
2. **Proline:** This amino acid is oxidized to glutamate. Glutamate is transaminated or oxidatively deaminated to form α-ketoglutarate.

3. **Arginine:** This amino acid is cleaved by *arginase* to produce ornithine. [Note: This reaction occurs primarily in the liver as part of the urea cycle (see p. 255).] Ornithine is subsequently converted to α-ketoglutarate; glutamate semi-aldehyde is an intermediate.

4. **Histidine:** This amino acid is oxidatively deaminated by *histidase* to urocanic acid, which subsequently forms N-formiminoglutamate (FIGlu, Figure 20.4). FIGlu donates its formimino group to tetrahydrofolate (THF), leaving glutamate, which is degraded as described above. [Note: Individuals deficient in folic acid excrete increased amounts of FIGlu in the urine, particularly after ingestion of a large dose of histidine. The FIGlu excretion test has been used in diagnosing a deficiency of folic acid.] (See p. 267 for a discussion of folic acid, THF, and one-carbon metabolism.)

---

[1] See Chapter 39 in ***Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Pharmacology*** for a discussion of the use of asparaginase as an antileukemic drug.



Histidine
Histidase
NH_3
Urocanic acid
N-Formimino-glutamate (FIGlu)
Tetrahydro-folate
5-Formimino-tetrahydrofolate
Glutamate
α-KETOGLUTARATE

Figure 20.4
Degradation of histidine.

C. Amino acids that form pyruvate

1. **Alanine:** This amino acid loses its amino group by reversible transamination to form pyruvate (Figure 20.5). [Note: Alanine is the major gluconeogenic amino acid.]

2. **Serine:** This amino acid can be converted to glycine and N^5,N^{10}-methylenetetrahydrofolate (Figure 20.6A). Serine can also be converted to pyruvate by *serine dehydratase* (Figure 20.6B).

3. **Glycine:** This amino acid can be converted to serine by the reversible addition of a methylene group from N^5,N^{10}-methylenetetrahydrofolic acid (see Figure 20.6A) or oxidized to CO_2 and NH_3. [Note: Glycine can be converted to glyoxylate. Glyoxylate can be oxidized to oxalate, or transaminated to glycine. Deficiency of the *transaminase* causes overproduction of oxalate and kidney damage (primary oxaluria Type 1).]

4. **Cystine:** This amino acid is reduced to cysteine, using NADH + H^+ as a reductant. **Cysteine** undergoes desulfuration to yield pyruvate. [Note: The sulfate released can be used to synthesize 3'-phosphoadenosine-5'-phosphosulfate (PAPS), an activated sulfur donor to acceptors such as glycosaminoglycans (see p. 162).]

5. **Threonine:** This amino acid is converted to pyruvate or to α-ketobutyrate, which forms succinyl CoA.

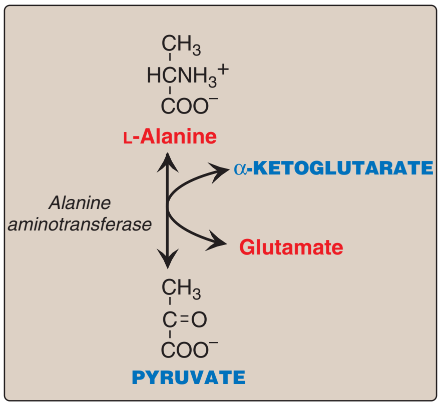
D. Amino acids that form fumarate

1. **Phenylalanine and tyrosine:** Hydroxylation of phenylalanine produces tyrosine (Figure 20.7). This reaction, catalyzed by tetrahydrobiopterin-requiring *phenylalanine hydroxylase*, initiates the catabolism of phenylalanine. Thus, the metabolism of phenylalanine and tyrosine merge, leading ultimately to the formation of fumarate and acetoacetate. Phenylalanine and tyrosine are, therefore, both glucogenic and ketogenic.

2. **Inherited deficiencies:** Inherited deficiencies in the enzymes of phenylalanine and tyrosine metabolism lead to the diseases phenylketonuria (see p. 270) and alkaptonuria (see p. 274), and the condition of albinism (see p. 273).

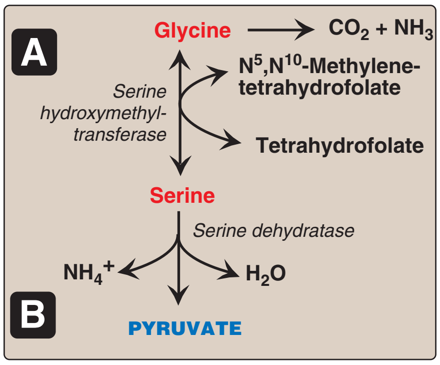
E. Amino acids that form succinyl CoA: methionine

Methionine is one of four amino acids that form succinyl CoA. This sulfur-containing amino acid deserves special attention because it is converted to S-adenosylmethionine (SAM), the major methyl-group donor in one-carbon metabolism (Figure 20.8). Methionine is also the source of homocysteine—a metabolite associated with atherosclerotic vascular disease (see p. 265).



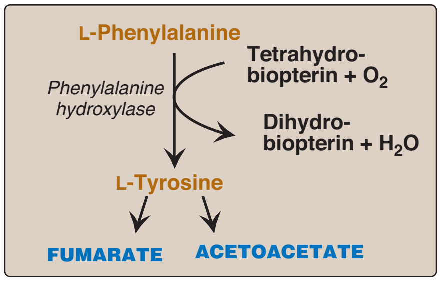
L-Alanine
Alanine aminotransferase
α-KETOGLUTARATE
Glutamate
PYRUVATE

Figure 20.5
Transamination of alanine to form pyruvate.



A
Glycine
$CO_2 + NH_3$
Serine hydroxymethyl-transferase
N^5,N^{10}-Methylene-tetrahydrofolate
Tetrahydrofolate
Serine
B
Serine dehydratase
NH_4^+
H_2O
PYRUVATE

Figure 20.6
A. Interconversion of serine and glycine, and oxidation of glycine.
B. Dehydration of serine to form pyruvate.



L-Phenylalanine
Phenylalanine hydroxylase
Tetrahydro-biopterin + O_2
Dihydro-biopterin + H_2O
L-Tyrosine
FUMARATE
ACETOACETATE

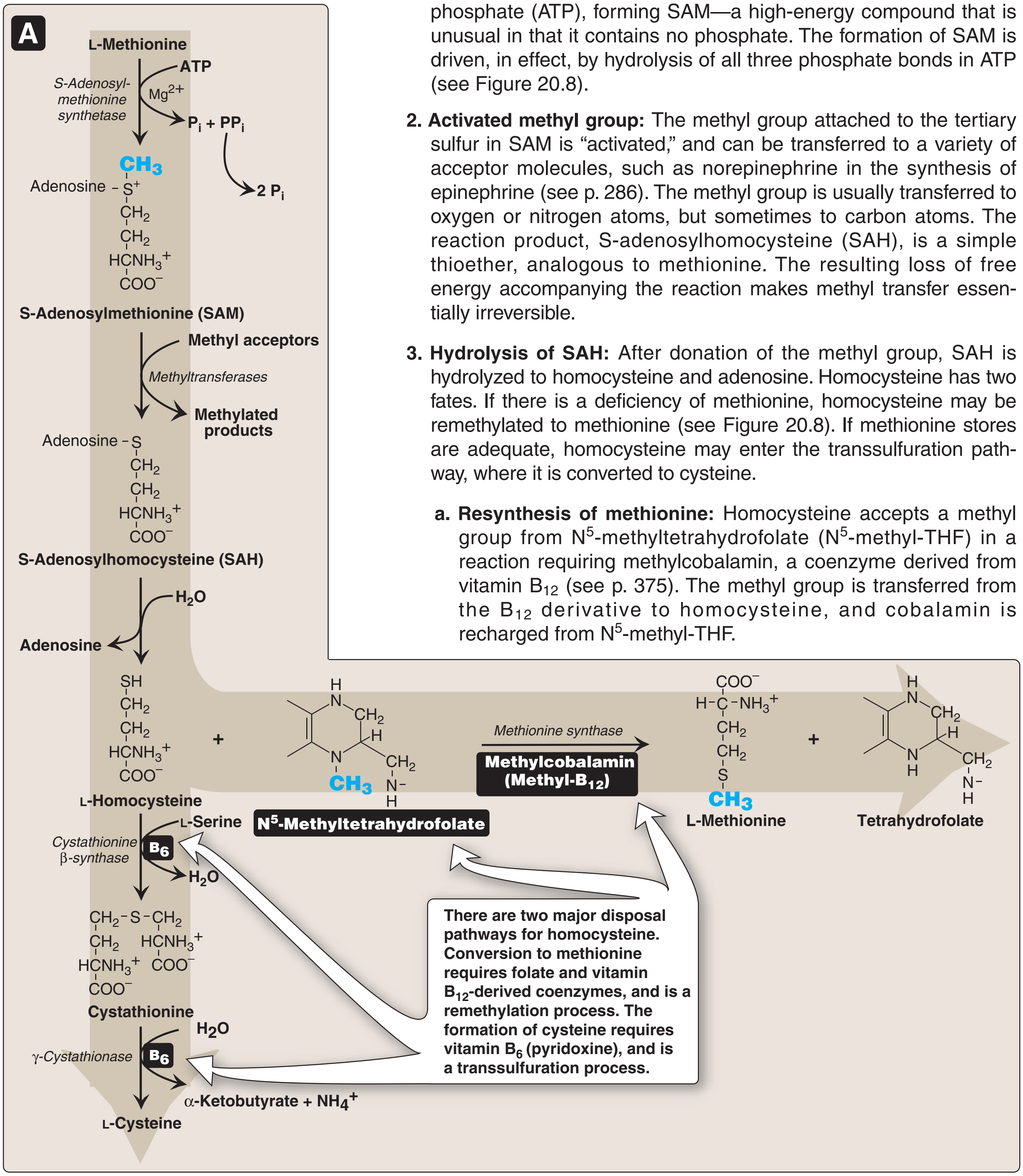
Figure 20.7
Degradation of phenylalanine.

1. **Synthesis of SAM:** Methionine condenses with adenosine triphosphate (ATP), forming SAM—a high-energy compound that is unusual in that it contains no phosphate. The formation of SAM is driven, in effect, by hydrolysis of all three phosphate bonds in ATP (see Figure 20.8).

2. **Activated methyl group:** The methyl group attached to the tertiary sulfur in SAM is "activated," and can be transferred to a variety of acceptor molecules, such as norepinephrine in the synthesis of epinephrine (see p. 286). The methyl group is usually transferred to oxygen or nitrogen atoms, but sometimes to carbon atoms. The reaction product, S-adenosylhomocysteine (SAH), is a simple thioether, analogous to methionine. The resulting loss of free energy accompanying the reaction makes methyl transfer essentially irreversible.

3. **Hydrolysis of SAH:** After donation of the methyl group, SAH is hydrolyzed to homocysteine and adenosine. Homocysteine has two fates. If there is a deficiency of methionine, homocysteine may be remethylated to methionine (see Figure 20.8). If methionine stores are adequate, homocysteine may enter the transsulfuration pathway, where it is converted to cysteine.

   a. **Resynthesis of methionine:** Homocysteine accepts a methyl group from N^5-methyltetrahydrofolate (N^5-methyl-THF) in a reaction requiring methylcobalamin, a coenzyme derived from vitamin B_{12} (see p. 375). The methyl group is transferred from the B_{12} derivative to homocysteine, and cobalamin is recharged from N^5-methyl-THF.


A
L-Methionine
ATP
S-Adenosylmethionine synthetase
Mg2+
Pi + PPi
2 Pi
CH3
Adenosine - S+
CH2
CH2
HCNH3+
COO−
S-Adenosylmethionine (SAM)
Methyl acceptors
Methyltransferases
Methylated products
Adenosine - S
S-Adenosylhomocysteine (SAH)
H2O
Adenosine
SH
L-Homocysteine
+
N5-Methyltetrahydrofolate
Methionine synthase
Methylcobalamin (Methyl-B12)
L-Methionine
Tetrahydrofolate
L-Serine
Cystathionine β-synthase
B6
H2O
CH2-S-CH2
Cystathionine
γ-Cystathionase
α-Ketobutyrate + NH4+
L-Cysteine

There are two major disposal pathways for homocysteine. Conversion to methionine requires folate and vitamin B_{12}-derived coenzymes, and is a remethylation process. The formation of cysteine requires vitamin B_6 (pyridoxine), and is a transsulfuration process.

Figure 20.8
Degradation and resynthesis of methionine. [Note: The resynthesis of methionine from homocysteine is the only reaction in which THF both carries and donates a methyl group. In all other reactions, SAM is the methyl group carrier and donor.]

b. Synthesis of cysteine: Homocysteine condenses with serine, forming cystathionine, which is hydrolyzed to α-ketobutyrate and cysteine (see Figure 20.8). This vitamin B_6–requiring sequence has the net effect of converting serine to cysteine, and homocysteine to α-ketobutyrate, which is oxidatively decarboxylated to form propionyl CoA. Propionyl CoA is converted to succinyl CoA (see p. 194). Because homocysteine is synthesized from the essential amino acid methionine, cysteine is not an essential amino acid as long as sufficient methionine is available.

4. Relationship of homocysteine to vascular disease: Elevations in plasma homocysteine levels promote oxidative damage, inflammation, and endothelial dysfunction, and are an independent risk factor for occlusive vascular disease (Figure 20.9). Mild elevations are seen in about 7% of the population. Epidemiologic studies have shown that plasma homocysteine levels are inversely related to plasma levels of folate, B_{12}, and B_6—the three vitamins involved in the conversion of homocysteine to methionine or cysteine. Supplementation with these vitamins has been shown to reduce circulating levels of homocysteine. However, in patients with established cardiovascular disease, vitamin therapy does not decrease cardiovascular events or death. This raises the question as to whether homocysteine is a cause of the vascular damage or merely a marker of such damage. [Note: Large elevations in plasma homocysteine as a result of rare deficiencies in *cystathionine β-synthase* are seen in patients with classic homocystinuria. These individuals experience premature vascular disease, with about 25% dying from thrombotic complications before 30 years of age.]

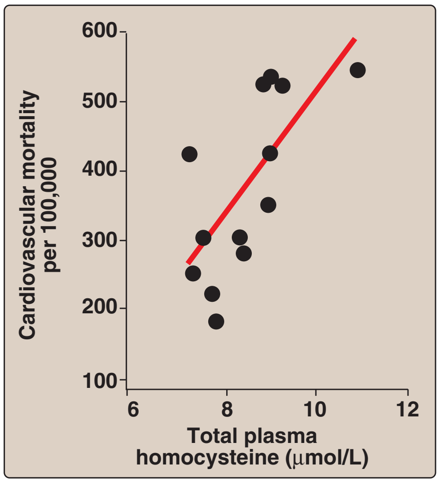


Figure 20.9
Association between cardiovascular disease mortality and total plasma homocysteine.

> Elevated homocysteine or decreased folic acid levels in pregnant women are associated with increased incidence of neural tube defects (improper closure, as in spina bifida) in the fetus. Periconceptual supplementation with folate reduces the risk of such defects.

F. Other amino acids that form succinyl CoA

Degradation of valine, isoleucine, and threonine also results in the production of succinyl CoA—a tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle intermediate and glucogenic compound.

1. Valine and isoleucine: These amino acids are branched-chain amino acids that generate propionyl CoA, which is converted to succinyl CoA by biotin- and vitamin B_{12}–requiring reactions (Figure 20.10).

2. Threonine: This amino acid is dehydrated to α-ketobutyrate, which is converted to propionyl CoA and then to succinyl CoA. Threonine can also be converted to pyruvate. [Note: Propionyl CoA, then, is generated by the catabolism of certain amino acids and odd-numbered fatty acids (see p. 193).]

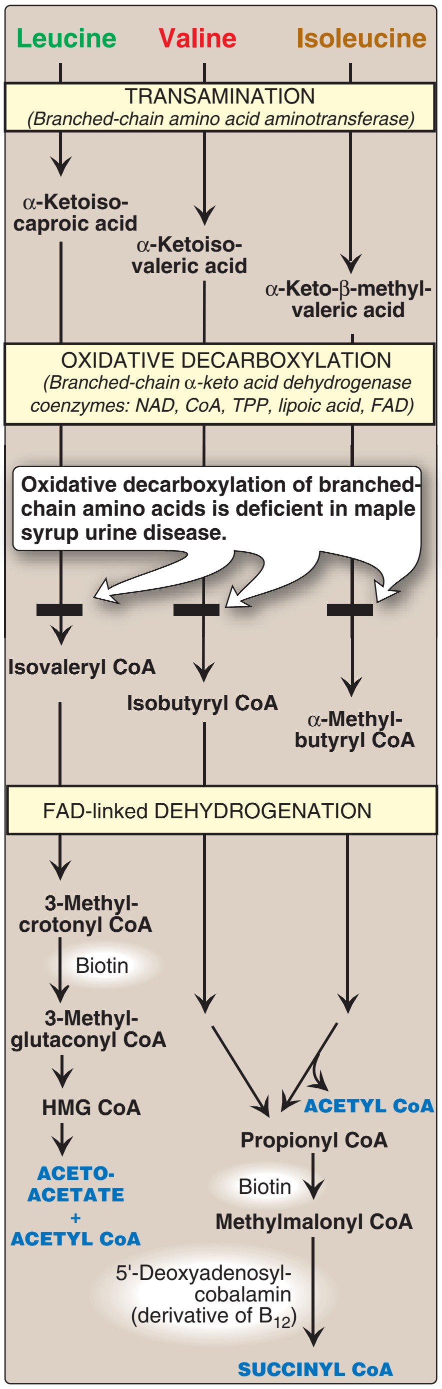

Leucine
Valine
Isoleucine
TRANSAMINATION
(Branched-chain amino acid aminotransferase)
α-Ketoiso-caproic acid
α-Ketoiso-valeric acid
α-Keto-β-methyl-valeric acid
OXIDATIVE DECARBOXYLATION
(Branched-chain α-keto acid dehydrogenase coenzymes: NAD, CoA, TPP, lipoic acid, FAD)
Oxidative decarboxylation of branched-chain amino acids is deficient in maple syrup urine disease.
Isovaleryl CoA
Isobutyryl CoA
α-Methyl-butyryl CoA
FAD-linked DEHYDROGENATION
3-Methyl-crotonyl CoA
Biotin
3-Methyl-glutaconyl CoA
HMG CoA
ACETO-ACETATE
+
ACETYL CoA
ACETYL CoA
Propionyl CoA
Biotin
Methylmalonyl CoA
5'-Deoxyadenosyl-cobalamin (derivative of B12)
SUCCINYL CoA

Figure 20.10
Degradation of leucine, valine, and isoleucine. TPP = thiamine pyrophosphate. [Note: *3-Methylcrotonyl CoA carboxylase* is one of four biotin-requiring carboxylases we have encountered. The other three are *pyruvate carboxylase*, *acetyl CoA carboxylase*, and *propionyl CoA carboxylase*.]

G. Amino acids that form acetyl CoA or acetoacetyl CoA

Leucine, isoleucine, lysine, and tryptophan form acetyl CoA or acetoacetyl CoA directly, without pyruvate serving as an intermediate (through the *pyruvate dehydrogenase* reaction, see p. 109). As mentioned previously, phenylalanine and tyrosine also give rise to acetoacetate during their catabolism (see Figure 20.7). Therefore, there are a total of six ketogenic amino acids.

1. **Leucine:** This amino acid is exclusively ketogenic in its catabolism, forming acetyl CoA and acetoacetate (see Figure 20.10). The initial steps in the catabolism of leucine are similar to those of the other branched-chain amino acids, isoleucine and valine (see below).

2. **Isoleucine:** This amino acid is both ketogenic and glucogenic, because its metabolism yields acetyl CoA and propionyl CoA. The first three steps in the metabolism of isoleucine are similar to the initial steps in the degradation of the other branched-chain amino acids, valine and leucine (see Figure 20.10).

3. **Lysine:** An exclusively ketogenic amino acid, this amino acid is unusual in that neither of its amino groups undergoes transamination as the first step in catabolism. Lysine is ultimately converted to acetoacetyl CoA.

4. **Tryptophan:** This amino acid is both glucogenic and ketogenic because its metabolism yields alanine and acetoacetyl CoA.

H. Catabolism of the branched-chain amino acids

The branched-chain amino acids, isoleucine, leucine, and valine, are essential amino acids. In contrast to other amino acids, they are metabolized primarily by the peripheral tissues (particularly muscle), rather than by the liver. Because these three amino acids have a similar route of catabolism, it is convenient to describe them as a group (see Figure 20.10).

1. **Transamination:** Removal of the amino groups of all three amino acids is catalyzed by a single, vitamin B_6–requiring enzyme, *branched-chain amino acid aminotransferase*.

2. **Oxidative decarboxylation:** Removal of the carboxyl group of the α-keto acids derived from leucine, valine, and isoleucine is catalyzed by a single multienzyme complex, *branched-chain α-keto acid dehydrogenase complex*. This complex uses thiamine pyrophosphate, lipoic acid, FAD, NAD^+, and CoA as its coenzymes. [Note: This reaction is similar to the conversion of pyruvate to acetyl CoA by *pyruvate dehydrogenase* (see p. 110) and the oxidation of α-ketoglutarate to succinyl CoA by *α-ketoglutarate dehydrogenase* (see p. 112).] An inherited deficiency of *branched-chain α-keto acid dehydrogenase* results in accumulation of the branched-chain α-keto acid substrates in the urine. Their sweet odor prompted the name maple syrup urine disease (see p. 272).

3. **Dehydrogenation:** Oxidation of the products formed in the above reaction yields α-β-unsaturated acyl CoA derivatives. This reaction is analogous to the FAD-linked dehydrogenation described in the β-oxidation scheme of fatty acid degradation (see p. 192). [Note: Deficiency in the *dehydrogenase* specific for isovaleryl CoA

causes neurological problems, and is associated with a "sweaty feet" odor in body fluids.]

4. **End products:** The catabolism of isoleucine ultimately yields acetyl CoA and succinyl CoA, rendering it both ketogenic and glucogenic. Valine yields succinyl CoA and is glucogenic. Leucine is ketogenic, being metabolized to acetoacetate and acetyl CoA. [Note: Branched-chain amino acid catabolism also results in glutamine and alanine being sent out into the blood from muscle.]

IV. ROLE OF FOLIC ACID IN AMINO ACID METABOLISM

Some synthetic pathways require the addition of single carbon groups that exist in a variety of oxidation states, including formyl, methenyl, methylene, and methyl. These single carbon groups can be transferred from carrier compounds such as THF and SAM to specific structures that are being synthesized or modified. The "one-carbon pool" refers to single carbon units attached to this group of carriers. [Note: CO_2, the dehydrated form of carbonic acid, is carried by the vitamin biotin, which is a prosthetic group for most carboxylation reactions, but is not considered a member of the one-carbon pool. Defects in the ability to add or remove biotin from *carboxylases* result in multiple *carboxylase* deficiency; treatment is supplementation with biotin.]

A. Folic acid: a carrier of one-carbon units

The active form of folic acid, tetrahydrofolic acid (THF), is produced from folate by *dihydrofolate reductase* in a two-step reaction requiring two NADPH. The carbon unit carried by THF is bound to nitrogen N^5 or N^{10}, or to both N^5 and N^{10}. THF allows one-carbon compounds to be recognized and manipulated by biosynthetic enzymes. Figure 20.11 shows the structures of the various members of the THF family and their interconversions, and indicates the sources of the one-carbon units and the synthetic reactions in which the specific members participate. [Note: Folate deficiency presents as a megaloblastic anemia due to decreased availability of the purines and of the TMP needed for DNA synthesis (see p. 303).]

V. BIOSYNTHESIS OF NONESSENTIAL AMINO ACIDS

Nonessential amino acids are synthesized from intermediates of metabolism or, as in the case of tyrosine and cysteine, from the essential amino acids phenylalanine and methionine, respectively. The synthetic reactions for the nonessential amino acids are described below, and are summarized later in Figure 20.14. [Note: Some amino acids found in proteins, such as hydroxyproline and hydroxylysine (see p. 45), are modified after their incorporation into the protein (posttranslational modification, see p. 443).]

A. Synthesis from α-keto acids

Alanine, aspartate, and glutamate are synthesized by transfer of an amino group to the α-keto acids pyruvate, oxaloacetate, and α-ketoglutarate, respectively. These transamination reactions (Figure 20.12, and see p. 250) are the most direct of the biosynthetic pathways.

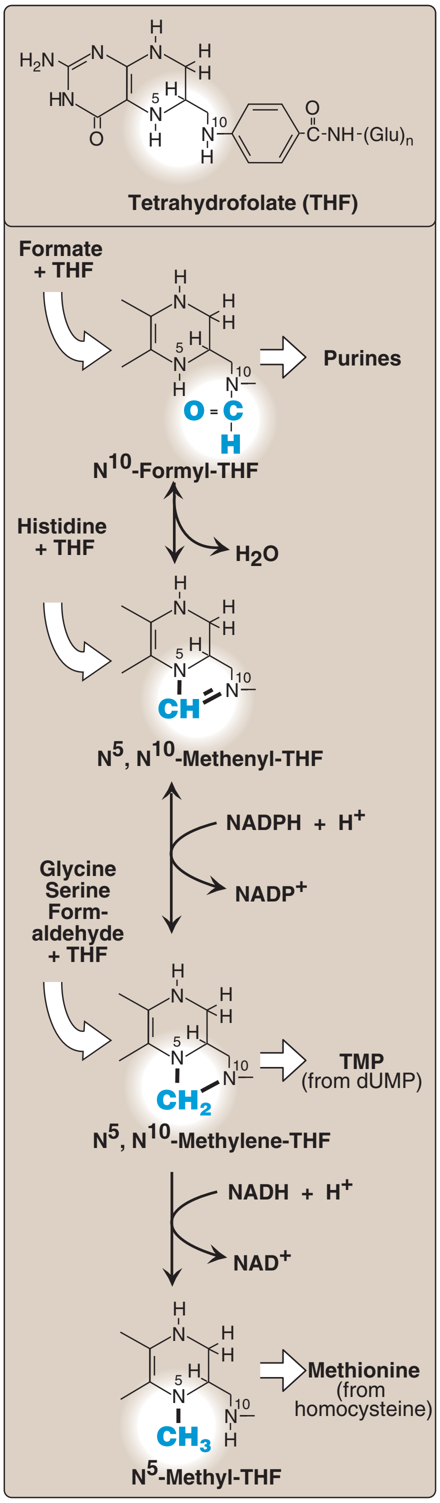


Figure 20.11
Summary of the interconversions and uses of the carrier, tetrahydrofolate. [Note: N^5, N^{10}-Methenyl-THF arises from 5-formimino-THF (see Figure 20.4).]

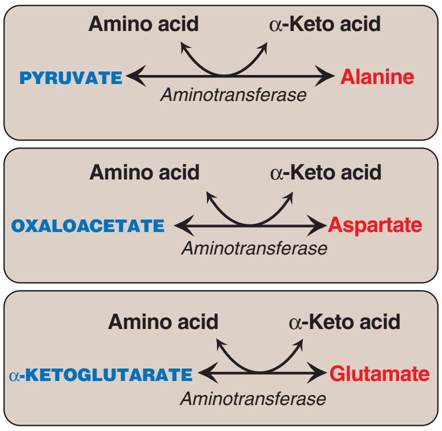


Figure 20.12
Formation of alanine, aspartate, and glutamate from the corresponding α-keto acids.

Glutamate is unusual in that it can also be synthesized by the reverse of oxidative deamination, catalyzed by *glutamate dehydrogenase* (see p. 252).

B. Synthesis by amidation

1. **Glutamine:** This amino acid, which contains an amide linkage with ammonia at the γ-carboxyl, is formed from glutamate by *glutamine synthetase* (see Figure 19.18, p. 256). The reaction is driven by the hydrolysis of ATP. In addition to producing glutamine for protein synthesis, the reaction also serves as a major mechanism for the transport of ammonia in a nontoxic form (see p. 256 for a discussion of ammonia metabolism).

2. **Asparagine:** This amino acid, which contains an amide linkage with ammonia at the β-carboxyl, is formed from aspartate by *asparagine synthetase,* using glutamine as the amide donor. The reaction requires ATP, and, like the synthesis of glutamine, has an equilibrium far in the direction of asparagine synthesis.

C. Proline

Glutamate is converted to proline by cyclization and reduction reactions.

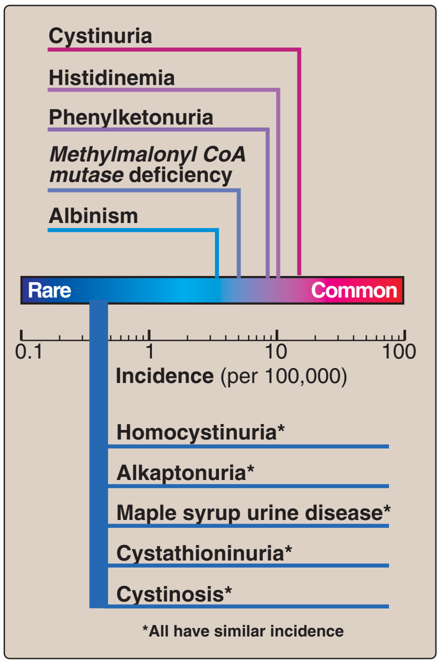


Figure 20.13
Incidence of inherited diseases of amino acid metabolism. [Note: Cystinuria is the most common genetic error of amino acid transport.]

D. Serine, glycine, and cysteine

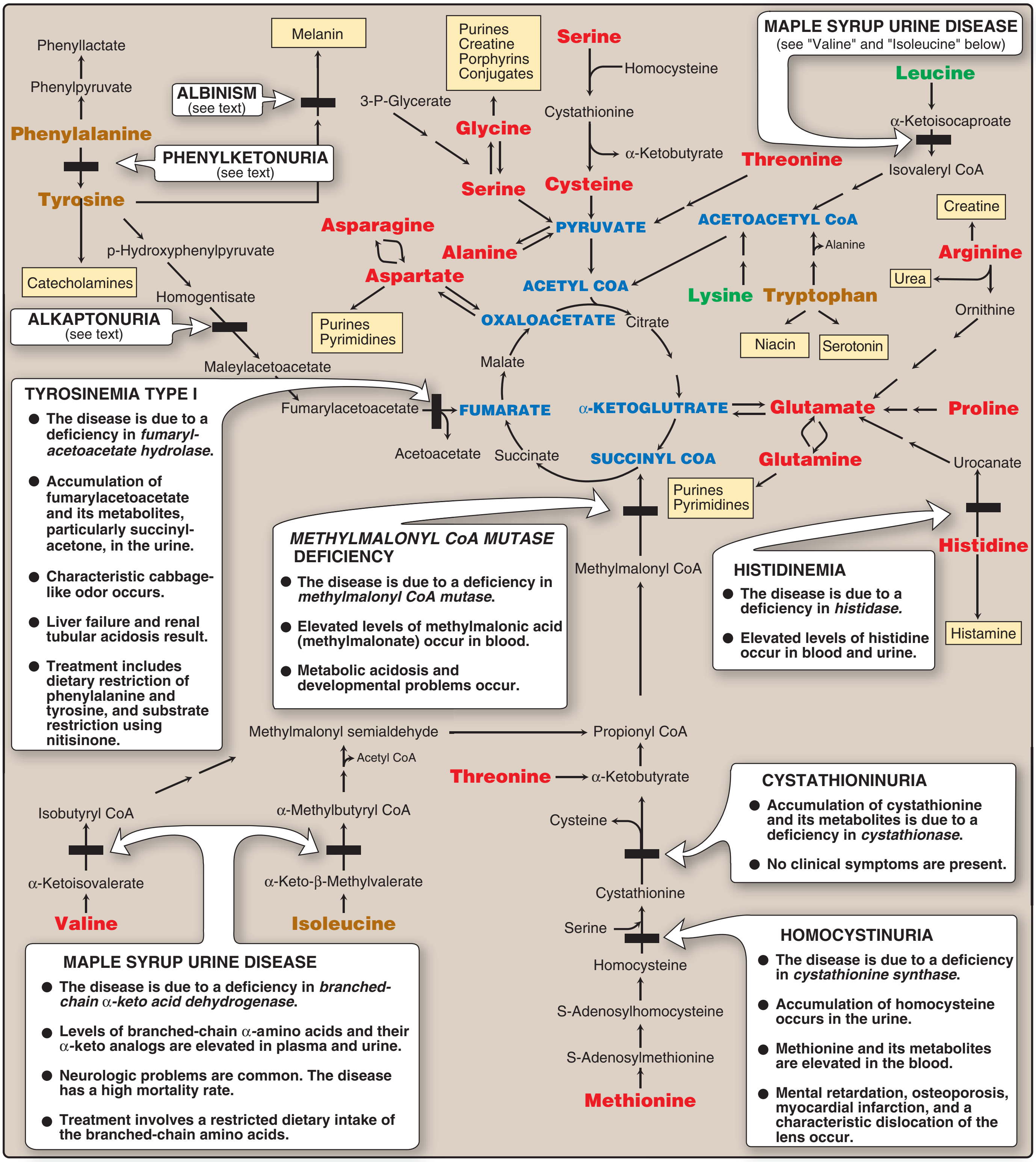
1. **Serine:** This amino acid arises from 3-phosphoglycerate, an intermediate in glycolysis (see Figure 8.18, p. 101), which is first oxidized to 3-phosphopyruvate, and then transaminated to 3-phosphoserine. Serine is formed by hydrolysis of the phosphate ester. Serine can also be formed from glycine through transfer of a hydroxymethyl group by *serine hydroxymethyl transferase* using N^5,N^{10}-methylene-THF as the one carbon donor (see Figure 20.6A).

2. **Glycine:** This amino acid is synthesized from serine by removal of a hydroxymethyl group, also by *serine hydroxymethyl transferase* (see Figure 20.6A). THF is the one carbon acceptor.

3. **Cysteine:** This amino acid is synthesized by two consecutive reactions in which homocysteine combines with serine, forming cystathionine that, in turn, is hydrolyzed to α-ketobutyrate and cysteine (see Figure 20.8). Homocysteine is derived from methionine as described on p. 264. Because methionine is an essential amino acid, cysteine synthesis can be sustained only if the dietary intake of methionine is adequate.

E. Tyrosine

Tyrosine is formed from phenylalanine by *phenylalanine hydroxylase*. The reaction requires molecular oxygen and the coenzyme tetrahydrobiopterin (BH_4), which can be synthesized from guanosine triphosphate (GTP) by the body. One atom of molecular oxygen becomes the hydroxyl group of tyrosine, and the other atom is reduced to water. During the reaction, BH_4 is oxidized to dihydrobiopterin (BH_2). BH_4 is regenerated from BH_2 by NADH-requiring *dihydropteridine reductase.* Tyrosine, like cysteine, is formed from an essential amino acid and is, therefore, nonessential only in the presence of adequate dietary phenylalanine.


Phenyllactate
Phenylpyruvate
Phenylalanine
Tyrosine
p-Hydroxyphenylpyruvate
Catecholamines
Homogentisate
Maleylacetoacetate
Melanin
ALBINISM
(see text)
PHENYLKETONURIA
(see text)
ALKAPTONURIA
(see text)
Fumarylacetoacetate
Acetoacetate
FUMARATE
3-P-Glycerate
Purines
Creatine
Porphyrins
Conjugates
Glycine
Serine
Asparagine
Aspartate
Alanine
Purines
Pyrimidines
Serine
Homocysteine
Cystathionine
α-Ketobutyrate
Cysteine
PYRUVATE
ACETYL COA
OXALOACETATE
Citrate
Malate
α-KETOGLUTRATE
Succinate
SUCCINYL COA
Threonine
ACETOACETYL CoA
Alanine
Lysine
Tryptophan
Niacin
Serotonin
MAPLE SYRUP URINE DISEASE
(see "Valine" and "Isoleucine" below)
Leucine
α-Ketoisocaproate
Isovaleryl CoA
Creatine
Arginine
Urea
Ornithine
Glutamate
Proline
Glutamine
Purines
Pyrimidines
Urocanate
Histidine
Histamine
Methylmalonyl CoA
Methylmalonyl semialdehyde
Propionyl CoA
Acetyl CoA
Threonine
α-Ketobutyrate
Isobutyryl CoA
α-Methylbutyryl CoA
α-Ketoisovalerate
α-Keto-β-Methylvalerate
Valine
Isoleucine
Cysteine
Cystathionine
Serine
Homocysteine
S-Adenosylhomocysteine
S-Adenosylmethionine
Methionine

TYROSINEMIA TYPE I

- The disease is due to a deficiency in *fumarylacetoacetate hydrolase.*
- Accumulation of fumarylacetoacetate and its metabolites, particularly succinylacetone, in the urine.
- Characteristic cabbage-like odor occurs.
- Liver failure and renal tubular acidosis result.
- Treatment includes dietary restriction of phenylalanine and tyrosine, and substrate restriction using nitisinone.

***METHYLMALONYL CoA MUTASE* DEFICIENCY**

- The disease is due to a deficiency in *methylmalonyl CoA mutase.*
- Elevated levels of methylmalonic acid (methylmalonate) occur in blood.
- Metabolic acidosis and developmental problems occur.

HISTIDINEMIA

- The disease is due to a deficiency in *histidase.*
- Elevated levels of histidine occur in blood and urine.

CYSTATHIONINURIA

- Accumulation of cystathionine and its metabolites is due to a deficiency in *cystathionase.*
- No clinical symptoms are present.

HOMOCYSTINURIA

- The disease is due to a deficiency in *cystathionine synthase.*
- Accumulation of homocysteine occurs in the urine.
- Methionine and its metabolites are elevated in the blood.
- Mental retardation, osteoporosis, myocardial infarction, and a characteristic dislocation of the lens occur.

MAPLE SYRUP URINE DISEASE

- The disease is due to a deficiency in *branched-chain α-keto acid dehydrogenase.*
- Levels of branched-chain α-amino acids and their α-keto analogs are elevated in plasma and urine.
- Neurologic problems are common. The disease has a high mortality rate.
- Treatment involves a restricted dietary intake of the branched-chain amino acids.

Figure 20.14
Summary of the metabolism of amino acids in humans. Genetically determined enzyme deficiencies are summarized in white boxes. Nitrogen-containing compounds derived from amino acids are shown in small, yellow boxes. Classification of amino acids is color coded: **Red** = glucogenic; **brown** = glucogenic and ketogenic; **green** = ketogenic. Compounds in **BLUE ALL CAPS** are the seven metabolites to which all amino acid metabolism converges.

VI. METABOLIC DEFECTS IN AMINO ACID METABOLISM

Inborn errors of metabolism are commonly caused by mutant genes that generally result in abnormal proteins, most often enzymes. The inherited defects may be expressed as a total loss of enzyme activity or, more frequently, as a partial deficiency in catalytic activity. Without treatment, the inherited defects of amino acid metabolism almost invariably result in mental retardation or other developmental abnormalities as a consequence of harmful accumulation of metabolites. Although more than 50 of these disorders have been described, many are rare, occurring in less than 1 per 250,000 in most populations (Figure 20.13). Collectively, however, they constitute a very significant portion of pediatric genetic diseases (Figure 20.14). Phenylketonuria is the most important disease of amino acid metabolism because it is relatively common and responds to dietary treatment.

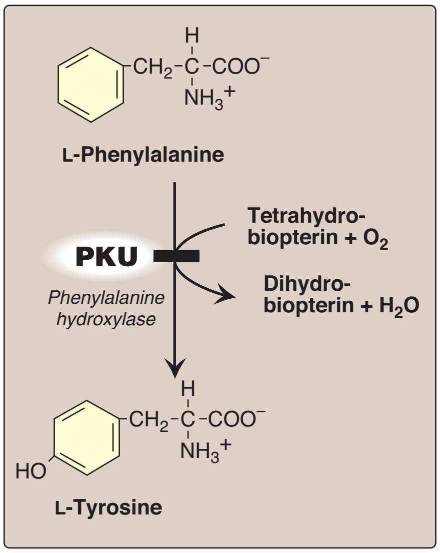

L-Phenylalanine
Tetrahydro-biopterin + O_2
PKU
Phenylalanine hydroxylase
Dihydro-biopterin + H_2O
HO
L-Tyrosine

Figure 20.15
A deficiency in *phenylalanine hydroxylase* results in the disease phenylketonuria (PKU).

> Screening of newborns for a number of the amino acid disorders by tandem mass spectrometry of blood obtained from a heel prick is possible; however, exactly which disorders are screened for currently varies from state to state, and only phenylketonuria screening is mandated by all states.

A. Phenylketonuria

Phenylketonuria (PKU), caused by a deficiency of *phenylalanine hydroxylase* (Figure 20.15), is the most common clinically encountered inborn error of amino acid metabolism (prevalence 1:15,000). Biochemically, it is characterized by accumulation of phenylalanine (and a deficiency of tyrosine). Hyperphenylalaninemia may also be caused by deficiencies in any of the several enzymes required to synthesize BH_4, or in *dihydropteridine reductase*, which regenerates BH_4 from BH_2 (Figure 20.16). Such deficiencies indirectly raise phenylalanine concentrations, because *phenylalanine hydroxylase*

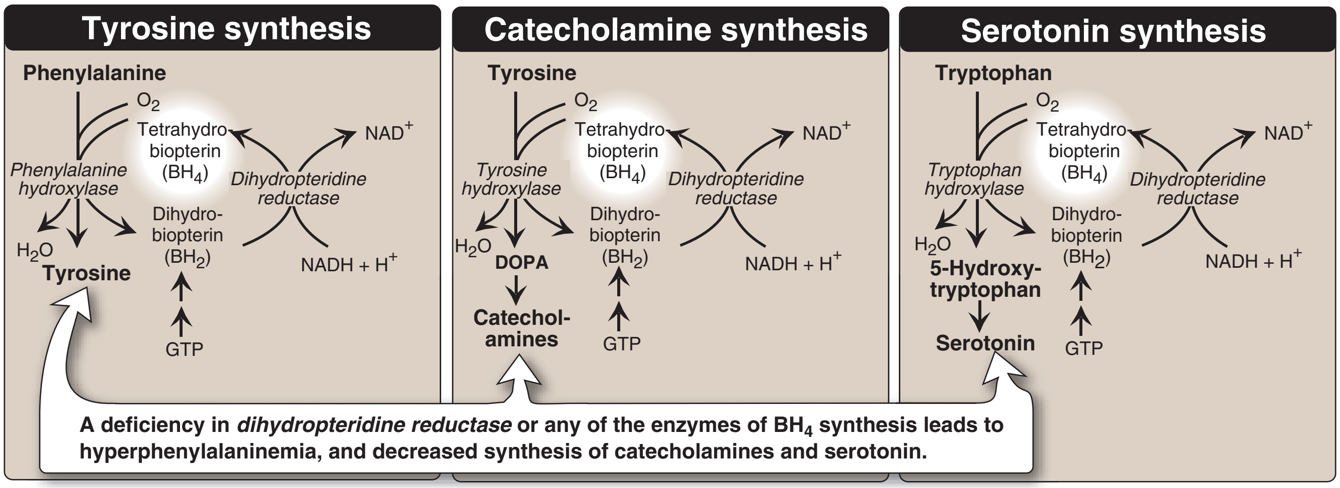

Tyrosine synthesis
Phenylalanine
O_2
Tetrahydro-biopterin (BH_4)
NAD^+
Phenylalanine hydroxylase
Dihydropteridine reductase
H_2O
Tyrosine
Dihydro-biopterin (BH_2)
NADH + H^+
GTP
Catecholamine synthesis
Tyrosine
O_2
Tetrahydro-biopterin (BH_4)
NAD^+
Tyrosine hydroxylase
Dihydropteridine reductase
H_2O
DOPA
Dihydro-biopterin (BH_2)
NADH + H^+
Catechol-amines
GTP
Serotonin synthesis
Tryptophan
O_2
Tetrahydro-biopterin (BH_4)
NAD^+
Tryptophan hydroxylase
Dihydropteridine reductase
H_2O
5-Hydroxy-tryptophan
Dihydro-biopterin (BH_2)
NADH + H^+
Serotonin
GTP
A deficiency in *dihydropteridine reductase* or any of the enzymes of BH_4 synthesis leads to hyperphenylalaninemia, and decreased synthesis of catecholamines and serotonin.

Figure 20.16
Biosynthetic reactions involving amino acids and tetrahydrobiopterin.

requires BH_4 as a coenzyme. BH_4 is also required for *tyrosine hydroxylase* and *tryptophan hydroxylase*, which catalyze reactions leading to the synthesis of neurotransmitters, such as serotonin and the catecholamines. Simply restricting dietary phenylalanine does not reverse the central nervous system (CNS) effects due to deficiencies in neurotransmitters. Replacement therapy with BH_4 or L-DOPA and 5-hydroxytryptophan (products of the affected *tyrosine hydroxylase*– and *tryptophan hydroxylase*–catalyzed reactions) improves the clinical outcome in these variant forms of hyperphenylalaninemia, although the response is unpredictable.

1. **Characteristics of classic PKU:**
   a. **Elevated phenylalanine:** Phenylalanine is present in elevated concentrations in tissues, plasma, and urine. Phenyllactate, phenylacetate, and phenylpyruvate, which are not normally produced in significant amounts in the presence of functional *phenylalanine hydroxylase*, are also elevated in PKU (Figure 20.17). These metabolites give urine a characteristic musty ("mousey") odor. [Note: The disease acquired its name from the presence of a phenylketone (now known to be phenylpyruvate) in the urine.]

   b. **CNS symptoms:** Mental retardation, failure to walk or talk, seizures, hyperactivity, tremor, microcephaly, and failure to grow are characteristic findings in PKU. The patient with untreated PKU typically shows symptoms of mental retardation by the age of 1 year, and rarely achieves an IQ greater than 50 (Figure 20.18). [Note: These clinical manifestations are now rarely seen as a result of neonatal screening programs.]

   c. **Hypopigmentation:** Patients with phenylketonuria often show a deficiency of pigmentation (fair hair, light skin color, and blue eyes). The hydroxylation of tyrosine by *tyrosinase*, which is the first step in the formation of the pigment melanin, is competitively inhibited by the high levels of phenylalanine present in PKU.

2. **Neonatal screening and diagnosis of PKU:** Early diagnosis of phenylketonuria is important because the disease is treatable by dietary means. Because of the lack of neonatal symptoms, laboratory testing for elevated blood levels of phenylalanine is mandatory for detection. However, the infant with PKU frequently has normal blood levels of phenylalanine at birth because the mother clears increased blood phenylalanine in her affected fetus through the placenta. Normal levels of phenylalanine may persist until the newborn is exposed to 24–48 hours of protein feeding. Thus, screening tests are typically done after this time to avoid false negatives. For newborns with a positive screening test, diagnosis is confirmed through quantitative determination of phenylalanine levels.

3. **Prenatal diagnosis of PKU:** Classic PKU is a family of diseases caused by any of 100 or more different mutations in the gene that codes for *phenylalanine hydroxylase* (*PAH*). The frequency of any given mutation varies among populations, and the disease is often doubly heterozygous, that is, the *PAH* gene has a different mutation in each allele. Despite this complexity, prenatal diagnosis is possible (see p. 477).

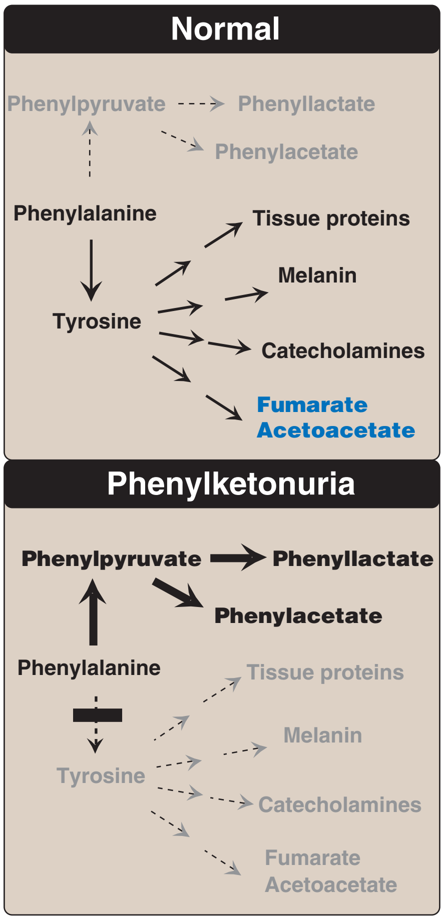


Figure 20.17
Pathways of phenylalanine metabolism in normal individuals and in patients with phenylketonuria.

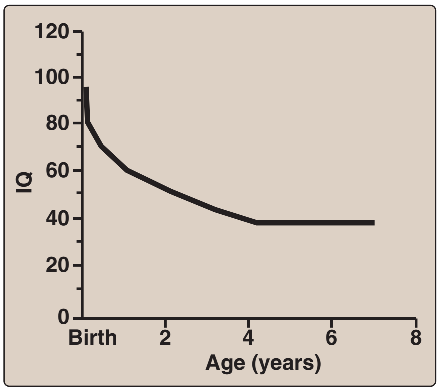


Figure 20.18
Typical intellectual ability in untreated PKU patients of different ages.

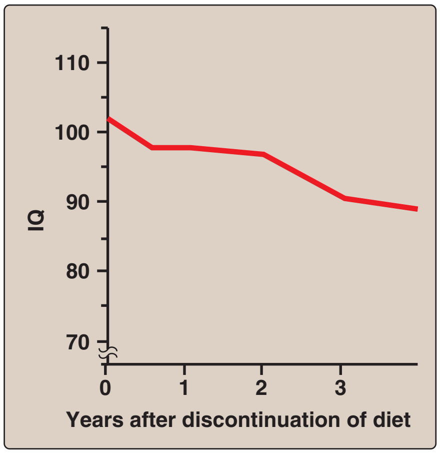


Figure 20.19
Changes in IQ scores after discontinuation of low-phenylalanine diet in patients with phenylketonuria.

4. **Treatment of PKU:** Most natural protein contains phenylalanine, and it is impossible to satisfy the body's protein requirement when ingesting a normal diet without exceeding the phenylalanine limit. Therefore, in PKU, blood phenylalanine is maintained close to the normal range by feeding synthetic amino acid preparations low in phenylalanine, supplemented with some natural foods (such as fruits, vegetables, and certain cereals) selected for their low phenylalanine content. The amount is adjusted according to the tolerance of the individual as measured by blood phenylalanine levels. The earlier treatment is started, the more completely neurologic damage can be prevented. [Note: Treatment must begin during the first 7–10 days of life to prevent mental retardation.] Because phenylalanine is an essential amino acid, overzealous treatment that results in blood phenylalanine levels below normal is avoided because this can lead to poor growth and neurologic symptoms. In patients with PKU, tyrosine cannot be synthesized from phenylalanine and, therefore, it becomes an essential amino acid and so must be supplied in the diet. Discontinuance of the phenyalanine-restricted diet before 8 years of age is associated with poor performance on IQ tests. Adult PKU patients show deterioration of IQ scores after discontinuation of the diet (Figure 20.19). Lifelong restriction of dietary phenylalanine is, therefore, recommended. [Note: Individuals with PKU are advised to avoid aspartame, an artificial sweetener that contains phenylalanine.]

5. **Maternal PKU:** If women with PKU who are not on a low-phenylalanine diet become pregnant, the offspring are affected with "maternal PKU syndrome." High blood phenylalanine levels in the mother cause microcephaly, mental retardation, and congenital heart abnormalities in the fetus—phenlyalanine is a teratogen. Some of these developmental responses to high phenylalanine occur during the first months of pregnancy. Thus, dietary control of blood phenylalanine must begin prior to conception, and must be maintained throughout the pregnancy.

B. Maple syrup urine disease

Maple syrup urine disease (MSUD) is a rare (1:185,000), autosomal recessive disorder in which there is a partial or complete deficiency in *branched-chain α-keto acid dehydrogenase*, an enzyme complex that decarboxylates leucine, isoleucine, and valine (see Figure 20.10). These amino acids and their corresponding α-keto acids accumulate in the blood, causing a toxic effect that interferes with brain functions. The disease is characterized by feeding problems, vomiting, dehydration, severe metabolic acidosis, and a characteristic maple syrup odor to the urine. If untreated, the disease leads to mental retardation, physical disabilities, and even death.

1. **Classification:** The term "maple syrup urine disease" includes a classic type and several variant forms of the disorder. The classic form is the most common type of MSUD. Leukocytes or cultured skin fibroblasts from these patients show little or no *branched-chain α-keto acid dehydrogenase* activity. Infants with classic MSUD show symptoms within the first several days of life. If not diagnosed and treated, classic MSUD is lethal in the first weeks

of life. Patients with intermediate forms have a higher level of enzyme activity (approximately 3–15% of normal). The symptoms are milder and show an onset from infancy to adulthood. Patients with the rare thiamine-dependent variant of MSUD achieve increased activity of branched-chain *α-keto acid dehydrogenase* if given large doses of this vitamin.

2. **Screening and diagnosis:** As with PKU, prenatal diagnosis and neonatal screening are available, and most affected individuals are compound heterozygotes.

3. **Treatment:** The disease is treated with a synthetic formula that contains limited amounts of leucine, isoleucine, and valine—sufficient to provide the branched-chain amino acids necessary for normal growth and development without producing toxic levels. Early diagnosis and lifelong dietary treatment is essential if the child with MSUD is to develop normally. [Note: Branched-chain amino acids are an important energy source in times of metabolic need, and individuals with MSUD are at risk of decompensation during periods of increased protein catabolism.]

C. Albinism

Albinism refers to a group of conditions in which a defect in tyrosine metabolism results in a deficiency in the production of melanin. These defects result in the partial or full absence of pigment from the skin, hair, and eyes. Albinism appears in different forms, and it may be inherited by one of several modes: autosomal recessive (primary mode), autosomal dominant, or X-linked. Complete albinism (also called *tyrosinase*-negative oculocutaneous albinism) results from a deficiency of copper-requiring *tyrosinase*, causing a total absence of pigment from the hair, eyes, and skin (Figure 20.20). It is the most severe form of the condition. In addition to hypopigmentation, affected individuals have vision defects and photophobia (sunlight hurts their eyes). They are at increased risk for skin cancer.

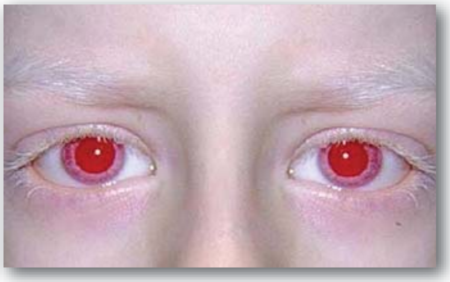


Figure 20.20
Patient with oculocutaneous albinism, showing white eyebrows and lashes.

D. Homocystinuria

The homocystinurias are a group of disorders involving defects in the metabolism of homocysteine. The diseases are inherited as autosomal recessive illnesses, characterized by high plasma and urinary levels of homocysteine and methionine and low levels of cysteine. The most common cause of homocystinuria is a defect in the enzyme *cystathionine β-synthase*, which converts homocysteine to cystathionine (Figure 20.21). Individuals who are homozygous for *cystathionine β-synthase* deficiency exhibit ectopia lentis (displacement of the lens of the eye), skeletal abnormalities, a tendency to form thrombi (blood clots), osteoporosis, and neurological deficits. Patients can be responsive or nonresponsive to oral administration of pyridoxine (vitamin B_6)—a coenzyme of *cystathionine β-synthase.* Vitamin B_6–responsive patients usually have a milder and later onset of clinical symptoms compared with B_6-nonresponsive patients. Treatment includes restriction of methionine intake and supplementation with vitamins B_6, B_{12}, and folate.

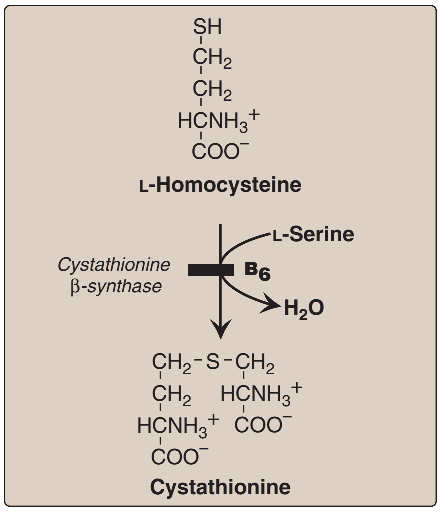


Figure 20.21
Enzyme deficiency in homocystinuria.

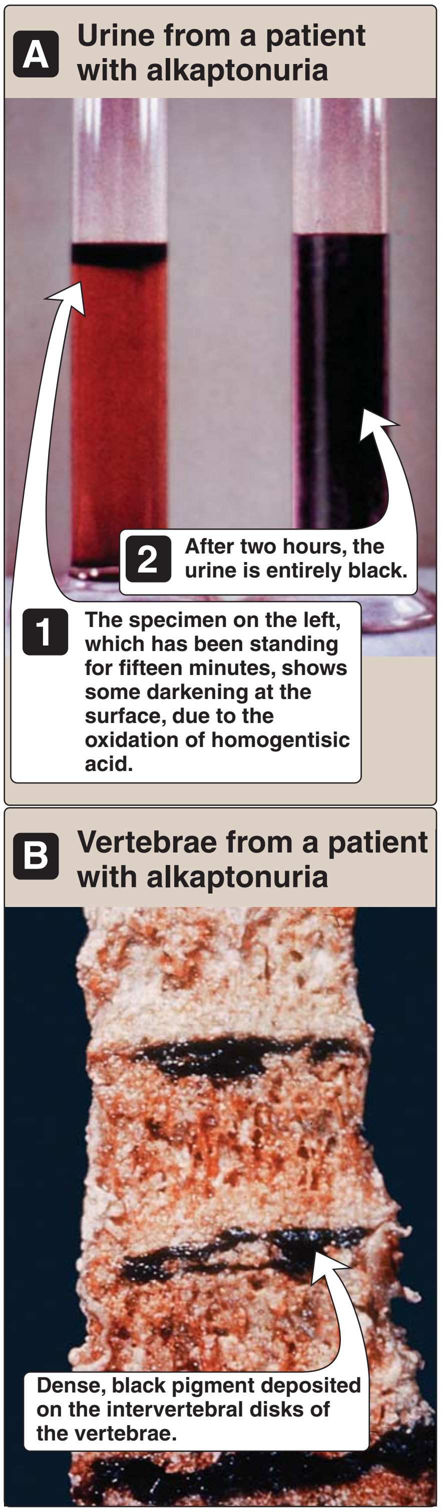

A
Urine from a patient with alkaptonuria
2
After two hours, the urine is entirely black.
1
The specimen on the left, which has been standing for fifteen minutes, shows some darkening at the surface, due to the oxidation of homogentisic acid.
B
Vertebrae from a patient with alkaptonuria
Dense, black pigment deposited on the intervertebral disks of the vertebrae.

Figure 20.22
A patient with alkaptonuria.
A. Urine. B. Vertebrae.

E. Alkaptonuria (Alcaptonuria)

Alkaptonuria is a rare metabolic condition involving a deficiency in *homogentisic acid oxidase*, resulting in the accumulation of homogentisic acid. [Note: This reaction occurs in the degradative pathway of tyrosine, p. 269.] The condition has three characteristic symptoms: homogentisic aciduria (the patient's urine contains elevated levels of homogentisic acid, which is oxidized to a dark pigment on standing, Figure 20.22A), large joint arthritis, and black ochronotic pigmentation of cartilage and collagenous tissue (Figure 20.22B). Patients with alkaptonuria are usually asymptomatic until about age 40. Dark staining of the diapers sometimes can indicate the disease in infants, but usually no symptoms are present until later in life. Diets low in protein—especially in phenylalanine and tyrosine—help reduce the levels of homogentisic acid, and decrease the amount of pigment deposited in body tissues. Although alkaptonuria is not life-threatening, the associated arthritis may be severely crippling.

VII. CHAPTER SUMMARY

Amino acids whose catabolism yields **pyruvate** or one of the **intermediates of the tricarboxylic acid cycle** are termed **glucogenic**. (Figure 20.23).They can give rise to the net formation of **glucose** in the **liver** and the **kidney**. The solely glucogenic amino acids are glutamine, glutamate, proline, arginine, histidine, alanine, serine, glycine, cysteine, methionine, valine, threonine, aspartate, and asparagine. Amino acids whose catabolism yields either **acetoacetate** or one of its precursors, **acetyl coenzyme A (CoA)** or **acetoacetyl CoA**, are termed **ketogenic**. Leucine and lysine are solely ketogenic. Tyrosine, phenylalanine, tryptophan, and isoleucine are both ketogenic and glucogenic. **Nonessential** amino acids can be synthesized from metabolic intermediates, or from the carbon skeletons of essential amino acids. **Essential amino acids** need to be obtained from the **diet**. They include histidine, methionine, threonine, valine, isoleucine, phenylalanine, tryptophan, leucine and lysine. **Phenylketonuria** (**PKU**) is caused by a **deficiency** of **phenylalanine hydroxylase**—the enzyme that converts phenylalanine to tyrosine. **Hyperphenylalaninemia** may also be caused by deficiencies in the enzymes that synthesize or reduce the hydroxylase's coenzyme, **tetrahydrobiopterin**. Untreated patients with PKU suffer from **mental retardation**, failure to walk or talk, seizures, hyperactivity, tremor, microcephaly, failure to grow and a characteristic smell of the urine. Treatment involves controlling dietary phenylalanine. Note that tyrosine becomes an essential dietary component for people with PKU. **Maple syrup urine disease** (**MSUD**) is a recessive disorder in which there is a partial or complete **deficiency** in **branched-chain α-keto acid dehydrogenase**—an enzyme that decarboxylates **leucine**, **isoleucine**, and **valine**. Symptoms include feeding problems, vomiting, dehydration, severe metabolic acidosis, and a characteristic smell of the urine. If untreated, the disease leads to **mental retardation**, physical disabilities, and death. Treatment of MSUD involves a synthetic formula that contains limited amounts of leucine, isoleucine, and valine. Other important genetic diseases associated with amino acid metabolism include **albinism**, **homocystinuria**, **methylmalonyl CoA mutase deficiency**, **alkaptonuria**, **histidinemia**, **tyrosinemia**, and **cystathioninuria**.

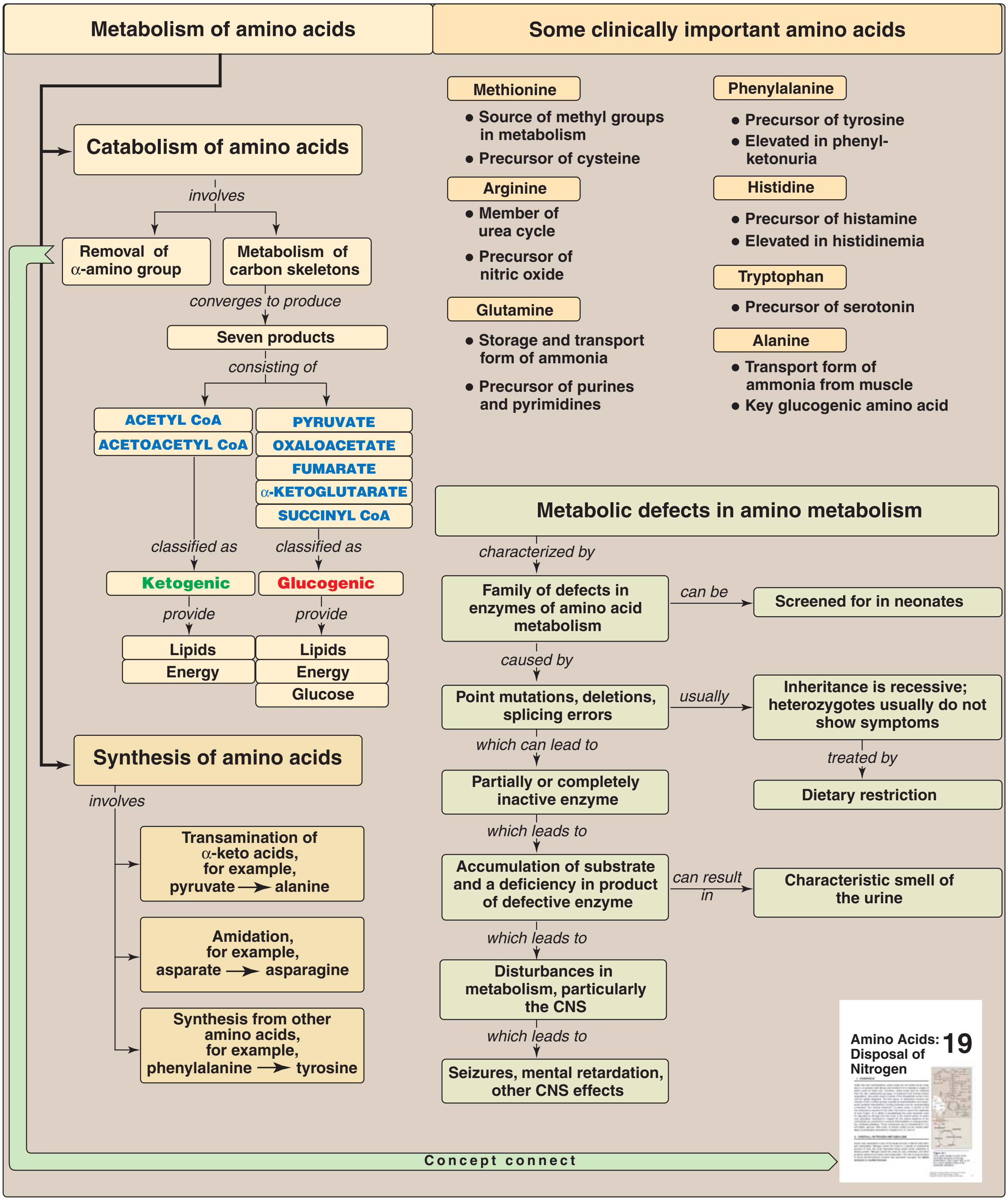

Metabolism of amino acids
Catabolism of amino acids
involves
Removal of α-amino group
Metabolism of carbon skeletons
converges to produce
Seven products
consisting of
ACETYL CoA
ACETOACETYL CoA
PYRUVATE
OXALOACETATE
FUMARATE
α-KETOGLUTARATE
SUCCINYL CoA
classified as
classified as
Ketogenic
Glucogenic
provide
provide
Lipids
Energy
Lipids
Energy
Glucose
Synthesis of amino acids
involves
Transamination of α-keto acids, for example, pyruvate → alanine
Amidation, for example, asparate → asparagine
Synthesis from other amino acids, for example, phenylalanine → tyrosine
Some clinically important amino acids
Methionine
• Source of methyl groups in metabolism
• Precursor of cysteine
Arginine
• Member of urea cycle
• Precursor of nitric oxide
Glutamine
• Storage and transport form of ammonia
• Precursor of purines and pyrimidines
Phenylalanine
• Precursor of tyrosine
• Elevated in phenylketonuria
Histidine
• Precursor of histamine
• Elevated in histidinemia
Tryptophan
• Precursor of serotonin
Alanine
• Transport form of ammonia from muscle
• Key glucogenic amino acid
Metabolic defects in amino metabolism
characterized by
Family of defects in enzymes of amino acid metabolism
can be
Screened for in neonates
caused by
Point mutations, deletions, splicing errors
usually
Inheritance is recessive; heterozygotes usually do not show symptoms
treated by
Dietary restriction
which can lead to
Partially or completely inactive enzyme
which leads to
Accumulation of substrate and a deficiency in product of defective enzyme
can result in
Characteristic smell of the urine
which leads to
Disturbances in metabolism, particularly the CNS
which leads to
Seizures, mental retardation, other CNS effects
Amino Acids: Disposal of Nitrogen 19
Concept connect

Figure 20.23
Key concept map for amino acid metabolism.

Study Questions:

Choose the ONE correct answer.

20.1 Which one of the following statements concerning amino acids is correct?

A. An increase in gluconeogenesis from amino acids results in a decrease in urea formation.
B. All essential amino acids are glycogenic.
C. Ornithine and citrulline are found in tissue proteins.
D. Cysteine is an essential amino acid in individuals consuming a diet severely limited in methionine.
E. In the presence of adequate dietary sources of tyrosine, phenylalanine is not an essential amino acid.

Correct answer = D. Methionine is the precursor of cysteine. An increase in the availability of gluconeogenic amino acids from the catabolism of body protein is associated with increased ammonia and results in increased urea production. The essential amino acids leucine and lysine are ketogenic. Ornithine and citrulline are amino acids that are intermediates in the urea cycle, but are not found in tissue proteins because there are no codons for them. Phenylalanine is essential regardless of the level of tyrosine.

20.2 Which one of the following statements concerning a 1-week-old male infant with undetected classic phenylketonuria is correct?

A. Tyrosine is a nonessential amino acid for the infant.
B. High levels of phenylpyruvate appear in his urine.
C. Therapy must begin within the first year of life.
D. A diet devoid of phenylalanine should be initiated immediately.
E. When the infant reaches adulthood, it is recommended that diet therapy be discontinued.

Correct answer = B. Phenyllactate, phenylacetate, and phenylpyruvate, which are not normally produced in significant amounts in the presence of functional phenylalanine hydroxylase, are elevated in PKU, and appear in the urine. In patients with PKU, tyrosine cannot be synthesized from phenylalanine and, hence, becomes essential and must be supplied in the diet. Treatment must begin during the first 7–10 days of life to prevent mental retardation. Discontinuance of the phenylalanine-restricted diet before 8 years of age is associated with poor performance on IQ tests. Adult PKU patients show deterioration of attention and speed of mental processing after discontinuation of the diet. Elevated levels of phenylalanine are teratogenic. Lifelong restriction of dietary phenylalanine is, therefore, recommended.

20.3 A 4-year-old boy of a first-degree consanguineous couple was noted by the parents to have darkening of the urine to an almost black color when it was left standing. He has a normal sibling, and there are no other medical problems. Growth and development to date are normal. Which of the following is most likely to be elevated in this patient?

A. Methylmalonate.
B. Homogentisate.
C. Phenylpyruvate.
D. α-Ketoisovalerate.
E. Homocysteine.

Correct answer = B. Alkaptonuria is a rare metabolic disease involving a deficiency in homogentisic acid oxidase, and the subsequent accumulation of homogentisic acid in the urine, which turns dark upon standing. The elevation of methylmalonate (due to methylmalonyl CoA mutase deficiency), phenylpyruvate (due to phenylalanine hydroxylase deficiency), α-ketoisovalerate (due to branched-chain α-keto acid dehydrogenase deficiency), and homocysteine (due to cystathionine β-synthase deficiency) are inconsistent with a healthy child with darkening of the urine.

20.4 What enzyme is deficient in: homocystinuria, methylmalonic acidemia, MSUD, oculocutaneous albinism, PKU?

Answer: Cystathionine β-synthase, methylmalonyl CoA mutase, branched-chain α-keto acid dehydrogenase, tyrosinase, phenylanine hydroxylase. [Note:Deficiency of dihydropteridine reductase or any of the enzymes needed for BH4 synthesis can also result in hyperphenylalaninemia.]

Conversion of Amino Acids to Specialized Products

21

I. OVERVIEW

In addition to serving as building blocks for proteins, amino acids are precursors of many nitrogen-containing compounds that have important physiologic functions (Figure 21.1). These molecules include porphyrins, neurotransmitters, hormones, purines, and pyrimidines.

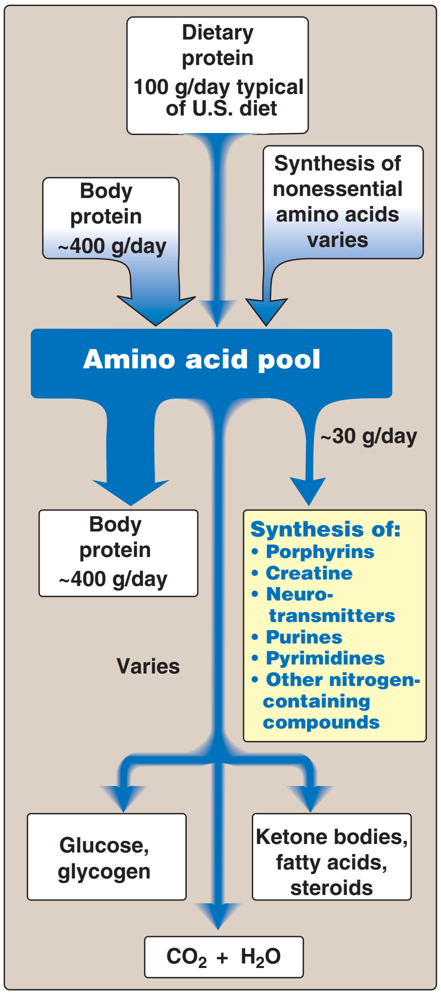

Dietary protein
100 g/day typical of U.S. diet
Body protein
~400 g/day
Synthesis of nonessential amino acids varies
Amino acid pool
~30 g/day
Body protein
~400 g/day
Synthesis of:
• Porphyrins
• Creatine
• Neuro-transmitters
• Purines
• Pyrimidines
• Other nitrogen-containing compounds
Varies
Glucose, glycogen
Ketone bodies, fatty acids, steroids
CO_2 + H_2O

Figure 21.1
Amino acids as precursors of nitrogen-containing compounds.

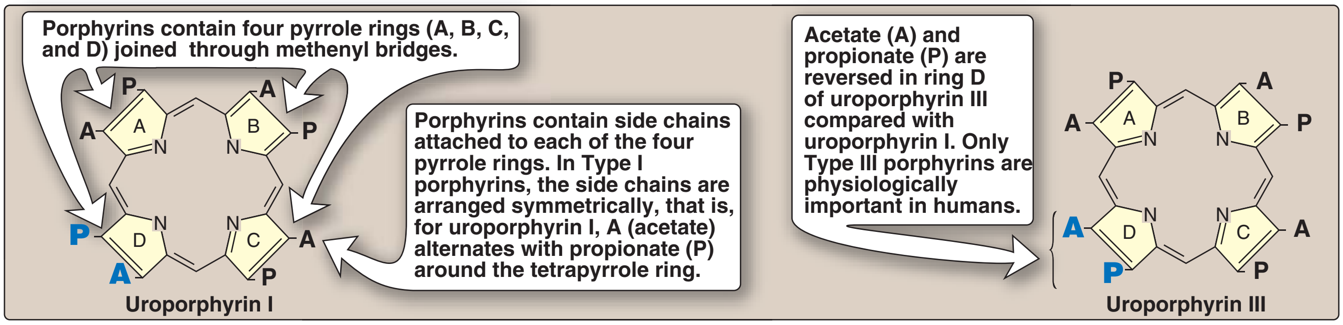
II. PORPHYRIN METABOLISM

Porphyrins are cyclic compounds that readily bind metal ions—usually Fe^{2+} or Fe^{3+}. The most prevalent metalloporphyrin in humans is heme, which consists of one ferrous (Fe^{2+}) iron ion coordinated in the center of the tetrapyrrole ring of protoporphyrin IX (see p. 280). Heme is the prosthetic group for hemoglobin, myoglobin, the cytochromes, *catalase, nitric oxide synthase*, and *peroxidase*. These hemeproteins are rapidly synthesized and degraded. For example, 6–7 g of hemoglobin are synthesized each day to replace heme lost through the normal turnover of erythrocytes. Coordinated with the turnover of hemeproteins is the simultaneous synthesis and degradation of the associated porphyrins, and recycling of the bound iron ions.

A. Structure of porphyrins

Porphyrins are cyclic molecules formed by the linkage of four pyrrole rings through methenyl bridges (Figure 21.2). Three structural features of these molecules are relevant to understanding their medical significance.

1. **Side chains:** Different porphyrins vary in the nature of the side chains that are attached to each of the four pyrrole rings. Uroporphyrin contains acetate ($–CH_2–COO^–$) and propionate ($–CH_2–CH_2–COO^–$) side chains, coproporphyrin contains methyl ($–CH_3$) and propionate groups, and protoporphyrin IX (and heme) contains vinyl ($–CH=CH_2$), methyl, and propionate groups. [Note: The methyl and vinyl groups are produced by decarboxylation of acetate and propionate side chains, respectively.]



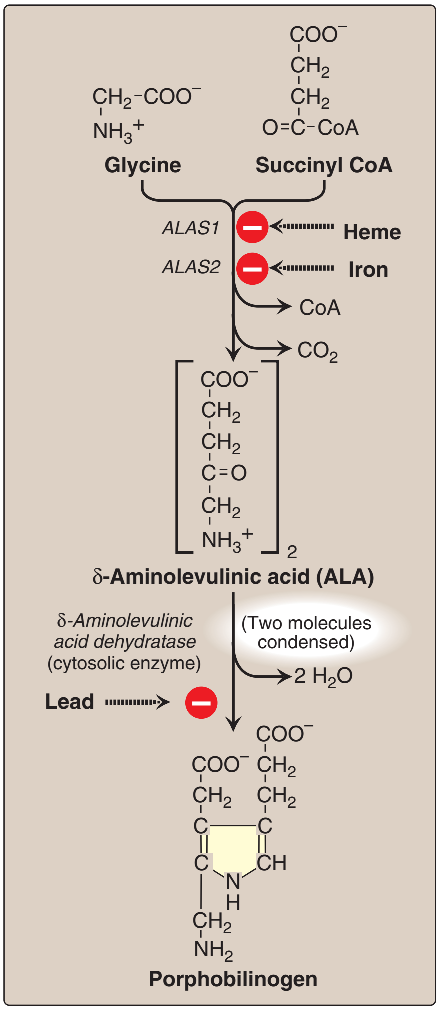
Porphyrins contain four pyrrole rings (A, B, C, and D) joined through methenyl bridges.

Porphyrins contain side chains attached to each of the four pyrrole rings. In Type I porphyrins, the side chains are arranged symmetrically, that is, for uroporphyrin I, A (acetate) alternates with propionate (P) around the tetrapyrrole ring.

Acetate (A) and propionate (P) are reversed in ring D of uroporphyrin III compared with uroporphyrin I. Only Type III porphyrins are physiologically important in humans.

P
A
A
B
P
N
N
A
N
N
P
D
C
A
A
P
Uroporphyrin I
P
A
A
A
B
P
N
N
A
D
C
A
N
N
P
P
Uroporphyrin III

Figure 21.2
Structures of uroporphyrin I and uroporphyrin III. A = acetate and P = propionate.



CH_2-COO^-
NH_3^+
Glycine
COO^-
CH_2
CH_2
O=C-CoA
Succinyl CoA
ALAS1
Heme
ALAS2
Iron
CoA
CO_2
COO^-
CH_2
CH_2
C=O
CH_2
NH_3^+
2
δ-Aminolevulinic acid (ALA)
δ-Aminolevulinic acid dehydratase (cytosolic enzyme)
(Two molecules condensed)
2 H_2O
Lead
COO^-
COO^-
CH_2
CH_2
CH_2
C
C
C
CH
N
H
CH_2
NH_2
Porphobilinogen

Figure 21.3
Pathway of porphyrin synthesis: Formation of porphobilinogen. *ALAS* = *δ-aminolevulinic acid synthase*. (Continued in Figures 21.4 and 21.5.)

2. **Distribution of side chains:** The side chains of porphyrins can be ordered around the tetrapyrrole nucleus in four different ways, designated by Roman numerals I to IV. Only Type III porphyrins, which contain an asymmetric substitution on ring D (see Figure 21.2), are physiologically important in humans. [Note: Protoporphyrin IX is a member of the Type III series.]

3. **Porphyrinogens:** These porphyrin precursors (for example, uroporphyrinogen) exist in a chemically reduced, colorless form, and serve as intermediates between porphobilinogen and the oxidized, colored protoporphyrins in heme biosynthesis.

B. Biosynthesis of heme

The major sites of heme biosynthesis are the liver, which synthesizes a number of heme proteins (particularly cytochrome P450 proteins), and the erythrocyte-producing cells of the bone marrow, which are active in hemoglobin synthesis. [Note: Over 85% of all heme synthesis occurs in erythroid tissue.] In the liver, the rate of heme synthesis is highly variable, responding to alterations in the cellular heme pool caused by fluctuating demands for heme proteins. In contrast, heme synthesis in erythroid cells is relatively constant, and is matched to the rate of globin synthesis. The initial reaction and the last three steps in the formation of porphyrins occur in mitochondria, whereas the intermediate steps of the biosynthetic pathway occur in the cytosol (see Figure 21.8). [Note: Mature red blood cells lack mitochondria and are unable to synthesize heme.]

1. **Formation of δ-aminolevulinic acid (ALA):** All the carbon and nitrogen atoms of the porphyrin molecule are provided by glycine (a nonessential amino acid) and succinyl coenzyme A (an intermediate in the citric acid cycle) that condense to form ALA in a reaction catalyzed by *ALA synthase* (*ALAS*) (Figure 21.3) This reaction requires pyridoxal phosphate (PLP) as a coenzyme, and is the committed and rate-limiting step in porphyrin biosynthesis. [Note: There are two isoforms of *ALAS*, 1 and 2, each controlled by different mechanisms. Erythroid tissue produces only *ALAS2*, the gene for which is located on the X-chromosome. Loss of function mutations in *ALAS2* result in X-linked sideroblastic anemia.]

   a. **End-product inhibition of ALAS1 by hemin:** When porphyrin production exceeds the availability of the apoproteins that require it, heme accumulates and is converted to hemin by the oxidation of Fe^{2+} to Fe^{3+}. Hemin decreases the activity of hepatic *ALAS1* by causing decreased synthesis of the enzyme, through inhibition of mRNA synthesis and use (heme decreases stability of the mRNA), and by inhibiting mitochondrial import of the enzyme. [Note: In erythroid cells, *ALAS2* is controlled by the availability of intracellular iron.]

b. **Effect of drugs on ALA synthase activity:** Administration of any of a large number of drugs results in a significant increase in hepatic *ALAS1* activity. These drugs are metabolized by the *microsomal cytochrome P450 monooxygenase* system—a hemeprotein *oxidase* system found in the liver (see p. 149). In response to these drugs, the synthesis of cytochrome P450 proteins increases, leading to an enhanced consumption of heme—a component of cytochrome P450 proteins. This, in turn, causes a decrease in the concentration of heme in liver cells. The lower intracellular heme concentration leads to an increase in the synthesis of *ALAS1* (derepression), and prompts a corresponding increase in ALA synthesis.

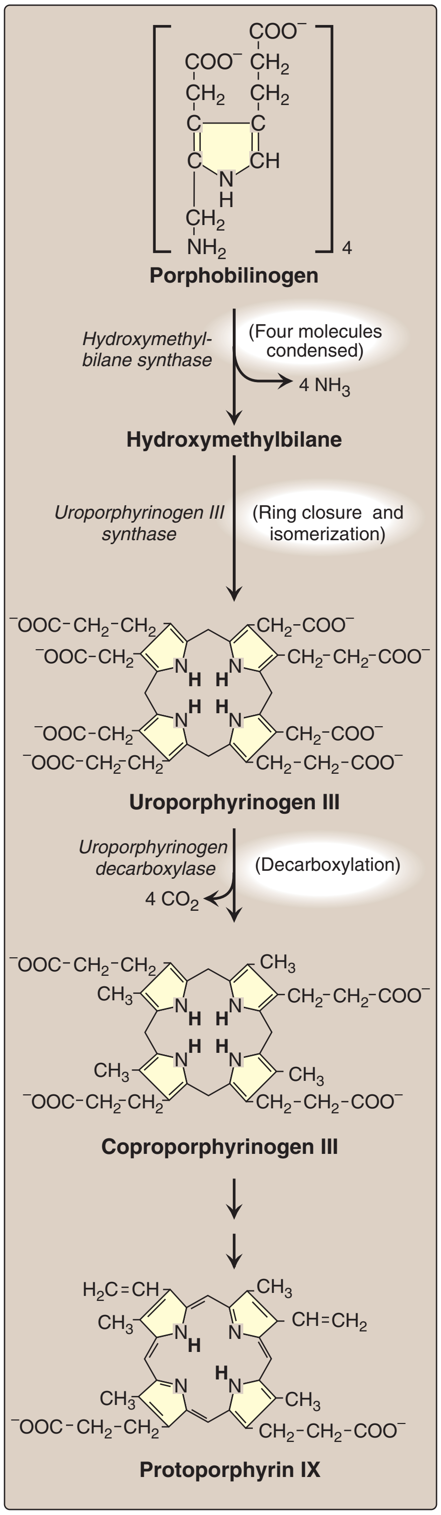
2. **Formation of porphobilinogen:** The condensation of two molecules of ALA to form porphobilinogen by Zn-containing *ALA dehydratase* (*porphobilinogen synthase*) is extremely sensitive to inhibition by heavy metal ions, for example, lead that replace the zinc (see Figure 21.3). This inhibition is, in part, responsible for the elevation in ALA and the anemia seen in lead poisoning.

3. **Formation of uroporphyrinogen:** The condensation of four porphobilinogens produces the linear tetrapyrrole, hydroxymethylbilane, which is isomerized and cyclized by *uroporphyrinogen III synthase* to produce the asymmetric uroporphyrinogen III. This cyclic tetrapyrrole undergoes decarboxylation of its acetate groups, generating coproporphyrinogen III (Figure 21.4). These reactions occur in the cytosol.

4. **Formation of heme:** Coproporphyrinogen III enters the mitochondrion, and two propionate side chains are decarboxylated to vinyl groups generating protoporphyrinogen IX, which is oxidized to protoporphyrin IX. The introduction of iron (as Fe^{2+}) into protoporphyrin IX occurs spontaneously, but the rate is enhanced by *ferrochelatase*, an enzyme that, like *ALA dehydratase*, is inhibited by lead (Figure 21.5).

C. Porphyrias

Porphyrias are rare, inherited (or occasionally acquired) defects in heme synthesis, resulting in the accumulation and increased excretion of porphyrins or porphyrin precursors (see Figure 21.8). [Note: With few exceptions, porphyrias are inherited as autosomal dominant disorders.] The mutations that cause the porphyrias are heterogenous (not all are at the same DNA locus), and nearly every affected family has its own mutation. Each porphyria results in the accumulation of a unique pattern of intermediates caused by the deficiency of an enzyme in the heme synthetic pathway. [Note: "Porphyria" refers to the purple color caused by pigment-like porphyrins in the urine of some patients with defects in heme synthesis.]



Porphobilinogen
Hydroxymethylbilane synthase
(Four molecules condensed)
4 NH3
Hydroxymethylbilane
Uroporphyrinogen III synthase
(Ring closure and isomerization)
Uroporphyrinogen III
Uroporphyrinogen decarboxylase
(Decarboxylation)
4 CO2
Coproporphyrinogen III
Protoporphyrin IX

Figure 21.4
Pathway of porphyrin synthesis: Formation of protoporphyrin IX. (Continued from Figure 21.3.)

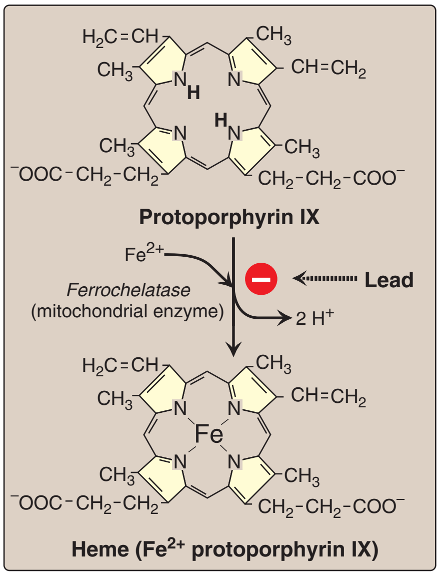


Figure 21.5
Pathway of porphyrin synthesis: Formation of heme. (Continued from Figures 21.3 and 21.4)

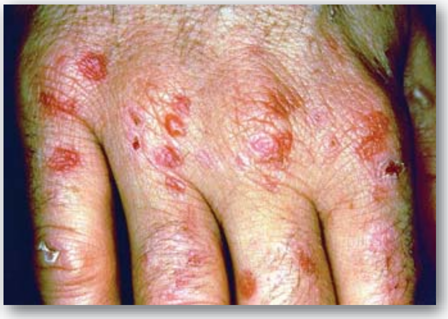


Figure 21.6
Skin eruptions in a patient with porphyria cutanea tarda.

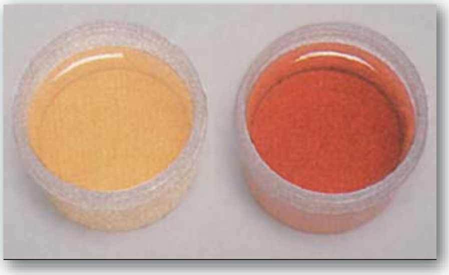


Figure 21.7
Urine from a patient with porphyria cutanea tarda (right) and from a patient with normal porphyrin excretion (left).

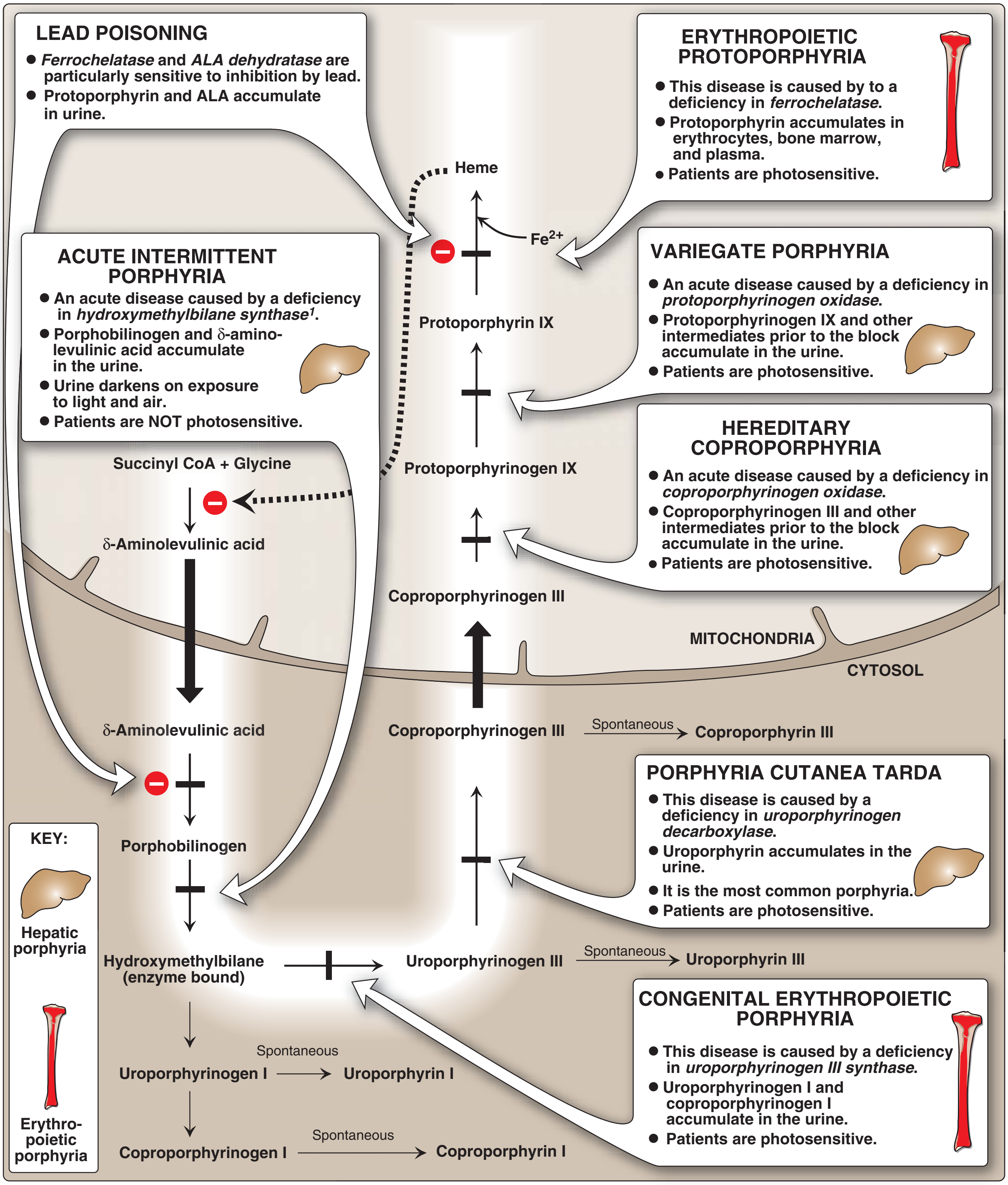
1. **Clinical manifestations:** The porphyrias are classified as erythropoietic or hepatic, depending on whether the enzyme deficiency occurs in the erythropoietic cells of the bone marrow or in the liver. Hepatic porphyrias can be further classified as chronic or acute. In general, individuals with an enzyme defect prior to the synthesis of the tetrapyrroles manifest abdominal and neuropsychiatric signs, whereas those with enzyme defects leading to the accumulation of tetrapyrrole intermediates show photosensitivity—that is, their skin itches and burns (pruritus) when exposed to visible light. [Note: Photosenstivity is a result of the oxidation of colorless porphyrinogens to colored porphyrins, which are photosensitizing molecules that are thought to participate in the formation of superoxide radicals from oxygen. These reactive oxygen species can oxidatively damage membranes, and cause the release of destructive enzymes from lysosomes.]

   a. **Chronic hepatic porphyria:** Porphyria cutanea tarda, the most common porphyria, is a chronic disease of the liver. The disease is associated with a deficiency in *uroporphyrinogen decarboxylase,* but clinical expression of the enzyme deficiency is influenced by various factors, such as hepatic iron overload, exposure to sunlight, alcohol ingestion, and the presence of hepatitis B or C, or HIV infections. Clinical onset is typically during the fourth or fifth decade of life. Porphyrin accumulation leads to cutaneous symptoms (Figure 21.6), and urine that is red to brown in natural light (Figure 21.7), and pink to red in fluorescent light.

   b. **Acute hepatic porphyrias:** Acute hepatic porphyrias (*ALA dehydratase* deficiency, acute intermittent porphyria, hereditary coproporphyria, and variegate porphyria) are characterized by acute attacks of gastrointestinal, neuropsychiatric, and motor symptoms that may be accompanied by photosensitivity. Porphyrias leading to accumulation of ALA and porphobilinogen, such as acute intermittent porphyria, cause abdominal pain and neuropsychiatric disturbances, ranging from anxiety to delirium. Symptoms of the acute hepatic porphyrias are often precipitated by administration of drugs such as barbiturates and ethanol, which induce the synthesis of the heme-containing cytochrome P450 microsomal drug oxidation system. This further decreases the amount of available heme, which, in turn, promotes the increased synthesis of *ALAS1*.

   c. **Erythropoietic porphyrias:** The erythropoietic porphyrias (congenital erythropoietic porphyria and erythropoietic protoporphyria) are characterized by skin rashes and blisters that appear in early childhood. The diseases are complicated by cholestatic liver cirrhosis and progressive hepatic failure.

2. **Increased ALA synthase activity:** One common feature of the porphyrias is a decreased synthesis of heme. In the liver, heme normally functions as a repressor of the gene for *ALAS1*. Therefore, the absence of this end product results in an increase in the synthesis of *ALA synthase1* (derepression). This causes an increased synthesis of intermediates that occur prior to the genetic block. The accumulation of these toxic intermediates is the major pathophysiology of the porphyrias.



LEAD POISONING

- *Ferrochelatase* and *ALA dehydratase* are particularly sensitive to inhibition by lead.
- Protoporphyrin and ALA accumulate in urine.

ERYTHROPOIETIC PROTOPORPHYRIA

- This disease is caused by to a deficiency in *ferrochelatase*.
- Protoporphyrin accumulates in erythrocytes, bone marrow, and plasma.
- Patients are photosensitive.

ACUTE INTERMITTENT PORPHYRIA

- An acute disease caused by a deficiency in *hydroxymethylbilane synthase*[1].
- Porphobilinogen and δ-aminolevulinic acid accumulate in the urine.
- Urine darkens on exposure to light and air.
- Patients are NOT photosensitive.

VARIEGATE PORPHYRIA

- An acute disease caused by a deficiency in *protoporphyrinogen oxidase*.
- Protoporphyrinogen IX and other intermediates prior to the block accumulate in the urine.
- Patients are photosensitive.

HEREDITARY COPROPORPHYRIA

- An acute disease caused by a deficiency in *coproporphyrinogen oxidase*.
- Coproporphyrinogen III and other intermediates prior to the block accumulate in the urine.
- Patients are photosensitive.

PORPHYRIA CUTANEA TARDA

- This disease is caused by a deficiency in *uroporphyrinogen decarboxylase*.
- Uroporphyrin accumulates in the urine.
- It is the most common porphyria.
- Patients are photosensitive.

CONGENITAL ERYTHROPOIETIC PORPHYRIA

- This disease is caused by a deficiency in *uroporphyrinogen III synthase*.
- Uroporphyrinogen I and coproporphyrinogen I accumulate in the urine.
- Patients are photosensitive.

Heme
Fe2+
Protoporphyrin IX
Protoporphyrinogen IX
Succinyl CoA + Glycine
δ-Aminolevulinic acid
Coproporphyrinogen III
MITOCHONDRIA
CYTOSOL
δ-Aminolevulinic acid
Coproporphyrinogen III
Spontaneous
Coproporphyrin III
KEY:
Hepatic porphyria
Erythropoietic porphyria
Porphobilinogen
Hydroxymethylbilane (enzyme bound)
Uroporphyrinogen III
Spontaneous
Uroporphyrin III
Spontaneous
Uroporphyrinogen I
Uroporphyrin I
Spontaneous
Coproporphyrinogen I
Coproporphyrin I

Figure 21.8

Summary of heme synthesis. [1]Also referred to as *porphobilinogen deaminase*.

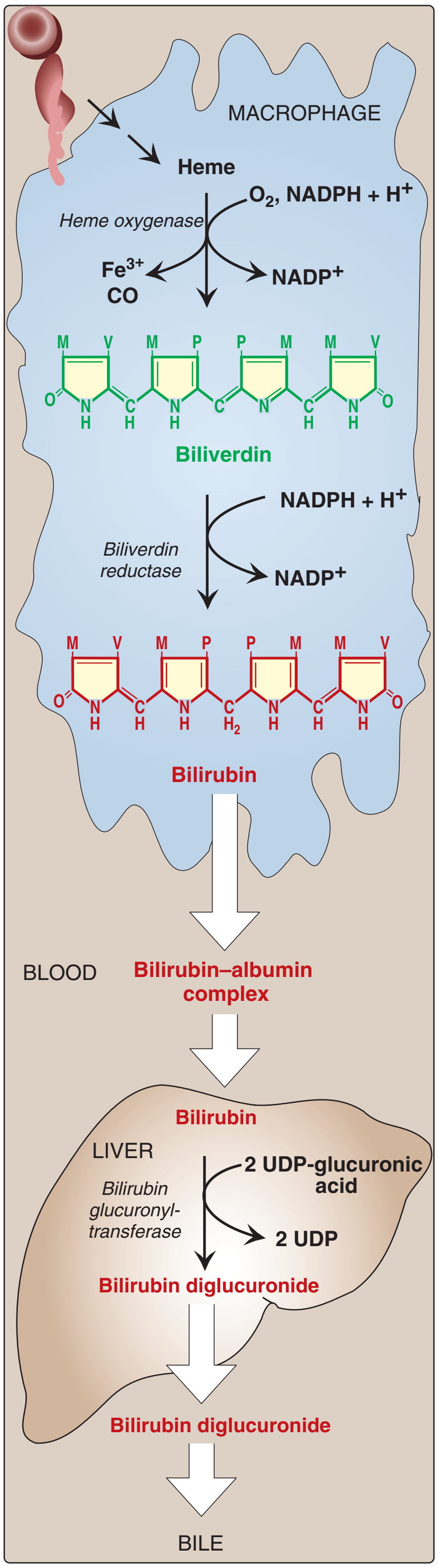


Figure 21.9
Formation of bilirubin from heme. UDP = uridine diphosphate.

3. **Treatment:** During acute porphyria attacks, patients require medical support, particularly treatment for pain and vomiting. The severity of symptoms of the porphyrias can be diminished by intravenous injection of hemin and glucose, which decreases the synthesis of *ALAS1*. Avoidance of sunlight and ingestion of β-carotene (a free-radical scavenger) are helpful in porphyrias with photosensitivity.

D. Degradation of heme

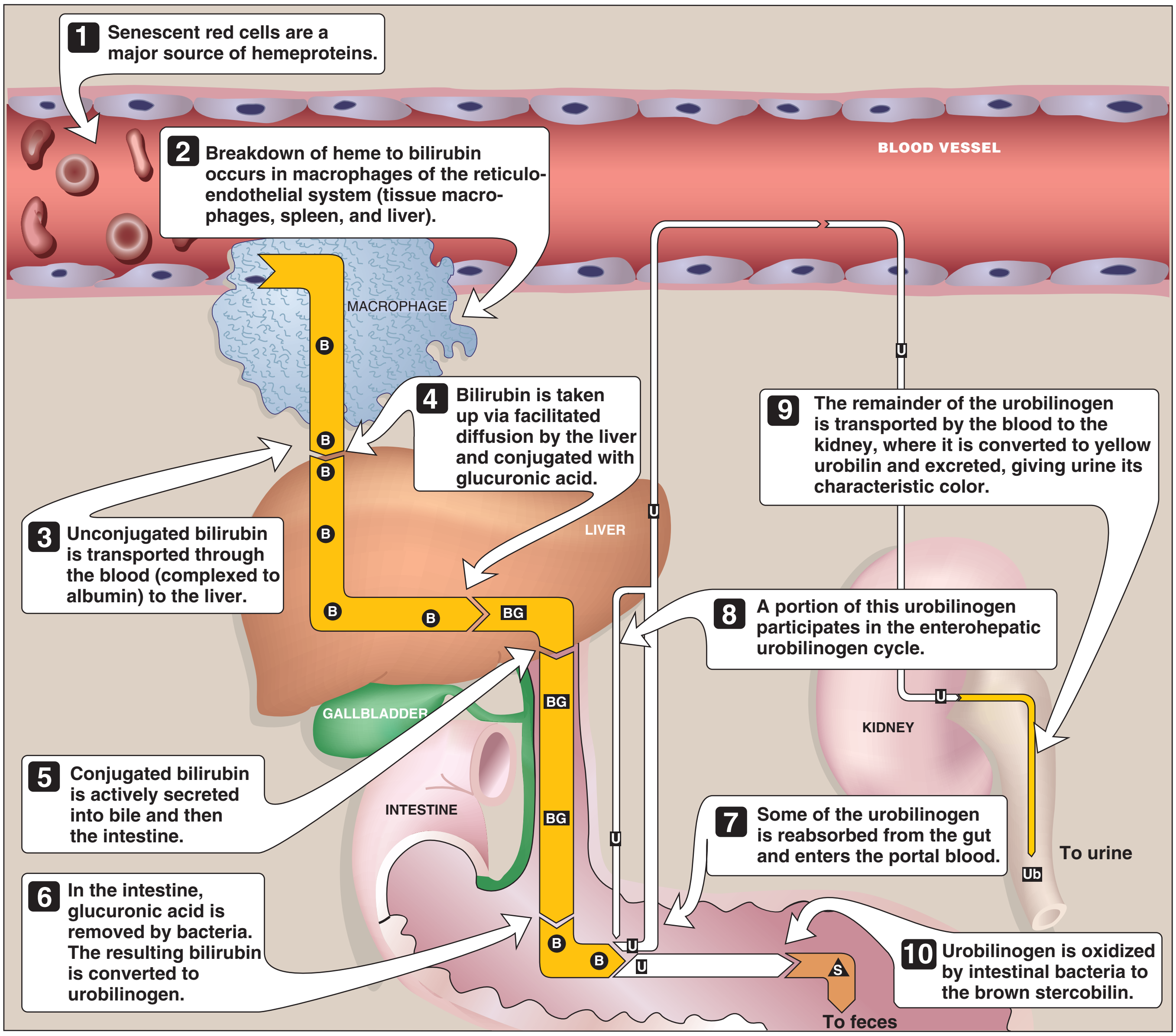
After approximately 120 days in the circulation, red blood cells are taken up and degraded by the reticuloendothelial system, particularly in the liver and spleen (Figure 21.9). Approximately 85% of heme destined for degradation comes from senescent red blood cells, and 15% is from turnover of immature red blood cells and cytochromes from nonerythroid tissues.

1. **Formation of bilirubin:** The first step in the degradation of heme is catalyzed by the microsomal *heme oxygenase* system of the reticuloendothelial cells. In the presence of NADPH and O_2, the enzyme adds a hydroxyl group to the methenyl bridge between two pyrrole rings, with a concomitant oxidation of ferrous iron to Fe^{3+}. A second oxidation by the same enzyme system results in cleavage of the porphyrin ring. The green pigment biliverdin is produced as ferric iron and CO are released (see Figure 21.9). [Note: The CO has biologic function, acting as a signaling molecule and vasodilator.] Biliverdin is reduced, forming the red-orange bilirubin. Bilirubin and its derivatives are collectively termed bile pigments. [Note: The changing colors of a bruise reflect the varying pattern of intermediates that occurs during heme degradation.]

> Bilirubin, unique to mammals, appears to function as an antioxidant. In this role, it is oxidized to biliverdin, which is then reduced by *biliverdin reductase*, regenerating bilirubin.

2. **Uptake of bilirubin by the liver:** Bilirubin is only slightly soluble in plasma and, therefore, is transported to the liver by binding noncovalently to albumin. [Note: Certain anionic drugs, such as salicylates and sulfonamides, can displace bilirubin from albumin, permitting bilirubin to enter the central nervous system. This causes the potential for neural damage in infants.] Bilirubin dissociates from the carrier albumin molecule, enters a hepatocyte via facilitated diffusion, and binds to intracellular proteins, particularly the protein ligandin.

3. **Formation of bilirubin diglucuronide:** In the hepatocyte, the solubility of bilirubin is increased by the addition of two molecules of glucuronic acid. [Note: This process is referred to as conjugation.] The reaction is catalyzed by microsomal *bilirubin glucuronyltransferase* using uridine diphosphate-glucuronic acid as the glucuronate donor. [Note: Varying degrees of deficiency of this enzyme result in Crigler-Najjar I and II and Gilbert syndrome, with Crigler-Najjar I being the most severe deficiency.]



1 Senescent red cells are a major source of hemeproteins.

2 Breakdown of heme to bilirubin occurs in macrophages of the reticuloendothelial system (tissue macrophages, spleen, and liver).

3 Unconjugated bilirubin is transported through the blood (complexed to albumin) to the liver.

4 Bilirubin is taken up via facilitated diffusion by the liver and conjugated with glucuronic acid.

5 Conjugated bilirubin is actively secreted into bile and then the intestine.

6 In the intestine, glucuronic acid is removed by bacteria. The resulting bilirubin is converted to urobilinogen.

7 Some of the urobilinogen is reabsorbed from the gut and enters the portal blood.

8 A portion of this urobilinogen participates in the enterohepatic urobilinogen cycle.

9 The remainder of the urobilinogen is transported by the blood to the kidney, where it is converted to yellow urobilin and excreted, giving urine its characteristic color.

10 Urobilinogen is oxidized by intestinal bacteria to the brown stercobilin.

Figure 21.10
Catabolism of heme B = bilirubin; BG = bilirubin diglucuronide; U = urobilinogen; Ub = urobilin; S = stercobilin.

4. **Secretion of bilirubin into bile:** Bilirubin diglucuronide (conjugated bilirubin) is actively transported against a concentration gradient into the bile canaliculi and then into the bile. This energy-dependent, rate-limiting step is susceptible to impairment in liver disease. [Note: A deficiency in the protein required for transport of conjugated bilirubin out of the liver results in Dubin-Johnson syndrome.] Unconjugated bilirubin is normally not secreted.

5. **Formation of urobilins in the intestine:** Bilirubin diglucuronide is hydrolyzed and reduced by bacteria in the gut to yield urobilinogen, a colorless compound. Most of the urobilinogen is oxidized by intestinal bacteria to stercobilin, which gives feces the characteristic brown color. However, some of the urobilinogen is reabsorbed from the gut and enters the portal blood. A portion of

this urobilinogen participates in the enterohepatic urobilinogen cycle in which it is taken up by the liver, and then resecreted into the bile. The remainder of the urobilinogen is transported by the blood to the kidney, where it is converted to yellow urobilin and excreted, giving urine its characteristic color. The metabolism of bilirubin is summarized in Figure 21.10.

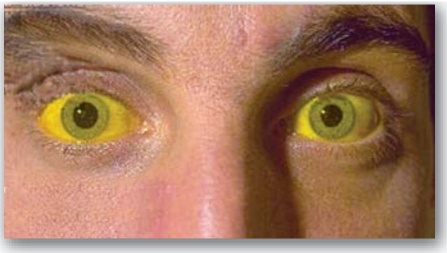


Figure 21.11
Jaundiced patient, with the sclerae of his eyes appearing yellow.

E. Jaundice

Jaundice (also called icterus) refers to the yellow color of skin, nail beds, and sclerae (whites of the eyes) caused by deposition of bilirubin, secondary to increased bilirubin levels in the blood (hyperbilirubinemia, Figure 21.11). Although not a disease, jaundice is usually a symptom of an underlying disorder.

1. **Types of jaundice:** Jaundice can be classified into three major forms described below. However, in clinical practice, jaundice is often more complex than indicated in this simple classification. For example, the accumulation of bilirubin may be a result of defects at more than one step in its metabolism.

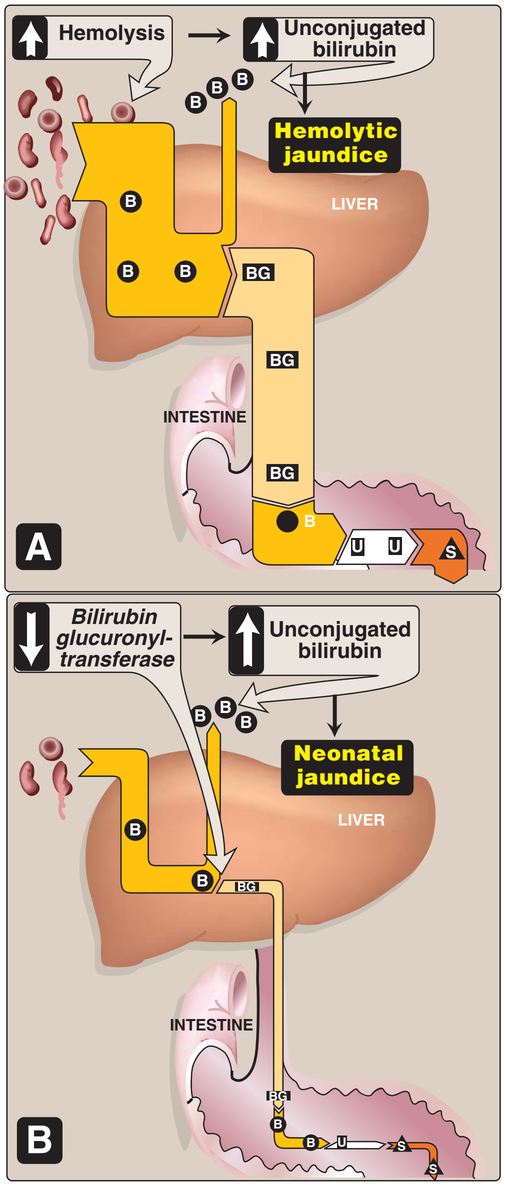


Figure 21.12
Alterations in the metabolism of heme. A. Hemolytic jaundice. B. Neonatal jaundice. BG = bilirubin glucuronide; B = bilirubin; U = urobilinogen; S = stercobilin.

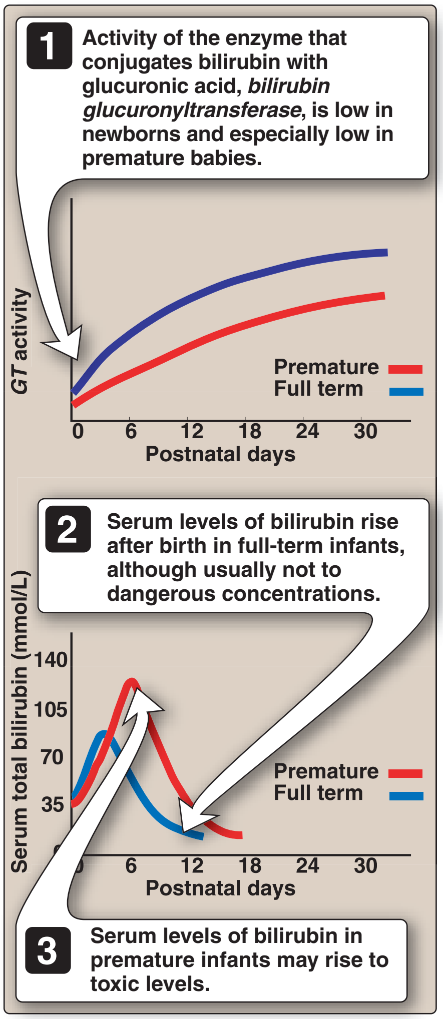
a. **Hemolytic jaundice:** The liver has the capacity to conjugate and excrete over 3,000 mg of bilirubin per day, whereas the normal production of bilirubin is only 300 mg/day. This excess capacity allows the liver to respond to increased heme degradation with a corresponding increase in conjugation and secretion of bilirubin diglucuronide. However, massive lysis of red blood cells (for example, in patients with sickle cell anemia, *pyruvate kinase* or *glucose 6-phosphate dehydrogenase* deficiency) may produce bilirubin faster than it can be conjugated. Unconjugated bilirubin levels in the blood become elevated, causing jaundice (Figure 21.12A). [Note: More conjugated bilirubin is excreted into the bile, the amount of urobilinogen entering the enterohepatic circulation is increased, and urinary urobilinogen is increased.]

b. **Hepatocellular jaundice:** Damage to liver cells (for example, in patients with cirrhosis or hepatitis) can cause unconjugated bilirubin levels in the blood to increase as a result of decreased conjugation. Urobilinogen is increased in the urine because hepatic damage decreases the enterohepatic circulation of this compound, allowing more to enter the blood, from which it is filtered into the urine. The urine thus darkens, whereas stools may be a pale, clay color. Plasma levels of *AST* and *ALT* (see p. 251) are elevated. [Note: If conjugated bilirubin is not efficiently secreted from the liver into bile (intrahepatic cholestasis), it can diffuse ("leak") into the blood, causing a conjugated hyperbilirubinemia.]

c. **Obstructive jaundice:** In this instance, jaundice is not caused by overproduction of bilirubin or decreased conjugation, but instead results from obstruction of the bile duct (extrahepatic cholestasis). For example, the presence of a tumor or bile stones may block the bile ducts, preventing passage of bilirubin into the intestine. Patients with obstructive jaundice experience gastrointestinal pain and nausea, and produce stools that are a pale, clay color, and urine that darkens upon standing. The liver "regurgitates" conjugated bilirubin into the blood (hyperbilirubinemia). The compound is eventually excreted in the urine. Urinary urobiloinogen is absent. [Note: Prolonged obstruction of the bile duct can lead to liver damage and a subsequent rise in unconjugated bilirubin.]

2. **Jaundice in newborns:** Newborn infants, particularly if premature, often accumulate bilirubin, because the activity of hepatic *bilirubin glucuronyltransferase* is low at birth—it reaches adult levels in about 4 weeks (Figures 21.12B and 21.13). Elevated bilirubin, in excess of the binding capacity of albumin, can diffuse into the basal ganglia and cause toxic encephalopathy (kernicterus). Thus, newborns with significantly elevated bilirubin levels are treated with blue fluorescent light (Figure 21.14), which converts bilirubin to more polar and, hence, water-soluble isomers. These photoisomers can be excreted into the bile without conjugation to glucuronic acid.

3. **Determination of bilirubin concentration:** Bilirubin is most commonly determined by the van den Bergh reaction, in which diazotized sulfanilic acid reacts with bilirubin to form red azodipyrroles that are measured colorimetrically. In aqueous solution, the water-soluble, conjugated bilirubin reacts rapidly with the reagent (within one minute), and is said to be "direct-reacting." The unconjugated bilirubin, which is much less soluble in aqueous solution, reacts more slowly. However, when the reaction is carried out in methanol, both conjugated and unconjugated bilirubin are soluble and react with the reagent, providing the total bilirubin value. The "indirect-reacting" bilirubin, which corresponds to the unconjugated bilirubin, is obtained by subtracting the direct-reacting bilirubin from the total bilirubin. [Note: In normal plasma, only about 4% of the total bilirubin is conjugated or direct-reacting, because most is secreted into bile.]


1 Activity of the enzyme that conjugates bilirubin with glucuronic acid, *bilirubin glucuronyltransferase*, is low in newborns and especially low in premature babies.

2 Serum levels of bilirubin rise after birth in full-term infants, although usually not to dangerous concentrations.

3 Serum levels of bilirubin in premature infants may rise to toxic levels.

Figure 21.13
Neonatal jaundice. *GT = glucuronyltransferase.*

III. OTHER NITROGEN-CONTAINING COMPOUNDS

A. Catecholamines

Dopamine, norepinephrine, and epinephrine are biologically active (biogenic) amines that are collectively termed catecholamines. Dopamine and norepinephrine are synthesized in the brain and function as neurotransmitters. Norepinephrine is also synthesized in the adrenal medulla, as is epinephrine.

1. **Function:** Outside the nervous system, norepinephrine and its methylated derivative, epinephrine, are hormone regulators of carbohydrate and lipid metabolism. Norepinephrine and epinephrine are released from storage vesicles in the adrenal medulla in response to fright, exercise, cold, and low levels of blood glucose. They increase the degradation of glycogen and triacylglycerol, as well as increase blood pressure and the output of the heart. These effects are part of a coordinated response to prepare the individual for stress, and are often called the "fight-or-flight" reactions.

2. **Synthesis of catecholamines:** The catecholamines are synthesized from tyrosine, as shown in Figure 21.15. Tyrosine is first hydroxylated by *tyrosine hydroxylase* to form 3,4-dihydroxyphenyl-

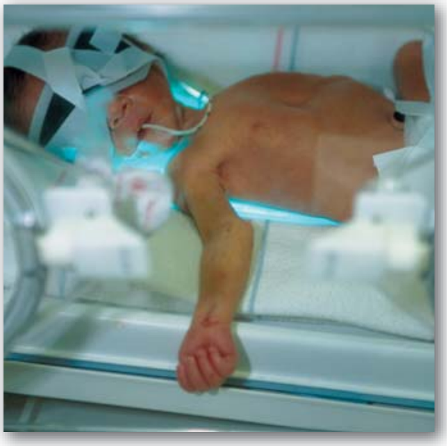


Figure 21.14
Phototherapy in neonatal jaudice

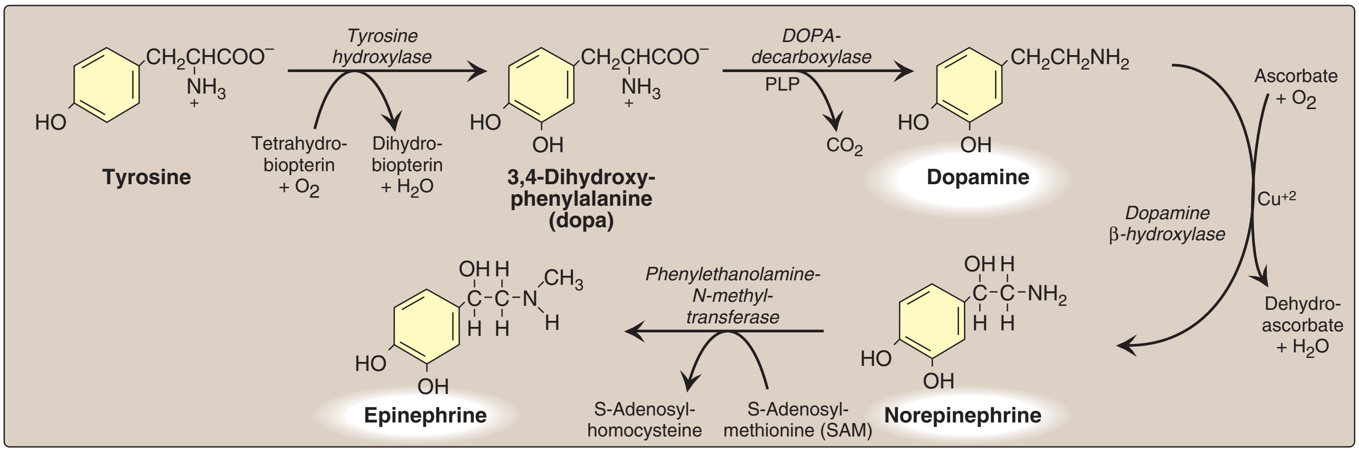

Tyrosine
Tyrosine hydroxylase
Tetrahydrobiopterin + O2
Dihydrobiopterin + H2O
3,4-Dihydroxyphenylalanine (dopa)
DOPA-decarboxylase
PLP
CO2
Dopamine
Ascorbate + O2
Cu+2
Dopamine β-hydroxylase
Dehydroascorbate + H2O
Norepinephrine
Phenylethanolamine-N-methyltransferase
S-Adenosylmethionine (SAM)
S-Adenosylhomocysteine
Epinephrine

Figure 21.15
Synthesis of catecholamines. PLP = pyridoxal phosphate.

alanine (DOPA) in a reaction analogous to that described for the hydroxylation of phenylalanine (see p. 268). The tetrahydrobiopterin (BH_4)-requiring enzyme is abundant in the central nervous system, the sympathetic ganglia, and the adrenal medulla, and is the rate-limiting step of the pathway. DOPA is decarboxylated in a reaction requiring pyridoxal phosphate (PLP, see p. 378) to form dopamine, which is hydroxylated by *dopamine β-hydroxylase* to yield norepinephrine in a reaction that requires ascorbate (vitamin C) and copper. Epinephrine is formed from norepinephrine by an N-methylation reaction using S-adenosylmethionine (SAM) as the methyl donor (see p. 264).

Parkinson disease, a neurodegenerative movement disorder, is due to insufficient dopamine production as a result of the idiopathic loss of dopamine-producing cells in the brain. Administration of L-DOPA (levodopa) is the most common treatment.

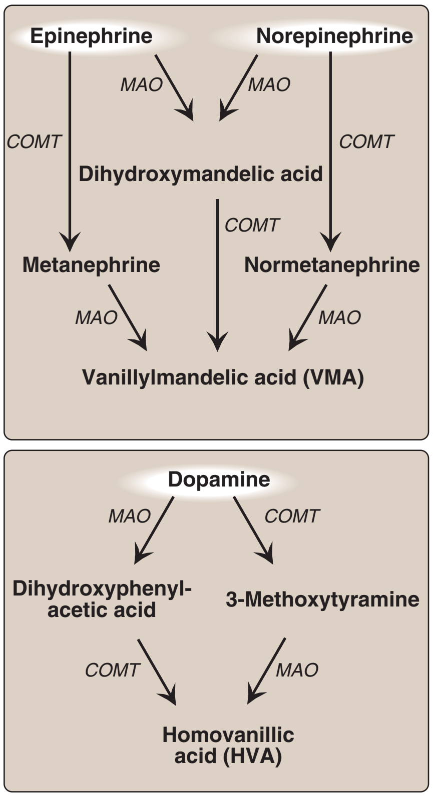

Epinephrine
Norepinephrine
MAO
MAO
COMT
COMT
Dihydroxymandelic acid
COMT
Metanephrine
Normetanephrine
MAO
MAO
Vanillylmandelic acid (VMA)
Dopamine
MAO
COMT
Dihydroxyphenylacetic acid
3-Methoxytyramine
COMT
MAO
Homovanillic acid (HVA)

Figure 21.16
Metabolism of the catecholamines by *catechol-O-methyltranferase* (*COMT*) and *monoamine oxidase* (*MAO*).

3. **Degradation of catecholamines:** The catecholamines are inactivated by oxidative deamination catalyzed by *monoamine oxidase* (*MAO*), and by O-methylation carried out by *catechol-O-methyltransferase* using SAM as the methyl donor (Figure 21.16). The two reactions can occur in either order. The aldehyde products of the *MAO* reaction are oxidized to the corresponding acids. The metabolic products of these reactions are excreted in the urine as vanillylmandelic acid (VMA) from epinephrine and norepinephrine, and homovanillic acid from dopamine. [Note: VMA is increased with pheochromocytomas, tumors of the adrenal characterized by excessive production of catecholamines.]

4. **MAO inhibitors:** *MAO* is found in neural and other tissues, such as the intestine and liver. In the neuron, this enzyme oxidatively deaminates and inactivates any excess neurotransmitter molecules (norepinephrine, dopamine, or serotonin) that may

leak out of synaptic vesicles when the neuron is at rest. *MAO* inhibitors may irreversibly or reversibly inactivate the enzyme, permitting neurotransmitter molecules to escape degradation and, therefore, to both accumulate within the presynaptic neuron and to leak into the synaptic space. This causes activation of norepinephrine and serotonin receptors, and may be responsible for the antidepressant action of these drugs.

B. Histamine

Histamine is a chemical messenger that mediates a wide range of cellular responses, including allergic and inflammatory reactions, gastric acid secretion, and possibly neurotransmission in parts of the brain. A powerful vasodilator, histamine is formed by decarboxylation of histidine in a reaction requiring PLP (Figure 21.17). It is secreted by mast cells as a result of allergic reactions or trauma. Histamine has no clinical applications, but agents that interfere with the action of histamine have important therapeutic applications.

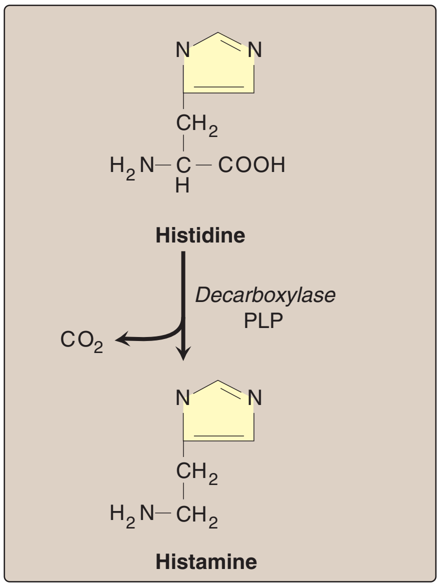


Figure 21.17
Biosynthesis of histamine. PLP = pyridoxal phosphate.

C. Serotonin

Serotonin, also called 5-hydroxytryptamine (5HT), is synthesized and stored at several sites in the body (Figure 21.18). By far the largest amount of serotonin is found in cells of the intestinal mucosa. Smaller amounts occur in the central nervous system, where it functions as a neurotransmitter, and in platelets. Serotonin is synthesized from tryptophan, which is hydroxylated in a BH_4-requiring reaction analogous to that catalyzed by *phenylalanine hydroxylase*. The product, 5-hydroxytryptophan, is decarboxylated to serotonin, which is also degraded by *MAO*. Serotonin has multiple physiologic roles, including pain perception, regulation of sleep, appetite, temperature, blood pressure, cognitive functions, and mood (causes a feeling of well-being). [Note: Serotonin is converted to melatonin in the pineal gland via acetylation and methylation.]

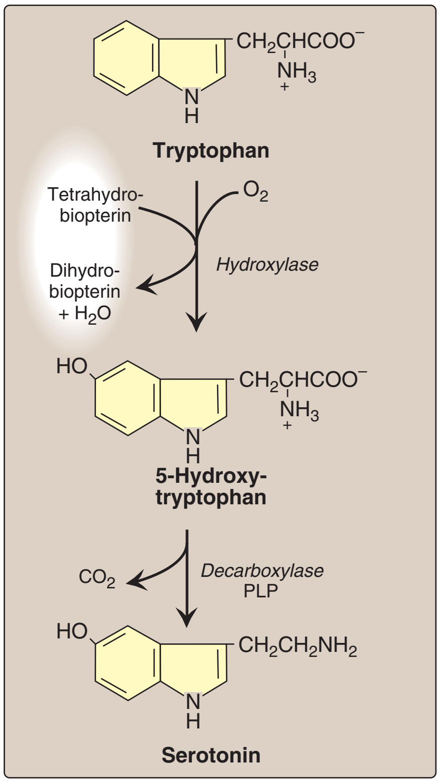


Figure 21.18
Synthesis of serotonin. PLP = pyridoxal phosphate.

D. Creatine

Creatine phosphate (also called phosphocreatine), the phosphorylated derivative of creatine found in muscle, is a high-energy compound that provides a small but rapidly mobilized reserve of high-energy phosphates that can be reversibly transferred to ADP (Figure 21.9) to maintain the intracellular level of ATP during the first few minutes of intense muscular contraction. [Note: The amount of creatine phosphate in the body is proportional to the muscle mass.]

1. **Synthesis:** Creatine is synthesized from glycine and the guanidino group of arginine, plus a methyl group from SAM (see Figure 21.19). Creatine is reversibly phosphorylated to creatine phosphate by *creatine kinase*, using ATP as the phosphate donor. [Note: The presence of *creatine kinase* (MB isozyme) in the plasma is indicative of heart damage, and is used in the diagnosis of myocardial infarction (see p. 65).]

2. **Degradation:** Creatine and creatine phosphate spontaneously cyclize at a slow but constant rate to form creatinine, which is excreted in the urine. The amount of creatinine excreted is propor-

tional to the total creatine phosphate content of the body, and thus can be used to estimate muscle mass. When muscle mass decreases for any reason (for example, from paralysis or muscular dystrophy), the creatinine content of the urine falls. In addition, any rise in blood creatinine is a sensitive indicator of kidney malfunction, because creatinine normally is rapidly removed from the blood and excreted. A typical adult male excretes about 15 mmol of creatinine per day.

E. Melanin

Melanin is a pigment that occurs in several tissues, particularly the eye, hair, and skin. It is synthesized from tyrosine in the epidermis by pigment-forming cells called melanocytes. Its function is to protect underlying cells from the harmful effects of sunlight. [Note: A defect in melanin production results in albinism, the most common form being due to defects in copper-containing *tyrosinase* (see p. 273).]

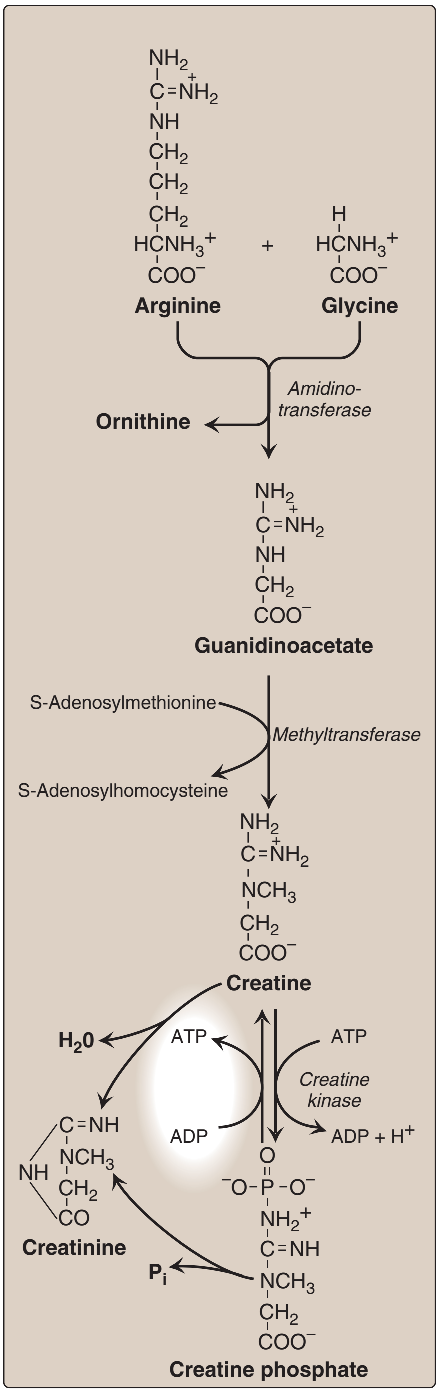


Figure 21.19
Synthesis of creatine.

IV. CHAPTER SUMMARY

Amino acids are precursors of many nitrogen-containing compounds including **porphyrins**, which, in combination with ferrous (Fe^{2+}) iron, form **heme** (Figure 21.20). The major sites of **heme biosynthesis** are the **liver**, which synthesizes a number of heme proteins (particularly cytochrome P450), and the **erythrocyte-producing cells** of the bone marrow, which are active in hemoglobin synthesis. In the liver, the rate of heme synthesis is highly variable, responding to alterations in the cellular heme pool caused by fluctuating demands for hemeproteins. In contrast, heme synthesis in erythroid cells is relatively constant, and is matched to the rate of globin synthesis. **Porphyrin synthesis** start with **glycine** and **succinyl CoA**. The **committed step** in heme synthesis is the formation of δ-aminolevulinic acid (ALA). This reaction is catalyzed by **ALA synthase-1** in liver (inhibited by hemin, the oxidized form of heme that accumulates in the cell when heme is being underutilized) and ALA synthase-2 in erythroid tissues (regulated by iron). **Porphyrias** are caused by inherited or acquired defects in heme synthesis, resulting in the accumulation and increased excretion of porphyrins or porphyrin precursors. With few exceptions, **porphyrias** are inherited as **autosomal dominant** disorders. **Degradation** of hemeproteins occurs in the **reticuloendothelial system**, particularly in the **liver** and **spleen**. The first step in the degradation of heme is the production of the green pigment **biliverdin**, which is subsequently reduced to **bilirubin**. Bilirubin is transported to the liver, where its solubility is increased by the addition of two molecules of **glucuronic acid**. Bilirubin diglucuronide is transported into the **bile canaliculi**, where it is first hydrolyzed and reduced by bacteria in the gut to yield **urobilinogen**, then oxidized by intestinal bacteria to **stercobilin**. **Jaundice** refers to the yellow color of the skin and sclera that is caused by deposition of bilirubin, secondary to increased bilirubin levels in the blood. Three commonly encountered type of jaundice are **hemolytic jaundice**, **obstructive jaundice**, and **hepatocellular jaundice**. Other important N-containing compounds derived from amino acids include the **catecholamines** (dopamine, norepinephrine, and epinephrine), **creatine**, **histamine**, **serotonin**, and **melanin**.

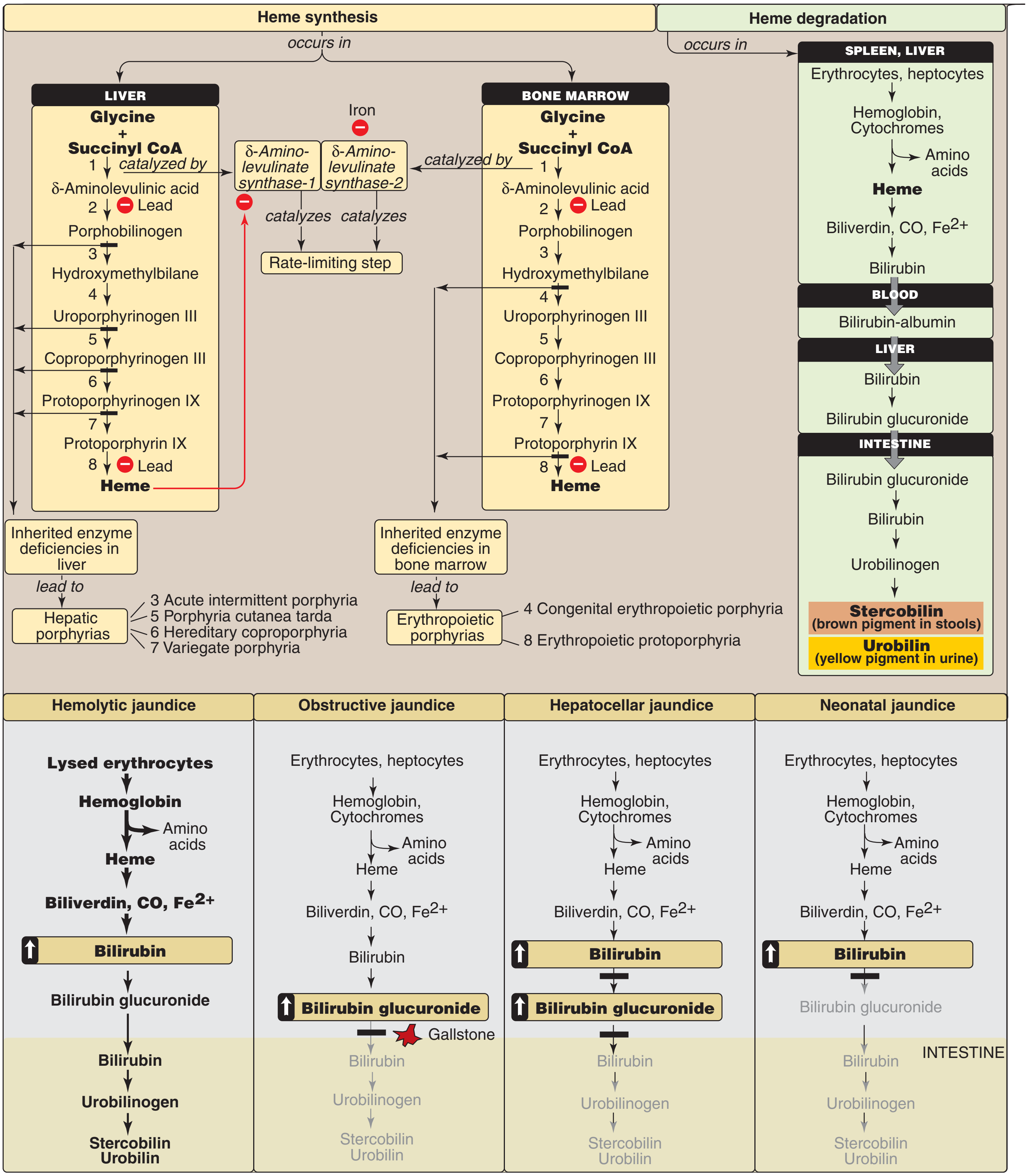

Heme synthesis
occurs in
LIVER
Glycine
+
Succinyl CoA
1
catalyzed by
δ-Aminolevulinic acid
2
Lead
Porphobilinogen
3
Hydroxymethylbilane
4
Uroporphyrinogen III
5
Coproporphyrinogen III
6
Protoporphyrinogen IX
7
Protoporphyrin IX
8
Lead
Heme
Iron
δ-Aminolevulinate synthase-1
δ-Aminolevulinate synthase-2
catalyzes
catalyzes
Rate-limiting step
catalyzed by
BONE MARROW
Glycine
+
Succinyl CoA
1
δ-Aminolevulinic acid
2
Lead
Porphobilinogen
3
Hydroxymethylbilane
4
Uroporphyrinogen III
5
Coproporphyrinogen III
6
Protoporphyrinogen IX
7
Protoporphyrin IX
8
Lead
Heme
Inherited enzyme deficiencies in liver
lead to
Hepatic porphyrias
3 Acute intermittent porphyria
5 Porphyria cutanea tarda
6 Hereditary coproporphyria
7 Variegate porphyria
Inherited enzyme deficiencies in bone marrow
lead to
Erythropoietic porphyrias
4 Congenital erythropoietic porphyria
8 Erythropoietic protoporphyria
Heme degradation
occurs in
SPLEEN, LIVER
Erythrocytes, heptocytes
Hemoglobin, Cytochromes
Amino acids
Heme
Biliverdin, CO, Fe2+
Bilirubin
BLOOD
Bilirubin-albumin
LIVER
Bilirubin
Bilirubin glucuronide
INTESTINE
Bilirubin glucuronide
Bilirubin
Urobilinogen
Stercobilin (brown pigment in stools)
Urobilin (yellow pigment in urine)
Hemolytic jaundice
Lysed erythrocytes
Hemoglobin
Amino acids
Heme
Biliverdin, CO, Fe2+
↑ Bilirubin
Bilirubin glucuronide
Bilirubin
Urobilinogen
Stercobilin
Urobilin
Obstructive jaundice
Erythrocytes, heptocytes
Hemoglobin, Cytochromes
Amino acids
Heme
Biliverdin, CO, Fe2+
Bilirubin
↑ Bilirubin glucuronide
Gallstone
Bilirubin
Urobilinogen
Stercobilin
Urobilin
Hepatocellar jaundice
Erythrocytes, heptocytes
Hemoglobin, Cytochromes
Amino acids
Heme
Biliverdin, CO, Fe2+
↑ Bilirubin
↑ Bilirubin glucuronide
Bilirubin
Urobilinogen
Stercobilin
Urobilin
Neonatal jaundice
Erythrocytes, heptocytes
Hemoglobin, Cytochromes
Amino acids
Heme
Biliverdin, CO, Fe2+
↑ Bilirubin
Bilirubin glucuronide
INTESTINE
Bilirubin
Urobilinogen
Stercobilin
Urobilin

Figure 21.20
Key concept map for heme metabolism. ▬ = Block in the pathway.

Study Questions

Choose the ONE best answer.

21.1 δ-Aminolevulinic acid synthase activity:

A. in liver is frequently decreased in individuals treated with drugs, such as the barbiturate phenobarbital.
B. catalyzes a rate-limiting reaction in porphyrin biosynthesis.
C. requires the coenzyme biotin.
D. is strongly inhibited by heavy metal ions such as lead.
E. occurs in the cytosol.

Correct answer = B. The activity of δ-aminolevulinic acid synthase controls the rate of porphyrin synthesis. The hepatic form of the enzyme is increased in patients treated with certain drugs, and requires pyridoxal phosphate as a coenzyme. Another enzyme in the pathway (δ-aminolevulinic acid dehydrase) is extremely sensitive to the presence of heavy metals.

21.2 The catabolism of hemoglobin:

A. occurs in red blood cells.
B. involves the oxidative cleavage of the porphyrin ring.
C. results in the liberation of carbon dioxide.
D. results in the formation of protoporphyrinogen.
E. is the sole source of bilirubin.

Correct answer = B. The cyclic heme molecule is oxidatively cleaved to form biliverdin. The catabolism occurs in the cells of the reticuloendothelial system, particularly the spleen, and results in the liberation of carbon monoxide. Protoporphyrinogen is an intermediate in the synthesis, not degradation, of heme. Cytochromes and other non-hemoglobin hemeproteins are also precursors of bilirubin.

21.3 A 50-year-old man presented with painful blisters on the backs of his hands. He was a golf instructor, and indicated that the blisters had erupted shortly after the golfing season began. He did not have recent exposure to poison ivy or sumac, new soaps or detergents, or new medications. He denied having previous episodes of blistering. He had partial complex seizure disorder that had begun about three years earlier after a head injury. The patient had been taking phenytoin—his only medication—since the onset of the seizure disorder. He admitted to an average weekly ethanol intake of about eighteen 12-oz cans of beer. The patient's urine was reddish orange. Cultures obtained from skin lesions failed to grow organisms. A 24-hour urine collection showed elevated uroporphyrin (1,000 mg; normal, <27mg). The most likely presumptive diagnosis is:

A. porphyria cutanea tarda.
B. acute intermittent porphyria.
C. hereditary coproporphyria.
D. congenital erythropoietic porphyria.
E. erythropoietic protoporphyria.

Correct answer = A. The disease is associated with a deficiency in uroporphyrinogen decarboxylase, but clinical expression of the enzyme deficiency is influenced by hepatic injury caused by iron overload, chronic ethanol consumption, and the presence of hepatitis B or C and HIV infections. Exposure to sunlight can also be a precipitating factor. Clinical onset is typically during the fourth or fifth decade of life. Porphyrin accumulation leads to cutaneous symptoms and urine that is red to brown. Treatment of the patient's seizure disorder with phenytoin caused increased synthesis of ALA synthase, and, therefore, of uroporphyrinogen, the substrate of the deficient enzyme. The laboratory and clinical findings are inconsistent with other porphyrias.

21.4 A 10-year-old boy is referred to a specialist because of skin that blisters easily, urine that darkens on standing, and stained teeth. Lab studies are remarkable for high levels of uroporphyrin I and coproporphyrin I in plasma, with uroporphyrin I being present in the urine. The most likely biochemical pathology in this case is:

A. deficiency of ALA synthase.
B. deficiency of bilirubin glucuronyltransferase.
C. deficiency of uroporphyrinogen III synthase.
D. down-regulation of tyrosinase.
E. inhibition of ALA dehydratase by lead.

Correct answer = C. A deficiency of uroporphyrinogen III synthase results in accumulation of hydroxymethylbilane and the spontaneous conversion of this substrate to porphyrins of the Type I series. A deficiency of ALA synthase or inhibition of ALA dehydratase by lead would not allow the synthesis of porphobilinogen, the first pyrrole product in the heme biosynthetic pathway, and thus would not result in uro- or coproporphyrin synthesis. Deficiency of the glucuronyltransferase would not present with the systems described, and lab studies would be remarkable for an elevation of unconjugated bilirubin. Down-regulation of tyrosinase would result in decreased pigmentation.

Nucleotide Metabolism

22

I. OVERVIEW

Ribonucleoside and deoxyribonucleoside phosphates (nucleotides) are essential for all cells. Without them, neither RNA nor DNA can be produced and, therefore, proteins cannot be synthesized or cells proliferate. Nucleotides also serve as carriers of activated intermediates in the synthesis of some carbohydrates, lipids, and conjugated proteins, for example, UDP-glucose and CDP-choline, and are structural components of several essential coenzymes, such as coenzyme A, FAD, NAD^+, and $NADP^+$. Nucleotides, such as cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP) and cyclic guanosine monophosphate (cGMP), serve as second messengers in signal transduction pathways. In addition, nucleotides play an important role as "energy currency" in the cell. Finally, nucleotides are important regulatory compounds for many of the pathways of intermediary metabolism, inhibiting or activating key enzymes. The purine and pyrimidine bases found in nucleotides can be synthesized de novo, or can be obtained through salvage pathways that allow the reuse of the preformed bases resulting from normal cell turnover. [Note: Little of the purines and pyrimidines supplied by diet are utilized, and are degraded instead.]

II. NUCLEOTIDE STRUCTURE

Nucleotides are composed of a nitrogenous base, a pentose monosaccharide, and one, two, or three phosphate groups. The nitrogen-containing bases belong to two families of compounds: the purines and the pyrimidines.

A. Purine and pyrimidine structures

Both DNA and RNA contain the same purine bases: adenine (A) and guanine (G). Both DNA and RNA contain the pyrimidine cytosine (C), but they differ in their second pyrimidine base: DNA contains thymine (T), whereas RNA contains uracil (U). T and U differ in that only T has a methyl group (Figure 22.1). [Note: Unusual (modified) bases are

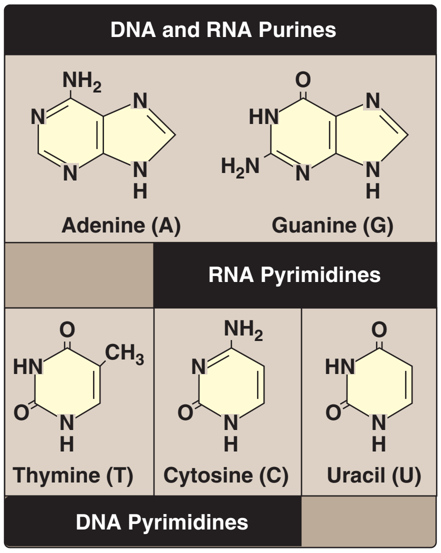


Figure 22.1
Purines and pyrimidines commonly found in DNA and RNA.

occasionally found in some species of DNA and RNA, for example, in some viral DNA, and in transfer RNA. Base modifications include methylation, glycosylation, acetylation, or reduction. Some examples of unusual bases are shown in Figure 22.2. The presence of an unusual base in a nucleotide sequence may aid in its recognition by specific enzymes, or protect it from being degraded by *nucleases*.]

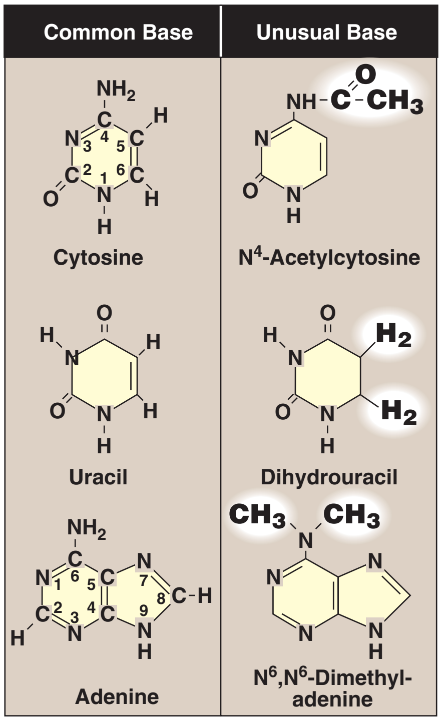


Figure 22.2
Examples of unusual bases.

B. Nucleosides

The addition of a pentose sugar to a base produces a nucleoside. If the sugar is ribose, a ribonucleoside is produced; if the sugar is 2-deoxyribose, a deoxyribonucleoside is produced (Figure 22.3A). The ribonucleosides of A, G, C, and U are named adenosine, guanosine, cytidine, and uridine, respectively. The deoxyribonucleosides of A, G, C, and T have the added prefix, "deoxy-," for example, deoxyadenosine. [Note: The compound deoxythymidine is often simply called thymidine, with the "deoxy-" prefix being understood.] The carbon and nitrogen atoms in the rings of the base and the sugar are numbered separately (Figure 22.3B). Note that the carbons in the pentose are numbered 1' to 5'. Thus, when the 5'-carbon of a nucleoside (or nucleotide) is referred to, a carbon atom in the pentose, rather than an atom in the base, is being specified.

C. Nucleotides

The addition of one or more phosphate groups to a nucleoside produces a nucleotide. The first phosphate group is attached by an ester linkage to the 5'-OH of the pentose. Such a compound is called a nucleoside 5'-phosphate or a 5'-nucleotide. The type of pentose is denoted by the prefix in the names "5'-ribonucleotide" and "5'-deoxyribonucleotide." If one phosphate group is attached to the 5'-carbon of the pentose, the structure is a nucleoside monophosphate, like adenosine monophosphate (AMP) (also called adenylate). If a second or third phosphate is added to the nucleoside, a nucleoside diphosphate (for example, adenosine diphosphate or ADP) or triphosphate (for example, adenosine triphosphate or ATP) results (Figure 22.4). The second and third phosphates are each connected to the nucleotide by a "high-energy" bond. [Note: The phosphate groups are responsible for the negative charges associated with nucleotides, and cause DNA and RNA to be referred to as "nucleic acids."]

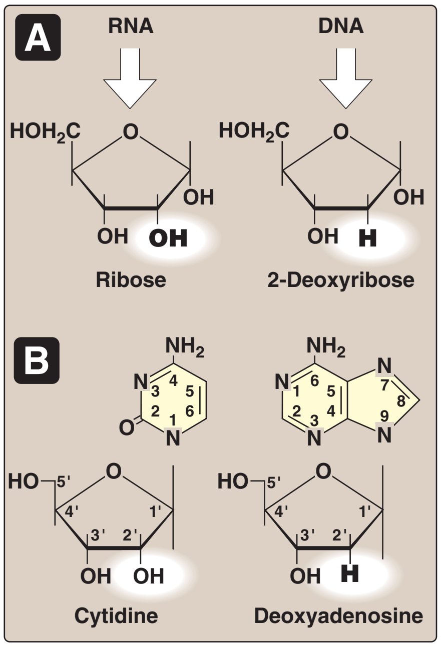


Figure 22.3
A. Pentoses found in nucleic acids.
B. Examples of the numbering systems for purine- and pyrimidine-containing nucleosides.

III. SYNTHESIS OF PURINE NUCLEOTIDES

The atoms of the purine ring are contributed by a number of compounds, including amino acids (aspartic acid, glycine, and glutamine), CO_2, and N^{10}–formyltetrahydrofolate (Figure 22.5). The purine ring is constructed primarily in the liver by a series of reactions that add the donated carbons and nitrogens to a preformed ribose 5-phosphate. (See p. 147 for the synthesis of ribose 5-phosphate by the pentose phosphate pathway).

A. Synthesis of 5-phosphoribosyl-1-pyrophosphate (PRPP)

PRPP is an "activated pentose" that participates in the synthesis and salvage of purines and pyrimidines. Synthesis of PRPP from ATP and ribose 5-phosphate is catalyzed by *PRPP synthetase* (*ribose phosphate pyrophosphokinase,* Figure 22.6). This X-linked enzyme is activated by inorganic phosphate and inhibited by purine nucleotides (end-product inhibition). [Note: The sugar moiety of PRPP is ribose, and, therefore, ribonucleotides are the end products of de novo purine synthesis. When deoxyribonucleotides are required for DNA synthesis, the ribose sugar moiety is reduced (see p. 297).]

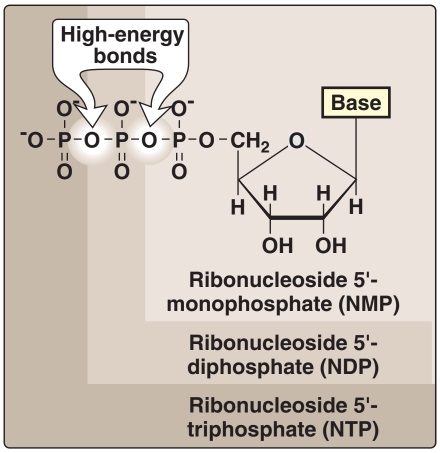

High-energy bonds
Base
O⁻ O⁻ O⁻
⁻O-P-O-P-O-P-O-CH₂ O
O O O
H H H H
OH OH
Ribonucleoside 5'-monophosphate (NMP)
Ribonucleoside 5'-diphosphate (NDP)
Ribonucleoside 5'-triphosphate (NTP)

Figure 22.4
Ribonucleoside monophosphate, diphosphate, and triphosphate.

B. Synthesis of 5'-phosphoribosylamine

Synthesis of 5'-phosphoribosylamine from PRPP and glutamine is shown in Figure 22.7. The amide group of glutamine replaces the pyrophosphate group attached to carbon 1 of PRPP. The enzyme, *glutamine:phosphoribosylpyrophosphate amidotransferase*, is inhibited by the purine 5'-nucleotides AMP and GMP—the end products of the pathway. This is the committed step in purine nucleotide biosynthesis. The rate of the reaction is also controlled by the intracellular concentration of PRPP. [Note: The intracellular concentration of PRPP is normally far below the K_m for the *amidotransferase*. Therefore, any small change in the PRPP concentration causes a proportional change in the rate of the reaction (see p. 59).]

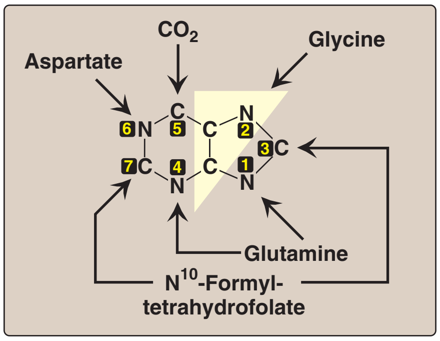

CO₂
Aspartate
Glycine
6 N
5 C
C
N 2
3 C
7 C
4 N
C
1 N
Glutamine
N¹⁰-Formyl-tetrahydrofolate

Figure 22.5
Sources of the individual atoms in the purine ring. The order in which the atoms are added is shown by the numbers in the black boxes (see Figure 22.7).

C. Synthesis of inosine monophosphate, the "parent" purine nucleotide

The next nine steps in purine nucleotide biosynthesis leading to the synthesis of inosine monophosphate (IMP, whose base is hypoxanthine) are illustrated in Figure 22.7. This pathway requires ATP as an energy source. Two steps in the pathway require N^{10}-formyltetrahydrofolate (see p. 267).

D. Synthetic inhibitors of purine synthesis

Some synthetic inhibitors of purine synthesis (for example, the sulfonamides[1]), are designed to inhibit the growth of rapidly dividing microorganisms without interfering with human cell functions (see Figure 22.7). Other purine synthesis inhibitors, such as structural analogs of folic acid (for example, methotrexate[2]), are used pharmacologically to control the spread of cancer by interfering with the synthesis of nucleotides and, therefore, of DNA and RNA (see Figure 22.7).

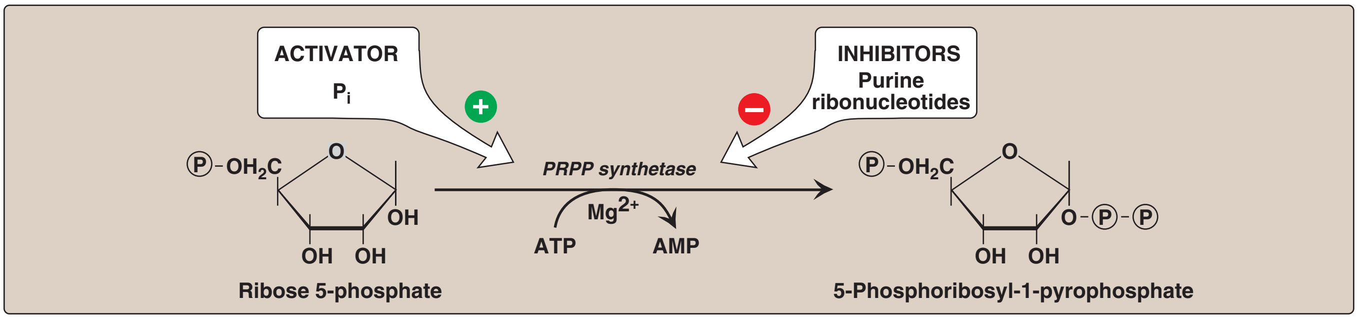
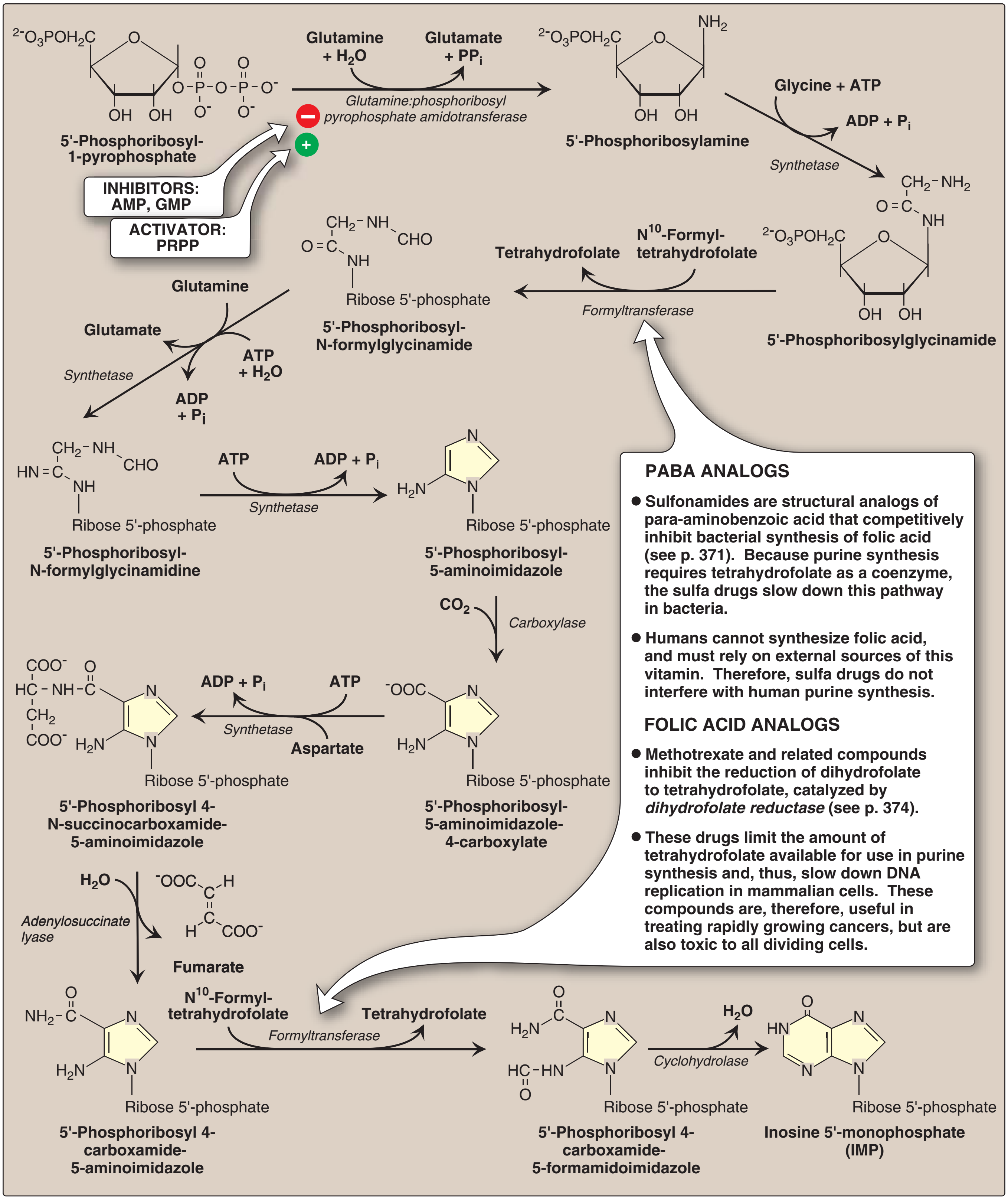

ACTIVATOR
Pᵢ
INHIBITORS
Purine ribonucleotides
+
−
Ⓟ-OH₂C
O
OH
OH OH
Ribose 5-phosphate
PRPP synthetase
Mg²⁺
ATP
AMP
Ⓟ-OH₂C
O
O-Ⓟ-Ⓟ
OH OH
5-Phosphoribosyl-1-pyrophosphate

Figure 22.6
Synthesis of 5-phosphoribosyl-1-pyrophosphate (PRPP), showing the activator and inhibitors of the reaction.

[1,2] See Chapter 33 in ***Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Pharmacology*** for a discussion of sulfonamides and methotrexate.


5'-Phosphoribosyl-1-pyrophosphate
Glutamine + H2O
Glutamate + PPi
Glutamine:phosphoribosyl pyrophosphate amidotransferase
INHIBITORS: AMP, GMP
ACTIVATOR: PRPP
5'-Phosphoribosylamine
Glycine + ATP
ADP + Pi
Synthetase
5'-Phosphoribosylglycinamide
N10-Formyl-tetrahydrofolate
Tetrahydrofolate
Formyltransferase
5'-Phosphoribosyl-N-formylglycinamide
Ribose 5'-phosphate
Glutamine
Glutamate
ATP + H2O
ADP + Pi
Synthetase
5'-Phosphoribosyl-N-formylglycinamidine
ATP
ADP + Pi
Synthetase
5'-Phosphoribosyl-5-aminoimidazole
CO2
Carboxylase
5'-Phosphoribosyl-5-aminoimidazole-4-carboxylate
ATP
ADP + Pi
Aspartate
Synthetase
5'-Phosphoribosyl 4-N-succinocarboxamide-5-aminoimidazole
H2O
Adenylosuccinate lyase
Fumarate
5'-Phosphoribosyl 4-carboxamide-5-aminoimidazole
N10-Formyl-tetrahydrofolate
Tetrahydrofolate
Formyltransferase
5'-Phosphoribosyl 4-carboxamide-5-formamidoimidazole
H2O
Cyclohydrolase
Inosine 5'-monophosphate (IMP)

PABA ANALOGS

- Sulfonamides are structural analogs of para-aminobenzoic acid that competitively inhibit bacterial synthesis of folic acid (see p. 371). Because purine synthesis requires tetrahydrofolate as a coenzyme, the sulfa drugs slow down this pathway in bacteria.
- Humans cannot synthesize folic acid, and must rely on external sources of this vitamin. Therefore, sulfa drugs do not interfere with human purine synthesis.

FOLIC ACID ANALOGS

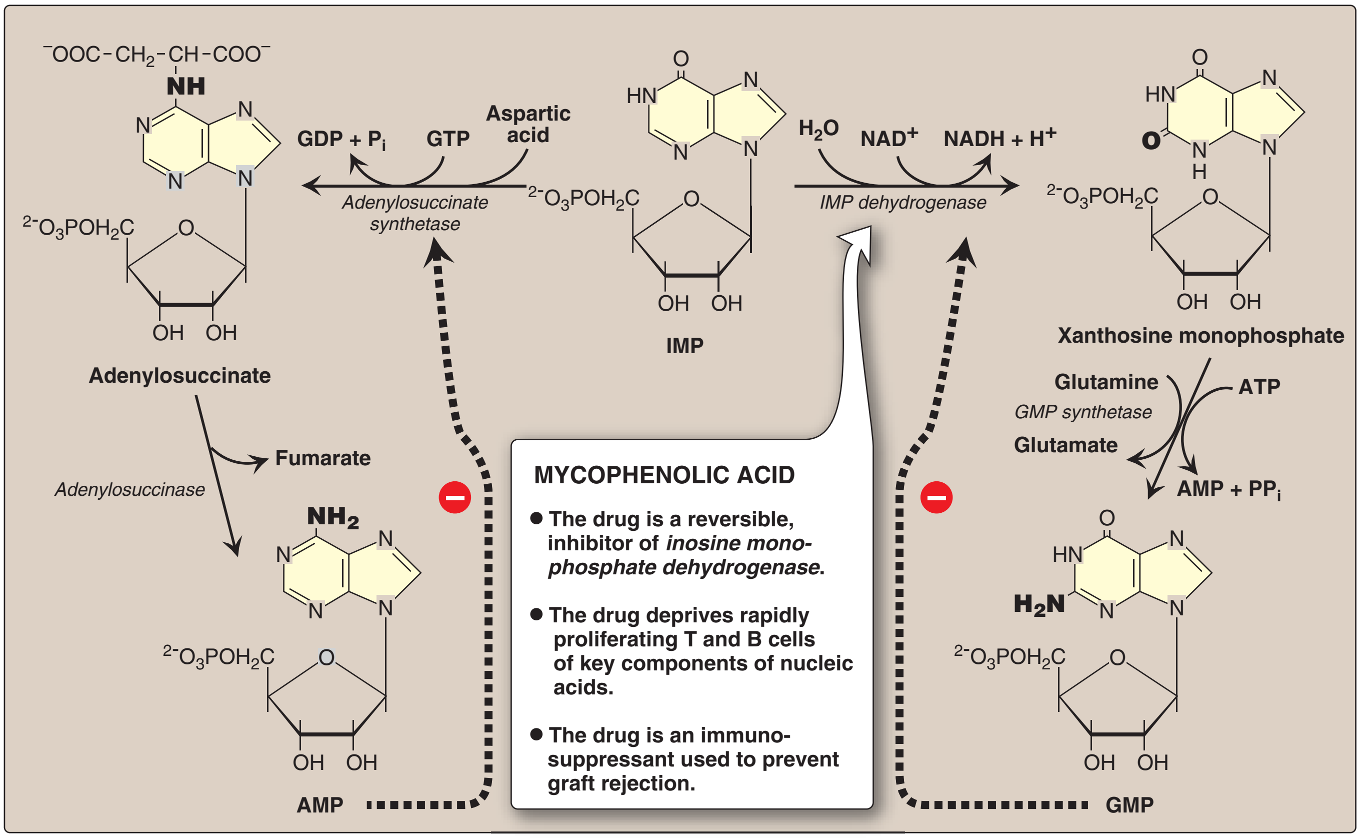
- Methotrexate and related compounds inhibit the reduction of dihydrofolate to tetrahydrofolate, catalyzed by ***dihydrofolate reductase*** (see p. 374).
- These drugs limit the amount of tetrahydrofolate available for use in purine synthesis and, thus, slow down DNA replication in mammalian cells. These compounds are, therefore, useful in treating rapidly growing cancers, but are also toxic to all dividing cells.

Figure 22.7
Synthesis of purine nucleotides, showing the inhibitory effect of some structural analogs.

> Inhibitors of human purine synthesis are extremely toxic to tissues, especially to developing structures such as in a fetus, or to cell types that normally replicate rapidly, including those of bone marrow, skin, gastrointestinal (GI) tract, immune system, or hair follicles. As a result, individuals taking such anticancer drugs can experience adverse effects, including anemia, scaly skin, GI tract disturbance, immunodeficiencies, and hair loss.

E. Conversion of IMP to AMP and GMP

The conversion of IMP to either AMP or GMP uses a two-step, energy-requiring pathway (Figure 22.8). Note that the synthesis of AMP requires guanosine triphosphate (GTP) as an energy source, whereas the synthesis of GMP requires ATP. Also, the first reaction in each pathway is inhibited by the end product of that pathway. This provides a mechanism for diverting IMP to the synthesis of the species of purine present in lesser amounts. If both AMP and GMP are present in adequate amounts, the de novo pathway of purine synthesis is turned off at the *amidotransferase* step.



⁻OOC-CH₂-CH-COO⁻
NH
²⁻O₃POH₂C
OH OH
Adenylosuccinate
GDP + Pᵢ
GTP
Aspartic acid
Adenylosuccinate synthetase
IMP
H₂O
NAD⁺
NADH + H⁺
IMP dehydrogenase
Xanthosine monophosphate
Glutamine
ATP
GMP synthetase
Glutamate
AMP + PPᵢ
Fumarate
Adenylosuccinase
NH₂
H₂N
HN
O
N
H
AMP
GMP

MYCOPHENOLIC ACID

- **The drug is a reversible, inhibitor of *inosine monophosphate dehydrogenase*.**
- **The drug deprives rapidly proliferating T and B cells of key components of nucleic acids.**
- **The drug is an immunosuppressant used to prevent graft rejection.**

Figure 22.8
Conversion of IMP to AMP and GMP showing feedback inhibition.

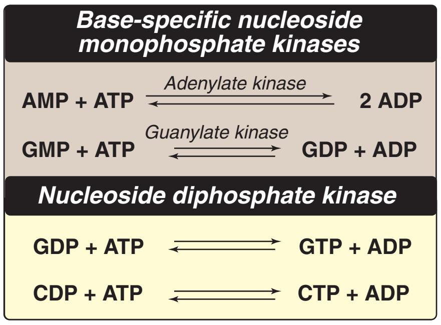
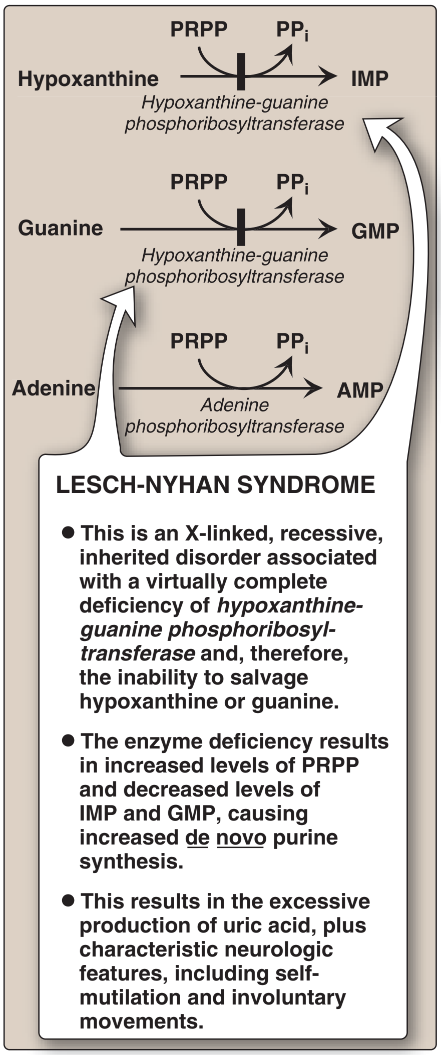


Figure 22.9
Conversion of nucleoside monophosphates to nucleoside diphosphates and triphosphates.

F. Conversion of nucleoside monophosphates to nucleoside diphosphates and triphosphates

Nucleoside diphosphates are synthesized from the corresponding nucleoside monophosphates by base-specific *nucleoside monophosphate kinases* (Figure 22.9). [Note: These *kinases* do not discriminate between ribose or deoxyribose in the substrate.] ATP is generally the source of the transferred phosphate, because it is present in higher concentrations than the other nucleoside triphosphates. *Adenylate kinase* is particularly active in liver and muscle, where the turnover of energy from ATP is high. Its function is to maintain an equilibrium among AMP, ADP, and ATP. Nucleoside diphosphates and triphosphates are interconverted by *nucleoside diphosphate kinase*—an enzyme that, unlike the *monophosphate kinases*, has broad specificity.


PRPP
PP$_i$
Hypoxanthine
IMP
Hypoxanthine-guanine phosphoribosyltransferase
PRPP
PP$_i$
Guanine
GMP
Hypoxanthine-guanine phosphoribosyltransferase
PRPP
PP$_i$
Adenine
AMP
Adenine phosphoribosyltransferase

LESCH-NYHAN SYNDROME

- **This is an X-linked, recessive, inherited disorder associated with a virtually complete deficiency of *hypoxanthine-guanine phosphoribosyltransferase* and, therefore, the inability to salvage hypoxanthine or guanine.**
- **The enzyme deficiency results in increased levels of PRPP and decreased levels of IMP and GMP, causing increased de novo purine synthesis.**
- **This results in the excessive production of uric acid, plus characteristic neurologic features, including self-mutilation and involuntary movements.**

Figure 22.10
Salvage pathways of purine nucleotide synthesis.

G. Salvage pathway for purines

Purines that result from the normal turnover of cellular nucleic acids, or the small amount that is obtained from the diet and not degraded, can be converted to nucleoside triphosphates and used by the body. This is referred to as the "salvage pathway" for purines.

1. **Conversion of purine bases to nucleotides:** Two enzymes are involved: *adenine phosphoribosyltransferase* (*APRT*) and *hypoxanthine-guanine phosphoribosyltransferase* (*HGPRT*). Both enzymes use PRPP as the source of the ribose 5-phosphate group. The release of pyrophosphate and its subsequent hydrolysis by *pyrophosphatase* makes these reactions irreversible (Figure 22.10). [Note: Adenosine is the only purine nucleoside to be salvaged. It is phosphorylated to AMP by *adenosine kinase*.]

2. **Lesch-Nyhan syndrome:** This syndrome is a rare, X-linked, recessive disorder associated with a virtually complete deficiency of *HGPRT*. This deficiency results in an inability to salvage hypoxanthine or guanine, from which excessive amounts of uric acid, the end product of purine degradation, are produced (see p. 298). In addition, the lack of this salvage pathway causes increased PRPP levels and decreased IMP and GMP levels. As a result, *glutamine:phosphoribosylpyrophosphate amidotransferase* (the committed step in purine synthesis) has excess substrate and decreased inhibitors available, and de novo purine synthesis is increased. The combination of decreased purine reutilization and increased purine synthesis results in increased degradation of purines and the production of large amounts of uric acid, making Lesch-Nyhan a heritable cause of hyperuricemia. In patients with Lesch-Nyhan syndrome, the hyperuricemia frequently results in the formation of uric acid stones in the kidneys (urolithiasis) and the deposition of urate crystals in the joints (gouty arthritis) and soft tissues. In addition, the syndrome is characterized by motor dysfunction, cognitive deficits, and behavioral disturbances that include self-mutilation (biting of lips and fingers, Figure 22.11).

IV. SYNTHESIS OF DEOXYRIBONUCLEOTIDES

The nucleotides described thus far all contain ribose (ribonucleotides). The nucleotides required for DNA synthesis, however, are 2'-deoxyribonucleotides, which are produced from ribonucleoside diphosphates by the enzyme *ribonucleotide reductase* during the S-phase of the cell cycle (see p. 407). [Note: The same enzyme acts on pyrimidine ribonucleotides.]

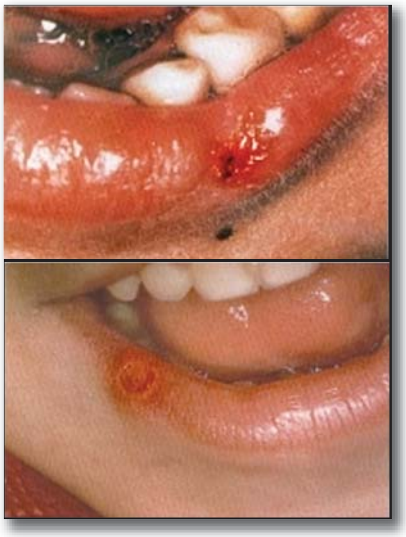


Figure 22.11
Lesions on the lips of Lesch-Nyhan patients caused by self-mutilation.

A. Ribonucleotide reductase

Ribonucleotide reductase (*ribonucleoside diphosphate reductase*) is composed of two nonidentical dimeric subunits, R1 and R2, and is specific for the reduction of purine nucleoside diphosphates (ADP and GDP), and pyrimidine nucleoside diphosphates, cytidine diphosphate (CDP) and uridine diphosphate (UDP) to their deoxyforms (dADP, dGDP, dCDP, and dUDP). The immediate donors of the hydrogen atoms needed for the reduction of the 2'-hydroxyl group are two sulfhydryl groups on the enzyme itself, which, during the reaction, form a disulfide bond (Figure 22.12).

1. **Regeneration of reduced enzyme:** In order for *ribonucleotide reductase* to continue to produce deoxyribonucleotides, the disulfide bond created during the production of the 2'-deoxy carbon must be reduced. The source of the reducing equivalents for this purpose is thioredoxin—a peptide coenzyme of *ribonucleotide reductase*. Thioredoxin contains two cysteine residues separated by two amino acids in the peptide chain. The two sulfhydryl groups of thioredoxin donate their hydrogen atoms to *ribonucleotide reductase*, in the process forming a disulfide bond (see p. 19).

2. **Regeneration of reduced thioredoxin:** Thioredoxin must be converted back to its reduced form in order to continue to perform its function. The necessary reducing equivalents are provided by NADPH + H^+, and the reaction is catalyzed by *thioredoxin reductase* (see Figure 22.12).

B. Regulation of deoxyribonucleotide synthesis

Ribonucleotide reductase is responsible for maintaining a balanced supply of the deoxyribonucleotides required for DNA synthesis. To achieve this, the regulation of the enzyme is complex. In addition to the catalytic (active) site, there are allosteric sites on the enzyme involved in regulating its activity (Figure 22.13).

1. **Activity sites:** The binding of dATP to allosteric sites (known as the activity sites) on the enzyme inhibits the overall catalytic activity of the enzyme and, therefore, prevents the reduction of any of the four nucleoside diphosphates. This effectively prevents DNA synthesis, and explains the toxicity of increased levels of dATP seen in conditions such as *adenosine deaminase* deficiency (see p. 301). In contrast, ATP bound to these sites activates the enzyme.

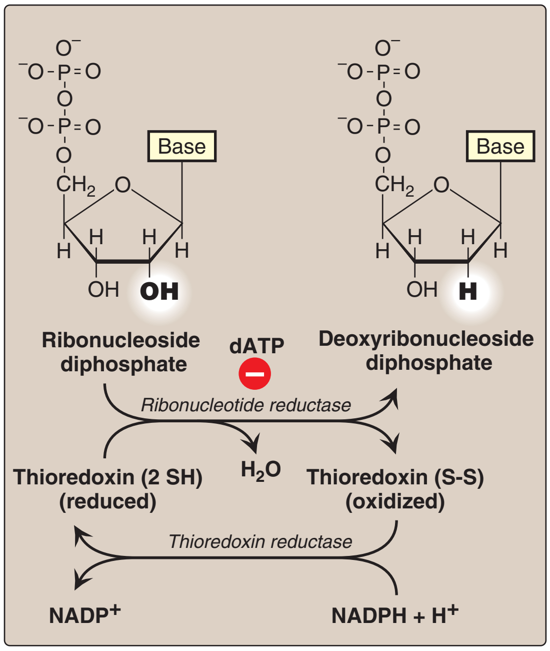

Base
CH₂
OH
OH
Base
OH
H
Ribonucleoside diphosphate
dATP
Deoxyribonucleoside diphosphate
Ribonucleotide reductase
H₂O
Thioredoxin (2 SH) (reduced)
Thioredoxin (S-S) (oxidized)
Thioredoxin reductase
NADP⁺
NADPH + H⁺

Figure 22.12
Conversion of ribonucleotides to deoxyribonucleotides.

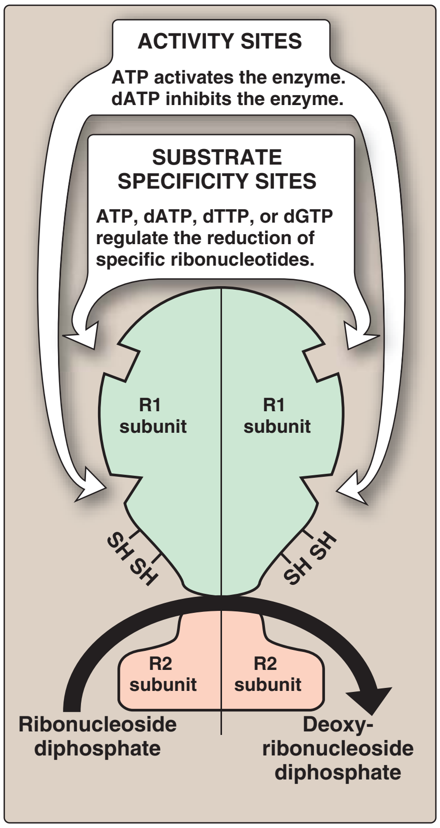

ACTIVITY SITES
ATP activates the enzyme.
dATP inhibits the enzyme.
SUBSTRATE SPECIFICITY SITES
ATP, dATP, dTTP, or dGTP regulate the reduction of specific ribonucleotides.
R1 subunit
R1 subunit
SH SH
SH SH
R2 subunit
R2 subunit
Ribonucleoside diphosphate
Deoxy-ribonucleoside diphosphate

Figure 22.13
Regulation of *ribonucleotide reductase*.

2. **Substrate specificity sites:** The binding of nucleoside triphosphates to additional allosteric sites (known as the substrate specificity sites) on the enzyme regulates substrate specificity, causing an increase in the conversion of different species of ribonucleotides to deoxyribonucleotides as they are required for DNA synthesis. For example, deoxythymidine triphosphate (dTTP) binding at the specificity sites causes a conformational change that allows reduction of GDP to dGDP at the catalytic site.

The drug hydroxyurea destroys the free radical required for enzymic activity of *ribonucleotide reductase*, and thus inhibits the generation of substrates for DNA synthesis. Hydroxyurea has been used in the treatment of cancers such as chronic myelogenous leukemia. Hydroxyurea is also used in the treatment of sickle cell disease (see p. 36); however, the increase in fetal hemoglobin seen with hydroxyurea has not been linked to its effect on *ribonucleotide reductase*.

V. DEGRADATION OF PURINE NUCLEOTIDES

Degradation of dietary nucleic acids occurs in the small intestine, where a family of pancreatic enzymes hydrolyzes the nucleic acids to nucleotides. Inside the intestinal mucosal cells, purine nucleotides are sequentially degraded by specific enzymes to nucleosides and free bases, with uric acid as the end product of this pathway. [Note: Purine nucleotides from de novo synthesis are degraded in the liver primarily. The free bases are sent out from liver and salvaged by peripheral tissues.]

A. Degradation of dietary nucleic acids in the small intestine

Ribonucleases and *deoxyribonucleases*, secreted by the pancreas, hydrolyze dietary RNA and DNA primarily to oligonucleotides. Oligonucleotides are further hydrolyzed by pancreatic *phosphodiesterases*, producing a mixture of 3'- and 5'-mononucleotides. In the intestinal mucosal cells, a family of *nucleotidases* removes the phosphate groups hydrolytically, releasing nucleosides that are further degraded to free bases. Dietary purine bases are not used to any appreciable extent for the synthesis of tissue nucleic acids. Instead, they are generally converted to uric acid in intestinal mucosal cells. Most of the uric acid enters the blood, and is eventually excreted in the urine. A summary of this pathway is shown in Figure 22.14. [Note: Mammals other than primates express *urate oxidase* which cleaves the purine ring, generating allantoin. Use of recombinant *urate oxidase* is a potential therapeutic strategy to lower urate levels.]

B. Formation of uric acid

A summary of the steps in the production of uric acid and genetic diseases associated with deficiencies of specific degradative enzymes are shown in Figure 22.15. [Note: The bracketed numbers refer to specific reactions in the figure.]

[1] An amino group is removed from AMP to produce IMP by *AMP deaminase*, or from adenosine to produce inosine (hypoxanthine-ribose) by *adenosine deaminase*.

[2] IMP and GMP are converted into their nucleoside forms—inosine and guanosine—by the action of *5'-nucleotidase*.

[3] *Purine nucleoside phosphorylase* converts inosine and guanosine into their respective purine bases, hypoxanthine and guanine. [Note: A *mutase* interconverts ribose 1- and ribose 5-phosphate.]

[4] Guanine is deaminated to form xanthine.

[5] Hypoxanthine is oxidized by *xanthine oxidase* to xanthine, which is further oxidized by *xanthine oxidase* to uric acid, the final product of human purine degradation. Uric acid is excreted primarily in the urine.

C. Diseases associated with purine degradation

1. **Gout:** Gout is a disorder characterized by high levels of uric acid—the end product of purine catabolism—in blood (hyperuricemia), as a result of either the overproduction or underexcretion of uric acid. The hyperuricemia can lead to the deposition of monosodium urate crystals in the joints, and an inflammatory response to the crystals, causing first acute and then progressing to chronic gouty arthritis. Nodular masses of monosodium urate crystals (tophi) may be deposited in the soft tissues, resulting in chronic tophaceous gout (Figure 22.16). Formation of uric acid stones in the kidney (urolithiasis) may also be seen. [Note: Hyperuricemia is typically asymptomatic and does not lead to gout, but gout is preceded by hyperuricemia.] The definitive diagnosis of gout requires aspiration and examination of synovial fluid (Figure 22.17) from an affected joint (or material from a tophus) using polarized light microscopy to confirm the presence of needle-shaped monosodium urate crystals (Figure 22.18).

   a. **Underexcretion of uric acid:** In the vast majority of patients, the hyperuricemia leading to gout is caused by underexcretion of uric acid. Underexcretion can be primary, due to as-yet-unidentified inherent excretory defects, or secondary to known disease processes that affect how the kidney handles urate, for example lactic acidosis (lactate and urate compete for the same renal transporter), and to environmental factors such as the use of drugs, for example, thiazide diuretics, or exposure to lead (saturnine gout).

   b. **Overproduction of uric acid:** A less common cause of gout is hyperuricemia from the overproduction of uric acid. Primary hyperuricemia is, for the most part, idiopathic (having no known cause). However, several identified mutations in the gene for X-linked *PRPP synthetase* result in the enzyme having an increased V_{max} (see p. 58) for the production of PRPP, a lower K_m (see p. 59) for ribose 5-phosphate, or a decreased sensitivity to purine nucleotides—its allosteric inhibitors (see p. 62). In each case, increased availability of PRPP increases purine production, resulting in elevated levels of plasma uric acid. Lesch-Nyhan syndrome (see p. 296) also causes hyperuricemia as a

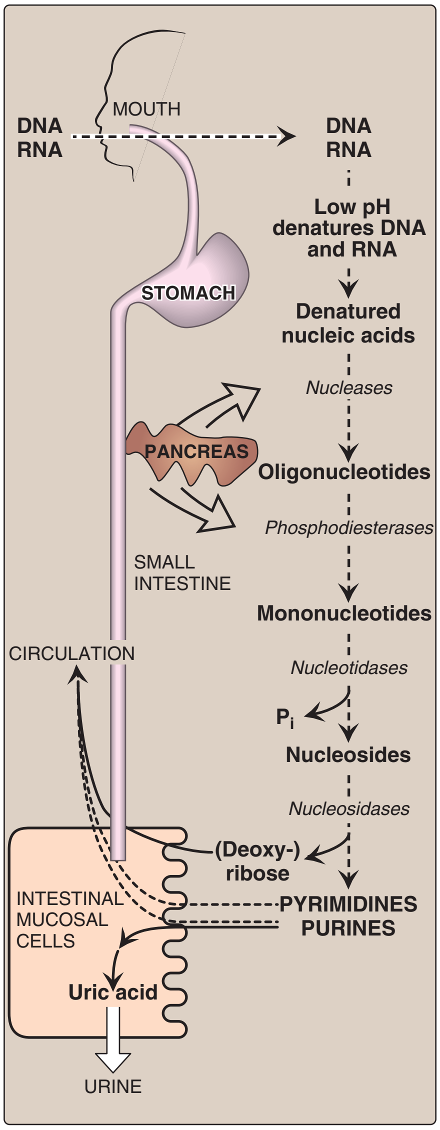
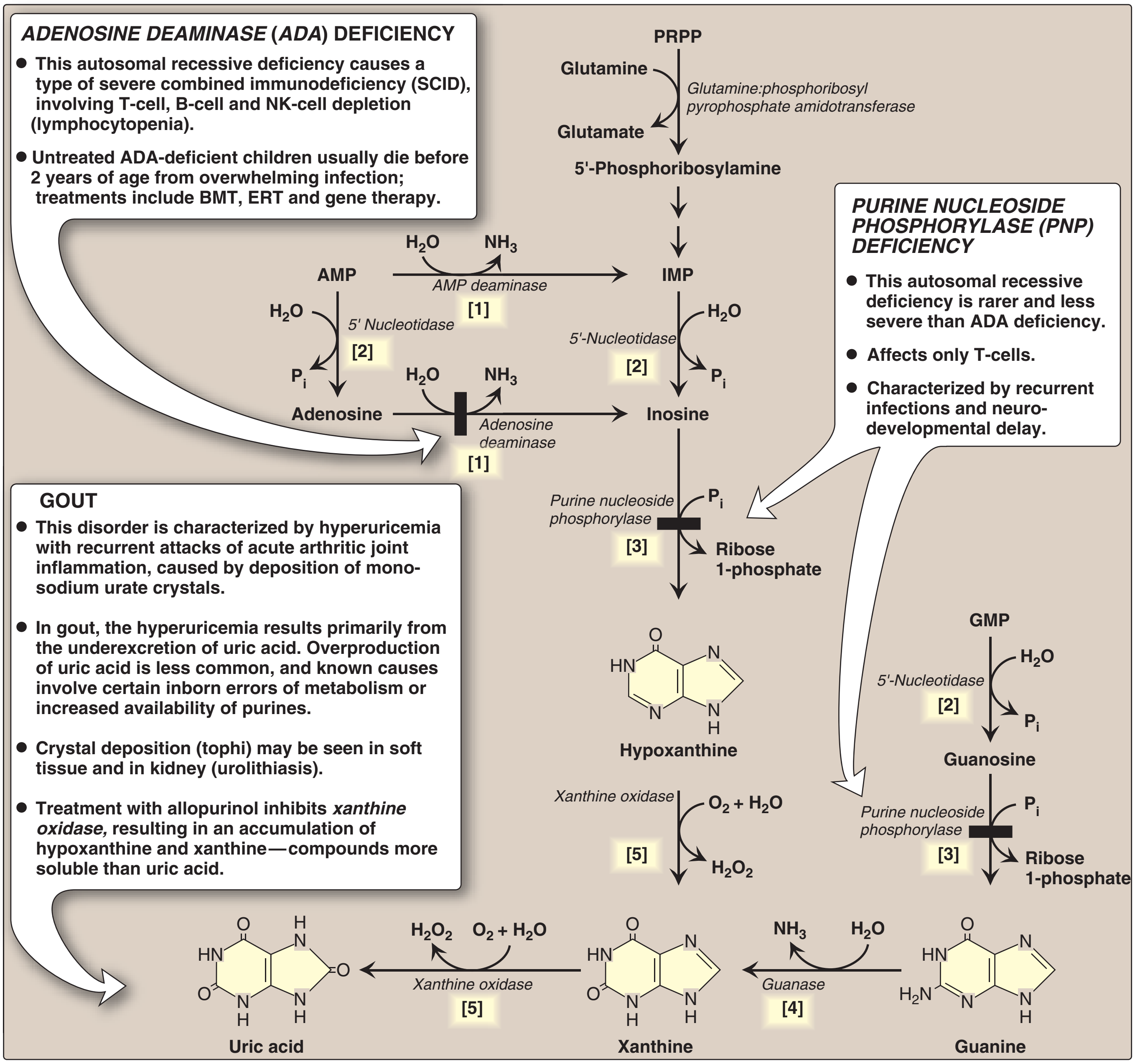


Figure 22.14
Digestion of dietary nucleic acids. [Note: Much of the metabolism of the mononucleotides occurs within the intestinal mucosal cells.]



ADENOSINE DEAMINASE (ADA) DEFICIENCY

- This autosomal recessive deficiency causes a type of severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID), involving T-cell, B-cell and NK-cell depletion (lymphocytopenia).
- Untreated ADA-deficient children usually die before 2 years of age from overwhelming infection; treatments include BMT, ERT and gene therapy.

PURINE NUCLEOSIDE PHOSPHORYLASE (PNP) DEFICIENCY

- This autosomal recessive deficiency is rarer and less severe than ADA deficiency.
- Affects only T-cells.
- Characterized by recurrent infections and neuro-developmental delay.

GOUT

- This disorder is characterized by hyperuricemia with recurrent attacks of acute arthritic joint inflammation, caused by deposition of monosodium urate crystals.
- In gout, the hyperuricemia results primarily from the underexcretion of uric acid. Overproduction of uric acid is less common, and known causes involve certain inborn errors of metabolism or increased availability of purines.
- Crystal deposition (tophi) may be seen in soft tissue and in kidney (urolithiasis).
- Treatment with allopurinol inhibits *xanthine oxidase,* resulting in an accumulation of hypoxanthine and xanthine—compounds more soluble than uric acid.

PRPP
Glutamine
Glutamate
Glutamine:phosphoribosyl pyrophosphate amidotransferase
5'-Phosphoribosylamine
AMP
H_2O
NH_3
AMP deaminase
[1]
IMP
5' Nucleotidase
[2]
P_i
5'-Nucleotidase
Adenosine
Adenosine deaminase
Inosine
Purine nucleoside phosphorylase
[3]
Ribose 1-phosphate
GMP
Guanosine
Hypoxanthine
Xanthine oxidase
[5]
$O_2 + H_2O$
H_2O_2
Guanase
[4]
Uric acid
Xanthine
Guanine

Figure 22.15
The degradation of purine nucleotides to uric acid, illustrating some of the genetic diseases associated with this pathway. [Note: The numbers in brackets refer to the corresponding numbered citations in the text.]

result of the decreased salvage of hypoxanthine and guanine, and the subsequent increased availability of PRPP. Secondary hyperuricemia is typically the consequence of increased availability of purines, for example, in patients with myeloproliferative disorders or who are undergoing chemotherapy and so have a high rate of cell turnover. Hyperuricemia leading to gout can also be the result of seemingly unrelated metabolic diseases, such as von Gierke disease (see Figure 11.8 on p. 129) or fructose intolerance (see p. 138).

A diet rich in meat and seafood (particularly shellfish) is associated with increased risk of gout. In addition, a diet rich in low-fat dairy products was shown to be associated with a decreased risk.

c. Treatment of gout: Acute attacks of gout are treated with anti-inflammatory agents. Colchicine, steroidal drugs such as prednisone, and nonsteroidal drugs such as indomethacin are used. [Note: Colchicine prevents formation of microtubules, thus decreasing the movement of neutrophils into the affected area. Like the other anti-inflammatory drugs, it has no effect on uric acid levels.] Long-term therapeutic strategies for gout involve lowering the uric acid level below its saturation point, thereby preventing the deposition of urate crystals. Uricosuric agents, such as probenecid or sulfinpyrazone, that increase renal excretion of uric acid, are used in patients who are "underexcretors" of uric acid. Allopurinol, a structural analog of hypoxanthine, inhibits uric acid synthesis and is used in patients who are "overproducers" of uric acid. Allopurinol is converted in the body to oxypurinol, which inhibits *xanthine oxidase* (*XO*), resulting in an accumulation of hypoxanthine and xanthine (see Figure 22.15)—compounds more soluble than uric acid and, therefore, less likely to initiate an inflammatory response. In patients with normal levels of *HGPRT*, the hypoxanthine can be salvaged, thus reducing the levels of PRPP and, therefore, de novo purine synthesis. Febuxostat, a non-purine inhibitor of *XO*, is now available. [Note: Uric acid levels in the blood normally are close to the saturation point. One reason for this may be the strong antioxidant effects of uric acid.]

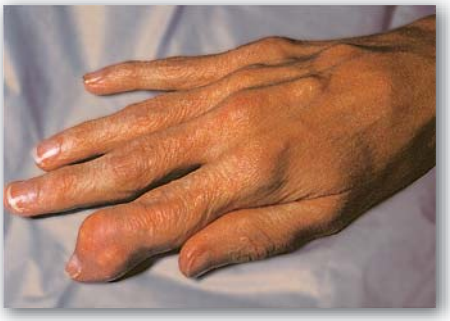
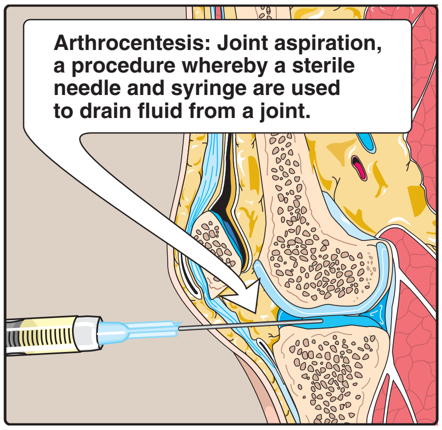


Figure 22.16
Tophaceous gout.



Arthrocentesis: Joint aspiration, a procedure whereby a sterile needle and syringe are used to drain fluid from a joint.

Figure 22.17
Analysis of joint fluid can help to define causes of joint swelling or arthritis, such as infection, gout, and rheumatoid disease.

2. Adenosine deaminase (ADA) deficiency: *ADA* is expressed in a variety of tissues, but, in humans, lymphocytes have the highest activity of this cytoplasmic enzyme. A deficiency of *ADA* results in an accumulation of adenosine, which is converted to its ribonucleotide or deoxyribonucleotide forms by cellular *kinases*. As dATP levels rise, *ribonucleotide reductase* is inhibited, thus preventing the production of all deoxyribose-containing nucleotides (see p. 297). Consequently, cells cannot make DNA and divide. [Note: The dATP and adenosine that accumulate in ADA deficiency lead to developmental arrest and apoptosis of lymphocytes.] In its most severe form, this autosomal recessive disorder causes a type of severe combined immunodeficiency disease (SCID), involving a decrease in T cells, B cells, and natural killer (NK) cells. It is estimated that in the United States, *ADA* deficiency accounts for approximately 14% of all cases of SCID. Treatment requires either bone marrow transplantation (BMT) or enzyme replacement therapy (ERT). Without appropriate treatment, children with this disorder usually die by the age of two. [Note: *Purine nucleoside phosphorylase* (*PNP*) deficiency results in a less severe immunodeficiency involving T-cells primarily.]

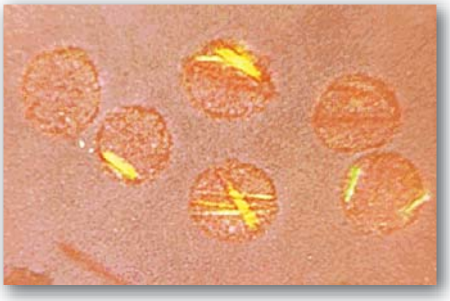


Figure 22.18
Gout can be diagnosed by the presence of negatively birefringent monosodium urate crystals in aspirated synovial fluid examined by polarized-light microscopy. Here, crystals are within polymorphonuclear leukocytes.

VI. PYRIMIDINE SYNTHESIS AND DEGRADATION

Unlike the synthesis of the purine ring, which is constructed on a preexisting ribose 5-phosphate, the pyrimidine ring is synthesized before being attached to ribose 5-phosphate, which is donated by PRPP. The sources of the atoms in the pyrimidine ring are glutamine, CO_2, and aspartic acid (Figure 22.19). [Note: Glutamine and aspartic acid are thus required for both purine and pyrimidine synthesis.]

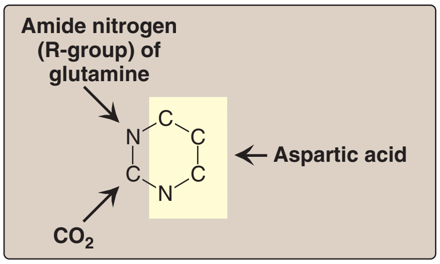


Figure 22.19
Sources of the individual atoms in the pyrimidine ring.

A. Synthesis of carbamoyl phosphate

The regulated step of this pathway in mammalian cells is the synthesis of carbamoyl phosphate from glutamine and CO_2, catalyzed by *carbamoyl phosphate synthetase (CPS) II*. *CPS II* is inhibited by UTP (the end product of this pathway, which can be converted into the other pyrimidine nucleotides), and is activated by PRPP. [Note: Carbamoyl phosphate, synthesized by *CPS I*, is also a precursor of urea (see p. 253). Defects in *ornithine transcarbamylase* of the urea cycle promote pyrimidine synthesis due to increased availability of carbamoyl phosphate. A comparison of the two enzymes is presented in Figure 22.20.]

	CPS I	CPS II
Cellular location	**Mitochondria**	**Cytosol**
Pathway involved	**Urea cycle**	**Pyrimidine synthesis**
Source of nitrogen	**Ammonia**	**γ-Amide group of glutamine**
Regulators	**Activator: N–acetyl-glutamate**	**Activator: PRPP** **Inhibitor: UTP**

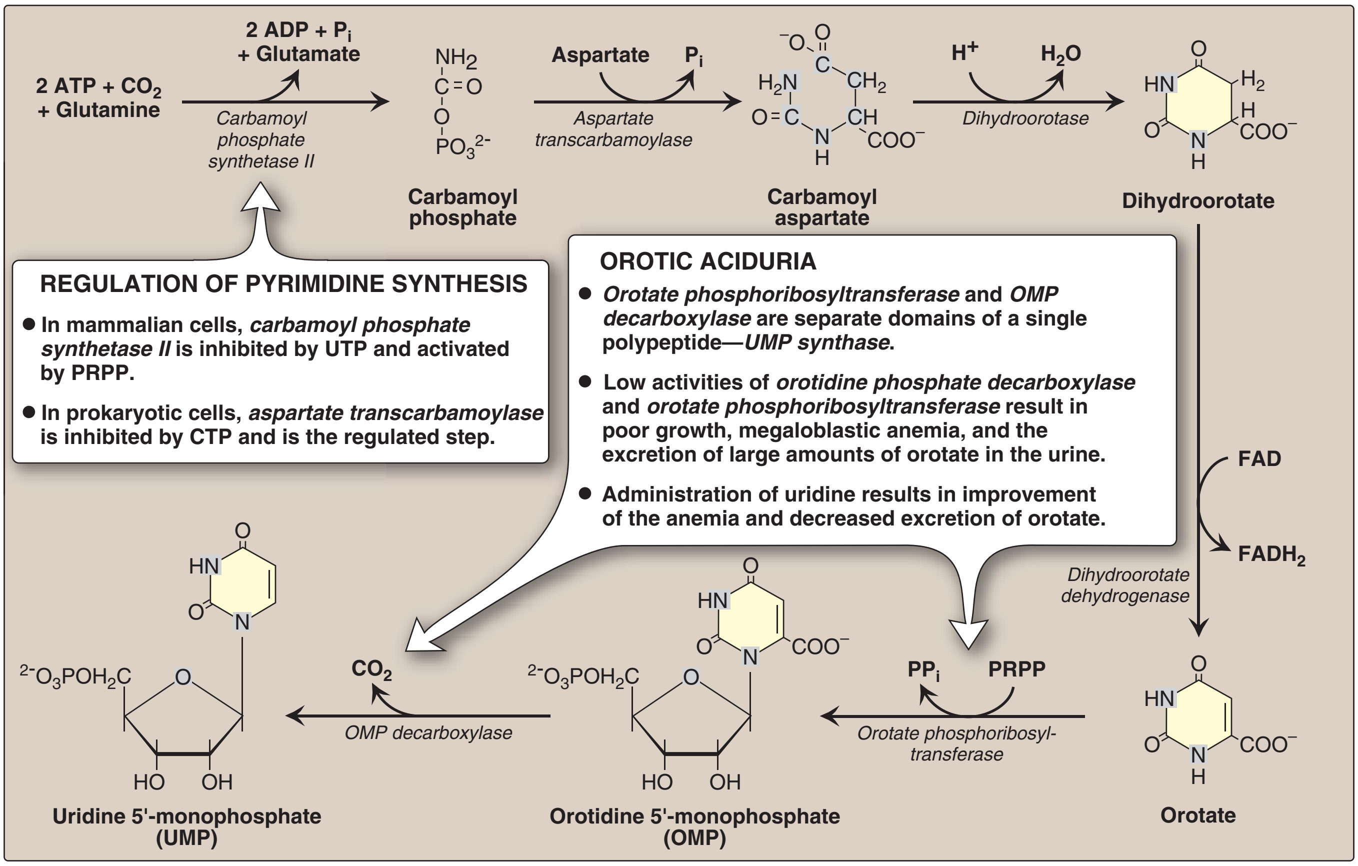
Figure 22.20
Summary of the differences between *carbamoyl phosphate synthetase* (*CPS*) *I* and *II*.

B. Synthesis of orotic acid

The second step in pyrimidine synthesis is the formation of carbamoylaspartate, catalyzed by *aspartate transcarbamoylase*. The pyrimidine ring is then closed hydrolytically by *dihydroorotase*. The resulting dihydroorotate is oxidized to produce orotic acid (orotate, Figure 22.21). The enzyme that produces orotate, *dihydroorotate dehydrogenase*, is associated with the inner mitochondrial membrane. All other enzymes in pyrimidine biosynthesis are cytosolic. [Note: The first three enzymic activities in this pathway (*CPS II*, *aspartate transcarbamoylase*, and *dihydroorotase*) are actually three different catalytic domains of a single polypeptide chain known as CAD from the first letter in the name of each domain. (See p. 19 for a discussion of domains). This is an example of a multfunctional or multicatalytic polypeptide that facilitates the ordered synthesis of an important compound. Synthesis of the purine nucleotide IMP also involves multifunctional proteins.]

C. Formation of a pyrimidine nucleotide

The completed pyrimidine ring is converted to the nucleotide orotidine 5'-monophosphate (OMP) in the second stage of pyrimidine nucleotide synthesis (see Figure 22.21). PRPP is again the ribose 5-phosphate donor. The enzyme *orotate phosphoribosyltransferase* produces OMP and releases pyrophosphate, thereby making the reaction biologically irreversible. [Note: Both purine and pyrimidine synthesis thus require glutamine, aspartic acid, and PRPP as essential precursors.] OMP, the parent pyrimidine mononucleotide, is converted to uridine monophosphate (UMP) by *orotidylate decarboxylase*, which removes the acidic carboxyl group. *Orotate phosphoribosyltransferase* and *orotidylate decarboxylase* are also catalytic domains of a single polypeptide chain called *UMP synthase*. Orotic aciduria—a rare genetic defect—may be caused by a deficiency of one or both activities of this bifunctional enzyme, resulting in orotic acid in the urine (see Figure 22.21). UMP is


2 ATP + CO_2 + Glutamine
2 ADP + P_i + Glutamate
Carbamoyl phosphate synthetase II
Carbamoyl phosphate
Aspartate
P_i
Aspartate transcarbamoylase
Carbamoyl aspartate
H^+
H_2O
Dihydroorotase
Dihydroorotate
FAD
$FADH_2$
Dihydroorotate dehydrogenase
Orotate
PRPP
PP_i
Orotate phosphoribosyltransferase
Orotidine 5'-monophosphate (OMP)
CO_2
OMP decarboxylase
Uridine 5'-monophosphate (UMP)

REGULATION OF PYRIMIDINE SYNTHESIS

- **In mammalian cells, *carbamoyl phosphate synthetase II* is inhibited by UTP and activated by PRPP.**
- **In prokaryotic cells, *aspartate transcarbamoylase* is inhibited by CTP and is the regulated step.**

OROTIC ACIDURIA

- ***Orotate phosphoribosyltransferase* and *OMP decarboxylase* are separate domains of a single polypeptide—*UMP synthase*.**
- **Low activities of *orotidine phosphate decarboxylase* and *orotate phosphoribosyltransferase* result in poor growth, megaloblastic anemia, and the excretion of large amounts of orotate in the urine.**
- **Administration of uridine results in improvement of the anemia and decreased excretion of orotate.**

Figure 22.21
De novo pyrimidine synthesis.

sequentially phosphorylated to UDP and UTP. [Note: The UDP is a substrate for *ribonucleotide reductase*, which generates dUDP. The dUDP is phosphorylated to dUTP, which is rapidly hydrolyzed to dUMP by *UTP diphosphatase* (*dUTPase*). *dUTPase*, then, plays an important role in reducing availability of dUTP as a substrate for DNA synthesis, thus preventing erroneous incorporation of uracil into DNA.]

D. Synthesis of UTP and cytidine triphosphate (CTP)

CTP is produced by amination of UTP by *CTP synthetase* (Figure 22.22), with glutamine providing the nitrogen. [Note: Some CTP is dephosphorylated to CDP, which is a substrate for *ribonucleotide reductase*. The dCDP generated can be phosphorylated to dCTP for DNA synthesis.]

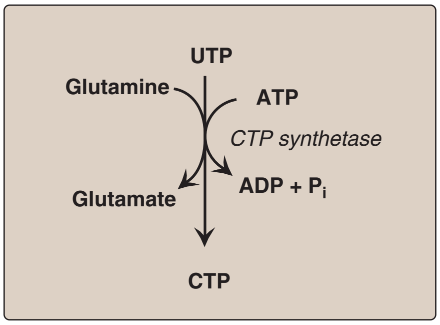

UTP
Glutamine
ATP
CTP synthetase
Glutamate
ADP + P_i
CTP

Figure 22.22
Synthesis of CTP from UTP. [Note: CTP, required for RNA synthesis, is converted to dCTP for DNA synthesis.]

E. Synthesis of thymidine monophosphate (TMP) from dUMP

dUMP is converted to dTMP by *thymidylate synthase*, which uses N^5,N^{10}-methylene tetrahydrofolate as the source of the methyl group (see p. 267 for a discussion of this coenzyme). This is an unusual reaction in that tetrahydrofolate (THF) contributes not only a one-carbon unit but also two hydrogen atoms from the pteridine ring, resulting in the oxidation of THF to dihydrofolate (DHF) (Figure 22.23). Inhibitors of *thymidylate synthase* include thymine analogs such as 5-fluorouracil, which serve as successful antitumor agents.

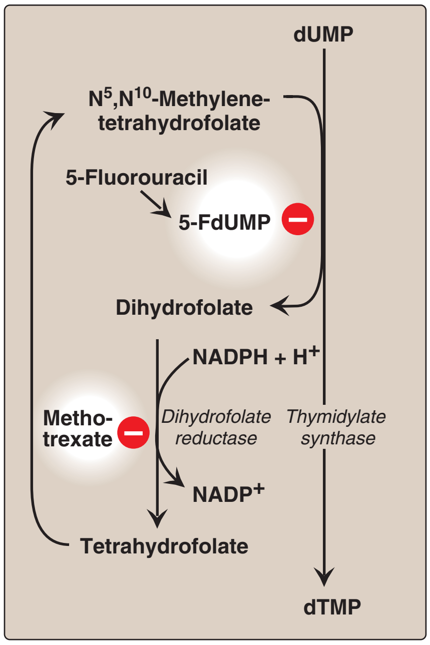


Figure 22.23
Synthesis of dTMP from dUMP, illustrating sites of action of antineoplastic drugs.

5-Fluorouracil is metabolically converted to 5-FdUMP, which becomes permanently bound to the inactivated *thymidylate synthase*; for this reason, the drug is called a "suicide" inhibitor. DHF can be reduced to THF by *dihydrofolate reductase* (see Figure 28.3, p. 374), an enzyme that is inhibited by drugs such as methotrexate. By decreasing the supply of THF, these folate analogs not only inhibit purine synthesis (see Figure 22.7), but, by preventing methylation of dUMP to dTMP, they also lower the cellular concentration of this essential component of DNA. DNA synthesis is inhibited and cell growth slowed. Drugs such as those described above, therefore, are used to decrease the growth rate of cancer cells. [Note: Trimethoprim, a folate analog, has potent antibacterial activity because of its selective inhibition of bacterial *dihydrofolate reductase*.]

F. Salvage of pyrimidines

Few pyrimidine bases are salvaged in human cells. However, the pyrimidine nucleosides can be salvaged by nucleoside *kinases* that utilize ATP in the phosphorylation of the nucleosides to nucleotides. [Note: The salvage of pyrimidine nucleosides is the basis for using uridine in the treatment of hereditary orotic aciduria.]

G. Degradation of pyrimidine nucleotides

Unlike the purine ring, which is not cleaved human cells, the pyrimidine ring is opened and degraded to highly soluble products, β-alanine and β-aminoisobutyrate, with the production of NH_3 and CO_2.

VII. CHAPTER SUMMARY

Nucleotides are composed of a **nitrogenous base** (**adenine** = **A**, **guanine** = **G**, **cytosine** = **C**, **uracil** = **U**, and **thymine** = **T**), a **pentose**, and one, two, or three **phosphate groups** (Figure 22.24). A and G are **purines**; C, U, and T are **pyrimidines**. If the sugar is **ribose**, the nucleotide is a **ribonucleoside phosphate** (for example, AMP), and it can have several functions in the cell, including being a component of **RNA**. If the sugar is **deoxyribose**, the nucleotide is a **deoxyribonucleoside phosphate** (for example, dAMP), and will be found almost exclusively as a component of **DNA**. The **committed step** in **purine synthesis** uses **5-phosphoribosyl-1-pyrophosphate** (**PRPP**, an "activated pentose" that provides the ribose-phosphate group for de novo purine and pyrimidine synthesis and purine salvage) and nitrogen from **glutamine** to produce phosphoribosyl amine. The enzyme is **glutamine:PRPP amidotransferase**, and is **inhibited** by **AMP** and **GMP** (the end products of the pathway) and activated by PRPP. Purine nucleotides can also be produced from preformed purine bases by using **salvage reactions** catalyzed by **adenine phosphoribosyltransferase (APRT)** and **hypoxanthine-guanine phosphoribosyltransferase** (**HGPRT**). A near total deficiency of HGPRT causes **Lesch-Nyhan syndrome**—a severe, heritable form of hyperuricemia accompanied by compulsive self-mutilation. All deoxyribonucleotides are synthesized from ribonucleotides by the enzyme **ribonucleotide reductase**. This enzyme is highly regulated, for example, it is **strongly inhibited by dATP**—a compound that is overproduced in bone marrow cells in individuals with **adenosine deaminase deficiency**. This syndrome causes **severe combined immunodeficiency disease**. The end product of purine degradation is **uric acid**—a compound whose overproduction or undersecretion causes hyperuricemia that, if accompanied by the deposition of urate crystals in joints and soft tissues, and an inflammatory response to those crystals, results in **gout**. The first step in **pyrimidine synthesis**—the production of carbamoyl phosphate by **carbamoyl phosphate synthetase II**—is the **regulated** step in this pathway (it is **inhibited by UTP** and **activated by PRPP**). The UTP produced by this pathway can be converted to CTP. dUMP can be converted to **dTMP** using **thymidylate synthase**—an enzyme targeted by anticancer drugs such as **5-fluorouracil**. The regeneration of THF from DHF produced in the thymidylate synthase reaction requires **dihydrofolate reductase**—an enzyme targeted by the drug, **methotrexate**.

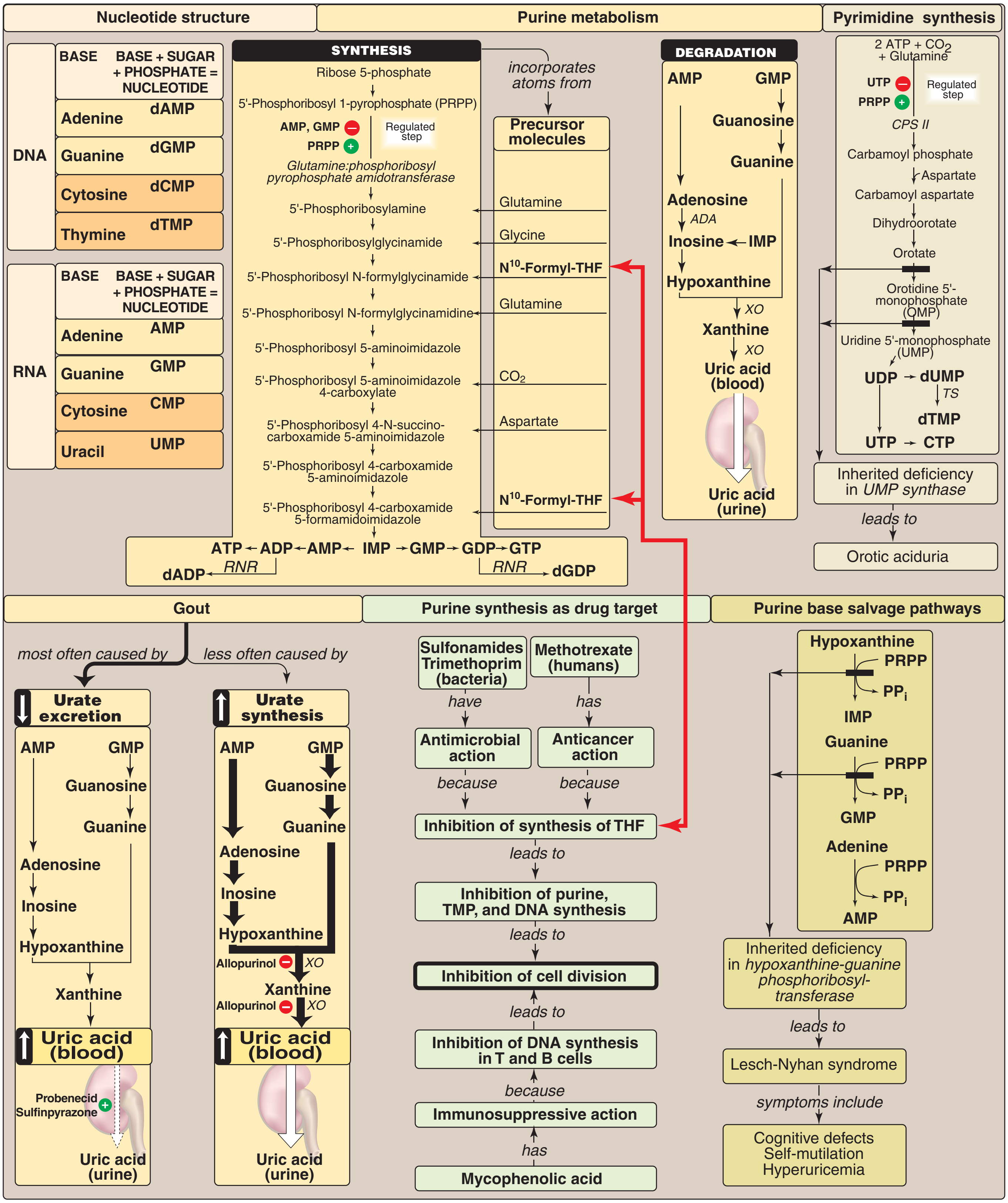

Nucleotide structure
Purine metabolism
Pyrimidine synthesis
DNA
BASE
BASE + SUGAR + PHOSPHATE = NUCLEOTIDE
Adenine
dAMP
Guanine
dGMP
Cytosine
dCMP
Thymine
dTMP
RNA
BASE
BASE + SUGAR + PHOSPHATE = NUCLEOTIDE
Adenine
AMP
Guanine
GMP
Cytosine
CMP
Uracil
UMP
SYNTHESIS
Ribose 5-phosphate
5'-Phosphoribosyl 1-pyrophosphate (PRPP)
AMP, GMP
PRPP
Regulated step
Glutamine:phosphoribosyl pyrophosphate amidotransferase
5'-Phosphoribosylamine
5'-Phosphoribosylglycinamide
5'-Phosphoribosyl N-formylglycinamide
5'-Phosphoribosyl N-formylglycinamidine
5'-Phosphoribosyl 5-aminoimidazole
5'-Phosphoribosyl 5-aminoimidazole 4-carboxylate
5'-Phosphoribosyl 4-N-succino-carboxamide 5-aminoimidazole
5'-Phosphoribosyl 4-carboxamide 5-aminoimidazole
5'-Phosphoribosyl 4-carboxamide 5-formamidoimidazole
incorporates atoms from
Precursor molecules
Glutamine
Glycine
N10-Formyl-THF
Glutamine
CO2
Aspartate
N10-Formyl-THF
ATP ← ADP ← AMP ← IMP → GMP → GDP → GTP
dADP ← RNR
RNR → dGDP
DEGRADATION
AMP
GMP
Guanosine
Guanine
Adenosine
ADA
Inosine ← IMP
Hypoxanthine
XO
Xanthine
XO
Uric acid (blood)
Uric acid (urine)
2 ATP + CO2 + Glutamine
UTP
PRPP
Regulated step
CPS II
Carbamoyl phosphate
Aspartate
Carbamoyl aspartate
Dihydroorotate
Orotate
Orotidine 5'-monophosphate (OMP)
Uridine 5'-monophosphate (UMP)
UDP → dUMP
TS
dTMP
UTP → CTP
Inherited deficiency in UMP synthase
leads to
Orotic aciduria
Gout
Purine synthesis as drug target
Purine base salvage pathways
most often caused by
less often caused by
Urate excretion
AMP
GMP
Guanosine
Guanine
Adenosine
Inosine
Hypoxanthine
Xanthine
Uric acid (blood)
Probenecid
Sulfinpyrazone
Uric acid (urine)
Urate synthesis
AMP
GMP
Guanosine
Guanine
Adenosine
Inosine
Hypoxanthine
Allopurinol
XO
Xanthine
Allopurinol
XO
Uric acid (blood)
Uric acid (urine)
Sulfonamides Trimethoprim (bacteria)
Methotrexate (humans)
have
has
Antimicrobial action
Anticancer action
because
because
Inhibition of synthesis of THF
leads to
Inhibition of purine, TMP, and DNA synthesis
leads to
Inhibition of cell division
leads to
Inhibition of DNA synthesis in T and B cells
because
Immunosuppressive action
has
Mycophenolic acid
Hypoxanthine
PRPP
PPi
IMP
Guanine
PRPP
PPi
GMP
Adenine
PRPP
PPi
AMP
Inherited deficiency in hypoxanthine-guanine phosphoribosyl-transferase
leads to
Lesch-Nyhan syndrome
symptoms include
Cognitive defects
Self-mutilation
Hyperuricemia

Figure 22.24
Key concept map for nucleotide metabolism. *ADA= adenosine deaminase, XO = xanthine oxidase, TS = thymidylate synthase. RNR = ribonucleotide reductase, CPS II = carbamyl phosphate synthetase II.*

Study Questions

Choose the ONE correct answer.

22.1 A 42-year-old male patient undergoing radiation therapy for prostate cancer develops severe pain in the metatarsal phalangeal joint of his right big toe. Monosodium urate crystals are detected by polarized light microscopy in fluid obtained from this joint by arthrocentesis. Uric acid crystals are present in his urine. This patient's pain is directly caused by the overproduction of the end product of which of the following metabolic pathways?

A. De novo pyrimidine biosynthesis.
B. Pyrimidine degradation.
C. De novo purine biosynthesis.
D. Purine salvage.
E. Purine degradation.

Correct answer = E. The patient's pain is caused by gout, resulting from an inflammatory response to the crystallization of excess uric acid in his joints. Radiation therapy caused cell death, with degradation of nucleic acids and their constituent purines. Uric acid, the end product of purine degradation, is a relatively insoluble compound that can cause gout and kidney stones. Pyrimidine metabolism is not associated with uric acid production. Overproduction of purines can indirectly result in hyperuricemia. Purine salvage decreases uric acid production.

22.2 A 1-year-old female patient is lethargic, weak, and anemic. Her height and weight are both low for her age. Her urine contains an elevated level of orotic acid. The administration of which of the following compounds is most likely to alleviate her symptoms?

A. Adenine.
B. Guanine.
C. Hypoxanthine.
D. Thymidine.
E. Uridine.

Correct answer = E. The elevated excretion of orotic acid indicates that the patient has orotic aciduria, a rare genetic disorder affecting the de novo pyrimidine biosynthetic pathway. Deficiencies in the enzyme activities OMP decarboxylase and/or orotate phosphoribosyltransferase (both of which are domains of the enzyme UMP synthase) leave the patient unable to synthesize pyrimidines. Uridine, a pyrimidine nucleoside, is useful in treating this disorder because it bypasses the missing enzymes and can be salvaged to UMP, which can be converted to all the other pyrimidines. Although thymidine is a pyrimidine nucleoside, it cannot be converted to other pyrimidines. Hypoxanthine, guanine, and adenine are all purine bases that have no value in helping to replace the missing pyrimidines.

22.3 The rate of DNA synthesis in a culture of cells could be most accurately determined by measuring the incorporation of which of the following radiolabeled compounds?

A. Adenine.
B. Guanine.
C. Phosphate.
D. Thymidine.

Correct answer = D. Because thymidine is essentially found only in DNA, its incorporation would most accurately reflect the rate of DNA synthesis. Uridine is found only in RNA and could be used to measure the rate of RNA synthesis. Phosphate, adenine, and guanine are present in both DNA and RNA, and could not be used to specifically measure synthesis of either one.

22.4 Which one of the following enzymes of nucleotide metabolism is correctly paired with its pharmacological inhibitor?

A. Dihydrofolate reductase—methotrexate
B. IMP dehydrogenase—hydroxyurea
C. Ribonucleotide reductase—5-fluorouracil
D. Thymidylate synthase—allopurinol
E. Xanthine oxidase—probenecid

Correct answer = A. Methotrexate interferes with folate metabolism by acting as a competitive inhibitor of the enzyme dihydrofolate reductase. This starves cells for tetrahydrofolate, and makes them unable to synthesize purines and dTMP. IMP dehydrogenase is inhibited by mycophenolic acid. Ribonucleotide reductase is inhibited by hydroxyurea. Thymidylate synthase is inhibited by 5-fluorouracil. Xanthine oxidase is inhibited by allopurinol; probenecid increases renal excretion of urate, but does not inhibit its production.

22.5 What laboratory test would help in distinguishing an orotic aciduria caused by ornithine transcarbamylase deficiency from that caused by UMP synthase deficiency?

Blood ammonia level would expected to be elevated in ornithine transcarbamylase deficiency but not in UMP synthase deficiency.

UNIT V:
Integration of Metabolism

Metabolic Effects of Insulin and Glucagon

23

I. OVERVIEW

Four major organs play a dominant role in fuel metabolism: liver, adipose, muscle, and brain. These tissues contain unique sets of enzymes, such that each organ is specialized for the storage, use, or generation of specific fuels. These tissues do not function in isolation, but rather form part of a network in which one tissue may provide substrates to another, or process compounds produced by other organs. Communication between tissues is mediated by the nervous system, by the availability of circulating substrates, and by variation in the levels of plasma hormones (Figure 23.1). The integration of energy metabolism is controlled primarily by the actions of two peptide hormones: insulin and glucagon, with the catecholamines epinephrine and norepinephrine playing a supporting role. Changes in the circulating levels of these hormones allow the body to store energy when food is available in abundance, or to make stored energy available, for example, during "survival crises," such as famine, severe injury, and "fight-or-flight" situations. This chapter describes the structure, secretion, and metabolic effects of the two hormones that most profoundly affect energy metabolism.

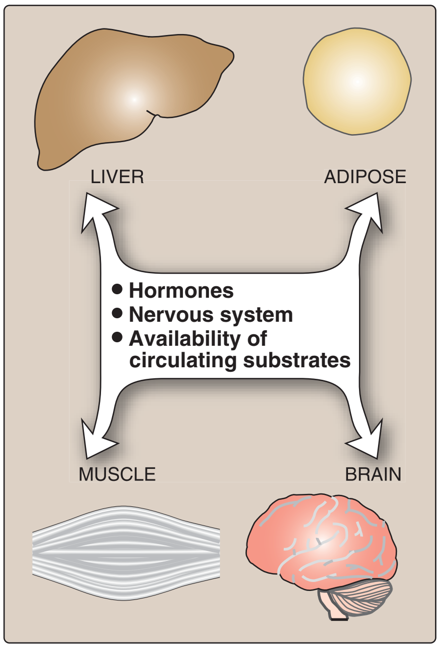


Figure 23.1
Mechanisms of communication between four major tissues.

II. INSULIN

Insulin is a polypeptide hormone produced by the β cells of the islets of Langerhans—clusters of cells that are embedded in the exocrine portion of the pancreas (Figure 23.2). The islets of Langerhans make up only about 1–2% of the total cells of the pancreas. Insulin is the most important hormone coordinating the use of fuels by tissues. Its metabolic effects are anabolic, favoring, for example, synthesis of glycogen, triacylglycerols, and protein.

A. Structure of insulin

Insulin is composed of 51 amino acids arranged in two polypeptide chains, designated A and B, which are linked together by two disulfide bridges (Figure 23.3A). The insulin molecule also contains an intramolecular disulfide bridge between amino acid residues of the A chain. [Note: Pig (porcine) and beef (bovine) insulin differ from human insulin at one and three amino acid positions, respectively. When used in humans for the treatment of diabetes, antibodies to these foreign proteins develop. Use of human recombinant insulin (see p. 470) has eliminated this problem.]

B. Synthesis of insulin

The processing and transport of intermediates that occur during the synthesis of insulin are shown in Figures 23.3B and 23.4. Note that the biosynthesis involves two inactive precursors, preproinsulin and proinsulin, which are sequentially cleaved to form the active hormone plus the connecting or C-peptide (see Figure 23.4). [Note: The C-peptide is essential for proper insulin folding. Also, because of its longer half-life in the plasma, the C-peptide is a good indicator of insulin production and secretion.] Insulin is stored in the cytosol in granules that, given the proper stimulus (see below), are released by exocytosis. (See p. 166 for a discussion of the synthesis of proteins destined for secretion.) Insulin is degraded by the enzyme *insulinase* which is present in the liver and, to a lesser extent, in the kidneys. Insulin has a plasma half-life of approximately 6 minutes. This short duration of action permits rapid changes in circulating levels of the hormone.

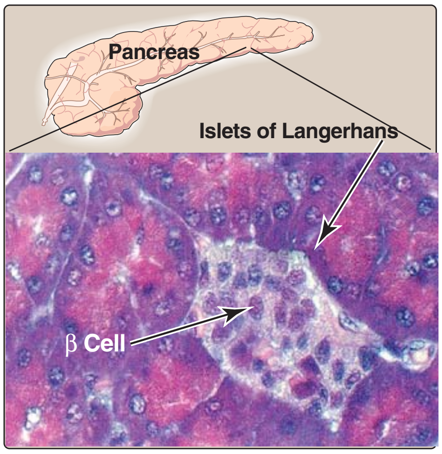

Pancreas
Islets of Langerhans
β Cell

Figure 23.2
Islets of Langerhans.

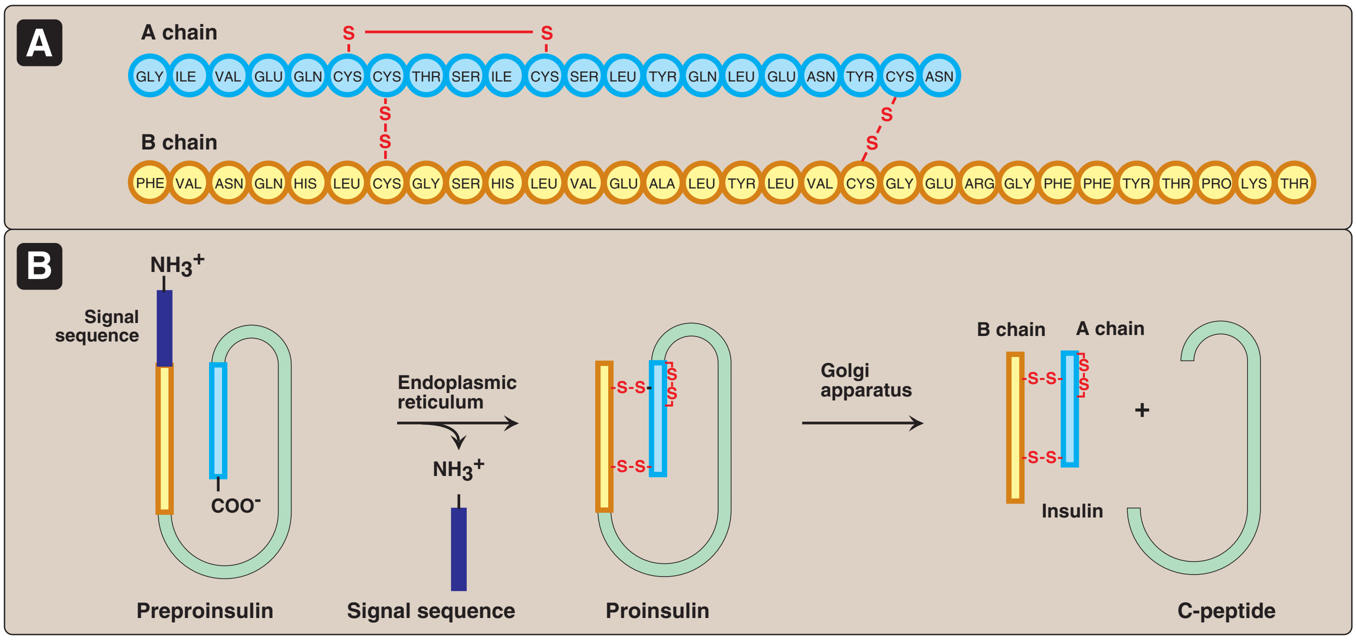

A
A chain
S
S
GLY ILE VAL GLU GLN CYS CYS THR SER ILE CYS SER LEU TYR GLN LEU GLU ASN TYR CYS ASN
S
S
S
S
B chain
PHE VAL ASN GLN HIS LEU CYS GLY SER HIS LEU VAL GLU ALA LEU TYR LEU VAL CYS GLY GLU ARG GLY PHE PHE TYR THR PRO LYS THR
B
NH3+
Signal sequence
COO-
Preproinsulin
Endoplasmic reticulum
NH3+
Signal sequence
-S-S-
S S
-S-S-
Proinsulin
Golgi apparatus
B chain
A chain
-S-S-
S S
-S-S-
Insulin
+
C-peptide

Figure 23.3
A. Structure of insulin. B. Formation of human insulin from preproinsulin.

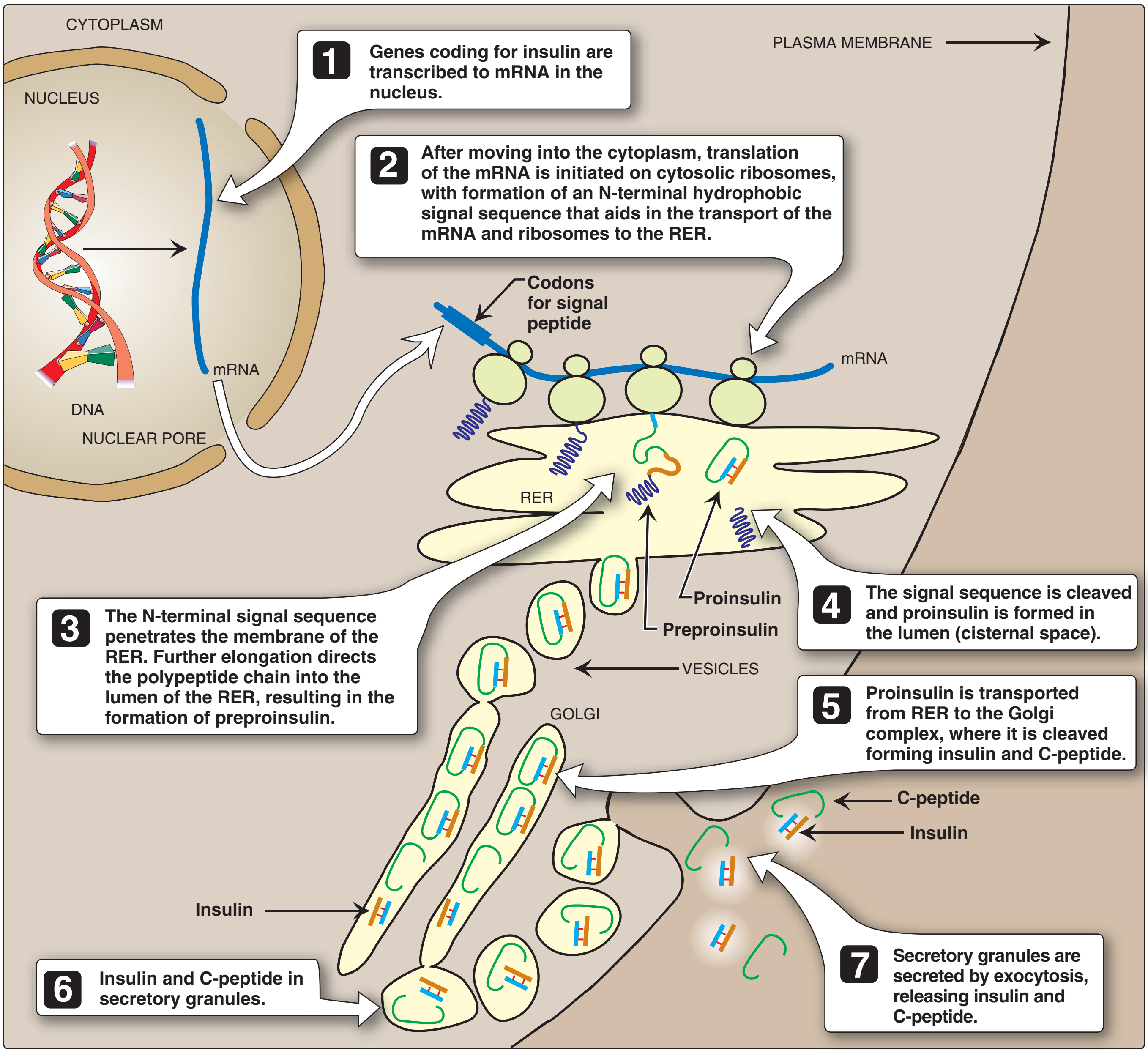

CYTOPLASM
NUCLEUS
DNA
NUCLEAR PORE
mRNA
PLASMA MEMBRANE
1 Genes coding for insulin are transcribed to mRNA in the nucleus.
2 After moving into the cytoplasm, translation of the mRNA is initiated on cytosolic ribosomes, with formation of an N-terminal hydrophobic signal sequence that aids in the transport of the mRNA and ribosomes to the RER.
Codons for signal peptide
mRNA
RER
Proinsulin
Preproinsulin
VESICLES
3 The N-terminal signal sequence penetrates the membrane of the RER. Further elongation directs the polypeptide chain into the lumen of the RER, resulting in the formation of preproinsulin.
4 The signal sequence is cleaved and proinsulin is formed in the lumen (cisternal space).
GOLGI
5 Proinsulin is transported from RER to the Golgi complex, where it is cleaved forming insulin and C-peptide.
C-peptide
Insulin
Insulin
6 Insulin and C-peptide in secretory granules.
7 Secretory granules are secreted by exocytosis, releasing insulin and C-peptide.

Figure 23.4
Intracellular movements of insulin and its precursors. RER = rough endoplasmic reticulum.

C. Regulation of insulin secretion

1. **Stimulation of insulin secretion:** Insulin secretion by the β cells of the islets of Langerhans of the pancreas is closely coordinated with the release of glucagon by pancreatic α cells. The relative amounts of insulin and glucagon released by the pancreas are regulated so that the rate of hepatic glucose production is kept equal to the use of glucose by peripheral tissues. In view of its coordinating role, it is not surprising that the β cell responds to a variety of stimuli. In particular, insulin secretion is increased by:

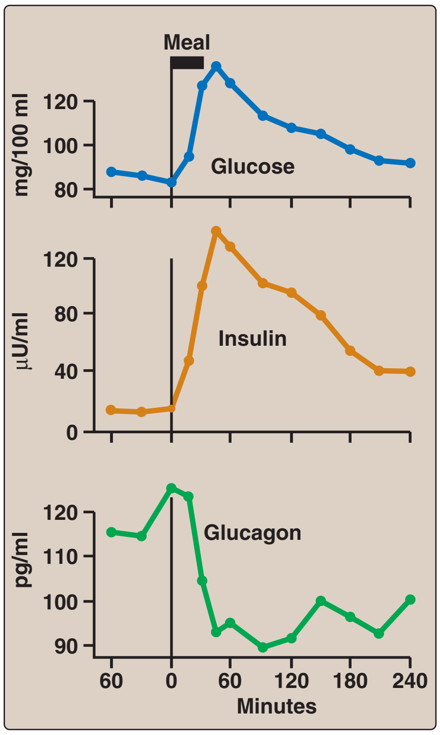


Figure 23.5
Changes in blood levels of glucose, insulin, and glucagon after ingestion of a carbohydrate-rich meal.

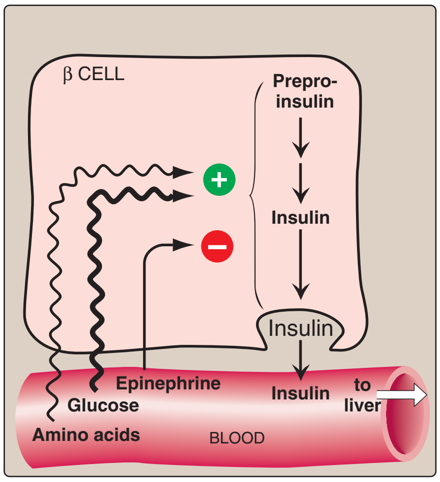


Figure 23.6
Regulation of insulin release from pancreatic β cells.

a. **Glucose:** The β cells are the most important glucose-sensing cells in the body. Like the liver, β cells contain GLUT-2 transporters (see p. 97) and have *glucokinase* activity (see p. 98), and thus can phosphorylate glucose in amounts proportional to its actual concentration in the blood. Ingestion of glucose or a carbohydrate-rich meal leads to a rise in blood glucose, which is a signal for increased insulin secretion (as well as decreased glucagon synthesis and release, Figure 23.5). Glucose is the most important stimulus for insulin secretion. [Note: Glucose also increases expression of the gene for insulin.]

b. **Amino acids:** Ingestion of protein causes a transient rise in plasma amino acid levels, which, in turn, induces the immediate secretion of insulin. Elevated plasma arginine, for example, stimulates insulin secretion.

c. **Gastrointestinal hormones:** Most gastrointestinal hormones favor insulin release. The intestinal peptides cholecystokinin and gastric-inhibitory polypeptide (glucose-dependent insulinotropic peptide) increase insulin secretion in response to oral glucose, and so are referred to as “incretins.” They are released from the small intestine after the ingestion of food and cause an anticipatory rise in insulin levels. This may account for the fact that the same amount of glucose given orally induces a much greater secretion of insulin than if given intravenously.

> Glucose-dependent release of insulin into blood is mediated through a rise in calcium concentration in the β cell. Glucose taken into β cells is metabolized, with subsequent production of ATP. ATP-sensitive potassium channels close, causing depolarization of the plasma membrane, activation of voltage-gated calcium channels, and influx of calcium into the cell. Calcium causes vesicles containing insulin to be released from the β cell. Sulfonylureas, oral agents used to treat type 2 diabetes, increase insulin secretion by closing ATP-sensitive potassium channels.

2. **Inhibition of insulin secretion:** The synthesis and release of insulin are decreased when there is a scarcity of dietary fuels, and also during periods of stress (for example, fever or infection). These effects are mediated primarily by epinephrine, which is secreted by the adrenal medulla in response to stress, trauma, or extreme exercise. Under these conditions, the release of epinephrine is controlled largely by the nervous system. Epinephrine has a direct effect on energy metabolism, causing a rapid mobilization of energy-yielding fuels, including glucose from the liver (produced by glycogenolysis or gluconeogenesis, see p. 121) and fatty acids from adipose tissue (see p. 189). In addition, epinephrine can override the normal glucose-stimulated release of insulin. Thus, in emergency situations, the sympathetic nervous

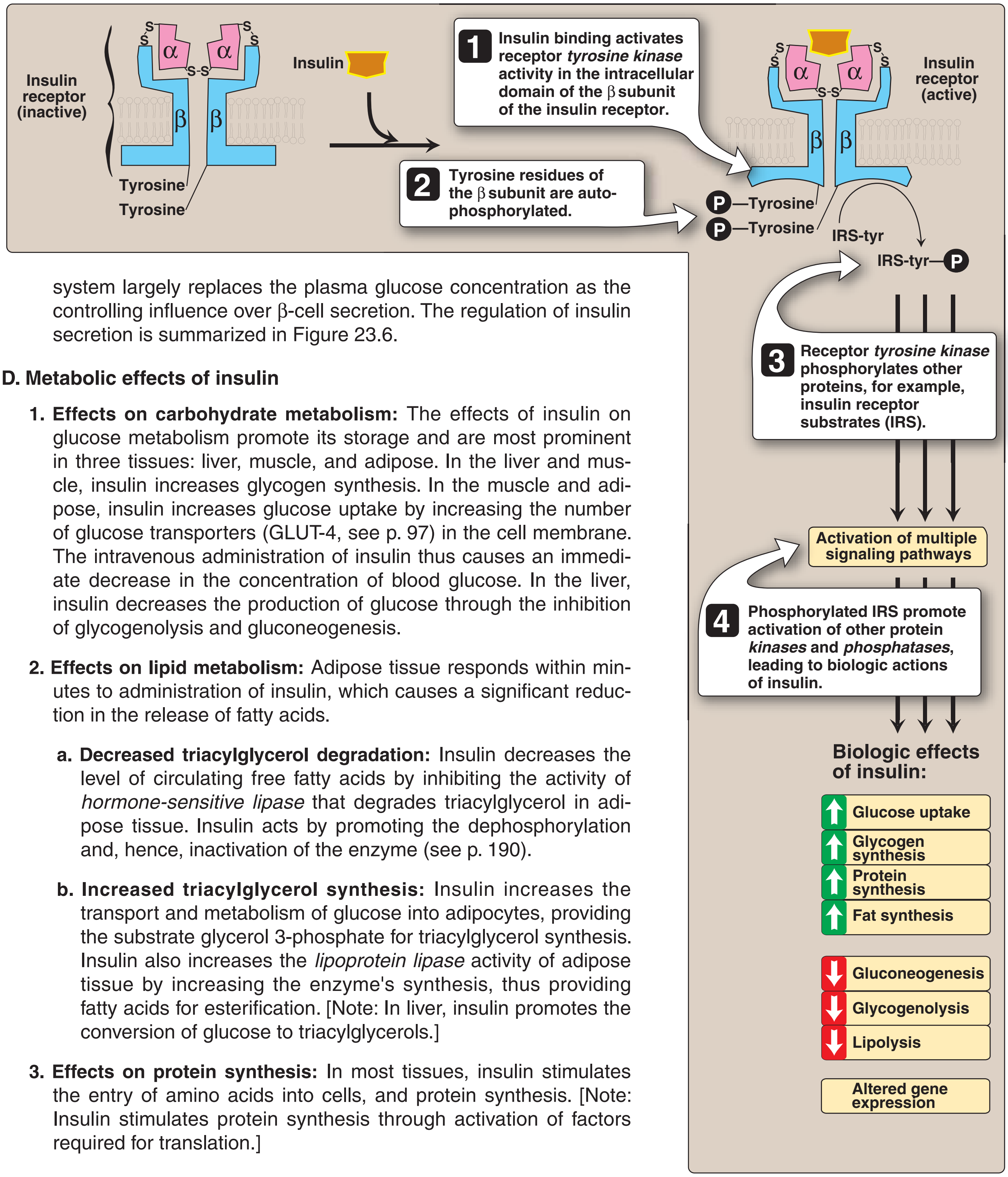

Insulin receptor (inactive)
S S
α α
S-S
β β
Tyrosine
Tyrosine
Insulin
1 Insulin binding activates receptor *tyrosine kinase* activity in the intracellular domain of the β subunit of the insulin receptor.
2 Tyrosine residues of the β subunit are autophosphorylated.
Insulin receptor (active)
P—Tyrosine
P—Tyrosine
IRS-tyr
IRS-tyr—P
3 Receptor *tyrosine kinase* phosphorylates other proteins, for example, insulin receptor substrates (IRS).
Activation of multiple signaling pathways
4 Phosphorylated IRS promote activation of other protein *kinases* and *phosphatases*, leading to biologic actions of insulin.
Biologic effects of insulin:
↑ Glucose uptake
↑ Glycogen synthesis
↑ Protein synthesis
↑ Fat synthesis
↓ Gluconeogenesis
↓ Glycogenolysis
↓ Lipolysis
Altered gene expression

Figure 23.7
Insulin receptor. IRS = Insulin receptor substrate.

system largely replaces the plasma glucose concentration as the controlling influence over β-cell secretion. The regulation of insulin secretion is summarized in Figure 23.6.

D. Metabolic effects of insulin

1. **Effects on carbohydrate metabolism:** The effects of insulin on glucose metabolism promote its storage and are most prominent in three tissues: liver, muscle, and adipose. In the liver and muscle, insulin increases glycogen synthesis. In the muscle and adipose, insulin increases glucose uptake by increasing the number of glucose transporters (GLUT-4, see p. 97) in the cell membrane. The intravenous administration of insulin thus causes an immediate decrease in the concentration of blood glucose. In the liver, insulin decreases the production of glucose through the inhibition of glycogenolysis and gluconeogenesis.

2. **Effects on lipid metabolism:** Adipose tissue responds within minutes to administration of insulin, which causes a significant reduction in the release of fatty acids.

   a. **Decreased triacylglycerol degradation:** Insulin decreases the level of circulating free fatty acids by inhibiting the activity of *hormone-sensitive lipase* that degrades triacylglycerol in adipose tissue. Insulin acts by promoting the dephosphorylation and, hence, inactivation of the enzyme (see p. 190).

   b. **Increased triacylglycerol synthesis:** Insulin increases the transport and metabolism of glucose into adipocytes, providing the substrate glycerol 3-phosphate for triacylglycerol synthesis. Insulin also increases the *lipoprotein lipase* activity of adipose tissue by increasing the enzyme's synthesis, thus providing fatty acids for esterification. [Note: In liver, insulin promotes the conversion of glucose to triacylglycerols.]

3. **Effects on protein synthesis:** In most tissues, insulin stimulates the entry of amino acids into cells, and protein synthesis. [Note: Insulin stimulates protein synthesis through activation of factors required for translation.]

E. Mechanism of insulin action

Insulin binds to specific, high-affinity receptors in the cell membrane of most tissues, including liver, muscle, and adipose. This is the first step in a cascade of reactions ultimately leading to a diverse array of biologic actions (Figure 23.7).

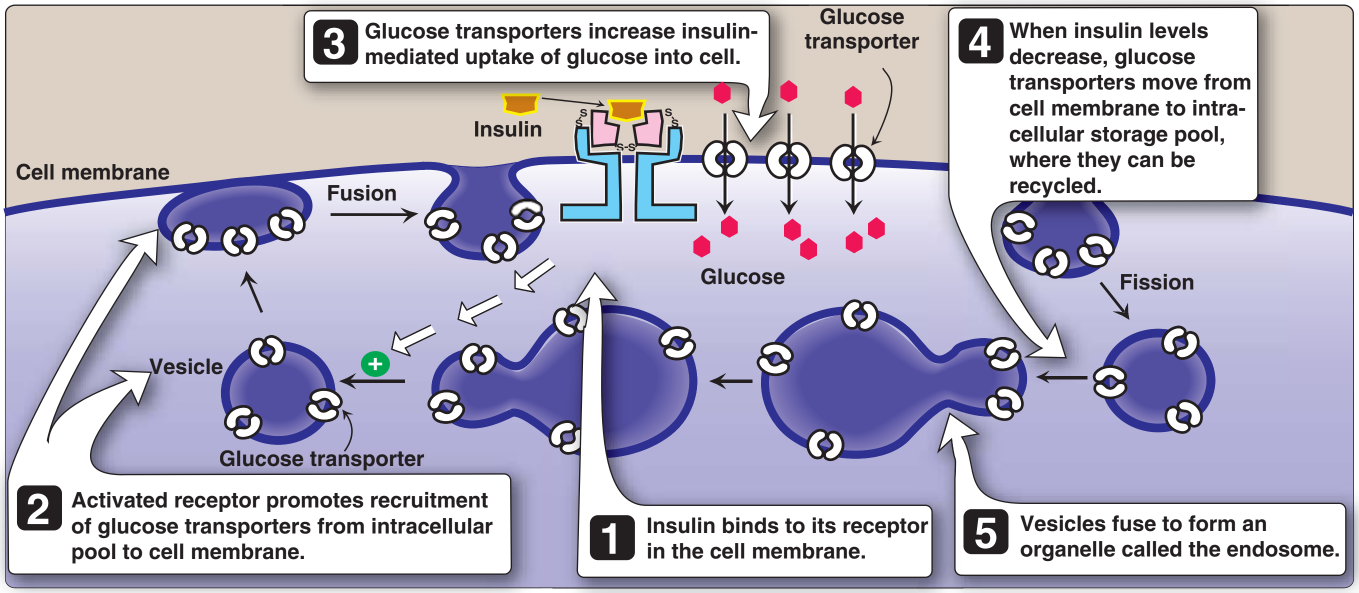

3 Glucose transporters increase insulin-mediated uptake of glucose into cell.
Glucose transporter
4 When insulin levels decrease, glucose transporters move from cell membrane to intracellular storage pool, where they can be recycled.
Insulin
S-S
Cell membrane
Fusion
Glucose
Fission
Vesicle
+
Glucose transporter
2 Activated receptor promotes recruitment of glucose transporters from intracellular pool to cell membrane.
1 Insulin binds to its receptor in the cell membrane.
5 Vesicles fuse to form an organelle called the endosome.

Figure 23.8
Insulin causes the recruitment of glucose transporters (GLUTs) from intracellular stores in skeletal and cardiac muscle and adipose tissue.

1. **Insulin receptor:** The insulin receptor is synthesized as a single polypeptide that is glycosylated and cleaved into α and β subunits, which are then assembled into a tetramer linked by disulfide bonds (see Figure 23.7). A hydrophobic domain in each β subunit spans the plasma membrane. The extracellular α subunit contains the insulin-binding site. The cytosolic domain of the β subunit is a *tyrosine kinase*, which is activated by insulin.

2. **Signal transduction:** The binding of insulin to the α subunits of the insulin receptor induces conformational changes that are transduced to the β subunits. This promotes a rapid autophosphorylation of specific tyrosine residues on each β subunit (see Figure 23.7). Autophosphorylation initiates a cascade of cell-signaling responses, including phosphorylation of a family of proteins called insulin receptor substrates (IRS). At least four IRS have been identified that show similar structures but different tissue distributions. Phosphorylated IRS proteins interact with other signaling molecules through specific domains, activating a number of pathways that affect gene expression, cell metabolism and growth. The actions of insulin are terminated by dephosphorylation of the receptor.

3. **Membrane effects of insulin:** Glucose transport in some tissues, such as skeletal muscle and adipocytes, increases in the presence of insulin (Figure 23.8). Insulin promotes the recruitment of insulin-sensitive glucose transporters (GLUT-4) from a pool located in intracellular vesicles. [Note: Many tissues have insulin-insensitive systems for glucose transport (Figure 23.9). For example, hepatocytes, erythrocytes, and cells of the nervous system, intestinal mucosa, renal tubules, and cornea do not require insulin for glucose uptake.]

	Active transport	Facilitated transport
Insulin-sensitive		Skeletal and cardiac muscle, and adipose tissue (together account for largest tissue mass)
Insulin-insensitive	Epithelia of intestine Renal tubules Choroid plexus	Erythrocytes Leukocytes Lens of eye Cornea Liver Brain

Figure 23.9
Characteristics of glucose transport in various tissues.

4. **Receptor regulation:** Binding of insulin is followed by internalization of the hormone–receptor complex. Once inside the cell, insulin is degraded in the lysosomes. The receptors may be degraded but most are recycled to the cell surface. [Note: Elevated levels of insulin promote the degradation of receptors, thus decreasing the number of surface receptors. This is one type of "down-regulation."]

5. **Time course of insulin actions:** The binding of insulin provokes a wide range of actions. The most immediate response is an increase in glucose transport into adipocytes and skeletal muscle cells that occurs within seconds of insulin binding to its membrane receptor. Insulin-induced changes in enzymic activity in many cell types occur over minutes to hours, and reflect changes in the phosphorylation states of existing proteins. Insulin also initiates an increase in the amount of many enzymes, such as *glucokinase*, liver *pyruvate kinase, acetyl CoA carboxylase*, and *fatty acid synthase*, which requires hours to days. These changes reflect an increase in gene expression through increased transcription (mediated by SREBP-1, see p. 184) and translation.

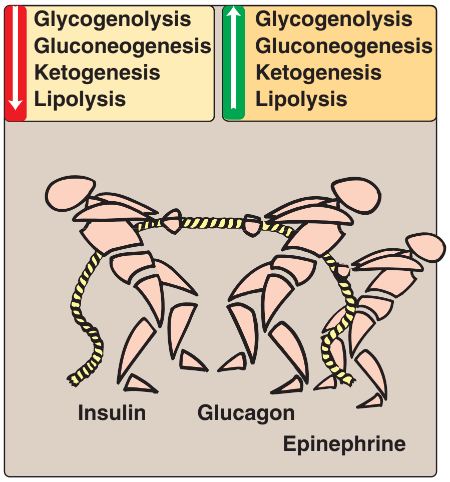


Figure 23.10
Opposing actions of insulin and glucagon plus epinephrine.

III. GLUCAGON

Glucagon is a polypeptide hormone secreted by the α cells of the pancreatic islets of Langerhans. Glucagon, along with epinephrine, cortisol, and growth hormone (the "counter-regulatory hormones"), opposes many of the actions of insulin (Figure 23.10). Most importantly, glucagon acts to maintain blood glucose levels by activation of hepatic glycogenolysis and gluconeogenesis. Glucagon is composed of 29 amino acids arranged in a single polypeptide chain. [Note: Unlike insulin, the amino acid sequence of glucagon is the same in all mammalian species examined to date.] Glucagon is synthesized as a large precursor molecule (preproglucagon) that is converted to glucagon through a series of selective proteolytic cleavages, similar to those described for insulin biosynthesis (see Figure 23.3). In contrast to insulin, preproglucagon is processed to different products in different tissues.

A. Stimulation of glucagon secretion

The α cell is responsive to a variety of stimuli that signal actual or potential hypoglycemia (Figure 23.11). Specifically, glucagon secretion is increased by:

1. **Low blood glucose:** A decrease in plasma glucose concentration is the primary stimulus for glucagon release. During an overnight or prolonged fast, elevated glucagon levels prevent hypoglycemia (see below for a discussion of hypoglycemia).

2. **Amino acids:** Amino acids derived from a meal containing protein stimulate the release of both glucagon and insulin. The glucagon effectively prevents hypoglycemia that would otherwise occur as a result of increased insulin secretion that occurs after a protein meal.

3. **Epinephrine:** Elevated levels of circulating epinephrine produced by the adrenal medulla, or norepinephrine produced by sympathetic innervation of the pancreas, or both, stimulate the release

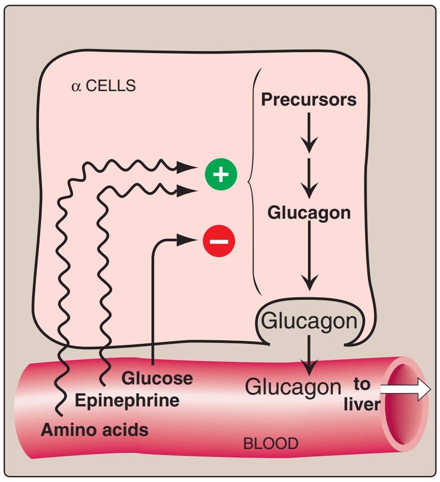


Figure 23.11
Regulation of glucagon release from pancreatic α cells. [Note: Amino acids increase release of insulin and glucagon, whereas glucose increases release of insulin only.]

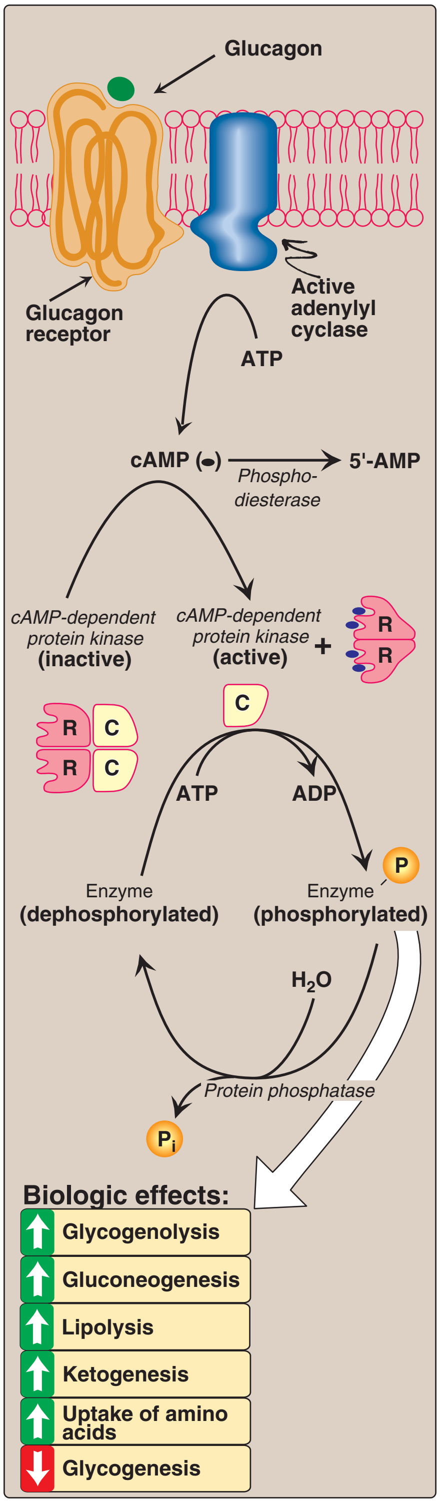

Glucagon
Glucagon receptor
Active adenylyl cyclase
ATP
cAMP (●)
Phospho-diesterase
5'-AMP
cAMP-dependent protein kinase (inactive)
cAMP-dependent protein kinase (active)
+
R
R
C
R C
R C
ATP
ADP
P
Enzyme (dephosphorylated)
Enzyme (phosphorylated)
H2O
Protein phosphatase
Pi
Biologic effects:
↑ Glycogenolysis
↑ Gluconeogenesis
↑ Lipolysis
↑ Ketogenesis
↑ Uptake of amino acids
↓ Glycogenesis

Figure 23.12
Mechanism of action of glucagon. [Note: For clarity, G-protein activation of *adenylyl cyclase* has been omitted.] R = regulatory subunit; C = catalytic subunit.

of glucagon. Thus, during periods of stress, trauma, or severe exercise, the elevated epinephrine levels can override the effect on the α cell of circulating substrates. In these situations—regardless of the concentration of blood glucose—glucagon levels are elevated in anticipation of increased glucose use. In contrast, insulin levels are depressed.

B. Inhibition of glucagon secretion

Glucagon secretion is significantly decreased by elevated blood glucose and by insulin. Both substances are increased following ingestion of glucose or a carbohydrate-rich meal (see Figure 23.5). The regulation of glucagon secretion is summarized in Figure 23.11.

C. Metabolic effects of glucagon

1. **Effects on carbohydrate metabolism:** The intravenous administration of glucagon leads to an immediate rise in blood glucose. This results from an increase in the breakdown of liver (not muscle) glycogen and an increase in gluconeogenesis.

2. **Effects on lipid metabolism:** Glucagon activates lipolysis in adipose. The free fatty acids released are taken up by liver and oxidized to acetyl coenzyme A, which is used in ketone body synthesis. [Note: The catecholamines also activate lipolysis.]

3. **Effects on protein metabolism:** Glucagon increases uptake of amino acids by the liver, resulting in increased availability of carbon skeletons for gluconeogenesis. As a consequence, plasma levels of amino acids are decreased.

D. Mechanism of action of glucagon

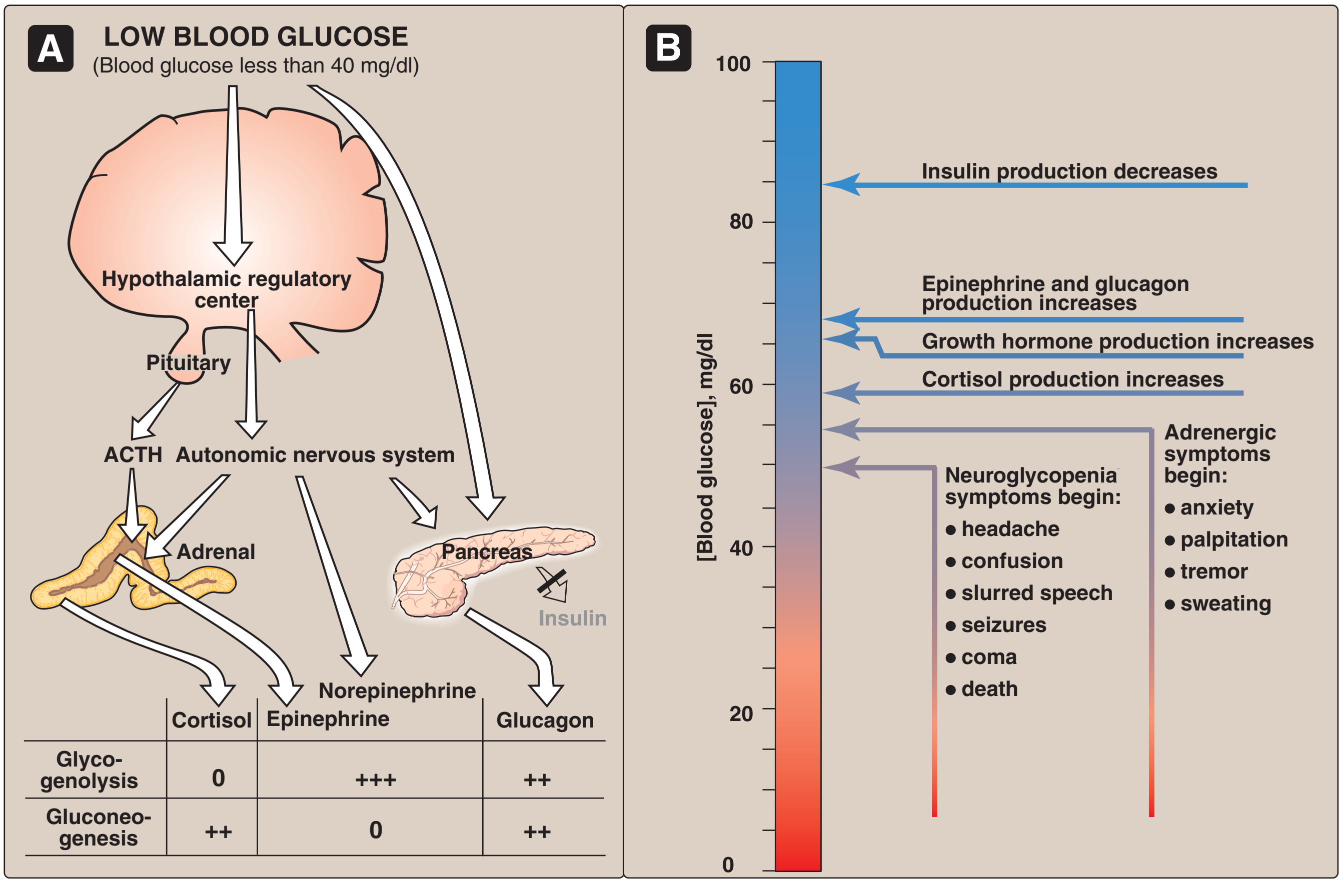
Glucagon binds to high-affinity G protein-coupled receptors on the cell membrane of hepatocytes. The receptors for glucagon are distinct from those that bind insulin or epinephrine. [Note: Glucagon receptors are not found on skeletal muscle.] Glucagon binding results in activation of *adenylyl cyclase* in the plasma membrane (Figure 23.12, and see p. 94). This causes a rise in cAMP (the "second messenger"), which, in turn, activates *cAMP-dependent protein kinase* and increases the phosphorylation of specific enzymes or other proteins. This cascade of increasing enzymic activities results in the phosphorylation-mediated activation or inhibition of key regulatory enzymes involved in carbohydrate and lipid metabolism. An example of such a cascade in glycogen degradation is shown on Figure 11.9, p. 131, and p. 132. [Note: Glucagon also affects gene transcription.]

IV. HYPOGLYCEMIA

Hypoglycemia is characterized by: 1) central nervous system (CNS) symptoms, including confusion, aberrant behavior, or coma; 2) a simultaneous blood glucose level equal to or less than 40 mg/dl; and 3) symptoms being resolved within minutes following the administration of glucose (Figure 23.13). Hypoglycemia is a medical emergency because the CNS has an absolute requirement for a continuous supply of bloodborne glucose to serve as fuel for energy metabolism. Transient hypoglycemia can cause cerebral dysfunction, whereas severe, prolonged hypoglycemia causes brain death. It is, therefore, not surprising that the body has multiple overlapping mechanisms to prevent or correct hypoglycemia. The most important hormone changes in combating hypoglycemia are elevated glucagon and epinephrine, combined with the diminished release of insulin.

A. Symptoms of hypoglycemia

The symptoms of hypoglycemia can be divided into two categories. Adrenergic symptoms—anxiety, palpitation, tremor, and sweating—are mediated by epinephrine release regulated by the hypothalamus in response to hypoglycemia. Usually adrenergic symptoms (that is, symptoms mediated by elevated epinephrine) occur when blood glucose levels fall abruptly. The second category of hypoglycemic symptoms is neuroglycopenic. Neuroglycopenia—the impaired delivery of glucose to the brain—results in impairment of brain function, causing headache, confusion, slurred speech, seizures, coma, and death. Neuroglycopenic symptoms often result from a gradual decline in blood glucose, often to levels below 40 mg/dl. The slow decline in glucose deprives the CNS of fuel, but fails to trigger an adequate epinephrine response.


A
LOW BLOOD GLUCOSE
(Blood glucose less than 40 mg/dl)
Hypothalamic regulatory center
Pituitary
ACTH
Autonomic nervous system
Adrenal
Pancreas
Insulin
Cortisol
Norepinephrine
Epinephrine
Glucagon
B
100
80
60
40
20
0
[Blood glucose], mg/dl
Insulin production decreases
Epinephrine and glucagon production increases
Growth hormone production increases
Cortisol production increases
Neuroglycopenia symptoms begin:
● headache
● confusion
● slurred speech
● seizures
● coma
● death
Adrenergic symptoms begin:
● anxiety
● palpitation
● tremor
● sweating

	Cortisol	Epinephrine	Glucagon
Glycogenolysis	0	+++	++
Gluconeogenesis	++	0	++

Figure 23.13
A. Actions of some of the glucoregulatory hormones in response to low blood glucose. B. Glycemic thresholds for the various responses to hypoglycemia. + = weak stimulation; ++ = moderate stimulation; +++ = strong stimulation; 0 = no effect. [Note: Normal fasted blood glucose is 70–99 mg/100 ml.]

B. Glucoregulatory systems

Humans have two overlapping glucose-regulating systems that are activated by hypoglycemia: 1) the islets of Langerhans, which release glucagon; and 2) receptors in the hypothalamus, which respond to abnormally low concentrations of blood glucose. The hypothalamic glucoreceptors can trigger both the secretion of epinephrine (mediated by the autonomic nervous system) and release of adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) and growth hormone by the anterior pituitary (see Figure 23.13). [Note: ACTH increases cortisol synthesis and secretion in the adrenal cortex (see p. 239.] Glucagon, epinephrine, cortisol, and growth hormones are sometimes called the "counter-regulatory" hormones because each opposes the action of insulin on glucose use.

1. **Glucagon and epinephrine:** Hypoglycemia is combatted by decreased release of insulin and increased secretion of glucagon, epinephrine, cortisol, and growth hormone (see Figure 23.13). Glucagon and epinephrine are most important in the acute, short-term regulation of blood glucose levels. Glucagon stimulates hepatic glycogenolysis and gluconeogenesis. Epinephrine promotes glycogenolysis and lipolysis, inhibits insulin secretion, and inhibits the insulin-mediated uptake of glucose by peripheral tissues. Epinephrine is not normally essential in combating hypoglycemia, but it can assume a critical role when glucagon secretion is deficient, for example, in the late stages of type 1 (formerly called insulin-dependent) diabetes mellitus (see p. 340). The prevention or correction of hypoglycemia fails when the secretion of both glucagon and epinephrine is deficient.

2. **Cortisol and growth hormone:** These hormones are less important in the short-term maintenance of blood glucose concentrations. They do, however, play a role in the long-term management of glucose metabolism.

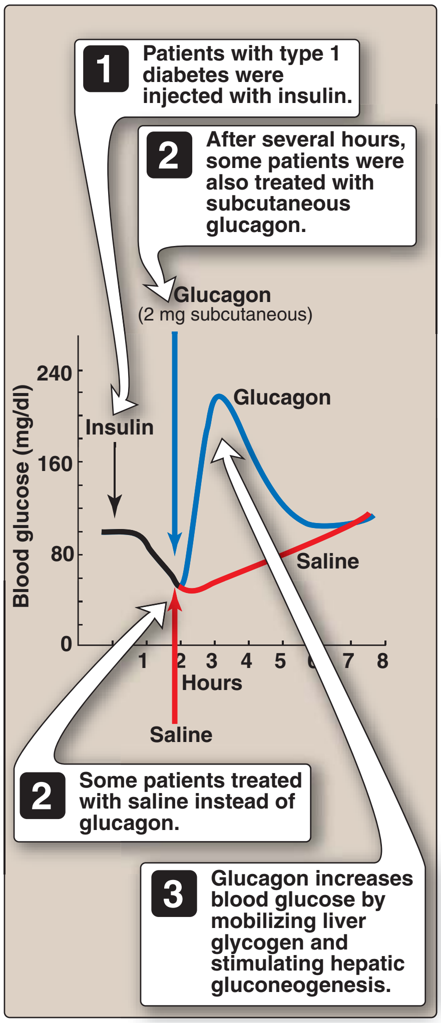


Figure 23.14
Reversal of insulin-induced hypoglycemia by administration of subcutaneous glucagon.

C. Types of hypoglycemia

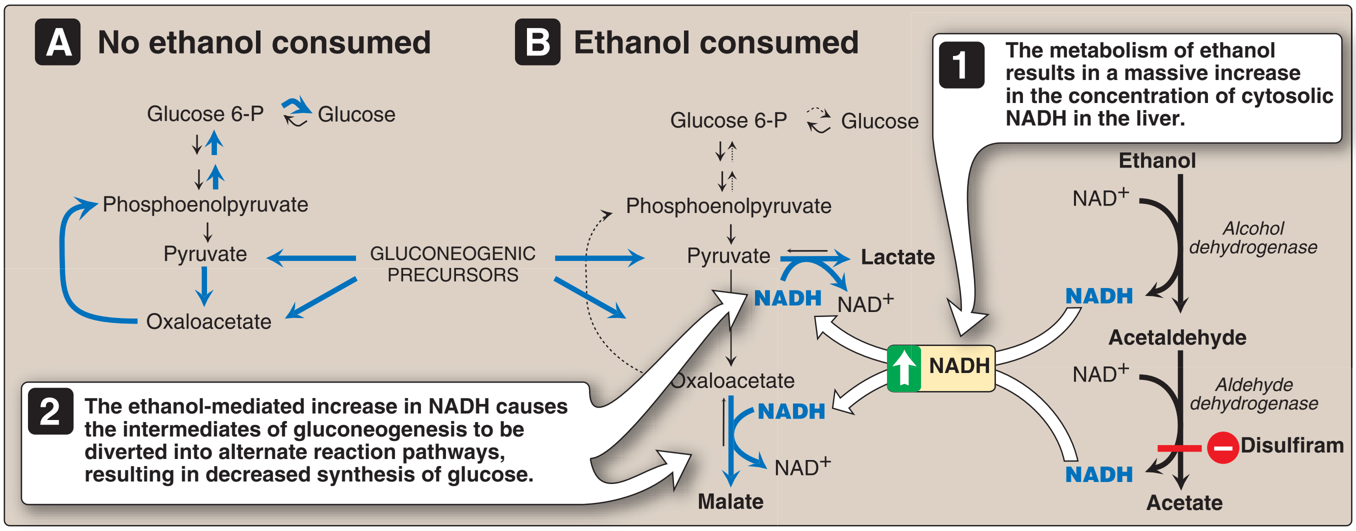
Hypoglycemia may be divided into three types: 1) insulin-induced; 2) postprandial (sometimes called reactive hypoglycemia); and 3) fasting hypoglycemia. [Note: Alcohol intoxication in fasting individuals can also be associated with hypoglycemia.]

1. **Insulin-induced hypoglycemia:** Hypoglycemia occurs frequently in patients with diabetes who are receiving insulin treatment, particularly those striving to achieve tight control of blood glucose levels. Mild hypoglycemia in fully conscious patients is treated by oral administration of carbohydrate. More commonly, patients with hypoglycemia are unconscious or have lost the ability to coordinate swallowing. In these cases, glucagon, administered subcutaneously or intramuscularly, is the treatment of choice (Figure 23.14).

2. **Postprandial hypoglycemia:** This is the second most common form of hypoglycemia. It is caused by an exaggerated insulin release following a meal, prompting transient hypoglycemia with mild adrenergic symptoms. The plasma glucose level returns to normal even if the patient is not fed. The only treatment usually required is that the patient eat frequent small meals rather than the usual three large meals.

3. **Fasting hypoglycemia:** Low blood glucose during fasting is rare, but is more likely to present as a serious medical problem. Fasting hypoglycemia, which tends to produce neuroglycopenia symptoms, may result from a reduction in the rate of glucose production by hepatic glycogenolysis or gluconeogenesis. Thus, low blood glucose levels are often seen in patients with hepatocellular damage or adrenal insufficiency, or in fasting individuals who have consumed large quantities of ethanol (see below). Alternately, fasting hypoglycemia may be the result of an increased rate of glucose use by the peripheral tissues due to overproduction of insulin by rare pancreatic tumors. If left untreated, a patient with fasting hypoglycemia may lose consciousness and experience convulsions and coma. [Note: Defects in fatty acid oxidation also result in hypoglycemia.]

4. **Hypoglycemia and alcohol intoxication:** Alcohol is metabolized in the liver by two oxidation reactions (Figure 23.15). Ethanol is first converted to acetaldehyde by *alcohol dehydrogenase*. Acetaldehyde is subsequently oxidized to acetate by *aldehyde dehydrogenase*. [Note: This enzyme is inhibited by disulfiram, a drug that has found some use in patients desiring to stop alcohol ingestion. It causes the accumulation of acetaldehyde in the blood, which results in flushing, tachycardia, hyperventilation, and nausea.] In each reaction, electrons are transferred to NAD^+, resulting in a massive increase in the concentration of cytosolic NADH. The abundance of NADH favors the reduction of pyruvate to lactate, and of oxaloacetate (OAA) to malate. [Note: The rise in lactate can result in lactic acidosis and, because lactate competes with urate for excretion by the kidney, can also result in hyperuricemia.] Recall from p. 118 that pyruvate and OAA are both intermediates in the synthesis of glucose by gluconeogenesis. Thus, the ethanol-mediated increase in NADH causes the intermediates of gluconeogenesis to be diverted into alternate reaction pathways, resulting in the decreased synthesis of glucose.


A No ethanol consumed
B Ethanol consumed
Glucose 6-P
Glucose
Phosphoenolpyruvate
Pyruvate
Oxaloacetate
GLUCONEOGENIC PRECURSORS
Glucose 6-P
Glucose
Phosphoenolpyruvate
Pyruvate
Lactate
NADH
NAD+
Oxaloacetate
NADH
NAD+
Malate
NADH
Ethanol
NAD+
Alcohol dehydrogenase
NADH
Acetaldehyde
NAD+
Aldehyde dehydrogenase
Disulfiram
NADH
Acetate

1 The metabolism of ethanol results in a massive increase in the concentration of cytosolic NADH in the liver.

2 The ethanol-mediated increase in NADH causes the intermediates of gluconeogenesis to be diverted into alternate reaction pathways, resulting in decreased synthesis of glucose.

Figure 23.15
A. Normal gluconeogenesis in the absence of ethanol consumption. B. Inhibition of gluconeogenesis resulting from hepatic metabolism of ethanol.

This can precipitate hypoglycemia, particularly in individuals who have depleted their stores of liver glycogen. [Note: Decreased availability of OAA allows acetyl CoA to be diverted to ketone body synthesis in liver (see p. 195), and can result in alcoholic ketoacidosis.] Hypoglycemia can produce many of the behaviors associated with alcohol intoxication—agitation, impaired judgement, and combativeness. Thus, alcohol consumption in vulnerable individuals—those who are fasted or have engaged in prolonged, strenuous exercise—can produce hypoglycemia that may contribute to the behavioral effects of alcohol. Alcohol consumption can also increase the risk for hypoglycemia in patients using insulin; therefore, patients in an intensive insulin treatment protocol (see p. 340) are counseled about the increased risk of hypoglycemia that generally occurs many hours after the alcohol has been consumed. [Note: Chronic alcohol consumption can also result in alcoholic fatty liver due to increased synthesis of triacylglycerols. This occurs as a result of decreased fatty acid oxidation due to a fall in the $NAD^+/NADH$ ratio, and increased lipogenesis due to the increased availability of fatty acids (decreased catabolism) and of glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate (the *dehydrogenase* is inhibited by the low $NAD^+/NADH$ ratio). With continued alcohol consumption, alcoholic fatty liver can progress first to alcoholic hepatitis, and then to alcoholic cirrhosis (Figure 23.16).]

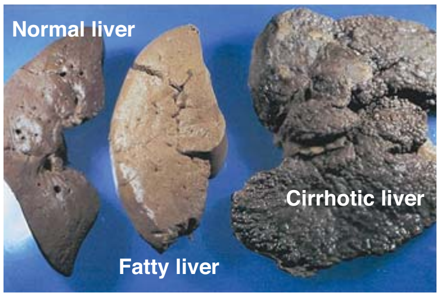


Figure 23.16
Effects of chronic alcohol consumption on liver morphology.

V. CHAPTER SUMMARY

The integration of energy metabolism is controlled primarily by **insulin** and the opposing actions of **glucagon** and **epinephrine** (Figure 23.17). Changes in the circulating levels of these hormones allow the body to store energy when food is available in abundance, or to make stored energy available, for example, during "survival crises," such as famine, severe injury, and "fight-or-flight" situations. **Insulin** is a polypeptide hormone produced by the **β-cells** of the **islets of Langerhans** of the pancreas. The biosynthesis involves two inactive precursors, **preproinsulin** and **proinsulin**, which are sequentially cleaved to form the active hormone. A rise in blood glucose is the most important signal for increased insulin secretion. The synthesis and release of insulin are decreased by epinephrine, which is secreted by the adrenal cortex in response to stress, trauma, or extreme exercise. Insulin increases glucose uptake (by muscle and adipose) and the synthesis of glycogen, protein, and triacylglycerol. These actions are mediated by the binding of insulin to the α subunit of the insulin receptor, which initiates a cascade of cell-signaling responses, including phosphorylation by the β subunit of a family of proteins called **insulin receptor substrate** (**IRS**) **proteins**. Glucagon is a polypeptide hormone secreted by the **α cells** of the pancreatic islets. Glucagon, along with epinephrine, cortisol, and growth hormone (the "**counter-regulatory hormones**"), opposes many of the actions of insulin. Glucagon acts to maintain blood glucose during periods of potential hypoglycemia. Glucagon increases glycogenolysis, gluconeogenesis, lipolysis, ketogenesis, and uptake of amino acids. Glucagon **secretion** is **stimulated** by **low blood glucose**, **amino acids**, and **epinephrine**. Its secretion is **inhibited** by **elevated blood glucose** and by **insulin**. Glucagon binds to **G protein-coupled receptors** of **hepatocytes**. This binding results in the activation of **adenylate cyclase**, which produces the second messenger, **cyclic AMP (cAMP)**. Subsequent activation of cAMP-dependent protein kinase results in the phosphorylation-mediated activation or inhibition of key regulatory enzymes involved in carbohydrate and lipid metabolism. Both insulin and glucagon affect gene transcription. **Hypoglycemia** is characterized by: 1) central nervous system symptoms, including confusion, aberrant behavior, or coma; 2) a simultaneous blood glucose level equal to or less than 40 mg/dl; and 3) resolution of these symptoms within minutes following the administration of glucose. Hypoglycemia most commonly occurs in patients receiving insulin treatment with tight control. The consumption and subsequent metabolism of **ethanol** inhibits gluconeogenesis, leading to hypoglycemia in individuals with depleted stores of liver glycogen. Alcohol consumption can also increase the risk for hypoglycemia in patients using insulin. Chronic alcohol consumption can cause liver disease.

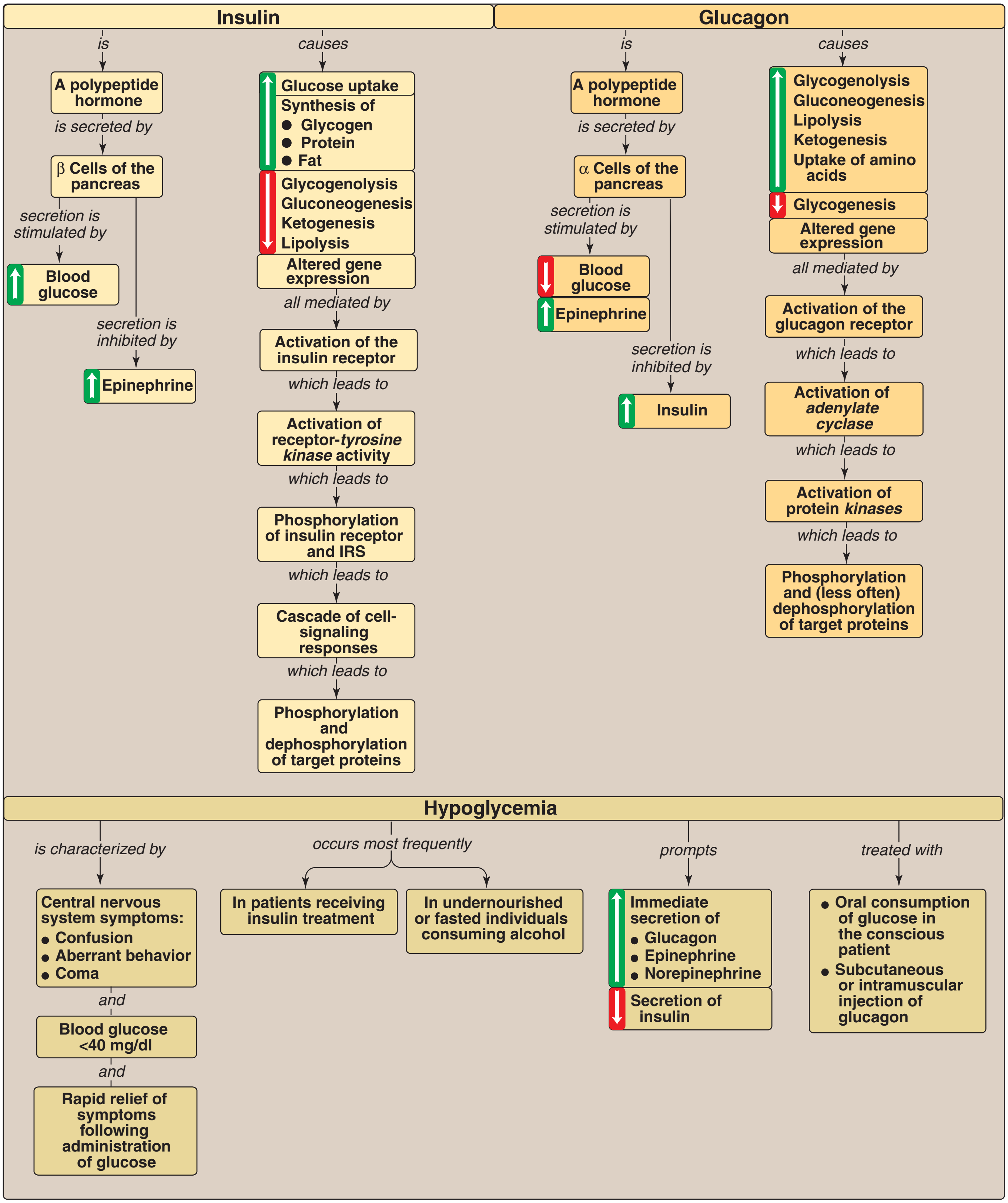

Insulin
is
A polypeptide hormone
is secreted by
β Cells of the pancreas
secretion is stimulated by
↑ Blood glucose
secretion is inhibited by
↑ Epinephrine
causes
↑ Glucose uptake
Synthesis of
● Glycogen
● Protein
● Fat
↓ Glycogenolysis
Gluconeogenesis
Ketogenesis
Lipolysis
Altered gene expression
all mediated by
Activation of the insulin receptor
which leads to
Activation of receptor-*tyrosine kinase* activity
which leads to
Phosphorylation of insulin receptor and IRS
which leads to
Cascade of cell-signaling responses
which leads to
Phosphorylation and dephosphorylation of target proteins
Glucagon
is
A polypeptide hormone
is secreted by
α Cells of the pancreas
secretion is stimulated by
↓ Blood glucose
↑ Epinephrine
secretion is inhibited by
↑ Insulin
causes
↑ Glycogenolysis
Gluconeogenesis
Lipolysis
Ketogenesis
Uptake of amino acids
↓ Glycogenesis
Altered gene expression
all mediated by
Activation of the glucagon receptor
which leads to
Activation of *adenylate cyclase*
which leads to
Activation of protein *kinases*
which leads to
Phosphorylation and (less often) dephosphorylation of target proteins
Hypoglycemia
is characterized by
Central nervous system symptoms:
● Confusion
● Aberrant behavior
● Coma
and
Blood glucose <40 mg/dl
and
Rapid relief of symptoms following administration of glucose
occurs most frequently
In patients receiving insulin treatment
In undernourished or fasted individuals consuming alcohol
prompts
↑ Immediate secretion of
● Glucagon
● Epinephrine
● Norepinephrine
↓ Secretion of insulin
treated with
● Oral consumption of glucose in the conscious patient
● Subcutaneous or intramuscular injection of glucagon

Figure 23.17
Key concept map for integration of energy metabolism.

Study Questions

Choose the ONE correct answer.

23.1 In which one of the following tissues is glucose transport into the cell insulin-sensitive?

A. Brain.
B. Lens of the eye.
C. Red blood cells.
D. Adipose tissue.
E. Liver.

Correct answer = D. The major tissues in which glucose transport requires insulin are muscle and adipose tissue. The metabolism of the liver responds to insulin, but hepatic glucose transport is determined by blood glucose concentration and does not require insulin. Brain, RBC, and lens of the eye have insulin-insensitive uptake of glucose.

23.2 Which one of the following is characteristic of low insulin levels?

A. Increased glycogen synthesis.
B. Decreased gluconeogenesis from lactate.
C. Decreased glycogenolysis.
D. Increased formation of 3-hydroxybutyrate.
E. Decreased action of hormone-sensitive lipase.

Correct answer = D. 3-Hydroxybutyrate (or β-hydroxybutyrate)—a ketone body—synthesis is enhanced in the liver by low insulin levels, which favor activation of hormone-sensitive lipase and release of fatty acids from adipose tissue. Glycogen synthesis is decreased, whereas gluconeogenesis and glycogenolysis are increased.

23.3 Which one of the following statements about glucagon is correct?

A. High levels of blood glucose increase the release of glucagon from the α cells of the pancreas.
B. Glucagon levels decrease following ingestion of a protein-rich meal.
C. Glucagon increases the intracellular levels of cAMP in liver cells, causing an increase in glycogenolysis.
D. Glucagon is the only hormone important in combating hypoglycemia.
E. Glucagon depresses the formation of ketone bodies by the liver.

Correct answer = C. The cAMP cascade initiated by glucagon causes the liver to degrade glycogen, releasing glucose to the blood. High levels of blood glucose decrease the release of glucagon from the α cells of the pancreas. Glucagon levels increase following ingestion of a protein-rich meal. In addition to glucagon, epinephrine and cortisol are also important in increasing glucose production in hypoglycemia. Glucagon increases the formation of ketone bodies by the liver.

23.4 A 39-year-old woman is brought to the emergency room complaining of dizziness. She recalls getting up early that morning to do as much shopping as possible and had skipped breakfast. She drank a cup of coffee for lunch and had nothing to eat during the day. She met with friends at 8 p.m. and had a drink at the bar. She soon became weak and dizzy and was transported to the hospital. Following examination, the patient was given orange juice and immediately felt better. Which one of the following best completes this sentence? “The patient has”:

A. blood glucose greater than 70 mg/dl.
B. elevated insulin.
C. elevated glucagon.
D. elevated liver glycogen.
E. presence of an insulinoma.

Correct answer = C. The patient's glucagon level will be elevated in response to the hypoglycemia. She is most likely experiencing alcohol-induced fasting hypoglycemia. Blood glucose is expected to be 40 mg/dl or less, insulin secretion depressed because of the low blood glucose, and liver glycogen levels low because of the fast. An insulinoma, an insulin-producing tumor of the pancreas, is unlikely.

The Feed/Fast Cycle

24

I. OVERVIEW OF THE ABSORPTIVE STATE

The absorptive (fed) state is the two- to four-hour period after ingestion of a normal meal. During this interval, transient increases in plasma glucose, amino acids, and triacylglycerols (TAG) occur, the latter primarily as components of chylomicrons synthesized by the intestinal mucosal cells (see p. 228). Islet tissue of the pancreas responds to the elevated levels of glucose and amino acids with an increased secretion of insulin and a decreased release of glucagon. The elevated insulin to glucagon ratio and the ready availability of circulating substrates make the absorptive state an anabolic period characterized by increased synthesis of TAG and glycogen to replenish fuel stores, and enhanced synthesis of protein. During this absorptive period, virtually all tissues use glucose as a fuel, and the metabolic response of the body is dominated by alterations in the metabolism of liver, adipose tissue, muscle, and brain. In this chapter, an “organ map” is introduced that traces the movement of metabolites between tissues. The goal is to create an expanded and clinically useful vision of whole-body metabolism.

II. ENZYMIC CHANGES IN THE ABSORPTIVE STATE

The flow of intermediates through metabolic pathways is controlled by four mechanisms: 1) the availability of substrates; 2) allosteric regulation of enzymes; 3) covalent modification of enzymes; and 4) induction-repression of enzyme synthesis, primarily through regulation of transcription. This scheme may at first seem unnecessarily redundant; however, each mechanism operates on a different timescale (Figure 24.1), and allows the body to adapt to a wide variety of physiologic situations. In the fed state, these regulatory mechanisms ensure that available nutrients are captured as glycogen, TAG, and protein.

A. Allosteric effects

Allosteric changes usually involve rate-determining reactions. For example, glycolysis in the liver is stimulated following a meal by an increase in fructose 2,6-bisphosphate—an allosteric activator of *phosphofructokinase-1* (see p. 99). In contrast, gluconeogenesis is inhibited by fructose 2,6-bisphosphate, an allosteric inhibitor of *fructose 1,6-bisphosphatase* (see p. 121).

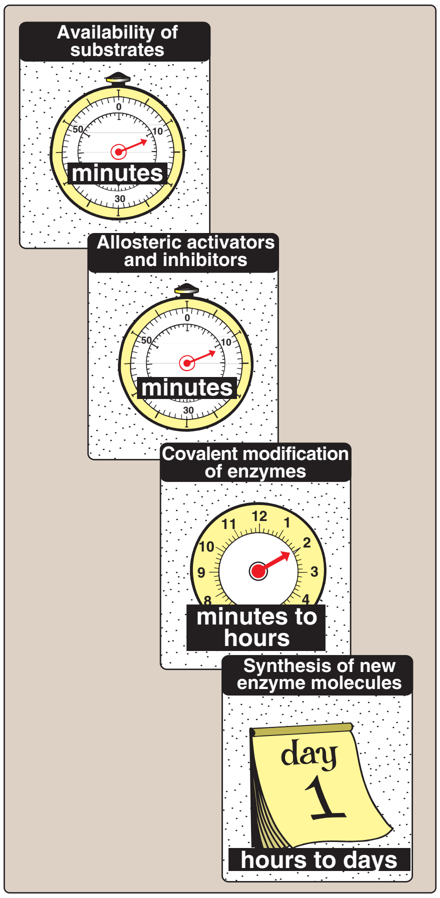

Availability of substrates
0
10
30
50
minutes
Allosteric activators and inhibitors
0
10
30
50
minutes
Covalent modification of enzymes
12
1
2
3
4
8
9
10
11
minutes to hours
Synthesis of new enzyme molecules
day
1
hours to days

Figure 24.1
Control mechanisms of metabolism and some typical response times. [Note: Response times may vary according to the nature of the stimulus and from tissue to tissue.]

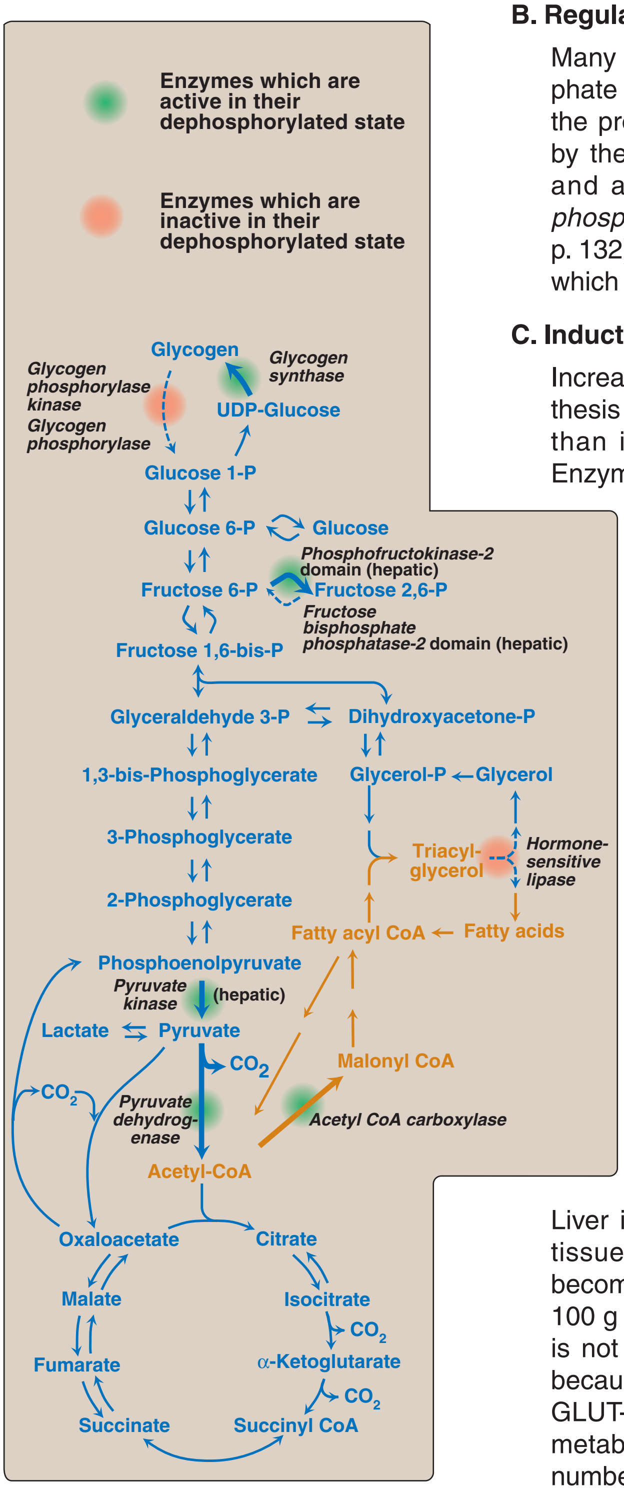

Enzymes which are active in their dephosphorylated state
Enzymes which are inactive in their dephosphorylated state
Glycogen
Glycogen phosphorylase kinase
Glycogen phosphorylase
Glycogen synthase
UDP-Glucose
Glucose 1-P
Glucose 6-P
Glucose
Phosphofructokinase-2 domain (hepatic)
Fructose 6-P
Fructose 2,6-P
Fructose bisphosphate phosphatase-2 domain (hepatic)
Fructose 1,6-bis-P
Glyceraldehyde 3-P
Dihydroxyacetone-P
1,3-bis-Phosphoglycerate
Glycerol-P
Glycerol
3-Phosphoglycerate
Triacylglycerol
Hormone-sensitive lipase
2-Phosphoglycerate
Fatty acyl CoA
Fatty acids
Phosphoenolpyruvate
Pyruvate kinase
(hepatic)
Lactate
Pyruvate
CO2
Malonyl CoA
CO2
Pyruvate dehydrogenase
Acetyl CoA carboxylase
Acetyl-CoA
Oxaloacetate
Citrate
Malate
Isocitrate
CO2
Fumarate
α-Ketoglutarate
CO2
Succinate
Succinyl CoA

Figure 24.2
Important reactions of intermediary metabolism regulated by enzyme phosphorylation.
Blue text = intermediates of carbohydrate metabolism;
Brown text = intermediates of lipid metabolism.

B. Regulation of enzymes by covalent modification

Many enzymes are regulated by the addition or removal of phosphate groups from specific serine, threonine, or tyrosine residues of the protein. In the absorptive state, most of the enzymes regulated by these covalent modifications are in the dephosphorylated form and are active (Figure 24.2). Three exceptions are *glycogen phosphorylase kinase* (see p. 132), *glycogen phosphorylase* (see p. 132), and *hormone-sensitive lipase* of adipose tissue (see p. 190), which are inactive in their dephosphorylated form.

C. Induction and repression of enzyme synthesis

Increased (induction of) or decreased (repression of) enzyme synthesis leads to changes in the total population of active sites, rather than influencing the efficiency of existing enzyme molecules. Enzymes subject to regulation of synthesis are often those that are needed at only one stage of development or under selected physiologic conditions. For example, in the fed state, elevated insulin levels result in an increase in the synthesis of key enzymes, such as *acetyl coenzyme A (CoA) carboxylase* (see p. 184) and *3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl-coenzyme A* (*HMG-CoA) reductase* (see p. 223) involved in anabolic metabolism.

III. LIVER: NUTRIENT DISTRIBUTION CENTER

The liver is uniquely situated to process and distribute dietary nutrients because the venous drainage of the gut and pancreas passes through the hepatic portal vein before entry into the general circulation. Thus, after a meal, the liver is bathed in blood containing absorbed nutrients and elevated levels of insulin secreted by the pancreas. During the absorptive period, the liver takes up carbohydrates, lipids, and most amino acids. These nutrients are then metabolized, stored, or routed to other tissues. Thus, the liver smooths out potentially broad fluctuations in the availability of nutrients for the peripheral tissues.

A. Carbohydrate metabolism

Liver is normally a glucose-producing rather than a glucose-using tissue. However, after a meal containing carbohydrate, the liver becomes a net consumer of glucose, retaining roughly 60 of every 100 g of glucose presented by the portal system. This increased use is not a result of stimulated glucose transport into the hepatocyte, because this process is normally rapid and the glucose transporter, GLUT-2 (see p. 97), is insulin insensitive. Rather, hepatic glucose metabolism is increased by the following mechanisms. [Note: The numbers in colored circles in the text refer to Figure 24.3.]

1. **Increased phosphorylation of glucose:** Elevated levels of glucose within the hepatocyte (as a result of elevated extracellular levels) allow *glucokinase* to phosphorylate glucose to glucose 6-phosphate. (Recall that *glucokinase* is not subject to product inhibition.) This contrasts with the postabsorptive (fasted) state in which hepatic glucose levels are lower and *glucokinase* is largely dormant because of its low affinity (high K_m) for glucose (Figure 24.3, ①).

2. **Increased glycogen synthesis:** The conversion of glucose 6-phosphate to glycogen is favored by the activation of *glycogen synthase*—both by dephosphorylation and by increased availability of glucose 6-phosphate, its allosteric effector (see Figure 24.3, ②).

3. **Increased activity of the hexose monophosphate pathway (HMP):** The increased availability of glucose 6-phosphate in the absorptive state, combined with the active use of NADPH in hepatic lipogenesis, stimulate the HMP (see Chapter 12, p. 145). This pathway typically accounts for 5–10% of the glucose metabolized by the liver (see Figure 24.3, ③).

4. **Increased glycolysis:** In liver, glycolytic metabolism of glucose is significant only during the absorptive period following a carbohydrate-rich meal. The conversion of glucose to acetyl CoA is stimulated by the elevated insulin to glucagon ratio that results in increased activity (and amount) of the regulated enzymes of glycolysis, for example, *pyruvate kinase* (see p. 102). *Pyruvate dehydrogenase* (*PDH*), which converts pyruvate to acetyl CoA, is active (dephosphorylated) because pyruvate inhibits *PDH kinase* (see Figure 24.3, ④). Acetyl CoA is used as either a building block for fatty acid synthesis, or it provides energy by oxidation in the tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle.

5. **Decreased gluconeogenesis:** Whereas glycolysis is stimulated in the absorptive state, gluconeogenesis is decreased. *Pyruvate carboxylase*, which catalyzes the first step in gluconeogenesis, is largely inactive due to low levels of acetyl CoA—an allosteric effector essential for enzyme activity (see p. 119). [Note: The acetyl CoA is being used for fatty acid synthesis.] The high insulin to glucagon ratio also favors inactivation of other gluconeogenic

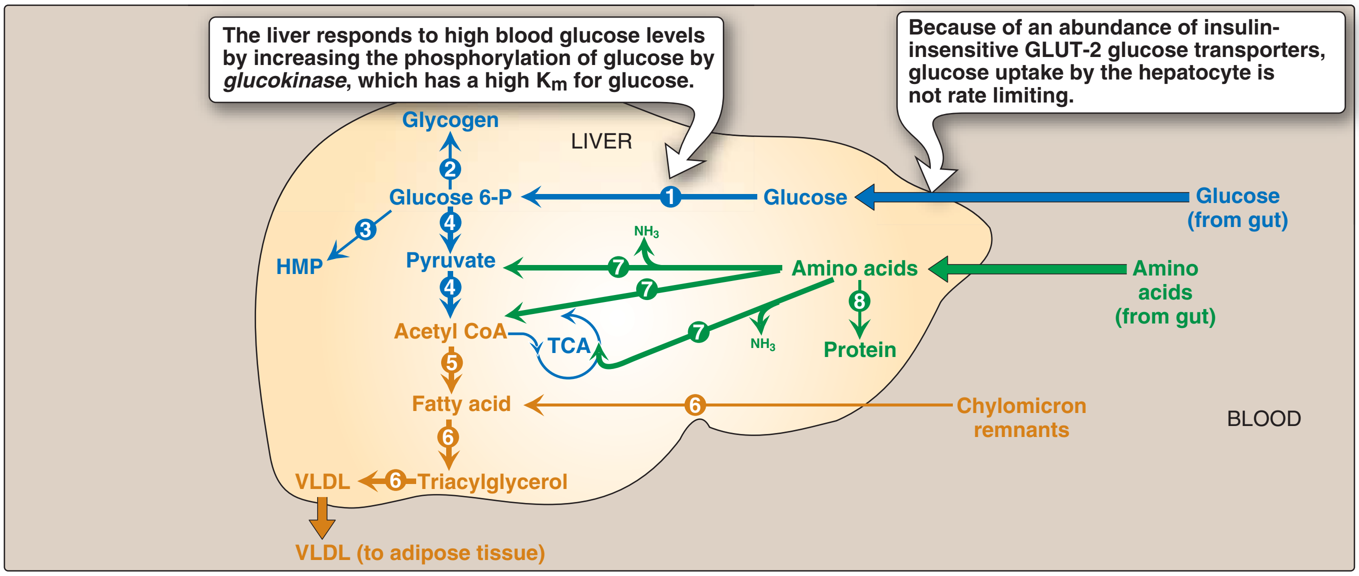

The liver responds to high blood glucose levels by increasing the phosphorylation of glucose by *glucokinase*, which has a high K_m for glucose.
Because of an abundance of insulin-insensitive GLUT-2 glucose transporters, glucose uptake by the hepatocyte is not rate limiting.
Glycogen
LIVER
2
Glucose 6-P
1
Glucose
Glucose (from gut)
3
4
HMP
Pyruvate
NH_3
7
Amino acids
Amino acids (from gut)
4
7
8
Acetyl CoA
TCA
7
NH_3
Protein
5
Fatty acid
6
Chylomicron remnants
BLOOD
6
VLDL
6
Triacylglycerol
VLDL (to adipose tissue)

Figure 24.3
Major metabolic pathways in liver in the absorptive state. [Note: The acetyl CoA is also used for cholesterol synthesis.] The numbers in circles, which appear both in the figure and in the text, indicate important pathways for carbohydrate fat, or protein metabolism. **Blue text** = intermediates of carbohydrate metabolism; **Brown text** = intermediates of lipid metabolism; **Green text** = intermediates of protein metabolism.

enzymes, such as *fructose 1,6-bisphosphatase* (see Figure 8.17, p. 100). [Note: Glycogenolysis is also decreased in this period.]

B. Fat metabolism

1. **Increased fatty acid synthesis:** Liver is the primary tissue for de novo synthesis of fatty acids (see Figure 24.3, ❺). This pathway occurs in the absorptive period, when dietary caloric intake exceeds energy expenditure by the body. Fatty acid synthesis is favored by the availability of substrates (acetyl CoA and NADPH derived from the metabolism of glucose) and by the activation of *acetyl CoA carboxylase*, both by dephosphorylation and by the presence of its allosteric activator, citrate. This enzyme catalyzes the formation of malonyl CoA from acetyl CoA—a reaction that is rate-limiting for fatty acid synthesis (see p. 183). [Note: Fatty acid oxidation is inhibited in this period by malonyl CoA.]

2. **Increased TAG synthesis:** TAG synthesis is favored because fatty acyl CoA is available both from de novo synthesis from acetyl CoA and from hydrolysis of the TAG component of chylomicron remnants removed from the blood by hepatocytes (see p. 178). Glycerol 3-phosphate, the backbone for TAG synthesis, is provided by the glycolytic metabolism of glucose (see p. 189). The liver packages TAG into very-low-density lipoprotein (VLDL) particles that are secreted into the blood for use by extrahepatic tissues, particularly adipose and muscle tissue (see Figure 24.3, ❻).

C. Amino acid metabolism

1. **Increased amino acid degradation:** In the absorptive period, more amino acids are present than the liver can use in the synthesis of proteins and other nitrogen-containing molecules. The surplus amino acids are not stored, but are either released into the blood for all tissues to use in protein synthesis or are deaminated, with the resulting carbon skeletons being degraded by the liver to pyruvate, acetyl CoA, or TCA cycle intermediates. These metabolites can be oxidized for energy or used in fatty acid synthesis (see Figure 24.3, ❼). The liver has limited capacity to degrade the branched-chain amino acids leucine, isoleucine, and valine. They pass through the liver essentially unchanged and are preferentially metabolized in muscle (see p. 266).

2. **Increased protein synthesis:** The body cannot store protein in the same way that it maintains glycogen or TAG reserves (see p. 327). However, a transient increase in the synthesis of hepatic proteins does occur in the absorptive state, resulting in replacement of any proteins that may have been degraded during the previous postabsorptive period (see Figure 24.3, ❽).

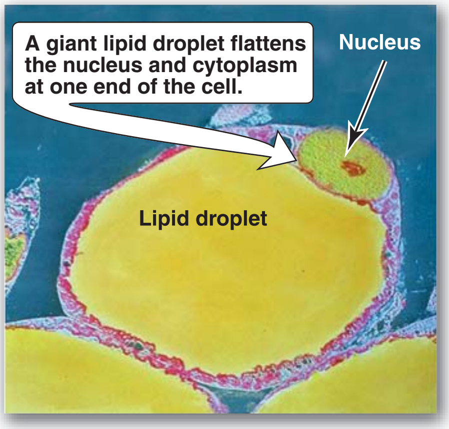

A giant lipid droplet flattens the nucleus and cytoplasm at one end of the cell.
Nucleus
Lipid droplet

Figure 24.4
Colorized transmission electron micrograph of adipocytes.

IV. ADIPOSE TISSUE: ENERGY STORAGE DEPOT

Adipose tissue is second only to the liver in its ability to distribute fuel molecules. In a 70-kg man, adipose tissue weighs approximately 14 kg, or about half as much as the total muscle mass. In obese individuals adipose tissue can constitute up to 70% of body weight. Nearly the entire volume of each adipocyte can be occupied by a droplet of TAG (Figure 24.4).

A. Carbohydrate metabolism

1. **Increased glucose transport:** Glucose transport by GLUT-4 into adipocytes is sensitive to the insulin concentration in the blood. Circulating insulin levels are elevated in the absorptive state, resulting in an influx of glucose into adipocytes (Figure 24.5, ❶).

2. **Increased glycolysis:** The increased intracellular availability of glucose results in an enhanced rate of glycolysis (see Figure 24.5, ❷). In adipose tissue, glycolysis serves a synthetic function by supplying glycerol phosphate for TAG synthesis (see p. 189).

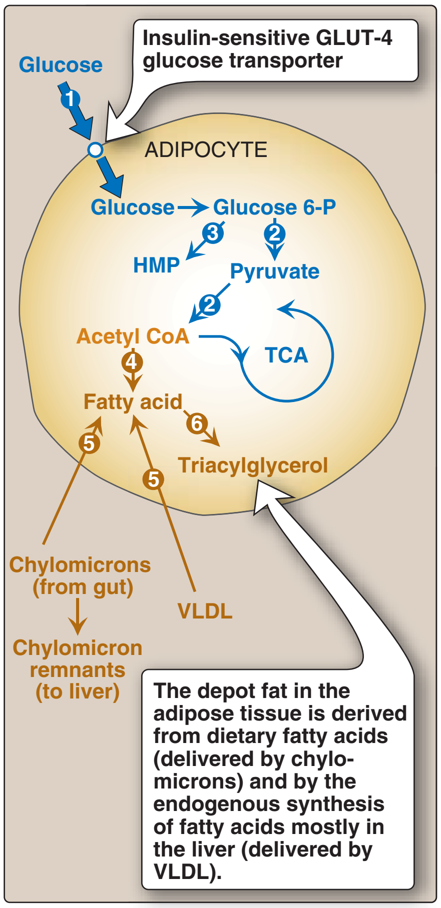
3. **Increased activity in the HMP:** Adipose tissue can metabolize glucose by means of the HMP, thereby producing NADPH, which is essential for fat synthesis (see p. 186 and Figure 24.5, ❸). However in humans, de novo synthesis is not a major source of fatty acids in adipose tissue.

B. Fat metabolism

1. **Increased synthesis of fatty acids:** De novo synthesis of fatty acids from acetyl CoA in adipose tissue is low in humans, except when refeeding a previously fasted individual (see Figure 24.5, ❹). Instead, most of the fatty acids added to the lipid stores of adipocytes are provided by dietary fat (in the form of chylomicrons), with a lesser amount supplied by VLDL from the liver (see pp. 228 and 231).

2. **Increased TAG synthesis:** After consumption of a lipid-containing meal, hydrolysis of the TAG of chylomicrons (from the intestine) and VLDL (from the liver) provides adipose tissue with fatty acids (see Figure 24.5, ❺). The fatty acids are released from lipoproteins by the action of *lipoprotein lipase,* an extracellular enzyme attached to the capillary walls in many tissues—particularly adipose and muscle. Because adipocytes lack *glycerol kinase,* glycerol 3-phosphate used in TAG synthesis comes from the metabolism of glucose (see p. 189). Thus, in the fed state, elevated levels of glucose and insulin favor storage of TAG (see Figure 24.5, ❻), all the carbons of which are supplied by glucose.

3. **Decreased TAG degradation:** Elevated insulin favors the dephosphorylated (inactive) form of *hormone-sensitive lipase* (see p. 190). TAG degradation is thus inhibited in the fed state.



The depot fat in the adipose tissue is derived from dietary fatty acids (delivered by chylomicrons) and by the endogenous synthesis of fatty acids mostly in the liver (delivered by VLDL).

Figure 24.5
Major metabolic pathways in adipose tissue in the absorptive state. [Note: The numbers in the circles, which appear both in the figure and in the corresponding text, indicate important pathways for adipose tissue metabolism.]

V. RESTING SKELETAL MUSCLE

The energy metabolism of skeletal muscle is unique in being able to respond to substantial changes in the demand for ATP that accompanies muscle contraction. At rest, muscle accounts for approximately 30% of the oxygen consumption of the body, whereas during vigorous exercise, it is responsible for up to 90% of the total oxygen consumption. This graphically illustrates the fact that skeletal muscle, despite its potential for transient periods of anaerobic glycolysis, is an oxidative tissue. [Note: Heart muscle differs from skeletal muscle in three important ways: 1) the heart is continuously active, whereas skeletal muscle contracts intermittently on demand; 2) the heart has a completely aerobic metabolism;

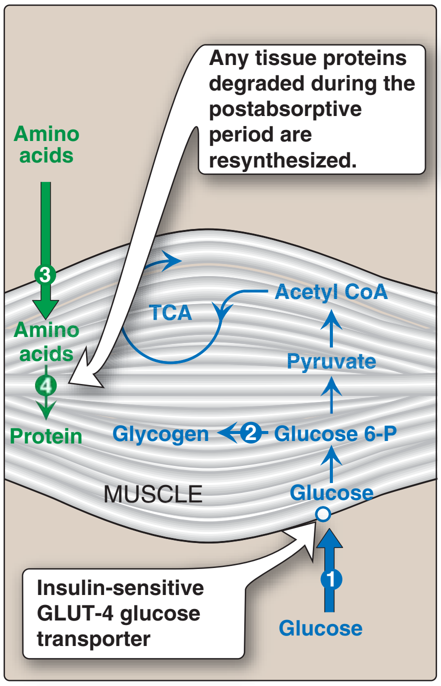

Any tissue proteins degraded during the postabsorptive period are resynthesized.
Amino acids
③
Amino acids
④
Protein
TCA
Acetyl CoA
Pyruvate
Glycogen
②
Glucose 6-P
MUSCLE
Glucose
①
Glucose
Insulin-sensitive GLUT-4 glucose transporter

Figure 24.6
Major metabolic pathways in skeletal muscle in the absorptive state. [Note: The numbers in circles, which appear both in the figure and in the text, indicate important pathways for carbohydrate or protein metabolism.]

and 3) the heart contains negligible energy stores, such as glycogen or lipid. Thus, any interruption of the vascular supply, for example, as occurs during a myocardial infarction, results in rapid death of the myocardial cells.] Heart muscle uses fatty acids, glucose, and ketone bodies as fuels.

A. Carbohydrate metabolism

1. **Increased glucose transport:** The transient increase in plasma glucose and insulin after a carbohydrate-rich meal leads to an increase in glucose transport into muscle cells by GLUT-4 (see p. 97 and Figure 24.6, ①). Glucose is phosphorylated to glucose 6-phosphate by *hexokinase*, and metabolized to provide the energy needs of the cells. [Note: In the fasted state fatty acids and ketone bodies are the major fuels of resting muscle.]

2. **Increased glycogen synthesis:** The increased insulin to glucagon ratio and the availability of glucose 6-phosphate favor glycogen synthesis, particularly if glycogen stores have been depleted as a result of exercise (see p. 126, and Figure 24.6, ②).

B. Fat metabolism

Fatty acids are released from chylomicrons and VLDL by the action of *lipoprotein lipase* (see pp. 228 and 231). However, fatty acids are of secondary importance as a fuel for muscle during the fed state, in which glucose is the primary source of energy.

C. Amino acid metabolism

1. **Increased protein synthesis:** A spurt in amino acid uptake and protein synthesis occurs in the absorptive period after ingestion of a meal containing protein (see Figure 24.6, ③ and ④). This synthesis replaces protein degraded since the previous meal.

2. **Increased uptake of branched-chain amino acids:** Muscle is the principal site for degradation of branched-chain amino acids because it contains the required *transaminase* (see p. 266). The branched-chain amino acids, leucine, isoleucine, and valine, escape metabolism by the liver, and are taken up by muscle, where they are used for protein synthesis (see Figure 24.6, ③) and as sources of energy.

VI. BRAIN

Although contributing only 2% of the adult weight, the brain accounts for a consistent 20% of the basal oxygen consumption of the body at rest. Because the brain is vital to the proper functioning of all organs of the body, special priority is given to its fuel needs. To provide energy, substrates must be able to cross the endothelial cells that line the blood vessels in the brain (the "blood-brain barrier"). Normally, glucose serves as the primary fuel for the brain. [Note: If blood glucose levels fall below approximately 40 mg/100 ml (normal fasted blood glucose is 70–99 mg/100 ml), cerebral function is impaired. If the hypoglycemia occurs for even a short time, severe and potentially irreversible brain damage may occur.] During a fast, however, ketone bodies play a significant role as a fuel for brain, reducing its dependence on glucose (see p. 196).

A. Carbohydrate metabolism

In the fed state, the brain uses glucose exclusively as a fuel, completely oxidizing approximately 140 g/day to CO_2 and H_2O. The brain contains no significant stores of glycogen and is, therefore, completely dependent on the availability of blood glucose (Figure 24.7, ❶).

B. Fat metabolism

The brain has no significant stores of TAG, and the fatty acids circulating in the blood make little contribution to energy production because fatty acids bound to albumin do not efficiently cross the blood-brain barrier. The intertissue exchanges characteristic of the absorptive period are summarized in Figure 24.8.

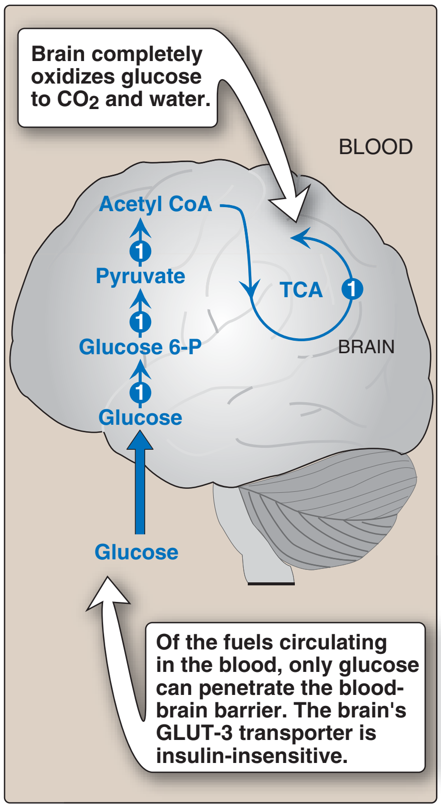

Brain completely oxidizes glucose to CO2 and water.
BLOOD
Acetyl CoA
❶
Pyruvate
❶
Glucose 6-P
❶
Glucose
TCA
❶
BRAIN
Glucose
Of the fuels circulating in the blood, only glucose can penetrate the blood-brain barrier. The brain's GLUT-3 transporter is insulin-insensitive.

Figure 24 .7
Major metabolic pathways in brain in the absorptive state. [Note: The numbers in circles, which appear both in the figure and in the text, indicate important pathways for carbohydrate metabolism.]

VII. OVERVIEW OF FASTING

Fasting begins if no food is ingested after the absorptive period. It may result from an inability to obtain food, the desire to lose weight rapidly, or clinical situations in which an individual cannot eat, for example, because of trauma, surgery, cancer, or burns. In the absence of food, plasma levels of glucose, amino acids, and TAG fall, triggering a decline in insulin secretion and an increase in glucagon release. The decreased insulin to glucagon ratio, and the decreased availability of circulating substrates, make the period of nutrient deprivation a catabolic period characterized by degradation of TAG, glycogen, and protein. This sets into motion an exchange of substrates among liver, adipose tissue, muscle, and brain that is guided by two priorities: 1) the need to maintain adequate plasma levels of glucose to sustain energy metabolism of the brain, red blood cells, and other glucose-requiring tissues; and 2) the need to mobilize fatty acids from adipose tissue, and the synthesis and release of ketone bodies from the liver, to supply energy to all other tissues.

A. Fuel stores

The metabolic fuels available in a normal 70–kg man at the beginning of a fast are shown in Figure 24.9. Note the enormous caloric stores available in the form of TAG compared with those contained in glycogen. [Note: Although protein is listed as an energy source, each protein also has a function, for example, as a structural component of the body, an enzyme, and so forth. Therefore, only about one third of the body’s protein can be used for energy production without fatally compromising vital functions.]

B. Enzymic changes in fasting

In fasting (as in the fed state), the flow of intermediates through the pathways of energy metabolism is controlled by four mechanisms: 1) the availability of substrates; 2) allosteric regulation of enzymes; 3) covalent modification of enzymes; and 4) induction-repression of enzyme synthesis. The metabolic changes observed in fasting are generally opposite to those described for the absorptive state (see Figure 24.8). For example, most of the enzymes regulated by covalent

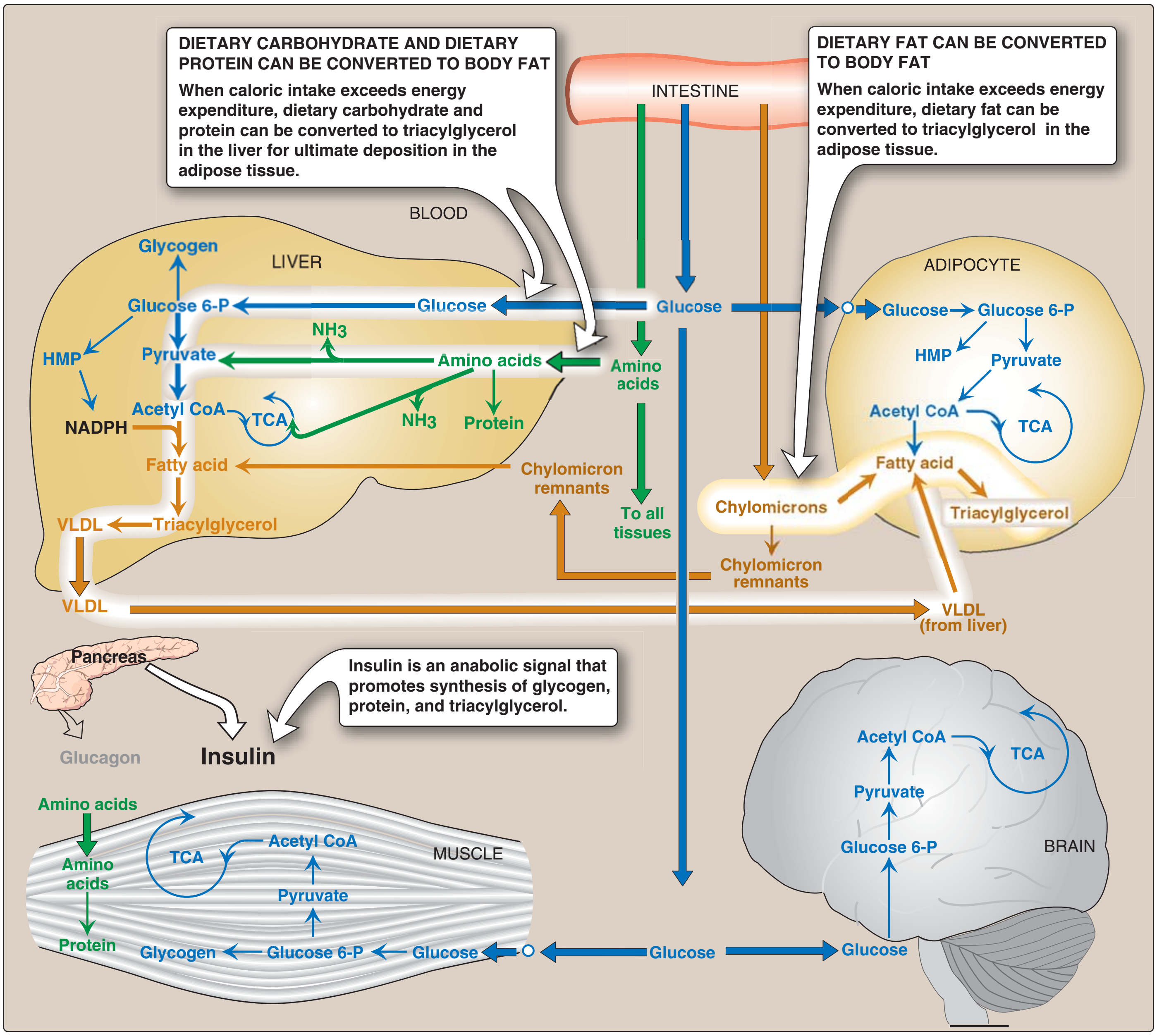

DIETARY CARBOHYDRATE AND DIETARY PROTEIN CAN BE CONVERTED TO BODY FAT
When caloric intake exceeds energy expenditure, dietary carbohydrate and protein can be converted to triacylglycerol in the liver for ultimate deposition in the adipose tissue.
INTESTINE
DIETARY FAT CAN BE CONVERTED TO BODY FAT
When caloric intake exceeds energy expenditure, dietary fat can be converted to triacylglycerol in the adipose tissue.
BLOOD
LIVER
Glycogen
Glucose 6-P
Glucose
HMP
Pyruvate
NH3
Amino acids
Acetyl CoA
TCA
NH3
Protein
NADPH
Fatty acid
Chylomicron remnants
VLDL
Triacylglycerol
VLDL
Glucose
Amino acids
To all tissues
ADIPOCYTE
Glucose
Glucose 6-P
HMP
Pyruvate
Acetyl CoA
TCA
Fatty acid
Chylomicrons
Triacylglycerol
Chylomicron remnants
VLDL (from liver)
Pancreas
Glucagon
Insulin
Insulin is an anabolic signal that promotes synthesis of glycogen, protein, and triacylglycerol.
Amino acids
Amino acids
Protein
TCA
Acetyl CoA
Pyruvate
MUSCLE
Glycogen
Glucose 6-P
Glucose
Glucose
Glucose
Acetyl CoA
TCA
Pyruvate
Glucose 6-P
BRAIN

Figure 24.8
Intertissue relationships in the absorptive state. [Note: Small circles on the perimeter of tissues indicate insulin-dependent transport systems.]

modification are dephosphorylated and active in the fed state, whereas in the fasted state, they are phosphorylated and active. Three exceptions are *glycogen phosphorylase* (see p. 132), *glycogen phosphorylase kinase* (see p. 132), and *hormone-sensitive lipase* of adipose tissue (see p. 190), which are inactive in their dephosphorylated states. In fasting, substrates are not provided by the diet, but are available from the breakdown of stores and/or tissues, for example, lipolysis with release of fatty acids and glycerol from TAG in adipose tissue, and proteolysis with release of amino acids from muscle.

Recognition that the changes in fasting are the reciprocal of those in the fed state is helpful in understanding the ebb and flow of metabolism.

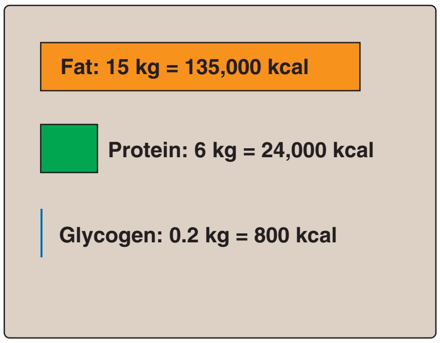


Figure 24.9
Metabolic fuels present in a 70-kg man at the beginning of a fast. Fat stores are sufficient to meet energy needs for about 3 months.

VIII. LIVER IN FASTING

The primary role of liver in energy metabolism during fasting is maintenance of blood glucose through the synthesis and distribution of fuel molecules for use by other organs. Thus, one speaks of "hepatic metabolism" and "extrahepatic" or "peripheral" metabolism.

A. Carbohydrate metabolism

The liver first uses glycogen degradation and then gluconeogenesis to maintain blood glucose levels to sustain energy metabolism of the brain and other glucose-requiring tissues in the fasted (postabsorptive) state. [Note: Recall the presence of *glucose 6-phosphatase* in the liver allows the production of free glucose both from glycogenolysis and from gluconeogenesis (see p. 130).]

1. **Increased glycogen degradation:** Figure 24.10 shows the sources of blood glucose after ingestion of 100 g of glucose. During the brief absorptive period, ingested glucose is the major source of blood glucose. Several hours later, blood glucose levels have declined sufficiently to cause increased secretion of glucagon and decreased release of insulin. The increased glucagon to insulin ratio causes a rapid mobilization of liver glycogen stores (which contain about 80 g of glycogen in the fed state) due to phosphorylation (activation) of *glycogen phosphorylase* (see p. 130). Note that liver glycogen is nearly exhausted after 10–18 hours of fasting; therefore, hepatic glycogenolysis is a transient response to early fasting. Figure 24.11, ❶, shows glycogen degradation as part of the overall metabolic response of the liver during fasting.

2. **Increased gluconeogenesis:** The synthesis of glucose and its release into the circulation are vital hepatic functions during fasting (see Figure 24.11, ❷). The carbon skeletons for gluconeogenesis are derived primarily from glucogenic amino acids and lactate from muscle, and glycerol from adipose. Gluconeogenesis, favored by activation of *fructose 1,6-bisphosphatase* (due to a drop in its inhibitor, fructose 2,6-bisphosphate, see p. 121) and by induction of *phosphoenolpyruvate* (*PEP*) *carboxykinase* by glucagon (see p. 122), begins 4–6 hours after the last meal and becomes fully active as stores of liver glycogen are depleted (see Figure 24.10). Gluconeogenesis plays an essential role in maintaining blood glucose during both overnight and prolonged fasting. [Note: Whereas acetyl CoA cannot be used as a substrate for gluconeogenesis, the acetyl CoA produced by hepatic oxidation of fatty acids supplied from lipolysis in adipose is an allosteric activator of *pyruvate carboxylase* (and an allosteric inhibitor of *pyruvate dehydrogenase*), and thus pushes pyruvate to gluconeogenesis (see Figure 8.24).]

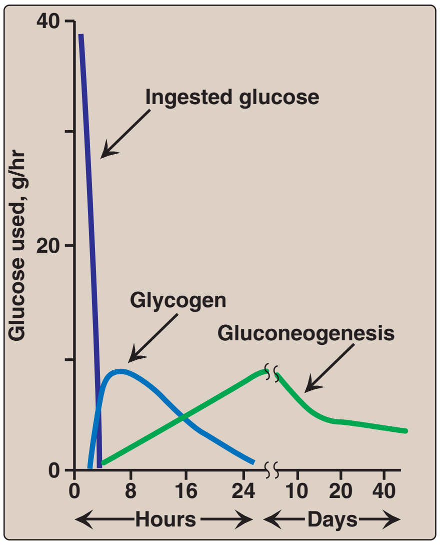


Figure 24.10
Sources of blood glucose after ingestion of 100 g of glucose.

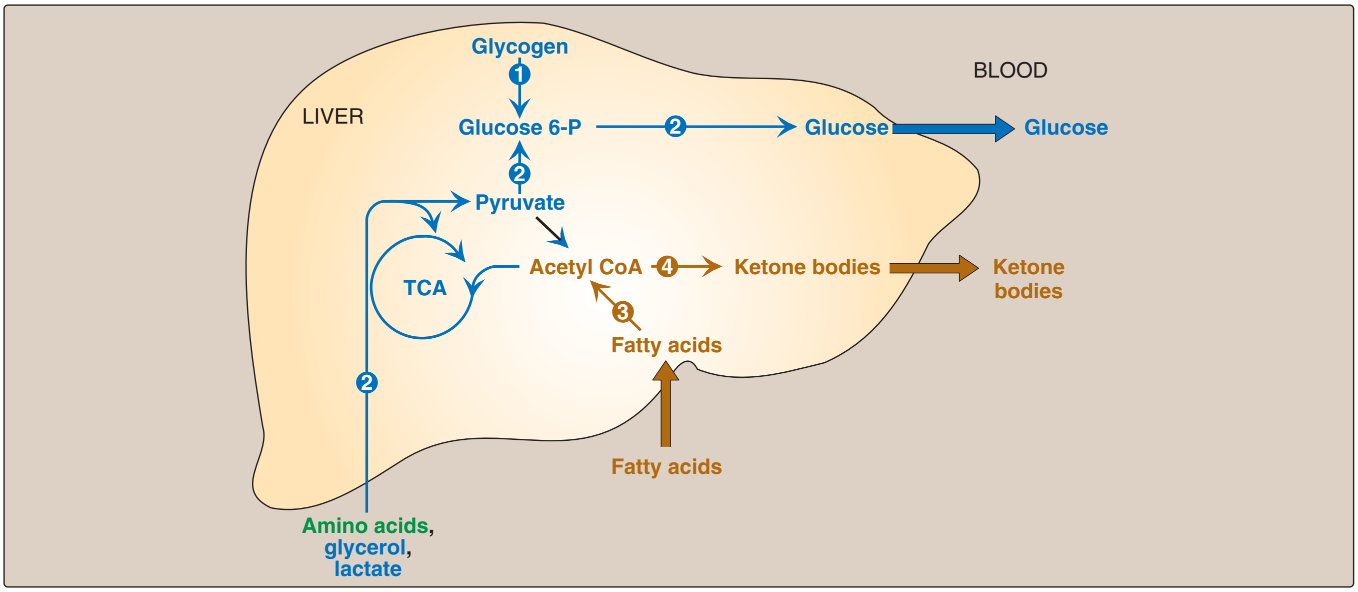


Figure 24.11
Major metabolic pathways in liver during starvation. [Note: The numbers in circles, which appear both in the figure and in the corresponding citation in the text, indicate important metabolic pathways for carbohydrate or fat.]

B. Fat metabolism

1. **Increased fatty acid oxidation:** The oxidation of fatty acids obtained from TAG hydrolysis in adipose tissue is the major source of energy in hepatic tissue in the postabsorptive state (see Figure 24.11, ❸). The fall in malonyl CoA due to phosphorylation (inactivation) of *acetyl CoA carboxylase* by *AMP-activated protein kinase* (*AMPK*) removes the brake on *carnitine palmitoyl transferase-1 (CPT-1)*, allowing β-oxidation to occur (see p. 191). [Note: Fatty acid oxidation provides the NADH and ATP required for gluconeogenesis.]

2. **Increased synthesis of ketone bodies:** The liver is unique in being able to synthesize and release ketone bodies, primarily 3-hydroxybutyrate (formerly called β-hydroxybutyrate), for use as fuel by peripheral tissues (see p. 195), but not by the liver itself. Ketogenesis is favored when the concentration of acetyl CoA, produced from fatty acid metabolism, exceeds the oxidative capacity of the TCA cycle. [Note: Ketogenesis releases CoA, ensuring its availability for continued fatty acid oxidation.] Ketogenesis starts during the first days of fasting (Figure 24.12). The availability of circulating water-soluble ketone bodies is important in fasting because they can be used for fuel by most tissues, including brain tissue, once their level in the blood is sufficiently high. This reduces the need for gluconeogenesis from amino acid carbon skeletons, thus preserving essential protein. Ketogenesis as part of the overall hepatic response to fasting is shown in Figure 24.11, ❹. [Note: Ketone bodies are organic acids and, when present at high concentrations, can cause ketoacidosis.]

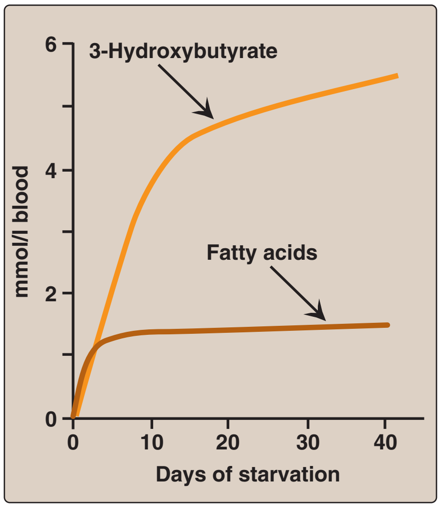


Figure 24.12
Concentrations of fatty acids and 3-hydroxybutyrate in the blood during fasting.

IX. ADIPOSE TISSUE IN FASTING

A. Carbohydrate metabolism

Glucose transport by insulin-sensitive GLUT-4 into the adipocyte (see p. 97) and its subsequent metabolism are depressed due to low levels of circulating insulin. This leads to a decrease in fatty acid and TAG synthesis.

B. Fat metabolism

1. **Increased degradation of TAG:** The activation of *hormone-sensitive lipase* (see p. 190) and subsequent hydrolysis of stored TAG are enhanced by the elevated catecholamines epinephrine and, particularly, norepinephrine. These compounds, which are released from the sympathetic nerve endings in adipose tissue, are physiologically important activators of *hormone-sensitive lipase* (Figure 24.13, ❶). [Note: Glucagon also activates the *lipase* (see p. 190).]

2. **Increased release of fatty acids:** Fatty acids obtained from hydrolysis of stored TAG are primarily released into the blood (see Figure 24.13, ❷). Bound to albumin, they are transported to a variety of tissues for use as fuel. The glycerol produced from TAG degradation is used as a gluconeogenic precursor by the liver. [Note: Fatty acids can also be oxidized to acetyl CoA, which can enter the TCA cycle, thus producing energy for the adipocyte. They also can be re-esterified to glycerol 3-phosphate (from glyceroneogenesis, see p. 190), generating TAG.]

3. **Decreased uptake of fatty acids:** In fasting, *lipoprotein lipase* activity of adipose tissue is low. Consequently, circulating TAG of lipoproteins is not available to adipose tissue.

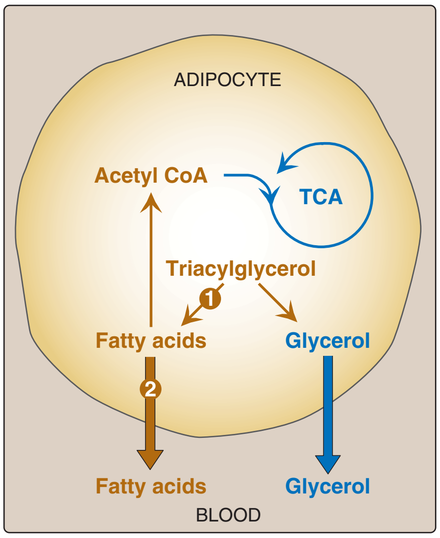


Figure 24.13
Major metabolic pathways in adipose tissue during starvation. [Note: The numbers in the circles, which appear both in the figure and in the corresponding citation in the text, indicate important pathways for fat metabolism.]

X. RESTING SKELETAL MUSCLE IN FASTING

Resting muscle uses fatty acids as its major fuel source. By contrast, exercising muscle initially uses its glycogen stores as a source of energy. During intense exercise, glucose 6-phosphate derived from glycogen is converted to lactate by anaerobic glycolysis (see p. 103). As these glycogen reserves are depleted, free fatty acids provided by the mobilization of TAG from adipose tissue become the dominant energy source.

A. Carbohydrate metabolism

Glucose transport into skeletal muscle cells via insulin-sensitive GLUT-4 proteins in the plasma membrane (see p. 97) and subsequent glucose metabolism are depressed because of low levels of circulating insulin.

B. Lipid metabolism

During the first 2 weeks of fasting, muscle uses fatty acids from adipose tissue and ketone bodies from the liver as fuels (Figure 24.14, ❶ and ❷). After about 3 weeks of fasting, muscle decreases its use of ketone bodies and oxidizes fatty acids almost exclusively. This leads to a further increase in the already elevated level of circulating ketone bodies. [Note: The increased use of ketone bodies by the brain as a result of their increased concentration in the blood is correlated with the decreased use of these compounds by the muscle.]

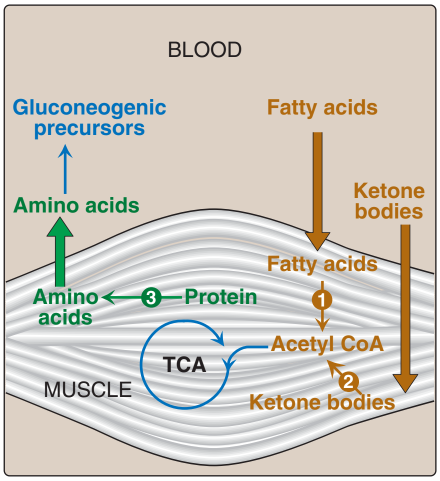


Figure 24.14
Major metabolic pathways in skeletal muscle during starvation. [Note:The numbers in the circles, which appear both in the figure and in the corresponding citation in the text, indicate important pathways for fat or protein metabolism.]

C. Protein metabolism

During the first few days of fasting, there is a rapid breakdown of muscle protein, providing amino acids that are used by the liver for gluconeogenesis (see Figure 24.14, ③). Because muscle does not have glucagon receptors, muscle proteolysis likely is initiated by the fall in insulin and sustained by the rise in glucocorticoids. [Note: Alanine and glutamine are quantitatively the most important gluconeogenic amino acids released from muscle. They are produced by the catabolism of branched-chain amino acids (see p. 267).] By several weeks of fasting, the rate of muscle proteolysis decreases paralleling a decline in the need for glucose as a fuel for the brain, which has begun using ketone bodies as a source of energy.

XI. BRAIN IN FASTING

During the first days of fasting, the brain continues to use glucose exclusively as a fuel (Figure 24.15, ①). [Note: Blood glucose is maintained by hepatic gluconeogenesis from glucogenic precursors, such as amino acids from proteolysis and glycerol from lipolysis.] In prolonged fasting (greater than 2–3 weeks), plasma ketone bodies (see Figure 24.12) reach significantly elevated levels, and replace glucose as the primary fuel for the brain (see Figure 24.15, ②, and Figure 24.16). This reduces the need for protein catabolism for gluconeogenesis: ketone bodies spare glucose and, thus, muscle protein. The metabolic changes that occur during fasting ensure that all tissues have an adequate supply of fuel molecules. The response of the major tissues involved in energy metabolism during fasting is summarized in Figure 24.17 (see below).

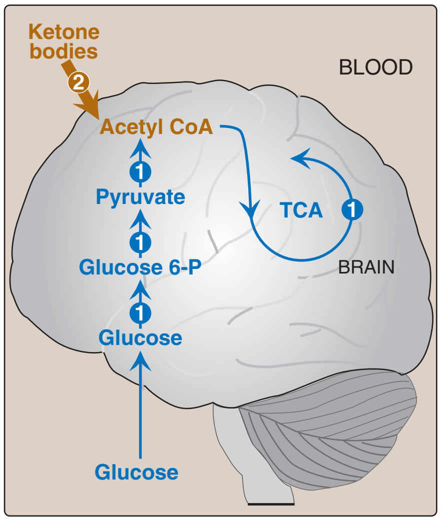


Figure 24.15
Major metabolic pathways in the brain during starvation. [Note:The numbers in the circles, which appear both in the figure and in the corresponding citation in the text, indicate important pathways for metabolism of fat or carbohydrates.]

XII. KIDNEY IN LONG-TERM FASTING

As fasting continues into early starvation and beyond, the kidney plays important roles. Kidney expresses the enzymes of gluconeogenesis, including *glucose 6-phosphatase*, and in late fasting about 50% of gluconeogenesis occurs here. [Note: A portion of this glucose is used by kidney itself.] Kidney also provides compensation for the acidosis that accompanies the increased production of ketone bodies (organic acids). The glutamine released from the muscle's metabolism of branched-chain amino acids is taken up by the kidney and acted upon by renal *glutaminase* and *glutamate dehydrogenase* (see p. 256), producing α-ketoglutarate that can be used as a substrate for gluconeogenesis, plus ammonia (NH_3). The NH_3 picks up H^+ from ketone body dissociation, and is excreted in the urine as NH_4^+, decreasing the acid load in the body. In long-term fasting, then, there is a switch from nitrogen disposal in the form of urea to disposal in the form of ammonia. [Note: As ketone body concentration rises, enterocytes, typically consumers of glutamine, become consumers of ketone bodies. This allows more glutamine to be available to the kidney.]

XIII. CHAPTER SUMMARY

The flow of intermediates through metabolic pathways is controlled by four mechanisms: 1) the availability of substrates; 2) allosteric activation and inhibition of enzymes; 3) covalent modification of enzymes; and 4) induction-repression of enzyme synthesis. In the absorptive state, these regulatory mechanisms ensure that available nutrients are captured as **glycogen**, **triacylglycerol**, and **protein** (Figure 24.18). The **absorptive state** is the two- to four-hour period after ingestion of a normal meal. During this interval, transient increases in plasma glucose, amino acids, and triacylglycerols occur, the last primarily as components of chylomicrons synthesized by the intestinal mucosal cells. The **pancreas** responds to the elevated levels of glucose and amino acids with an **increased secretion of insulin** and a **decrease in the release of glucagon** by the **islets of Langerhans**. The elevated insulin to glucagon ratio and the ready availability of circulating substrates make the 2–4 hours after ingestion of a meal into an **anabolic period**. During this absorptive period, virtually all tissues use **glucose** as a fuel. In addition, the **liver** replenishes its **glycogen** stores, replaces any needed **hepatic proteins**, and increases **triacylglycerol** synthesis. The latter are packaged in **very-low-density lipoproteins**, which are exported to the peripheral tissues. The **adipose** increases **triacylglycerol** synthesis and storage, whereas the **muscle** increases **protein** synthesis to replace protein degraded since the previous meal. In the fed state, the **brain** uses glucose exclusively as a fuel. In the **absence of food**, plasma levels of glucose, amino acids, and triacylglycerols fall, triggering a **decline** in **insulin secretion** and an **increase in glucagon** and **epinephrine release**. The decreased insulin to glucagon ratio, and the decreased availability of circulating substrates, makes the period of fasting a **catabolic period**. This sets into motion an **exchange of substrates** among liver, adipose tissue, muscle, and brain that is guided by two priorities: 1) the need to maintain adequate plasma levels of glucose to sustain energy metabolism of the brain and other glucose-requiring tissues; and 2) the need to mobilize fatty acids from adipose tissue and ketone bodies from liver to supply energy to all other tissues. To accomplish these goals, the **liver** degrades **glycogen** and initiates **gluconeogenesis**, using **increased fatty acid oxidation** as a source of the energy needed for gluconeogenesis, and to supply the acetyl coenzyme A building blocks for **ketone body synthesis**. The **adipose** degrades stored **triacylglycerols**, thus providing **fatty acids** and **glycerol** to the liver. The **muscle** can also use **fatty acids** as fuel, as well as **ketone bodies** supplied by the liver. Muscle **protein** is **degraded** to supply **amino acids** for the liver to use in gluconeogenesis. The **brain** can use both **glucose** and **ketone bodies** as fuels. From late fasting into starvation, the **kidneys** play important roles by **synthesizing glucose** and **excreting the protons** from ketone body dissociation as **NH_4^+**.

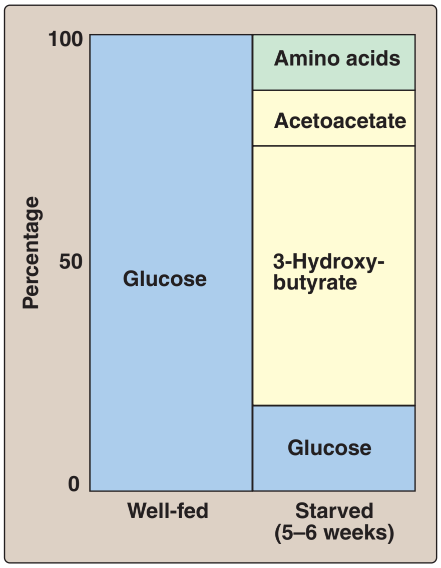
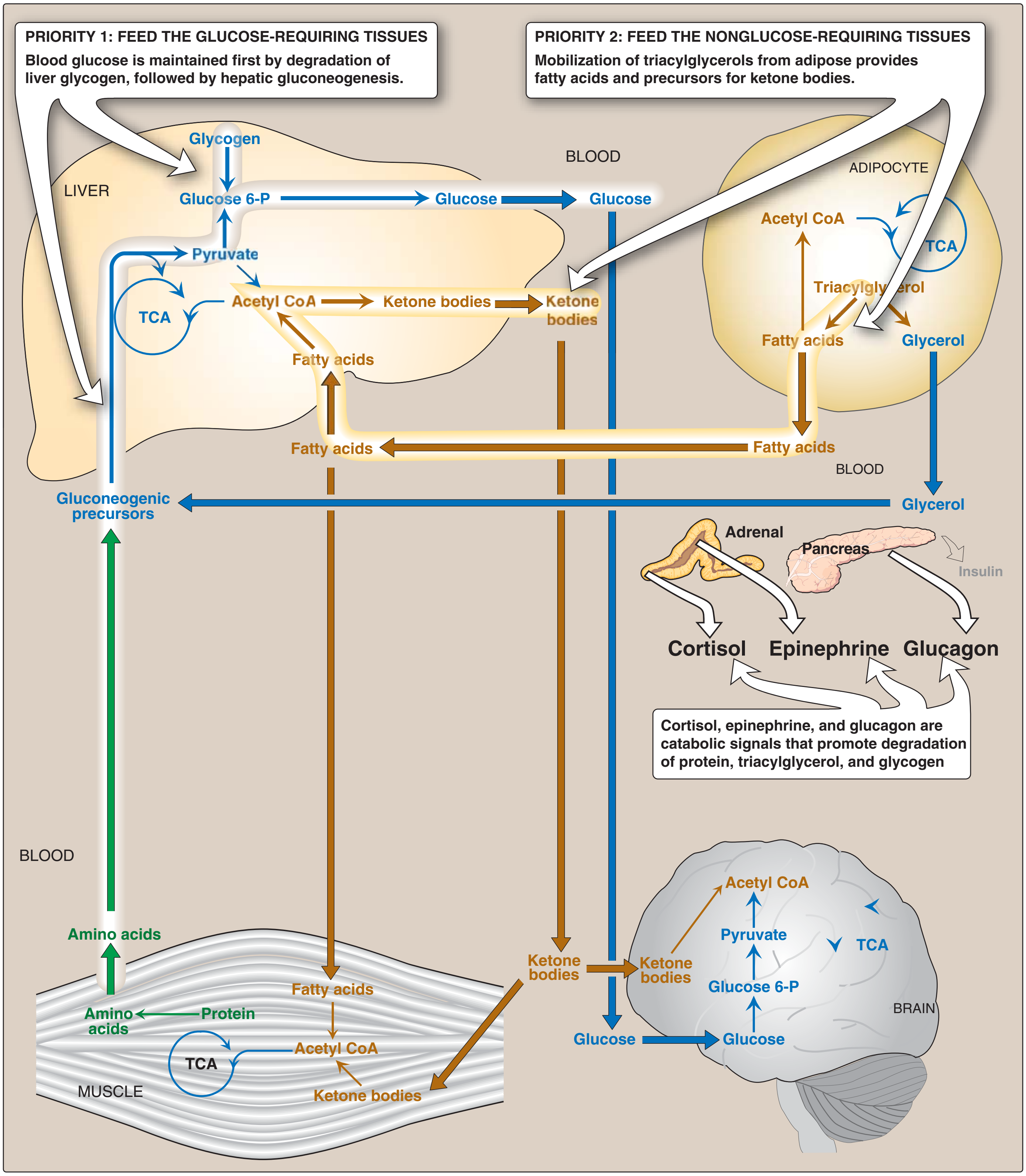


Figure 24.16
Fuel sources used by the brain to meet energy needs.



PRIORITY 1: FEED THE GLUCOSE-REQUIRING TISSUES
Blood glucose is maintained first by degradation of liver glycogen, followed by hepatic gluconeogenesis.

PRIORITY 2: FEED THE NONGLUCOSE-REQUIRING TISSUES
Mobilization of triacylglycerols from adipose provides fatty acids and precursors for ketone bodies.

Cortisol, epinephrine, and glucagon are catabolic signals that promote degradation of protein, triacylglycerol, and glycogen

LIVER
Glycogen
Glucose 6-P
Glucose
Pyruvate
TCA
Acetyl CoA
Ketone bodies
Fatty acids
BLOOD
Glucose
Ketone bodies
ADIPOCYTE
Acetyl CoA
TCA
Triacylglycerol
Fatty acids
Glycerol
Fatty acids
Fatty acids
BLOOD
Glycerol
Gluconeogenic precursors
Adrenal
Pancreas
Insulin
Cortisol
Epinephrine
Glucagon
BLOOD
Amino acids
Amino acids
Protein
Fatty acids
TCA
Acetyl CoA
Ketone bodies
MUSCLE
Ketone bodies
Ketone bodies
Acetyl CoA
Pyruvate
TCA
Glucose 6-P
Glucose
Glucose
BRAIN

Figure 24.17
Intertissue relationships during starvation.

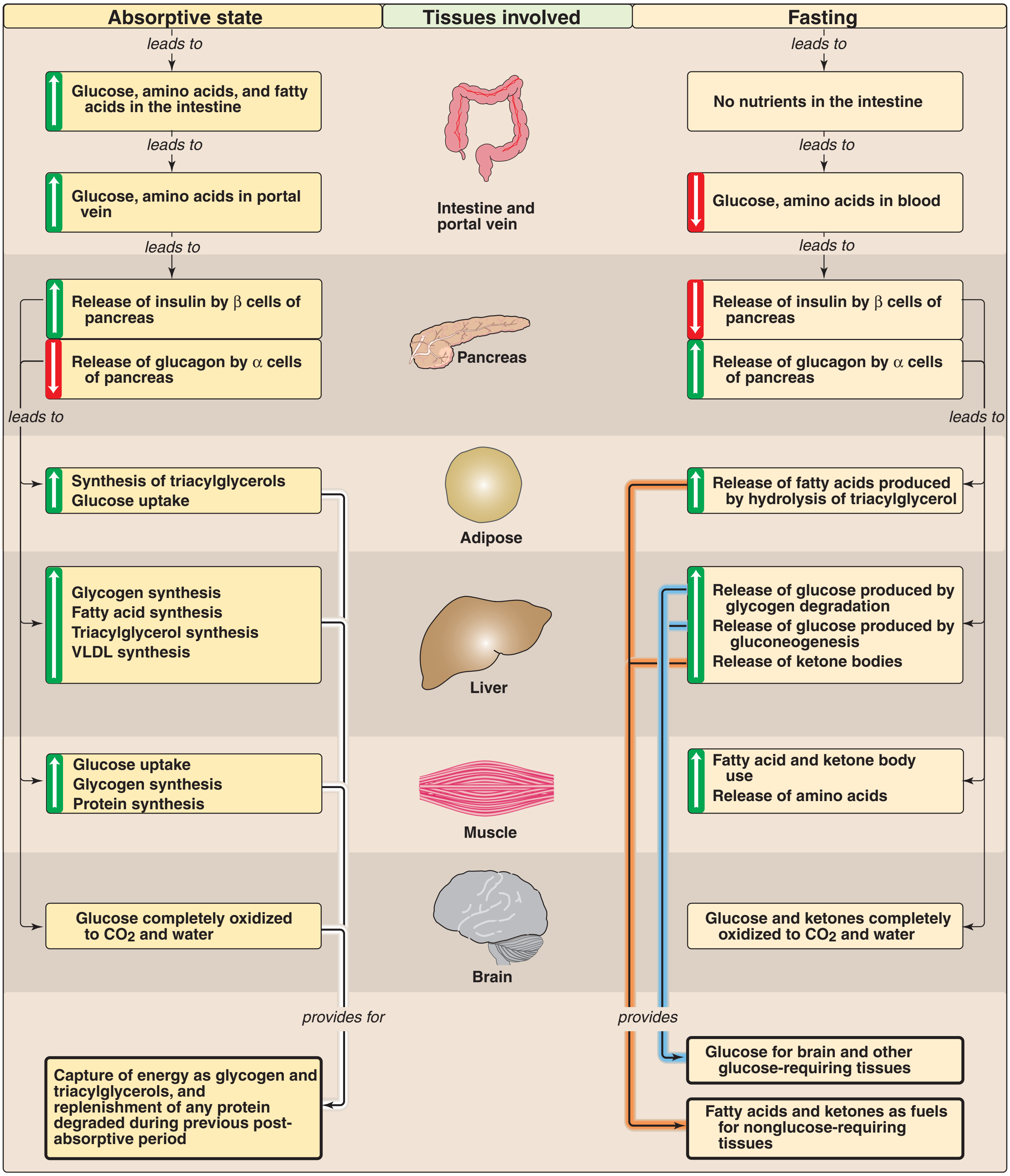

Absorptive state
Tissues involved
Fasting
leads to
↑ Glucose, amino acids, and fatty acids in the intestine
leads to
↑ Glucose, amino acids in portal vein
leads to
↑ Release of insulin by β cells of pancreas
↓ Release of glucagon by α cells of pancreas
leads to
↑ Synthesis of triacylglycerols Glucose uptake
↑ Glycogen synthesis Fatty acid synthesis Triacylglycerol synthesis VLDL synthesis
↑ Glucose uptake Glycogen synthesis Protein synthesis
Glucose completely oxidized to CO2 and water
provides for
Capture of energy as glycogen and triacylglycerols, and replenishment of any protein degraded during previous post-absorptive period
Intestine and portal vein
Pancreas
Adipose
Liver
Muscle
Brain
leads to
No nutrients in the intestine
leads to
↓ Glucose, amino acids in blood
leads to
↓ Release of insulin by β cells of pancreas
↑ Release of glucagon by α cells of pancreas
leads to
↑ Release of fatty acids produced by hydrolysis of triacylglycerol
↑ Release of glucose produced by glycogen degradation Release of glucose produced by gluconeogenesis Release of ketone bodies
↑ Fatty acid and ketone body use Release of amino acids
Glucose and ketones completely oxidized to CO2 and water
provides
Glucose for brain and other glucose-requiring tissues
Fatty acids and ketones as fuels for nonglucose-requiring tissues

Figure 24.18
Key concept map for feed/fast cycle.

Study Questions

Choose the ONE correct answer.

24.1 Which one of the following is elevated in plasma during the absorptive (fed) period as compared with the postabsorptive (fasted) state?

A. Glucagon.
B. Acetoacetate.
C. Chylomicrons.
D. Free fatty acids.
E. Lactate.

Correct answer = C. TAG-rich chylomicrons are synthesized in (and released from) the intestine following ingestion of a meal. Glucagon is depressed in the absorptive period. Acetoacetate, free fatty acids, and lactate are not elevated.

24.2 Which one of the following statements concerning the fed state is correct?

A. Most enzymes that are regulated by covalent modification are in the phosphorylated state.
B. Hepatic fructose 2,6-bisphosphate is elevated.
C. The oxidation of acetyl CoA is increased.
D. Insulin stimulates the transport of glucose into hepatocytes.
E. The synthesis of glucokinase is repressed.

Correct answer = B. The increased insulin and decreased glucagon levels characteristic of the fed state promote the synthesis of fructose 2,6-bisphosphate. Most covalently modified enzymes are in the dephosphorylated state and are active. Acetyl CoA is not elevated in the fed state. The transport of glucose in the liver is not insulin sensitive. Synthesis of glucokinase is enhanced in the fed state.

24.3 Increased formation of ketone bodies during fasting is a result of:

A. decreased levels of circulating glucagon.
B. decreased formation of acetyl CoA in the liver.
C. increased levels of free fatty acids in blood.
D. inhibition of β-oxidation of fatty acids in the liver.
E. decreased activity of hormone-sensitive lipase in adipose tissue.

Correct answer = C. Free fatty acids bound to albumin are increased as a result of an increased activity of hormone-sensitive lipase in adipose tissue. Hepatic ketogenesis is stimulated by elevated levels of glucagon. The formation of acetyl CoA is increased. β-Oxidation of fatty acids in liver provides the acetyl CoA for ketogenesis.

24.4 Which one of the following is the most important source of blood glucose during the last hours of a 48-hour fast?

A. Muscle glycogen.
B. Acetoacetate.
C. Liver glycogen.
D. Amino acids.
E. Lactate.

Correct answer = D. The carbon skeletons of glucogenic amino acids are used by the liver for gluconeogenesis. Liver glycogen is nearly depleted by 12 hours after a meal, and muscle glycogen cannot give rise to free glucose because muscle lacks glucose 6-phosphatase. Acetoacetate is metabolized to acetyl CoA, which is not glucogenic. Lactate can arise from anaerobic glycolysis in muscle and red blood cells, but is less important than amino acids as a source of glucose.

Diabetes Mellitus

25

I. OVERVIEW OF DIABETES MELLITUS

Diabetes mellitus is not one disease, but rather is a heterogeneous group of multifactorial, polygenic syndromes characterized by an elevation of fasting blood glucose caused by a relative or absolute deficiency in insulin. Diabetes is the leading cause of adult blindness and amputation, and a major cause of renal failure, nerve damage, heart attacks, and strokes. Most cases of diabetes mellitus can be separated into two groups (Figure 25.1), type 1 (formerly called insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus) and type 2 (formerly called noninsulin-dependent diabetes). Approximately 150,000 newly diagnosed cases of type 1 and 1.3 million cases of type 2 diabetes are estimated to occur yearly in the United States. The incidence and prevalence of type 2 disease is increasing because of the aging of the United States population, and the increasing prevalence of obesity and sedentary lifestyles (see p. 349). The increase in children with type 2 diabetes is particularly disturbing.

	Type 1 Diabetes	Type 2 Diabetes
AGE OF ONSET	Usually during childhood or puberty; symptoms develop rapidly	Frequently after age 35; symptoms develop gradually
NUTRITIONAL STATUS AT TIME OF DISEASE ONSET	Frequently undernourished	Obesity usually present
PREVALENCE	10% of diagnosed diabetics	90% of diagnosed diabetics
GENETIC PREDISPOSITION	Moderate	Very strong
DEFECT OR DEFICIENCY	β Cells are destroyed, eliminating production of insulin	Insulin resistance combined with inability of β cells to produce appropriate quantities of insulin
FREQUENCY OF KETOSIS	Common	Rare
PLASMA INSULIN	Low to absent	High early in disease; low in disease of long duration
ACUTE COMPLICATIONS	Ketoacidosis	Hyperosmolar state
RESPONSE TO ORAL HYPOGLYCEMIC DRUGS	Unresponsive	Responsive
TREATMENT	Insulin is always necessary	Diet, exercise, oral hypoglycemic drugs; insulin may or may not be necessary. Reduction of risk factors (smoking cessation, blood pressure control, treatment of dyslipidemia) is essential to therapy.

Figure 25.1
Comparison of type 1 and type 2 diabetes.

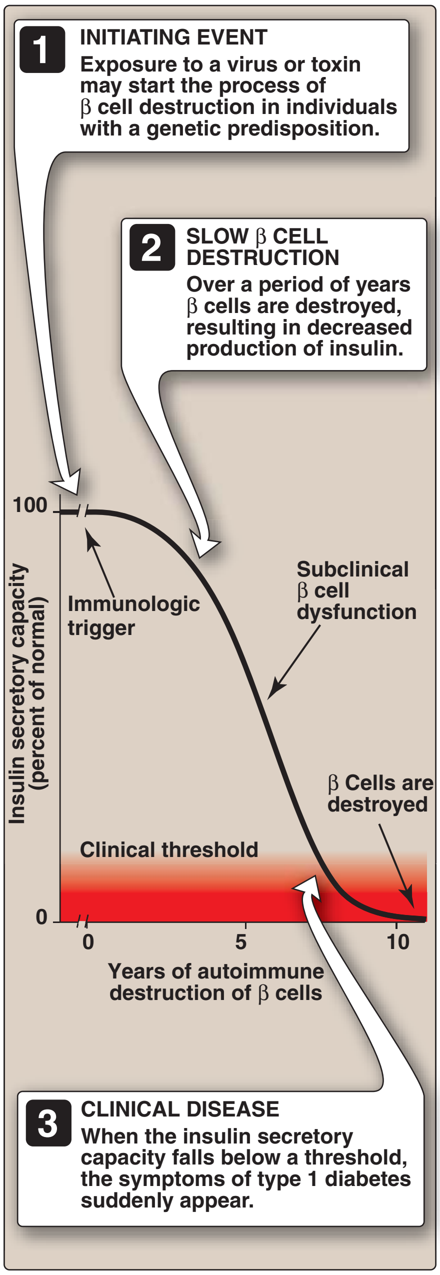


Figure 25.2
Insulin secretory capacity during onset of type 1 diabetes. [Note: Rate of autoimmune destruction of β cells may be faster or slower than shown.]

II. TYPE 1 DIABETES

Persons with type 1 diabetes constitute approximately 10% of the nearly 20 million known diabetics in the United States. The disease is characterized by an absolute deficiency of insulin caused by an autoimmune attack on the β cells of the pancreas. In type 1 diabetes, the islets of Langerhans become infiltrated with activated T lymphocytes, leading to a condition called insulitis. Over a period of years, this autoimmune attack on the β cells leads to gradual depletion of the β-cell population (Figure 25.2). However, symptoms appear abruptly when 80–90% of the β cells have been destroyed. At this point, the pancreas fails to respond adequately to ingestion of glucose, and insulin therapy is required to restore metabolic control and prevent life-threatening ketoacidosis. β Cell destruction requires both a stimulus from the environment (such as a viral infection) and a genetic determinant that allows the β cells to be recognized as "nonself." [Note: Among monozygotic (identical) twins, if one sibling develops type 1 diabetes mellitus, the other twin has only a 30–50% chance of developing the disease. This contrasts with type 2 disease (see p. 341), in which the genetic influence is stronger, and in virtually all monozygotic twinships, the disease eventually develops in both individuals.]

> Patients with type 1 diabetes have virtually no functional β cells, and can neither respond to variations in circulating fuels nor maintain a basal secretion of insulin.

A. Diagnosis of type 1 diabetes

The onset of type 1 diabetes is typically during childhood or puberty, and symptoms develop suddenly. Patients with type 1 diabetes can usually be recognized by the abrupt appearance of polyuria (frequent urination), polydipsia (excessive thirst), and polyphagia (excessive hunger), often triggered by stress or an illness. These symptoms are usually accompanied by fatigue, weight loss, and weakness. The diagnosis is confirmed by a fasting blood glucose (FBG) greater than or equal to 126 mg/dl, commonly accompanied by ketoacidosis. [Note: A FBG of 100–125 mg/dl is categorized as an impaired FBG.] Fasting is defined as no caloric intake for at least 8 hours. When the diagnosis of type 1 diabetes is uncertain by clinical presentation, testing for circulating islet-cell antibodies is recommended. [Note: The oral glucose tolerance test is not routinely used as a diagnostic tool for diabetes because it is difficult to perform in practice and the results are highly variable; however, it is used to screen pregnant women for gestational diabetes (see p. 342).]

B. Metabolic changes in type 1 diabetes

The metabolic abnormalities of type 1 diabetes mellitus result from a deficiency of insulin which profoundly affects metabolism in three tissues: liver, muscle, and adipose tissue (Figure 25.3).

1. **Hyperglycemia and ketoacidosis:** Elevated levels of blood glucose and ketones are the hallmarks of untreated type 1 diabetes melli-

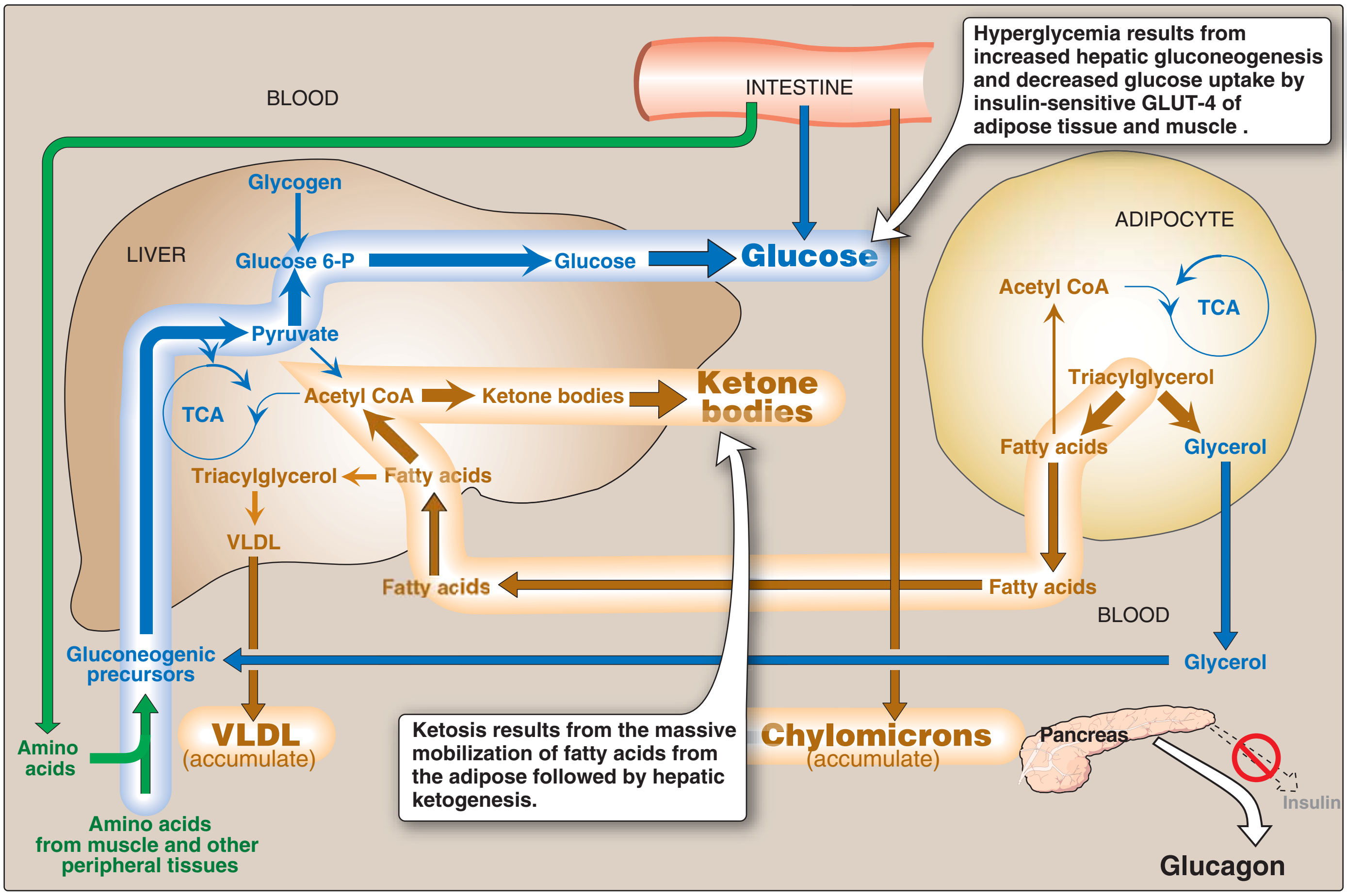

BLOOD
INTESTINE
Hyperglycemia results from increased hepatic gluconeogenesis and decreased glucose uptake by insulin-sensitive GLUT-4 of adipose tissue and muscle .
LIVER
Glycogen
Glucose 6-P
Glucose
Glucose
Pyruvate
TCA
Acetyl CoA
Ketone bodies
Ketone bodies
Triacylglycerol
Fatty acids
VLDL
Fatty acids
ADIPOCYTE
Acetyl CoA
TCA
Triacylglycerol
Fatty acids
Glycerol
Fatty acids
BLOOD
Gluconeogenic precursors
Glycerol
Amino acids
VLDL (accumulate)
Ketosis results from the massive mobilization of fatty acids from the adipose tissue followed by hepatic ketogenesis.
Chylomicrons (accumulate)
Pancreas
Insulin
Glucagon
Amino acids from muscle and other peripheral tissues

Figure 25.3
Intertissue relationships in type 1 diabetes.

tus (see Figure 25.3). Hyperglycemia is caused by increased hepatic production of glucose, combined with diminished peripheral utilization (muscle and adipose have the insulin-sensitive GLUT-4, see p. 97). Ketosis results from increased mobilization of fatty acids from adipose tissue, combined with accelerated hepatic fatty acid β-oxidation and synthesis of 3-hydroxybutyrate and acetoacetate. [Note: Acetyl coenzyme A from β-oxidation is the substrate for ketogenesis and the allosteric effector of *pyruvate carboxylase,* a gluconeogenic enzyme.] Diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA, a type of metabolic acidosis) occurs in 25–40% of those newly diagnosed with type 1 diabetes, and may recur if the patient becomes ill (most commonly with an infection) or does not comply with therapy. DKA is treated by replacing fluid and electrolytes, and administering short-acting insulin to gradually correct hyperglycemia without precipitating hypoglycemia.

2. **Hypertriacylglycerolemia:** Not all the fatty acids flooding the liver can be disposed of through oxidation or ketone body synthesis. These excess fatty acids are converted to triacylglycerol, which is packaged and secreted in very-low-density lipoproteins (VLDL, see p. 231). Chylomicrons are synthesized from dietary lipids by the intestinal mucosal cells following a meal (see p. 178). Because

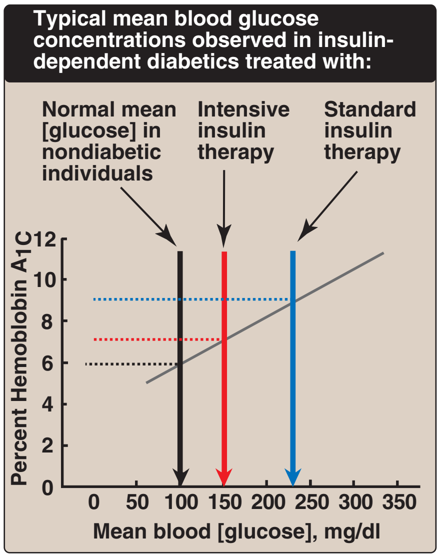


Figure 25.4
Correlation between mean blood glucose and HbA$_{1C}$ in patients with type 1 diabetes.

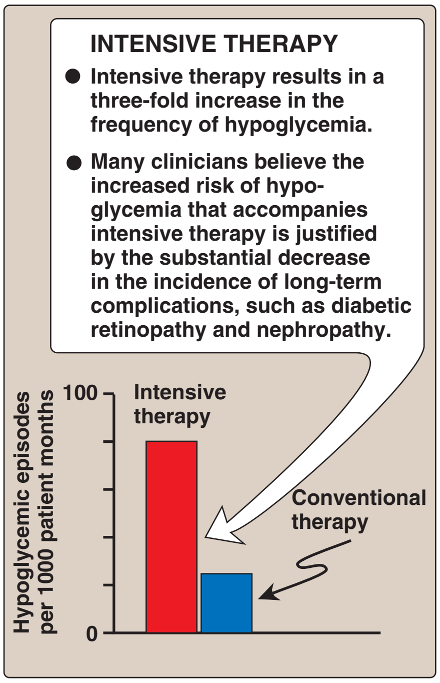


Figure 25.5
Effect of tight glucose control on hypoglycemic episodes in a population of patients on intensive therapy or conventional therapy.

lipoprotein degradation catalyzed by *lipoprotein lipase* in the capillary beds of muscle and adipose tissue (see. p. 228) is low in diabetics (synthesis of the enzyme is decreased when insulin levels are low), the plasma chylomicron and VLDL levels are elevated, resulting in hypertriacylglycerolemia (see Figure 25.3).

C. Treatment of type 1 diabetes

Individuals with type 1 diabetes must rely on exogenous insulin injected subcutaneously to control the hyperglycemia and ketoacidosis. Two therapeutic regimens are currently in use—standard and intensive insulin treatment.

> Insulin may also be delivered by a pump, which allows continuous subcutaneous infusion of insulin 24 hours a day at preset levels and the ability to program doses (a bolus) of insulin as needed at meal times.

1. **Standard treatment versus intensive treatment:** Standard treatment typically consists of one or two daily injections of recombinant human insulin. Mean blood glucose levels obtained are typically in the 225–275 mg/dl range, with a hemoglobin A$_{1C}$ (HbA$_{1C}$) level (see p. 34) of 8–9% of the total hemoglobin (blue arrow in Figure 25.4). [Note: The rate of formation of HbA$_{1C}$ is proportional to the average blood glucose concentration over the previous 3 months. Thus, HbA$_{1C}$ provides a measure of how well treatment has normalized blood glucose in the diabetic over that time.] In contrast to standard therapy, intensive treatment seeks to more closely normalize blood glucose through more frequent monitoring, and subsequent injections of insulin—typically three or more times a day. Mean blood glucose levels of 150 mg/dl can be achieved, with HbA$_{1C}$ approximately 7% of the total hemoglobin (red arrow: Figure 25.4). [Note: Normal mean blood glucose is approximately 100 mg/dl and HbA$_{1C}$ is 6% or less (black arrow, see Figure 25.4).] Thus, normalization of glucose values (euglycemia) is not achieved even in intensively treated patients. Nonetheless, patients on intensive therapy show a 50% or more reduction in the long-term microvascular complications of diabetes—retinopathy, nephropathy, and neuropathy—compared with patients receiving standard care. This confirms that the complications of diabetes are related to an elevation of plasma glucose.

2. **Hypoglycemia in type 1 diabetes:** One of the therapeutic goals in cases of diabetes is to decrease blood glucose levels in an effort to minimize the development of long-term complications of the disease (see p. 344 for a discussion of the chronic complications of diabetes). However, appropriate dosage of insulin is difficult to achieve. Hypoglycemia caused by excess insulin is the most common complication of insulin therapy, occurring in over 90% of patients. The frequency of hypoglycemic episodes, coma, and seizures is particularly high with intensive treatment regimens

designed to achieve tight control of blood glucose (Figure 25.5). Recall that in normal individuals hypoglycemia triggers a compensatory secretion of counter-regulatory hormones, most notably glucagon and epinephrine, which promote hepatic production of glucose. However, patients with type 1 diabetes also develop a deficiency of glucagon secretion. This defect occurs early in the disease and is almost universally present 4 years after diagnosis. These patients thus rely on epinephrine secretion to prevent severe hypoglycemia. However, as the disease progresses, type 1 diabetes patients show diabetic autonomic neuropathy and impaired ability to secrete epinephrine in response to hypoglycemia. The combined deficiency of glucagon and epinephrine secretion creates a condition sometimes called "hypoglycemia unawareness." Thus, patients with long-standing diabetes are particularly vulnerable to hypoglycemia. Hypoglycemia can also be caused by strenuous exercise. Exercise promotes glucose uptake into muscle and decreases the need for exogenous insulin. Patients are advised, therefore, to check blood glucose levels before or after intensive exercise to prevent or abort hypoglycemia.

3. **Contraindications for tight control:** Children are not put on a program of tight control of blood glucose because of the risk that episodes of hypoglycemia may adversely affect brain development. Elderly people typically do not go on tight control because hypoglycemia can cause strokes and heart attacks in this population. Also, the major goal of tight control is to prevent complications many years later. Tight control, then, is most worthwhile for otherwise healthy people who can expect to live at least ten more years.

III. TYPE 2 DIABETES

Type 2 diabetes is the most common form of the disease, afflicting approximately 90% of the diabetic population in the United States. [Note: Native Americans, Latinos, African Americans, and Asian Americans have the highest prevalence.] Typically, type 2 diabetes develops gradually without obvious symptoms. The disease is often detected by routine screening tests. However, many individuals with type 2 diabetes have symptoms of polyuria and polydipsia of several weeks duration. Polyphagia may be present, but is less common. Patients with type 2 diabetes have a combination of insulin resistance and dysfunctional β cells (Figure 25.6), but do not require insulin to sustain life, although insulin eventually will be required to control hyperglycemia and keep HbA_{1c} below 7% in 90% of patients. The metabolic alterations observed in type 2 diabetes are milder than those described for type 1, in part, because insulin secretion in type 2 diabetes—although not adequate—does restrain ketogenesis and blunts the development of DKA. Diagnosis is based most commonly on the presence of hyperglycemia—that is, a fasting blood glucose concentration of equal to or greater than 126 mg/dl. Pathogenesis does not involve viruses or autoimmune antibodies. [Note: An acute complication of type 2 in the elderly is a hyperglycemic hyperosmolar state characterized by severe hyperglycemia and dehydration, and altered mental status.]

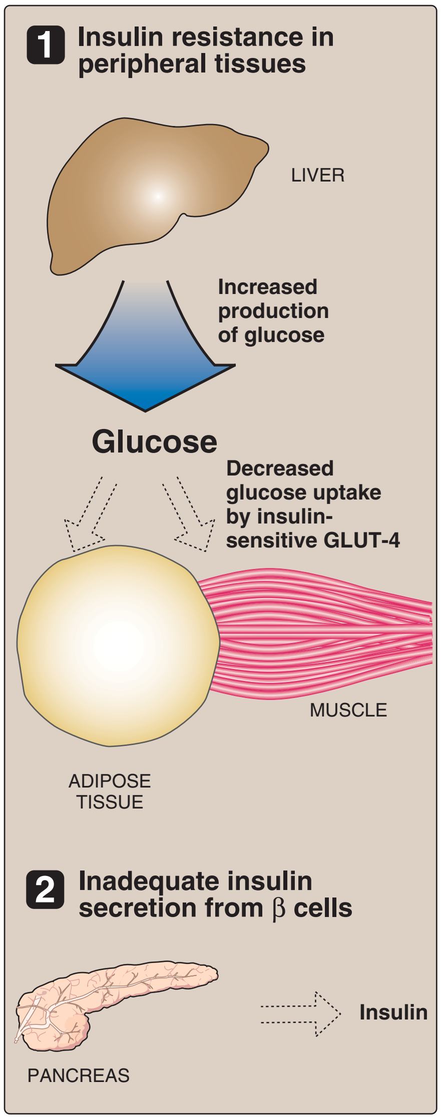

1 Insulin resistance in peripheral tissues
LIVER
Increased production of glucose
Glucose
Decreased glucose uptake by insulin-sensitive GLUT-4
MUSCLE
ADIPOSE TISSUE
2 Inadequate insulin secretion from β cells
Insulin
PANCREAS

Figure 25.6
Major factors contributing to hyperglycemia observed in type 2 diabetes.

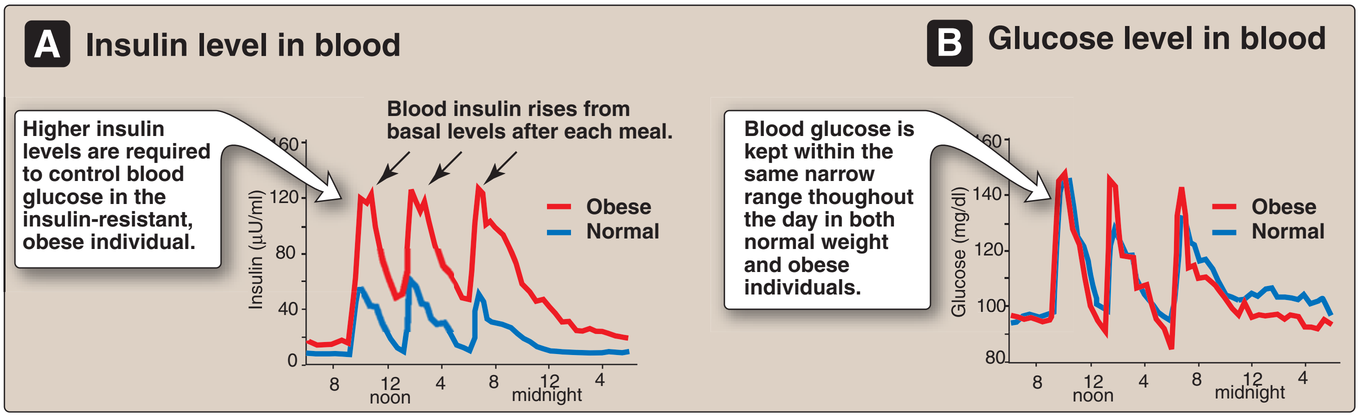
Type 2 diabetes mellitus is characterized by hyperglycemia, insulin resistance, and relative impairment in insulin secretion.

A. Insulin resistance

Insulin resistance is the decreased ability of target tissues, such as liver, adipose, and muscle, to respond properly to normal (or elevated) circulating concentrations of insulin. For example, insulin resistance is characterized by uncontrolled hepatic glucose production, and decreased glucose uptake by muscle and adipose tissue.

1. **Insulin resistance and obesity:** Obesity is the most common cause of insulin resistance; however, most people with obesity and insulin resistance do not become diabetic. In the absence of a defect in β-cell function, nondiabetic, obese individuals can compensate for insulin resistance with elevated levels of insulin. For example, Figure 25.7A shows that insulin secretion is two to three times higher in obese subjects than it is in lean individuals. This higher insulin concentration compensates for the diminished effect of the hormone (as a result of insulin resistance), and produces blood glucose levels similar to those observed in lean individuals (Figure 25.7B).

2. **Insulin resistance and type 2 diabetes:** Insulin resistance alone will not lead to type 2 diabetes. Rather, type 2 diabetes develops in insulin-resistant individuals who also show impaired β-cell function. Insulin resistance and subsequent risk for the development of type 2 diabetes is commonly observed in the elderly, and in individuals who are obese, physically inactive, or in the 3–5% of pregnant women who develop gestational diabetes. These patients are unable to sufficiently compensate for insulin resistance with increased insulin release. Figure 25.8 shows the time course for the development of hyperglycemia and the loss of β-cell function.


A Insulin level in blood

Higher insulin levels are required to control blood glucose in the insulin-resistant, obese individual.

Blood insulin rises from basal levels after each meal.

B Glucose level in blood

Blood glucose is kept within the same narrow range thoughout the day in both normal weight and obese individuals.

Figure 25.7
Blood insulin and glucose levels in normal weight and obese subjects.

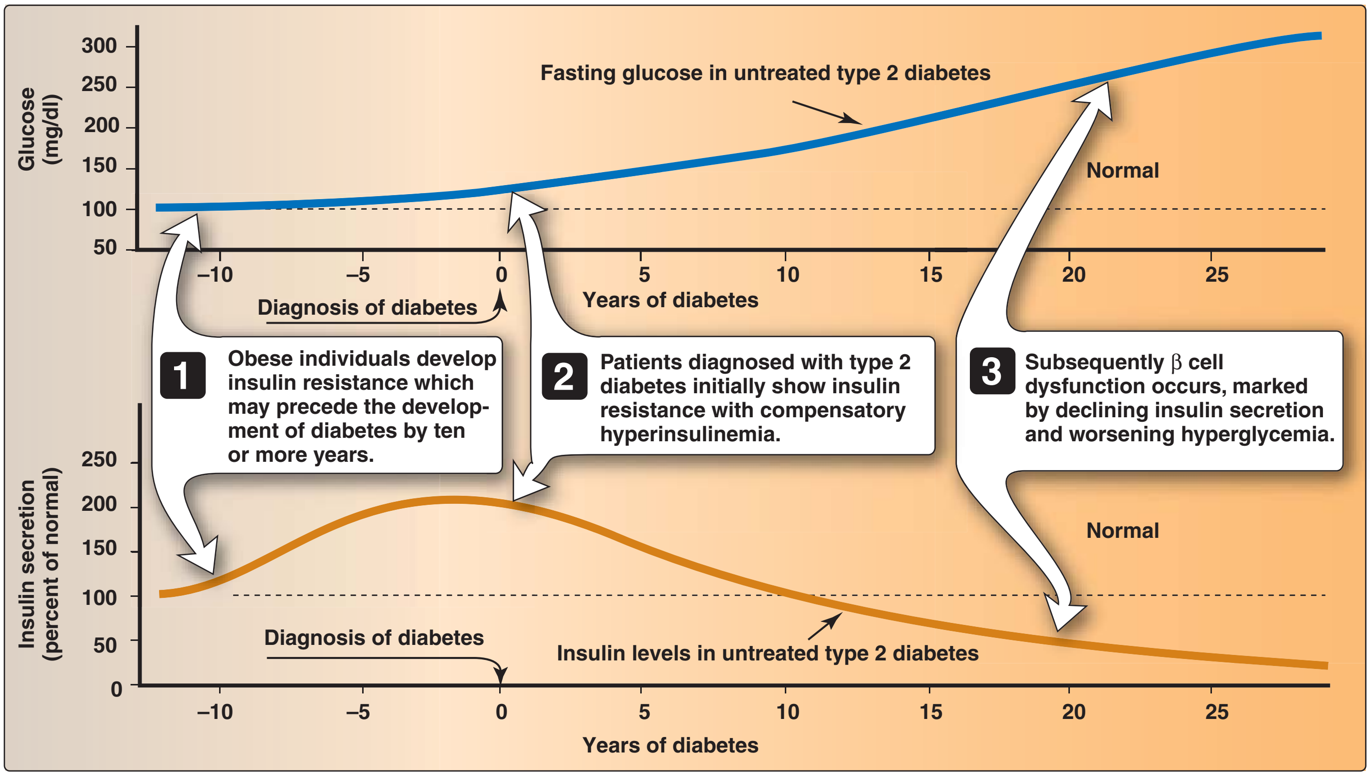


Figure 25.8
Progression of blood glucose and insulin levels in patients with type 2 diabetes.

3. **Causes of insulin resistance:** Insulin resistance increases with weight gain and, conversely, diminishes with weight loss. This suggests that fat accumulation is important in the development of insulin resistance. Adipose tissue is not simply an energy storage organ, but also a secretory organ. Regulatory substances produced by adipocytes include leptin (see p. 353), and adiponectin (see p. 353), all of which may contribute to the development of insulin resistance. In addition, the elevated levels of free fatty acids (FFA) that occur in obesity have also been implicated in the development of insulin resistance. [Note: FFA also arise from lipolysis in insulin-resistant adipose.]

B. Dysfunctional β cells

In type 2 diabetes, the pancreas initially retains β-cell capacity, resulting in insulin levels that vary from above normal to below normal. However, with time, the β cell becomes increasingly dysfunctional and fails to secrete enough insulin to correct the prevailing hyperglycemia. For example, insulin levels are high in typical, obese, type 2 diabetic patients, but not as high as in similarly obese individuals who are nondiabetic. Thus, the natural progression of the disease results in a declining ability to control hyperglycemia with endogenous secretion of insulin (Figure 25.9). Deterioration of β-cell function may be accelerated by the toxic effects of sustained hyperglycemia and elevated FFA.

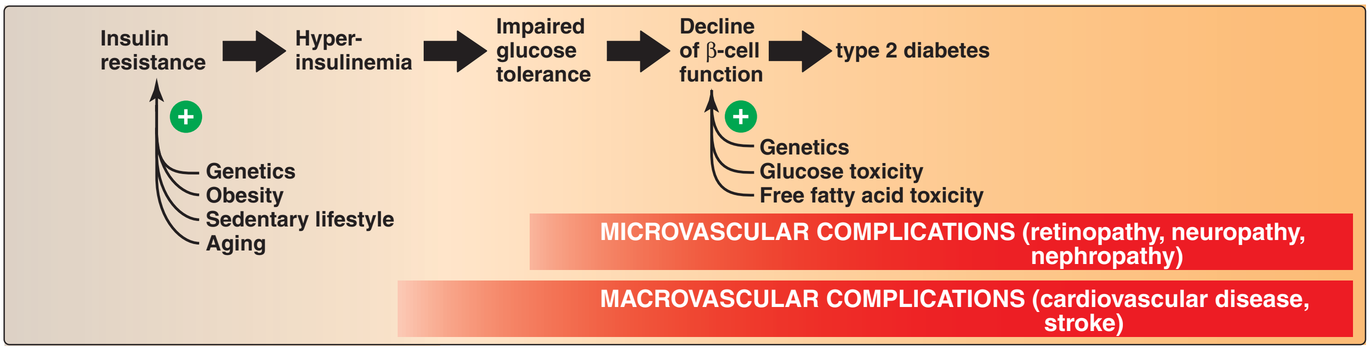

Insulin resistance
Hyper-insulinemia
Impaired glucose tolerance
Decline of β-cell function
type 2 diabetes
+
Genetics
Obesity
Sedentary lifestyle
Aging
+
Genetics
Glucose toxicity
Free fatty acid toxicity
MICROVASCULAR COMPLICATIONS (retinopathy, neuropathy, nephropathy)
MACROVASCULAR COMPLICATIONS (cardiovascular disease, stroke)

Figure 25.9
Typical progression of type 2 diabetes.

C. Metabolic changes in type 2 diabetes

The metabolic abnormalities of type 2 diabetes mellitus are the result of insulin resistance expressed primarily in liver, muscle, and adipose tissue (Figure 25.10).

1. **Hyperglycemia:** Hyperglycemia is caused by increased hepatic production of glucose, combined with diminished peripheral use. Ketosis is usually minimal or absent in type 2 patients because the presence of insulin—even in the presence of insulin resistance—diminishes hepatic ketogenesis. [Note: Metformin, an oral agent for the treatment of type 2 diabetes, inhibits hepatic gluconeogenesis[1].]

2. **Dyslipidemia:** In the liver, fatty acids are converted to triacylglycerols, which are packaged and secreted in VLDL. Chylomicrons are synthesized from dietary lipids by the intestinal mucosal cells following a meal (see p. 177). Because lipoprotein degradation catalyzed by *lipoprotein lipase* in adipose tissue (and muscle, see p. 228) is low in diabetics, the plasma chylomicron and VLDL levels are elevated, resulting in hypertriacylglycerolemia (see Figure 25.10). Low HDL levels are also associated with type 2 diabetes.

D. Treatment of type 2 diabetes

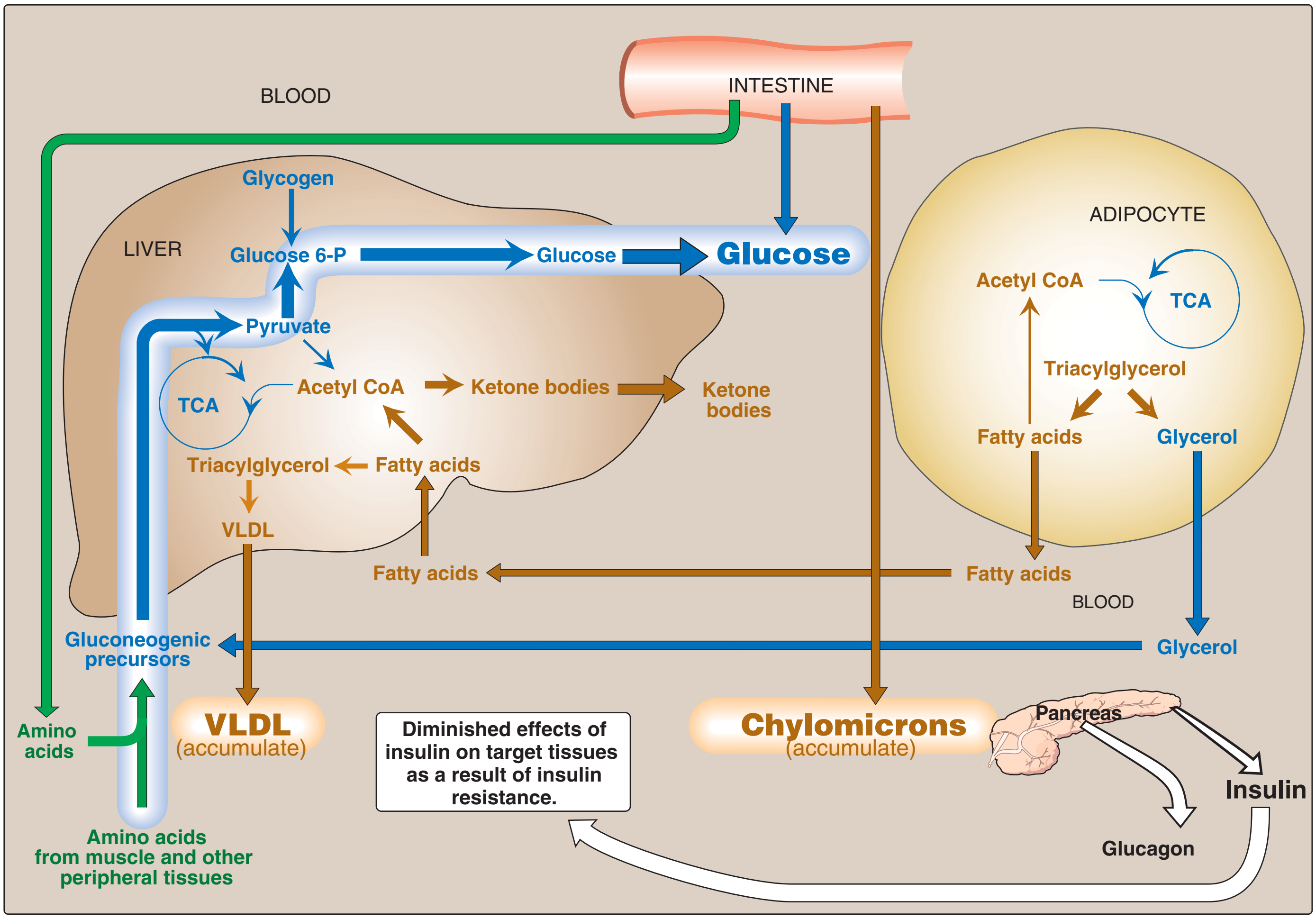
The goal in treating type 2 diabetes is to maintain blood glucose concentrations within normal limits, and to prevent the development of long-term complications. Weight reduction, exercise, and medical nutrition therapy (dietary modifications) often correct the hyperglycemia of newly diagnosed type 2 diabetes. Hypoglycemic agents or insulin therapy may be required to achieve satisfactory plasma glucose levels.

IV. CHRONIC EFFECTS AND PREVENTION OF DIABETES

As noted previously, available therapies moderate the hyperglycemia of diabetes, but fail to completely normalize metabolism. The long-standing elevation of blood glucose is associated with the chronic complica-

---

[1] See Chapter 24 in ***Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Pharmacology*** for a discussion of the use of hypoglycemic agents in the treatment of diabetes.


BLOOD
INTESTINE
Glycogen
LIVER
Glucose 6-P
Glucose
Glucose
Pyruvate
TCA
Acetyl CoA
Ketone bodies
Ketone bodies
Triacylglycerol
Fatty acids
VLDL
Fatty acids
ADIPOCYTE
Acetyl CoA
TCA
Triacylglycerol
Fatty acids
Glycerol
Fatty acids
BLOOD
Glycerol
Gluconeogenic precursors
Amino acids
VLDL (accumulate)
Chylomicrons (accumulate)
Pancreas
Insulin
Glucagon
Amino acids from muscle and other peripheral tissues

Diminished effects of insulin on target tissues as a result of insulin resistance.

Figure 25.10
Intertissue relationships in type 2 diabetes.

tions of diabetes—premature atherosclerosis (including cardiovascular disease and stroke), retinopathy, nephropathy, and neuropathy. Intensive treatment with insulin (see p. 340) delays the onset and slows the progression of these long-term complications. For example, the incidence of retinopathy decreases as control of blood glucose improves and HbA_{1C} levels decrease (Figure 25.11). The benefits of tight control of blood glucose outweigh the increased risk of severe hypoglycemia in most patients. How hyperglycemia causes the chronic complications of diabetes is unclear. In cells where entry of glucose is not dependent on insulin, elevated blood glucose leads to increased intracellular glucose and its metabolites. For example, increased intracellular sorbitol contributes to the formation of cataracts (see p. 140) in diabetics. Furthermore, hyperglycemia promotes the non-enzymic condensation of glucose with cellular proteins in a reaction analogous to the formation of HbA_{1C} (see p. 34). These glycated proteins mediate some of the early microvascular changes of diabetes. There is currently no preventative treatment for type 1 diabetes. The risk for type 2 diabetes can be significantly decreased by a combined regimen of medical nutrition therapy, weight loss, exercise and aggressive control

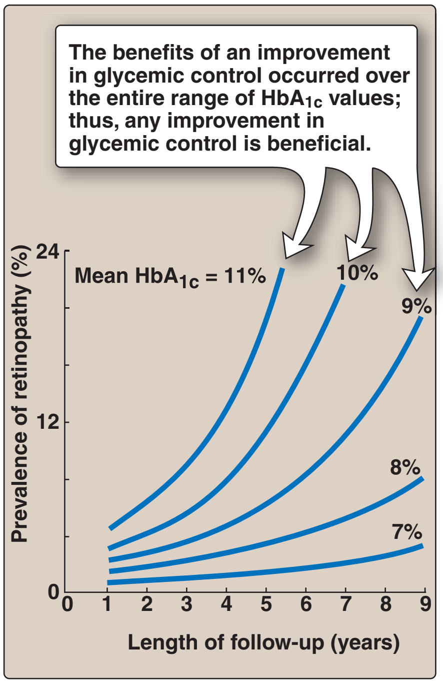


Figure 25.11
Relationship of glycemic control and diabetic retinopathy.

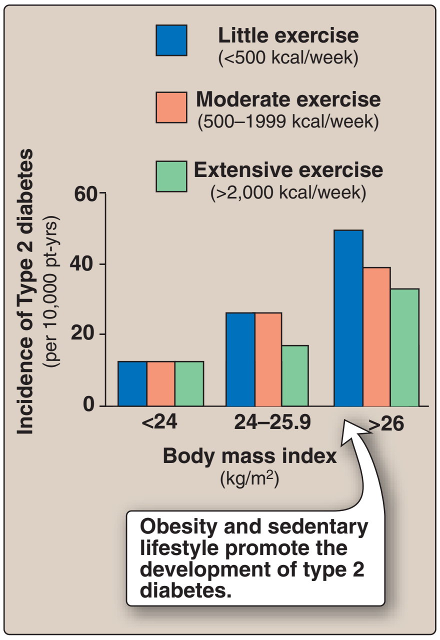


Figure 25.12
Effect of body weight and exercise on the development of type 2 diabetes.

of hypertension and dyslipidemias. For example, Figure 25.12 shows the incidence of disease in normal and overweight individuals with varying degrees of exercise. The beneficial effect of intensive therapy on cardiovascular disease has not been shown in individuals with long-standing type 2 diabetes. In contrast, initial intensive control in individuals with newly diagnosed diabetes has long-term benefit in decreasing the risk of myocardial infarction, diabetes-related death, and overall death. The clinical evidence thus supports initiating intensive therapy with the goal of lowering HbA_{1C} levels to below 7.0% as early as possible in the course of diabetes.

V. CHAPTER SUMMARY

Diabetes mellitus is a heterogeneous group of syndromes characterized by an **elevation of fasting blood glucose** that is caused by a relative or absolute deficiency in insulin (Figure 25.13). Diabetes is the leading cause of **adult blindness** and **amputation**, and a major cause of **renal failure**, **nerve damage**, **heart attacks**, and **stroke**. The disease can be classified into two groups, type 1 and type 2. **Type 1** diabetics constitute approximately 10% of diabetics in the United States. The disease is characterized by an **absolute deficiency of insulin** caused by an **autoimmune attack** on the **β cells of the pancreas**. This destruction requires a **stimulus from the environment** (such as a viral infection) and a **genetic determinant** that allows the β cell to be recognized as "nonself." The **metabolic abnormalities** of type 1 diabetes mellitus include **hyperglycemia**, **ketoacidosis**, and **hypertriacylglycerolemia**. They result from a deficiency of insulin and a relative excess of glucagon. Type 1 diabetics must rely on **exogenous insulin** injected subcutaneously to control hyperglycemia and ketoacidosis. **Type 2** diabetes has a strong **genetic** component. It results from a combination of **insulin resistance** and **dysfunctional β cells**. Insulin resistance is the decreased ability of target tissues, such as liver, adipose tissue, and muscle, to respond properly to normal (or elevated) circulating concentrations of insulin. **Obesity** is the most common cause of insulin resistance. However, most people with obesity and insulin resistance do not become diabetic. In the absence of a defect in β-cell function, **nondiabetic**, **obese individuals** can compensate for insulin resistance with **elevated levels of insulin**. Insulin resistance alone will not lead to type 2 diabetes. Rather, type 2 diabetes develops in insulin-resistant individuals who also show impaired β-cell function. The **metabolic alterations** observed in type 2 diabetes are **milder** than those described for the insulin-dependent form of the disease, in part, because insulin secretion in type 2 diabetes—although not adequate—does restrain ketogenesis and blunts the development of diabetic ketoacidosis. Available treatments for diabetes moderate the hyperglycemia, but fail to completely normalize metabolism. The long-standing elevation of blood glucose is associated with the **chronic complications of diabetes**—**premature atherosclerosis**, **retinopathy**, **nephropathy**, and **neuropathy**.

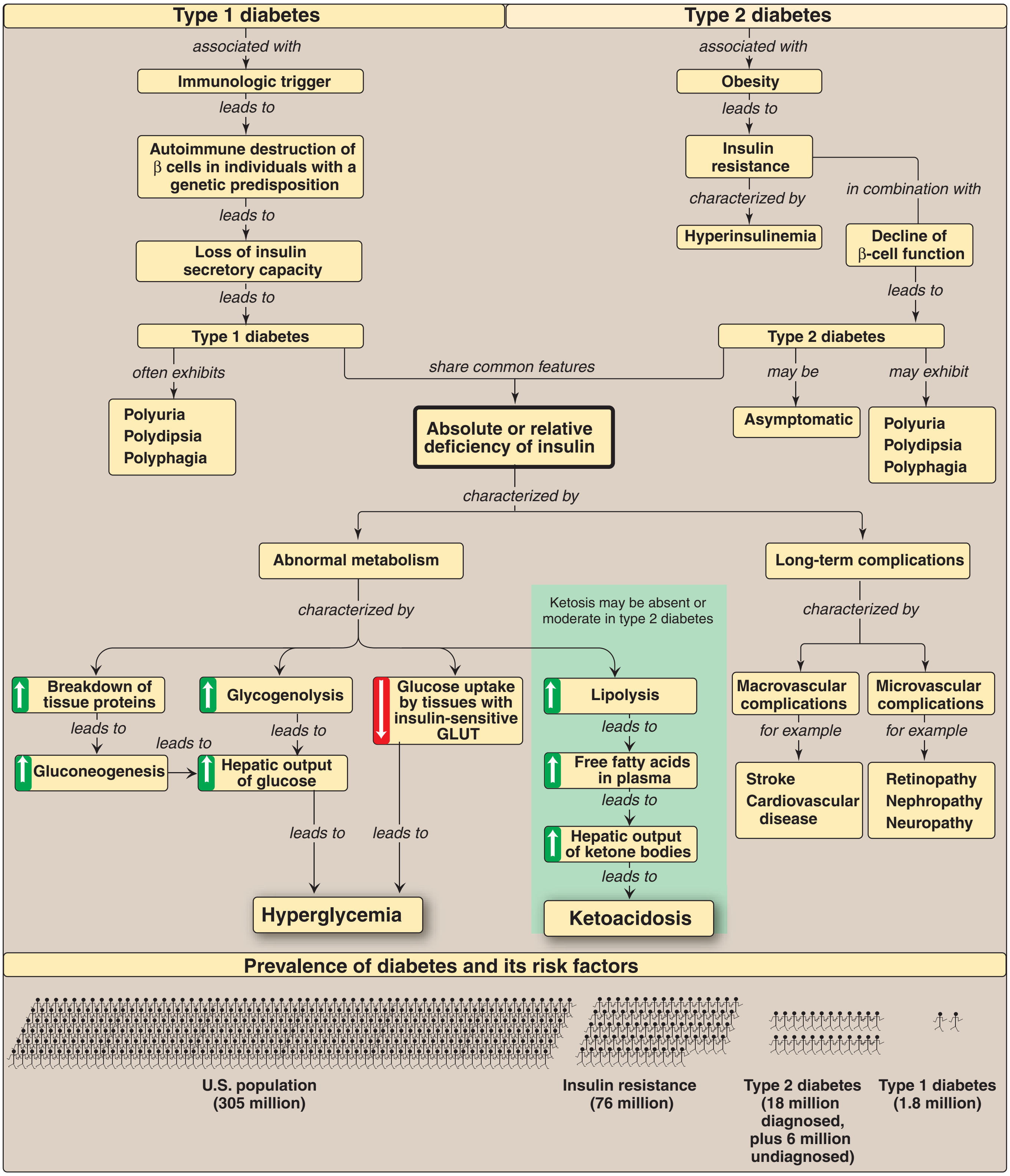

Type 1 diabetes
associated with
Immunologic trigger
leads to
Autoimmune destruction of β cells in individuals with a genetic predisposition
leads to
Loss of insulin secretory capacity
leads to
Type 1 diabetes
often exhibits
Polyuria
Polydipsia
Polyphagia
Type 2 diabetes
associated with
Obesity
leads to
Insulin resistance
characterized by
Hyperinsulinemia
in combination with
Decline of β-cell function
leads to
Type 2 diabetes
may be
Asymptomatic
may exhibit
Polyuria
Polydipsia
Polyphagia
share common features
Absolute or relative deficiency of insulin
characterized by
Abnormal metabolism
characterized by
↑ Breakdown of tissue proteins
leads to
↑ Gluconeogenesis
leads to
↑ Glycogenolysis
leads to
↑ Hepatic output of glucose
↓ Glucose uptake by tissues with insulin-sensitive GLUT
leads to
leads to
Hyperglycemia
Ketosis may be absent or moderate in type 2 diabetes
↑ Lipolysis
leads to
↑ Free fatty acids in plasma
leads to
↑ Hepatic output of ketone bodies
leads to
Ketoacidosis
Long-term complications
characterized by
Macrovascular complications
for example
Stroke
Cardiovascular disease
Microvascular complications
for example
Retinopathy
Nephropathy
Neuropathy
Prevalence of diabetes and its risk factors
U.S. population (305 million)
Insulin resistance (76 million)
Type 2 diabetes (18 million diagnosed, plus 6 million undiagnosed)
Type 1 diabetes (1.8 million)

Figure 25.13
Key concept map for diabetes.

Study Questions

Choose the ONE correct answer.

25.1 Relative or absolute lack of insulin in humans would result in which one of the following reactions in the liver?

A. Increased glycogen synthesis.
B. Decreased gluconeogenesis from lactate.
C. Decreased glycogenolysis.
D. Increased formation of 3-hydroxybutyrate.
E. Decreased action of hormone-sensitive lipase.

Correct answer = D. Low insulin levels favor the liver producing ketone bodies, using acetyl coenzyme A it generated by β-oxidation of fatty acids provided by the adipose. Low insulin also causes activation of hormone-sensitive lipase, decreased glycogen synthesis, and increased gluconeogenesis and glycogenolysis.

25.2 Which one of the following is most often found in untreated patients with type 1 and type 2 diabetes?

A. Hyperglycemia.
B. Extremely low levels of insulin synthesis and secretion.
C. Synthesis of an insulin with an abnormal amino acid sequence.
D. A simple pattern of genetic inheritance.
E. Ketoacidosis.

Correct answer = A. Elevated blood glucose occurs in type 1 diabetes as a result of a lack of insulin. In type 2 diabetes, hyperglycemia is due to a defect in β-cell function and insulin resistance. The amino acid sequence of insulin is not changed in diabetes. Both forms of the disease show complex genetics. Ketoacidosis is more common in type 1 disease.

25.3 An obese individual with type 2 diabetes:

A. usually shows a sudden onset of symptoms.
B. usually has a lower plasma level of insulin than a normal individual.
C. usually shows significant improvement in glucose tolerance if body weight is reduced to normal.
D. usually benefits from receiving insulin about 6 hours after a meal.
E. usually has lower plasma levels of glucagon than a normal individual.

Correct answer = C. Eighty percent of type 2 diabetics are obese, and almost all show some improvement in blood glucose with weight reduction. Symptoms usually develop gradually. These patients have elevated insulin levels, and usually do not require insulin (certainly not 6 hours after a meal). Glucagon levels are typically normal.

25.4 An individual with insulin resistance and normal β-cell function:

A. usually shows elevated fasting glucose levels.
B. usually shows elevated fasting insulin levels.
C. will eventually become diabetic.
D. is rarely obese.
E. is treated by injection of insulin.

Correct answer = B. Insulin resistance is the decreased ability of target tissues, such as liver, adipose, and muscle, to respond properly to normal circulating concentrations of insulin. Obesity is the most common cause of insulin resistance. Most of the people with obesity and insulin resistance do not become diabetic. In the absence of a defect in β-cell function, nondiabetic, obese individuals can compensate for insulin resistance with elevated levels of insulin. The elevated insulin levels normalize fasting blood glucose levels. Insulin resistance without overt diabetes requires no pharmacologic treatment.

25.5 Explain why drugs that inhibit the α-glucosidase activity of the intestinal saccharidases aid in glycemic control in patients with diabetes.

α-Glucosidase inhibitors prevent glucose production from those products of carbohydrate digestion in which glucose is attached through an α-glycosidic linkage, thus reducing the postprandial rise in blood glucose. Note that the digestion of lactose is unaffected because it has a β-linkage.

Obesity

26

I. OVERVIEW

Obesity is a disorder of body weight regulatory systems characterized by an accumulation of excess body fat. In primitive societies, in which daily life required a high level of physical activity and food was only available intermittently, a genetic tendency favoring storage of excess calories as fat may have had a survival value. Today, however, the sedentary lifestyle and abundance and wide variety of palatable, inexpensive foods in industrialized societies has undoubtedly contributed to an obesity epidemic. As adiposity has increased so has the risk of developing associated diseases, such as arthritis, diabetes, hypertension, cardiovascular disease, and cancer. Particularly alarming is the explosion of obesity in children and adolescents, which has shown a three-fold increase in prevalence over the last two decades. In the United States, the lifetime risk of becoming overweight or obese is approximately 50% and 25%, respectively. Obesity has increased globally. In fact, by some estimates, there are more obese than undernourished individuals worldwide.

II. ASSESSMENT OF OBESITY

The amount of body fat is difficult to measure directly, and is usually determined from an indirect measure—the body mass index (BMI)—which has been shown to correlate with the amount of body fat in most individuals. [Note: Exceptions are athletes who have large amounts of lean muscle mass.] Measuring the waist size with a tape measure is also used to screen for obesity, as this measurement reflects the amount of fat in the central abdominal area of the body. The presence of excess central fat is associated with an increased risk for morbidity and mortality.

A. Body mass index

The BMI (weight in kg)/(height in meters)^2 provides a measure of relative weight, adjusted for height. This allows comparisons both within and between populations. The healthy range for the BMI is between 18.5 and 24.9. Individuals with a BMI between 25 and 29.9 are considered overweight, those with a BMI equal to or greater than 30 are defined as obese, and a BMI over 40 is considered extremely obese. Anyone more than 100 pounds overweight is considered severely obese (Figure 26.1). These cutoffs are based on the studies examining the relationship of BMI to premature death, and are similar in men and women. Nearly two thirds of American adults are overweight, and more than one third are obese.

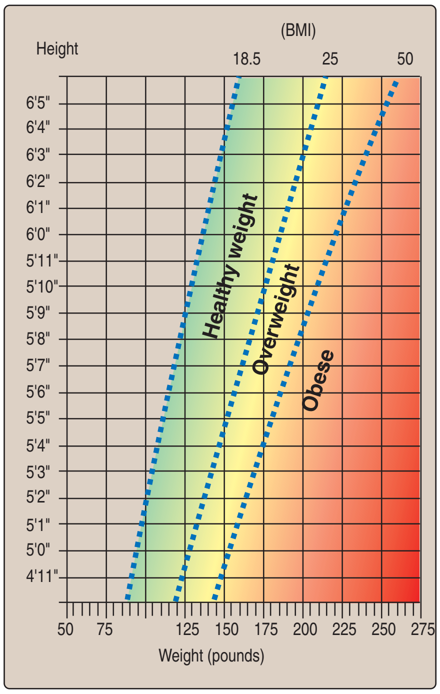


Figure 26.1
To use the BMI Chart, find height in the left-hand column. Move across the row to weight. Height and weight intersect at the individual's BMI.

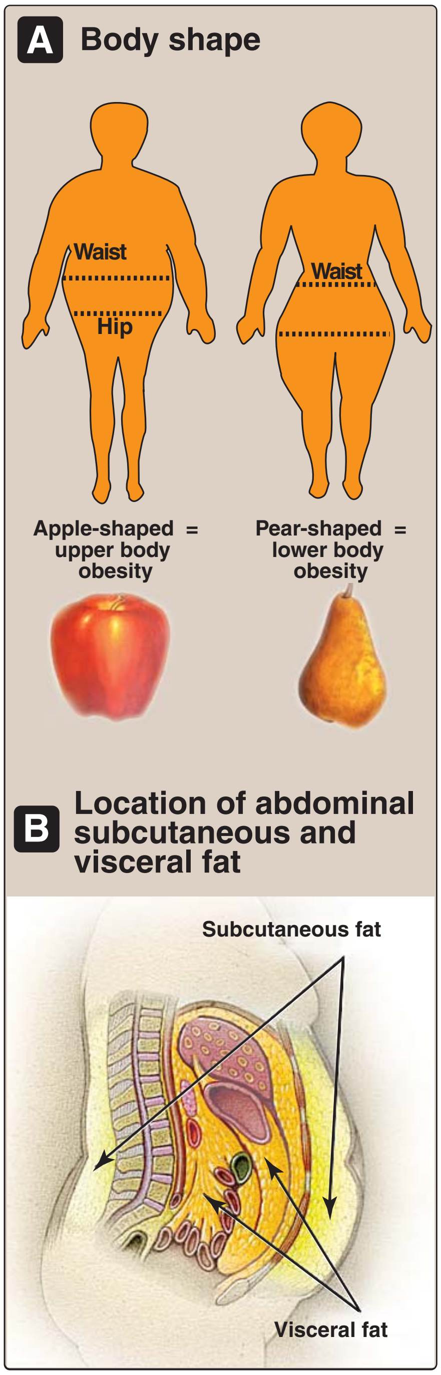

A
Body shape
Waist
Hip
Waist
Apple-shaped = upper body obesity
Pear-shaped = lower body obesity
B
Location of abdominal subcutaneous and visceral fat
Subcutaneous fat
Visceral fat

Figure 26.2
A. Individuals with upper body obesity (left) have greater health risks than individuals with lower body obesity (right). B. Visceral fat is located inside the abdominal cavity, packed in between the internal organs; subcutaneaous fat is found underneath the skin.

B. Anatomic differences in fat deposition

The anatomic distribution of body fat has a major influence on associated health risks. A waist to hip ratio of more than 0.8 for women and more than 1.0 for men is defined as android, "apple-shaped," or upper body obesity, and is associated with more fat deposition in the trunk (Figure 26.2A). In contrast, a lower waist to hip ratio reflects a preponderance of fat distributed in the hips and thighs and is called gynoid, "pear-shaped," or lower body obesity. It is defined as a waist to hip ratio of less than 0.8 for women and less than 1.0 for men. The pear shape, more commonly found in women, presents a much lower risk of metabolic disease, and some studies indicate it may actually be protective. Thus, the clinician can use simple indices of body shape to identify those who may be at higher risk for metabolic diseases associated with obesity.

1. **Subcutaneous and visceral depots:** About 80–90% of the fat stored in the human body is in subcutaneous depots, just under the skin, in the abdominal (upper body) and the gluteal-femoral (lower body) regions. In addition, 10–20% of body fat is stored in so-called visceral depots (omental and mesenteric), which are located within the abdominal cavity in close association with the digestive tract (Figure 26.2B). Excess fat in visceral stores (and also in abdominal subcutaneous fat) increases health risks associated with obesity.

C. Biochemical differences in regional fat depots

The regional types of fat described above are biochemically different. Subcutaneous adipocytes from the lower body (gluteal-femoral), particularly in women, are larger, very efficient at fat deposition, and tend to mobilize fatty acids more slowly than those from the abdominal subcutaneous depots. Visceral adipocytes are the most metabolically active. Both abdominal subcutaneous and visceral depots of obese subjects have high rates of lipolysis, and contribute to increased availability of free fatty acids. These metabolic differences may contribute to the higher risk found in individuals with upper body obesity.

1. **Endocrine function:** Adipose tissue, once thought to be a passive bystander in metabolism, is now known to play an active role in body weight regulatory systems. For example, the adipocyte is an endocrine cell that secretes a number of hormones, such as leptin, which regulates appetite as well as metabolism (see p. 353). Adiponectin, an adipocyte-derived cytokine, reduces levels of blood free fatty acids and has been associated with improved lipid profiles, better glycemic control, and reduced inflammation in diabetic patients.

2. **Importance of portal circulation:** One reason that visceral adipose depots may have such a large influence on metabolic dysfunction in obesity is that cytokines secreted by adipose tissue, as well as free fatty acids released from abdominal fat, enter the portal vein and, therefore, have direct access to the liver. Fatty acids

and inflammatory cytokines released from visceral adipose tissue are taken up by the liver. They may lead to insulin resistance (see p. 342) and increased synthesis of triacylglycerols, which are released as very-low-density lipoprotein (VLDL) particles and contribute to hypertriglyceridemia (see p. 353). By contrast, free fatty acids from subcutaneous body adipose depots enter the general circulation where they can be oxidized in muscle and, therefore, reach the liver in lower concentration.

D. Size and number of fat cells

As triacylglycerols are stored, adipocytes can expand to an average of two to three times their normal volume. (Figure 26.3). However, the ability of a fat cell to expand is limited. With prolonged overnutrition, preadipocytes within adipose tissue are stimulated to proliferate and differentiate into mature fat cells, increasing the number of adipocytes. Thus, most obesity is due to a combination of increased fat cell size (hypertrophy) and number (hyperplasia). Like other tissues, the adipose tissue undergoes continuous remodeling. Contrary to early dogma, we now know that adipocytes can die, but it is uncertain how fast this process occurs; some studies estimate that the average age of an adipocyte is 10 years.

Obese individuals can have up to five times the normal number of fat cells. If excess calories cannot be accommodated within adipose tissue, the excess fatty acids 'spillover' into other tissues, such as muscle and liver. The amount of this so-called 'ectopic fat' is strongly associated with insulin resistance. With weight loss in an obese individual, the size of the fat cells is reduced, but the number of fat cells is not usually affected. Thus, a normal body fat is achieved by decreasing the size of the fat cell below normal. Small fat cells are very efficient at reaccumulating fat, and this may drive appetite and weight regain.

III. BODY WEIGHT REGULATION

The body weight of most individuals tends to be relatively stable over time. This observation prompted the hypothesis that each individual has a biologically predetermined "set point" for body weight. The body attempts to add to adipose stores when the body weight falls below the set point, and to lose adipose stores when the body weight is higher than the set point. For example, with weight loss, appetite increases and energy expenditure falls, whereas with overfeeding, appetite falls and energy expenditure may slightly increase (Figure 26.4). However, a strict set point model does not explain why some individuals fail to revert to their starting weight after a period of overeating, or the current epidemic of obesity. It appears that factors in the environment (availability of food and exercise) influence a 'settling point' that is defended. Body weight, rather than being irrevocably set, seems to drift around a "settling point," reflecting a balance between environmental factors that influence food intake and energy expenditure, and biologic factors that control body weight.

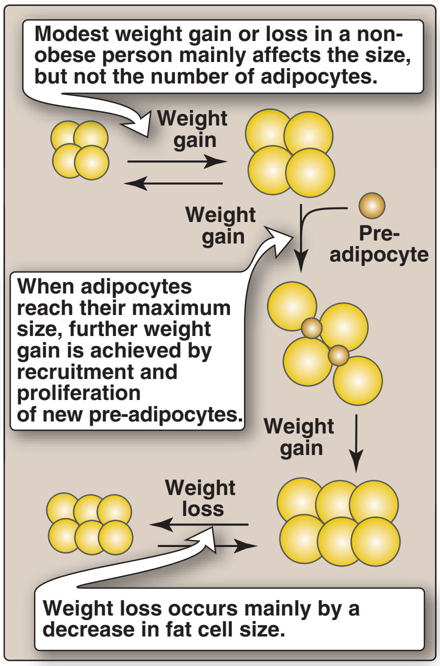

Modest weight gain or loss in a non-obese person mainly affects the size, but not the number of adipocytes.
Weight gain
Weight gain
Pre-adipocyte
When adipocytes reach their maximum size, further weight gain is achieved by recruitment and proliferation of new pre-adipocytes.
Weight gain
Weight loss
Weight loss occurs mainly by a decrease in fat cell size.

Figure 26.3
Hypertrophic and hyperplastic changes are thought to occur in severe obesity.

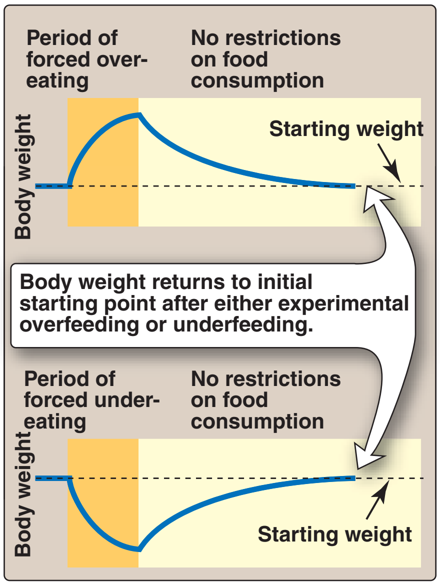


Figure 26.4
Weight changes following episodes of overfeeding or underfeeding followed by feeding with no restrictions.

A. Genetic contributions to obesity

It is now evident that genetic mechanisms play a major role in determining body weight. The importance of genetics as a determinant of obesity is indicated by the observation that children who are adopted usually show a body weight that correlates with their biologic rather than adoptive parents. Furthermore, identical twins have very similar BMI (Figure 26.5), whether reared together or apart, and their BMI are more similar than those of nonidentical, dizygotic twins.

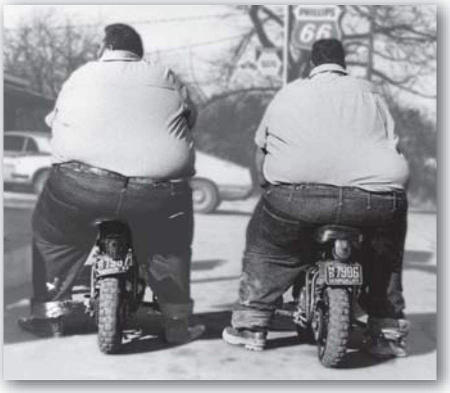


Figure 26.5
Identical twins with combined weight of 1,300 pounds. Note similarity in body shape.

1. **Mutations:** Rare, single gene mutations can cause human obesity. Mutations in the gene for the adipocyte hormone leptin or its receptor produce hyperphagia (increased appetite for and consumption of food) and massive obesity (Figure 26.6), underscoring the importance of the leptin system in regulation of human body weight (section IV). Most obese humans have elevated leptin levels but appear to be resistant to the appetite-regulating effects of this hormone.

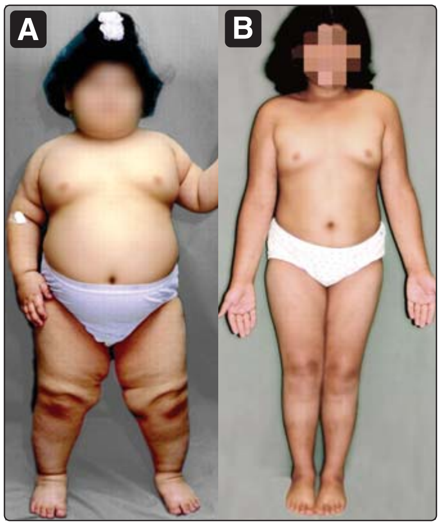


Figure 26.6
A. Patient with leptin deficiency before initiation of therapy at age 5 years. B. Patient at age 9 years after 48 months of therapy with subcutaneous injection of recombinant leptin.

B. Environmental and behavioral contributions

The epidemic of obesity occurring over the last decade cannot be simply explained by changes in genetic factors, which are stable on this short time scale. Clearly, environmental factors, such as the ready availability of palatable, energy-dense foods, play a role in the increased prevalence of obesity. Furthermore, sedentary lifestyles encouraged by TV watching, automobiles, computer usage, and energy-sparing devices in the workplace and at home, decrease physical activity and enhance the tendency to gain weight. Eating behaviors, such as snacking, portion size, variety of foods consumed, an individual’s unique food preferences, and the number of people with whom one eats also influence food consumption. It is important to note, however, that in this same environment, many individuals do not become obese. The susceptibility to obesity appears to be explained, at least in part, by an interaction of an individual's genes and his or her environment, and can be influenced by additional factors such as maternal under- or overnutrition that may ‘set’ the body regulatory systems to defend a higher or lower level of body fat.

IV. MOLECULES THAT INFLUENCE OBESITY

The cause of obesity can be summarized in a deceptively simple statement of the first law of thermodynamics: Obesity results when energy intake exceeds energy expenditure. However, the mechanism underlying this imbalance involves a complex interaction of biochemical, neurologic, environmental, and psychologic factors. The basic neural and humoral pathways that regulate appetite, energy expenditure, and body weight involve systems that regulate short-term food intake (meal to meal), and signals for the long-term (day to day, week to week, year to year) regulation of body weight (Figure 26.7).

A. Long-term signals.

1. **Leptin:** Leptin is an adipocyte hormone that is secreted in proportion to the size of fat stores. When we consume fewer calories than we need, body fat declines and leptin production from the fat cell decreases. The body adapts by minimizing energy utilization (decreasing activity) and increasing appetite, closing the feedback loop that regulates body weight. Unfortunately, in many individuals, the leptin system may be better at preventing weight loss than preventing weight gain. Although a meal or overeating increases leptin and this should, in theory, also dampen appetite and prevent overconsumption of calories, other cues that stimulate appetite can apparently overcome the leptin system in many individuals.

2. **Insulin:** Obese individuals are also hyperinsulinemic. Like leptin, insulin acts on hypothalamic neurons to dampen appetite.

B. Short-term signals.

Short-term signals from the gastrointestinal tract control hunger and satiety, which affect the size and number of meals over a time course of minutes to hours. In the absence of food intake (between meals), the stomach produces ghrelin, an orexigenic (appetite-stimulating) hormone that drives hunger. During a meal, as food is consumed, gut hormones, including cholecystokinin (CCK) and peptide YY (PYY), among others, through actions on the gastric emptying and neural signals to the hypothalamus, cause satiety and meals are terminated. Within the hypothalamus, neuropeptides such as NPY and α-melanocyte stimulating hormone (α-MSH), and neurotransmitters such as serotonin and dopamine are important in regulating hunger and satiety. Long-term and short-term signals interact, as leptin can affect the sensitivity of hypothalamic neurons to short-term signals such as CCK. Thus, there are many and complex regulatory loops that control the size and number of meals in relationship to the status of body fat stores.

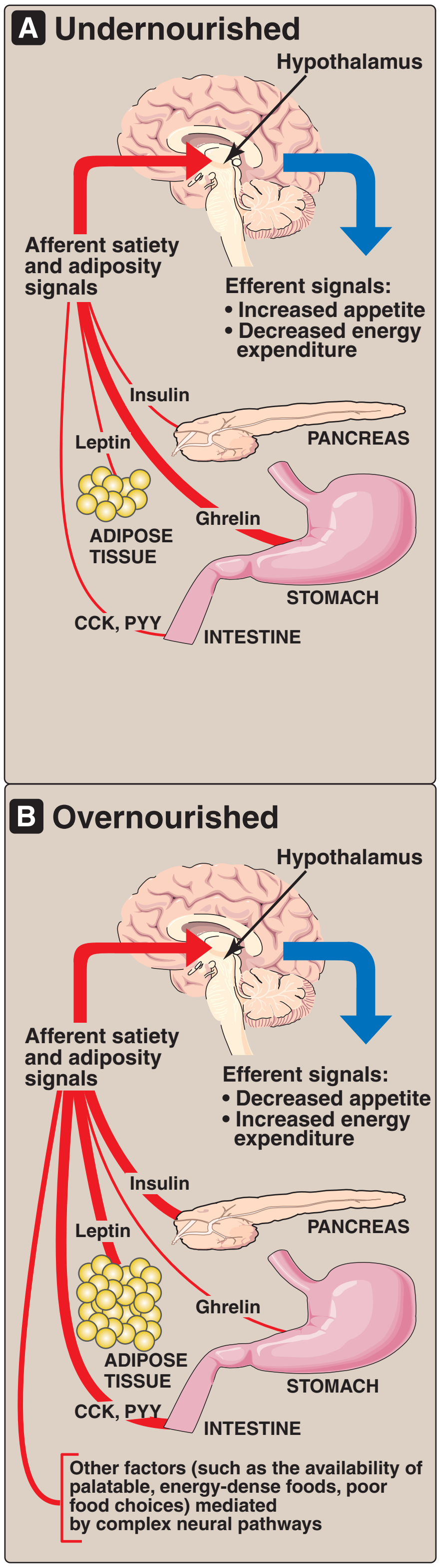

A Undernourished
Hypothalamus
Afferent satiety and adiposity signals
Efferent signals:
• Increased appetite
• Decreased energy expenditure
Insulin
Leptin
PANCREAS
ADIPOSE TISSUE
Ghrelin
STOMACH
CCK, PYY
INTESTINE
B Overnourished
Hypothalamus
Afferent satiety and adiposity signals
Efferent signals:
• Decreased appetite
• Increased energy expenditure
Insulin
Leptin
PANCREAS
ADIPOSE TISSUE
Ghrelin
STOMACH
CCK, PYY
INTESTINE
Other factors (such as the availability of palatable, energy-dense foods, poor food choices) mediated by complex neural pathways

Figure 26.7
Some signals that influence appetite and satiety. CCK = cholecystokinin, PYY = peptide YY.

V. METABOLIC CHANGES OBSERVED IN OBESITY

The primary metabolic effects of obesity include dyslipidemias, glucose intolerance (hyperglycemia below that classified as diabetes, see p. 338), and insulin resistance, expressed primarily in the liver, muscle, and adipose tissue. These metabolic abnormalities reflect molecular signals originating from the increased mass of adipocytes.

A. Metabolic syndrome

Abdominal obesity is associated with a cluster of metabolic abnormalities that is referred to as the metabolic syndrome and includes glucose intolerance, insulin resistance, hyperinsulinemia, dyslipidemia (low high-density lipoprotein (HDL) and elevated triacylglycerols), and hypertension (Figure 26.8). The metabolic syndrome is also associated with a state of chronic systemic inflammation that contributes to the pathogenesis of insulin resistance and atherosclerosis. In obesity, low levels of the adipocyte hormone adiponectin that normally dampens inflammation and sensitizes tissues, especially the liver, to insulin, may contribute to the metabolic syndrome and therefore the risk of type 2 diabetes and heart disease.

VI. OBESITY AND HEALTH

Obesity is correlated with an increased risk of death (Figure 26.9), and is a risk factor for a number of chronic conditions, including type 2 diabetes, dyslipidemias, hypertension, heart disease, some cancers, gallstones, arthritis, gout, and sleep apnea. The relationship between obesity and associated morbidities is stronger among individuals younger than 55 years. After age 74, there is no longer an association between increased BMI and mortality. Weight loss in obese individuals leads to decreased blood pressure, serum triacylglycerols, and blood glucose levels. HDL levels increase.

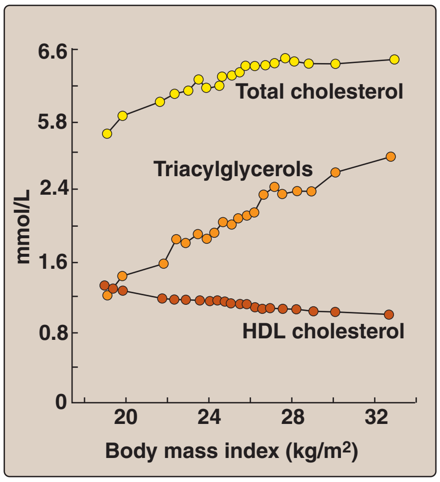


Figure 26.8
Body mass index and changes in blood lipids.

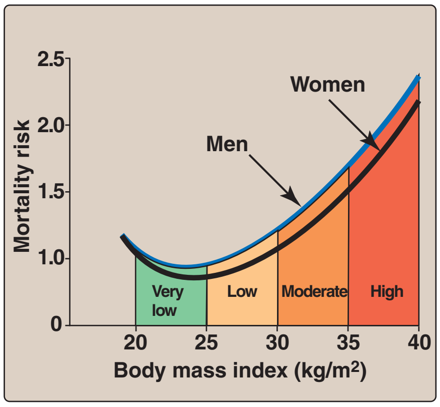


Figure 26.9
Body mass index and the relative risk of death.

VII. WEIGHT REDUCTION

Weight reduction can help reduce the complications of obesity, including diabetes and hypertension. To achieve weight reduction, the obese patient must decrease energy intake or increase energy expenditure, though decreasing energy intake is thought to contribute more to inducing weight loss. Typically, a prescription for weight reduction combines dietary change, increased physical activity, and behavioral modification, which can include nutritional education and meal planning, recording and monitoring food intake through food diaries, modifying factors that lead to overeating, and relearning cues to satiety. Once weight loss is achieved, weight maintenance is a separate process that requires vigilance as the majority of patients regain weight after they stop their weight loss efforts.

A. Physical activity

An increase in physical activity can create an energy deficit. Although adding exercise to a hypocaloric regimen may not produce a greater weight loss initially, exercise is a key component of programs directed at maintaining a weight loss. In addition, physical activity increases cardiopulmonary fitness and reduces the risk of cardiovascular disease, independent of weight loss. Persons who combine caloric restriction and exercise with behavioral treatment may expect to lose about 5–10% of initial body weight over a period of 4–6 months. Studies show that individuals who maintain their exercise program regain less weight after their initial weight loss.

B. Caloric restriction

Dieting is the most commonly practiced approach to weight control. Because 1 pound of adipose tissue corresponds to approximately 3,500 kcal, one can estimate the effect of caloric restriction on the reduction in adipose tissue. Weight loss on calorie-restricted diets is determined primarily by energy intake and not nutrient composition. Caloric restriction is ineffective over the long term for many individuals. More than 90% of people who attempt to lose weight regain the lost weight when dietary intervention is suspended. Nonetheless, it is important to recognize that, although few individuals will reach their ideal weight with treatment, weight losses of

10% of body weight over a 6-month period often reduce blood pressure and lipid levels, and enhance control of type 2 diabetes. The health benefits of relatively small weight losses should, therefore, be emphasized to the patient.

C. Pharmacologic treatment

Several weight-loss medications are currently approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration for use in adults with a BMI of 30 or higher[1]. Their effects on weight reduction tend to be modest, and weight regain upon termination of drug therapy is common.

D. Surgical treatment

Gastric bypass and restriction surgeries are effective in causing weight loss in severely obese individuals. Through mechanisms that remain poorly understood, these operations improve poor blood sugar control in diabetic individuals.

INFO LINK [1] See Chapter 29 in ***Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Pharmacology*** for a more detailed discussion of drugs used to treat obesity.

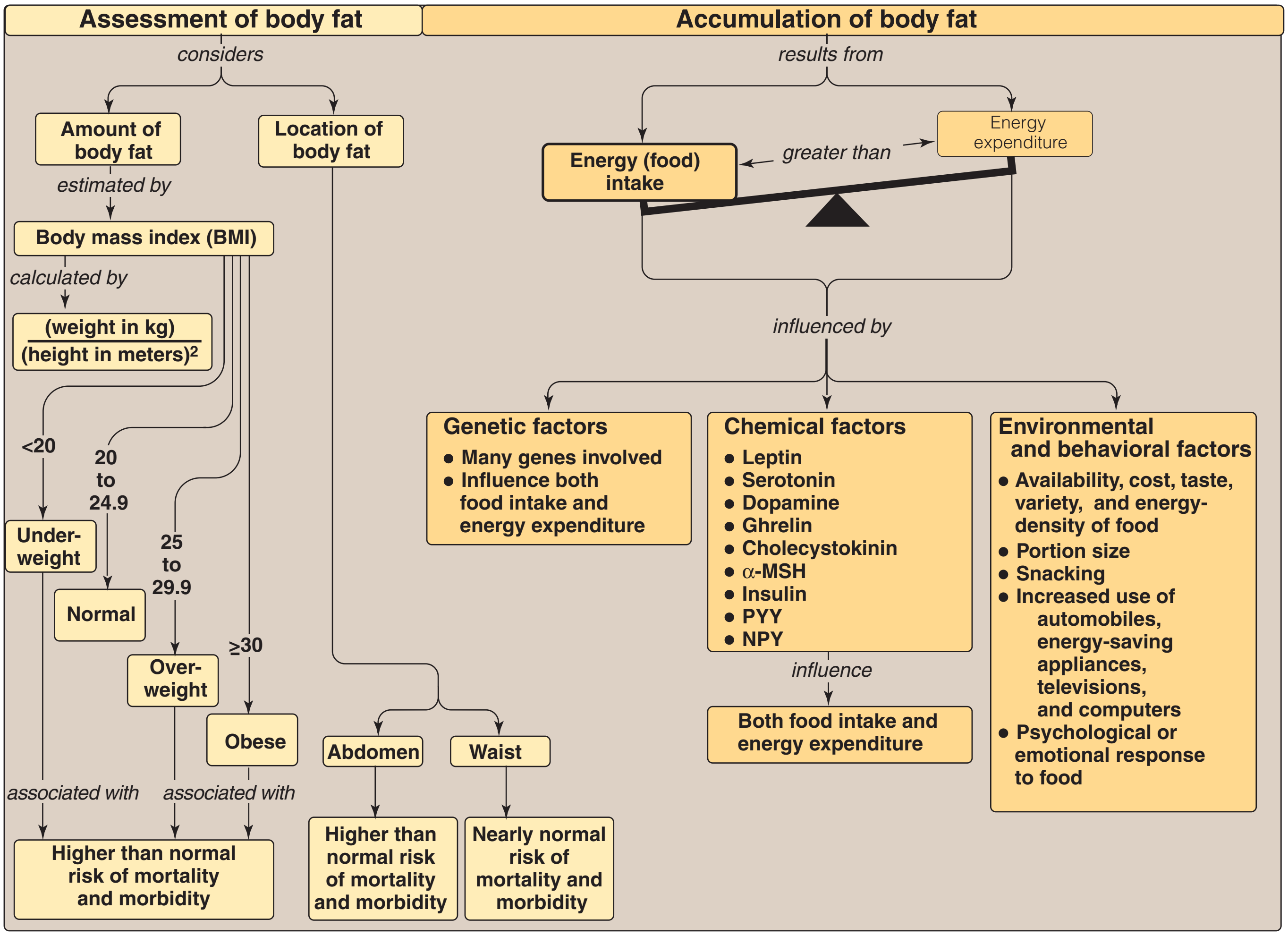

Assessment of body fat
considers
Amount of body fat
Location of body fat
estimated by
Body mass index (BMI)
calculated by
(weight in kg) / (height in meters)²
<20
20 to 24.9
25 to 29.9
≥30
Under-weight
Normal
Over-weight
Obese
associated with
associated with
Higher than normal risk of mortality and morbidity
Abdomen
Waist
Higher than normal risk of mortality and morbidity
Nearly normal risk of mortality and morbidity
Accumulation of body fat
results from
Energy (food) intake
greater than
Energy expenditure
influenced by
Genetic factors
• Many genes involved
• Influence both food intake and energy expenditure
Chemical factors
• Leptin
• Serotonin
• Dopamine
• Ghrelin
• Cholecystokinin
• α-MSH
• Insulin
• PYY
• NPY
influence
Both food intake and energy expenditure
Environmental and behavioral factors
• Availability, cost, taste, variety, and energy-density of food
• Portion size
• Snacking
• Increased use of automobiles, energy-saving appliances, televisions, and computers
• Psychological or emotional response to food

Figure 26.10
Key concept map for obesity.

VIII. CHAPTER SUMMARY

Obesity—the accumulation of excess body fat—results when energy intake exceeds energy expenditure. Obesity is increasing in industrialized countries because of a reduction in daily energy expenditure, and an increase in energy intake resulting from the increasing availability of palatable, inexpensive foods. The **body mass index (BMI)** is easy to determine and highly correlated to body fat. Nearly two thirds of American adults are **overweight** (BMI ≥ 25 kg/m^2) and more than 30% are **obese** (BMI > 30 kg/m^2). The anatomic distribution of body fat has a major influence on associated health risks. Excess fat located in the **central abdominal** area is associated with greater risk for hypertension, insulin resistance, diabetes, dyslipidemia, and coronary heart disease. A person's weight is determined by genetic and environmental factors. **Appetite** is influenced by **afferent**, or incoming, **signals**—neural signals, circulating hormones, and metabolites—that are integrated by the **hypothalamus**. These diverse signals prompt release of hypothalamic peptides and activate outgoing, efferent neural signals. **Obesity** is correlated with an **increased risk of death**, and is a risk factor for a number of chronic conditions. **Weight reduction** is achieved best with negative energy balance, that is, by **decreasing caloric intake**. Virtually all diets that limit particular groups of foods or macronutrients lead to short-term weight loss. Long-term maintenance of weight loss is difficult to achieve. Modest reduction in food intake occurs with **pharmacologic treatment. Surgical procedures** designed to limit food intake are an option for the severely obese patient who has not responded to other treatments.

Study Question

Choose the ONE correct answer.

26.1 A 40-year-old woman, 5 feet, 1 inch (155 cm) tall and weighing 188 pounds (85.5 kg), seeks your advice on how to lose weight. Her waist measured 41 inches and her hips 39 inches. A physical examination and blood laboratory data were all within the normal range. Her only child, who is 14 years old, her sister, and both of her parents are overweight. The patient recalls being obese throughout her childhood and adolescence. Over the past 15 years she had been on seven different diets for periods of 2 weeks to 3 months, losing from 5–25 pounds. On discontinuation of each diet, she regained weight, returning to 185–190 pounds. Which one of the following best describes this patient?

A. She is classified as overweight.
B. She shows an "apple" pattern of fat distribution.
C. She has approximately the same number of fat cells as a normal-weight individual, but each adipocyte is larger.
D. She would be expected to show lower than normal levels of circulating leptin.
E. She would be expected to show lower than normal levels of circulating triacylglycerols.

Correct answer = B. Her waist to hip ratio is 41/39 = 1.05. Apple shape is defined as a waist to hip ratio of more than 0.8 for women, and more than 1.0 for men. She has, therefore, an apple pattern of fat distribution, more commonly seen in males. Compared with other women of the same body weight who have a gynoid fat pattern, the presence of increased visceral or intra-abdominal adipose tissue places her at greater risk for diabetes, hypertension, dyslipidemia, and coronary heart disease. The calculated BMI indicates that the patient is classified as obese. Individuals with marked obesity and a history dating to early childhood have an adipose depot made up of too many adipocytes, each fully loaded with triacylglycerols. Plasma leptin in obese humans is usually normal for their fat mass, suggesting that resistance to leptin, rather than its deficiency, occurs in human obesity. The elevated circulating fatty acids characteristic of obesity are carried to the liver and converted to triacylglycerol and cholesterol. Excess triacylglycerol and cholesterol are released as VLDL, resulting in elevated serum triacylglycerols.

26.2 Calculate the BMI for the patient presented in question 26.1

BMI = weight (kg)/height (m^2) = 85.5/(1.55)^2 = 35.6 kg/m^2.

Nutrition

27

I. OVERVIEW

Nutrients are the constituents of food necessary to sustain the normal functions of the body. All energy is provided by three classes of nutrients: fats, carbohydrates, protein—and in some diets, ethanol (Figure 27.1). The intake of these energy-rich molecules is larger than that of the other dietary nutrients. Therefore, they are called macronutrients. This chapter focuses on the kinds and amounts of macronutrients that are needed to maintain optimal health and prevent chronic disease in adults. Those nutrients needed in lesser amounts, vitamins and minerals, are called micronutrients, and are considered in Chapter 28.

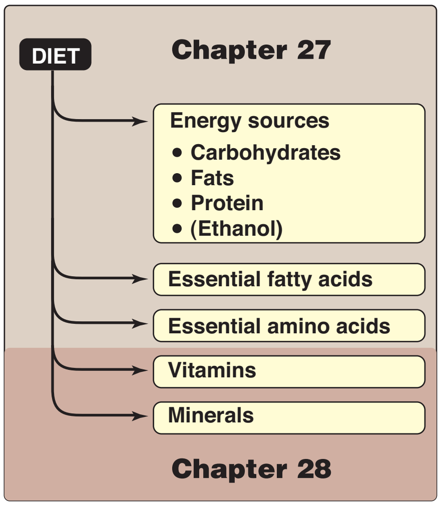


Figure 27.1
Essential nutrients obtained from the diet. [Note: Ethanol is not considered an essential component of the diet but may provide a significant contribution to the daily caloric intake of some individuals.]

II. DIETARY REFERENCE INTAKES

Committees of U.S. and Canadian experts organized by the Food and Nutrition Board of the National Academy of Sciences have compiled Dietary Reference Intakes (DRI)—estimates of the amounts of nutrients required to prevent deficiencies and maintain optimal health and growth. The DRIs replace and expand on the Recommended Dietary Allowances (RDA), which have been published with periodic revisions since 1941. Unlike the RDA, the DRI establish upper limits on the consumption of some nutrients, and incorporate the role of nutrients in lifelong health, going beyond deficiency diseases. Both the DRI and the RDA refer to long-term average daily nutrient intakes, because it is not necessary to consume the full RDA every day.

A. Definition of the DRI

The DRI consist of four dietary reference standards for the intake of nutrients designated for specific age groups, physiologic states, and gender (Figure 27.2).

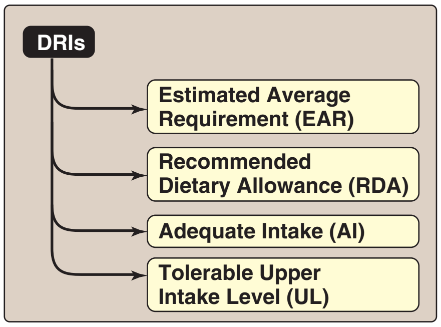

DRIs
Estimated Average Requirement (EAR)
Recommended Dietary Allowance (RDA)
Adequate Intake (AI)
Tolerable Upper Intake Level (UL)

Figure 27.2
Components of the Dietary Reference Intakes (DRIs).

1. **Estimated Average Requirement (EAR):** The EAR is the average daily nutrient intake level estimated to meet the requirement of one half of the healthy individuals in a particular life stage and gender group. It is useful in estimating the actual requirements in groups and individuals.

2. **Recommended Dietary Allowance (RDA):** The RDA is the average daily dietary intake level that is sufficient to meet the nutrient requirements of nearly all (97–98%) the individuals in a life stage and gender group. The RDA is not the minimal requirement for healthy individuals; rather, it is intentionally set to provide a margin of safety for most individuals. The EAR serves as the foundation for setting the RDA. If the standard deviation (SD) of the EAR

is available and the requirement for the nutrient is normally distributed, the RDA is set at 2 SDs above the EAR, that is, RDA = EAR + $2SD_{EAR}$.

3. **Adequate Intake (AI):** The AI is set instead of an RDA if sufficient scientific evidence is not available to calculate an EAR or RDA. The AI is based on estimates of nutrient intake by a group (or groups) of apparently healthy people that are assumed to be adequate. For example, the AI for young infants, for whom human milk is the recommended sole source of food for the first 4–6 months, is based on the estimated daily mean nutrient intake supplied by human milk for healthy, full-term infants who are exclusively breast-fed.

4. **Tolerable Upper Intake Level (UL):** The UL is the highest average daily nutrient intake level that is likely to pose no risk of adverse health effects to almost all individuals in the general population. As intake increases above the UL, the potential risk of adverse effects may increase. The UL is not intended to be a recommended level of intake. The UL are useful because of the increased availability of fortified foods and the increased use of dietary supplements. The UL applies to chronic daily use. For some nutrients, there may be insufficient data on which to develop a UL.

B. Using the DRI

Most nutrients have a set of DRI (Figure 27.3). Usually a nutrient has an EAR and a corresponding RDA. Most are set by age and gender, and may be influenced by special factors, such as pregnancy and lactation in women. When the data are not sufficient to estimate an EAR (or an RDA), then an AI is designated. The AI is judged by experts to meet the needs of all healthy individuals in a group, but is based on less data than an EAR and RDA. Intakes below the EAR need to be improved because the probability of adequacy is 50% or less (Figure 27.4). Intakes between the EAR and RDA likely need to be improved because the probability of adequacy is less than 98%, and intakes at or above the RDA can be considered adequate. Intake above the AI can be considered adequate. Intakes between the UL and the RDA can be considered to have no risk for adverse effects.

NUTRIENT	EAR, RDA or AI	UL
Thiamine	EAR, RDA	—
Riboflavin	EAR, RDA	—
Niacin	EAR, RDA	UL
Vitamin B_6	EAR, RDA	UL
Folate	EAR, RDA	UL
Vitamin B_{12}	EAR, RDA	—
Pantothenic acid	AI	—
Biotin	AI	—
Choline	AI	UL
Vitamin C	EAR, RDA	UL
Vitamin A	EAR, RDA	UL
Vitamin D	AI	UL
Vitamin E	EAR, RDA	UL
Vitamin K	AI	—
Boron	—	UL
Calcium	AI	UL
Chromium	AI	—
Copper	EAR, RDA	UL
Fluoride	AI	UL
Iodine	EAR, RDA	UL
Iron	EAR, RDA	UL
Magnesium	EAR, RDA	UL
Manganese	AI	UL
Molybdenum	EAR, RDA	UL
Nickel	—	UL
Phosphorus	EAR, RDA	UL
Selenium	EAR, RDA	UL
Vanadium	—	UL
Zinc	EAR, RDA	UL

Figure 27.3
Dietary Reference Intakes for vitamins and minerals in individuals one year and older. EAR = Estimated Average Requirement; RDA = Recommended Dietary Allowance; AI = Adequate Intake; UL = Tolerable Upper Intake Level; — = no value established.

III. ENERGY REQUIREMENT IN HUMANS

The Estimated Energy Requirement is the average dietary energy intake predicted to maintain an energy balance (that is, when the calories consumed are equal to the energy expended) in a healthy adult of a defined age, gender, and height whose weight and level of physical activity are consistent with good health. Differences in the genetics, body composition, metabolism, and behavior of individuals make it difficult to accurately predict a person's caloric requirements. However, some simple approximations can provide useful estimates. For example, sedentary adults require about 30 kcal/kg/day to maintain body weight; moderately active adults require 35 kcal/kg/day; and very active adults require 40 kcal/kg/day. [Note: The daily average requirement for energy that is listed on food labels is either 2,000 or 2,500 kcal/day.]

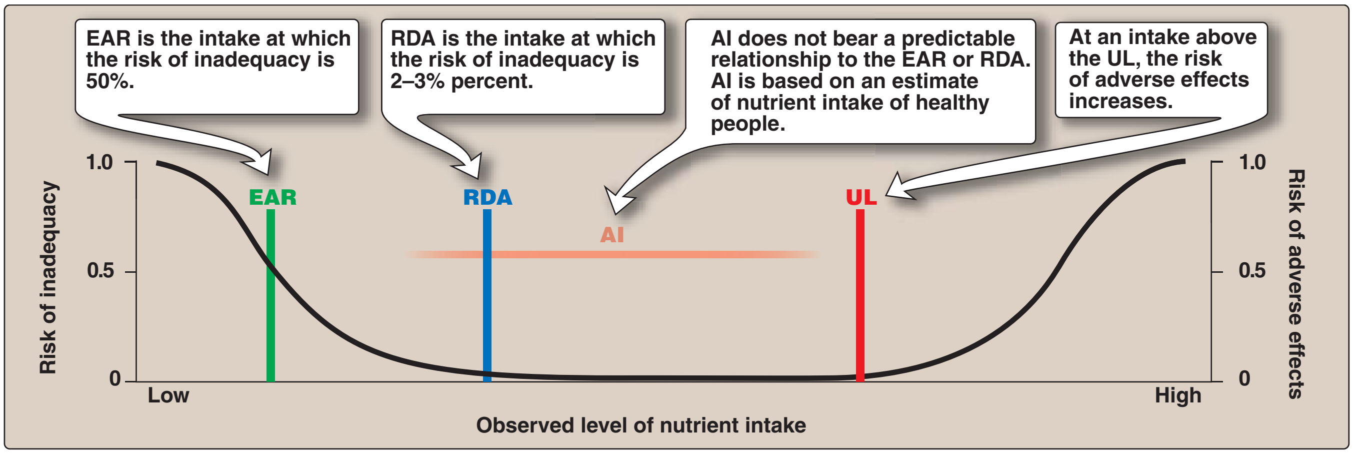


Figure 27.4
Comparison of the components of the Dietary Reference Intakes. EAR = Estimated Average Requirement; RDA = Recommended Dietary Allowance; AI = Adequate Intake; UL = Tolerable Upper Intake Level.

A. Energy content of food

The energy content of food is calculated from the heat released by the total combustion of food in a calorimeter. It is expressed in kilocalories (kcal, or Cal). The standard conversion factors for determining the metabolic caloric value of fat, protein, and carbohydrate are shown in Figure 27.5. Note that the energy content of fat is more than twice that of carbohydrate or protein, whereas the energy content of ethanol is intermediate between those of fat and carbohydrate. [Note: The joule is a unit of energy widely used in countries other than the United States. For uniformity, many scientists are promoting the use of joules (J), rather than calories. One cal = 4.2 J; 1 Cal (1 kcal, 1 food calorie) = 4.2 kJ. However, kcal still predominates and is used throughout this text.]

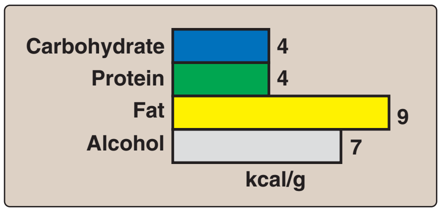


Figure 27.5
Average energy available from the major food components.

B. How energy is used in the body

The energy generated by metabolism of the macronutrients is used for three energy-requiring processes that occur in the body: resting metabolic rate, thermic effect of food (formerly termed specific dynamic action), and physical activity.

1. **Resting metabolic rate:** The energy expended by an individual in a resting, postabsorptive state is called the resting (formerly, basal) metabolic rate (RMR). It represents the energy required to carry out the normal body functions, such as respiration, blood flow, ion transport, and maintenance of cellular integrity. In an adult, the RMR is about 1,800 kcal for men (70 kg) and 1,300 kcal for women (50 kg). From 50–70% of the daily energy expenditure in sedentary individuals is attributable to the RMR (Figure 27.6).

2. **Thermic effect of food:** The production of heat by the body increases as much as 30% above the resting level during the digestion and absorption of food. This effect is called the thermic effect of food or diet-induced thermogenesis. Over a 24–hour period, the thermic response to food intake may amount to 5–10% of the total energy expenditure.

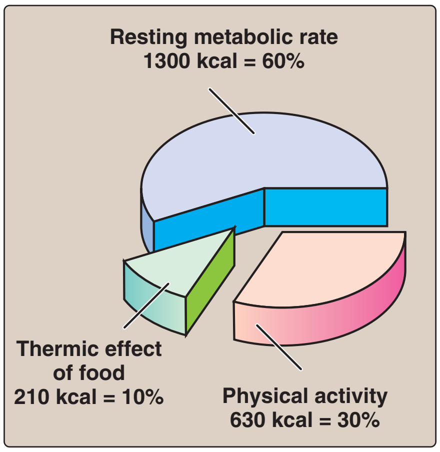


Figure 27.6
Estimated total energy expenditure in a typical 20-year-old woman, 165 cm (5 feet, 4 inches) tall, weighing 50 kg (110 lb), and engaged in light activity.

MACRONUTRIENT	RANGE (percent of energy)
Fat	20–35
ω–6 Polyunsaturated fatty acids	5–10
ω–3 Polyunsaturated fatty acids	0.6–1.2*
(Approximately 10% of the total fat can come from longer-chain, ω–3 or ω–6 fatty acids.)	
Carbohydrate	45–65
● No less than 130 g/day	
(No more than 25% of total calories should come from added sugars.)	
Fiber	
● Men: 38 g	
● Women: 25 g	
Protein	10–35

Figure 27.7
Acceptable macronutrient distribution ranges in adults. *A growing body of evidence suggests that higher levels of ω–3 polyunsaturated fatty acids provide protection against coronary heart disease.

3. **Physical activity:** Muscular activity provides the greatest variation in energy expenditure. The amount of energy consumed depends on the duration and intensity of the exercise. The daily expenditure of energy can be estimated by carefully recording the type and duration of all activities. In general, a sedentary person requires about 30–50% more than the resting caloric requirement for energy balance (see Figure 27.6), whereas a highly active individual may require 100% or more calories above the RMR.

IV. ACCEPTABLE MACRONUTRIENT DISTRIBUTION RANGES

Acceptable Macronutrient Distribution Ranges (AMDR) are defined as a range of intakes for a particular macronutrient that is associated with reduced risk of chronic disease while providing adequate amounts of essential nutrients. The AMDR for adults is 45–65% of their total calories from carbohydrates, 20–35% from fat, and 10–35% from protein (Figure 27.7). Note that there is a range of acceptable intakes for the macronutrients. The biologic properties of dietary fat, carbohydrate, and protein are described below.

V. DIETARY FATS

The incidence of a number of chronic diseases is significantly influenced by the kinds and amounts of nutrients consumed (Figure 27.8). Dietary fats most strongly influence the incidence of coronary heart disease (CHD); evidence linking dietary fat and the risk for cancer or obesity is much weaker.

In the past, dietary recommendations emphasized decreasing the total amount of fat and cholesterol in the diet. Research now indicates that the type of fat is more important than the total amount of fat consumed.

A. Plasma lipids and CHD

Plasma cholesterol may arise from the diet or from endogenous biosynthesis. In either case, cholesterol is transported between the tissues in combination with protein and phospholipids as lipoproteins.

1. **Low-density lipoprotein (LDL) and high-density lipoprotein (HDL):** The level of plasma cholesterol is not precisely regulated, but rather varies in response to the diet. Elevated levels result in an increased risk for CHD (Figure 27.9). The risk increases progressively with higher values for serum total cholesterol. A much stronger correlation exists between the levels of blood LDL cholesterol and heart disease (see p. 232) In contrast, high levels of HDL cholesterol have been associated with a decreased risk for heart disease (see p. 235). Abnormal levels of plasma lipids (dyslipidemias) act in combination with smoking, obesity, seden-

tary lifestyle, insulin resistance, and other risk factors to increase the risk of CHD. Elevated plasma triacylglycerols are also a risk factor for CHD, but the association is weaker than that of LDL cholesterol with CHD.

2. **Beneficial effect of lowering plasma cholesterol:** Clinical trials have demonstrated that dietary or drug treatment of hypercholesterolemia is effective in decreasing LDL, increasing HDL, and reducing the risk for cardiovascular events. The diet-induced changes of plasma lipoprotein concentrations are modest, typically 10–20%, whereas treatment with “statin” drugs[1] decreases plasma cholesterol by 30–60% (see p. 224).

B. Dietary fats and plasma lipids

Triacylglycerols are quantitatively the most important class of dietary fats. The influence of triacylglycerols on blood lipids is determined by the chemical nature of their constituent fatty acids. The absence or presence and number of double bonds (saturated vs. mono- and polyunsaturated), the location of the double bonds (ω-6 vs ω-3), and the cis vs. trans configuration of the unsaturated fatty acids are the most important structural features that influence blood lipids.

1. **Saturated fat:** Triacylglycerols composed primarily of fatty acids whose hydrocarbon chains do not contain any double bonds are referred to as saturated fats. Consumption of saturated fats is positively associated with high levels of total plasma cholesterol and LDL cholesterol, and an increased risk of CHD. The main sources of saturated fatty acids are dairy and meat products and some vegetable oils, such as coconut and palm oils (a major source of fat in Latin America and Asia, although not in the United States, Figure 27.10). Most experts strongly advise limiting intake of saturated fats.

> Saturated fatty acids with carbon chain lengths of 14 (myristic) and 16 (palmitic) are most potent in increasing the serum cholesterol. Stearic acid (18 carbons—found in many foods including chocolate) has little effect on blood cholesterol.

2. **Monounsaturated fats:** Triacylglycerols containing primarily fatty acids with one double bond are referred to as monounsaturated fat. Unsaturated fatty acids are generally derived from vegetables and fish. When substituted for saturated fatty acids in the diet, monounsaturated fats lower both total plasma cholesterol and LDL cholesterol, but maintain or increase HDL cholesterol. This ability of monounsaturated fats to favorably modify lipoprotein levels may explain, in part, the observation that Mediterranean cultures, with diets rich in olive oil (high in monounsaturated oleic acid), show a low incidence of CHD.

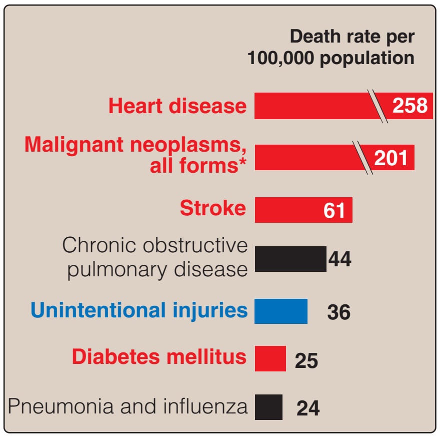


Figure 27.8
Influence of nutrition on some common causes of death in the United States in the year 2000. Red indicates causes of death in which the diet plays a significant role. Blue indicates causes of death in which excessive alcohol consumption plays a part. (*Diet plays a role in only some forms of cancer.)

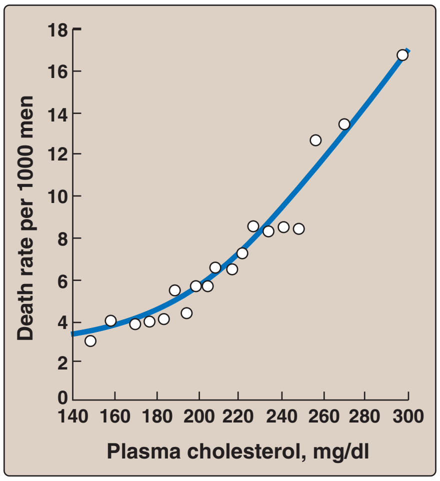


Figure 27.9
Correlation of the death rate from coronary heart disease with the concentration of plasma cholesterol. [Note: The data were obtained from a 6 year study of men with the death rate adjusted for age.]

---

[1] See Chapter 21 in ***Lippincott’s Illustrated Reviews: Pharmacology*** for a more detailed discussion of antihyperlipidemic drugs.

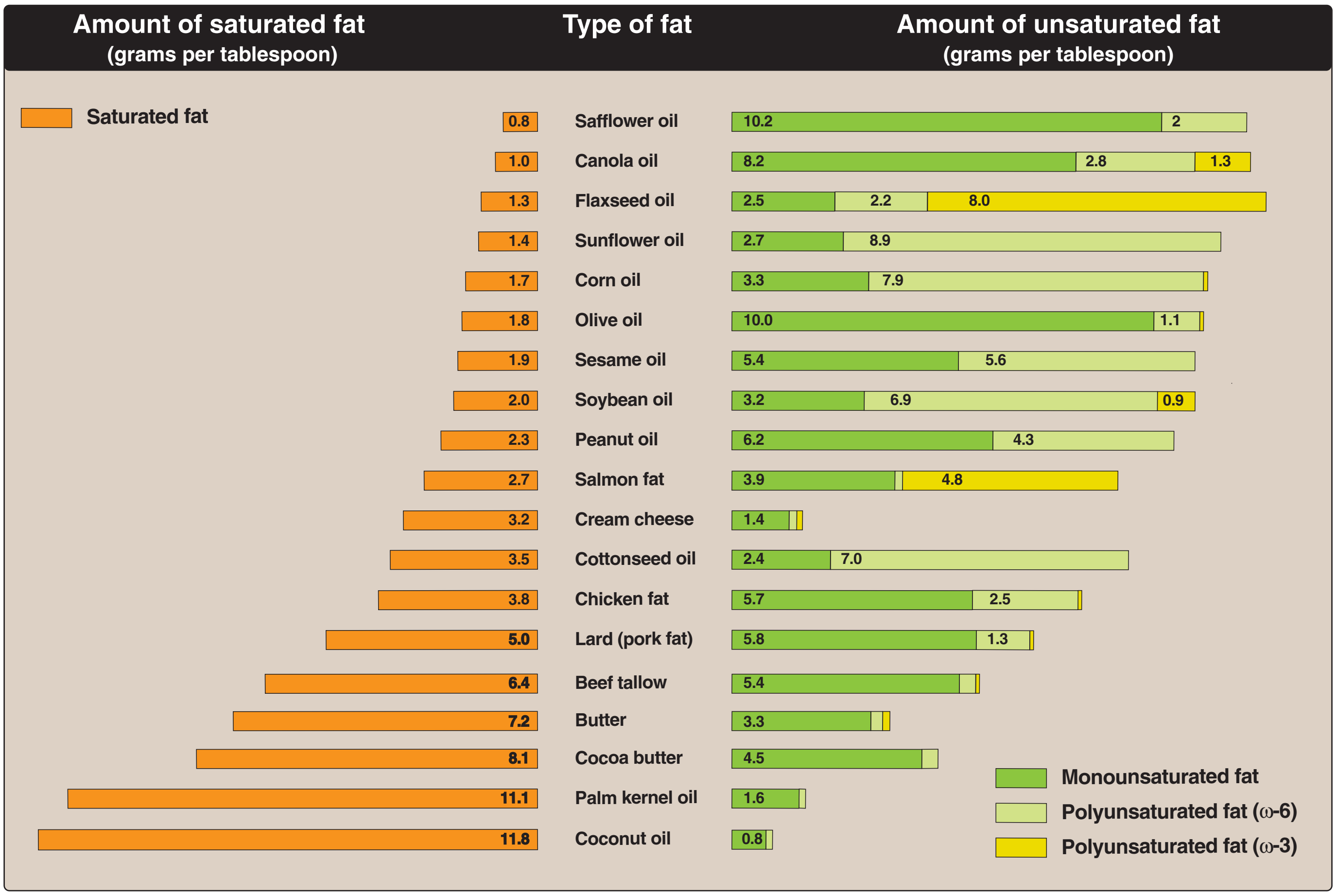


Figure 27.10
Compositions of commonly encountered dietary lipids.

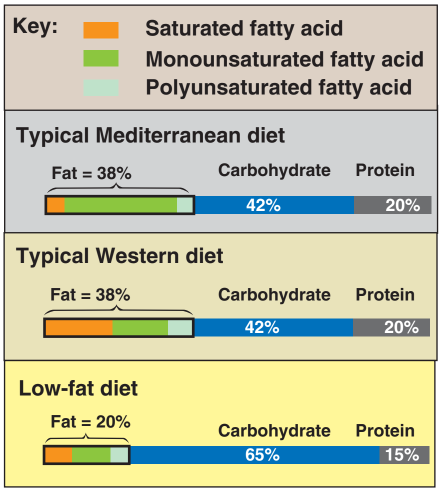
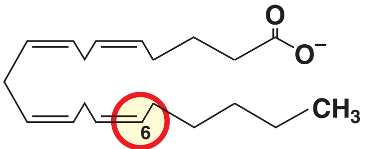


Figure 27.11
Composition of typical Mediterranean, Western, and low-fat diets.

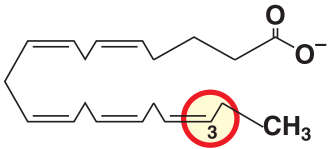
a. **The Mediterranean diet:** The Mediterranean diet is an example of a diet rich in monounsaturated fatty acids or MUFAs (from olive oil) and ω-3 fatty acids (from fish oils and some nuts), but low in saturated fat. For example, Figure 27.11 shows the composition of the Mediterranean diet in comparison with both a Western diet similar to that consumed in the United States and a typical low-fat diet. The Mediterranean diet contains seasonally fresh food, with an abundance of plant material, low amounts of red meat, and olive oil as the principal source of fat. The Mediterranean diet is associated with decreased serum total cholesterol and LDL cholesterol—but little change in HDL cholesterol—when compared with a typical Western diet higher in saturated fats. Plasma triacylglycerols are unchanged.

3. **Polyunsaturated fats:** Triacylglycerols containing primarily fatty acids with more than one double bond are referred to as polyunsaturated fats. The effects of polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs) on cardiovascular disease is influenced by the location of the double bonds within the molecule.

a. ω-6 Fatty acids: These are long-chain, PUFAs, with the first double bond beginning at the sixth bond position when starting from the methyl end of the fatty acid molecule.



Arachidonic acid
(20:4, ω-6)
found in seed oils



Eicosapentaenoic acid (EPA)
(20:5, ω-3)
found in fish oils

[Note: They are also called n-6 fatty acids (see p. 183).] Consumption of fats containing ω-6 PUFAs, principally linoleic acid, 18:2(9,12), obtained from vegetable oils, lowers plasma cholesterol when substituted for saturated fats. Plasma LDL are lowered, but HDL, which protect against CHD, are also lowered. The powerful benefits of lowering LDL are only partially offset because of the decreased HDL. Nuts, avocados, olives, soybeans, and various oils, including sesame, cottonseed, and corn oil, are common sources of these fatty acids (see Figure 27.10). Linoleic acid, along with α-linolenic acid, 18:3(9,12,15), an ω-3 fatty acid (see below), are essential fatty acids required for fluidity of membrane structure and synthesis of eicosanoids (see p. 213). [Note: A deficiency of essential fatty acids is characterized by scaly dermatitis, hair loss, and poor wound healing.] A lower boundary level of 5% of calories meets the AI set for linoleic acid. An upper boundary for linoleic acid is set at 10% of total calories because of concern that oxidation of these polyunsaturated fatty acids may lead to deleterious products.

b. ω-3 Fatty acids: These are long-chain, PUFAs, with the first double bond beginning at the third bond position from the methyl end. Dietary ω-3 polyunsaturated fats suppress cardiac arrhythmias, reduce serum triacylglycerols, decrease the tendency for thrombosis, lower blood pressure, and substantially reduce risk of cardiovascular mortality (Figure 27.12), but they have little effect on LDL or HDL cholesterol levels. The ω-3 polyunsatyrated fats, principally α-linolenic acid, 18:3(9,12,15), are found in plants. The acceptable range for α-linolenic acid is 0.6-1.2% of total calories. Fish oil contains the long-chain, ω-3 docosahexaenoic acid (DHA) and eicosapentaenoic acid (EPA). Two fatty fish (for example, salmon) meals per week are recommended. [Note: The ω-3 long-chain PUFAs are included in infant formulas to promote brain development.]

4. Trans fatty acids: Trans fatty acids (Figure 27.13) are chemically classified as unsaturated fatty acids, but behave more like saturated fatty acids in the body, that is, they elevate serum LDL (but not HDL), and they increase the risk of CHD. Trans fatty acids do not occur naturally in plants, but occur in small amounts in ani-

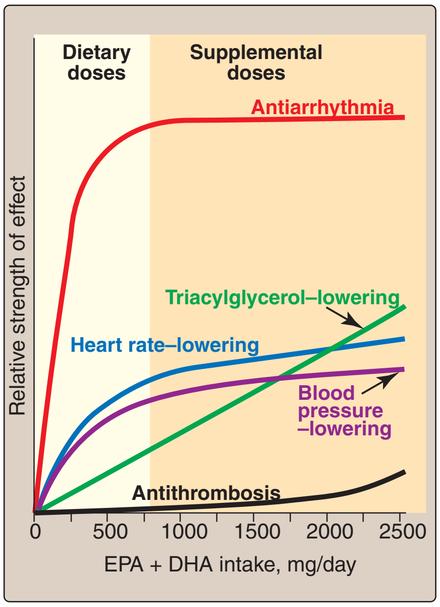


Figure 27.12
Dose responses of physiologic effects of fish oil intake.

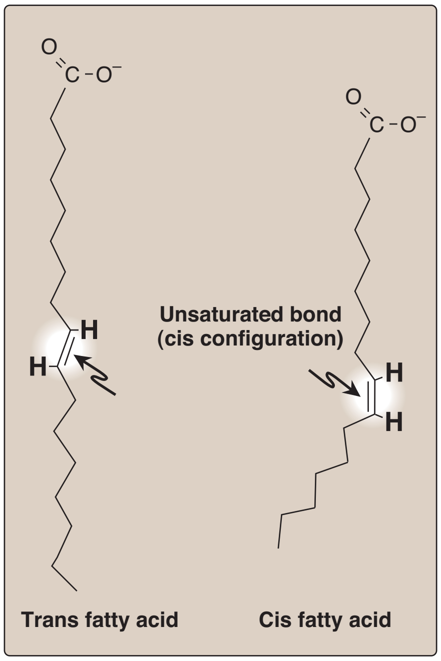


Figure 27.13
Structure of cis and trans fatty acids.

mals. However, trans fatty acids are formed during the hydrogenation of liquid vegetable oils, for example, in the manufacture of margarine and partially hydrogenated vegetable oil. Trans fatty acids are a major component of many commercial baked goods, such as cookies and cakes, and most deep-fried foods. Many manufacturers have reformulated their products to be free of trans fats. Starting in 2006, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration requires that Nutrition Facts labels portray trans fat content. Some municipalities, for example, New York City, have banned the use of trans fats in restaurants.

5. **Dietary cholesterol:** Cholesterol is found only in animal products. The effect of dietary cholesterol on plasma cholesterol (Figure 27.14) is less important than the amount and types of fatty acids consumed.

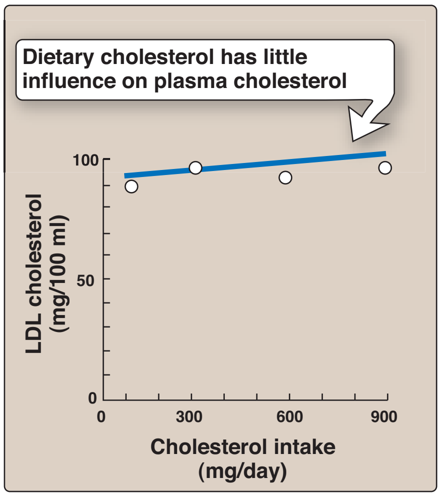


Figure 27.14
Response of plasma LDL concentrations to an increase in dietary cholesterol intake.

C. Other dietary factors affecting CHD

Moderate consumption of alcohol (for example, two drinks a day) decreases the risk of CHD, because there is a positive correlation between moderate alcohol consumption and the plasma concentration of HDL. However, because of the potential dangers of alcohol abuse, health professionals are reluctant to recommend increased alcohol consumption to their patients. Red wine may provide cardioprotective benefits in addition to those resulting from its alcohol content, for example, red wine contains phenolic compounds that inhibit lipoprotein oxidation (see p. 235). [Note: These antioxidants are also present in raisins and grape juice.] Figure 27.15 summarizes the effects of dietary fats.

TYPE OF FAT	METABOLIC EFFECTS	EFFECTS ON DISEASE PREVENTION
Trans fatty acid	**↑ LDL ↓ HDL**	**↑ Incidence of coronary heart disease**
Saturated fatty acid	**↑ LDL Little effect on HDL**	**↑ Incidence of coronary heart disease; may increase risk of prostate, colon cancer**
Monounsaturated fatty acid	**↓ LDL ↓ HDL**	**↓ Incidence of coronary heart disease**
Polyunsaturated fatty acids ω–6	**↓ LDL ↓ HDL** **Provide arachidonic acid which is an important precursor of prostaglandins and leukotrienes**	**↓ Incidence of coronary heart disease**
Polyunsaturated fatty acids ω–3	**Little effect on LDL Little effect on HDL** **Suppress cardiac arrhythmias, reduce serum triacylglycerols, decrease the tendency for thrombosis, lower blood pressure**	**↓ Incidence of coronary heart disease** **↓ Risk of sudden cardiac death**

Figure 27.15
Effects of dietary fats.

VI. DIETARY CARBOHYDRATES

The primary role of dietary carbohydrate is to provide energy. Although caloric intake in the United States has shown a modest increase since 1971, the incidence of obesity has dramatically increased (see p. 349). During this same period, carbohydrate consumption has significantly increased, leading some observers to link obesity with carbohydrate consumption. However, obesity has also been related to increasingly inactive lifestyles, and to calorie-dense foods served in expanded portion size. Carbohydrates are not inherently fattening.

A. Classification of carbohydrates

Carbohydrates in the diet are classified as either monosaccharides and disaccharides (simple sugars), polysaccharides (complex sugars), or fiber.

1. **Monosaccharides:** Glucose and fructose are the principal monosaccharides found in food. Glucose is abundant in fruits, sweet corn, corn syrup, and honey. Free fructose is found together with free glucose and sucrose in honey and fruits.

   a. **High fructose corn syrup:** High-fructose corn syrups (HFCS) are corn syrups that have undergone enzymatic processing to convert their glucose into fructose and have then been mixed with pure corn syrup (100% glucose) to produce a desired sweetness. In the United States, HFCS 55 (containing 55% fructose and 42% glucose) is commonly used as a substitute for sucrose in beverages, including soft drinks, with HFCS 42 used in processed foods. The composition and metabolism of HFCS and sucrose are similar, the major difference being that HFCS is ingested as a mixture of monosaccharides (Figure 27.16). Most studies have shown no significant difference between sucrose and HFCS syrup meals in either postprandial glucose or insulin responses.

2. **Disaccharides:** The most abundant disaccharides are sucrose (glucose + fructose), lactose (glucose + galactose), and maltose (glucose + glucose). Sucrose is ordinary "table sugar," and is abundant in molasses and maple syrup. Lactose is the principal sugar found in milk. Maltose is a product of enzymic digestion of polysaccharides. It is also found in significant quantities in beer and malt liquors. The term "sugar" refers to monosaccharides and disaccharides. "Added sugars" are those sugars and syrups added to foods during processing or preparation.

3. **Polysaccharides:** Complex carbohydrates are polysaccharides (most often polymers of glucose), which do not have a sweet taste. Starch is an example of a complex carbohydrate that is found in abundance in plants. Common sources include wheat and other grains, potatoes, dried peas and beans, and vegetables.

4. **Fiber:** Dietary fiber is defined as the nondigestible carbohydrates and lignin (a complex polymer of phenylpropanoid subunits) present intact in plants. Several different terms are used to

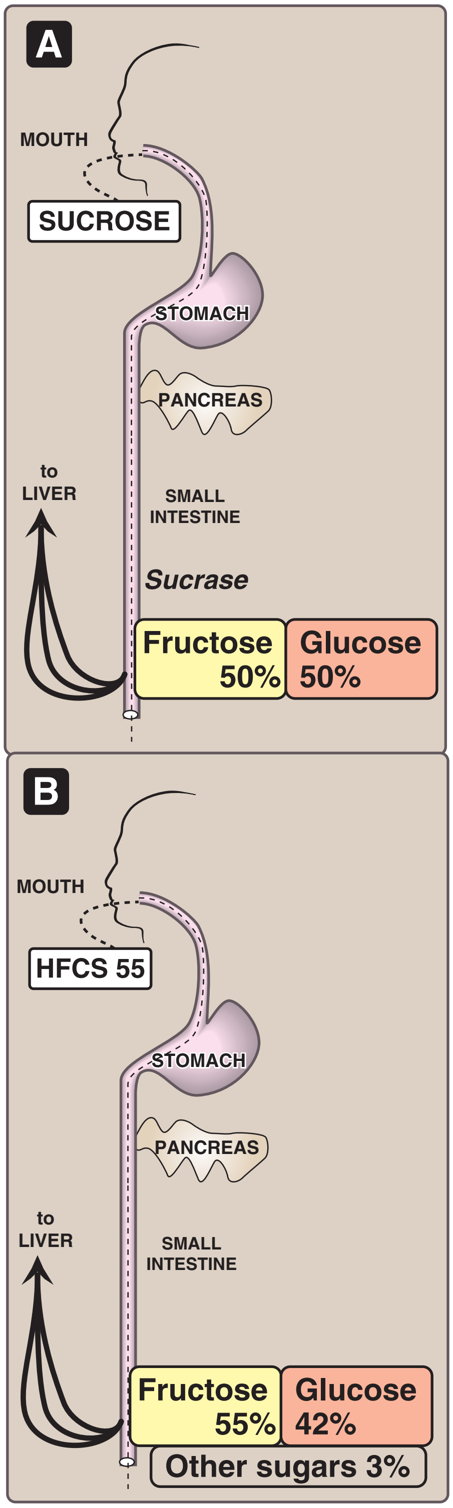


Figure 27.16
Digestion of HFCS 55 or sucrose leads to absorption of glucose plus fructose.

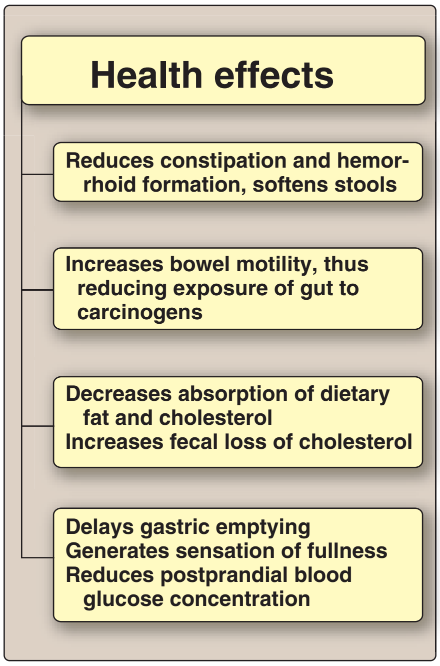

Health effects
Reduces constipation and hemorrhoid formation, softens stools
Increases bowel motility, thus reducing exposure of gut to carcinogens
Decreases absorption of dietary fat and cholesterol
Increases fecal loss of cholesterol
Delays gastric emptying
Generates sensation of fullness
Reduces postprandial blood glucose concentration

Figure 27.17
Actions of dietary fiber.

describe this complex group of compounds. For example, functional fiber is the isolated, extracted, or synthetic fiber that has proven health benefits. Total fiber is the sum of dietary fiber and functional fiber. Soluble fiber is the edible parts of plants that is resistant to digestion and absorption in the human small intestine, but is completely or partially fermented to short-chain fatty acids in the large intestine. Insoluble fiber passes through the digestive track largely intact. Dietary fiber provides little energy but has several beneficial effects. First, it adds bulk to the diet (Figure 27.17). Fiber can absorb 10–15 times its own weight in water, drawing fluid into the lumen of the intestine and increasing bowel motility. Soluble fiber delays gastric emptying and can result in a sensation of fullness. This delayed emptying also results in reduced peaks of blood glucose following a meal. Second, consumption of soluble fiber has now been shown to lower LDL cholesterol levels by increasing fecal bile acid excretion and interfering with bile acid absorption. For example, diets rich (25–50 g/day) in the soluble fiber oat bran are associated with a modest, but significant, reduction in risk for cardiovascular disease by lowering total and LDL cholesterol levels. Also, fiber-rich diets decrease the risk for constipation, hemorrhoids, and diverticulosis. The recommended daily fiber intake (AI) is 25 g/day for women and 38 g/day for men. However, most American diets are far lower in fiber—approximately 15 g/day.

B. Dietary carbohydrate and blood glucose

Some carbohydrate-containing foods produce a rapid rise followed by a steep fall in blood glucose concentration, whereas others result in a gradual rise followed by a slow decline—they differ in their glycemic response. The glycemic index (GI) quantitates these differences in the time course of postprandial glucose concentrations (Figure 27.18). Glycemic index is defined as the area under the blood glucose curves seen after ingestion of a meal with carbohydrate-rich food, compared with the area under the blood glucose curve observed after a meal consisting of the same amount (50g) of carbohydrate either as glucose or white bread. The clinical importance of glycemic index is controversial. Food with a low glycemic index tends to create a sense of satiety over a longer period of time, and may be helpful in limiting caloric intake. [Note: How much a typical serving size of a food raises blood glucose is referred to as the glycemic load (GL). A food, for example, carrots, can have a high GI and a low GL.]

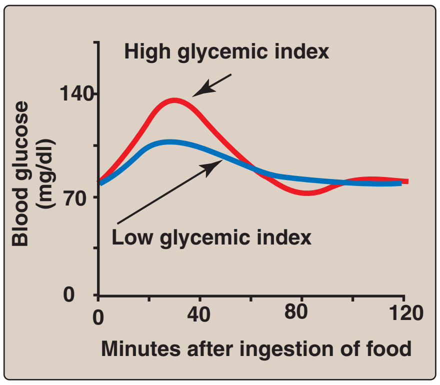


Figure 27.18
Blood glucose concentrations following ingestion of food with low or high glycemic index.

> Many experts assert that high nutrient and fiber content, such as occurs in whole grains, fruits, and vegetables, is a better guide than glycemic index for selecting dietary carbohydrates.

C. Requirements for carbohydrate

Carbohydrates are not essential nutrients, because the carbon skeletons of most amino acids can be converted into glucose (see p. 261). However, the absence of dietary carbohydrate leads to ketone body production (see p. 262), and degradation of body protein whose constituent amino acids provide carbon skeletons for gluconeogenesis (see p. 118). The RDA for carbohydrate is set at 130 g/day for adults and children, based on the amount of glucose used by carbohydrate-dependent tissues, such as the brain and erythrocytes. However, this level of intake is usually exceeded to meet energy needs. Adults should consume 45–65% of their total calories from carbohydrates. It is recommended that added sugar represent no more than 25% of total energy because of concerns that sugar may displace nutrient-rich foods from the diet, potentially leading to deficiencies of certain micronutrients.

D. Simple sugars and disease

There is no direct evidence that the consumption of simple sugars is harmful. Contrary to folklore, diets high in sucrose do not lead to diabetes or hypoglycemia. Also contrary to popular belief, carbohydrates are not inherently fattening. They yield 4 kcal/g (the same as protein and less than one half that of fat, see Figure 27.5), and result in fat synthesis only when consumed in excess of the body's energy needs. However, there is an association between sucrose consumption and dental caries, particularly in the absence of fluoride treatment.

VII. DIETARY PROTEIN

Humans have no dietary requirement for protein, per se, but the protein in food does provide essential amino acids (see Figure 20.2, p. 262). Nine of the 20 amino acids needed for the synthesis of body proteins are essential—that is, they cannot be synthesized in humans.

A. Quality of proteins

The quality of a dietary protein is a measure of its ability to provide the essential amino acids required for tissue maintenance. Most government agencies have adopted the Protein Digestibility-Corrected Amino Acid Score (PDCAAS) as the standard by which to evaluate protein quality. PDCAAS is based on the profile of essential amino acids and the digestibility of the protein. The highest possible score under these guidelines is 1.00. This amino acid score provides a method to balance intakes of poorer-quality proteins with high-quality dietary proteins.

1. **Proteins from animal sources:** Proteins from animal sources (meat, poultry, milk, and fish) have a high quality because they contain all the essential amino acids in proportions similar to those required for synthesis of human tissue proteins (Figure 27.19). [Note: Gelatin prepared from animal collagen is an exception; it has a low biologic value as a result of deficiencies in several essential amino acids.]

Source	PDCAAS value
Animal proteins	
Egg	1.00
Milk protein	1.00
Beef/poultry/fish	0.82–0.92
Gelatin	0.08
Plant proteins	
Soybean protein	1.00
Kidney beans	0.68
Whole wheat bread	0.40

Figure 27.19
Relative quality of some common dietary proteins.

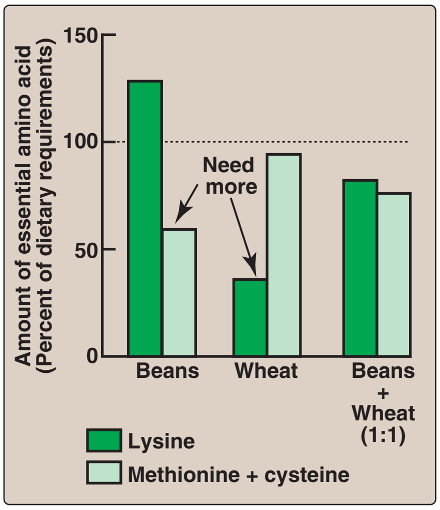


Figure 27.20
Combining two incomplete proteins that have complementary amino acid deficiencies results in a mixture with a higher biologic value.

2. **Proteins from plant sources:** Proteins from wheat, corn, rice, and beans have a lower quality than do animal proteins. However, proteins from different plant sources may be combined in such a way that the result is equivalent in nutritional value to animal protein. For example, wheat (lysine-deficient but methionine-rich) may be combined with kidney beans (methionine-poor but lysine-rich) to produce an improved biologic value. Thus, eating foods with different amino acids during the day can result in a dietary combination with a higher biologic value than either of the component proteins (Figure 27.20). [Note: Animal proteins can also complement the biologic value of plant proteins.]

B. Nitrogen balance

Nitrogen balance occurs when the amount of nitrogen consumed equals that of the nitrogen excreted in the urine, sweat, and feces. Most healthy adults are normally in nitrogen balance.

1. **Positive nitrogen balance:** This occurs when nitrogen intake exceeds nitrogen excretion. It is observed during situations in which tissue growth occurs, for example, in childhood, pregnancy, or during recovery from an emaciating illness.

2. **Negative nitrogen balance:** This occurs when nitrogen loss is greater than nitrogen intake. It is associated with inadequate dietary protein, lack of an essential amino acid, or during physiologic stresses, such as trauma, burns, illness, or surgery.

C. Requirement for protein in humans

The amount of dietary protein required in the diet varies with its biologic value. The greater the proportion of animal protein included in the diet, the less protein is required. The RDA for protein is computed for proteins of mixed biologic value at 0.8 g/kg of body weight for adults, or about 56 g of protein for a 70-kg individual. People who exercise strenuously on a regular basis may benefit from extra protein to maintain muscle mass; a daily intake of about 1 g/kg has been recommended for athletes. Women who are pregnant or lactating require up to 30 g/day in addition to their basal requirements. To support growth, infants should consume 2 g/kg/day.

CHARACTERISTIC	KWASHIORKOR	MARASMUS
Weight for age (% expected)	60–80	<60
Weight for height	Normal or decreased	Markedly decreased
Edema	Present	Absent
Mood	Irritable when picked up; apathetic when left alone	Alert, irritable
Appetite	Poor	Good

Figure 27.21
Features of protein-energy malnutrition in children.

1. **Consumption of excess protein:** There is no physiologic advantage to the consumption of more protein than the RDA. Protein consumed in excess of the body's needs is deaminated, and the resulting carbon skeletons are metabolized to provide energy or acetyl coenzyme A for fatty acid synthesis. When excess protein is eliminated from the body as urinary nitrogen, it is often accompanied by increased urinary calcium, increasing the risk of nephrolithiasis and osteoporosis.

2. **The protein-sparing effect of carbohydrate:** The dietary protein requirement is influenced by the carbohydrate content of the diet. When the intake of carbohydrates is low, amino acids are deaminated to provide carbon skeletons for the synthesis of glucose that is needed as a fuel by the central nervous system. If carbohydrate intake is less than 130 g/day, substantial amounts of protein are metabolized to provide precursors for gluconeogenesis. Therefore, carbohydrate is considered to be "protein-sparing," because it allows amino acids to be used for repair and maintenance of tissue protein rather than for gluconeogenesis.

D. Protein energy (calorie) malnutrition (PEM)

In developed countries, PEM is most frequently seen in patients with medical conditions that decrease appetite or alter how nutrients are digested or absorbed, or in hospitalized patients with major trauma or infections. [Note: Such highly catabolic patients frequently require intravenous (parenteral) or tube-based (enteral) administration of nutrients.] PEM may also be seen in children or the elderly who are malnourished. In developing countries, an inadequate intake of protein and/or energy is the primary cause of PEM. Affected individuals show a variety of symptoms, including a depressed immune system with a reduced ability to resist infection. Death from secondary infection is common. Two extreme forms of PEM are kwashiorkor and marasmus (Figure 27.21).

1. **Kwashiorkor:** Kwashiorkor occurs when protein deprivation is relatively greater than the reduction in total calories. Protein deprivation is associated with severely decreased synthesis of visceral protein. Kwashiorkor is frequently seen in children after weaning at about one year of age, when their diet consists predominantly of carbohydrates. Typical symptoms include stunted growth, edema, skin lesions, depigmented hair, anorexia, enlarged fatty liver, and decreased plasma albumin concentration. Edema results from the lack of adequate plasma proteins to maintain the distribution of water between blood and tissues. Edema may mask muscle loss.

2. **Marasmus:** Marasmus occurs when calorie deprivation is relatively greater than the reduction in protein. It usually occurs in children younger than 1 year of age when breast milk is supplemented with watery gruels of native cereals that are usually deficient in protein and calories. Typical symptoms include arrested growth, extreme muscle wasting (emaciation), weakness, and anemia (Figure 27.22). Victims of marasmus do not show the edema or changes in plasma proteins observed in kwashiorkor.

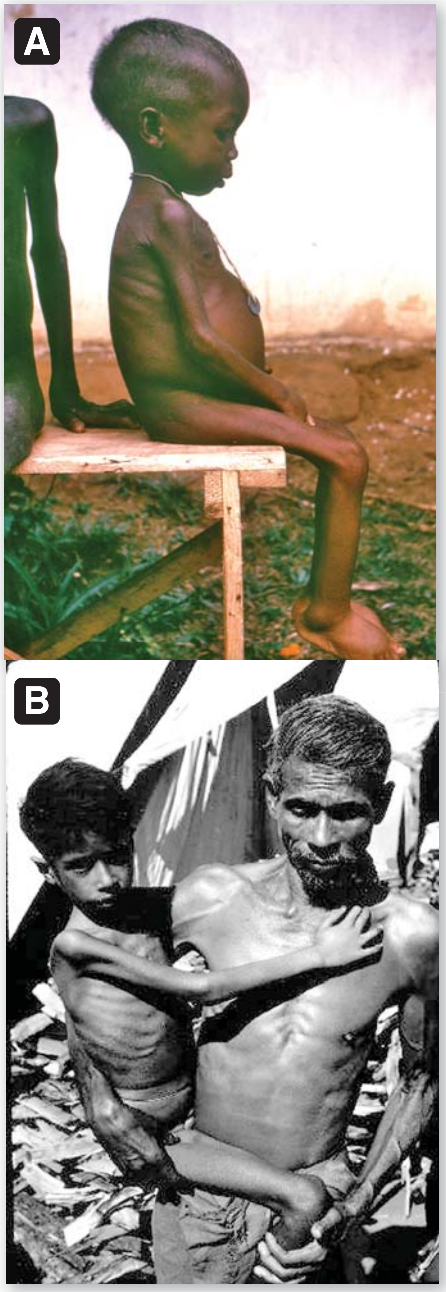


Figure 27.22
A.Listless child with kwashiorkor.
B.Child suffering with marasmus.

VIII. CHAPTER SUMMARY

Estimated Average Requirement (EAR) is the average daily nutrient intake level estimated to meet the requirement of one half the healthy individuals in a particular life stage and gender group. The **Recommended Dietary Allowance** (**RDA**) is the average daily dietary intake level that is sufficient to meet the nutrient requirements of nearly all (97–98%) individuals. **Adequate Intake** (**AI**) is set instead of an RDA if sufficient scientific evidence is not available to calculate the RDA. The **Tolerable Upper Intake Level** (**UL**) is the highest average daily nutrient intake level that is likely to pose no risk of adverse health effects to almost all individuals in the general population. The energy generated by the metabolism of the **macronutrients** is used for three energy-requiring processes that occur in the body: **resting metabolic rate**, **thermic effect of food**, and **physical activity**. **Acceptable Macronutrient Distribution Ranges** (**AMDR**) are defined as the ranges of intake for a particular macronutrient that is associated with reduced risk of chronic disease while providing adequate amounts of essential nutrients. Adults should consume **45–65%** of their **total calories** from **carbohydrates**, **20–35%** from **fat**, and **10–35%** from **protein** (Figure 27.23). Elevated levels of cholesterol or LDL cholesterol result in increased risk for **cardiovascular disease**. In contrast, high levels of HDL cholesterol have been associated with a decreased risk for heart disease. Dietary or drug treatment of **hypercholesterolemia** is effective in decreasing LDL, increasing HDL, and reducing the risk for cardiovascular events. Consumption of **saturated fats** is strongly associated with high levels of total plasma and LDL cholesterol. When substituted for saturated fatty acids in the diet, **monounsaturated fats** lower both total plasma and LDL cholesterol, but increase HDL. Consumption of fats containing **ω-6 polyunsaturated fatty acids** lowers plasma LDL, but HDL, which protect against coronary heart disease, are also lowered. Dietary **ω-3 polyunsaturated fats** suppress cardiac arrhythmias and reduce serum triacylglycerols, decrease the tendency for thrombosis, and substantially reduce the risk of cardiovascular mortality. **Carbohydrates** provide **energy** and **fiber** to the diet. When they are consumed as part of a diet in which caloric intake is equal to energy expenditure, they do not promote obesity. Dietary **protein** provides **essential amino acids**. The **quality of a protein** is a measure of its ability to provide the essential amino acids required for tissue maintenance. Proteins from animal sources, in general, have a higher-quality protein than that derived from plants. However, proteins from different plant sources may be combined in such a way that the result is equivalent in nutritional value to animal protein. **Positive nitrogen balance** occurs when nitrogen intake exceeds nitrogen excretion. It is observed in situations in which tissue growth occurs, for example, in childhood, pregnancy, or during recovery from an emaciating illness. **Negative nitrogen balance** occurs when nitrogen losses are greater than nitrogen intake. It is associated with inadequate dietary protein, lack of an essential amino acid, or during physiologic stresses such as trauma, burns, illness, or surgery. **Kwashiorkor** is caused by inadequate intake of protein and is characterized by edema. **Marasmus** results from chronic deficiency of calories.

Study Questions

Choose the ONE correct answer.

27.1 Which one of the following statements concerning dietary lipid is correct?

A. Corn oil and soybean oil are examples of fats rich in saturated fatty acids.
B. Triacylglycerols obtained from plants generally contain less unsaturated fatty acids than those from animals.
C. Olive oil is rich in saturated fats.
D. Fatty acids containing double bonds in the trans configuration, unlike the naturally occurring cis isomers, raise plasma cholesterol levels.
E. Coconut and palm oils are rich in polyunsaturated fats.

Correct answer = D. Trans fatty acids raise plasma cholesterol levels. Corn oil and soybean oil are examples of fats rich in polyunsaturated fatty acids. Triacylglycerols obtained from plants generally contain more unsaturated fatty acids than those from animals. Olive oil, the staple of the Mediterranean diet, is rich in monounsaturated fats. Coconut and palm oils are unusual plant oils in that they are rich in saturated fats.

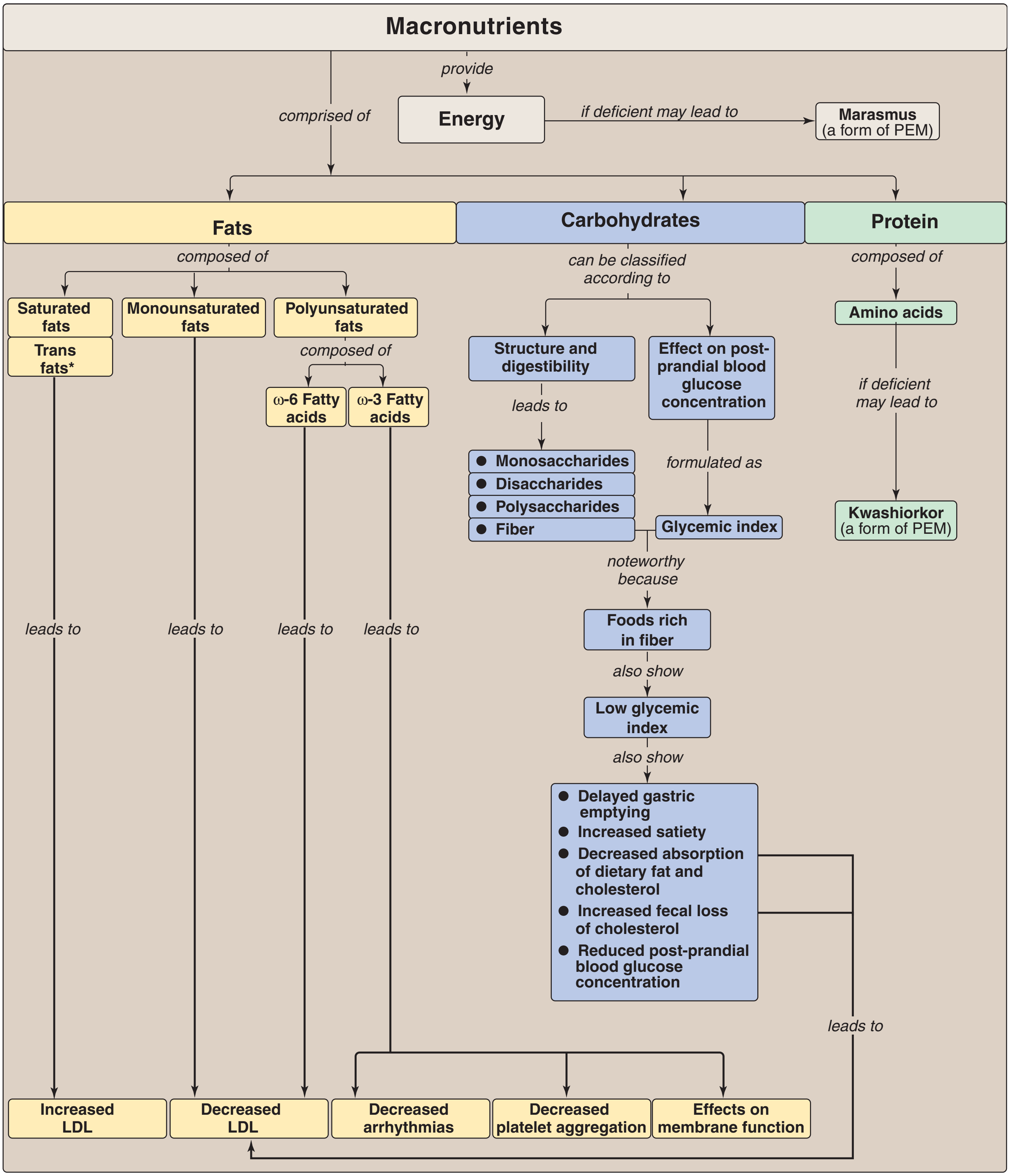

Macronutrients
provide
Energy
if deficient may lead to
Marasmus (a form of PEM)
comprised of
Fats
Carbohydrates
Protein
composed of
Saturated fats
Trans fats*
Monounsaturated fats
Polyunsaturated fats
composed of
ω-6 Fatty acids
ω-3 Fatty acids
leads to
leads to
leads to
leads to
can be classified according to
Structure and digestibility
leads to
Monosaccharides
Disaccharides
Polysaccharides
Fiber
Effect on post-prandial blood glucose concentration
formulated as
Glycemic index
noteworthy because
Foods rich in fiber
also show
Low glycemic index
also show
Delayed gastric emptying
Increased satiety
Decreased absorption of dietary fat and cholesterol
Increased fecal loss of cholesterol
Reduced post-prandial blood glucose concentration
leads to
composed of
Amino acids
if deficient may lead to
Kwashiorkor (a form of PEM)
Increased LDL
Decreased LDL
Decreased arrhythmias
Decreased platelet aggregation
Effects on membrane function

Figure 27.23
Key concept map for the macronutrients. *Note: Trans fatty acids are chemically classified as monounsaturated. PEM = protein energy malnutrition.

27.2 Given the information that a 70-kg man is consuming a daily average of 275 g of carbohydrate, 75 g of protein, and 65 g of lipid, one can draw which of the following conclusions?

A. Total energy intake per day is approximately 3,000 kcal.
B. About 20% of the calories are derived from lipids.
C. The diet does not contain a sufficient amount of dietary fiber.
D. The proportions of carbohydrate, protein, and lipid in the diet conform to the recommendations of academic groups and government agencies.
E. The individual is in nitrogen balance.

Correct answer = D. The total energy intake is (275 g carbohydrate × 4 kcal/g) + (75 g protein × 4 kcal/g) + (65 g lipid × 9 kcal/g) = 1100 + 300 + 585 = 1,985 total kcal/day. The percentage calories from carbohydrate is 1,100/1,985 = 55; percentage calories from protein is 300/1,985 = 15; and percentage calories derived from lipid is 585/1,985 = 30. These are very close to current recommendations. The amount of fiber or nitrogen balance cannot be deduced from the data presented. If the protein is of low biologic value, a negative nitrogen balance is possible.

27.3 A sedentary 50-year-old man, weighing 80 kg (176 pounds), requests a physical examination. He denies any health problems. Routine blood analysis is unremarkable except for plasma cholesterol of 280 mg/dl. The man refuses drug therapy for his hypercholesterolemia. Analysis of a 1-day dietary recall showed the following:

Kilocalories	3,475 kcal	Cholesterol	822 mg
Protein	102 g	Saturated fat	69 g
Carbohydrate	383 g	Total Fat	165 g
Fiber crude	6 g		

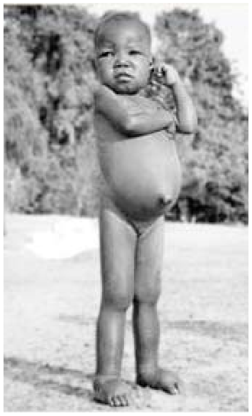
Changes in which one of the following dietary components would have the greatest effect in lowering plasma cholesterol?

A. Cholesterol.
B. Saturated fat.
C. Polyunsaturated fat.
D. Monounsaturated fat.
E. Carbohydrate.

Correct answer = B. The intake of saturated fat most strongly influences plasma cholesterol in this diet. The patient is consuming a high-calorie, high-fat diet with 40% of the fat as saturated fat. The most important dietary recommendations are: lower total caloric intake, substitute monounsaturated and polyunsaturated fats for saturated fats, and increase dietary fiber. A decrease in dietary cholesterol would be helpful, but is not a primary objective.

27.4 Which of the findings in the child shown at right would support a diagnosis of kwashiorkor?

A. Shows increased serum albumin.
B. Shows a good appetite.
C. Appears plump due to increased adipose tissue.
D. Displays abdominal and peripheral edema.
E. Has markedly decreased weight for height.



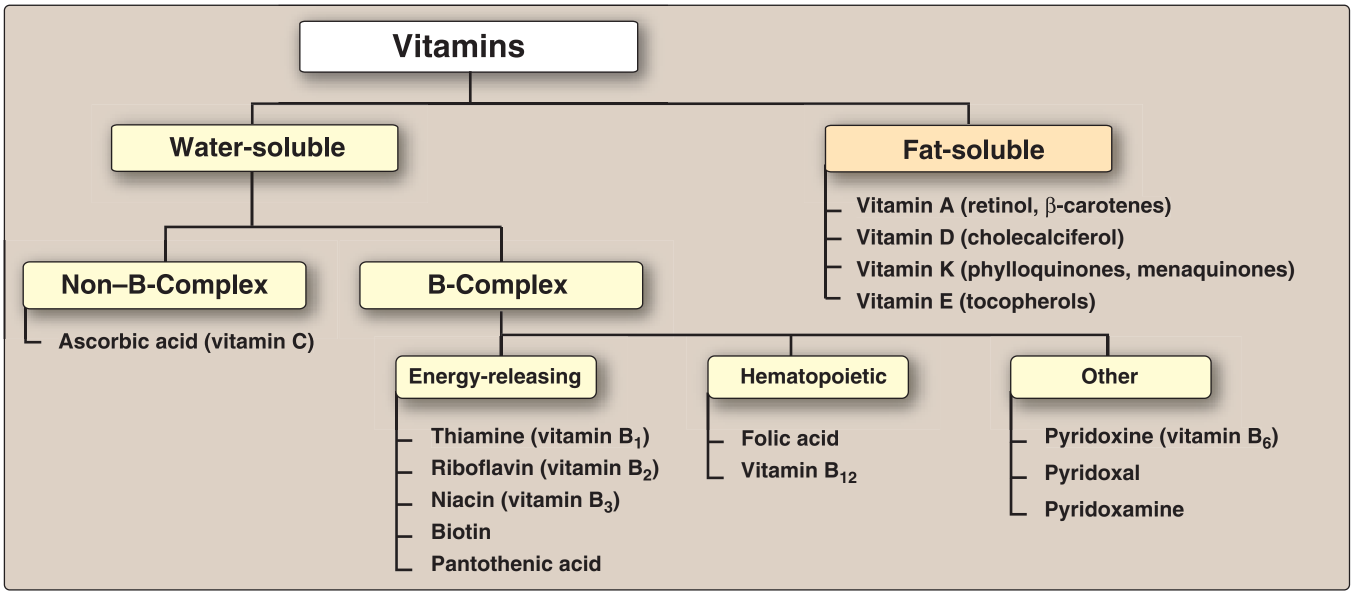
The correct answer = D. Kwashiorkor is caused by inadequate protein intake in the presence of fair to good energy (calorie) intake. Typical findings in a patient with Kwashiorkor include abdominal and peripheral edema (note the swollen belly and legs of the child) caused largely by a decreased serum albumin concentration. Anorexia is almost always present. Weight for height can be normal. Treatment includes a diet adequate in calories and protein.

Vitamins

28

I. OVERVIEW

Vitamins are chemically unrelated organic compounds that cannot be synthesized in adequate quantities by humans and, therefore, must be supplied by the diet. Nine vitamins (folic acid, cobalamin, ascorbic acid, pyridoxine, thiamine, niacin, riboflavin, biotin, and pantothenic acid) are classified as water-soluble, whereas four vitamins (vitamins A, D, K, and E) are termed fat-soluble (Figure 28.1). Vitamins are required to perform specific cellular functions, for example, many of the water-soluble vitamins are precursors of coenzymes for the enzymes of intermediary metabolism. In contrast to the water-soluble vitamins, only one fat soluble vitamin (vitamin K) has a coenzyme function. These vitamins are released, absorbed, and transported with the fat of the diet. They are not readily excreted in the urine, and significant quantities are stored in the liver and adipose tissue. In fact, consumption of vitamins A and D in excess of the Dietary Reference Intakes (DRIs) can lead to accumulation of toxic quantities of these compounds.



Vitamins
Water-soluble
Fat-soluble
Vitamin A (retinol, β-carotenes)
Vitamin D (cholecalciferol)
Vitamin K (phylloquinones, menaquinones)
Vitamin E (tocopherols)
Non–B-Complex
B-Complex
Ascorbic acid (vitamin C)
Energy-releasing
Hematopoietic
Other
Thiamine (vitamin B_1)
Riboflavin (vitamin B_2)
Niacin (vitamin B_3)
Biotin
Pantothenic acid
Folic acid
Vitamin B_{12}
Pyridoxine (vitamin B_6)
Pyridoxal
Pyridoxamine

Figure 28.1
Classification of the vitamins.

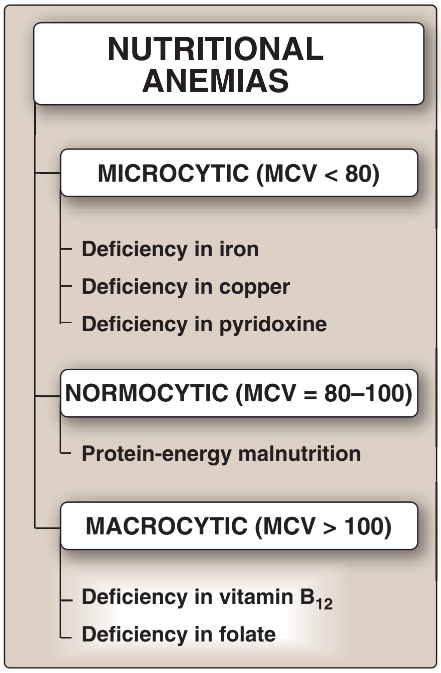

NUTRITIONAL ANEMIAS
MICROCYTIC (MCV < 80)
Deficiency in iron
Deficiency in copper
Deficiency in pyridoxine
NORMOCYTIC (MCV = 80–100)
Protein-energy malnutrition
MACROCYTIC (MCV > 100)
Deficiency in vitamin B12
Deficiency in folate

Figure 28.2
Classification of nutritional anemias by cell size. The normal mean corpuscular volume (MCV) for people older than age 18 is between 80 and 100 μm^3. [Note: Microcytic anemia is also seen with lead poisoning.]

II. FOLIC ACID

Folic acid (or folate), which plays a key role in one-carbon metabolism, is essential for the biosynthesis of several compounds. Folic acid deficiency is probably the most common vitamin deficiency in the United States, particularly among pregnant women and alcoholics.

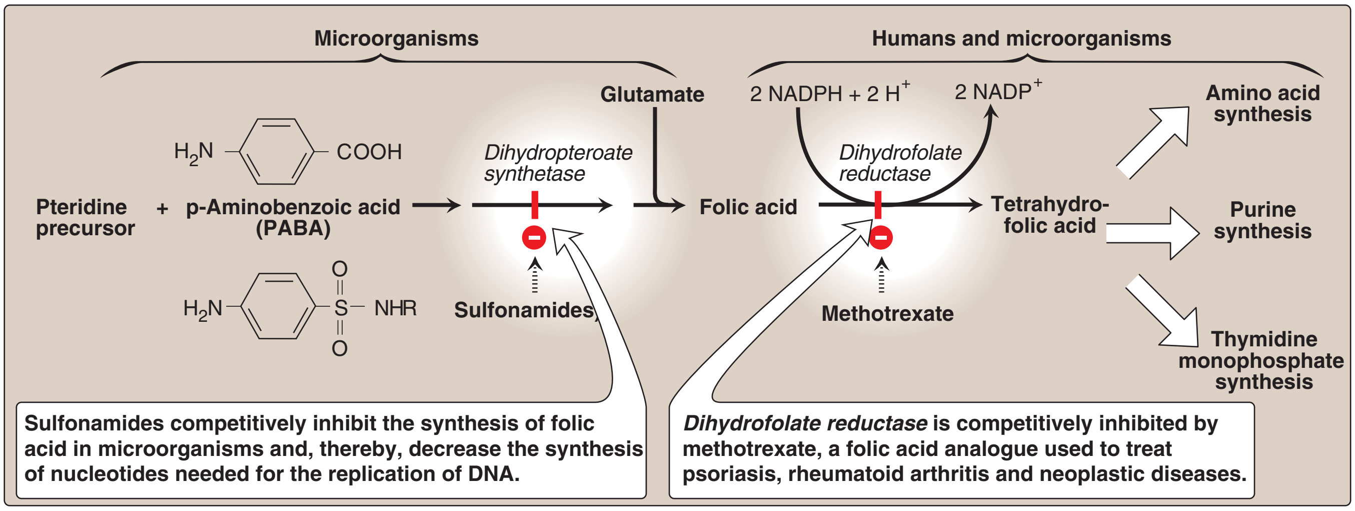
A. Function of folic acid

Tetrahydrofolate (reduced folate) receives one-carbon fragments from donors such as serine, glycine, and histidine and transfers them to intermediates in the synthesis of amino acids, purines, and thymidine monophosphate (TMP)—a pyrimidine found in DNA.

B. Nutritional anemias

Anemia is a condition in which the blood has a lower than normal concentration of hemoglobin, which results in a reduced ability to transport oxygen. Nutritional anemias—those caused by inadequate intake of one or more essential nutrients—can be classified according to the size of the red blood cells or mean corpuscular volume observed in the individual (Figure 28.2). Microcytic anemia, caused by lack of iron, is the most common form of nutritional anemia. The second major category of nutritional anemia, macrocytic, results from a deficiency in folic acid or vitamin B_{12}. [Note: These macrocytic anemias are commonly called megaloblastic because a deficiency of folic acid or vitamin B_{12} causes accumulation of large, immature red cell precursors, known as megaloblasts, in the bone marrow and the blood.]

1. **Folate and anemia:** Inadequate serum levels of folate can be caused by increased demand (for example, pregnancy and lactation), poor absorption caused by pathology of the small intestine, alcoholism, or treatment with drugs that are *dihydrofolate reductase* inhibitors, for example, methotrexate (Figure 28.3). A folate-free diet


Microorganisms
Humans and microorganisms
Glutamate
$2\ NADPH + 2\ H^+$
$2\ NADP^+$
Amino acid synthesis
H_2N
COOH
Dihydropteroate synthetase
Dihydrofolate reductase
Pteridine precursor
+
p-Aminobenzoic acid (PABA)
Folic acid
Tetrahydro-folic acid
Purine synthesis
O
S
NHR
O
H_2N
Sulfonamides
Methotrexate
Thymidine monophosphate synthesis

Sulfonamides competitively inhibit the synthesis of folic acid in microorganisms and, thereby, decrease the synthesis of nucleotides needed for the replication of DNA.

***Dihydrofolate reductase* is competitively inhibited by methotrexate, a folic acid analogue used to treat psoriasis, rheumatoid arthritis and neoplastic diseases.**

Figure 28.3
Inhibition of tetrahydrofolate synthesis by sulfonamides and methotrexate.

can cause a deficiency within a few weeks. A primary result of folic acid deficiency is megaloblastic anemia (Figure 28.4), caused by diminished synthesis of purines and TMP, which leads to an inability of cells (including red cell precursors) to make DNA and, therefore, they cannot divide. [Note: It is important to evaluate the cause of the megaloblastic anemia prior to instituting therapy, because vitamin B_{12} deficiency indirectly causes symptoms of this disorder (see p. 377).]

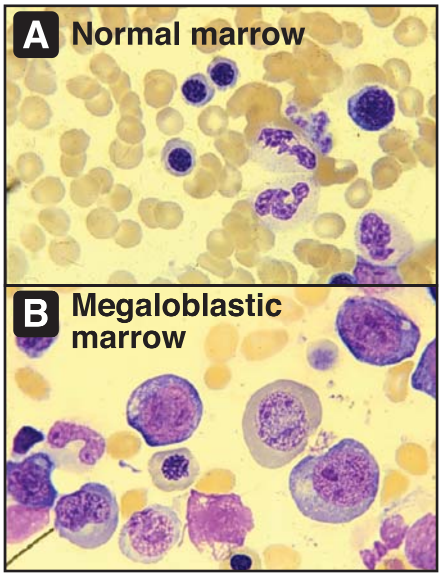


Figure 28.4
Bone marrow histology in normal and folate-deficient individuals.

2. **Folate and neural tube defects in the fetus:** Spina bifida and anencephaly, the most common neural tube defects, affect approximately 4,000 pregnancies in the United State annually. Folic acid supplementation before conception and during the first trimester has been shown to significantly reduce the defects. Therefore, all women of childbearing age are advised to consume 0.4 mg/day of folic acid to reduce the risk of having a pregnancy affected by neural tube defects. Adequate folate nutrition must occur at the time of conception because critical folate-dependent development occurs in the first weeks of fetal life—at a time when many women are not yet aware of their pregnancy. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration has authorized the addition of folic acid to enriched grain products, resulting in a dietary supplementation of about 0.1 mg/day. It is estimated that this supplementation will allow approximately 50% of all reproductive-aged women to receive 0.4 mg of folate from all sources. However, there is an association of high-dose supplementation with folic acid (>0.8 mg/day) and an increased risk of cancer. Thus, supplementation is not recommended for most middle-aged or older adults.

III. COBALAMIN (VITAMIN B_{12})

Vitamin B_{12} is required in humans for two essential enzymatic reactions: the remethylation of homocysteine to methionine and the isomerization of methylmalonyl coenzyme A (CoA) that is produced during the degradation of some amino acids (isoleucine, valine, threonine, and methionine), and fatty acids with odd numbers of carbon atoms (Figure 28.5). When the vitamin is deficient, unusual fatty acids accumulate and become incorporated into cell membranes, including those of the nervous system. This may account for some of the neurologic manifestations of vitamin B_{12} deficiency.

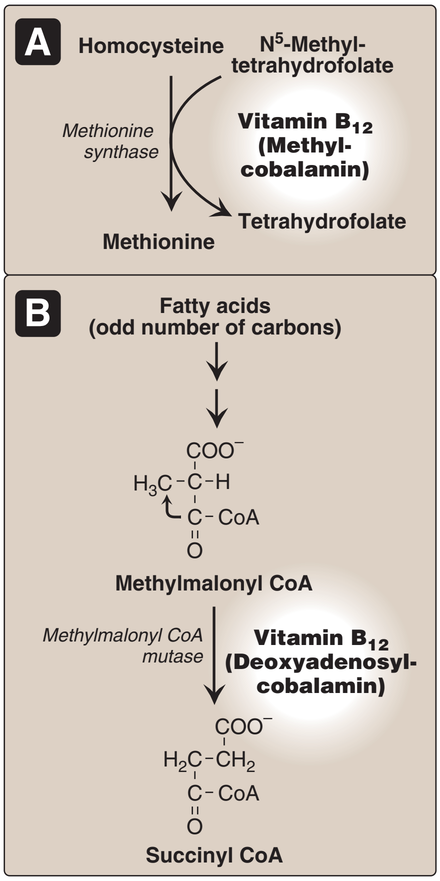


Figure 28.5
Reactions requiring coenzyme forms of vitamin B_{12}.

A. Structure of cobalamin and its coenzyme forms

Cobalamin contains a corrin ring system that differs from the porphyrins in that two of the pyrrole rings are linked directly rather than through a methene bridge. Cobalt is held in the center of the corrin ring by four coordination bonds from the nitrogens of the pyrrole groups. The remaining coordination bonds of the cobalt are with the nitrogen of 5,6-dimethylbenzimidazole and with cyanide in commercial preparations of the vitamin in the form of cyanocobalamin (Figure 28.6). The coenzyme forms of cobalamin are 5'-deoxyadenosylcobalamin, in which cyanide is replaced with 5'-deoxyadenosine (forming an unusual carbon–cobalt bond), and methylcobalamin, in which cyanide is replaced by a methyl group (see Figure 28.6).

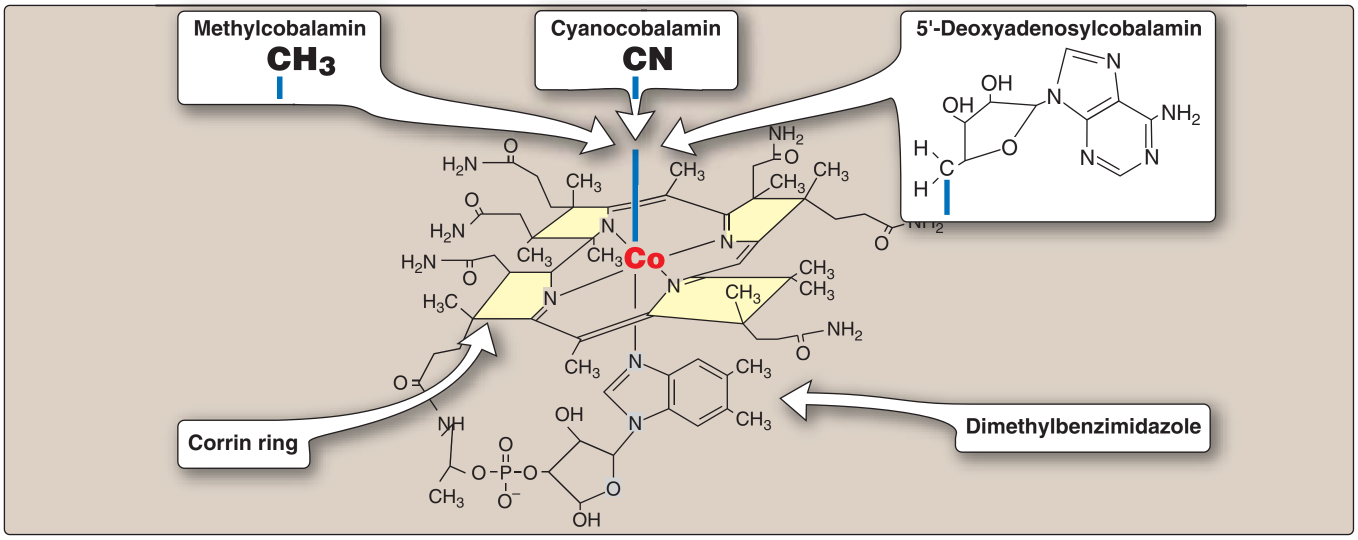

Methylcobalamin
CH3
Cyanocobalamin
CN
5'-Deoxyadenosylcobalamin
Co
Corrin ring
Dimethylbenzimidazole

Figure 28.6
Structure of vitamin B_{12} (cyanocobalamin) and its coenzyme forms (methylcobalamin and 5'-deoxyadenosylcobalamin).

B. Distribution of cobalamin

Vitamin B_{12} is synthesized only by microorganisms; it is not present in plants. Animals obtain the vitamin preformed from their natural bacterial flora or by eating foods derived from other animals. Cobalamin is present in appreciable amounts in liver, whole milk, eggs, oysters, fresh shrimp, pork, and chicken.

C. Folate trap hypothesis

The effects of cobalamin deficiency are most pronounced in rapidly dividing cells, such as the erythropoietic tissue of bone marrow and the mucosal cells of the intestine. Such tissues need both the N^5,N^{10}-methylene and N^{10}-formyl forms of tetrahydrofolate for the synthesis of nucleotides required for DNA replication (see pp. 293 and 303). However, in vitamin B_{12} deficiency, the utilization of the N^5-methyl form of tetrahydrofolate in the B_{12}-dependent methylation of homocysteine to methionine is impaired. Because the methylated form cannot be converted directly to other forms of tetrahydrofolate, folate is trapped in the N^5-methyl form, which accumulates. The levels of the other forms decrease. Thus, cobalamin deficiency is hypothesized to lead to a deficiency of the tetrahydrofolate forms needed in purine and TMP synthesis, resulting in the symptoms of megaloblastic anemia.

D. Clinical indications for vitamin B_{12}

In contrast to other water-soluble vitamins, significant amounts (4–5 mg) of vitamin B_{12} are stored in the body. As a result, it may take several years for the clinical symptoms of B_{12} deficiency to develop in individuals who have had a partial or total gastrectomy (who, therefore, become intrinsic factor-deficient, see p. 377) and can no longer absorb the vitamin.

1. **Pernicious anemia:** Vitamin B_{12} deficiency is rarely a result of an absence of the vitamin in the diet. It is much more common to find

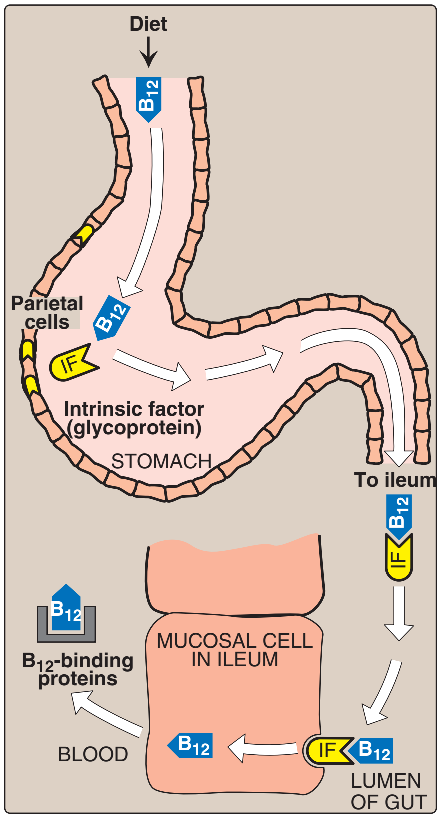

Diet
B12
Parietal cells
B12
IF
Intrinsic factor (glycoprotein)
STOMACH
To ileum
B12
IF
B12
B12-binding proteins
MUCOSAL CELL IN ILEUM
BLOOD
B12
IF
B12
LUMEN OF GUT

Figure 28.7
Absorption of vitamin B_{12}. IF = intrinsic factor.

deficiencies in patients who fail to absorb the vitamin from the intestine. Malabsorption of cobalamin in the elderly is most often due to reduced secretion of gastric acid and less efficient absorption of vitamin B_{12} from foods. A severe malabsorption of vitamin B_{12} leads to pernicious anemia. This disease is most commonly a result of an autoimmune destruction of the gastric parietal cells that are responsible for the synthesis of a glycoprotein called intrinsic factor. Normally, vitamin B_{12} obtained from the diet binds to intrinsic factor in the intestine (Figure 28.7). The cobalamin–intrinsic factor complex travels through the gut and eventually binds to specific receptors on the surface of mucosal cells of the ileum. The bound cobalamin is transported into the mucosal cell and, subsequently, into the general circulation, where it is carried by B_{12}-binding proteins. Lack of intrinsic factor prevents the absorption of vitamin B_{12}, resulting in pernicious anemia. Patients with cobalamin deficiency are usually anemic, but later in the development of the disease they show neuropsychiatric symptoms. However, central nervous system (CNS) symptoms may occur in the absence of anemia. The CNS effects are irreversible and occur by mechanisms that appear to be different from those described for megaloblastic anemia. The disease is treated by giving high-dose B_{12} orally, or intramuscular (IM) injection of cyanocobalamin. Therapy must be continued throughout the lives of patients with pernicious anemia. Deficiency of vitamin B_{12} can be measured by the level of methylmalonic acid in blood, which is elevated in individuals with low intake or decreased absorption of the vitamin.

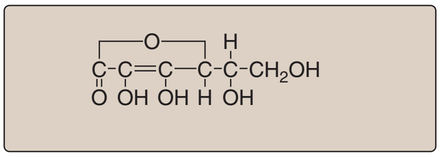


Figure 28.8
Structure of ascorbic acid.

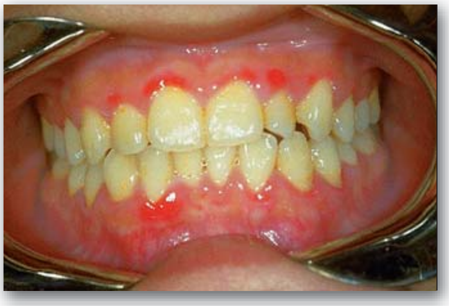


Figure 28.9
Hemorrhage and swollen gums of a patient with scurvy.

> Folic acid can partially reverse the hematologic abnormalities of B_{12} deficiency and, therefore, can mask a cobalamin deficiency. Thus, therapy of megaloblastic anemia is often initiated with folic acid and vitamin B_{12} until the cause of the anemia can be determined.

IV. ASCORBIC ACID (VITAMIN C)

The active form of vitamin C is ascorbic acid (Figure 28.8). The main function of ascorbate is as a reducing agent in several different reactions. Vitamin C has a well-documented role as a coenzyme in hydroxylation reactions, for example, hydroxylation of prolyl and lysyl residues of collagen (see p. 47). Vitamin C is, therefore, required for the maintenance of normal connective tissue, as well as for wound healing. Vitamin C also facilitates the absorption of dietary iron from the intestine.

A. Deficiency of ascorbic acid

A deficiency of ascorbic acid results in scurvy, a disease characterized by sore and spongy gums, loose teeth, fragile blood vessels, swollen joints, and anemia (Figure 28.9). Many of the deficiency symptoms can be explained by a deficiency in the hydroxylation of collagen, resulting in defective connective tissue.

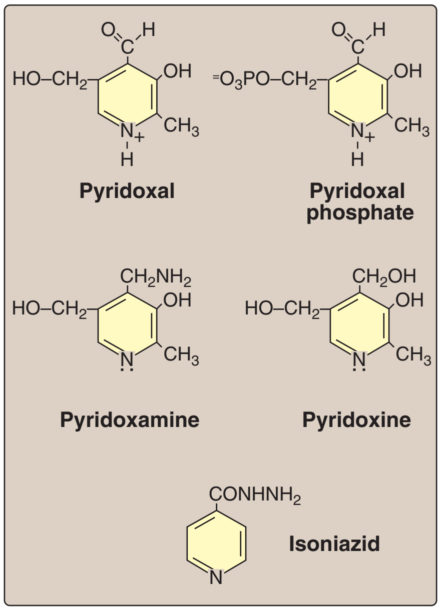


Figure 28.10
Structures of vitamin B_6 and and the antituberculosis drug isoniazid.

B. Prevention of chronic disease

Vitamin C is one of a group of nutrients that includes vitamin E (see p. 391) and β-carotene (see p. 382), which are known as antioxidants. Consumption of diets rich in these compounds is associated with a decreased incidence of some chronic diseases, such as coronary heart disease and certain cancers. However, clinical trials involving supplementation with the isolated antioxidants have failed to determine any convincing beneficial effects.

V. PYRIDOXINE (VITAMIN B_6)

Vitamin B_6 is a collective term for pyridoxine, pyridoxal, and pyridoxamine, all derivatives of pyridine. They differ only in the nature of the functional group attached to the ring (Figure 28.10). Pyridoxine occurs primarily in plants, whereas pyridoxal and pyridoxamine are found in foods obtained from animals. All three compounds can serve as precursors of the biologically active coenzyme, pyridoxal phosphate. Pyridoxal phosphate functions as a coenzyme for a large number of enzymes, particularly those that catalyze reactions involving amino acids.

Reaction type	Example
Transamination	Oxaloacetate + glutamate $\rightleftarrows$ aspartate + α-ketoglutarate
Deamination	Serine → pyruvate + NH_3
Decarboxylation	Histidine → histamine + CO_2
Condensation	Glycine + succinyl CoA → δ-aminolevulinic acid

A. Clinical indications for pyridoxine:

Isoniazid (isonicotinic acid hydrazide), a drug frequently used to treat tuberculosis, can induce a vitamin B_6 deficiency by forming an inactive derivative with pyridoxal phosphate. Dietary supplementation with B_6 is, thus, an adjunct to isoniazid treatment. Otherwise, dietary deficiencies in pyridoxine are rare but have been observed in newborn infants fed formulas low in B_6, in women taking oral contraceptives, and in alcoholics.

B. Toxicity of pyridoxine

Pyridoxine is the only water-soluble vitamin with significant toxicity. Neurologic symptoms (sensory neuropathy) occur at intakes above 200 mg/day, an amount more than 100 times the RDA. Substantial improvement, but not complete recovery, occurs when the vitamin is discontinued.

VI. THIAMINE (VITAMIN B_1)

Thiamine pyrophosphate is the biologically active form of the vitamin, formed by the transfer of a pyrophosphate group from adenosine triphosphate (ATP) to thiamine (Figure 28.11). Thiamine pyrophosphate serves as a coenzyme in the formation or degradation of α-ketols by *transketo-*

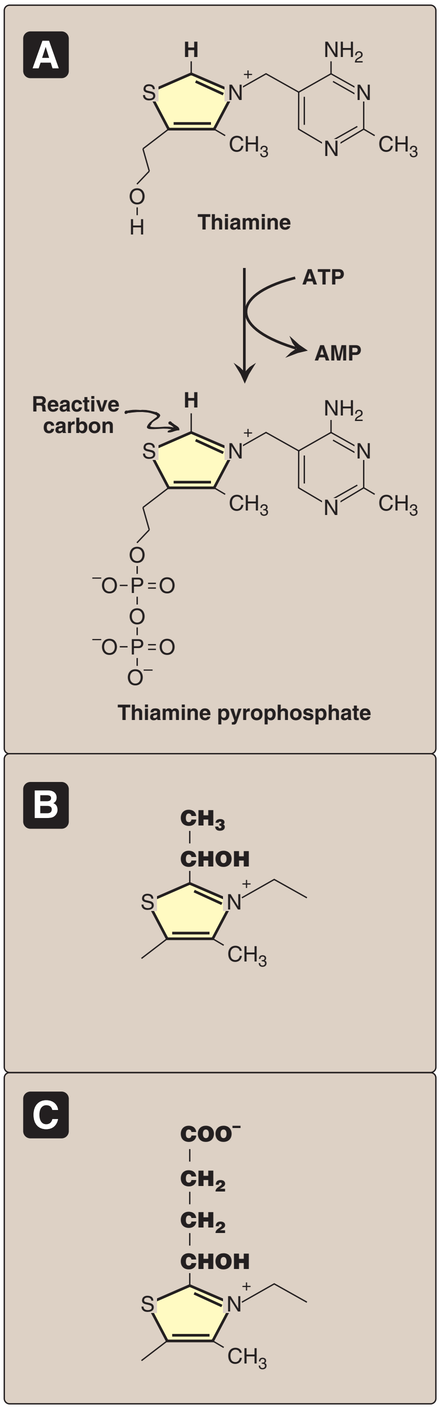


Figure 28.11
A. Structure of thiamine and its coenzyme form, thiamine pyrophosphate. B. Structure of intermediate formed in the reaction catalyzed by *pyruvate dehydrogenase*. C. Structure of intermediate formed in the reaction catalyzed by α*-ketoglutarate dehydrogenase*.

lase (Figure 28.12A), and in the oxidative decarboxylation of α-keto acids (Figure 28.12B).

A. Clinical indications for thiamine

The oxidative decarboxylation of pyruvate and α-ketoglutarate, which plays a key role in energy metabolism of most cells, is particularly important in tissues of the nervous system. In thiamine deficiency, the activity of these two *dehydrogenase*-catalyzed reactions is decreased, resulting in a decreased production of ATP and, thus, impaired cellular function. [Note: Thiamine deficiency is diagnosed by an increase in erythrocyte *transketolase* activity observed on addition of thiamine pyrophosphate.]

1. **Beriberi:** This is a severe thiamine-deficiency syndrome found in areas where polished rice is the major component of the diet. Signs of infantile beriberi include tachycardia, vomiting, convulsions, and, if not treated, death. The deficiency syndrome can have a rapid onset in nursing infants whose mothers are deficient in thiamine. Adult beriberi is characterized by dry skin, irritability, disordered thinking, and progressive paralysis.

2. **Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome:** In the United States, thiamine deficiency, which is seen primarily in association with chronic alcoholism, is due to dietary insufficiency or impaired intestinal absorption of the vitamin. Some alcoholics develop Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome—a thiamine deficiency state characterized by apathy, loss of memory, ataxia, and a rhythmic to-and-fro motion of the eyeballs (nystagmus). The neurologic consequences of Wernicke's syndrome are treatable with thiamine supplementation.

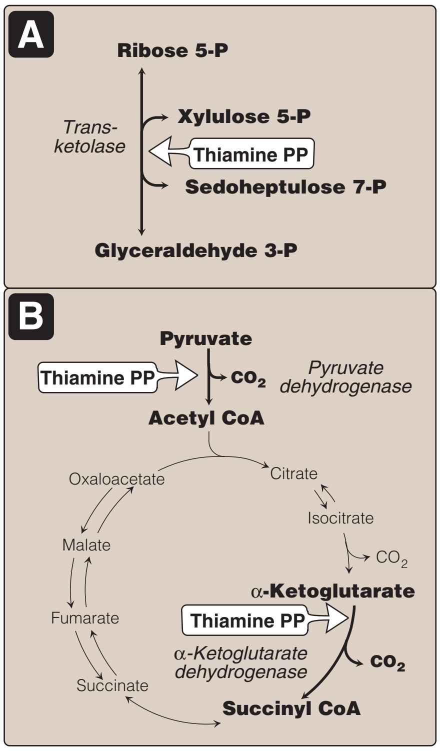

A
Ribose 5-P
Trans-ketolase
Xylulose 5-P
Thiamine PP
Sedoheptulose 7-P
Glyceraldehyde 3-P
B
Pyruvate
Thiamine PP
CO_2
Pyruvate dehydrogenase
Acetyl CoA
Oxaloacetate
Citrate
Isocitrate
CO_2
Malate
α-Ketoglutarate
Fumarate
Thiamine PP
α-Ketoglutarate dehydrogenase
CO_2
Succinate
Succinyl CoA

Figure 28.12
Reactions that use thiamine pyrophosphate (TPP) as coenzyme. A. *Transketolase*. B. *Pyruvate dehydrogenase* and *α-ketoglutarate dehydrogenase*. Note that TPP is also used by *branched-chain α-keto acid dehydrogenase*.

VII. NIACIN

Niacin, or nicotinic acid, is a substituted pyridine derivative. The biologically active coenzyme forms are nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD^+) and its phosphorylated derivative, nicotinamide adenine

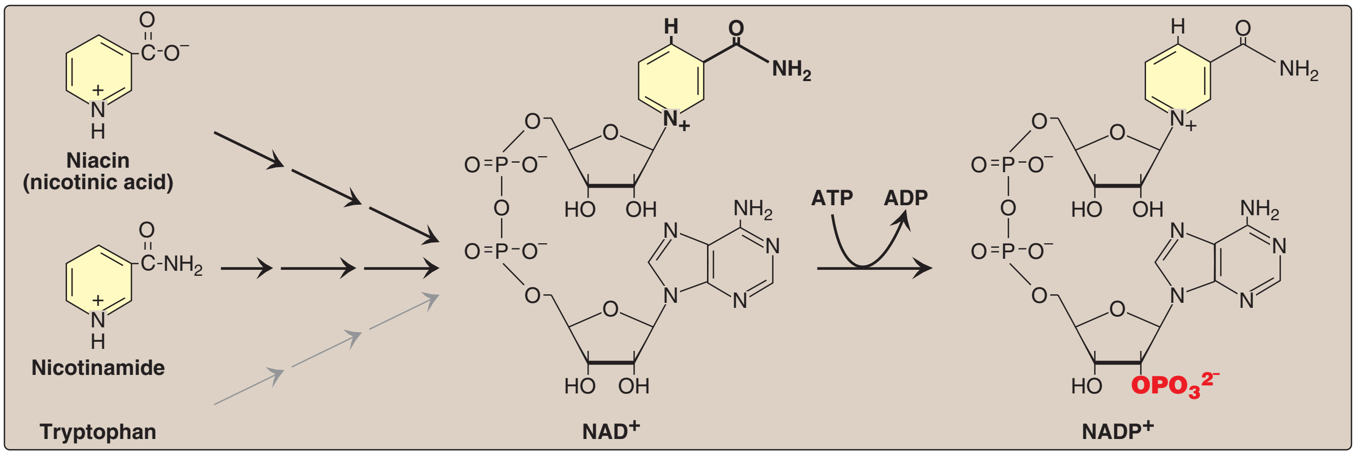

Niacin (nicotinic acid)
Nicotinamide
Tryptophan
ATP
ADP
NAD^+
$NADP^+$
NH_2
HO OH
OPO_3^{2-}

Figure 28.13
Structure and biosynthesis of NAD^+ and $NADP^+$. Note that a metabolite of tryptophan (quinolinate) can also be used in the synthesis of NAD^+.

dinucleotide phosphate ($NADP^+$, Figure 28.13). Nicotinamide, a derivative of nicotinic acid that contains an amide instead of a carboxyl group, also occurs in the diet. Nicotinamide is readily deaminated in the body and, therefore, is nutritionally equivalent to nicotinic acid. NAD^+ and $NADP^+$ serve as coenzymes in oxidation-reduction reactions in which the coenzyme undergoes reduction of the pyridine ring by accepting a hydride ion (hydrogen atom plus one electron, Figure 28.14). The reduced forms of NAD^+ and $NADP^+$ are NADH and NADPH, respectively.

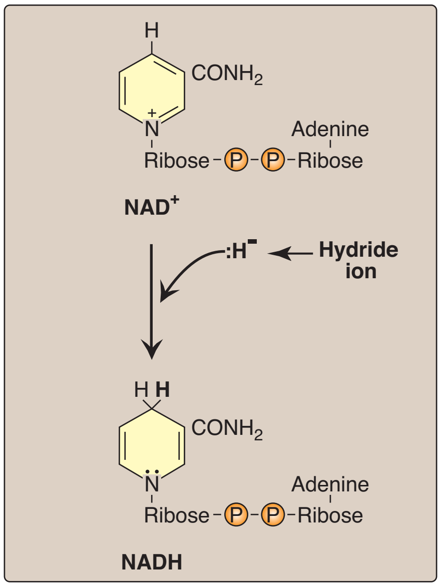

H
CONH2
N+
Adenine
Ribose-P-P-Ribose
NAD+
:H−
Hydride ion
H H
CONH2
N
Adenine
Ribose-P-P-Ribose
NADH

Figure 28.14
Reduction of NAD^+ to NADH.

A. Distribution of niacin

Niacin is found in unrefined and enriched grains and cereal, milk, and lean meats, especially liver. [Note: Corn is low in both niacin and tryptophan. Corn-based diets can cause pellagra (see below).]

B. Clinical indications for niacin

1. **Deficiency of niacin:** A deficiency of niacin causes pellagra, a disease involving the skin, gastrointestinal tract, and CNS. The symptoms of pellagra progress through the three Ds: dermatitis, diarrhea, dementia—and, if untreated, death.

2. **Treatment of hyperlipidemia:** Niacin (at doses of 1.5 g/day or 100 times the Recommended Dietary Allowance or RDA) strongly inhibits lipolysis in adipose tissue—the primary producer of circulating free fatty acids. The liver normally uses these circulating fatty acids as a major precursor for triacylglycerol synthesis. Thus, niacin causes a decrease in liver triacylglycerol synthesis, which is required for very-low-density lipoprotein (VLDL, see p. 231) production. Low-density lipoprotein (LDL, the cholesterol-rich lipoprotein) is derived from VLDL in the plasma. Thus, both plasma triacylglycerol (in VLDL) and cholesterol (in VLDL and LDL) are lowered. Therefore, niacin is particularly useful in the treatment of Type IIb hyperlipoproteinemia, in which both VLDL and LDL are elevated. [Note: Niacin raises HDL levels.]

VIII. RIBOFLAVIN (VITAMIN B_2)

The two biologically active forms are flavin mononucleotide (FMN) and flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD), formed by the transfer of an adenosine

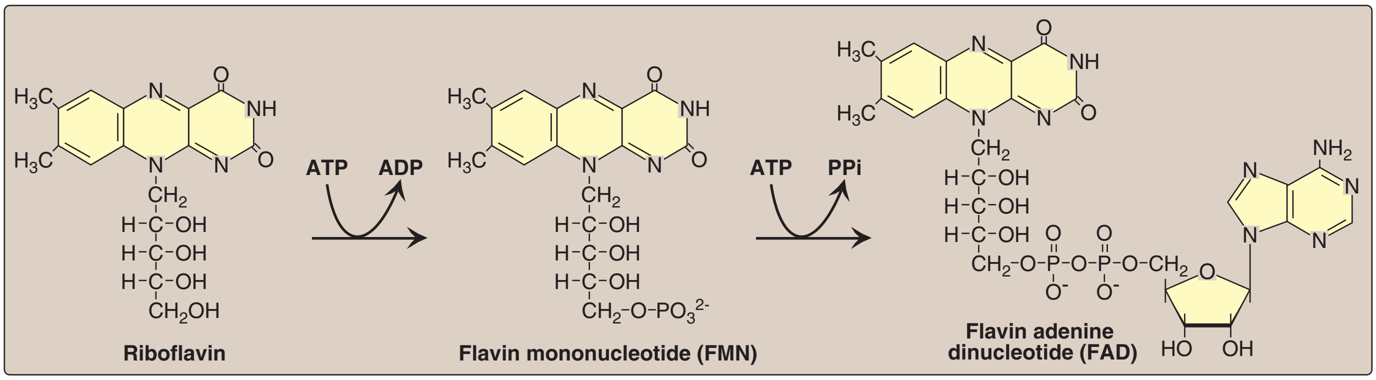

H3C
H3C
N
O
NH
N
O
CH2
H-C-OH
H-C-OH
H-C-OH
CH2OH
Riboflavin
ATP
ADP
CH2-O-PO3 2-
Flavin mononucleotide (FMN)
ATP
PPi
CH2-O-P-O-P-O-CH2
O−
NH2
HO
OH
Flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD)

Figure 28.15
Structure and biosynthesis of flavin mononucleotide and flavin adenine dinucleotide.

monophosphate moiety from ATP to FMN (Figure 28.15). FMN and FAD are each capable of reversibly accepting two hydrogen atoms, forming $FMNH_2$ or $FADH_2$. FMN and FAD are bound tightly—sometimes covalently—to flavoenzymes that catalyze the oxidation or reduction of a substrate. Riboflavin deficiency is not associated with a major human disease, although it frequently accompanies other vitamin deficiencies. Deficiency symptoms include dermatitis, cheilosis (fissuring at the corners of the mouth), and glossitis (the tongue appearing smooth and purplish).

IX. BIOTIN

Biotin is a coenzyme in carboxylation reactions, in which it serves as a carrier of activated carbon dioxide (see Figure 10.3, p. 119, for the mechanism of biotin-dependent carboxylations). Biotin is covalently bound to the ε-amino groups of lysine residues in biotin-dependent enzymes (Figure 28.16). Biotin deficiency does not occur naturally because the vitamin is widely distributed in food. Also, a large percentage of the biotin requirement in humans is supplied by intestinal bacteria. However, the addition of raw egg white to the diet as a source of protein induces symptoms of biotin deficiency, namely, dermatitis, glossitis, loss of appetite, and nausea. Raw egg white contains a glycoprotein, avidin, which tightly binds biotin and prevents its absorption from the intestine. With a normal diet, however, it has been estimated that 20 eggs/day would be required to induce a deficiency syndrome. Thus, inclusion of an occasional raw egg in the diet does not lead to biotin deficiency, although eating raw eggs is generally not recommended due to the possibility of salmonella infection.

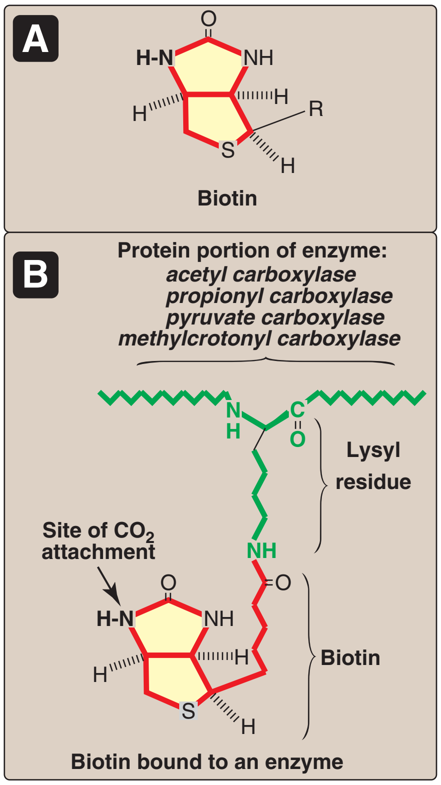


Figure 28.16
A. Structure of biotin. B. Biotin covalently bound to a lysyl residue of a biotin-dependent enzyme.

> Multiple *carboxylase* deficiency results from a defect in the ability to link biotin to *carboxylases* or to remove it from *carboxylases* during their degradation. Treatment is biotin supplementation.

X. PANTOTHENIC ACID

Pantothenic acid is a component of coenzyme A (CoA), which functions in the transfer of acyl groups (Figure 28.17). CoA contains a thiol group that carries acyl compounds as activated thiol esters. Examples of such structures are succinyl CoA, fatty acyl CoA, and acetyl CoA. Pantothenic acid is also a component of the acyl carrier protein (ACP) domain of *fatty acid synthase* (see p. 184). Eggs, liver, and yeast are the most important sources of pantothenic acid, although the vitamin is widely distributed. Pantothenic acid deficiency is not well characterized in humans, and no RDA has been established.

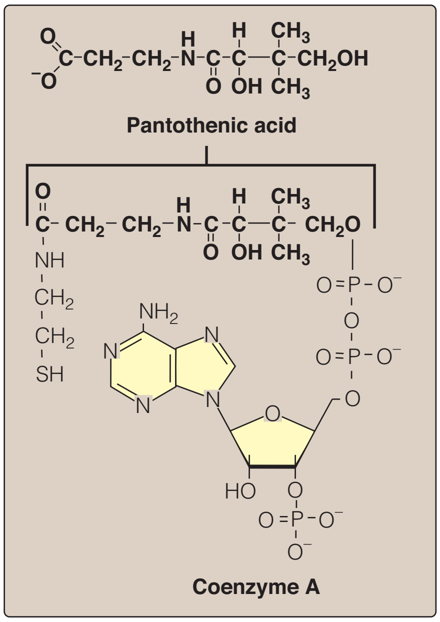
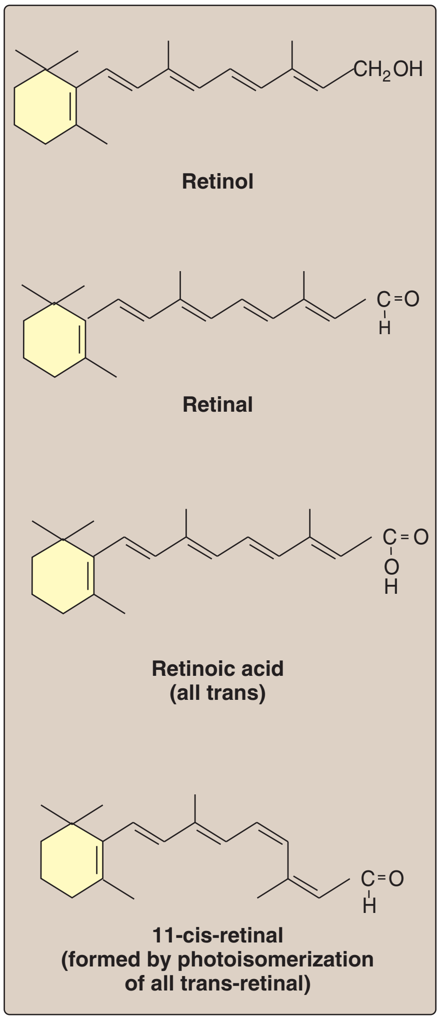


Figure 28.17
Structure of coenzyme A.

XI. VITAMIN A

The retinoids, a family of molecules that are related to retinol (vitamin A), are essential for vision, reproduction, growth, and maintenance of epithelial tissues. Retinoic acid, derived from oxidation of dietary retinol, mediates most of the actions of the retinoids, except for vision, which depends on retinal, the aldehyde derivative of retinol.



Retinol

Retinal

Retinoic acid
(all trans)

11-cis-retinal
(formed by photoisomerization
of all trans-retinal)

Figure 28.18
Structure of the retinoids.

A. Structure of vitamin A

Vitamin A is often used as a collective term for several related biologically active molecules (Figure 28.18). The term retinoids includes both natural and synthetic forms of vitamin A that may or may not show vitamin A activity.

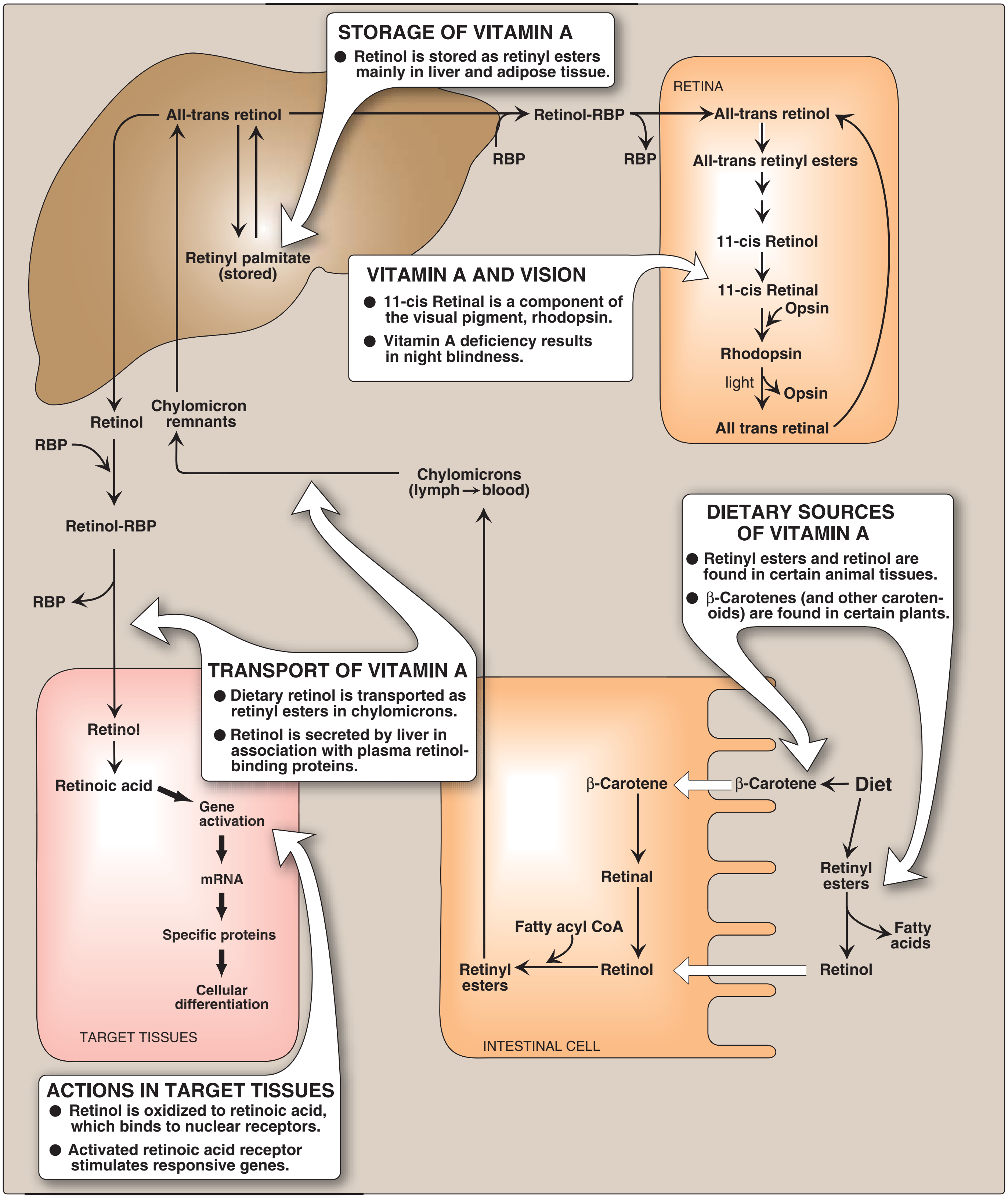
1. **Retinol:** A primary alcohol containing a β-ionone ring with an unsaturated side chain, retinol is found in animal tissues as a retinyl ester with long-chain fatty acids.
2. **Retinal:** This is the aldehyde derived from the oxidation of retinol. Retinal and retinol can readily be interconverted.
3. **Retinoic acid:** This is the acid derived from the oxidation of retinal. Retinoic acid cannot be reduced in the body, and, therefore, cannot give rise to either retinal or retinol.
4. **β-Carotene:** Plant foods contain β-carotene, which can be oxidatively cleaved in the intestine to yield two molecules of retinal. In humans, the conversion is inefficient, and the vitamin A activity of β-carotene is only about one twelfth that of retinol.

B. Absorption and transport of vitamin A

1. **Transport to the liver:** Retinyl esters present in the diet are hydrolyzed in the intestinal mucosa, releasing retinol and free fatty acids (Figure 28.19). Retinol derived from esters and from the cleavage and reduction of carotenes is re-esterified to long-chain fatty acids in the intestinal mucosa and secreted as a component of chylomicrons into the lymphatic system (see Figure 28.19). Retinyl esters contained in chylomicron remnants are taken up by, and stored in, the liver.
2. **Release from the liver:** When needed, retinol is released from the liver and transported to extrahepatic tissues by the plasma retinol-binding protein (RBP). The retinol–RBP complex attaches to specific receptors on the surface of the cells of peripheral tissues, permitting retinol to enter. Many tissues contain a cellular retinol-binding protein that carries retinol to sites in the nucleus where the vitamin acts in a manner analogous to that of steroid hormones.

C. Mechanism of action of vitamin A

Retinol is oxidized to retinoic acid. Retinoic acid binds with high affinity to specific receptor proteins present in the nucleus of target tissues, such as epithelial cells (Figure 28.20). The activated retinoic acid–receptor complex interacts with nuclear chromatin to regulate retinoid-specific RNA synthesis, resulting in control of the production of specific proteins that mediate several physiologic functions. For example, retinoids control the expression of the gene for keratin in most epithelial tissues of the body. The specific retinoic acid–receptor proteins are part of the superfamily of transcriptional regulators that includes the steroid and thyroid hormones and 1,25-dihydroxycholecalciferol, all of which function in a similar way (see p. 240).



STORAGE OF VITAMIN A

- Retinol is stored as retinyl esters mainly in liver and adipose tissue.

VITAMIN A AND VISION

- 11-cis Retinal is a component of the visual pigment, rhodopsin.
- Vitamin A deficiency results in night blindness.

DIETARY SOURCES OF VITAMIN A

- Retinyl esters and retinol are found in certain animal tissues.
- β-Carotenes (and other carotenoids) are found in certain plants.

TRANSPORT OF VITAMIN A

- Dietary retinol is transported as retinyl esters in chylomicrons.
- Retinol is secreted by liver in association with plasma retinol-binding proteins.

ACTIONS IN TARGET TISSUES

- Retinol is oxidized to retinoic acid, which binds to nuclear receptors.
- Activated retinoic acid receptor stimulates responsive genes.

All-trans retinol
Retinol-RBP
RBP
RBP
Retinyl palmitate (stored)
Retinol
Chylomicron remnants
RBP
Retinol-RBP
RBP
RETINA
All-trans retinol
All-trans retinyl esters
11-cis Retinol
11-cis Retinal
Opsin
Rhodopsin
light
Opsin
All trans retinal
Chylomicrons (lymph → blood)
Retinol
Retinoic acid
Gene activation
mRNA
Specific proteins
Cellular differentiation
TARGET TISSUES
β-Carotene
β-Carotene
Diet
Retinal
Retinyl esters
Fatty acyl CoA
Fatty acids
Retinyl esters
Retinol
Retinol
INTESTINAL CELL

Figure 28.19
Absorption, transport, and storage of vitamin A and its derivatives. RBP = retinol-binding protein.

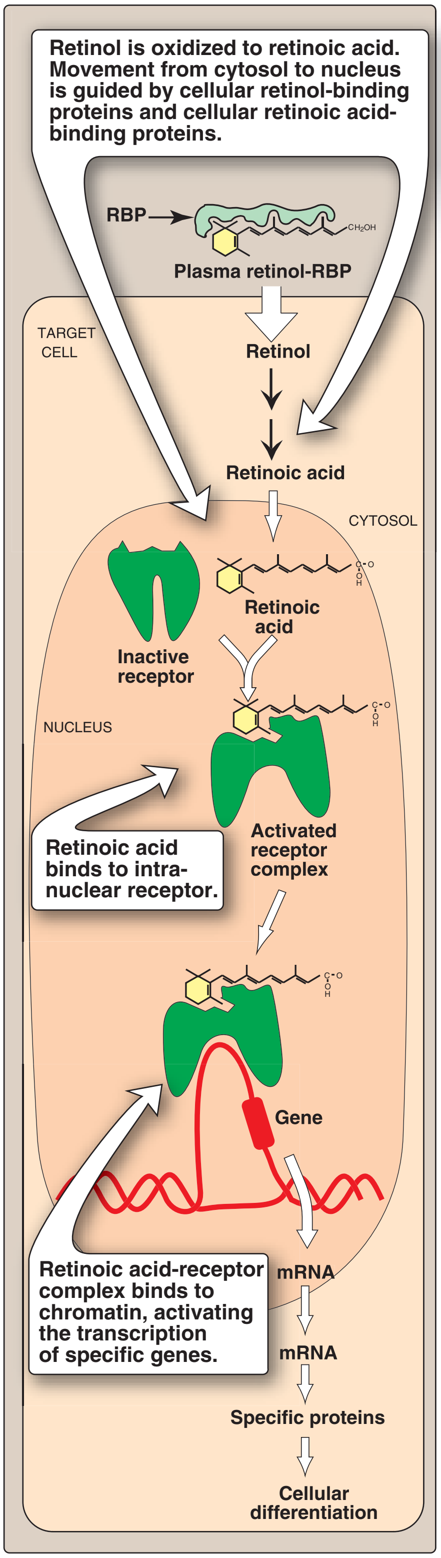

Retinol is oxidized to retinoic acid. Movement from cytosol to nucleus is guided by cellular retinol-binding proteins and cellular retinoic acid-binding proteins.
RBP
CH₂OH
Plasma retinol-RBP
TARGET CELL
Retinol
Retinoic acid
CYTOSOL
Retinoic acid
Inactive receptor
NUCLEUS
Activated receptor complex
Retinoic acid binds to intra-nuclear receptor.
Gene
Retinoic acid-receptor complex binds to chromatin, activating the transcription of specific genes.
mRNA
mRNA
Specific proteins
Cellular differentiation

Figure 28.20
Action of retinoids Note: Retinoic acid-receptor complex is a dimer, but is shown as monomer for simplicity. [RBP = retinol-binding protein.]

D. Functions of vitamin A

1. **Visual cycle:** Vitamin A is a component of the visual pigments of rod and cone cells. Rhodopsin, the visual pigment of the rod cells in the retina, consists of 11-cis retinal specifically bound to the protein opsin. When rhodopsin is exposed to light, a series of photochemical isomerizations occurs, which results in the bleaching of the visual pigment and release of all-trans retinal and opsin. This process triggers a nerve impulse that is transmitted by the optic nerve to the brain. Regeneration of rhodopsin requires isomerization of all-trans retinal back to 11-cis retinal. All-trans retinal, after being released from rhodopsin, is reduced to all-trans retinol, esterfied, and isomerized to 11-cis retinol that is oxidized to 11-cis retinal. The latter combines with opsin to form rhodopsin, thus completing the cycle. Similar reactions are responsible for color vision in the cone cells.

2. **Growth:** Vitamin A deficiency results in a decreased growth rate in children. Bone development is also slowed.

3. **Reproduction:** Retinol and retinal are essential for normal reproduction, supporting spermatogenesis in the male and preventing fetal resorption in the female. Retinoic acid is inactive in maintaining reproduction and in the visual cycle, but promotes growth and differentiation of epithelial cells; thus, animals given vitamin A only as retinoic acid from birth are blind and sterile.

4. **Maintenance of epithelial cells:** Vitamin A is essential for normal differentiation of epithelial tissues and mucus secretion.

E. Distribution of vitamin A

Liver, kidney, cream, butter, and egg yolk are good sources of preformed vitamin A. Yellow and dark green vegetables and fruits are good dietary sources of the carotenes, which serve as precursors of vitamin A.

F. Requirement for vitamin A

The RDA for adults is 900 retinol activity equivalents (RAE) for males and 700 RAE for females. In comparison, 1 RAE = 1 mg of retinol, 12 mg of β-carotene, or 24 mg of other carotenoids.

G. Clinical indications

Although chemically related, retinoic acid and retinol have distinctly different therapeutic applications. Retinol and its precursor are used as dietary supplements, whereas various forms of retinoic acid are useful in dermatology.

1. **Dietary deficiency:** Vitamin A, administered as retinol or retinyl esters, is used to treat patients who are deficient in the vitamin (Figure 28.21). Night blindness is one of the earliest signs of vitamin A deficiency. The visual threshold is increased, making it difficult to see in dim light. Prolonged deficiency leads to an irreversible loss in the number of visual cells. Severe vitamin A deficiency leads to xerophthalmia, a pathologic dryness of the conjunctiva and cornea. If untreated, xerophthalmia results in

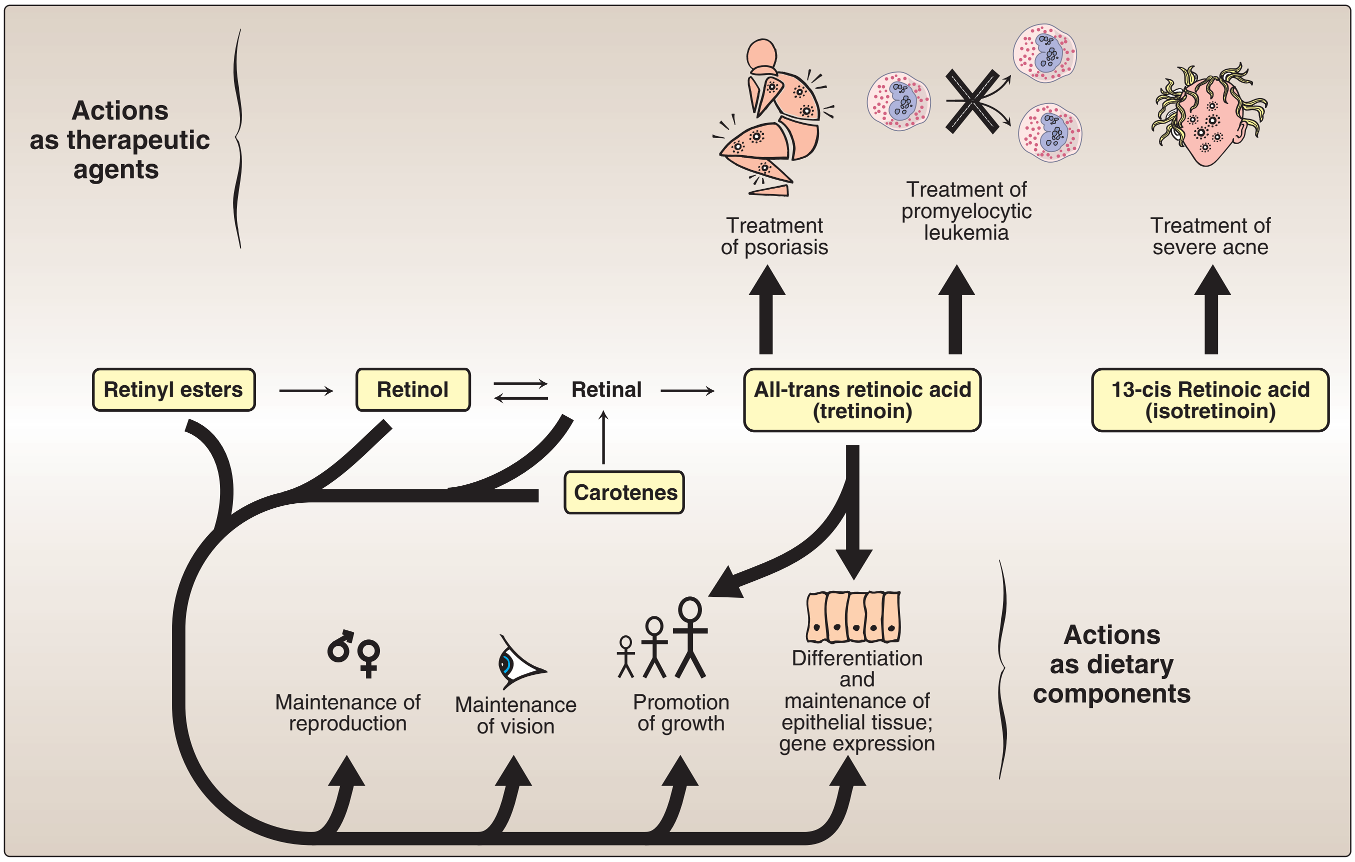

Actions as therapeutic agents
Treatment of psoriasis
Treatment of promyelocytic leukemia
Treatment of severe acne
Retinyl esters
Retinol
Retinal
All-trans retinoic acid (tretinoin)
13-cis Retinoic acid (isotretinoin)
Carotenes
Maintenance of reproduction
Maintenance of vision
Promotion of growth
Differentiation and maintenance of epithelial tissue; gene expression
Actions as dietary components

Figure 28.21
Summary of actions of retinoids. Compounds in boxes are available as dietary components or as pharmacologic agents.

corneal ulceration and, ultimately, in blindness because of the formation of opaque scar tissue. The condition is most frequently seen in children in developing tropical countries. Over 500,000 children worldwide are blinded each year by xerophthalmia caused by insufficient vitamin A in the diet.

2. **Acne and psoriasis:** Dermatologic problems such as acne and psoriasis are effectively treated with retinoic acid or its derivatives (see Figure 28.21). Mild cases of acne, Darier disease (keratosis follicularis), and skin aging are treated with topical application of tretinoin (all-trans retinoic acid), as well as benzoyl peroxide and antibiotics. [Note: Tretinoin is too toxic for systemic administration and is confined to topical application.] In patients with severe, recalcitrant, cystic acne unresponsive to conventional therapies, the drug of choice is isotretinoin (13-cis retinoic acid) administered orally. Retinoic acid is also used in the treatment of promyelocytic leukemia.

H. Toxicity of retinoids

1. **Vitamin A:** Excessive intake of vitamin A produces a toxic syndrome called hypervitaminosis A. Amounts exceeding 7.5 mg/day of retinol should be avoided. Early signs of chronic hypervitaminosis A are reflected in the skin, which becomes dry and pru-

ritic (due to a decrease in keratin synthesis), the liver, which becomes enlarged and can become cirrhotic, and in the nervous system, where a rise in intracranial pressure may mimic the symptoms of a brain tumor. Pregnant women particularly should not ingest excessive quantities of vitamin A because of its potential for causing congenital malformations in the developing fetus.

2. **Isotretinoin:** The drug is teratogenic and absolutely contraindicated in women with childbearing potential unless they have severe, disfiguring cystic acne that is unresponsive to standard therapies. Pregnancy must be excluded before initiation of treatment, and adequate birth control must be used. Prolonged treatment with isotretinoin leads to hyperlipidemia and an increase in the LDL/HDL ratio, providing some concern for an increased risk of cardiovascular disease.

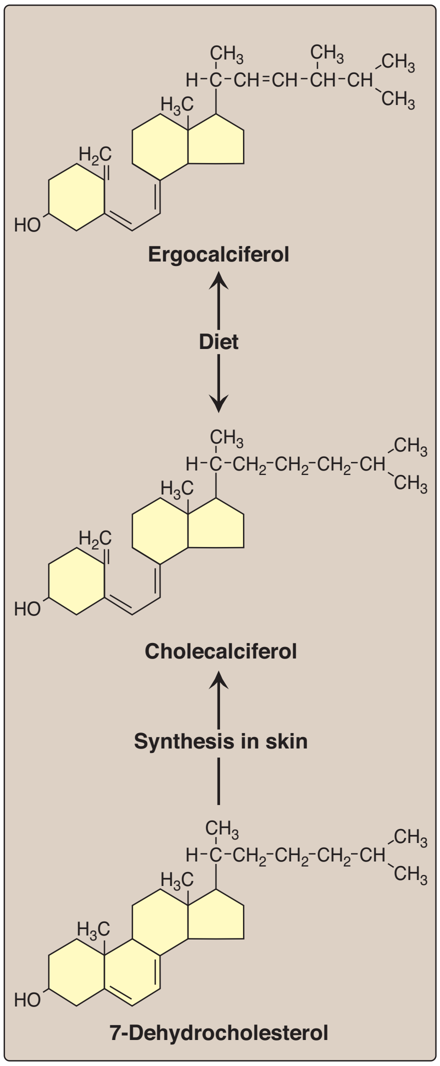


Figure 28.22
Sources of vitamin D.

XII. VITAMIN D

The D vitamins are a group of sterols that have a hormone-like function. The active molecule, 1,25-dihydroxycholecalciferol (1,25-diOH-D_3), binds to intracellular receptor proteins. The 1,25-diOH-D_3–receptor complex interacts with DNA in the nucleus of target cells in a manner similar to that of vitamin A (see Figure 28.20), and either selectively stimulates gene expression or specifically represses gene transcription. The most prominent actions of 1,25-diOH-D_3 are to regulate the plasma levels of calcium and phosphorus.

A. Distribution of vitamin D

1. **Diet:** Ergocalciferol (vitamin D_2), found in plants, and cholecalciferol (vitamin D_3), found in animal tissues, are sources of preformed vitamin D activity (Figure 28.22). Ergocalciferol and cholecalciferol differ chemically only in the presence of an additional double bond and methyl group in the plant sterol.

2. **Endogenous vitamin precursor:** 7-Dehydrocholesterol, an intermediate in cholesterol synthesis, is converted to cholecalciferol in the dermis and epidermis of humans exposed to sunlight. Preformed vitamin D is a dietary requirement only in individuals with limited exposure to sunlight.

B. Metabolism of vitamin D

1. **Formation of 1,25-diOH-D_3:** Vitamins D_2 and D_3 are not biologically active, but are converted in vivo to the active form of the D vitamin by two sequential hydroxylation reactions (Figure 28.23). The first hydroxylation occurs at the 25-position, and is catalyzed by a specific *hydroxylase* in the liver. The product of the reaction, 25-hydroxycholecalciferol (25-OH-D_3, calcidol), is the predominant form of vitamin D in the plasma and the major storage form of the vitamin. 25-OH-D_3 is further hydroxylated at the 1 position by *25-hydroxycholecalciferol 1-hydroxylase* found primarily in the kidney, resulting in the formation of 1,25-diOH-D_3 (calcitriol). [Note: This *hydroxylase*, as well as the liver *25-hydroxylase*, are cytochrome P450 (CYP) proteins (see p. 149).]

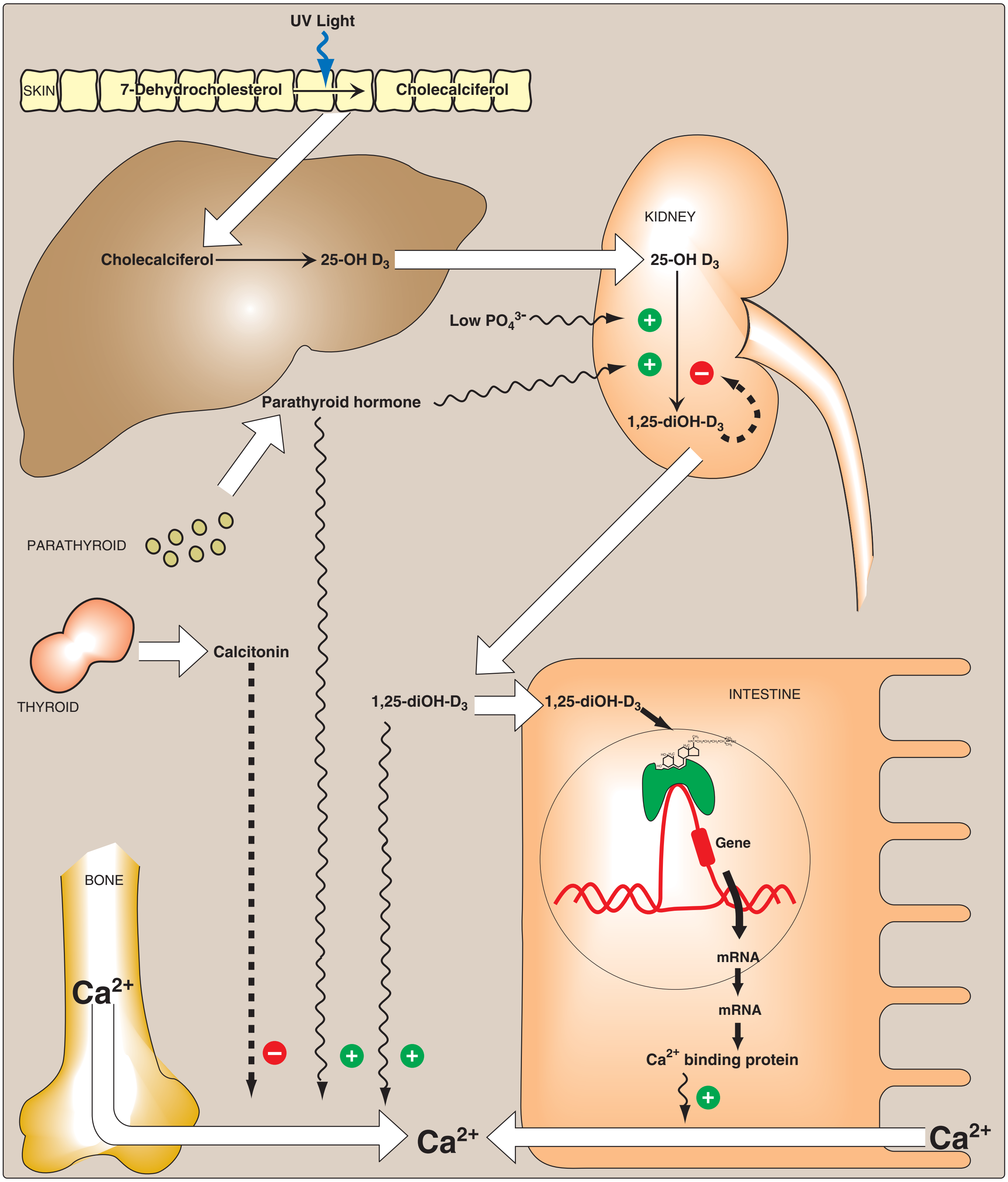

UV Light
SKIN
7-Dehydrocholesterol
Cholecalciferol
Cholecalciferol
25-OH D3
KIDNEY
25-OH D3
Low PO43-
+
+
−
1,25-diOH-D3
Parathyroid hormone
PARATHYROID
THYROID
Calcitonin
1,25-diOH-D3
1,25-diOH-D3
INTESTINE
Gene
mRNA
mRNA
Ca2+ binding protein
+
BONE
Ca2+
−
+
+
Ca2+
Ca2+

Figure 28.23
Metabolism and actions of vitamin D. [Note: Calcitonin, a thyroid hormone, decreases blood calcium by inhibiting mobilization from bone and reabsorption by the kidney.]

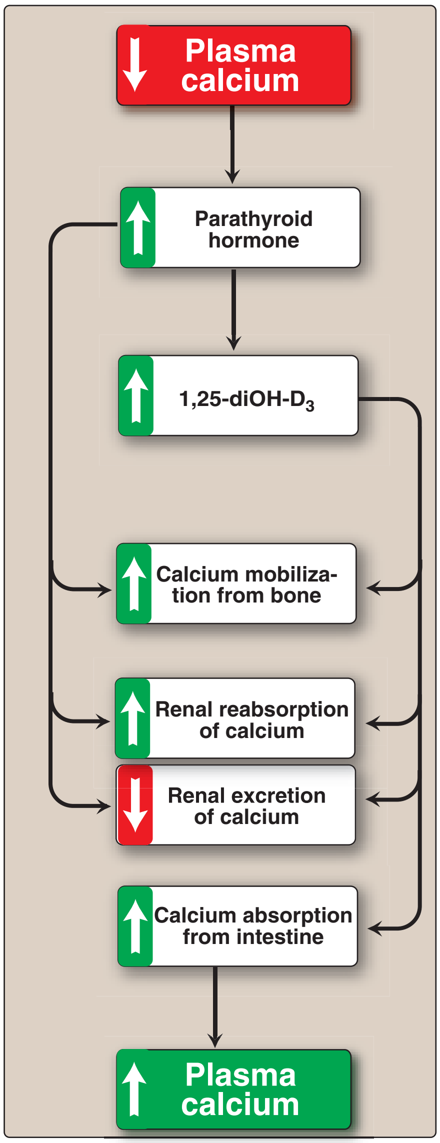

Plasma calcium
Parathyroid hormone
1,25-diOH-D3
Calcium mobilization from bone
Renal reabsorption of calcium
Renal excretion of calcium
Calcium absorption from intestine
Plasma calcium

Figure 28.24
Response to low plasma calcium.

2. **Regulation of 25-hydroxycholecalciferol 1-hydroxylase:** 1,25-diOH-D_3 is the most potent vitamin D metabolite. Its formation is tightly regulated by the level of plasma phosphate and calcium ions (Figure 28.24). *25-Hydroxycholecalciferol 1-hydroxylase* activity is increased directly by low plasma phosphate or indirectly by low plasma calcium, which triggers the release of parathyroid hormone (PTH). Hypocalcemia caused by insufficient dietary calcium thus results in elevated levels of plasma 1,25-diOH-D_3. *1-Hydroxylase* activity is also decreased by excess 1,25-diOH-D_3, the product of the reaction.

C. Function of vitamin D

The overall function of 1,25-diOH-D_3 is to maintain adequate plasma levels of calcium. It performs this function by: 1) increasing uptake of calcium by the intestine, 2) minimizing loss of calcium by the kidney, and 3) stimulating resorption of bone when necessary (see Figure 28.23).

1. **Effect of vitamin D on the intestine:** 1,25-diOH-D_3 stimulates intestinal absorption of calcium and phosphate. 1,25-diOH-D_3 enters the intestinal cell and binds to a cytosolic receptor. The 1,25-diOH-D_3–receptor complex then moves to the nucleus where it selectively interacts with the cellular DNA. As a result, calcium uptake is enhanced by an increased synthesis of a specific calcium-binding protein. Thus, the mechanism of action of 1,25-diOH-D_3 is typical of steroid hormones (see p. 240).

2. **Effect of vitamin D on bone:** 1,25-diOH-D_3 stimulates the mobilization of calcium and phosphate from bone by a process that requires protein synthesis and the presence of PTH. The result is an increase in plasma calcium and phosphate. Thus, bone is an important reservoir of calcium that can be mobilized to maintain plasma levels.

D. Distribution and requirement of vitamin D

Vitamin D occurs naturally in fatty fish, liver, and egg yolk. Milk, unless it is artificially fortified, is not a good source of the vitamin. AI for vitamin D is 200 IU to age 50, and 400-600 IU after age 50.

E. Clinical indications

1. **Nutritional rickets:** Vitamin D deficiency causes a net demineralization of bone, resulting in rickets in children and osteomalacia in adults (Figure 28.25). Rickets is characterized by the continued formation of the collagen matrix of bone, but incomplete mineralization, resulting in soft, pliable bones. In osteomalacia, demineralization of pre-existing bones increases their susceptibility to fracture. Insufficient exposure to daylight and/or deficiencies in vitamin D consumption occur predominantly in infants and the elderly. Vitamin D deficiency is more common in the northern latitudes, because less vitamin D synthesis occurs in the skin as a result of reduced exposure to ultraviolet light. [Note: The recommended intake of 200 IU/day (which corresponds to 5 µg of cholecalciferol) may be insufficient, because higher doses of 800 IU/day have been shown to reduce the inci-

dence of osteoporotic fractures.] Sufficient levels of serum 25-hydroxycholecalciferol (>75 nmol/L) have been linked to fall prevention in older people as well as to increased muscle strength and bone mass.

2. **Renal osteodystrophy:** Chronic renal failure results in decreased ability to form the active form of vitamin D. Supplementation with calcitriol is an effective therapy. [Note: Vitamin D supplementation is accompanied by phosphate reduction therapy to prevent hyperphosphatemia (due to renal failure) and precipitation of calcium phosphate crystals.]

3. **Hypoparathyroidism:** Lack of parathyroid hormone causes hypocalcemia and hyperphosphatemia. These patients may be treated with calcitriol and calcium supplementation.

F. Toxicity of vitamin D

Like all fat-soluble vitamins, vitamin D can be stored in the body and is only slowly metabolized. High doses (100,000 IU for weeks or months) can cause loss of appetite, nausea, thirst, and stupor. Enhanced calcium absorption and bone resorption results in hypercalcemia, which can lead to deposition of calcium in many organs, particularly the arteries and kidneys. The UL is 2000 IU/day.

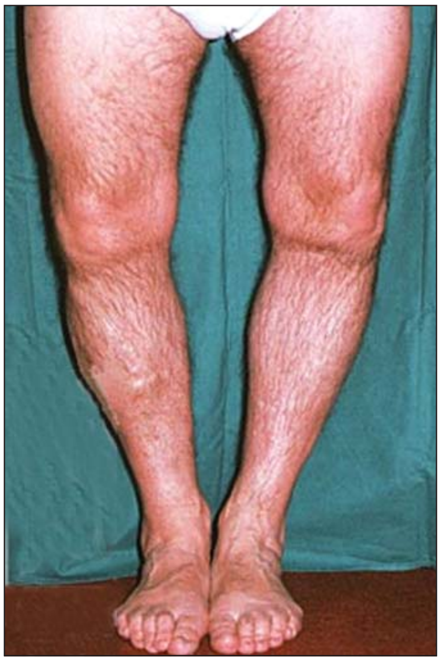


Figure 28.25
Bowed legs of middle-aged man with osteomalacia, a nutritional vitamin D deficiency that results in malformation of the skeleton.

XIII. VITAMIN K

The principal role of vitamin K is in the posttranslational modification of various blood clotting factors, in which it serves as a coenzyme in the carboxylation of certain glutamic acid residues present in these proteins. Vitamin K exists in several forms, for example, in plants as phylloquinone (or vitamin K_1), and in intestinal bacterial flora as menaquinone (or vitamin K_2). A synthetic form of vitamin K, menadione, is available.

A. Function of vitamin K

1. **Formation of γ-carboxyglutamate (Gla):** Vitamin K is required in the hepatic synthesis of prothrombin and blood clotting factors II, VII, IX, and X. These proteins are synthesized as inactive precursor molecules. Formation of the clotting factors requires the vitamin K–dependent carboxylation of glutamic acid residues to Gla residues (Figure 28.26). This forms a mature clotting factor that contains Gla and is capable of subsequent activation. The reaction requires O_2, CO_2, and the hydroquinone form of vitamin K. The formation of Gla is sensitive to inhibition by dicumarol, an anticoagulant occurring naturally in spoiled sweet clover, and by warfarin, a synthetic analog of vitamin K.

2. **Interaction of prothrombin with platelets:** The Gla residues of prothrombin are good chelators of positively charged calcium ions, because of the two adjacent, negatively charged carboxylate groups. The prothrombin–calcium complex is then able to bind to phospholipids essential for blood clotting on the surface of platelets. Attachment to the platelet increases the rate at which the proteolytic conversion of prothrombin to thrombin can occur (Figure 28.27).

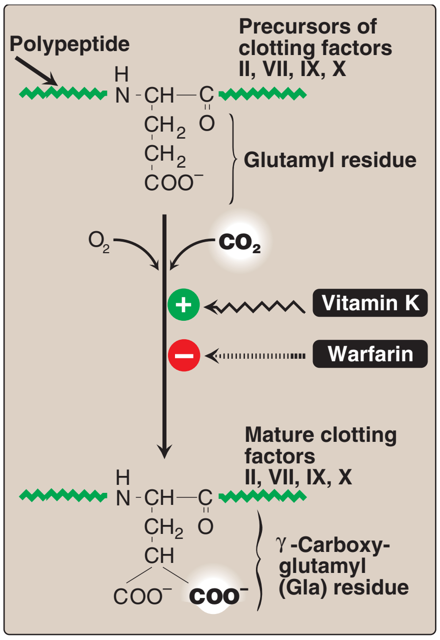

Polypeptide
Precursors of clotting factors II, VII, IX, X
H
N-CH—C
CH2 O
CH2
COO−
Glutamyl residue
O2
CO2
+
Vitamin K
−
Warfarin
Mature clotting factors II, VII, IX, X
H
N-CH—C
CH2 O
CH
COO− COO−
γ-Carboxyglutamyl (Gla) residue

Figure 28.26
Carboxylation of glutamate to form γ-carboxyglutamate (Gla).

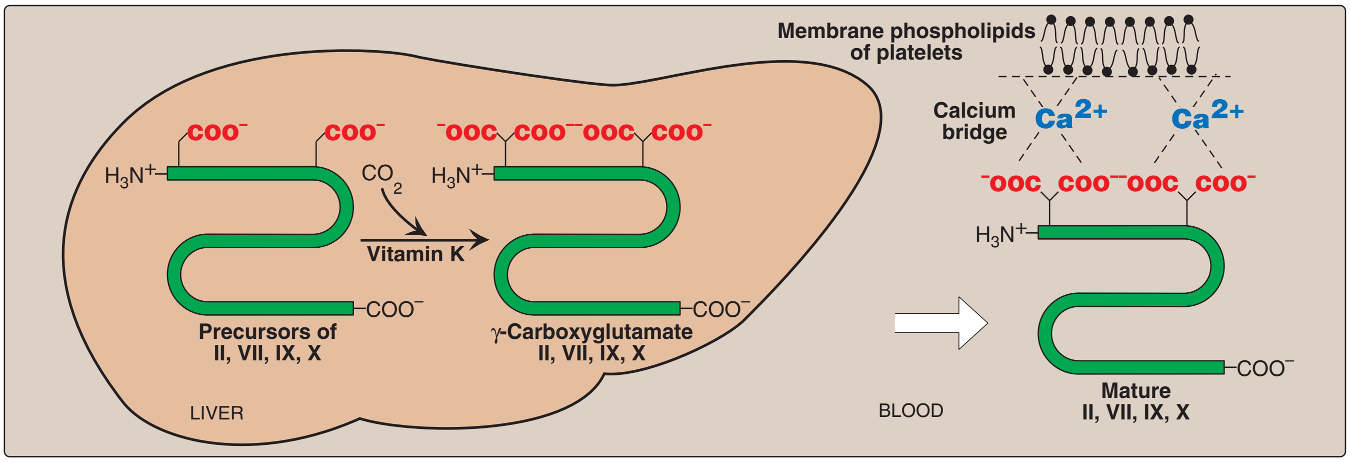


Figure 28.27
Role of vitamin K in blood coagulation.

3. **Role of Gla residues in other proteins:** Gla is also present in other proteins (for example, osteocalcin of bone, and in proteins such as protein C involved in limiting the formation of blood clots).

B. Distribution and requirement of vitamin K

Vitamin K is found in cabbage, kale, spinach, egg yolk, and liver. There is also extensive synthesis of the vitamin by the bacteria in the gut. AI for vitamin K is 120 µg/day for adult males and 90 µg for adult females.

C. Clinical indications

1. **Deficiency of vitamin K:** A true vitamin K deficiency is unusual because adequate amounts are generally produced by intestinal bacteria or obtained from the diet. If the bacterial population in the gut is decreased, for example, by antibiotics, the amount of endogenously formed vitamin is depressed, and this can lead to hypoprothrombinemia in the marginally malnourished individual, for example, a debilitated geriatric patient. This condition may require supplementation with vitamin K to correct the bleeding tendency. In addition, certain second-generation cephalosporins, for example, cefoperazone, cefamandole, and moxalactam cause hypoprothrombinemia, apparently by a warfarin-like mechanism. Consequently, their use in treatment is usually supplemented with vitamin K.

2. **Deficiency of vitamin K in the newborn:** Newborns have sterile intestines and so initially lack the bacteria that synthesize vitamin K. Because human milk provides only about one fifth of the daily requirement for vitamin K, it is recommended that all newborns receive a single intramuscular dose of vitamin K as prophylaxis against hemorrhagic disease.

D. Toxicity of vitamin K

Prolonged administration of large doses of synthetic vitamin K (menadione) can produce hemolytic anemia and jaundice in the infant, due to toxic effects on the membrane of red blood cells; therefore, it is no longer used to treat vitamin K deficiency. No UL has been set for vitamin K.

XIV. VITAMIN E

The E vitamins consist of eight naturally occurring tocopherols, of which α-tocopherol is the most active (Figure 28.28). The primary function of vitamin E is as an antioxidant in prevention of the nonenzymic oxidation of cell components, for example, polyunsaturated fatty acids, by molecular oxygen and free radicals.

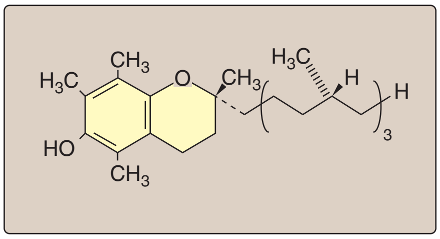


Figure 28.28
Structure of vitamin E.

A. Distribution and requirements of vitamin E

Vegetable oils are rich sources of vitamin E, whereas liver and eggs contain moderate amounts. The RDA for α-tocopherol is 15 mg for adults. The vitamin E requirement increases as the intake of polyunsaturated fatty acid increases.

B. Deficiency of vitamin E

Vitamin E deficiency is almost entirely restricted to premature infants. When observed in adults, it is usually associated with defective lipid absorption or transport. The signs of human vitamin E deficiency include sensitivity of erythrocytes to peroxide, and the appearance of abnormal cellular membranes.

C. Clinical indications

Vitamin E is not recommended for the prevention of chronic disease, such as coronary heart disease or cancer. Clinical trials using vitamin E supplementation have been uniformly disappointing. For example, subjects in the Alpha-Tocopherol, Beta-Carotene Cancer Prevention Study trial who received high doses of vitamin E not only lacked cardiovascular benefit but also had an increased incidence of stroke.

D. Toxicity of vitamin E

Vitamin E is the least toxic of the fat-soluble vitamins, and no toxicity has been observed at doses of 300 mg/day.

> Populations consuming diets high in fruits and vegetables show decreased incidence of some chronic diseases. However, clinical trials have failed to show a definitive benefit from supplements of vitamins A, C, or E; multivitamins with folic acid; or antioxidant combinations for the prevention of cancer or cardiovascular disease.

The vitamins are summarized in Figure 28.29.

VITAMIN	OTHER NAMES	ACTIVE FORM	FUNCTION
Folic acid	—	Tetrahydrofolic acid	Transfer one-carbon units; Synthesis of methionine, purines, and thymidine monophosphate
Vitamin B_{12}	Cobalamin	Methylcobalamin Deoxyadenosyl cobalamin	Coenzyme for reactions: Homocysteine → methionine Methylmalonyl CoA → succinyl CoA
Vitamin C	Ascorbic acid	Ascorbic acid	Antioxidant Coenzyme for hydroxylation reactions, for example: In procollagen: Proline → hydroxyproline Lysine → hydroxylysine
Vitamin B_6	Pridoxine Pyridoxamine Pyridoxal	Pyridoxal phosphate	Coenzyme for enzymes, particularly in amino acid metabolism
Vitamin B_1	Thiamine	Thiamine pyrophosphate	Coenzyme of enzymes catalyzing: Pyruvate → acetyl CoA α-Ketoglutarate → Succinyl CoA Ribose 5-P + xylulose 5-P → Sedoheptulose 7-P + Glyceraldehyde 3-P Branched-chain amino acid oxidation
Niacin	Nicotinic acid Nicotinamide	NAD^+, $NADP^+$	Electron transfer
Vitamin B_2	Riboflavin	FMN, FAD	Electron transfer
Biotin	—	Enzyme-bound biotin	Carboxylation reactions
Pantothenic acid	—	Coenzyme A	Acyl carrier
			WATER-SOLUBLE
			FAT-SOLUBLE
Vitamin A	Retinol Retinal Retinoic acid β-Carotene	Retinol Retinal Retinoic acid	Maintenance of reproduction Vision Promotion of growth Differentiation and maintenance of epithelial tissues Gene expression
Vitamin D	Cholecalciferol Ergocalciferol	1,25-Dihydroxycholecalciferol	Calcium uptake
Vitamin K	Menadione Menaquinone Phylloquinone	Menadione Menaquinone Phylloquinon	γ-Carboxylation of glutamate residue in clotting and other proteins
Vitamin E	α-Tocopherol	Any of several tocopherol derivatives	Antioxidant

Figure 28.29 (continued on next page)
Summary of vitamins.

DEFICIENCY	SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS	TOXICITY	NOTES
Megaloblastic anemia Neural tube defects	Anemia Birth defects	None	Administration of high levels of folate can mask vitamin B_{12} deficiency
Pernicious anemia Dementia Spinal degeneration	Megaloblastic anemia Neuropsychiatric symptoms	None	Pernicious anemia is treated with IM or high-dose oral vitamin B_{12}
Scurvy	Sore, spongy gums Loose teeth Poor wound healing	None	Benefits of supplementation not established in controlled trials
Rare	Glossitis Neuropathy	Yes	Deficiency can be induced by isoniazid Sensory neuropathy occurs at high doses
Beriberi Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome (most common in alcoholics)	Tachycardia, vomiting, convulsions Apathy, loss of memory, eye movements	None	—
Pellagra	Dermatitis Diarrhea Dementia	None	High doses of niacin used to treat hyperlipidemia
Rare	Dermatitis Angular stomatitis	None	—
Rare	—	None	Consumption of large amounts of raw egg whites (which contains a protein, avidin, that binds biotin) can induce a biotin deficiency
Rare	—	None	—
			WATER-SOLUBLE
			FAT-SOLUBLE
infertility Night blindness Retardation of growth Xerophthalmia	Increased visual threshold Dryness of cornea	Yes	β-Carotene not acutely toxic, but supplementation is not recommended Excess vitamin A can increase incidence of fractures
Rickets (in children) Osteomalacia (in adults)	Soft, pliable bones	Yes	Vitamin D is not a true vitamin because it can be synthesized in skin. Application of sunscreen lotions or presence of dark skin color decreases this synthesis.
Newborn Rare in adults	Bleeding	Rare	Vitamin K produced by intestinal bacteria. Vitamin K deficiency common in newborns Intramuscular treatment with vitamin K is recommended at birth
Rare	Red blood cell fragility leads to hemolytic anemia	None	Benefits of supplementation not established in controlled trials

Figure 28.29 (continued from previous page)
Summary of vitamins.

Study Questions

Choose the ONE correct answer.

28.1 Which one of the following statements concerning vitamin B_{12} is correct?

A. The cofactor form is vitamin B_{12} itself.
B. It is involved in the transfer of amino groups.
C. It requires a specific glycoprotein for its absorption.
D. It is present in plant products.
E. Its deficiency is most often caused by a lack of the vitamin in the diet.

Correct answer = C. Vitamin B_{12} requires intrinsic factor for its absorption. A deficiency of vitamin B_{12} is most often caused by a lack of intrinsic factor. However, high does of the vitamin, given orally, are sufficiently absorbed to serve as treatment for pernicious anemia. The cofactor forms are methylcobalamin and deoxyadenosylcobalamin. Vitamin B_6, not vitamin B_{12}, is involved in the transfer of amino groups. B_{12} is found in food derived from animal sources.

28.2 Retinol:

A. can be enzymically formed from retinoic acid.
B. in its ester form is transported from the intestine to the liver in chylomicrons.
C. is the light-absorbing portion of rhodopsin.
D. is phosphorylated and dephosphorylated during the visual cycle.
E. mediates most of the actions of the retinoids.

Correct answer = B. Retinyl esters are incorporated into chylomicrons. Retinoic acid cannot be reduced to retinol. Retinal, the aldehyde form of retinol, is the chromophore for rhodopsin. Retinal is photoisomerized during the visual cycle. Retinoic acid, not retinol, is the most important retinoid.

28.3 Which one of the following statements concerning vitamin D is correct?

A. Chronic renal failure requires the oral administration of 1,25-dihydroxycholecalciferol.
B. It is required in the diet of individuals exposed to sunlight.
C. 25-Hydroxycholecalciferol is the active form of the vitamin.
D. Vitamin D opposes the effect of parathyroid hormone.
E. A deficiency in vitamin D results in an increased secretion of calcitonin.

Correct answer = A. Renal failure results in the decreased ability to form the active form of the vitamin, which must be supplied. The vitamin is not required in individuals exposed to sunlight. 1,25-Dihydroxycholecalciferol is the active form of the vitamin. Vitamin D and parathyroid hormone both increase serum calcium. A deficiency of vitamin D decreases the secretion of calcitonin.

28.4 Vitamin K:

A. plays an essential role in preventing thrombosis.
B. increases the coagulation time in newborn infants with hemorrhagic disease.
C. is present in high concentration in cow or breast milk.
D. is synthesized by intestinal bacteria.
E. is a water-soluble vitamin.

Correct answer = D. Vitamin K is essential for clot formation, decreases coagulation time, and is present in low concentrations in milk. It is one of four fat-soluble vitamins.

28.5 Deficiency of which vitamin results in: beri-beri; scurvy; pellagra; night blindness; rickets or osteomalacia; pernicious anemia; megaloblastic anemia; bleeding?

Thiamin; vitamin C; niacin; vitamin A, vitamin D; vitamin B12 (due primarily to a deficiency of intrinsic factor), both B12 and folate; vitamin K.

UNIT VI:
Storage and Expression of Genetic Information

DNA Structure, Replication, and Repair

29

I. OVERVIEW

Nucleic acids are required for the storage and expression of genetic information. There are two chemically distinct types of nucleic acids: deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) and ribonucleic acid (RNA, see Chapter 30). DNA, the repository of genetic information, is present not only in chromosomes in the nucleus of eukaryotic organisms, but also in mitochondria and the chloroplasts of plants. Prokaryotic cells, which lack nuclei, have a single chromosome, but may also contain nonchromosomal DNA in the form of plasmids. The genetic information found in DNA is copied and transmitted to daughter cells through DNA replication. The DNA contained in a fertilized egg encodes the information that directs the development of an organism. This development may involve the production of billions of cells. Each cell is specialized, expressing only those functions that are required for it to perform its role in maintaining the organism. Therefore, DNA must be able to not only replicate precisely each time a cell divides, but also to have the information that it contains be selectively expressed. Transcription (RNA synthesis) is the first stage in the expression of genetic information (see Chapter 30). Next, the code contained in the nucleotide sequence of messenger RNA molecules is translated (protein synthesis, see Chapter 31), thus completing gene expression. The regulation of gene expression is discussed in Chapter 32.

> The flow of information from DNA to RNA to protein is termed the "central dogma" of molecular biology (Figure 29.1), and is descriptive of all organisms, with the exception of some viruses that have RNA as the repository of their genetic information.

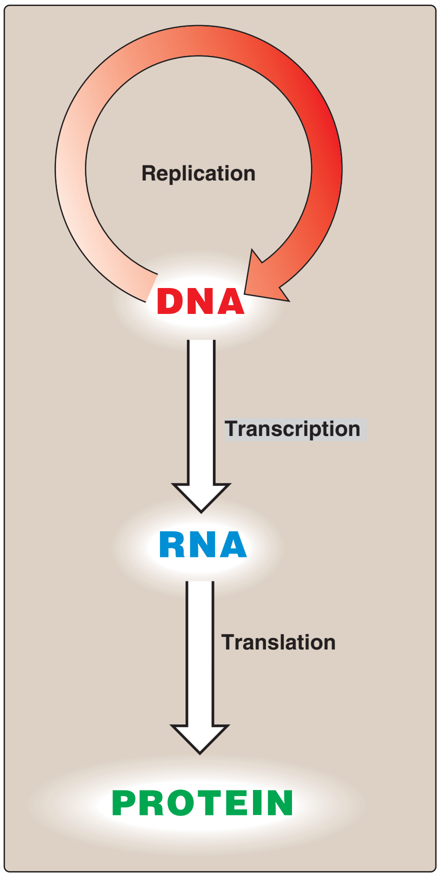


Figure 29.1
The "central dogma" of molecular biology.

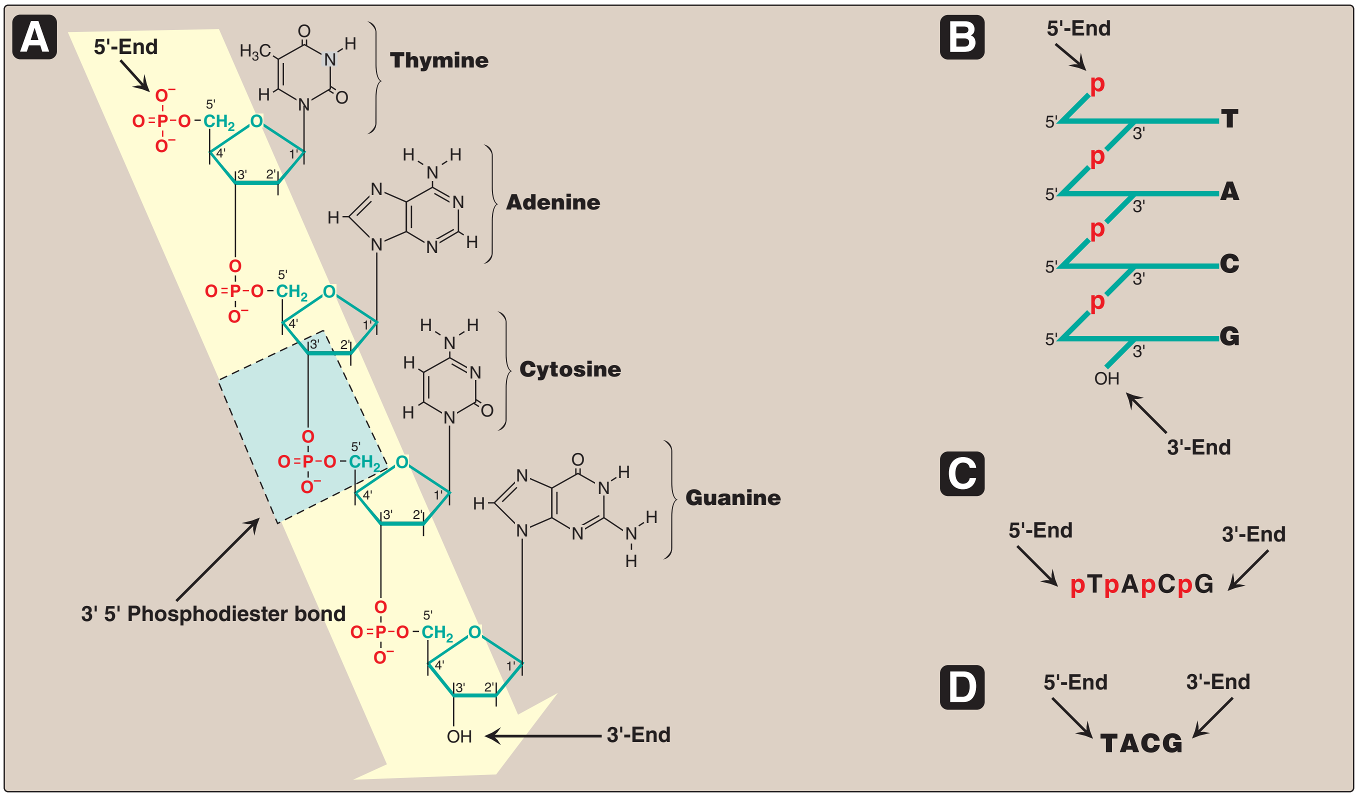


Figure 29.2
A. DNA chain with the nucleotide sequence shown written in the 5'→ 3' direction. A 3' →5'-phosphodiester bond is shown highlighted in the blue box, and the deoxyribose-phosphate backbone is shaded in yellow. B. The DNA chain written in a more stylized form, emphasizing the ribose–phosphate backbone. C. A simpler representation of the nucleotide sequence. D. The simplest (and most common) representation, with the abbreviations for the bases written in the conventional 5'→3' direction.

II. STRUCTURE OF DNA

DNA is a polymer of deoxyribonucleoside monophosphates covalently linked by 3'→5'–phosphodiester bonds. With the exception of a few viruses that contain single-stranded (ss) DNA, DNA exists as a double-stranded (ds) molecule, in which the two strands wind around each other, forming a double helix. In eukaryotic cells, DNA is found associated with various types of proteins (known collectively as nucleoprotein) present in the nucleus, whereas in prokaryotes, the protein–DNA complex is present in a nonmembrane-bound region known as the nucleoid.

A. 3'→5'-Phosphodiester bonds

Phosphodiester bonds join the 3'-hydroxyl group of the deoxypentose of one nucleotide to the 5'-hydroxyl group of the deoxypentose of an adjacent nucleotide through a phosphate group (Figure 29.2). The resulting long, unbranched chain has polarity, with both a 5'-end (the end with the free phosphate) and a 3'-end (the end with the free hydroxyl) that are not attached to other nucleotides. The bases located along the resulting deoxyribose–phosphate backbone are, by convention, always written in sequence from the 5'-end of the chain to the 3'-end. For example, the sequence of bases in the DNA shown in Figure 29.2 is read “thymine, adenine, cytosine, guanine” (5'-TACG-3'). Phosphodiester linkages between nucleotides (in DNA or RNA) can be cleaved hydrolytically by chemicals, or hydrolyzed enzymatically by a family of *nucleases*: *deoxyribonucleases* for DNA and *ribonucleases* for RNA. [Note: Only RNA is cleaved by alkali.]

B. Double helix

In the double helix, the two chains are coiled around a common axis called the axis of symmetry. The chains are paired in an antiparallel manner, that is, the 5'-end of one strand is paired with the 3'-end of the other strand (Figure 29.3). In the DNA helix, the hydrophilic deoxyribose–phosphate backbone of each chain is on the outside of the molecule, whereas the hydrophobic bases are stacked inside. The overall structure resembles a twisted ladder. The spatial relationship between the two strands in the helix creates a major (wide) groove and a minor (narrow) groove. These grooves provide access for the binding of regulatory proteins to their specific recognition sequences along the DNA chain. Certain anticancer drugs, such as dactinomycin (actinomycin D), exert their cytotoxic effect by intercalating into the narrow groove of the DNA double helix, thus interfering with DNA and RNA synthesis.[1]

1. **Base pairing:** The bases of one strand of DNA are paired with the bases of the second strand, so that an adenine is always paired with a thymine and a cytosine is always paired with a guanine. [Note: The base pairs are perpendicular to the axis of the helix (see Figure 29.3).] Therefore, one polynucleotide chain of the DNA double helix is always the complement of the other. Given the sequence of bases on one chain, the sequence of bases on the complementary chain can be determined (Figure 29.4). [Note: The specific base pairing in DNA leads to the Chargaff Rule: In any sample of dsDNA, the amount of adenine equals the amount of thymine, the amount of guanine equals the amount of cytosine, and the total amount of purines equals the total amount of pyrimidines.] The base pairs are held together by hydrogen bonds: two between A and T and three between G and C (Figure 29.5). These hydrogen bonds, plus the hydrophobic interactions between the stacked bases, stabilize the structure of the double helix.

2. **Separation of the two DNA strands in the double helix:** The two strands of the double helix separate when hydrogen bonds between the paired bases are disrupted. Disruption can occur in the laboratory if the pH of the DNA solution is altered so that the nucleotide bases ionize, or if the solution is heated. [Note: Phosphodiester bonds are not broken by such treatment.] When DNA is heated, the temperature at which one half of the helical structure is lost is defined as the melting temperature (T_m). The loss of helical structure in DNA, called denaturation, can be monitored by measuring its absorbance at 260 nm. [Note: ssDNA has a higher relative absorbance at this wavelength than does dsDNA.] Because there are three hydrogen bonds between G and C but

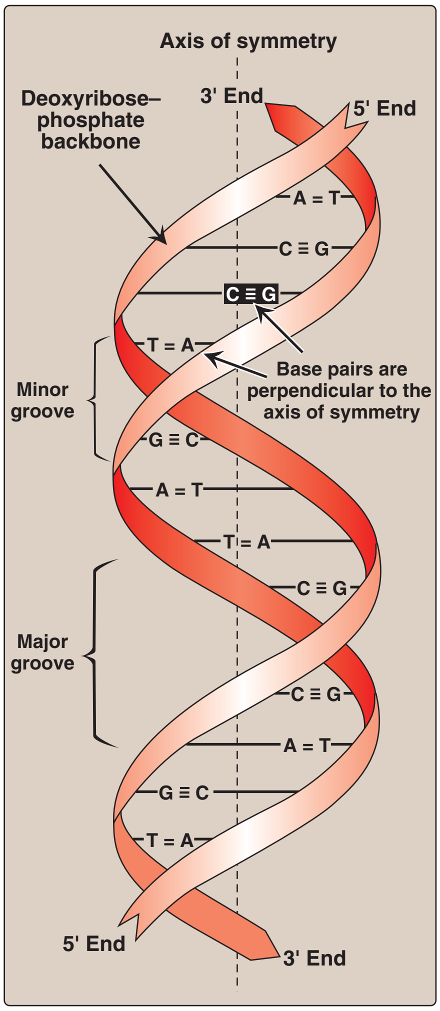


Figure 29.3
DNA double helix, illustrating some of its major structural features.

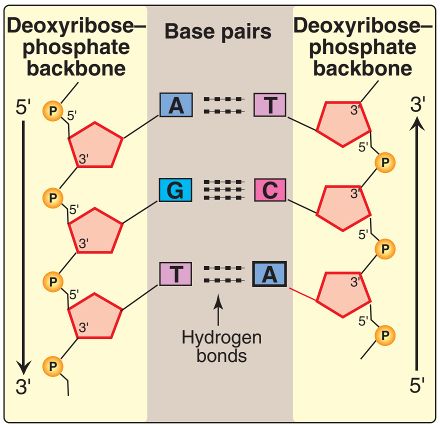

Deoxyribose–phosphate backbone
Base pairs
Deoxyribose–phosphate backbone
5'
3'
P
A
T
G
C
T
A
Hydrogen bonds
3'
5'

Figure 29.4
Two complementary DNA sequences.

---

[1] See Chapter 39 in ***Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Pharmacology*** for a discussion of the anticancer drug, actinomycin D.

only two between A and T, DNA that contains high concentrations of A and T denatures at a lower temperature than G- and C-rich DNA (Figure 29.6). Under appropriate conditions, complementary DNA strands can reform the double helix by the process called renaturation (or reannealing).

3. **Structural forms of the double helix:** There are three major structural forms of DNA: the B form, described by Watson and Crick in 1953, the A form, and the Z form. The B form is a right-handed helix with ten residues per 360° turn of the helix, and with the planes of the bases perpendicular to the helical axis. Chromosomal DNA is thought to consist primarily of B-DNA (Figure 29.7 illustrates a space-filling model of B-DNA). The A form is produced by moderately dehydrating the B form. It is also a right-handed helix, but there are 11 base pairs per turn, and the planes of the base pairs are tilted 20° away from the perpendicular to the helical axis. The conformation found in DNA–RNA hybrids or RNA–RNA double-stranded regions is probably very close to the A form. Z-DNA is a left-handed helix that contains about 12 base pairs per turn (see Figure 29.7). [Note: The deoxyribose–phosphate backbone "zigzags," hence, the name "Z"-DNA.] Stretches of Z-DNA can occur naturally in regions of DNA that have a sequence of alternating purines and pyrimidines, for example, poly GC. Transitions between the B and Z helical forms of DNA may play a role in regulating gene expression.

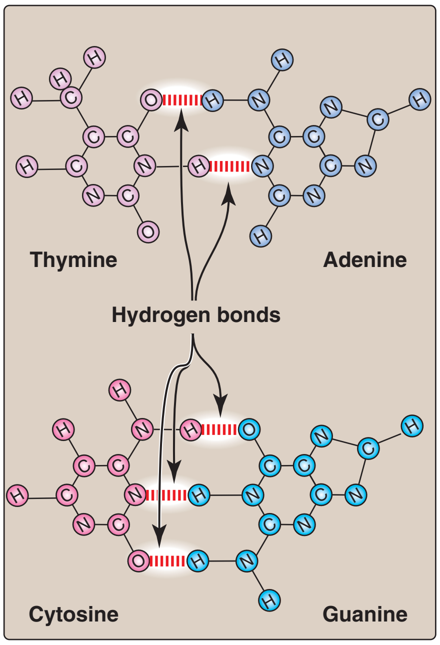


Figure 29.5
Hydrogen bonds between complementary bases.

C. Linear and circular DNA molecules

Each chromosome in the nucleus of a eukaryote contains one long, linear molecule of dsDNA, which is bound to a complex mixture of proteins (histone and non-histone, see p. 409) to form chromatin. Eukaryotes have closed, circular DNA molecules in their mitochondria, as do plant chloroplasts. A prokaryotic organism typically contains a single, double-stranded, supercoiled, circular chromosome. Each prokaryotic chromosome is associated with non-histone proteins that can condense the DNA to form a nucleoid. In addition, most species of bacteria also contain small, circular, extrachromosomal DNA molecules called plasmids. Plasmid DNA carries genetic information, and undergoes replication that may or may not be synchronized to chromosomal division.[2]

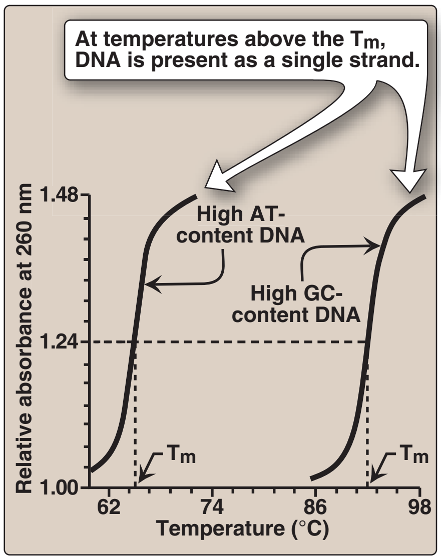


Figure 29.6
Melting temperatures (T_m) of DNA molecules with different nucleotide compositions. (At a wavelength of 260 nm, single-stranded DNA has a higher relative absorbance than does double-stranded DNA.)

Plasmids may carry genes that convey antibiotic resistance to the host bacterium, and may facilitate the transfer of genetic information from one bacterium to another.

[Note: The use of plasmids as vectors in recombinant DNA technology is described in Chapter 33.]

---

[2] See Chapter 7 in ***Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Microbiology*** for a discussion of plasmids.

III. STEPS IN PROKARYOTIC DNA SYNTHESIS

When the two strands of the DNA double helix are separated, each can serve as a template for the replication of a new complementary strand. This produces two daughter molecules, each of which contains two DNA strands with an antiparallel orientation (see Figure 29.3). This process is called semiconservative replication because, although the parental duplex is separated into two halves (and, therefore, is not "conserved" as an entity), each of the individual parental strands remains intact in one of the two new duplexes (Figure 29.8). The enzymes involved in the DNA replication process are template-directed *polymerases* that can synthesize the complementary sequence of each strand with extraordinary fidelity. The reactions described in this section were first known from studies of the bacterium Escherichia coli (E. coli), and the description given below refers to the process in prokaryotes. DNA synthesis in higher organisms is less well understood, but involves the same types of mechanisms. In either case, initiation of DNA replication commits the cell to continue the process until the entire genome has been replicated.

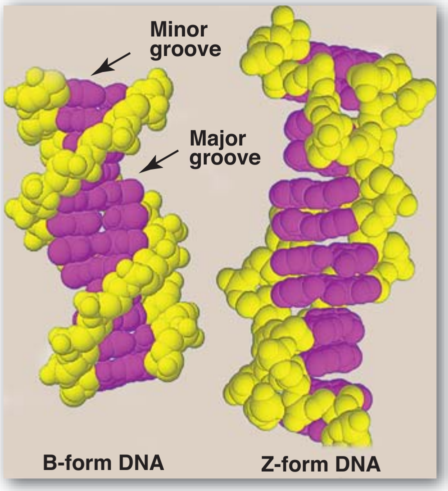


Figure 29.7
Structures of B-DNA and Z-DNA.

A. Separation of the two complementary DNA strands

In order for the two strands of the parental double helical DNA to be replicated, they must first separate (or "melt") over a small region, because the *polymerases* use only ssDNA as a template. In prokaryotic organisms, DNA replication begins at a single, unique nucleotide sequence—a site called the origin of replication (Figure 29.9A). [Note: This is referred to as a consensus sequence, because the order of nucleotides is essentially the same at each site.] This site includes a short sequence composed almost exclusively of AT base pairs that facilitate melting. In eukaryotes, replication begins at multiple sites along the DNA helix (Figure 29.9B). Having multiple origins of replication provides a mechanism for rapidly replicating the great length of the eukaryotic DNA molecules.

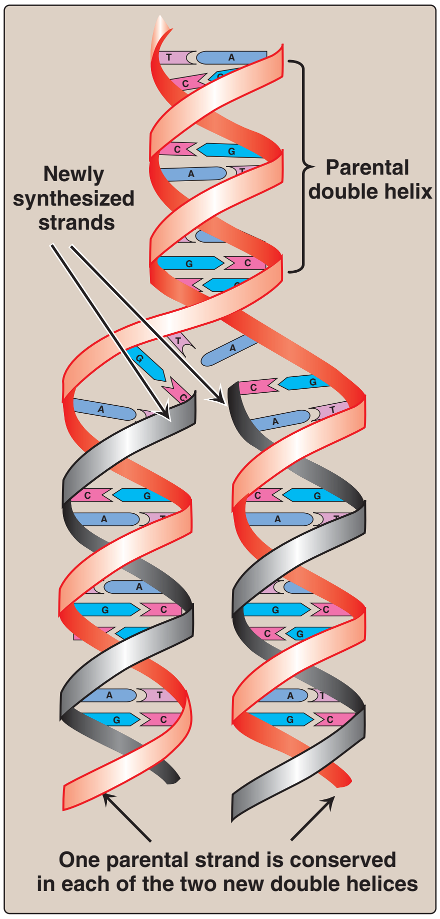

Newly synthesized strands
Parental double helix
One parental strand is conserved in each of the two new double helices

Figure 29.8
Semiconservative replication of DNA.

B. Formation of the replication fork

As the two strands unwind and separate, they form a "V" where active synthesis occurs. This region is called the replication fork. It moves along the DNA molecule as synthesis occurs. Replication of dsDNA is bidirectional—that is, the replication forks move in opposite directions from the origin, generating a replication bubble (see Figure 29.9).

1. **Proteins required for DNA strand separation:** Initiation of DNA replication requires the recognition of the origin of replication by a group of proteins that form the prepriming complex. These proteins are responsible for maintaining the separation of the parental strands, and for unwinding the double helix ahead of the advancing replication fork. These proteins include the following:

   a. **DnaA protein:** *DnaA* protein binds to specific nucleotide sequences at the origin of replication, causing short, tandemly arranged (one after the other) AT-rich regions in the origin to melt. Melting is ATP-dependent, and results in strand separation with the formation of localized regions of ssDNA.

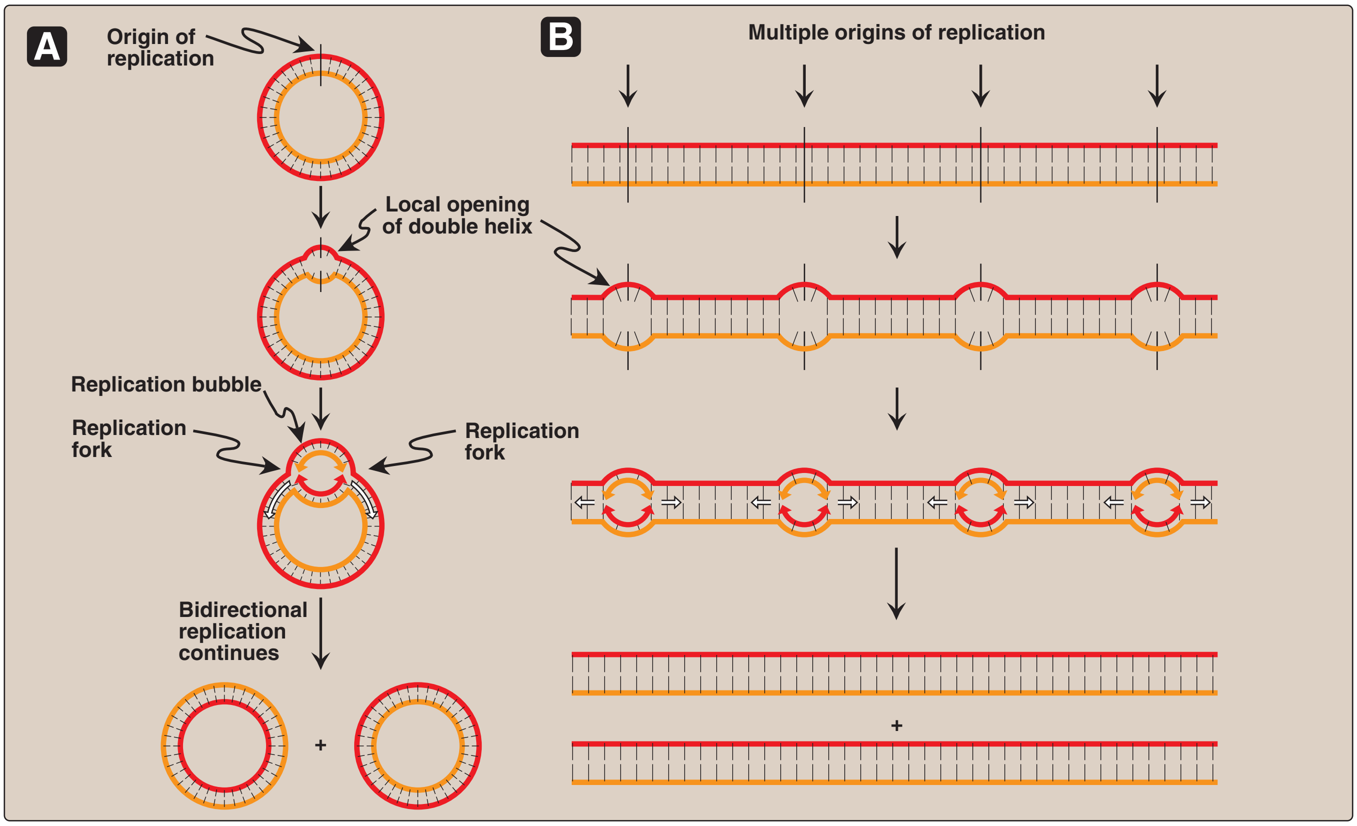

A
Origin of replication
Local opening of double helix
Replication bubble
Replication fork
Replication fork
Bidirectional replication continues
+
B
Multiple origins of replication
+

Figure 29.9
Replication of DNA: origins and replication forks. A. Small prokaryotic circular DNA. B. Very long eukaryotic DNA.

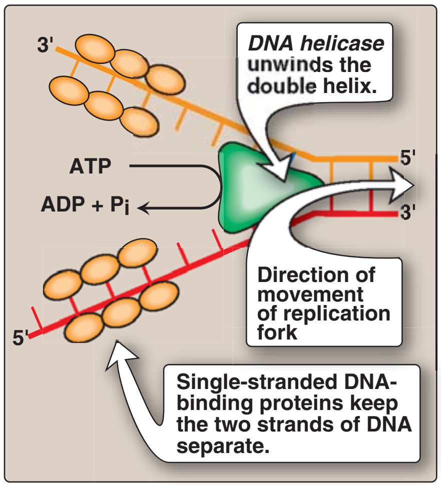

3'
DNA helicase unwinds the double helix.
ATP
ADP + Pi
5'
3'
Direction of movement of replication fork
5'
Single-stranded DNA-binding proteins keep the two strands of DNA separate.

Figure 29.10
Proteins responsible for maintaining the separation of the parental strands and unwinding the double helix ahead of the advancing replication fork.

b. DNA helicases: These enzymes bind to ssDNA near the replication fork, and then move into the neighboring double-stranded region, forcing the strands apart—in effect, unwinding the double helix. *Helicases* require energy provided by ATP (Figure 29.10). [Note: *DnaB* is the principal *helicase* of replication in E. coli. Its binding to DNA requires *DnaC*.]

c. Single-stranded DNA-binding (SSB) proteins: These proteins bind to the ssDNA generated by *helicases* (see Figure 29.10). They bind cooperatively—that is, the binding of one molecule of SSB protein makes it easier for additional molecules of SSB protein to bind tightly to the DNA strand. The SSB proteins are not enzymes, but rather serve to shift the equilibrium between dsDNA and ssDNA in the direction of the single-stranded forms. These proteins not only keep the two strands of DNA separated in the area of the replication origin, thus providing the single-stranded template required by *polymerases*, but also protect the DNA from *nucleases* that degrade ssDNA.

2. Solving the problem of supercoils: As the two strands of the double helix are separated, a problem is encountered, namely, the appearance of positive supercoils (also called supertwists) in the region of DNA ahead of the replication fork (Figure 29.11). The accumulating positive supercoils interfere with further unwinding of the double helix. [Note: Supercoiling can be demonstrated by tightly grasping one end of a helical telephone cord while twisting the other end. If the cord is twisted in the direction of tightening the coils, the cord will wrap around itself in space to form positive supercoils. If the cord is twisted in the direction of loosening the coils, the cord will wrap around itself in the opposite direction to form negative supercoils.] To solve this problem, there is a group of enzymes called *DNA topoisomerases*, which are responsible for removing supercoils in the helix.

a. **Type I DNA topoisomerases:** These enzymes reversibly cut one strand of the double helix. They have both *nuclease* (strand-cutting) and *ligase* (strand-resealing) activities. They do not require ATP, but rather appear to store the energy from the phosphodiester bond they cleave, reusing the energy to reseal the strand (Figure 29.12). Each time a transient "nick" is created in one DNA strand, the intact DNA strand is passed through the break before it is resealed, thus relieving ("relaxing") accumulated supercoils. *Type I topoisomerases* relax negative supercoils (that is, those that contain fewer turns of the helix than relaxed DNA) in E. coli, and both negative and positive supercoils (that is, those that contain fewer or more turns of the helix than relaxed DNA) in eukaryotic cells.

b. **Type II DNA topoisomerases:** These enzymes bind tightly to the DNA double helix and make transient breaks in both strands. The enzyme then causes a second stretch of the DNA double helix to pass through the break and, finally, reseals the break (Figure 29.13). As a result, both negative and positive supercoils can be relieved by this ATP-requiring process. *Type II DNA topoisomerases* are also required in both prokaryotes and eukaryotes for the separation of interlocked molecules of DNA following chromosomal replication. *DNA gyrase*, a *Type II topoisomerase* found in bacteria and plants, has the unusual property of being able to introduce negative supercoils into relaxed circular DNA using energy from the hydrolysis of ATP. This facilitates the future replication of DNA because the negative supercoils neutralize the positive supercoils introduced during opening of the double helix. It also aids in the transient strand separation required during transcription (see p. 417).

Anticancer agents, such as etoposide,[3] target human *topoisomerase II*. Bacterial *DNA gyrase* is a unique target of a group of antimicrobial agents called quinolones, for example, ciprofloxacin.[4]

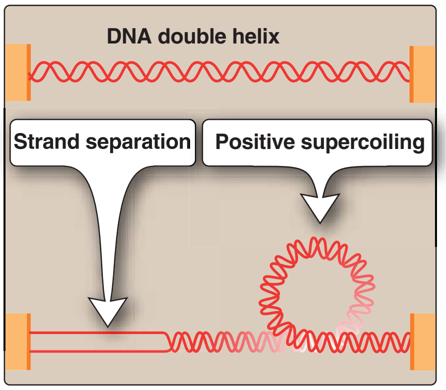


Figure 29.11
Positive supercoiling resulting from DNA strand separation.

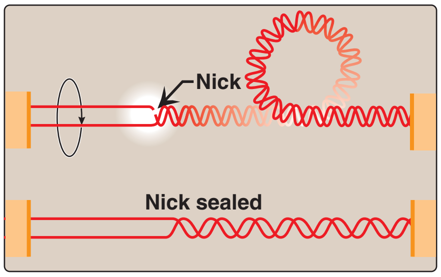


Figure 29.12
Action of *Type I DNA topoisomerases*.

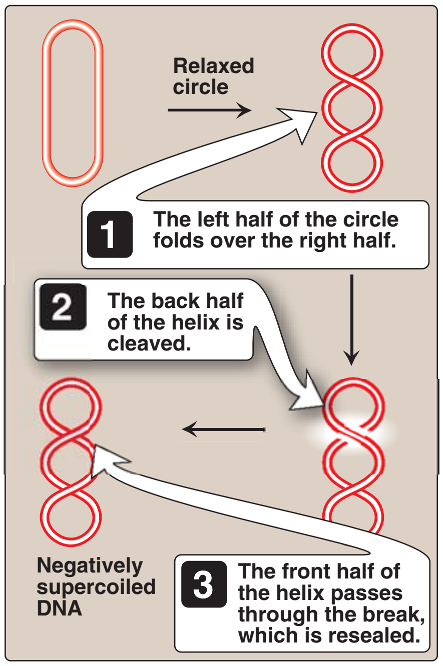

Relaxed circle
1 The left half of the circle folds over the right half.
2 The back half of the helix is cleaved.
Negatively supercoiled DNA
3 The front half of the helix passes through the break, which is resealed.

Figure 29.13
Action of *Type II DNA topoisomerase*.

---

[3] See Chapter 39 in ***Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Pharmacology*** for a discussion of etoposide as an anticancer agent.

[4] See Chapter 33 in ***Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Pharmacology*** for a discussion of the quinolones.

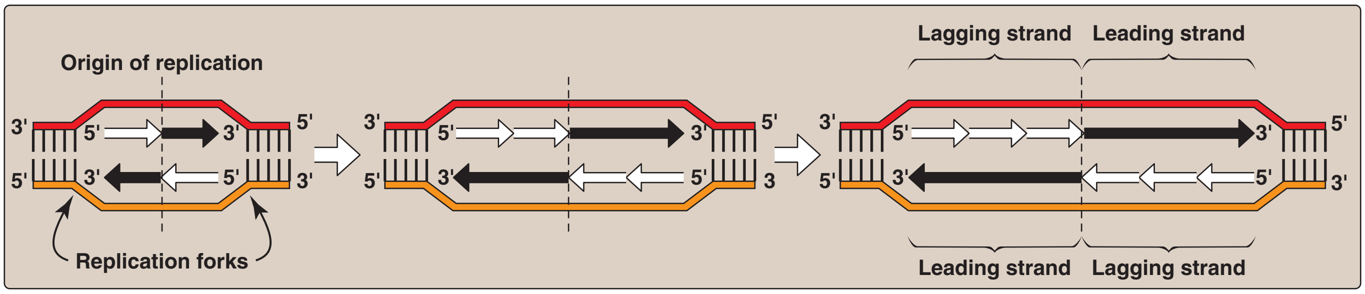

Origin of replication
Replication forks
Lagging strand
Leading strand
Leading strand
Lagging strand
3'
5'

Figure 29.14
Discontinuous synthesis of DNA.

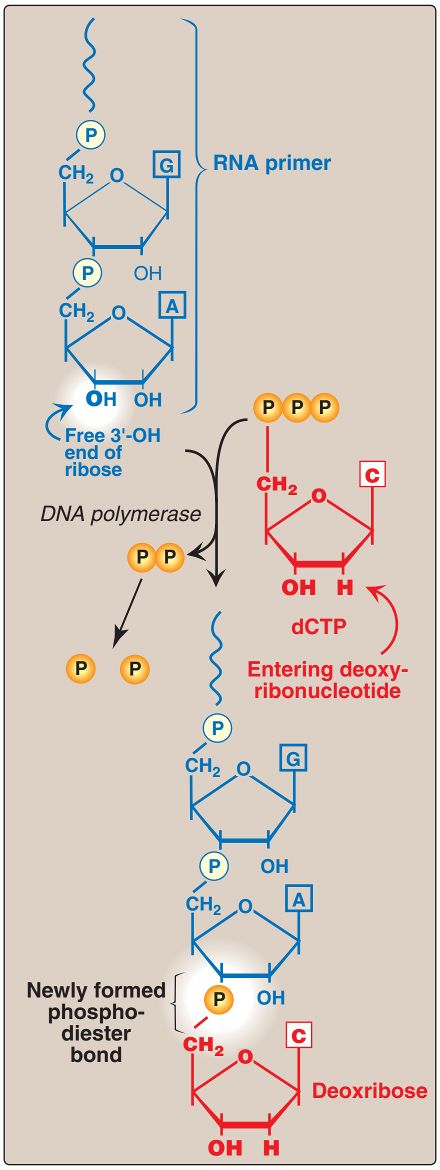

RNA primer
G
A
CH2
O
OH
P
Free 3'-OH end of ribose
DNA polymerase
PPP
PP
P
C
dCTP
H
Entering deoxyribonucleotide
Newly formed phosphodiester bond
Deoxribose

Figure 29.15
Use of an RNA primer to initiate DNA synthesis.

C. Direction of DNA replication

The *DNA polymerases* responsible for copying the DNA templates are only able to "read" the parental nucleotide sequences in the 3'→5' direction, and they synthesize the new DNA strands only in the 5'→3' (antiparallel) direction. Therefore, beginning with one parental double helix, the two newly synthesized stretches of nucleotide chains must grow in opposite directions—one in the 5'→3' direction toward the replication fork and one in the 5'→3' direction away from the replication fork (Figure 29.14). This feat is accomplished by a slightly different mechanism on each strand.

1. **Leading strand:** The strand that is being copied in the direction of the advancing replication fork is called the leading strand and is synthesized continuously.

2. **Lagging strand:** The strand that is being copied in the direction away from the replication fork is synthesized discontinuously, with small fragments of DNA being copied near the replication fork. These short stretches of discontinuous DNA, termed Okazaki fragments, are eventually joined (ligated) to become a single, continuous strand. The new strand of DNA produced by this mechanism is termed the lagging strand.

D. RNA primer

DNA polymerases cannot initiate synthesis of a complementary strand of DNA on a totally single-stranded template. Rather, they require an RNA primer—that is, a short, double-stranded region consisting of RNA base-paired to the DNA template, with a free hydroxyl group on the 3'-end of the RNA strand (Figure 29.15). This hydroxyl group serves as the first acceptor of a deoxynucleotide by action of *DNA polymerase*. [Note: Recall that *glycogen synthase* also requires a primer (see p. 126).]

1. **Primase:** A specific *RNA polymerase*, called *primase* (*DnaG*), synthesizes the short stretches of RNA (approximately ten nucleotides long) that are complementary and antiparallel to the DNA template. In the resulting hybrid duplex, the U in RNA pairs with A in DNA. As shown in Figure 29.16, these short RNA sequences are constantly being synthesized at the replication fork on the lagging strand, but only one RNA sequence at the origin of replication is required on the leading strand. The substrates for

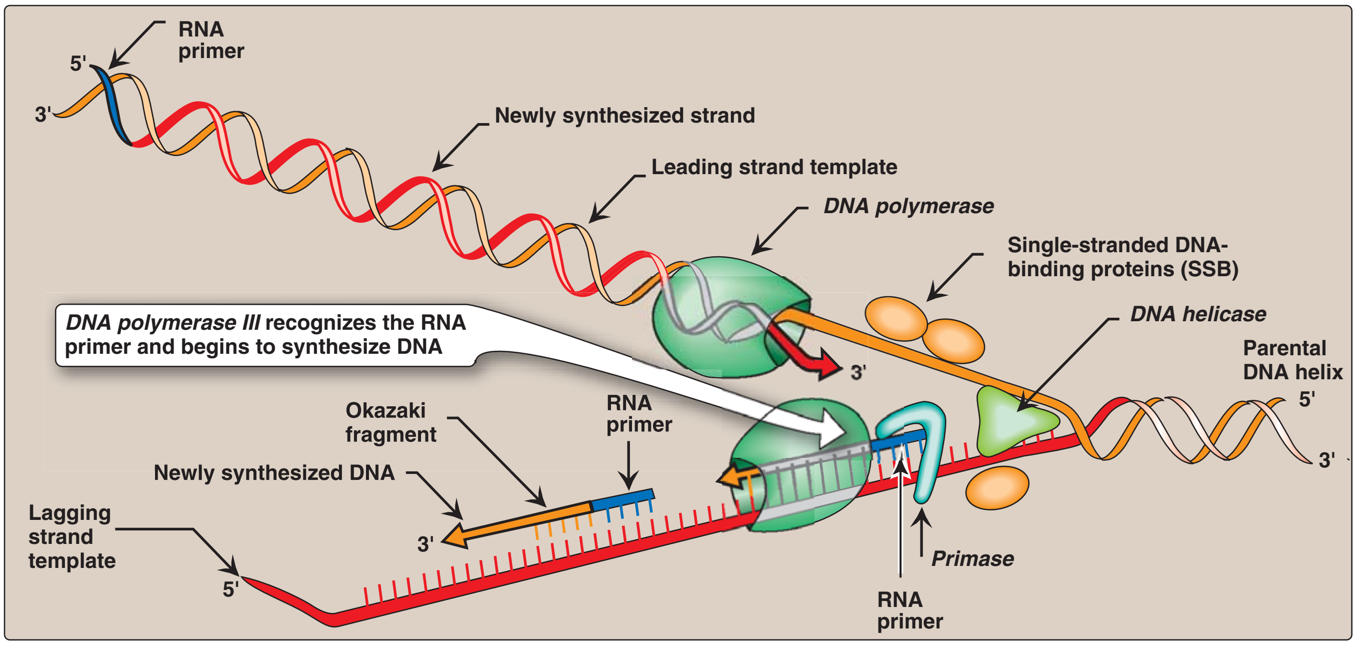

RNA primer
5'
3'
Newly synthesized strand
Leading strand template
DNA polymerase
Single-stranded DNA-binding proteins (SSB)
DNA helicase
Parental DNA helix
5'
3'
3'
DNA polymerase III recognizes the RNA primer and begins to synthesize DNA
Okazaki fragment
RNA primer
Newly synthesized DNA
Lagging strand template
3'
5'
Primase
RNA primer

Figure 29.16
Elongation of the leading and lagging strands.

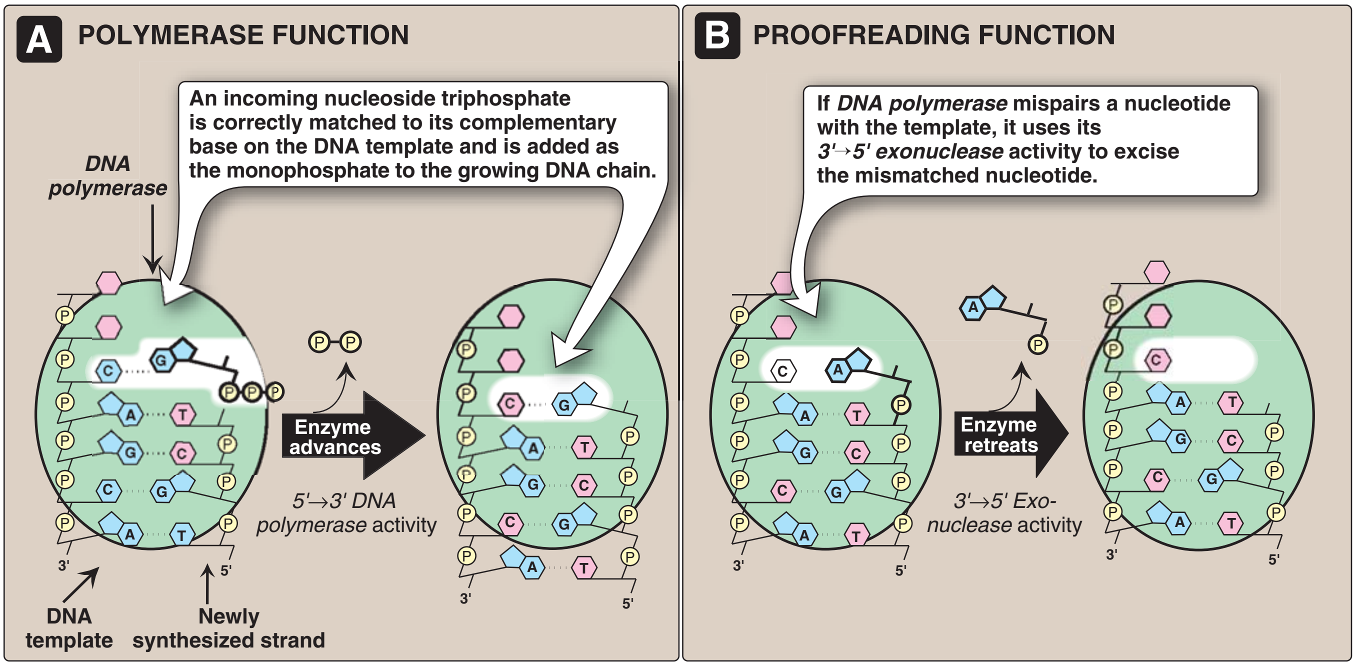
this process are 5'-ribonucleoside triphosphates, and pyrophosphate is released as each ribonucleoside monophosphate is added through formation of a 3'→5' phosphodiester bond. [Note: The RNA primer is later removed as described on p. 405.]

2. **Primosome:** The addition of *primase* converts the prepriming complex of proteins required for DNA strand separation (see p. 399) to a primosome. The primosome makes the RNA primer required for leading strand synthesis, and initiates Okazaki fragment formation in lagging strand synthesis. As with DNA synthesis, the direction of synthesis of the primer is 5'→3'.

E. Chain elongation

Prokaryotic (and eukaryotic) *DNA polymerases* elongate a new DNA strand by adding deoxyribonucleotides, one at a time, to the 3'-end of the growing chain (see Figure 29.16). The sequence of nucleotides that are added is dictated by the base sequence of the template strand with which the incoming nucleotides are paired.

1. **DNA polymerase III:** DNA chain elongation is catalyzed by *DNA polymerase III*. Using the 3'-hydroxyl group of the RNA primer as the acceptor of the first deoxyribonucleotide, *DNA polymerase III* begins to add nucleotides along the single-stranded template that specifies the sequence of bases in the newly synthesized chain. *DNA polymerase III* is a highly “processive” enzyme—that is, it remains bound to the template strand as it moves along, and does not diffuse away and then rebind before adding each new nucleotide. The processivity of *DNA polymerase III* is the result of



A POLYMERASE FUNCTION

An incoming nucleoside triphosphate is correctly matched to its complementary base on the DNA template and is added as the monophosphate to the growing DNA chain.

B PROOFREADING FUNCTION

If *DNA polymerase* mispairs a nucleotide with the template, it uses its *3'→5' exonuclease* activity to excise the mismatched nucleotide.

Figure 29.17
3'→5'-Exonuclease activity enables *DNA polymerase III* to “proofread” the newly synthesized DNA strand.

its β subunit forming a ring that encircles and moves along the template strand of the DNA, thus serving as a sliding DNA clamp. The new strand grows in the 5'→3' direction, antiparallel to the parental strand (see Figure 29.16). The nucleotide substrates are 5'-deoxyribonucleoside triphosphates. Pyrophosphate (PP$_i$) is released when each new deoxynucleoside monophosphate is added to the growing chain (see Figure 29.15). Hydrolysis of PP$_i$ to 2P$_i$ means that a total of two high-energy bonds are used to drive the addition of each deoxynucleotide.

> The production of PP$_i$ with subsequent hydrolysis to 2P$_i$, as seen in the synthesis of DNA and RNA, is a common theme in biochemistry. Removal of the PP$_i$ product drives a reaction in the forward direction, making it essentially irreversible.

All four deoxyribonucleoside triphosphates (dATP, dTTP, dCTP, and dGTP) must be present for DNA elongation to occur. If one of the four is in short supply, DNA synthesis stops when that nucleotide is depleted.

2. **Proofreading of newly synthesized DNA:** It is highly important for the survival of an organism that the nucleotide sequence of DNA be replicated with as few errors as possible. Misreading of the template sequence could result in deleterious, perhaps lethal, mutations. To ensure replication fidelity, *DNA polymerase III* has, in addition to its *5'→3' polymerase* activity, a “proofreading” activity

(*3'→5' exonuclease*, Figure 29.17). As each nucleotide is added to the chain, *DNA polymerase III* checks to make certain the added nucleotide is, in fact, correctly matched to its complementary base on the template. If it is not, the *3'→5' exonuclease* activity corrects the mistake. [Note: The enzyme requires an improperly base-paired 3'-hydroxy terminus and, therefore, does not degrade correctly paired nucleotide sequences.] For example, if the template base is cytosine and the enzyme mistakenly inserts an adenine instead of a guanine into the new chain, the *3'→5' exonuclease* activity hydrolytically removes the misplaced nucleotide. The *5'→3' polymerase* activity then replaces it with the correct nucleotide containing guanine (see Figure 29.17). [Note: The proofreading *exonuclease* activity requires movement in the 3'→5' direction, not 5'→3' like the *polymerase* activity. This is because the excision must be done in the reverse direction from that of synthesis.]

F. Excision of RNA primers and their replacement by DNA

DNA polymerase III continues to synthesize DNA on the lagging strand until it is blocked by proximity to an RNA primer. When this occurs, the RNA is excised and the gap filled by *DNA polymerase I*.

1. **5'→3' Exonuclease activity:** In addition to having the *5'→3' polymerase* activity that synthesizes DNA, and the *3'→5' exonuclease* activity that proofreads the newly synthesized DNA chain like *DNA polymerase III*, *DNA polymerase I* also has a *5'→3' exonuclease* activity that is able to hydrolytically remove the RNA primer. [Note: These activities are *exonucleases* because they remove one nucleotide at a time from the end of the DNA chain, rather than cleaving the chain internally as do the *endonucleases* (Figure 29.18).] First, *DNA polymerase I* locates the space ("nick") between the 3'-end of the DNA newly synthesized by *DNA polymerase III* and the 5'-end of the adjacent RNA primer. Next, *DNA polymerase I* hydrolytically removes the RNA nucleotides "ahead" of itself, moving in the 5'→3' direction (*5'→3' exonuclease* activity). As it removes the RNA, *DNA polymerase I* replaces it with deoxyribonucleotides, synthesizing DNA in the 5'→3' direction (*5'→3' polymerase* activity). As it synthesizes the DNA, it also "proofreads" the new chain using *3'→5' exonuclease* activity. This removal/synthesis/proofreading continues, one nucleotide at a time, until the RNA primer is totally degraded and the gap is filled with DNA (Figure 29.19).

2. **Differences between 5'→3' and 3'→5' exonucleases:** The *5'→3' exonuclease* activity of *DNA polymerase I* differs from the *3'→5' exonuclease* used by both *DNA polymerase I* and *III* in two important ways. First, *5'→3' exonuclease* can remove one nucleotide at a time from a region of DNA that is properly base-paired. The nucleotides it removes can be either ribonucleotides or deoxyribonucleotides. Second, *5'→3' exonuclease* can also remove groups of altered nucleotides in the 5'→3' direction, removing from one to ten nucleotides at a time. This ability is important in the repair of some types of damaged DNA.

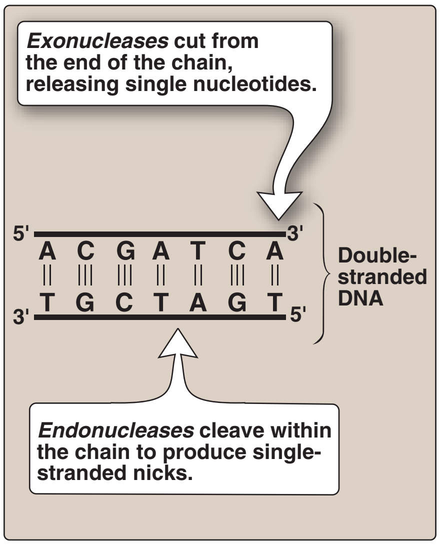

Exonucleases **cut from the end of the chain, releasing single nucleotides.**
5'
3'
A C G A T C A
T G C T A G T
3'
5'
Double-stranded DNA
Endonucleases **cleave within the chain to produce single-stranded nicks.**

Figure 29.18
Endonuclease versus *exonuclease* activity.

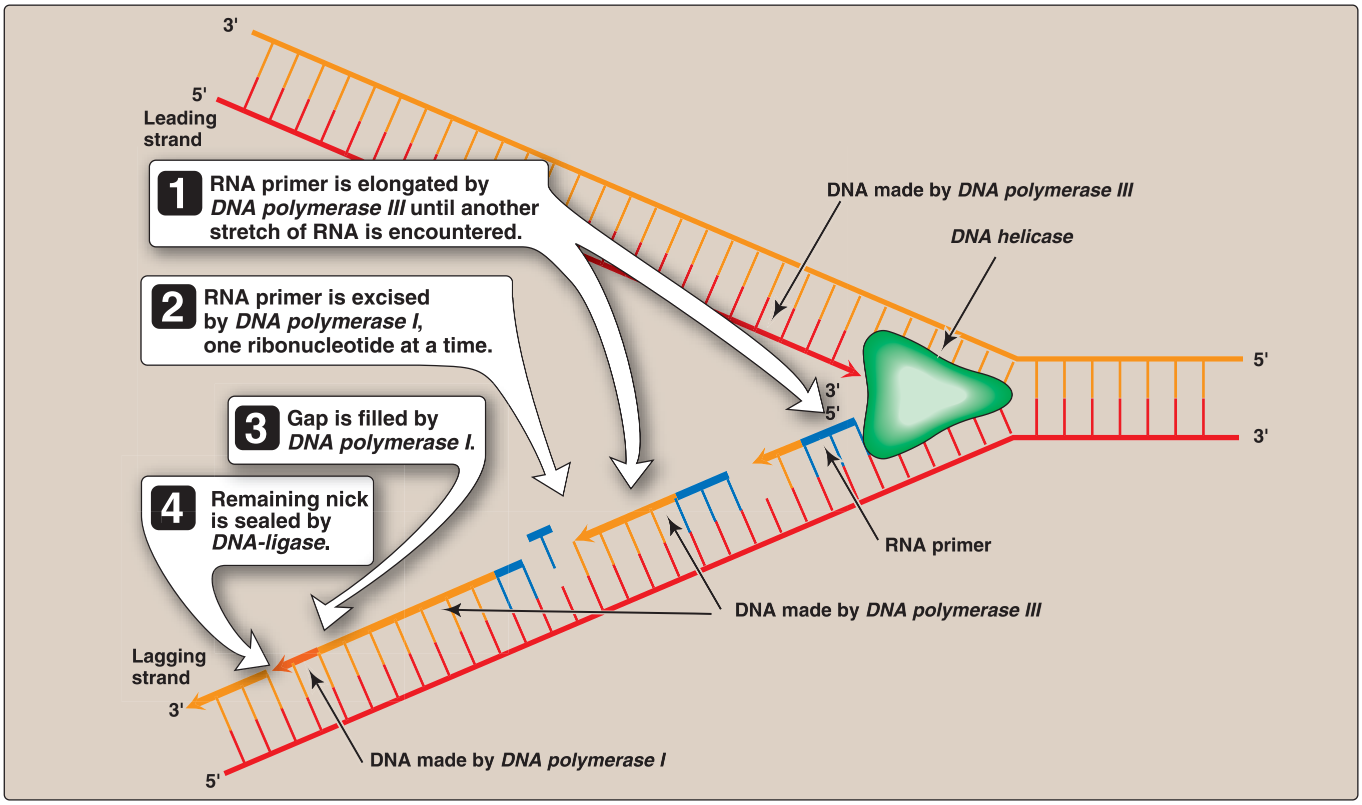

3'
5'
Leading strand
1 RNA primer is elongated by *DNA polymerase III* until another stretch of RNA is encountered.
2 RNA primer is excised by *DNA polymerase I*, one ribonucleotide at a time.
3 Gap is filled by *DNA polymerase I*.
4 Remaining nick is sealed by *DNA-ligase*.
DNA made by *DNA polymerase III*
DNA helicase
5'
3'
3'
5'
RNA primer
DNA made by *DNA polymerase III*
Lagging strand
3'
5'
DNA made by *DNA polymerase I*

Figure 29.19
Removal of RNA primer and filling of the resulting "gaps" by *DNA polymerase I*.

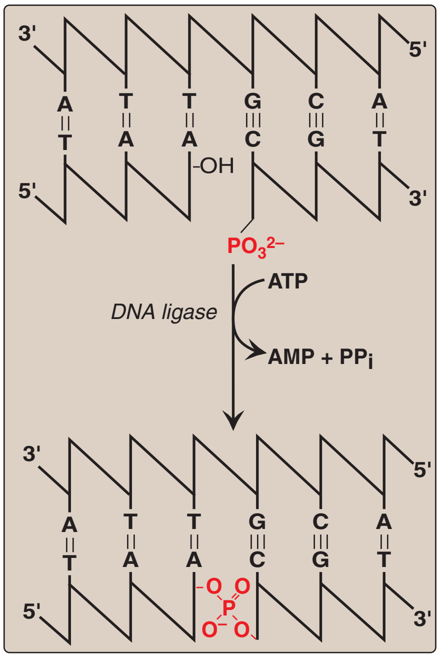

3'
5'
A T T G C A
T A A C G T
5'
3'
-OH
PO_3^{2-}
ATP
DNA ligase
AMP + PP_i
3'
5'
A T T G C A
T A A C G T
5'
3'
O O P O⁻ O

Figure 29.20
Formation of a phosphodiester bond by *DNA ligase.* [Note: AMP is linked to *ligase* then the 5'phosphate and released.]

G. DNA ligase

The final phosphodiester linkage between the 5'-phosphate group on the DNA chain synthesized by *DNA polymerase III* and the 3'-hydroxyl group on the chain made by *DNA polymerase I* is catalyzed by *DNA ligase* (Figure 29.20). The joining of these two stretches of DNA requires energy, which in most organisms is provided by the cleavage of ATP to AMP + PP_i.

IV. EUKARYOTIC DNA REPLICATION

The process of eukaryotic DNA replication closely follows that of prokaryotic DNA synthesis. Some differences, such as the multiple origins of replication in eukaryotic cells versus single origins of replication in prokaryotes, have already been noted. Eukaryotic single-stranded DNA-binding proteins and ATP-dependent *DNA helicases* have been identified, whose functions are analogous to those of the prokaryotic enzymes previously discussed. In contrast, RNA primers are removed by *RNase H* and *FEN1* rather than by a *DNA polymerase*.

A. The eukaryotic cell cycle

The events surrounding eukaryotic DNA replication and cell division (mitosis) are coordinated to produce the cell cycle (Figure 29.21). The period preceding replication is called the G_1 phase (Gap1). DNA replication occurs during the S (synthesis) phase. Following

DNA synthesis, there is another period (G_2 phase, or Gap2) before mitosis (M). Cells that have stopped dividing, such as mature neurons, are said to have gone out of the cell cycle into the G_0 phase. Cells can leave the G_0 phase and reenter the early G_1 phase to resume division. [Note: The cell cycle is controlled at a series of "checkpoints" that prevent entry into the next phase of the cycle until the preceding phase has been completed. Two key classes of proteins that control the progress of a cell through the cell cycle are the cyclins and *cyclin-dependent kinases* (*Cdk*).]

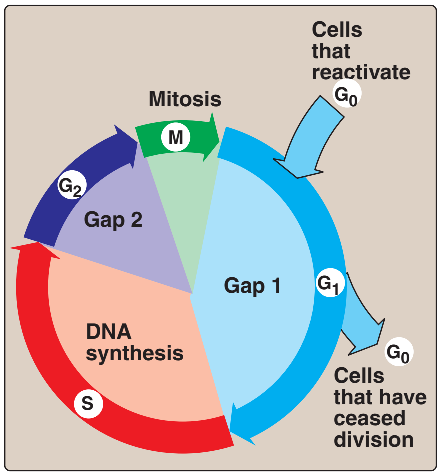


Figure 29.21
The eukaryotic cell cycle.

B. Eukaryotic DNA polymerases

At least five key eukaryotic *DNA polymerases* have been identified and categorized on the basis of molecular weight, cellular location, sensitivity to inhibitors, and the templates or substrates on which they act. They are designated by Greek letters rather than by Roman numerals (Figure 29.22).

1. **Pol α:** *Pol α* is a multisubunit enzyme. One subunit has *primase* activity, which initiates strand synthesis on the leading strand and at the beginning of each Okazaki fragment on the lagging strand. The *primase* subunit synthesizes a short RNA primer that is extended by the *pol α 5′→3′ polymerase* activity, generating a short piece of DNA.

2. **Pol ε and pol δ:** *Pol ε* is thought to be recruited to complete DNA synthesis on the leading strand whereas *pol δ* elongates the Okazaki fragments of the lagging strand, each using *3′→5′ exonuclease* activity to proofread the newly synthesized DNA. [Note: *DNA polymerase* ε associates with the protein, proliferating cell nuclear antigen (PCNA), which serves as a sliding DNA clamp in much the same way the β subunit of *DNA polymerase III* does in E. coli, thus ensuring high processivity.].

3. **Pol β and pol γ:** *Pol β* is involved in "gap filling" in DNA repair (see below). *Pol γ* replicates mitochondrial DNA.

POLYMERASE	FUNCTION	PROOFREADING*
Pol α (alpha)	• **Contains primase** • **Initiates DNA synthesis**	–
Pol β (beta)	• **Repair**	–
Pol γ (gamma)	• **Replicates mitochondrial DNA**	+
Pol δ (delta)	• **Thought to elongate Okazaki fragments of the lagging strand**	+
Pol ε (epsilon)	• **Thought to elongate the leading strand**	+

Figure 29.22
Activities of eukaryotic *DNA polymerases* (*pols*). *3′→5′ exonuclease activity.

C. Telomeres

Telomeres are complexes of noncoding DNA plus proteins located at the ends of linear chromosomes. They maintain the structural integrity of the chromosome, preventing attack by *nucleases*, and allow repair systems to distinguish a true end from a break in dsDNA. In humans, telomeric DNA consists of several thousand tandem repeats of a noncoding hexameric sequence, AG3T2, base-paired to a complementary region of Cs and As. The GT-rich strand is longer than its CA complement, leaving ssDNA a few hundred nucleotides in length at the 3′-end. The single-stranded region is thought to fold back on itself, forming a loop structure that is stabilized by protein.

1. **Telomere shortening:** Eukaryotic cells face a special problem in replicating the ends of their linear DNA molecules. Following removal of the RNA primer from the extreme 5′-end of the lagging strand, there is no way to fill in the remaining gap with DNA. Consequently, in most normal human somatic cells, telomeres shorten with each successive cell division. Once telomeres are

shortened beyond some critical length, the cell is no longer able to divide and is said to be senescent. In germ cells and other stem cells, as well as in cancer cells, telomeres do not shorten and the cells do not senesce. This is a result of the presence of a ribonucleoprotein, *telomerase*, which maintains telomeric length in these cells.

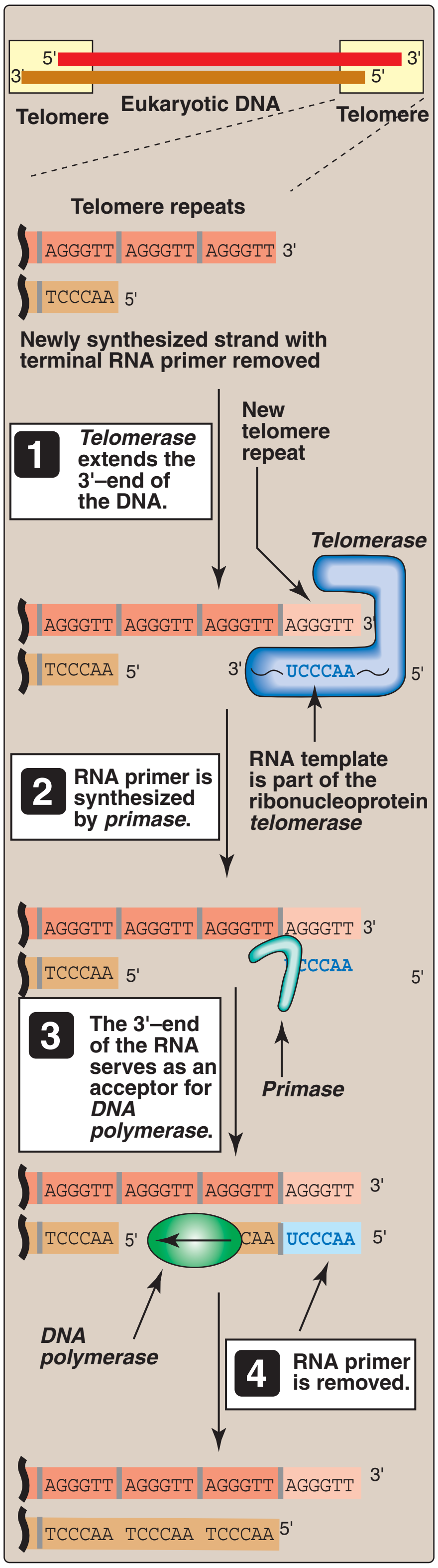

5'
3'
3'
5'
Telomere
Eukaryotic DNA
Telomere
Telomere repeats
AGGGTT AGGGTT AGGGTT 3'
TCCCAA 5'
Newly synthesized strand with terminal RNA primer removed
1 *Telomerase* extends the 3'–end of the DNA.
New telomere repeat
Telomerase
AGGGTT AGGGTT AGGGTT AGGGTT 3'
TCCCAA 5'
3' UCCCAA 5'
2 RNA primer is synthesized by *primase*.
RNA template is part of the ribonucleoprotein *telomerase*
AGGGTT AGGGTT AGGGTT AGGGTT 3'
TCCCAA 5'
CCCAA
5'
3 The 3'–end of the RNA serves as an acceptor for *DNA polymerase*.
Primase
AGGGTT AGGGTT AGGGTT AGGGTT 3'
TCCCAA 5'
CAA UCCCAA 5'
DNA polymerase
4 RNA primer is removed.
AGGGTT AGGGTT AGGGTT AGGGTT 3'
TCCCAA TCCCAA TCCCAA 5'

Figure 29.23
Mechanism of action of *telomerase*.

2. **Telomerase:** This complex contains a protein that acts as a *reverse transcriptase*, and a short piece of RNA that acts as a template. The CA-rich RNA template base-pairs with the GT-rich, single-stranded 3'-end of telomeric DNA (Figure 29.23). The *reverse transcriptase* uses the RNA template to synthesize DNA in the usual 5'→3' direction, extending the already longer 3'-end. *Telomerase* then translocates to the newly synthesized end, and the process is repeated. Once the GT-rich strand has been lengthened, *primase* can use it as a template to synthesize an RNA primer. The RNA primer is extended by *DNA polymerase*, and the primer is removed.

> Telomeres may be viewed as mitotic clocks in that their length in most cells is inversely related to the number of times the cells have divided. The study of telomeres is providing insight into the biology of aging and cancer.

D. Reverse transcriptases

Reverse transcriptases, as seen with *telomerase,* are RNA-directed *DNA polymerases*. A *reverse transcriptase* is involved in the replication of retroviruses, such as human immunodeficiency virus (HIV).[5] These viruses carry their genome in the form of ssRNA molecules. Following infection of a host cell, the viral enzyme, *reverse transcriptase*, uses the viral RNA as a template for the 5'→3' synthesis of viral DNA, which then becomes integrated into host chromosomes. *Reverse transcriptase* activity is also seen with transposons, DNA elements that can move about the genome (see p. 461). In eukaryotes, such elements are transcribed to RNA, the RNA is used as a template for DNA synthesis by a *reverse transcriptase* encoded by the transposon, and the DNA is randomly inserted into the genome. [Note: Transposons that involve an RNA intermediate are called retrotransposons or retroposons.]

E. Inhibition of DNA synthesis by nucleoside analogs

DNA chain growth can be blocked by the incorporation of certain nucleoside analogs that have been modified in the sugar portion of the nucleoside (Figure 29.24).[6] For example, removal of the hydroxyl

INFO LINK

[5] See Chapter 38 in ***Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Microbiology*** for a discussion of retroviruses.

[6] See Chapter 38 in ***Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Pharmacology*** for a discussion of nucloside analogs.

group from the 3'-carbon of the deoxyribose ring as in 2',3'-dideoxyinosine (ddI, also known as didanosine), or conversion of the deoxyribose to another sugar such as arabinose, prevents further chain elongation. By blocking DNA replication, these compounds slow the division of rapidly growing cells and viruses. Cytosine arabinoside (cytarabine, or araC) has been used in anticancer chemotherapy, whereas adenine arabinoside (vidarabine, or araA) is an antiviral agent. Chemically modifying the sugar moiety, as seen in zidovudine (AZT, ZDV), also terminates DNA chain elongation. [Note: These drugs are generally supplied as nucleosides, which are then converted to the active nucleotides by cellular "salvage" enzymes (see p. 296).]

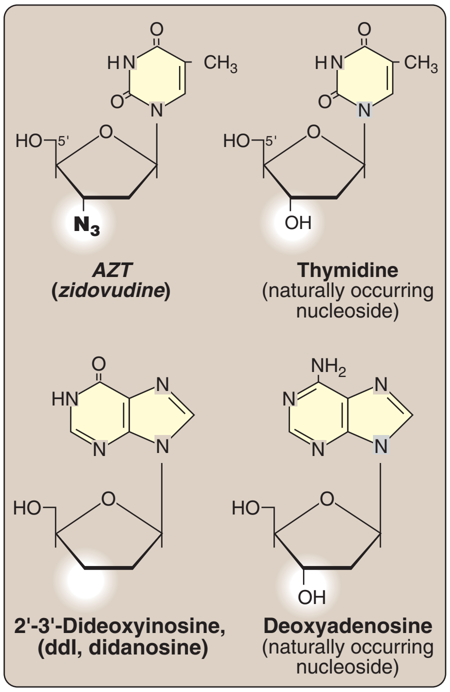


Figure 29.24
Examples of nucleoside analogs that lack a 3'-hydroxyl group. [Note: ddI is converted to its active form (ddATP).]

V. ORGANIZATION OF EUKARYOTIC DNA

A typical human cell contains 46 chromosomes, whose total DNA is approximately 1m long! It is difficult to imagine how such a large amount of genetic material can be effectively packaged into a volume the size of a cell nucleus so that it can be efficiently replicated and its genetic information expressed. To do so requires the interaction of DNA with a large number of proteins, each of which performs a specific function in the ordered packaging of these long molecules of DNA. Eukaryotic DNA is associated with tightly bound basic proteins, called histones. These serve to order the DNA into fundamental structural units, called nucleosomes, that resemble beads on a string. Nucleosomes are further arranged into increasingly more complex structures that organize and condense the long DNA molecules into chromosomes that can be segregated during cell division. [Note: The complex of DNA and protein found inside the nuclei of eukaryotic cells is called chromatin.]

A. Histones and the formation of nucleosomes

There are five classes of histones, designated H1, H2A, H2B, H3, and H4. These small proteins are positively charged at physiologic pH as a result of their high content of lysine and arginine. Because of their positive charge, they form ionic bonds with negatively charged DNA. Histones, along with positively charged ions such as Mg^{2+}, help neutralize the negatively charged DNA phosphate groups.

1. **Nucleosomes:** Two molecules each of H2A, H2B, H3, and H4 form the structural core of the individual nucleosome "beads." Around this core, a segment of the DNA double helix is wound nearly twice, forming a negatively supertwisted helix (Figure 29.25). [Note: The N-terminal ends of these histones can be acetylated, methylated, or phosphorylated. These reversible covalent modifications influence how tightly the histones bind to the DNA, thereby affecting the expression of specific genes (see p. 422).] Neighboring nucleosomes are joined by "linker" DNA approximately 50 base pairs long. Histone H1, of which there are several related species, is not found in the nucleosome core, but instead binds to the linker DNA chain between the nucleosome beads. H1 is the most tissue-specific and species-specific of the histones. It facilitates the packing of nucleosomes into the more compact structures.

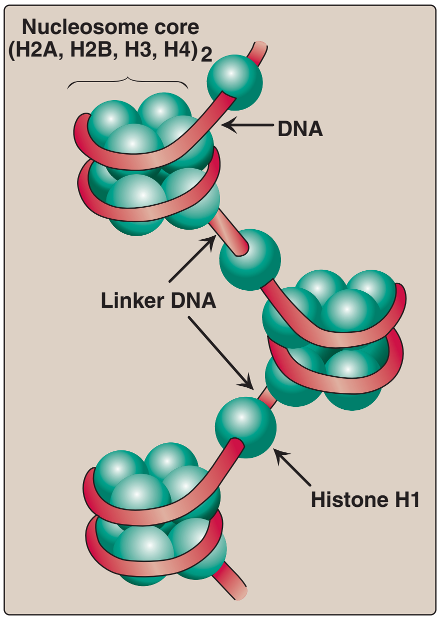


Figure 29.25
Organization of human DNA, illustrating the structure of nucleosomes.

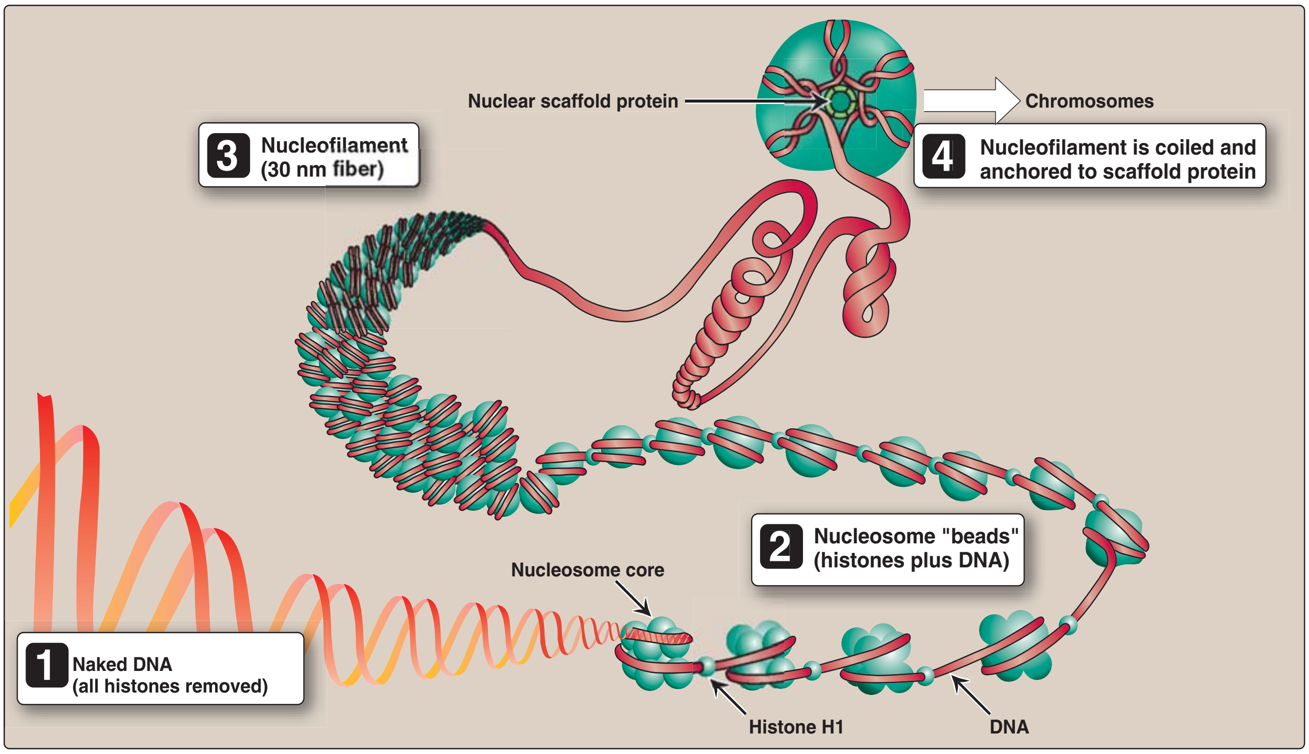

Nuclear scaffold protein
Chromosomes
3 Nucleofilament (30 nm fiber)
4 Nucleofilament is coiled and anchored to scaffold protein
Nucleosome core
2 Nucleosome "beads" (histones plus DNA)
1 Naked DNA (all histones removed)
Histone H1
DNA

Figure 29.26
Structural organization of eukaryotic DNA.

2. **Higher levels of organization:** Nucleosomes can be packed more tightly to form a polynucleosome (also called a nucleofilament). This structure assumes the shape of a coil, often referred to as a 30-nm fiber. The fiber is organized into loops that are anchored by a nuclear scaffold containing several proteins. Additional levels of organization lead to the final chromosomal structure (Figure 29.26).

B. Fate of nucleosomes during DNA replication

In order to be replicated, the highly structured and constrained chromatin must be relaxed. Although the nucleosomes are displaced, dissociation of the nucleosome core from the DNA is incomplete, with all the parental histones remaining loosely associated with only one of the parental DNA strands. Synthesis of new histones occurs simultaneously with DNA replication, and nucleosomes containing the newly synthesized histones associate with only one of the new daughter helices. Therefore, the parental histone octamers are conserved.

VI. DNA REPAIR

Despite the elaborate proofreading system employed during DNA synthesis, errors—including incorrect base-pairing or insertion of one to a few extra nucleotides—can occur. In addition, DNA is constantly being subjected to environmental insults that cause the alteration or removal of nucleotide bases. The damaging agents can be either chemicals, for example, nitrous acid, or radiation, for example, ultraviolet light, which can fuse two pyrimidines adjacent to each other in the DNA, and high-energy ionizing radiation, which can cause double-strand breaks. Bases are also altered or lost spontaneously from mammalian DNA at a rate of many thousands per cell per day. If the damage is not repaired, a permanent change (mutation) is introduced that can result in any of a number of deleterious effects, including loss of control over the proliferation of the mutated cell, leading to cancer. Luckily, cells are remarkably efficient at repairing damage done to their DNA. Most of the repair systems involve recognition of the damage (lesion) on the DNA, removal or excision of the damage, replacement or filling the gap left by excision using the sister strand as a template for DNA synthesis, and ligation. These repair systems thus perform excision repair, with the removal of one to tens of nucleotides. [Note: Repair reduces the error rate from one in ten million bases to one in a billion.]

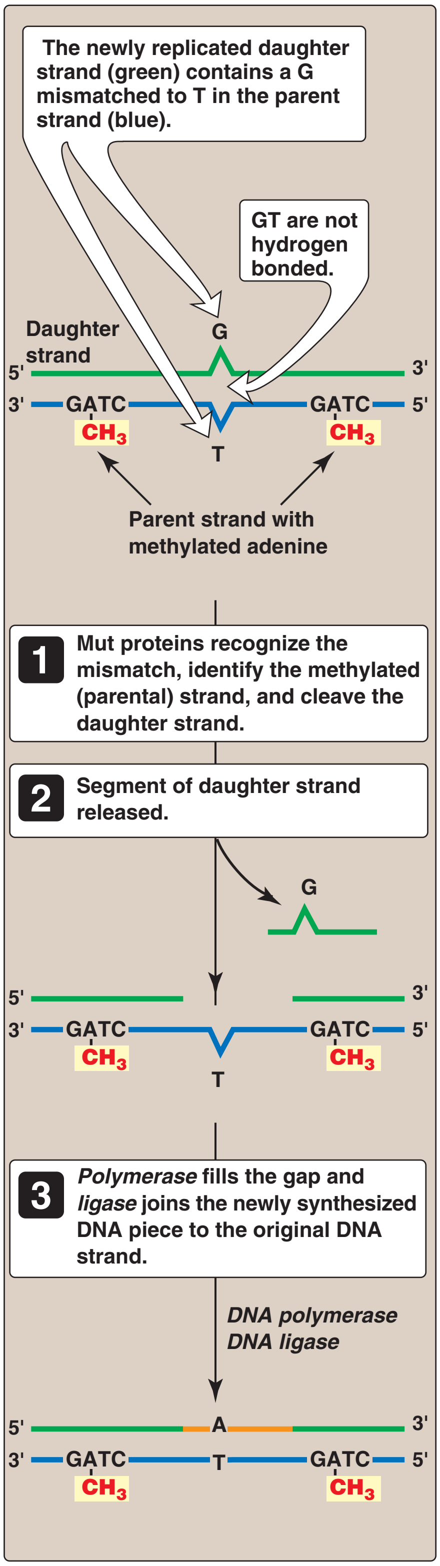
A. Methyl-directed mismatch repair

Sometimes replication errors escape the proofreading function during DNA synthesis, causing a mismatch of one to several bases. In E. coli, mismatch repair is mediated by a group of proteins known as the Mut proteins (Figure 29.27). Homologous proteins are present in humans.

1. **Identification of the mismatched strand:** When a mismatch occurs, the Mut proteins that identify the mispaired nucleotide(s) must be able to discriminate between the correct strand and the strand with the mismatch. Discrimination is based on the degree of methylation. GATC sequences, which are found approximately once every thousand nucleotides, are methylated on the adenine residue. This methylation is not done immediately after synthesis, so the newly synthesized DNA is hemimethylated (that is, the parental strand is methylated but the daughter strand is not). The methylated parental strand is assumed to be correct, and it is the daughter strand that gets repaired. [Note: The exact mechanism by which the daughter strand is identified in eukaryotes is not yet known.]

2. **Repair of damaged DNA:** When the strand containing the mismatch is identified, an *endonuclease* nicks the strand and the mismatched nucleotide(s) is/are removed by an *exonuclease*. Additional nucleotides at the 5'- and 3'-ends of the mismatch are also removed. The gap left by removal of the nucleotides is filled, using the sister strand as a template, by a *DNA polymerase*. The 3'-hydroxyl of the newly synthesized DNA is joined to the 5'-phosphate of the remaining stretch of the original DNA strand by *DNA ligase* (see p. 406).

> Mutation to the proteins involved in mismatch repair in humans is associated with hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC), also known as Lynch syndrome. With HNPCC, there is an increased risk for developing colon cancer (as well as other cancers), but only about 5% of all colon cancer is the result of mutations in mismatch repair.


The newly replicated daughter strand (green) contains a G mismatched to T in the parent strand (blue).

GT are not hydrogen bonded.

1 Mut proteins recognize the mismatch, identify the methylated (parental) strand, and cleave the daughter strand.

2 Segment of daughter strand released.

3 *Polymerase* fills the gap and *ligase* joins the newly synthesized DNA piece to the original DNA strand.

Figure 29.27
Methyl-directed mismatch repair.

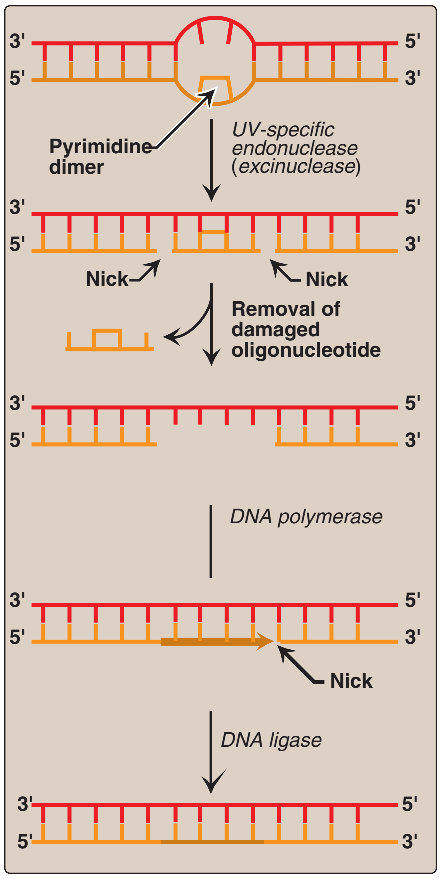

3'
5'
5'
3'
Pyrimidine dimer
UV-specific endonuclease (excinuclease)
Nick
Nick
Removal of damaged oligonucleotide
DNA polymerase
Nick
DNA ligase

Figure 29.28
Nucleotide excision repair of pyrimidine dimers in E. coli DNA.

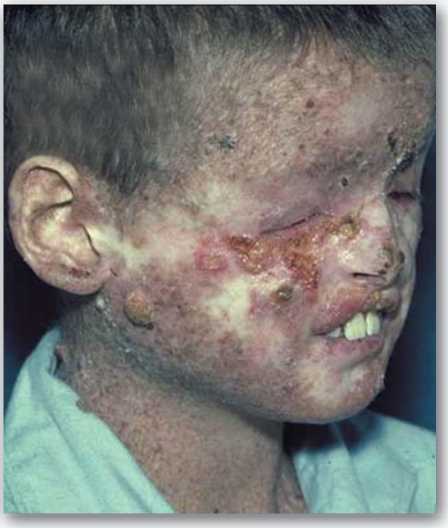


Figure 29.29
Patient with xeroderma pigmentosum.

B. Repair of damage caused by ultraviolet (UV) light

Exposure of a cell to UV light can result in the covalent joining of two adjacent pyrimidines (usually thymines), producing a dimer. These thymine dimers prevent *DNA polymerase* from replicating the DNA strand beyond the site of dimer formation. Thymine dimers are excised in bacteria by UvrABC proteins in a process known as nucleotide excision repair as illustrated in Figure 29.28. A related pathway involving XP proteins is present in humans.

1. **Recognition and excision of dimers by UV-specific endonuclease:** First, a *UV-specific endonuclease* (called *uvrABC excinuclease*) recognizes the dimer, and cleaves the damaged strand on both the 5'-side and 3'-side of the dimer. A short oligonucleotide containing the dimer is released, leaving a gap in the DNA strand that formerly contained the dimer. This gap is filled in using the same process described previously.

2. **UV radiation and cancer:** Pyrimidine dimers can be formed in the skin cells of humans exposed to unfiltered sunlight. In the rare genetic disease xeroderma pigmentosum (XP), the cells cannot repair the damaged DNA, resulting in extensive accumulation of mutations and, consequently, early and numerous skin cancers (Figure 29.29). XP can be caused by defects in any of the several genes that code for the XP proteins required for nucleotide excision repair of UV damage in humans.

C. Correction of base alterations (base excision repair)

The bases of DNA can be altered, either spontaneously, as is the case with cytosine, which slowly undergoes deamination (the loss of its amino group) to form uracil, or by the action of deaminating or alkylating compounds. For example, nitrous acid, which is formed by the cell from precursors, such as the nitrosamines, nitrites, and nitrates, is a potent compound that deaminates cytosine, adenine (to hypoxanthine), and guanine (to xanthine). Bases can also be lost spontaneously. For example, approximately 10,000 purine bases are lost this way per cell per day. Lesions involving base alterations or loss can be corrected by base excision repair (Figure 29.30).

1. **Removal of abnormal bases:** Abnormal bases, such as uracil, which can occur in DNA either by deamination of cytosine or improper use of dUTP instead of dTTP during DNA synthesis, are recognized by specific *glycosylases* that hydrolytically cleave them from the deoxyribose–phosphate backbone of the strand. This leaves an apyrimidinic site (or apurinic, if a purine was removed), both referred to as AP sites.

2. **Recognition and repair of an AP site:** Specific *AP-endonucleases* recognize that a base is missing and initiate the process of excision and gap-filling by making an endonucleolytic cut just to the 5'-side of the AP site. A *deoxyribose phosphate lyase* removes the single, base-free, sugar phosphate residue. A *DNA polymerase* and *DNA ligase* complete the repair process.

D. Repair of double-strand breaks

High-energy radiation or oxidative free radicals (see p. 148) can cause double-strand breaks in DNA, which are potentially lethal to the cell. Such breaks also occur naturally during gene rearrangements. dsDNA breaks cannot be corrected by the previously described strategy of excising the damage on one strand and using the remaining strand as a template for replacing the missing nucleotide(s). Instead, they are repaired by one of two systems. The first is nonhomologous end-joining repair, in which the ends of two DNA fragments are brought together by a group of proteins that effect their religation. However, some DNA is lost in the process. Consequently, this mechanism of repair is error prone and mutagenic. Defects in this repair system are associated with a predisposition to cancer and immunodeficiency syndromes. The second repair system, homologous recombination repair, uses the enzymes that normally perform genetic recombination between homologous chromosomes during meiosis. This system is much less error prone than nonhomologous end-joining joining because any DNA that was lost is replaced using homologous DNA as a template.

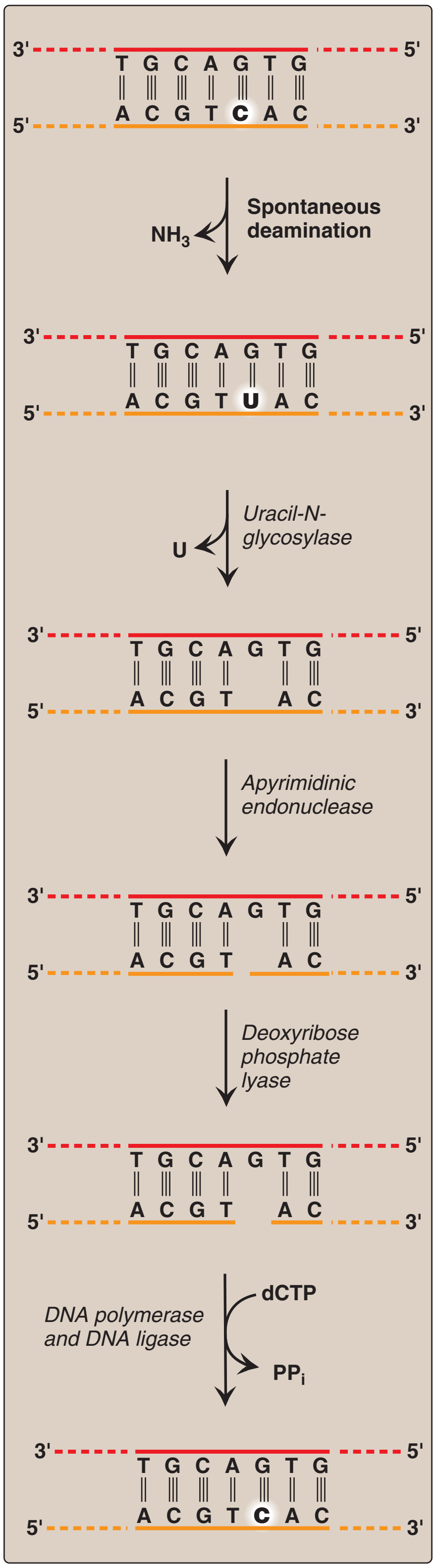


Figure 29.30
Correction of base alterations by base excision repair.

VII. CHAPTER SUMMARY

DNA contains many deoxyribonucleoside monophosphates covalently linked by **3'→5'-phosphodiester bonds** (Figure 29.31). The resulting long, unbranched chain has **polarity**, with both a 5'-end and a 3'-end. The sequence of nucleotides is read 5'→3'. DNA exists as a **double-stranded** molecule, in which the two chains are paired in an **antiparallel** manner, and wind around each other, forming a **double helix**. **Adenine** pairs with **thymine** and **cytosine** pairs with **guanine**. Each strand of the double helix serves as a **template** for constructing a **complementary** daughter strand (**semiconservative replication**). DNA replication occurs in the **S phase** of the cell cycle and begins at the **origin of replication**. The strands are separated locally, forming two **replication forks**. Replication of dsDNA is **bidirectional**. **Helicase** unwinds the double helix. As the two strands of the double helix are separated, **positive supercoils** are produced in the region of DNA ahead of the replication fork. **DNA topoisomerases Types I and II** remove supercoils. **DNA polymerases synthesize** new DNA strands only in the **5'→3'** direction. Therefore, one of the newly synthesized stretches of nucleotide chains must grow in the 5'→3' direction toward the replication fork (**leading strand**), and one in the 5'→3' direction away from the replication fork (**lagging strand**). DNA polymerases require a **primer**. The primer for de novo DNA synthesis is a short stretch of RNA synthesized by **primase**. The leading strand only needs one RNA primer, whereas the lagging strand needs many. In E. coli DNA chain elongation is catalyzed by **DNA polymerase III**, using **5'-deoxyribonucleoside triphosphates** as substrates. The enzyme **"proofreads"** the newly synthesized DNA, removing terminal mismatched nucleotides with its **3'→5' exonuclease** activity. RNA primers are removed by **DNA polymerase I**, using its **5'→3' exonuclease** activity. This enzyme fills the gaps with DNA, proofreading as it synthesizes. The final phosphodi-

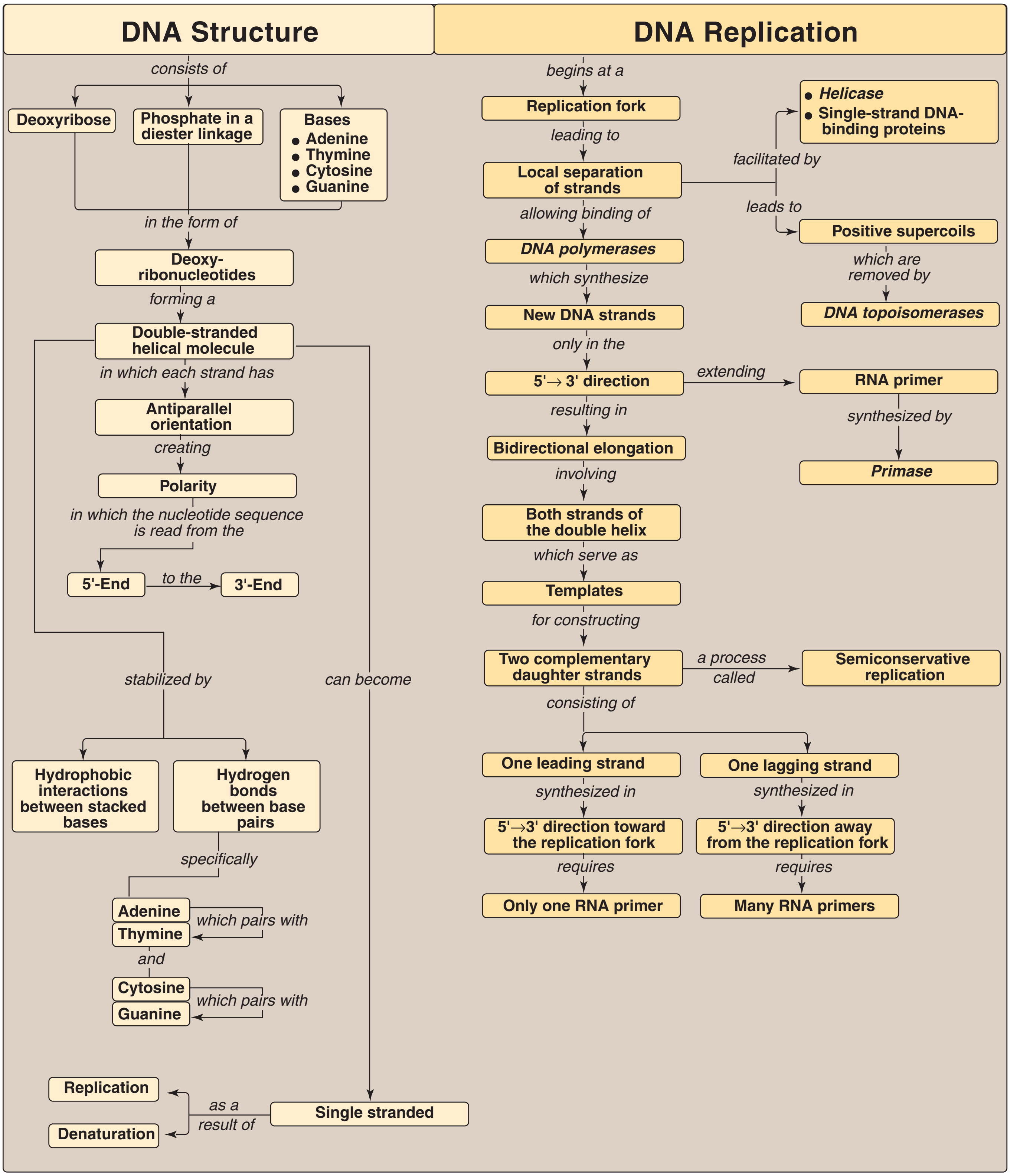

DNA Structure
consists of
Deoxyribose
Phosphate in a diester linkage
Bases
• Adenine
• Thymine
• Cytosine
• Guanine
in the form of
Deoxy-ribonucleotides
forming a
Double-stranded helical molecule
in which each strand has
Antiparallel orientation
creating
Polarity
in which the nucleotide sequence is read from the
5'-End
to the
3'-End
stabilized by
Hydrophobic interactions between stacked bases
Hydrogen bonds between base pairs
specifically
Adenine
which pairs with
Thymine
and
Cytosine
which pairs with
Guanine
can become
Single stranded
as a result of
Replication
Denaturation
DNA Replication
begins at a
Replication fork
leading to
Local separation of strands
facilitated by
• Helicase
• Single-strand DNA-binding proteins
leads to
Positive supercoils
which are removed by
DNA topoisomerases
allowing binding of
DNA polymerases
which synthesize
New DNA strands
only in the
5'→ 3' direction
extending
RNA primer
synthesized by
Primase
resulting in
Bidirectional elongation
involving
Both strands of the double helix
which serve as
Templates
for constructing
Two complementary daughter strands
a process called
Semiconservative replication
consisting of
One leading strand
synthesized in
5'→3' direction toward the replication fork
requires
Only one RNA primer
One lagging strand
synthesized in
5'→3' direction away from the replication fork
requires
Many RNA primers

Figure 29.31 (continued on next page)
Key concept map for DNA structure, replication, and repair. (continued on next page)

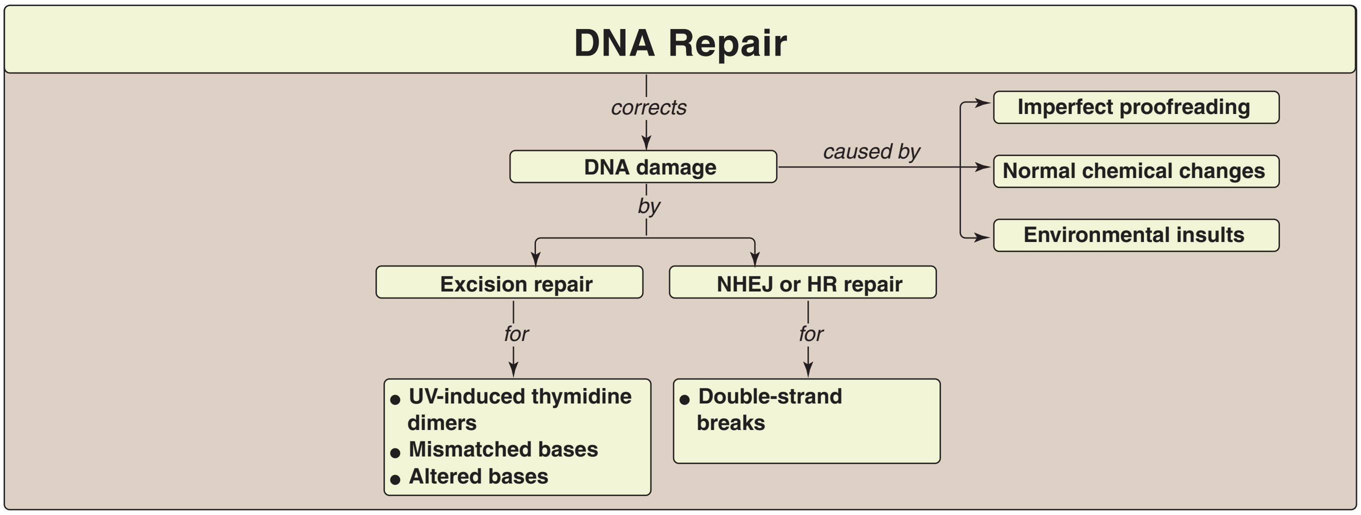


Figure 29.31 (continued from previous page)
Key concept map for DNA structure, replication, and repair. NHEJ = nonhomologous end-joining; HR = homologous recombination.

ester linkage is catalyzed by **DNA ligase**. There are at least five **eukaryotic DNA polymerases**. **Pol α** is a multisubunit enzyme, one subunit of which is a **primase**. Pol α 5'→3' polymerase activity adds a short piece of DNA to the RNA primer. **Pol ε** is thought to complete DNA synthesis on the leading strand whereas **pol δ** elongates each lagging strand fragment. Both ε and δ use **3'→5' exonuclease** activity to **proofread**. **Pol β** is involved with DNA repair, and pol γ replicates mitochondrial DNA. **Nucleoside analogs** containing modified sugars can be used to block DNA chain growth. They are useful in anticancer and antiviral chemotherapy. **Telomeres** are stretches of **highly repetitive DNA** complexed with protein that protect the **ends** of linear chromosomes. As most cells divide and age, these sequences are shortened, contributing to senescence. In cells that do not senesce (for example, germline and cancer cells), **telomerase** employs its enzyme component **reverse transcriptase** to extend the telomeres, using its **RNA as a template**. There are five classes of **positively charged histone proteins**. Two each of histones H2A, H2B, H3, and H4 form a structural core around which DNA is wrapped creating a **nucleosome**. The DNA connecting the nucleosomes, called **linker DNA**, is bound to histone H1. Nucleosomes can be packed more tightly to form a nucleofilament. Additional levels of organization create a chromosome. Most DNA damage can be corrected by **excision repair** involving recognition and removal of the damage by repair proteins, followed by replacement by DNA polymerase and joining by ligase. **Ultraviolet light** can cause thymine dimers that are recognized and removed by **uvrABC** proteins of nucleotide excision repair. Defects in the **XP proteins** needed for thymine dimer repair in humans result in **xeroderma pigmentosum**. **Mismatched** bases are repaired by a similar process of recognition and removal by **Mut proteins** in E. coli. The extent of **methylation** is used for strand identification in prokaryotes. Defective mismatch repair by homologous proteins in humans is associated with **hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer**. Abnormal bases (such as uracil) are removed by **glycosylases in base excision repair**, and the sugar phosphate at the AP site is cut out. Double-strand breaks in DNA are repaired by **nonhomologous end-joining** (error prone) and **homologous recombination**.

Study Questions

Choose the ONE correct answer.

29.1 A 10-year-old girl is brought to the dermatologist by her parents. She has many freckles on her face, neck, arms, and hands, and the parents report that she is unusually sensitive to sunlight. Two basal cell carcinomas are identified on her face. Which of the following processes is most likely to be defective in this patient?

A. Repair of double-strand breaks.
B. Removal of mismatched bases from the 3'-end of Okazaki fragments.
C. Removal of pyrimidine dimers from DNA.
D. Removal of uracil from DNA.

Correct answer = C. The sensitivity to sunlight, extensive freckling on parts of the body exposed to the sun, and presence of skin cancer at a young age indicates that the patient most likely suffers from xeroderma pigmentosum. These patients are deficient in any one of several XP proteins required for nucleotide excision repair of ultraviolet-damaged DNA. Double-strand breaks are repaired by nonhomologous end-joining or homologous recombination. Uracil is removed from damaged DNA molecules by a specific glycosylase.

29.2 Telomeres are complexes of DNA and protein that protect the ends of linear chromosomes. In most normal human somatic cells, telomeres shorten with each division. In stem cells and in cancer cells, however, telomeric length is maintained. In the synthesis of telomeres:

A. telomerase, a ribonucleoprotein, provides both the RNA and the polymerase needed for synthesis.
B. the RNA of telomerase serves as a primer.
C. the polymerase of telomerase is a DNA-directed DNA polymerase.
D. the shorter, 3'→5' strand gets extended.
E. the direction of synthesis is 3'→5'.

Correct answer = A. Telomerase is a ribonucleoprotein particle required for telomere maintenance. Telomerase contains an RNA that serves as the template, not the primer, for the synthesis of telomeric DNA by the reverse transcriptase of telomerase. As a reverse transcriptase, it synthesizes DNA using its RNA template and so is an RNA-directed DNA polymerase. The direction of synthesis, as with all DNA synthesis, is 5'→3', and it is the already longer 5'→3' strand that gets extended.

29.3 While studying the structure of a small gene that was recently sequenced during the Human Genome Project, an investigator notices that one strand of the DNA molecule contains 20 As, 25 Gs, 30 Cs, and 22 Ts. How many of each base is found in the complete double-stranded molecule?

A. A = 40, G = 50, C = 60, T = 44.
B. A = 44, G = 60, C = 50, T = 40.
C. A = 45, G = 45, C = 52, T = 52.
D. A = 50, G = 47, C = 50, T = 47.
E. A = 42, G = 55, C = 55, T = 42.

Correct answer = E. The two DNA strands are complementary to each other, with A base-paired with T, and G base-paired with C. So, for example, the 20 As on the first strand would be paired with 20 Ts on the second strand, the 25 Gs on the first strand would be paired with 25 Cs on the second strand, and so forth. When these are all added together, the correct numbers of each base are indicated in choice E. Notice that, in the correct answer, A = T and G = C.

29.4 The extent of DNA synthesis in a cell could most specifically be determined by measuring the incorporation of radiolabeled:

A. leucine.
B. phosphate.
C. ribose
D. thymidine
E. uracil

Correct answer = D. Thymidine is incorporated only into DNA, and thus would reflect the extent of DNA synthesis. Leucine is an amino acid, not a nucleotide base. Phosphate is not exclusive to DNA. Ribose is found in RNA, whereas deoxyribose is found in DNA. Uracil is normally found only in RNA. If present in DNA, likely as a result of deamination of cytosine, it is removed by uracil glycosylase during base excision repair.

RNA Structure, Synthesis, and Processing

30

I. OVERVIEW

The genetic master plan of an organism is contained in the sequence of deoxyribonucleotides in its deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA). However, it is through the ribonucleic acid (RNA)—the "working copies" of the DNA—that the master plan is expressed (Figure 30.1). The copying process, during which a DNA strand serves as a template for the synthesis of RNA, is called transcription. Transcription produces messenger RNAs that are translated into sequences of amino acids (polypeptide chains or proteins), and ribosomal RNAs, transfer RNAs, and additional small RNA molecules that perform specialized structural, catalytic, and regulatory functions and are not translated, that is, they are noncoding RNAs (ncRNAs). The final product of gene expression, therefore, can be RNA or protein, depending upon the gene. A central feature of transcription is that it is highly selective. For example, many transcripts are made of some regions of the DNA. In other regions, few or no transcripts are made. This selectivity is due, at least in part, to signals embedded in the nucleotide sequence of the DNA. These signals instruct the *RNA polymerase* where to start, how often to start, and where to stop transcription. A variety of regulatory proteins is also involved in this selection process. The biochemical differentiation of an organism's tissues is ultimately a result of the selectivity of the transcription process. [Note: This selectivity of transcription is in contrast to the "all or none" nature of genomic replication.] Another important feature of transcription is that many RNA transcripts that initially are faithful copies of one of the two DNA strands may undergo various modifications, such as terminal additions, base modifications, trimming, and internal segment removal, which convert the inactive primary transcript into a functional molecule.

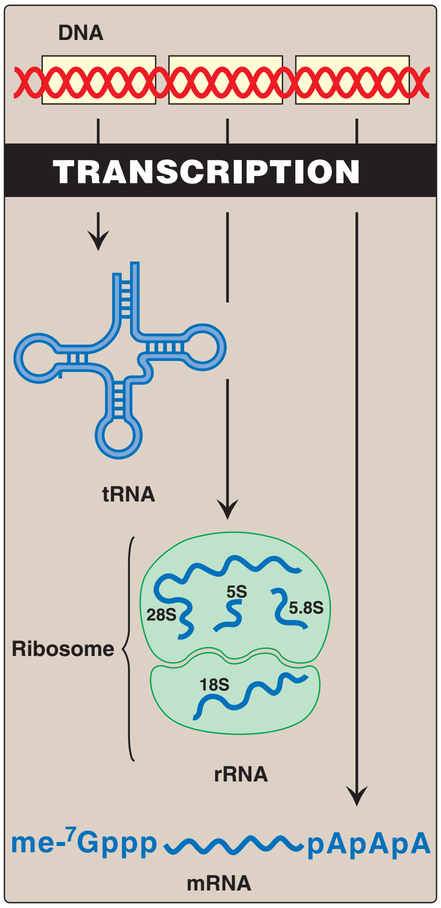


Figure 30.1
Expression of genetic information by transcription. [Note: RNAs shown are eukaryotic.] me-^{7}Gppp = 7-methylguanosine triphosphate "cap," AAA = poly-A tail, each described on p. 418.

II. STRUCTURE OF RNA

There are three major types of RNA that participate in the process of protein synthesis: ribosomal RNA (rRNA), transfer RNA (tRNA), and messenger RNA (mRNA). Like DNA, these three types of RNA are unbranched polymeric molecules composed of nucleoside monophosphates joined together by phosphodiester bonds (see p. 396). However, they differ from DNA in several ways, for example, they are considerably

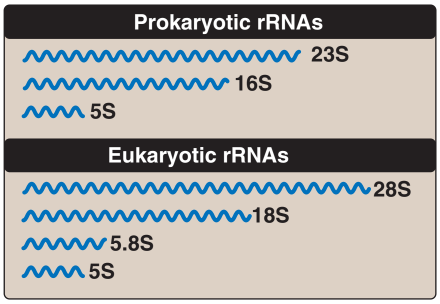


Figure 30.2
Prokaryotic and eukaryotic rRNAs.

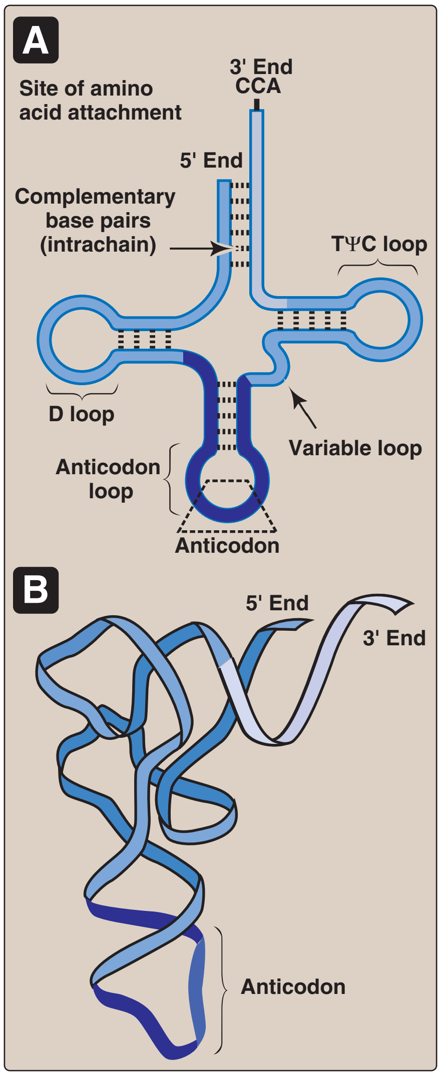


Figure 30.3
A. Characteristic tRNA secondary structure. B. Folded (tertiary) tRNA structure found in cells. D = dihydrouracil. Ψ = pseudouracil.

smaller than DNA, contain ribose instead of deoxyribose and uracil instead of thymine, and exist as single strands that are capable of folding into complex structures. The three major types of RNA also differ from each other in size, function, and special structural modifications. [Note: In eukaryotes, additional small ncRNA molecules found in the nucleolus (snoRNAs) and nucleus (snRNAs) perform specialized functions as described on pp. 425 and 426.]

A. Ribosomal RNA

rRNAs are found in association with several proteins as components of the ribosomes—the complex structures that serve as the sites for protein synthesis (see p. 436). There are three distinct size species of rRNA (23S, 16S, and 5S) in prokaryotic cells (Figure 30.2). In the eukaryotic cytosol, there are four rRNA species (28S, 18S, 5.8S, and 5S). [Note: "S" is the Svedberg unit, which is related to the molecular weight and shape of the compound.] Together, rRNAs make up about 80% of the total RNA in the cell. [Note: Some RNAs function as catalysts, for example, rRNA in protein synthesis (see p. 439). RNA with catalytic activity is termed a "ribozyme".]

B. Transfer RNA

tRNAs are the smallest (4S) of the three major types of RNA molecules. There is at least one specific type of tRNA molecule for each of the 20 amino acids commonly found in proteins. Together, tRNAs make up about 15% of the total RNA in the cell. The tRNA molecules contain a high percentage of unusual bases (for example, dihydrouracil, see Figure 22.2, p. 292) and have extensive intrachain base-pairing (Figure 30.3) that leads to characteristic secondary and tertiary structure. Each tRNA serves as an "adaptor" molecule that carries its specific amino acid—covalently attached to its 3'-end—to the site of protein synthesis. There it recognizes the genetic code sequence on an mRNA, which specifies the addition of its amino acid to the growing peptide chain (see p. 432).

C. Messenger RNA

mRNA comprises only about 5% of the RNA in the cell, yet is by far the most heterogeneous type of RNA in size and base sequence. The mRNA carries genetic information from the nuclear DNA to the cytosol, where it is used as the template for protein synthesis. If the mRNA carries information from more than one gene, it is said to be polycistronic. Polycistronic mRNA is characteristic of prokaryotes. If the mRNA carries information from just one gene, it is said to be monocistronic and is characteristic of eukaryotes. In addition to the protein coding regions that can be translated, mRNA contains untranslated regions at its 5'- and 3'-ends (Figure 30.4). Special structural characteristics of eukaryotic (but not prokaryotic) mRNA include a long sequence of adenine nucleotides (a "poly-A tail") on the 3'-end of the RNA chain, plus a "cap" on the 5'-end consisting of a molecule of 7-methylguanosine attached "backward" (5'→5') through a triphosphate linkage as shown in Figure 30.4. The mechanisms for modifying mRNA to create these special structural characteristics are discussed on p. 425.

III. TRANSCRIPTION OF PROKARYOTIC GENES

The structure of *RNA polymerase*, the signals that control transcription, and the varieties of modification that RNA transcripts can undergo differ among organisms, and particularly from prokaryotes to eukaryotes. Therefore, the discussions of prokaryotic and eukaryotic transcription are presented separately.

A. Properties of prokaryotic RNA polymerase

In bacteria, one species of *RNA polymerase* synthesizes all of the RNA except for the short RNA primers needed for DNA replication (RNA primers are synthesized by a specialized enzyme, *primase*, see p. 402). *RNA polymerase* is a multisubunit enzyme that recognizes a nucleotide sequence (the promoter region) at the beginning of a length of DNA that is to be transcribed. It next makes a complementary RNA copy of the DNA template strand, and then recognizes the end of the DNA sequence to be transcribed (the termination region). RNA is synthesized from its 5'-end to its 3'-end, antiparallel to its DNA template strand (see p. 397). The template is copied as it is in DNA synthesis, in which a G on the DNA specifies a C in the RNA, a C specifies a G, a T specifies an A, but an A specifies a U instead of a T (Figure 30.5). The RNA, then, is complementary to the DNA template (antisense) strand and identical to the coding (sense) strand, with U replacing T. Within the DNA molecule, regions of both strands can serve as templates for transcription. For a given gene, however, only one of the two DNA strands can be the template. Which strand is used is determined by the location of the promoter for that gene. Transcription by *RNA polymerase* involves a core enzyme and several auxiliary proteins:

1. **Core enzyme:** Four of the enzyme's peptide subunits, 2α, 1β, and 1β', are required for enzyme assembly (2α), template binding (β'), and the *5'→3' RNA polymerase* activity (β), and are referred to as the core enzyme (Figure 30.6). However, this enzyme lacks specificity, that is, it cannot recognize the promoter region on the DNA template. [Note: The in vivo function of a fifth subunit, Ω, is unclear.]
2. **Holoenzyme:** The σ subunit ("sigma factor") enables *RNA polymerase* to recognize promoter regions on the DNA. The σ subunit plus the core enzyme make up the holoenzyme. [Note: Different σ factors recognize different groups of genes.]

B. Steps in RNA synthesis

The process of transcription of a typical gene of E. coli can be divided into three phases: initiation, elongation, and termination. A transcription unit extends from the promoter to the termination region, and the initial product of transcription by *RNA polymerase* is termed the primary transcript.

1. **Initiation:** Transcription begins with the binding of the *RNA polymerase* holoenzyme to a region of the DNA known as the promoter, which is not transcribed. The prokaryotic promoter contains

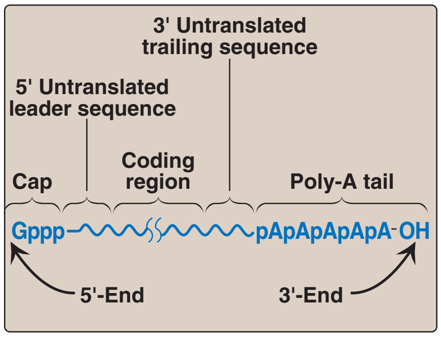

3' Untranslated trailing sequence
5' Untranslated leader sequence
Cap
Coding region
Poly-A tail
Gppp
pApApApApA-OH
5'-End
3'-End

Figure 30.4
Structure of eukaryotic messenger RNA.

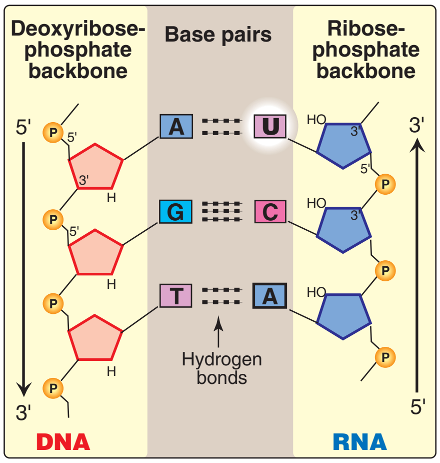


Figure 30.5
Antiparallel, complementary base pairs between DNA and RNA.

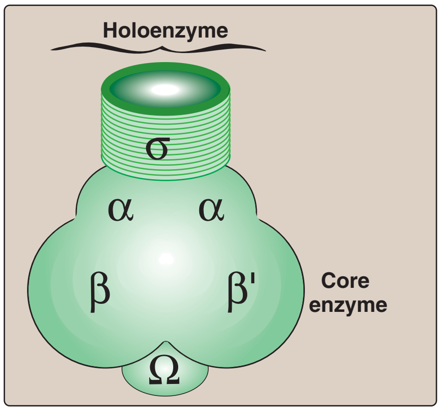


Figure 30.6
Components of prokaryotic *RNA polymerase*.

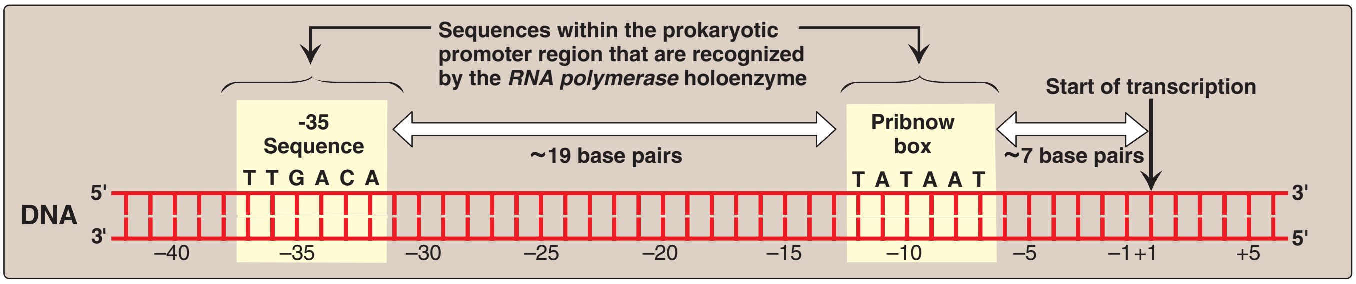

Sequences within the prokaryotic promoter region that are recognized by the *RNA polymerase* holoenzyme
-35 Sequence
T T G A C A
~19 base pairs
Pribnow box
T A T A A T
~7 base pairs
Start of transcription
DNA
5'
3'
3'
5'
–40
–35
–30
–25
–20
–15
–10
–5
–1 +1
+5

Figure 30.7
Structure of the prokaryotic promoter region.

characteristic consensus sequences (Figure 30.7). [Note: Consensus sequences are idealized sequences in which the base shown at each position is the base most frequently (but not necessarily always) encountered at that position.] Those that are recognized by prokaryotic *RNA polymerase* σ factors include:

a. **–35 sequence:** A consensus sequence (5'-TTGACA-3'), centered about 35 bases to the left of the transcription start site (see Figure 30.7), is the initial point of contact for the holoenzyme, and a closed complex is formed. [Note: The regulatory sequences that control transcription are, by convention, designated by the 5'→3' nucleotide sequence on the nontemplate strand. A base in the promoter region is assigned a negative number if it occurs prior to (to the left of, toward the 5'-end of, or "upstream" of) the transcription start site. Therefore, the TTGACA sequence is centered at approximately base –35. The first base at the transcription start site is assigned a position of +1. There is no base designated "0."]

b. **Pribnow box:** The holoenzyme moves and covers a second consensus sequence (5'-TATAAT-3'), centered at about –10 (see Figure 30.7), which is the site of initial DNA melting (unwinding). Melting of a short stretch (about 14 bases) converts the closed complex to an open one known as a transcription bubble. [Note: A mutation in either the –10 or the –35 sequence can affect the transcription of the gene controlled by the mutant promoter.]

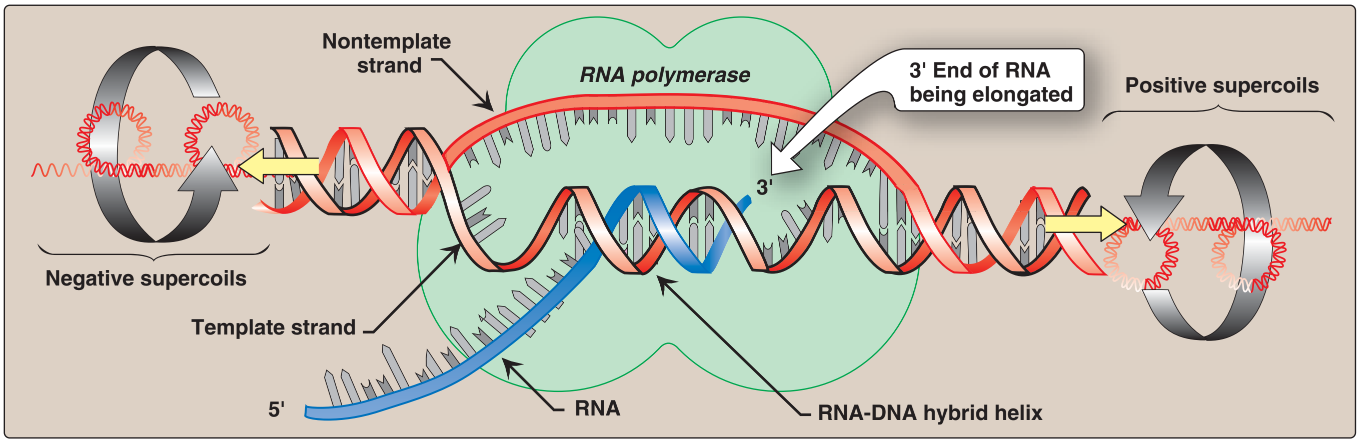

Nontemplate strand
RNA polymerase
3' End of RNA being elongated
Positive supercoils
3'
Negative supercoils
Template strand
5'
RNA
RNA-DNA hybrid helix

Figure 30.8
Local unwinding of DNA caused by *RNA polymerase* and formation of an open initiation complex.

2. **Elongation:** Once the promoter region has been recognized and bound by the holoenzyme, local unwinding of the DNA helix continues (Figure 30.8), mediated by the *polymerase*. [Note: Unwinding generates supercoils in the DNA that can be relieved by *DNA topoisomerases* (see p. 401.] *RNA polymerase* begins to synthesize a transcript of the DNA sequence, and several short pieces of RNA are made and discarded. The elongation phase is said to begin when the transcript (typically starting with a purine) exceeds ten nucleotides in length. Sigma is then released, and the core enzyme is able to leave ("clear") the promoter and move along the template strand in a processive manner. During transcription, a short DNA-RNA hybrid helix is formed (see Figure 30.8). Like *DNA polymerase*, *RNA polymerase* uses nucleoside triphosphates as substrates and releases pyrophosphate each time a nucleoside monophosphate is added to the growing chain. As with replication, transcription is always in the 5'→3' direction. In contrast to *DNA polymerase*, *RNA polymerase* does not require a primer and does not appear to have proofreading activity.

3. **Termination:** The elongation of the single-stranded RNA chain continues until a termination signal is reached. Termination can be intrinsic (spontaneous) or dependent upon the participation of a protein known as the ρ (rho) factor.

   a. **ρ-Independent termination**: Seen with most prokaryotic genes, this requires that a sequence in the DNA template generate a sequence in the nascent (newly made) RNA that is self-complementary (Figure 30.9). This allows the RNA to fold back on itself, forming a GC-rich stem (stabilized by H-bonds) plus a loop. This structure is known as a "hairpin". Additionally, just beyond the hairpin, the RNA transcript contains a string of Us at the 3'-end. The bonding of these Us to the complementary As of the DNA template is weak. This facilitates the separation of the newly synthesized RNA from its DNA template, as the double helix "zips up" behind the *RNA polymerase*.

   b. **ρ-Dependent termination:** This requires the participation of an additional protein, rho (ρ), which is a hexameric *adenosine triphosphatase* (*ATPase*) with *helicase* activity. ρ binds a C-rich "rho recognition site" near the 3'-end of the nascent RNA and, using its *ATPase* activity, moves along the RNA until it reaches the *RNA polymerase* paused at the termination site. The *ATP-dependent helicase* activity of ρ separates the RNA-DNA hybrid helix, causing the release of the RNA.

4. **Action of antibiotics:** Some antibiotics prevent bacterial cell growth by inhibiting RNA synthesis. For example, rifampin inhibits the initiation of transcription by binding to the β subunit of prokaryotic *RNA polymerase*, thus interfering with the formation of the first phosphodiester bond (Figure 30.10). Rifampin is useful in the treatment of tuberculosis.[1] Dactinomycin (known to biochemists as actinomycin D) was the first antibiotic to find therapeutic application in tumor chemotherapy.[2] It binds to the DNA template and interferes with the movement of *RNA polymerase* along the DNA.

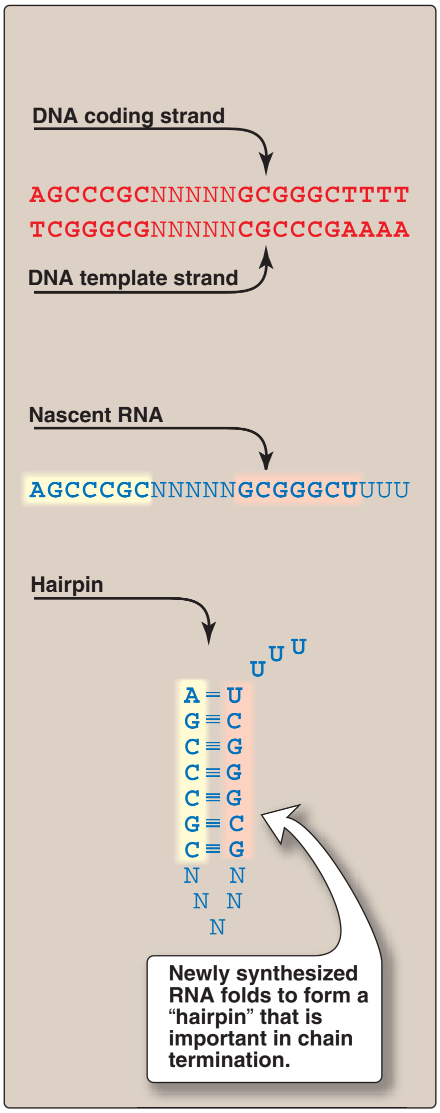
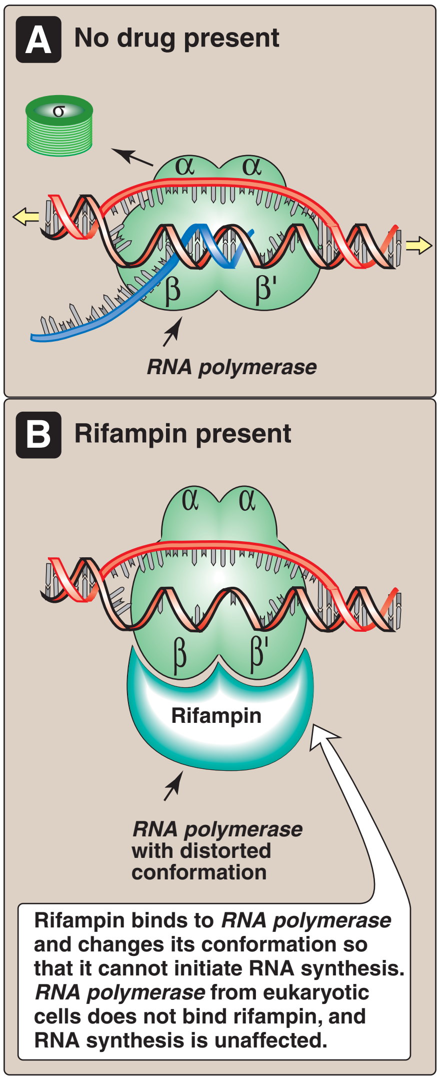


Figure 30.9
Rho-independent termination of transcription. A. DNA template sequence generates a self-complementary sequence in the nascent RNA. B. Hairpin structure formed by the RNA. "N" represents a noncomplementary base.

INFO LINK

[1] See Chapter 34 in ***Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Pharmacology*** for a discussion of rifampin in the treatment of tuberculosis.

[2] See Chapter 39 in ***Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Pharmacology*** for a discussion of dactinomycin in treating cancer.



Rifampin binds to ***RNA polymerase*** and changes its conformation so that it cannot initiate RNA synthesis. ***RNA polymerase*** from eukaryotic cells does not bind rifampin, and RNA synthesis is unaffected.

Figure 30.10
Inactivation of prokaryotic *RNA polymerase* by rifampin.

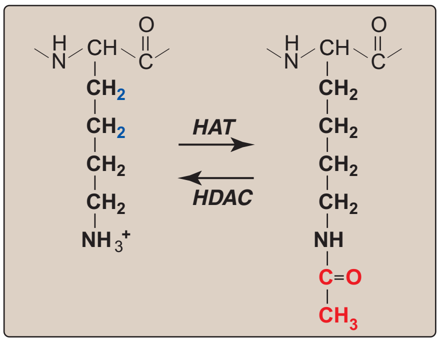


Figure 30.11
Acetylation/deacetylation of a lysine residue in a histone protein. *HAT* = *histone acetyltransferase*; *HDAC* = *histone deacetylase.*

IV. TRANSCRIPTION OF EUKARYOTIC GENES

The transcription of eukaryotic genes is a far more complicated process than transcription in prokaryotes. Eukaryotic transcription involves separate *polymerases* for the synthesis of rRNA, tRNA, and mRNA. In addition, a large number of proteins called transcription factors (TFs) are involved. TFs bind to distinct sites on the DNA—either within the core promoter region, close (proximal) to it, or some distance away (distal). They are required both for the assembly of a transcription complex at the promoter and the determination of which genes are to be transcribed. [Note: Each eukaryotic *RNA polymerase* has its own promoters and TFs.] For TFs to recognize and bind to their specific DNA sequences, the chromatin structure in that region must be altered (remodeled) to allow access to the DNA. The role of transcription in the regulation of gene expression is discussed in Chapter 32.

A. Chromatin structure and gene expression

The association of DNA with histones to form nucleosomes (see p. 409) affects the ability of the transcription machinery to access the DNA to be transcribed. Most actively transcribed genes are found in a relatively relaxed form of chromatin called euchromatin, whereas most inactive segments of DNA are found in highly condensed heterochromatin. [Note: The interconversion of these forms is called chromatin remodeling.] A major mechanism by which chromatin is remodeled is through acetylation of lysine residues at the amino terminus of histone proteins (Figure 30.11). Acetylation, mediated by *histone acetyltransferases* (*HATs*), eliminates the positive charge on the lysine and thereby decreases the interaction of the histone with the negatively charged DNA. Removal of the acetyl group by *histone deacetylases* (*HDACs*) restores the positive charge, and fosters stronger interactions between histones and DNA.

B. Nuclear RNA polymerases of eukaryotic cells

There are three distinct classes of *RNA polymerase* in the nucleus of eukaryotic cells. All are large enzymes with multiple subunits. Each class of *RNA polymerase* recognizes particular types of genes.

1. **RNA polymerase I:** This enzyme synthesizes the precursor of the 28S, 18S, and 5.8S rRNA in the nucleolus.

2. **RNA polymerase II:** This enzyme synthesizes the nuclear precursors of mRNA that are subsequently translated to produce proteins. *Polymerase II* also synthesizes certain small ncRNAs, such as snRNA (see p. 426), snoRNA (see p. 425) and miRNA (see p. 459).

   a. **Promoters and transcription factors for RNA polymerase II:** In some genes transcribed by *RNA polymerase II*, a sequence of nucleotides that is nearly identical to that of the Pribnow box (see p. 420) is found centered about 25 nucleotides upstream of the transcription start site. This promoter consensus sequence is called the TATA or Hogness box. Between 70 and

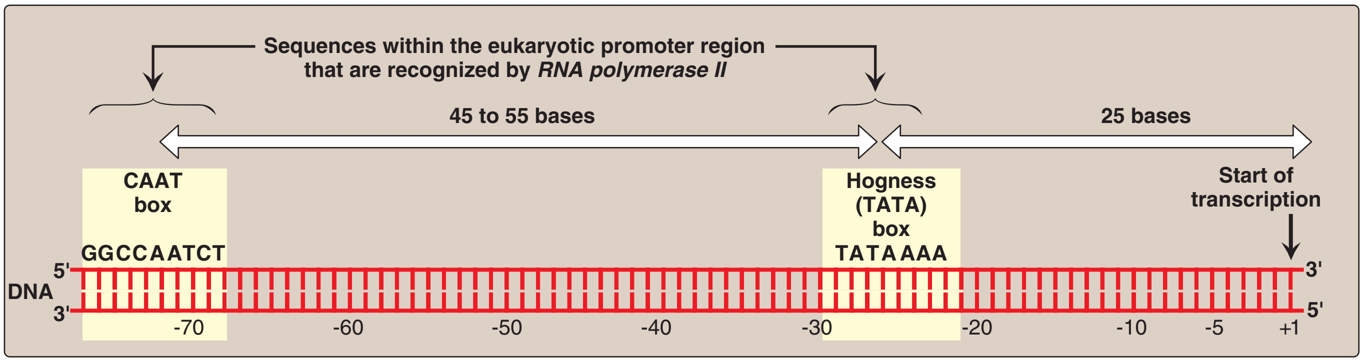

Sequences within the eukaryotic promoter region
that are recognized by *RNA polymerase II*
45 to 55 bases
25 bases
CAAT
box
GGCCAATCT
Hogness
(TATA)
box
TATAAAA
Start of
transcription
DNA
5'
3'
3'
5'
-70
-60
-50
-40
-30
-20
-10
-5
+1

Figure 30.12
Eukaryotic gene promoter consensus sequences.

80 nucleotides upstream of the transcription start site often is found a second consensus sequence known as the CAAT box (Figure 30.12). In other genes, for example, those that are always ("constitutively") expressed, no TATA box is typically present. Instead, a GC-rich region (GC box) may be found. [Note: No one consensus sequence is found in all core promoters.] Because these sequences are on the same molecule of DNA as the gene being transcribed, they are called cis-acting elements. Such sequences serve as binding sites for TFs, which in turn interact with each other and with *RNA polymerase II*.

> Transcription factors bind DNA through a variety of motifs, such as the helix-loop-helix, zinc fingers, and leucine zippers (see p. 18).]

Because TFs are encoded by different genes, synthesized in the cytosol, and must transit to their sites of action, they are called trans-acting factors. General TFs are the minimal requirements for recognition of the promoter, recruitment of *RNA polymerase II* to the promoter, and initiation of transcription (Figure 30.13A). [Note: In contrast to the holoenzyme of prokaryotes, eukaryotic *RNA polymerase II* does not itself recognize and bind the promoter. Instead, TFIID recognizes and binds the TATA box, and TFIIF brings the *polymerase* to the promoter. The *helicase* activity of TFIIH melts the DNA and its *kinase* activity phosphorylates *polymerase*, allowing it to clear the promoter.] Specific TFs (transcriptional activators) bind to sequences within and outside of the core promoter. They are required to modulate the frequency of initiation, to mediate the response to signals such as hormones (see p. 456), and to regulate which genes are expressed at a given point in time. A typical protein-coding eukaryotic gene has binding sites for many such factors. In addition to binding DNA, specific TFs also bind other proteins ("coactivators"), recruiting them to the transcription complex. [Note: Coactivators include the *HAT* enzymes involved in chromatin remodeling (see p. 422).]

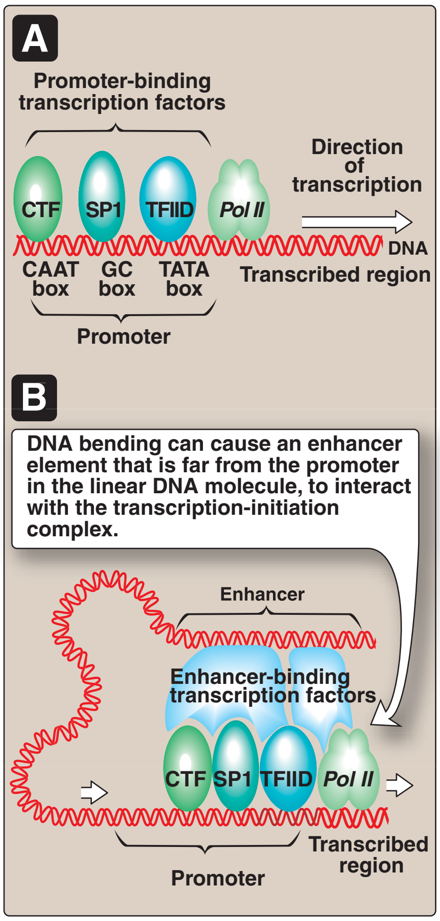

A
Promoter-binding
transcription factors
CTF
SP1
TFIID
Pol II
Direction
of
transcription
DNA
CAAT
box
GC
box
TATA
box
Transcribed region
Promoter
B
DNA bending can cause an enhancer element that is far from the promoter in the linear DNA molecule, to interact with the transcription-initiation complex.
Enhancer
Enhancer-binding
transcription factors
CTF
SP1
TFIID
Pol II
Transcribed
region
Promoter

Figure 30.13
A. Eukaryotic general transcription factors (CTF, SP1, TFIID) bind to consensus sequences found in promoters for *RNA polymerase II* . Additional general transcription factors (TFIIs) are required for assembly of the initiation complex and recruitment of polymerase.
B. Enhancer stimulation of *RNA polymerase II*.

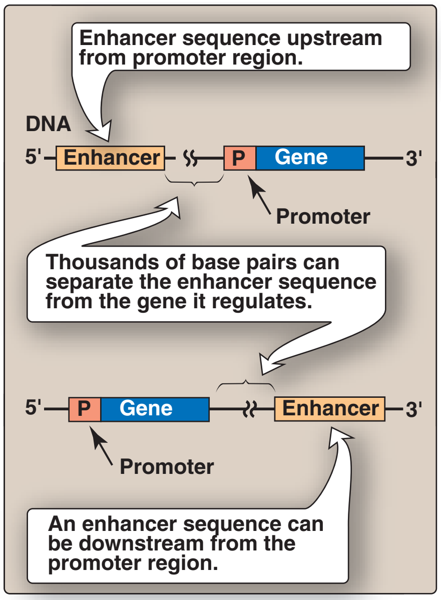

Enhancer sequence upstream from promoter region.
DNA
5'
Enhancer
P
Gene
3'
Promoter
Thousands of base pairs can separate the enhancer sequence from the gene it regulates.
5'
P
Gene
Enhancer
3'
Promoter
An enhancer sequence can be downstream from the promoter region.

Figure 30.14
Some possible locations of enhancer sequences.

b. **Role of enhancers in eukaryotic gene regulation:** Enhancers are special cis-acting DNA sequences that increase the rate of initiation of transcription by *RNA polymerase II*. Enhancers are on the same chromosome as the gene whose transcription they stimulate (Figure 30.13B). However, they can 1) be located upstream (to the 5'-side) or downstream (to the 3'-side) of the transcription start site; 2) be close to or thousands of base pairs away from the promoter (Figure 30.14); and 3) occur on either strand of the DNA. Enhancers contain DNA sequences called "response elements" that bind specific TFs that function as transcriptional activators. By bending or looping the DNA, these enhancer-binding factors can interact with other transcription factors bound to a promoter and with *RNA polymerase II*, thereby stimulating transcription (see Figure 30.13B). [Note: Silencers are similar to enhancers in that they act over long distances; however, they reduce gene expression.]

c. **Inhibitors of RNA polymerase II:** This enzyme is inhibited by α-amanitin—a potent toxin produced by the poisonous mushroom Amanita phalloides (sometimes called "death cap"). α-Amanitin forms a tight complex with the *polymerase*, thereby inhibiting mRNA synthesis and, ultimately, protein synthesis.

3. **RNA polymerase III:** This enzyme synthesizes tRNA, 5S rRNA, and some snRNA and snoRNA.

B. Mitochondrial RNA polymerase

Mitochondria contain a single *RNA polymerase* that more closely resembles bacterial *RNA polymerase* than the eukaryotic enzyme.

V. POSTTRANSCRIPTIONAL MODIFICATION OF RNA

A primary transcript is the initial, linear, RNA copy of a transcription unit—the segment of DNA between specific initiation and termination sequences. The primary transcripts of both prokaryotic and eukaryotic tRNA and rRNA are posttranscriptionally modified by cleavage of the original transcripts by *ribonucleases*. tRNAs are then further modified to help give each species its unique identity. In contrast, prokaryotic mRNA is generally identical to its primary transcript, whereas eukaryotic mRNA is extensively modified both co- and posttranscriptionally.

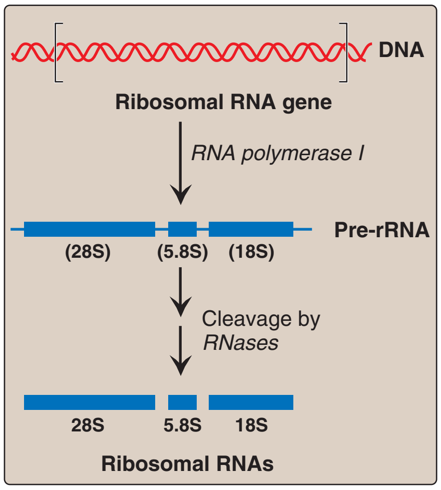

DNA
Ribosomal RNA gene
RNA polymerase I
Pre-rRNA
(28S)
(5.8S)
(18S)
Cleavage by RNases
28S
5.8S
18S
Ribosomal RNAs

Figure 30.15
Posttranscriptional processing of eukaryotic ribosomal RNA by *ribonucleases* (*RNases*).

A. Ribosomal RNA

rRNAs of both prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells are generated from long precursor molecules called pre-rRNAs. The 23S, 16S, and 5S rRNA of prokaryotes are produced from a single pre-rRNA molecule, as are the 28S, 18S, and 5.8S rRNA of eukaryotes (Figure 30.15). [Note: Eukaryotic 5S rRNA is synthesized by *RNA polymerase III* and modified separately.] The pre-rRNAs are cleaved by *ribonucleases* to yield intermediate-sized pieces of rRNA, which are further processed (trimmed by *exonucleases* and modified at some bases and riboses) to produce the required RNA species. [Note: In eukaryotes, rRNA genes are found in long, tandem arrays. rRNA synthesis and processing occur in the nucleolus, with base and sugar modifications facilitated by small nucleolar RNAs (snoRNA). Some of the proteins destined to become components of the ribosome associate with pre-rRNA prior to and during its modification.]

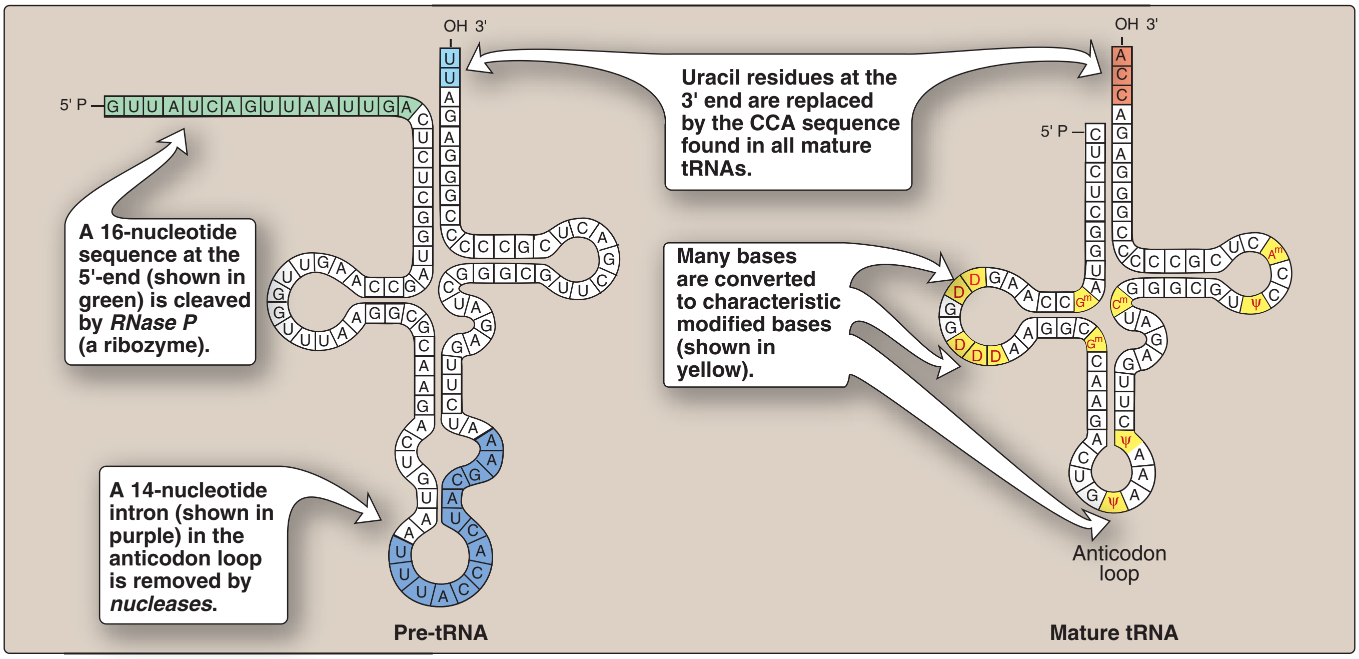
B. Transfer RNA

Both eukaryotic and prokaryotic tRNA are also made from longer precursor molecules that must be modified (Figure 30.16). Sequences at both ends of the molecule are removed and, if present, an intron (see below) is removed from the anticodon loop by *nucleases*. Other posttranscriptional modifications include addition of a –CCA sequence by *nucleotidyltransferase* to the 3'-terminal end of tRNA, and modification of bases at specific positions to produce the "unusual bases" characteristic of tRNA (see p. 292).

C. Eukaryotic mRNA

The collection of all the primary transcripts synthesized in the nucleus by *RNA polymerase II* is known as heterogeneous nuclear RNA (hnRNA). The pre-mRNA components of hnRNA undergo extensive co- and posttranscriptional modification in the nucleus. These modifications usually include:

1. **5' "Capping":** This is the first of the processing reactions for pre-mRNA (Figure 30.17). The cap is a 7-methylguanosine attached "backward" to the 5'-terminal end of the mRNA, forming an unusual 5'→5' triphosphate linkage. Creation of the cap requires removal of the γ phosphate from the 5'-triphosphate of the pre-mRNA, followed by addition of GMP (from GTP) by the nuclear enzyme *guanylyltransferase*. Methylation of this terminal guanine occurs in the cytosol, and is catalyzed by *guanine-7-methyltransferase*. S-adenosylmethionine is the source of the methyl group



A 16-nucleotide sequence at the 5'-end (shown in green) is cleaved by *RNase P* (a ribozyme).

Uracil residues at the 3' end are replaced by the CCA sequence found in all mature tRNAs.

Many bases are converted to characteristic modified bases (shown in yellow).

A 14-nucleotide intron (shown in purple) in the anticodon loop is removed by *nucleases*.

Figure 30.16
A. Primary tRNA transcript. B. Functional tRNA after posttranscriptional modification. Modified bases include D (dihydrouracil), ψ (pseudouracil), and ^{m}, which means that the base has been methylated.

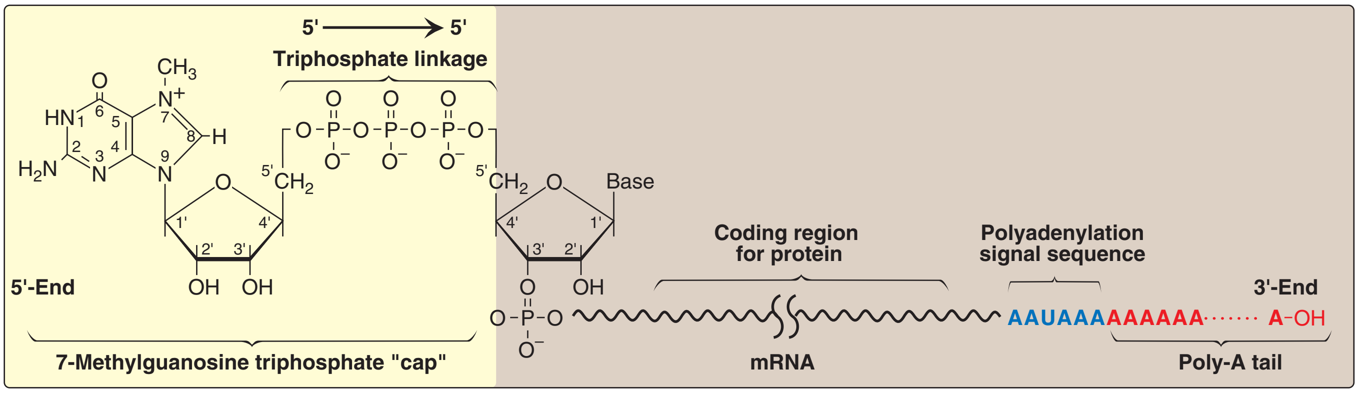

5' → 5'
Triphosphate linkage
7-Methylguanosine triphosphate "cap"
5'-End
Base
Coding region for protein
Polyadenylation signal sequence
3'-End
AAUAAAAAAAAA······ A-OH
mRNA
Poly-A tail

Figure 30.17
Posttranscriptional modification of mRNA showing the 7-methylguanosine cap and poly-A tail.

(see p. 264). Additional methylation steps may occur. The addition of this 7-methylguanosine "cap" helps stabilize the mRNA, and permits initiation of translation (see p. 439). Eukaryotic mRNAs lacking the cap are not efficiently translated.

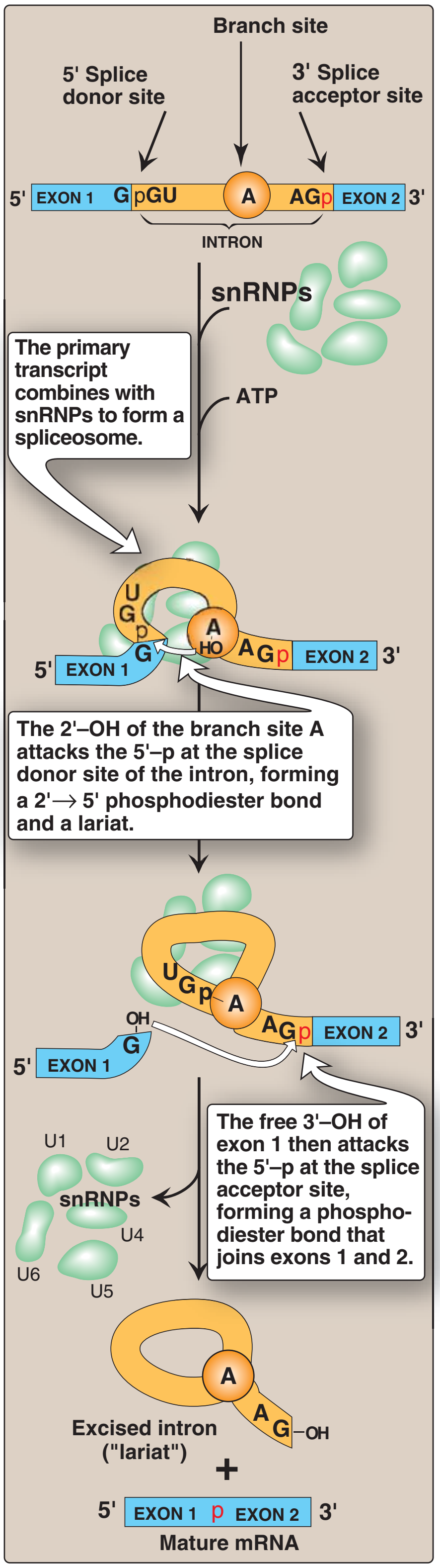
2. **Addition of a poly-A tail:** Most eukaryotic mRNA (with several notable exceptions, including those coding for the histones) have a chain of 40–200 adenine nucleotides attached to the 3'-end (see Figure 30.17). This poly-A tail is not transcribed from the DNA, but rather is added after transcription by the nuclear enzyme, *polyadenylate polymerase*, using ATP as the substrate. The mRNA is cleaved downstream of a consensus sequence, called the polyadenylation signal sequence (AAUAAA), found near the 3'-end of the RNA, and the poly-A tail is added to the new 3'-end. These tails help stabilize the mRNA, facilitate its exit from the nucleus, and aid in translation. After the mRNA enters the cytosol, the poly-A tail is gradually shortened.

3. **Removal of introns:** Maturation of eukaryotic mRNA usually involves the removal of RNA sequences (introns, or intervening sequences), which do not code for protein from the primary transcript. The remaining coding sequences, the exons, are joined together to form the mature mRNA. The process of removing introns and joining exons is called splicing. The molecular complex that accomplishes these tasks is known as the spliceosome. A few eukaryotic primary transcripts contain no introns, for example, those from histone genes. Others contain a few introns, whereas some, such as the primary transcripts for the α chains of collagen, contain more than 50 intervening sequences that must be removed before mature mRNA is ready for translation.

   a. **Role of snRNAs:** In association with proteins, uracil-rich small nuclear RNAs (snRNA) form small nuclear ribonucleoprotein particles (snRNPs, or "snurps" designated as U1, U2, etc.) that mediate splicing. They facilitate the removal of introns by forming base pairs with the consensus sequences at each end of the intron (Figure 30.18).

> Systemic lupus erythematosus, an often fatal inflammatory disease, results from an autoimmune response in which individuals produce antibodies against their own nuclear proteins such as snRNPs.

b. Mechanism of splicing: The binding of snRNPs brings the sequences of the neighboring exons into the correct alignment for splicing. The 2'-OH group of an adenosine (A) residue (known as the branch site) in the intron attacks the phosphate at the 5'-end of the intron (splice donor site), forming an unusual 2'→5' phosphodiester bond and creating a "lariat" structure (see Figure 30.18). The newly freed 3'-OH of exon 1 attacks the 5'-phosphate at the splice acceptor site, forming a phosphodiester bond that joins exons 1 and 2. The excised intron is released as a lariat, which is typically degraded. [Note: The GU and AG sequences at the beginning and end, respectively, of introns are invariant.] After introns have been removed and exons joined, the mature mRNA molecules leave the nucleus and pass into the cytosol through pores in the nuclear membrane. [Note: The introns in tRNA (see Figure 30.16) are removed by a different mechanism.]



The primary transcript combines with snRNPs to form a spliceosome.

The 2'–OH of the branch site A attacks the 5'–p at the splice donor site of the intron, forming a 2'⟶ 5' phosphodiester bond and a lariat.

The free 3'–OH of exon 1 then attacks the 5'–p at the splice acceptor site, forming a phosphodiester bond that joins exons 1 and 2.

Figure 30.18
Splicing. snRNP = small nuclear ribonucleoprotein particle.

c. Effect of splice site mutations: Mutations at splice sites can lead to improper splicing and the production of aberrant proteins. It is estimated that 15% of all genetic diseases are a result of mutations that affect RNA splicing. For example, mutations that cause the incorrect splicing of β-globin mRNA are responsible for some cases of β–thalassemia—a disease in which the production of the β-globin protein is defective (see p. 38).

4. Alternative splicing of mRNA molecules: The pre-mRNA molecules from some genes can be spliced in alternative ways in different tissues. This produces multiple variations of the mRNA and, therefore, of its protein product (Figure 30.19). This appears to be a mechanism for producing a diverse set of proteins from a limited set of genes. For example, in eukaryotic cells the mRNA for tropomyosin, an actin filament-binding protein of the cytoskeleton (and of the contractile apparatus in muscle cells), undergoes extensive tissue-specific alternative splicing with production of multiple isoforms of the tropomyosin protein.

VI. CHAPTER SUMMARY

There are three major types of RNA that participate in the process of protein synthesis: **ribosomal RNA (rRNA)**, **transfer RNA (tRNA)**, and **messenger RNA (mRNA)** (Figure 30.20). They are unbranched polymers of nucleotides, but differ from DNA by containing **ribose** instead of deoxyribose and **uracil** instead of thymine. **rRNA** is a component of the **ribosomes**. **tRNA** serves as an "adaptor" molecule that carries a spe-

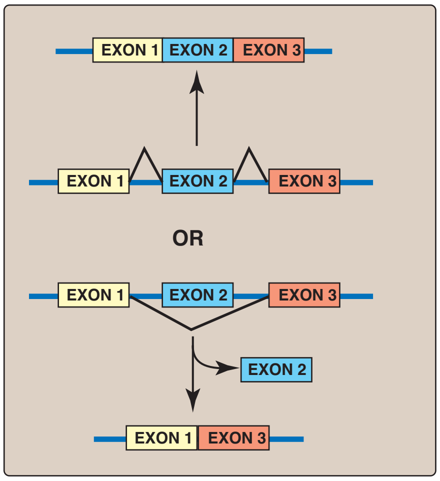


Figure 30.19
Alternative splicing patterns in eukaryotic mRNA.

cific amino acid to the site of protein synthesis. **mRNA** carries genetic information from the nuclear DNA to the cytosol, where it is used as the template for protein synthesis. The process of RNA synthesis is called **transcription**, and its substrates are **ribonucleoside triphosphates**. The enzyme that synthesizes RNA is **RNA polymerase,** which is a multisubunit enzyme. In **prokaryotic** cells, the **core enzyme** has five subunits—2α, 1β, 1β', and 1Ω—and possesses **5'→3' polymerase activity** that **elongates** the growing RNA strand. This enzyme requires an additional subunit—sigma (σ) **factor**—that recognizes the nucleotide sequence (**promoter** region) at the beginning of a length of DNA that is to be transcribed. This region contains characteristic **consensus nucleotide sequences** that are highly conserved and include the **Pribnow box** and the **–35 sequence**. Another protein—rho (ρ) **factor**—is required for **termination** of transcription of some genes. There are three distinct classes of RNA polymerase in the nucleus of eukaryotic cells. **RNA polymerase I** synthesizes the precursor of large rRNA in the nucleolus. **RNA polymerase II** synthesizes the precursors for mRNA and some ncRNAs in the nucleoplasm, and **RNA polymerase III** produces the precursors of **tRNA** in the nucleoplasm. In both prokaryotes and eukaryotes, RNA polymerase does not require a primer, and has no proofreading activity. **Promoters** for genes transcribed by **RNA polymerase II** contain consensus sequences, such as the **TATA** or **Hogness box**, the **CAAT box**, and the **GC box.** They serve as binding sites for proteins called **general transcription factors**, which, in turn, interact with each other and with RNA polymerase II. **Enhancers** are DNA sequences that increase the rate of initiation of transcription by binding **specific transcription factors** that serve as transcription activators. Eukaryotic transcription requires that the **chromatin** be accessible. **A primary transcript** is a linear copy of a **transcription unit**—the segment of DNA between specific initiation and termination sequences. The primary transcripts of both prokaryotic and eukaryotic tRNA and rRNA are **posttranscriptionally modified** by cleavage of the original transcripts by ribonucleases. **rRNA** of both prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells are synthesized from long precursor molecules called **preribosomal RNA**. These precursors are cleaved and trimmed by ribonucleases, producing the three largest rRNA, and bases and sugars are modified. Eukaryotic 5S rRNA is synthesized by *RNA polymerase III* , and is modified separately. Prokaryotic mRNA is generally identical to its primary transcript, whereas eukaryotic mRNA is extensively modified co- and posttranscriptionally. For example, a **7-methylguanosine "cap"** is attached to the 5'-terminal end of the mRNA through a 5'→5' linkage. A **long poly-A tail**—not transcribed from the DNA—is attached to the 3'-end of most mRNA. Most eukaryotic mRNAs also contain **intervening sequences (introns)** that must be removed to make the mRNA functional. Their removal, as well as the **joining of expressed sequences (exons)**, requires a **spliceosome** composed of **small, nuclear ribonucleoprotein particles** that mediate the process of **splicing**. Eukaryotic mRNA is monocistronic, containing information from just one gene. Prokaryotic and eukaryotic tRNA are also made from longer precursor molecules. If present, an intron is removed by nucleases, and both ends of the molecule are trimmed by ribonucleases. A **3'-CCA** sequence is added, and bases at specific positions are modified, producing "unusual" bases.

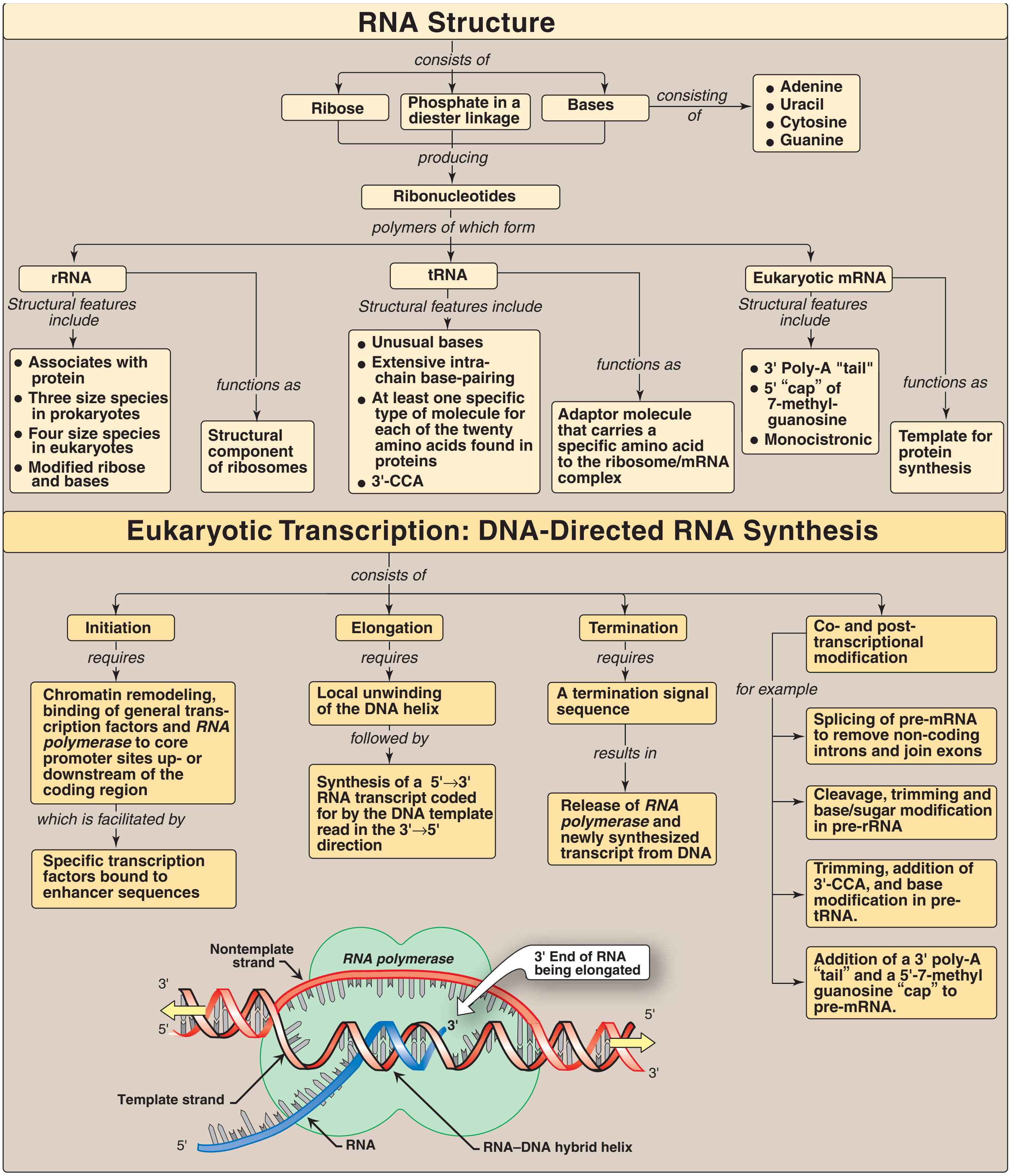

RNA Structure
consists of
Ribose
Phosphate in a diester linkage
Bases
consisting of
• Adenine
• Uracil
• Cytosine
• Guanine
producing
Ribonucleotides
polymers of which form
rRNA
Structural features include
• Associates with protein
• Three size species in prokaryotes
• Four size species in eukaryotes
• Modified ribose and bases
functions as
Structural component of ribosomes
tRNA
Structural features include
• Unusual bases
• Extensive intra-chain base-pairing
• At least one specific type of molecule for each of the twenty amino acids found in proteins
• 3'-CCA
functions as
Adaptor molecule that carries a specific amino acid to the ribosome/mRNA complex
Eukaryotic mRNA
Structural features include
• 3' Poly-A "tail"
• 5' “cap” of 7-methyl-guanosine
• Monocistronic
functions as
Template for protein synthesis
Eukaryotic Transcription: DNA-Directed RNA Synthesis
consists of
Initiation
requires
Chromatin remodeling, binding of general transcription factors and RNA polymerase to core promoter sites up- or downstream of the coding region
which is facilitated by
Specific transcription factors bound to enhancer sequences
Elongation
requires
Local unwinding of the DNA helix
followed by
Synthesis of a 5'→3' RNA transcript coded for by the DNA template read in the 3'→5' direction
Termination
requires
A termination signal sequence
results in
Release of RNA polymerase and newly synthesized transcript from DNA
Co- and post-transcriptional modification
for example
Splicing of pre-mRNA to remove non-coding introns and join exons
Cleavage, trimming and base/sugar modification in pre-rRNA
Trimming, addition of 3'-CCA, and base modification in pre-tRNA.
Addition of a 3' poly-A “tail” and a 5'-7-methyl guanosine “cap” to pre-mRNA.
Nontemplate strand
RNA polymerase
3' End of RNA being elongated
3'
5'
3'
5'
3'
Template strand
5'
RNA
RNA–DNA hybrid helix

Figure 30.20
Key concept map for RNA structure and synthesis.

Study Questions

Choose the ONE correct answer.

30.1 A 1-year-old male with chronic anemia is found to have β-thalassemia. Genetic analysis shows that one of his β-globin genes has a mutation that creates a new splice acceptor site 19 nucleotides upstream of the normal splice acceptor site of the first intron. Which of the following best describes the new mRNA molecule that can be produced from this mutant gene?

A. Exon 1 will be too short.
B. Exon 1 will be too long.
C. Exon 2 will be too short.
D. Exon 2 will be too long.
E. Exon 2 will be missing.

Correct answer = D. Because the mutation creates an additional splice acceptor site (the 3'-end) upstream of the normal acceptor site of intron 1, the 19 nucleotides that are usually found at the 3'-end of the excised intron 1 lariat can remain behind as part of exon 2. Exon 2 can, therefore, have these extra 19 nucleotides at its 5'-end. The presence of these extra nucleotides in the coding region of the mutant mRNA molecule will prevent the ribosome from translating the message into a normal β-globin protein molecule. Those mRNA for which the normal splice site is used to remove the first intron will be normal, and their translation will produce normal β-globin protein.

30.2 The base sequence of the strand of DNA used as the template for transcription is GATCTAC. What is the base sequence of the RNA product? (All sequences are written 5'→ 3' according to standard convention.)

A. CTAGATG.
B. GTAGATC.
C. GAUCUAC.
D. CUAGAUG.
E. GUAGAUC.

Correct answer = E. The RNA product has a sequence that is complementary to the template strand and identical to the coding strand of DNA. Uracil (U) is found in RNA in place of the thymine (T) in DNA. Thus, the DNA template 5'-GATCTAC-3' would produce the RNA product 3'-CUAGAUG-5' or, written correctly in the standard direction, 5'-GUAGAUC-3'.

30.3 A 4-year-old child who becomes easily tired and has trouble walking is diagnosed with Duchenne muscular dystrophy, an X-linked recessive disorder. Genetic analysis shows that the patient's gene for the muscle protein dystrophin contains a mutation in its promoter region. Of the choices listed, which would be the most likely effect of this mutation?

A. Initiation of dystrophin transcription will be defective.
B. Termination of dystrophin transcription will be defective.
C. Capping of dystrophin mRNA will be defective.
D. Splicing of dystrophin mRNA will be defective.
E. Tailing of dystrophin mRNA will be defective.

Correct answer = A. Mutations in the promoter typically prevent formation of the RNA polymerase II transcription complex, resulting in a decrease in the initiation of mRNA synthesis. A deficiency of dystrophin mRNA will result in a deficiency in the production of the dystrophin protein. Capping, splicing and tailing defects are not a consequence of promoter mutations. They can, however, result in mRNA with decreased stability (capping and tailing defects), or a mRNA in which too many or too few introns have been removed (splicing defects)

30.4 A mutation to this sequence in eukaryotic mRNA will affect the process by which the 3'-end poly-A tail is added to the mRNA.

A. CAAT
B. CCA
C. GGGGCG
D. AAUAAA
E. TATAAA

Correct answer = D. An endonuclease cleaves mRNA just downstream of this polyadenylation signal, creating a new 3'-end to which the *pol A polymerase* adds the poly-A tail using ATP as the substrate in a template-independent process. CAAT, GGGGCGT, and TATAAA are sequences found in promoters for *RNA polymerase II*. CCA is added to the 3'-end of tRNA by *nucleotidyl transferase*.

Protein Synthesis

31

I. OVERVIEW

Genetic information, stored in the chromosomes and transmitted to daughter cells through DNA replication, is expressed through transcription to RNA and, in the case of messenger RNA (mRNA), subsequent translation into proteins (polypeptide chains, Figure 31.1). The pathway of protein synthesis is called translation because the "language" of the nucleotide sequence on the mRNA is translated into the "language" of an amino acid sequence. The process of translation requires a genetic code, through which the information contained in the nucleic acid sequence is expressed to produce a specific sequence of amino acids. Any alteration in the nucleic acid sequence may result in an incorrect amino acid being inserted into the polypeptide chain, potentially causing disease or even death of the organism. Newly made proteins undergo a number of processes to achieve their functional form. They must fold properly, and misfolding can result in degradation of the protein. Many proteins are covalently modified to activate them or alter their activities. Finally, proteins are targeted to their final intra- or extracellular destinations by signals present in the proteins themselves.

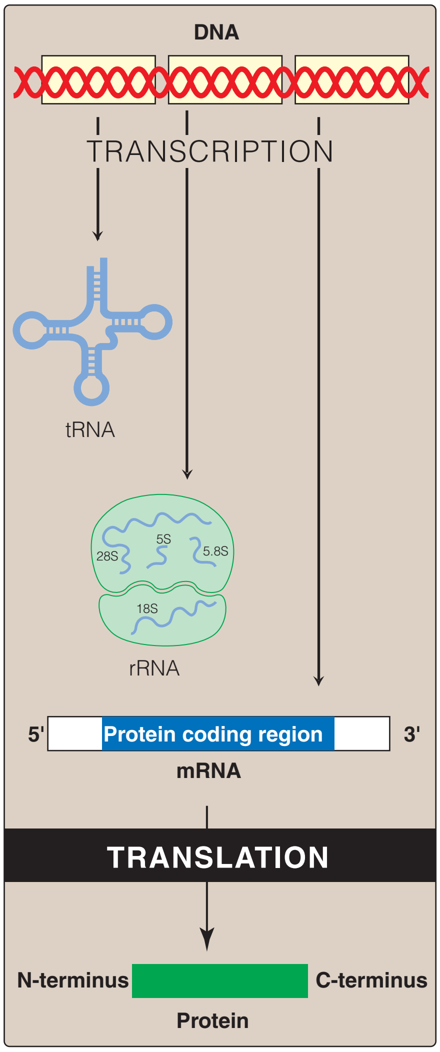


Figure 31.1
Protein synthesis or translation.

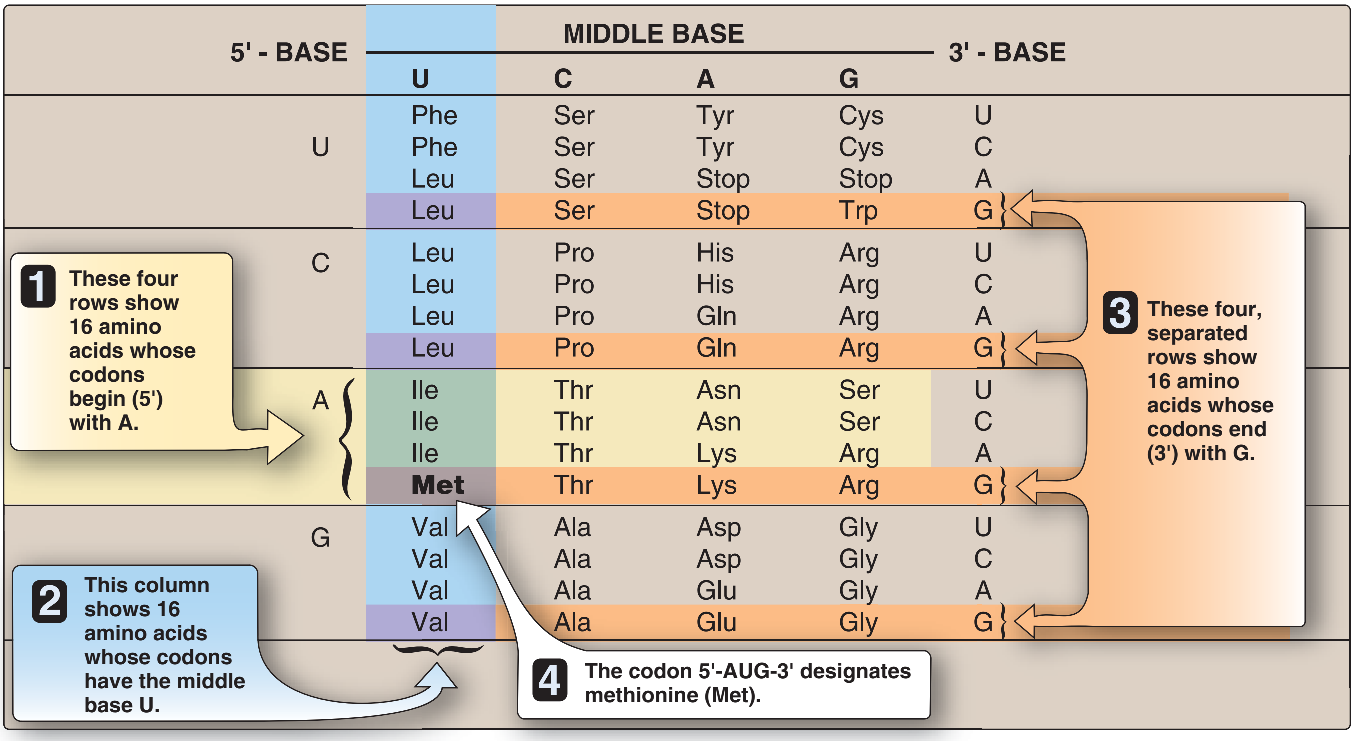
II. THE GENETIC CODE

The genetic code is a dictionary that identifies the correspondence between a sequence of nucleotide bases and a sequence of amino acids. Each individual "word" in the code is composed of three nucleotide bases. These genetic words are called codons.

A. Codons

Codons are presented in the mRNA language of adenine (A), guanine (G), cytosine (C), and uracil (U). Their nucleotide sequences are always written from the 5'-end to the 3'-end. The four nucleotide bases are used to produce the three-base codons. There are, therefore, 64 different combinations of bases, taken three at a time (a triplet code) as shown in Figure 31.2.

1. **How to translate a codon:** This table (or "dictionary") can be used to translate any codon and, thus, to determine which amino acids are coded for by an mRNA sequence. For example, the codon 5'-AUG-3' codes for methionine (see Figure 31.2). [Note: AUG is



5' - BASE	U	C	A	G	3' - BASE
U	Phe	Ser	Tyr	Cys	U
	Phe	Ser	Tyr	Cys	C
	Leu	Ser	Stop	Stop	A
	Leu	Ser	Stop	Trp	G
C	Leu	Pro	His	Arg	U
	Leu	Pro	His	Arg	C
	Leu	Pro	Gln	Arg	A
	Leu	Pro	Gln	Arg	G
A	Ile	Thr	Asn	Ser	U
	Ile	Thr	Asn	Ser	C
	Ile	Thr	Lys	Arg	A
	Met	Thr	Lys	Arg	G
G	Val	Ala	Asp	Gly	U
	Val	Ala	Asp	Gly	C
	Val	Ala	Glu	Gly	A
	Val	Ala	Glu	Gly	G

MIDDLE BASE

1 These four rows show 16 amino acids whose codons begin (5') with A.

2 This column shows 16 amino acids whose codons have the middle base U.

3 These four, separated rows show 16 amino acids whose codons end (3') with G.

4 The codon 5'-AUG-3' designates methionine (Met).

Figure 31.2
Use of the genetic code table to translate the codon AUG.

the initiation (start) codon for translation.] Sixty-one of the 64 codons code for the 20 common amino acids.

2. **Termination ("stop" or "nonsense") codons:** Three of the codons, UAG, UGA, and UAA, do not code for amino acids, but rather are termination codons. When one of these codons appears in an mRNA sequence, synthesis of the polypeptide coded for by that mRNA stops.

B. Characteristics of the genetic code

Usage of the genetic code is remarkably consistent throughout all living organisms. It is assumed that once the standard genetic code evolved in primitive organisms, any mutation that altered its meaning would have caused the alteration of most, if not all, protein sequences, resulting in lethality. Characteristics of the genetic code include the following:

1. **Specificity:** The genetic code is specific (unambiguous), that is, a particular codon always codes for the same amino acid.

2. **Universality:** The genetic code is virtually universal, that is, its specificity has been conserved from very early stages of evolution, with only slight differences in the manner in which the code is translated. [Note: An exception occurs in mitochondria, in which a few codons have meanings different than those shown in Figure 31.2, for example, UGA codes for Trp.]

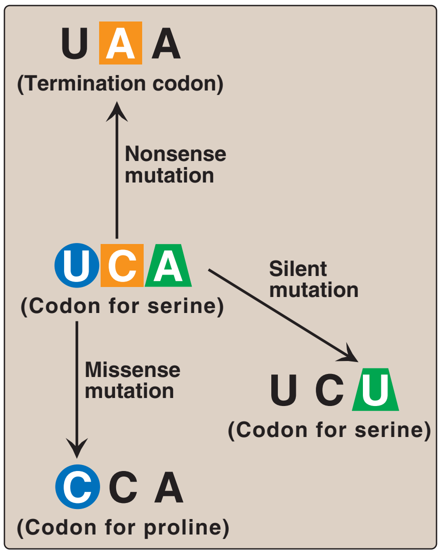


Figure 31.3
Possible effects of changing a single nucleotide base in the coding region of an mRNA chain.

3. **Degeneracy:** The genetic code is degenerate (sometimes called redundant). Although each codon corresponds to a single amino acid, a given amino acid may have more than one triplet coding for it. For example, arginine is specified by six different codons (see Figure 31.2). Only Met and Trp have just one coding triplet.

4. **Nonoverlapping and commaless:** The genetic code is nonoverlapping and commaless, that is, the code is read from a fixed starting point as a continuous sequence of bases, taken three at a time. For example, AGCUGGAUACAU is read as AGC/UGG/AUA/CAU without any "punctuation" between the codons.

C. Consequences of altering the nucleotide sequence:

Changing a single nucleotide base on the mRNA chain (a "point mutation") can lead to any one of three results (Figure 31.3):

1. **Silent mutation:** The codon containing the changed base may code for the same amino acid. For example, if the serine codon UCA is given a different third base—U—to become UCU, it still codes for serine. This is termed a "silent" mutation.

2. **Missense mutation:** The codon containing the changed base may code for a different amino acid. For example, if the serine codon UCA is given a different first base—C—to become CCA, it will code for a different amino acid, in this case, proline. The substitution of an incorrect amino acid is called a "missense" mutation.

3. **Nonsense mutation:** The codon containing the changed base may become a termination codon. For example, if the serine codon UCA is given a different second base—A—to become UAA, the new codon causes termination of translation at that point, and the production of a shortened (truncated) protein. The creation of a termination codon at an inappropriate place is called a "nonsense" mutation.

4. **Other mutations:** These can alter the amount or structure of the protein produced by translation.

   a. **Trinucleotide repeat expansion:** Occasionally, a sequence of three bases that is repeated in tandem will become amplified in number, so that too many copies of the triplet occur. If this happens within the coding region of a gene, the protein will contain many extra copies of one amino acid. For example, amplification of the CAG codon leads to the insertion of many extra glutamine residues in the huntingtin protein, causing the neurodegenerative disorder, Huntington disease (Figure 31.4). The additional glutamines result in unstable proteins that cause the accumulation of protein aggregates. If the trinucleotide repeat expansion occurs in the untranslated regions of a gene, the result can be a decrease in the amount of protein produced as seen, for example, in fragile X syndrome and myotonic dystrophy. [Note: In fragile X syndrome, the most common cause of intellectual disability, the expansion results in gene silencing through DNA hypermethylation (see p. 460).]

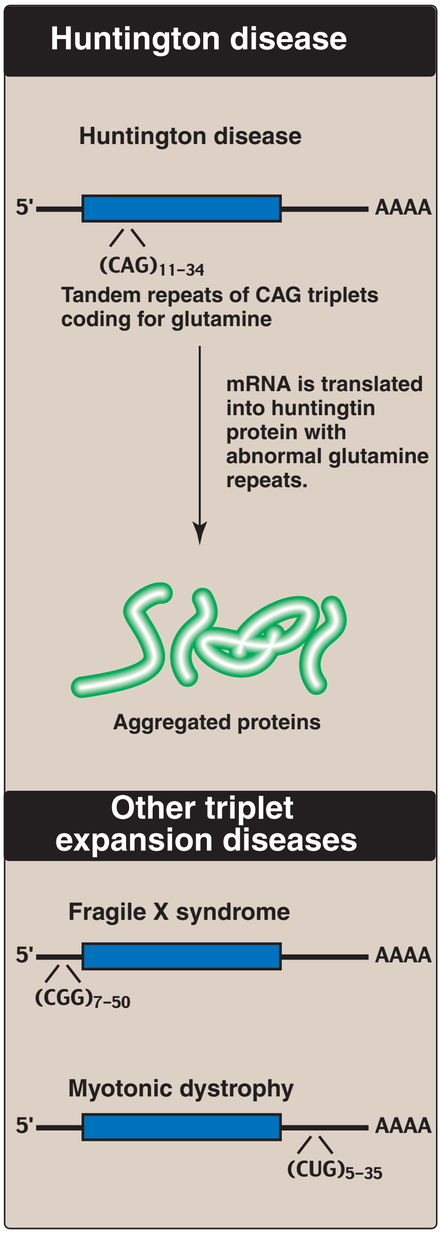

Huntington disease
Huntington disease
5'
AAAA
$(CAG)_{11-34}$
Tandem repeats of CAG triplets coding for glutamine
mRNA is translated into huntingtin protein with abnormal glutamine repeats.
Aggregated proteins
Other triplet expansion diseases
Fragile X syndrome
5'
AAAA
$(CGG)_{7-50}$
Myotonic dystrophy
5'
AAAA
$(CUG)_{5-35}$

Figure 31.4
Role of tandem triplet repeats in mRNA causing Huntington disease and other triplet expansion diseases.

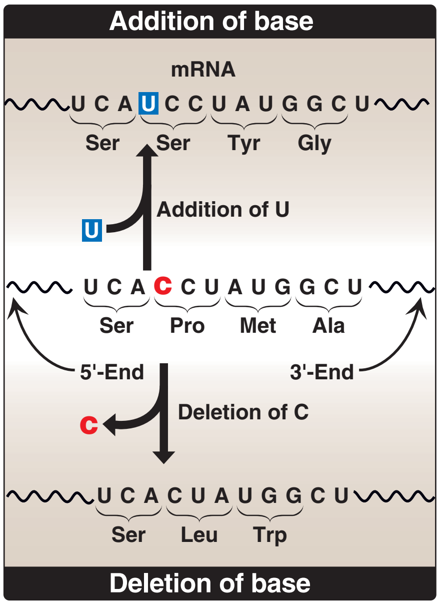


Figure 31.5
Frame-shift mutations as a result of addition or deletion of a base can cause an alteration in the reading frame of mRNA.

b. **Splice site mutations:** Mutations at splice sites (see p. 427) can alter the way in which introns are removed from pre-mRNA molecules, producing aberrant proteins. [Note: In myotonic dystrophy gene silencing is the result of splicing alterations.]

c. **Frame-shift mutations:** If one or two nucleotides are either deleted from or added to the coding region of a message sequence, a frame-shift mutation occurs and the reading frame is altered. This can result in a product with a radically different amino acid sequence, or a truncated product due to the creation of a termination codon (Figure 31.5). If three nucleotides are added, a new amino acid is added to the peptide or, if three nucleotides are deleted, an amino acid is lost. Loss of three nucleotides maintains the reading frame, but can result in serious pathology. For example, cystic fibrosis (CF), a hereditary disease that primarily affects the pulmonary and digestive systems, is most commonly caused by deletion of three nucleotides from the coding region of a gene, resulting in the loss of phenylalanine at the 508th position (ΔF508) in the protein encoded by that gene. This ΔF508 mutation prevents normal folding of the CF transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) protein, leading to its destruction by the proteasome (see p. 247). CFTR normally functions as a chloride channel in epithelial cells, and its loss results in the production of thick, sticky secretions in the lungs and pancreas, leading to lung damage and digestive deficiencies (see p. 248). In over 70% of Caucasians with CF, the ΔF508 mutation is the cause of the disease.

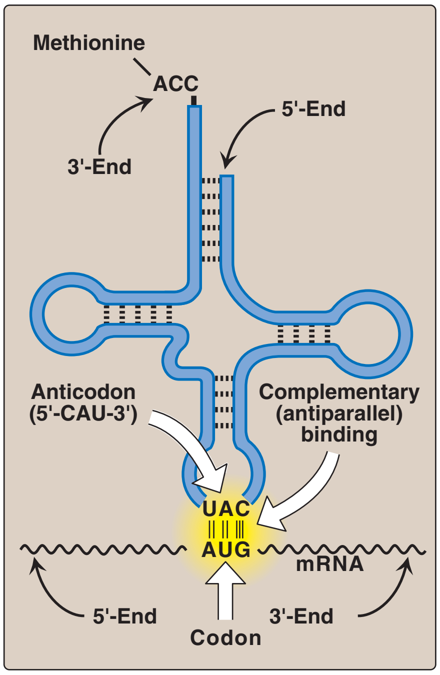


Figure 31.6
Complementary, antiparallel binding of the anticodon for methionyl-tRNA (CAU) to the mRNA codon for methionine (AUG), the initiation codon for translation.

III. COMPONENTS REQUIRED FOR TRANSLATION

A large number of components are required for the synthesis of a protein. These include all the amino acids that are found in the finished product, the mRNA to be translated, transfer RNA (tRNA) for each of the amino acids, functional ribosomes, energy sources, and enzymes, as well as protein factors needed for initiation, elongation, and termination steps of polypeptide chain synthesis.

A. Amino acids

All the amino acids that eventually appear in the finished protein must be present at the time of protein synthesis. [Note: If one amino acid is missing (for example, if the diet does not contain an essential amino acid, see p. 261), translation stops at the codon specifying that amino acid. This demonstrates the importance of having all the essential amino acids in sufficient quantities in the diet to ensure continued protein synthesis.]

B. Transfer RNA

At least one specific type of tRNA is required for each amino acid. In humans, there are at least 50 species of tRNA, whereas bacteria contain 30–40 species. Because there are only 20 different amino acids commonly carried by tRNA, some amino acids have more than one specific tRNA molecule. This is particularly true of those amino acids that are coded for by several codons.

1. **Amino acid attachment site:** Each tRNA molecule has an attachment site for a specific (cognate) amino acid at its 3'-end (Figure 31.6). The carboxyl group of the amino acid is in an ester linkage with the 3'-hydroxyl of the ribose portion of the adenosine (A) nucleotide in the —CCA sequence at the 3'-end of the tRNA. [Note: When a tRNA has a covalently attached amino acid, it is said to be charged; when it does not, it is said to be uncharged. The amino acid attached to the tRNA molecule is said to be activated.]

2. **Anticodon:** Each tRNA molecule also contains a three-base nucleotide sequence—the anticodon—that pairs with a specific codon on the mRNA (see Figure 31.6). This codon specifies the insertion into the growing peptide chain of the amino acid carried by that tRNA.

C. Aminoacyl-tRNA synthetases

This family of enzymes is required for attachment of amino acids to their corresponding tRNAs. Each member of this family recognizes a specific amino acid and all the tRNAs that correspond to that amino acid (isoaccepting tRNAs). *Aminoacyl-tRNA synthetases* catalyze a two-step reaction that results in the covalent attachment of the carboxyl group of an amino acid to the 3'-end of its corresponding (cognate) tRNA. The overall reaction requires adenosine triphosphate (ATP), which is cleaved to adenosine monophosphate (AMP) and inorganic pyrophosphate (PP_i) (Figure 31.7). The extreme specificity of the *synthetase* in recognizing both the amino acid and its cognate tRNA contributes to the high fidelity of translation of the genetic message. In addition, the *synthetases* have a “proofreading” or “editing” activity that can remove amino acids from the enzyme or the tRNA molecule.

D. Messenger RNA

The specific mRNA required as a template for the synthesis of the desired polypeptide chain must be present. [Note: Interactions between proteins that bind the 5'-cap (eIF-4 proteins) and the 3'-tail (poly-A binding proteins) of eukaryotic mRNA mediate circularization of the mRNA and likely prevent the use of incompletely processed mRNA in translation.]

E. Functionally competent ribosomes

Ribosomes are large complexes of protein and ribosomal RNA (rRNA, Figure 31.8). They consist of two subunits—one large and one small—whose relative sizes are given in terms of their sedimentation coefficients, or S (Svedberg) values. [Note: Because the S values are determined both by shape as well as molecular mass, their numeric values are not strictly additive. For example, the prokaryotic 50S and 30S ribosomal subunits together form a 70S ribosome. The eukaryotic 60S and 40S subunits form an 80S ribosome.]

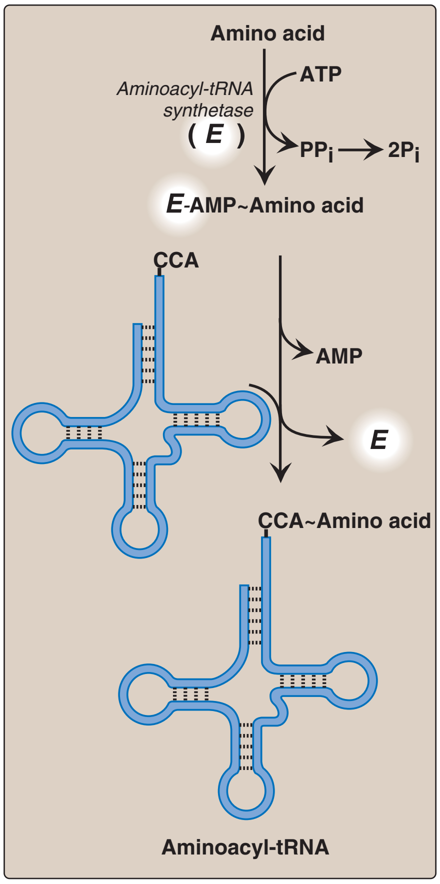


Figure 31.7
Attachment of a specific amino acid to its corresponding tRNA by *aminoacyl-tRNA synthetase* (*E*).

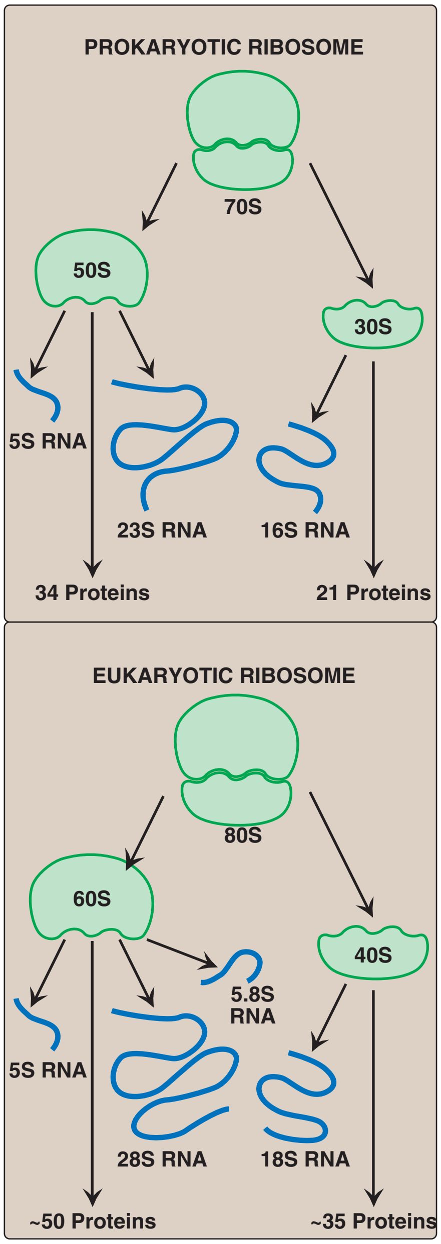


Figure 31.8
Ribosomal composition. (The number of proteins in the eukaryotic ribosomal subunits varies somewhat from species to species.)

Prokaryotic and eukaryotic ribosomes are similar in structure, and serve the same function, namely, as the macromolecular complexes in which the synthesis of proteins occurs.

> The small ribosomal subunit binds mRNA and is responsible for the accuracy of translation by ensuring correct base-pairing between the codon in the mRNA and the anticodon of the tRNA. The large ribosomal subunit catalyzes formation of the peptide bonds that link amino acid residues in a protein.

1. **Ribosomal RNA:** As discussed on p. 418, prokaryotic ribosomes contain three size species of rRNA, whereas eukaryotic ribosomes contain four (see Figure 31.8). The rRNAs are generated from a single pre-rRNA by the action of *ribonucleases*, and some bases and riboses are modified.

2. **Ribosomal proteins:** Ribosomal proteins are present in considerably greater numbers in eukaryotic ribosomes than in prokaryotic ribosomes. These proteins play a number of roles in the structure and function of the ribosome and its interactions with other components of the translation system.

3. **A, P, and E sites on the ribosome:** The ribosome has three binding sites for tRNA molecules—the A, P, and E sites—each of which extends over both subunits. Together, they cover three neighboring codons. During translation, the A site binds an incoming aminoacyl-tRNA as directed by the codon currently occupying this site. This codon specifies the next amino acid to be added to the growing peptide chain. The P-site codon is occupied by peptidyl-tRNA. This tRNA carries the chain of amino acids that has already been synthesized. The E site is occupied by the empty tRNA as it is about to exit the ribosome. (See Figure 31.13 for an illustration of the role of the A, P, and E sites in translation.)

4. **Cellular location of ribosomes:** In eukaryotic cells, the ribosomes are either “free” in the cytosol or are in close association with the endoplasmic reticulum (which is then known as the “rough” endoplasmic reticulum, or RER). The RER-associated ribosomes are responsible for synthesizing proteins that are to be exported from the cell, as well as those that are destined to become incorporated into plasma, endoplasmic reticulum, or Golgi membranes, or imported into lysosomes (see p. 169 for an overview of the latter process). Cytosolic ribosomes synthesize proteins required in the cytosol itself, or destined for the nucleus, mitochondria, and peroxisomes. [Note: Mitochondria contain their own set of ribosomes and their own unique, circular DNA. Most mitochondrial proteins, however, are encoded by nuclear DNA, synthesized in the cytosol, and posttranslationally targeted to mitochondria.]

F. Protein factors

Initiation, elongation, and termination (or release) factors are required for peptide synthesis. Some of these protein factors perform a catalytic function, whereas others appear to stabilize the synthetic machinery. [Note: A number of the factors are G proteins, and thus are active when bound to GTP and inactive when bound to GDP.]

G. ATP and GTP are required as sources of energy

Cleavage of four high-energy bonds is required for the addition of one amino acid to the growing polypeptide chain: two from ATP in the *aminoacyl-tRNA synthetase* reaction—one in the removal of PP_i, and one in the subsequent hydrolysis of the PP_i to inorganic phosphate by *pyrophosphatase*—and two from GTP—one for binding the aminoacyl-tRNA to the A site and one for the translocation step (see Figure 31.13, p. 440). [Note: Additional ATP and GTP molecules are required for initiation in eukaryotes, whereas an additional GTP molecule is required for termination in both eukaryotes and prokaryotes.]

IV. CODON RECOGNITION BY tRNA

Correct pairing of the codon in the mRNA with the anticodon of the tRNA is essential for accurate translation (see Figure 31.6). Some tRNAs recognize more than one codon for a given amino acid.

A. Antiparallel binding between codon and anticodon

Binding of the tRNA anticodon to the mRNA codon follows the rules of complementary and antiparallel binding, that is, the mRNA codon is "read" 5'→3' by an anticodon pairing in the "flipped" (3'→5') orientation (Figure 31.9). [Note: Nucleotide sequences are ALWAYS assumed to be written in the 5' to 3' direction unless otherwise noted.]

B. Wobble hypothesis

The mechanism by which tRNAs can recognize more than one codon for a specific amino acid is described by the "wobble" hypothesis in which the base at the 5'-end of the anticodon (the "first" base of the anticodon) is not as spatially defined as the other two bases. Movement of that first base allows nontraditional (less stringent) base-pairing with the 3'-base of the codon (the "last" base of the codon). This movement is called "wobble" and allows a single tRNA to recognize more than one codon. Examples of these flexible pairings are shown in Figure 31.9. The result of wobble is that there need not be 61 tRNA species to read the 61 codons that code for amino acids.

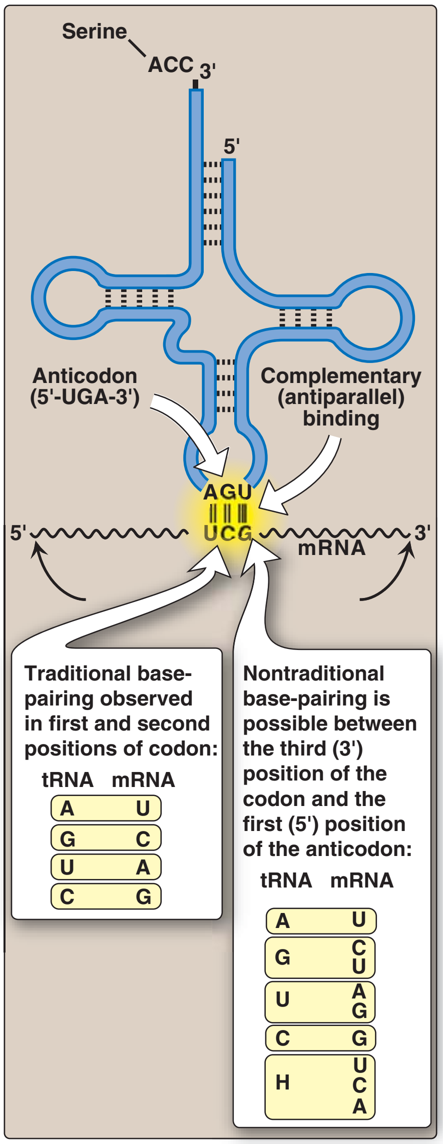

Serine
ACC 3'
5'
Anticodon (5'-UGA-3')
Complementary (antiparallel) binding
AGU
UCG
5'
3'
mRNA
Traditional base-pairing observed in first and second positions of codon:
tRNA mRNA
A U
G C
U A
C G
Nontraditional base-pairing is possible between the third (3') position of the codon and the first (5') position of the anticodon:
tRNA mRNA
A U
G C U
U A G
C G
H U C A

Figure 31.9
Wobble: Nontraditional base-pairing between the 5'-nucleotide (first nucleotide) of the anticodon with the 3'-nucleotide (last nucleotide) of the codon. H = hypoxanthine (the product of adenine deamination).

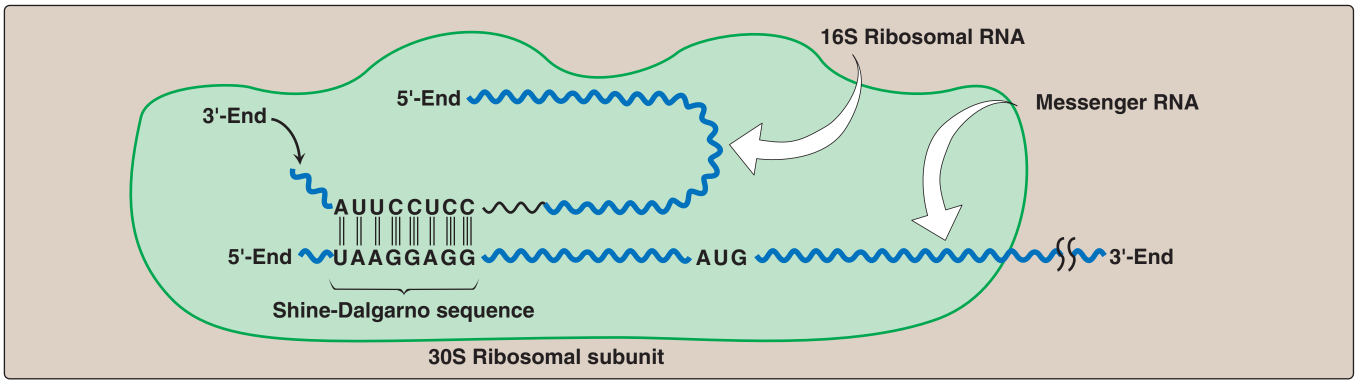

16S Ribosomal RNA
Messenger RNA
3'-End
5'-End
AUUCCUCC
5'-End
UAAGGAGG
AUG
3'-End
Shine-Dalgarno sequence
30S Ribosomal subunit

Figure 31.10
Complementary binding between prokaryotic mRNA Shine-Dalgarno sequence and 16S rRNA.

V. STEPS IN PROTEIN SYNTHESIS

The process of protein synthesis translates the three-letter alphabet of nucleotide sequences on mRNA into the 20-letter alphabet of amino acids that constitute proteins. The mRNA is translated from its 5'-end to its 3'-end, producing a protein synthesized from its amino-terminal end to its carboxyl-terminal end. Prokaryotic mRNAs often have several coding regions, that is, they are polycistronic (see p. 418). Each coding region has its own initiation and termination codon and produces a separate species of polypeptide. In contrast, each eukaryotic mRNA has only one coding region, that is, it is monocistronic. The process of translation is divided into three separate steps: initiation, elongation, and termination. Eukaryotic protein synthesis resembles that of prokaryotes in most aspects. Individual differences are noted in the text.

> One important difference is that translation and transcription are coupled in prokaryotes, with translation starting before transcription is completed. Coupling is a consequence of the lack of a nuclear membrane in prokaryotes.

A. Initiation

Initiation of protein synthesis involves the assembly of the components of the translation system before peptide bond formation occurs. These components include the two ribosomal subunits, the mRNA to be translated, the aminoacyl-tRNA specified by the first codon in the message, GTP (which provides energy for the process), and initiation factors that facilitate the assembly of this initiation complex (see Figure 31.13). [Note: In prokaryotes, three initiation factors are known (IF-1, IF-2, and IF-3), whereas in eukaryotes, there are over ten (designated eIF to indicate eukaryotic origin). Eukaryotes also require ATP for initiation.] There are two mechanisms by which the ribosome recognizes the nucleotide sequence (AUG) that initiates translation:

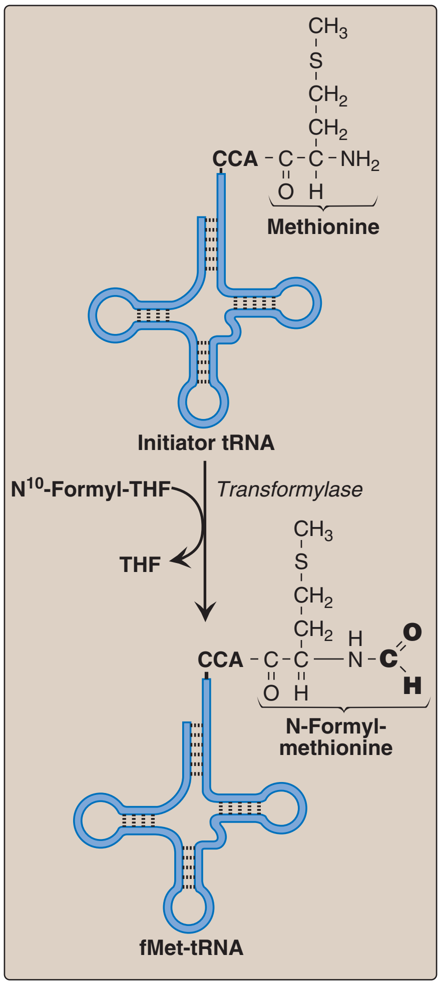

CH3
S
CH2
CH2
CCA - C - C - NH2
O H
Methionine
Initiator tRNA
N10-Formyl-THF
Transformylase
THF
CH3
S
CH2
CH2
H
O
CCA - C - C — N - C
O H
H
N-Formyl-methionine
fMet-tRNA

Figure 31.11
Generation of the initiator N-formylmethionyl-tRNA (fMet-tRNA).

1. **Shine-Dalgarno sequence:** In E. coli, a purine-rich sequence of nucleotide bases, known as the Shine-Dalgarno (SD) sequence, is located six to ten bases upstream of the initiating AUG codon on the mRNA molecule—that is, near its 5'-end. The 16S rRNA component of the 30S ribosomal subunit has a nucleotide sequence near its 3'-end that is complementary to all or part of the SD sequence. Therefore, the 5' end of the mRNA and the 3'-end of the 16S rRNA can form complementary base pairs, thus facilitating the positioning of the small (30S) ribosomal subunit on the mRNA in close proximity to the initiating AUG codon (Figure 31.10). Eukaryotic messages do not have SD sequences. In eukaryotes, the 40S ribosomal subunit (aided by members of the eIF-4 family of proteins) binds close to the cap structure at the 5-end of the mRNA and moves down the mRNA until it encounters the initiator AUG. This "scanning" process requires ATP.

2. **Initiation codon:** The initiating AUG is recognized by a special initiator tRNA. Recognition is facilitated by IF-2-GTP in prokaryotes and eIF-2-GTP (plus additional eIFs) in eukaryotes. The charged initiator tRNA enters the P site on the small subunit. [Note: The initiator tRNA is the only tRNA recognized by eIF-2, and the only tRNA to go directly to the P site.] In bacteria and in mitochondria, the initiator tRNA carries an N-formylated methionine (Figure 31.11). After methionine is attached to the initiator tRNA, the formyl group is added by the enzyme *transformylase*, which uses N^{10}-formyl tetrahydrofolate (see p. 267) as the carbon donor. In eukaryotes, the initiator tRNA carries a methionine that is not formylated. [Note: In both prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells, this N-terminal methionine is usually removed before translation is completed.] The large ribosomal subunit then joins the complex, and a functional ribosome is formed with the charged initiating tRNA in the P site, and the A site empty. The GTP on (e)IF-2 gets hydrolyzed to GDP. A guanine nucleotide exchange factor facilitates the reactivation of (e)IF-2-GDP.

B. Elongation

Elongation of the polypeptide chain involves the addition of amino acids to the carboxyl end of the growing chain. During elongation, the ribosome moves from the 5'-end to the 3'-end of the mRNA that is being translated. Delivery of the aminoacyl-tRNA whose codon appears next on the mRNA template in the ribosomal A site is facilitated in E. coli by elongation factors EF-Tu-GTP and EF-Ts, and requires GTP hydrolysis. [Note: In eukaryotes, comparable elongation factors are EF-1α–GTP and EF-1$\beta\gamma$. Both EF-Ts and EF-1$\beta\gamma$ function as nucleotide exchange factors.] The formation of the peptide bond is catalyzed by *peptidyltransferase*, an activity intrinsic to the 23S rRNA found in the large (50S) ribosomal subunit (Figure 31.12). [Note: Because this rRNA catalyzes the reaction, it is referred to as a ribozyme.] After the peptide bond has been formed, what was attached to the tRNA at the P site is now linked to the amino acid on the tRNA at the A site. The ribosome then advances three nucleotides toward the 3'-end of the mRNA. This process is known as translocation and, in prokaryotes, requires the

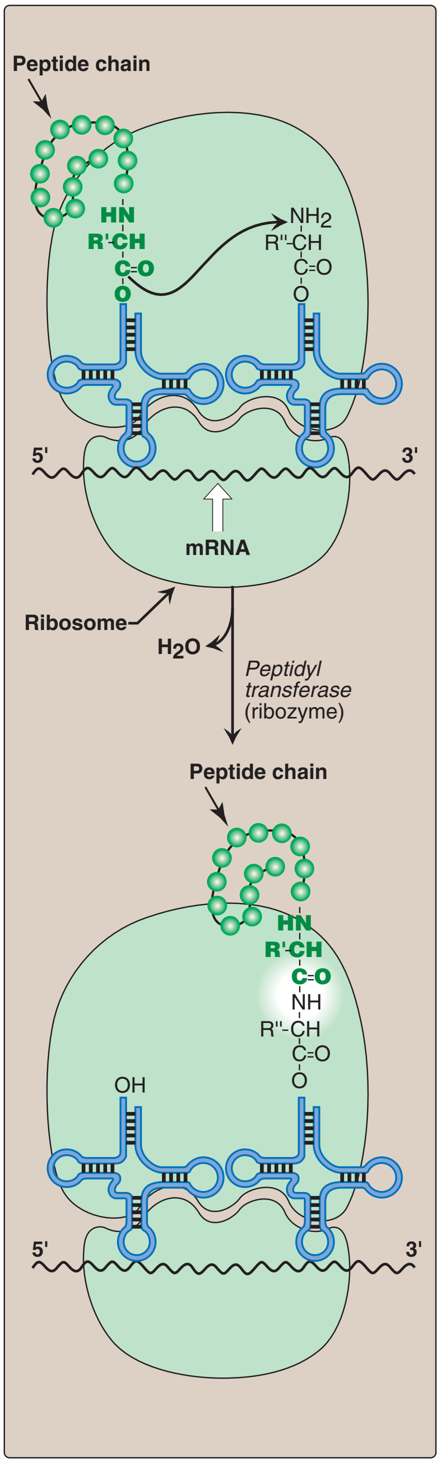
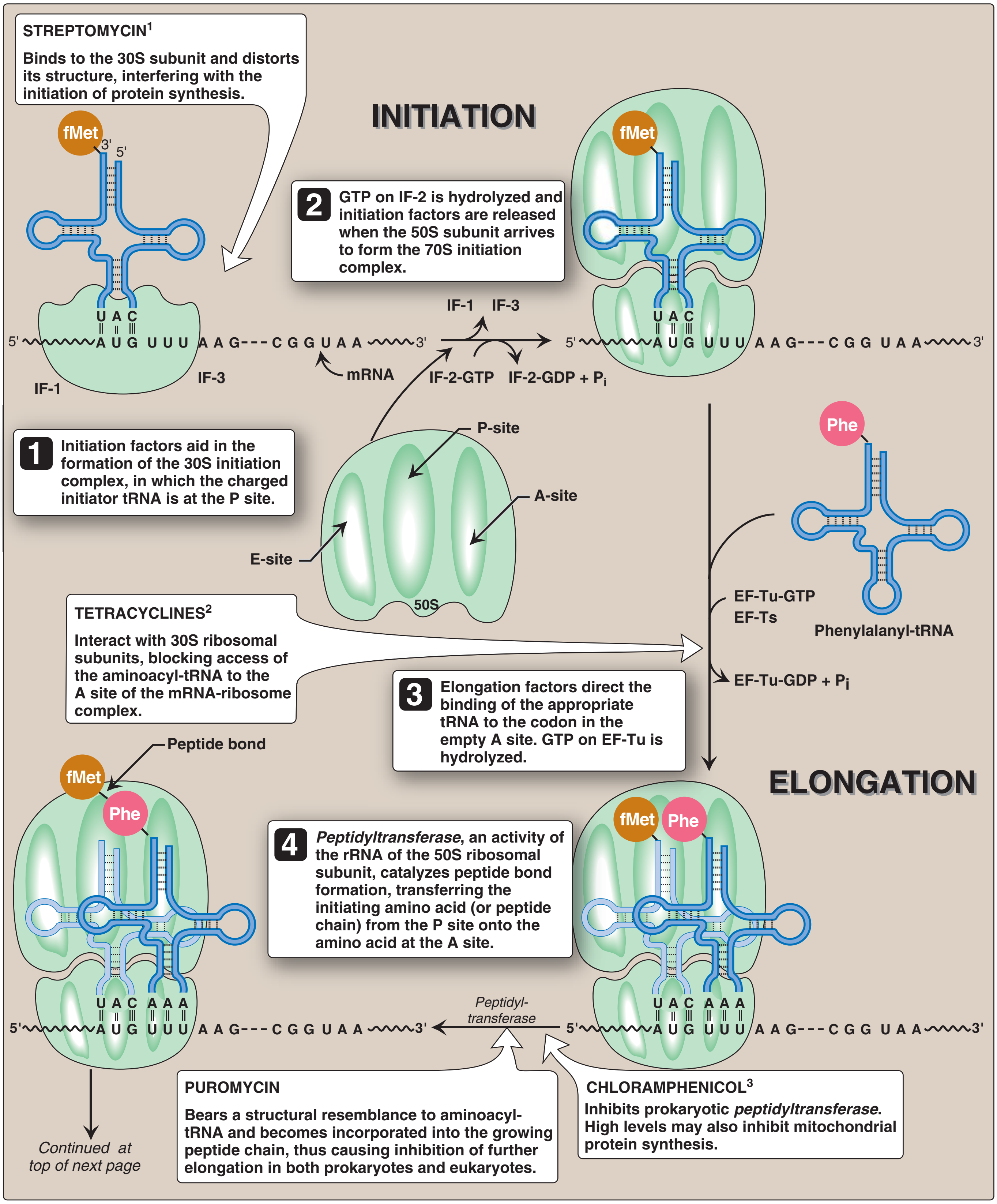


Figure 31.12
Formation of a peptide bond. [Note: The tRNA carrying the peptide chain is in the P site of the ribosome, and the tRNA carrying the next amino acid to be incorporated is in the A site.]



STREPTOMYCIN[1]

Binds to the 30S subunit and distorts its structure, interfering with the initiation of protein synthesis.

1 Initiation factors aid in the formation of the 30S initiation complex, in which the charged initiator tRNA is at the P site.

2 GTP on IF-2 is hydrolyzed and initiation factors are released when the 50S subunit arrives to form the 70S initiation complex.

TETRACYCLINES[2]

Interact with 30S ribosomal subunits, blocking access of the aminoacyl-tRNA to the A site of the mRNA-ribosome complex.

3 Elongation factors direct the binding of the appropriate tRNA to the codon in the empty A site. GTP on EF-Tu is hydrolyzed.

4 *Peptidyltransferase*, an activity of the rRNA of the 50S ribosomal subunit, catalyzes peptide bond formation, transferring the initiating amino acid (or peptide chain) from the P site onto the amino acid at the A site.

PUROMYCIN

Bears a structural resemblance to aminoacyl-tRNA and becomes incorporated into the growing peptide chain, thus causing inhibition of further elongation in both prokaryotes and eukaryotes.

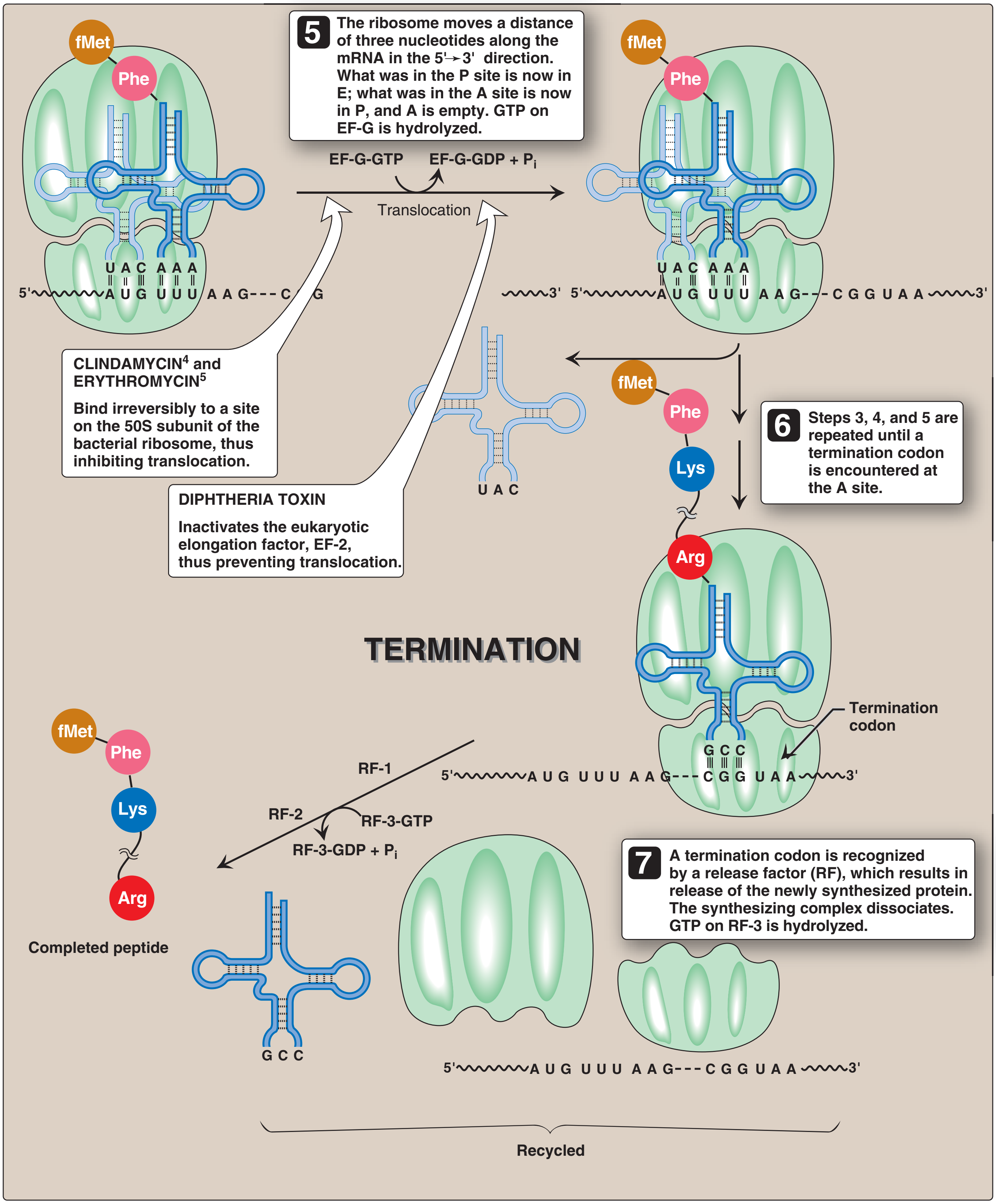
CHLORAMPHENICOL[3]

Inhibits prokaryotic *peptidyltransferase*. High levels may also inhibit mitochondrial protein synthesis.

INITIATION
ELONGATION
fMet
3'
5'
U A C
5' A U G U U U A A G - - - C G G U A A 3'
IF-1
IF-3
mRNA
IF-1 IF-3
IF-2-GTP
IF-2-GDP + P_i
P-site
A-site
E-site
50S
Phe
Phenylalanyl-tRNA
EF-Tu-GTP
EF-Ts
EF-Tu-GDP + P_i
Peptide bond
U A C A A A
Peptidyl-transferase

Continued at top of next page

Figure 31.13 (*Continued on the next page*)
Steps in prokaryotic protein synthesis (translation).


fMet
Phe
U A C A A A
5' A U G U U U A A G - - - C G
EF-G-GTP
EF-G-GDP + P_i
Translocation
fMet
Phe
U A C A A A
3' 5' A U G U U U A A G - - - C G G U A A 3'
U A C
fMet
Phe
Lys
Arg
TERMINATION
Termination codon
G C C
5' A U G U U U A A G - - - C G G U A A 3'
RF-1
RF-2
RF-3-GTP
RF-3-GDP + P_i
fMet
Phe
Lys
Arg
Completed peptide
G C C
5' A U G U U U A A G - - - C G G U A A 3'
Recycled

5 The ribosome moves a distance of three nucleotides along the mRNA in the 5'→3' direction. What was in the P site is now in E; what was in the A site is now in P, and A is empty. GTP on EF-G is hydrolyzed.

CLINDAMYCIN[4] and ERYTHROMYCIN[5]

Bind irreversibly to a site on the 50S subunit of the bacterial ribosome, thus inhibiting translocation.

DIPHTHERIA TOXIN

Inactivates the eukaryotic elongation factor, EF-2, thus preventing translocation.

6 Steps 3, 4, and 5 are repeated until a termination codon is encountered at the A site.

7 A termination codon is recognized by a release factor (RF), which results in release of the newly synthesized protein. The synthesizing complex dissociates. GTP on RF-3 is hydrolyzed.

Figure 31.13 (*Continued from the previous page*)

INFO LINK [1-5]See Chapter 32 in ***Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Pharmacology*** for a more detailed discussion of antibiotics that inhibit bacterial protein synthesis.

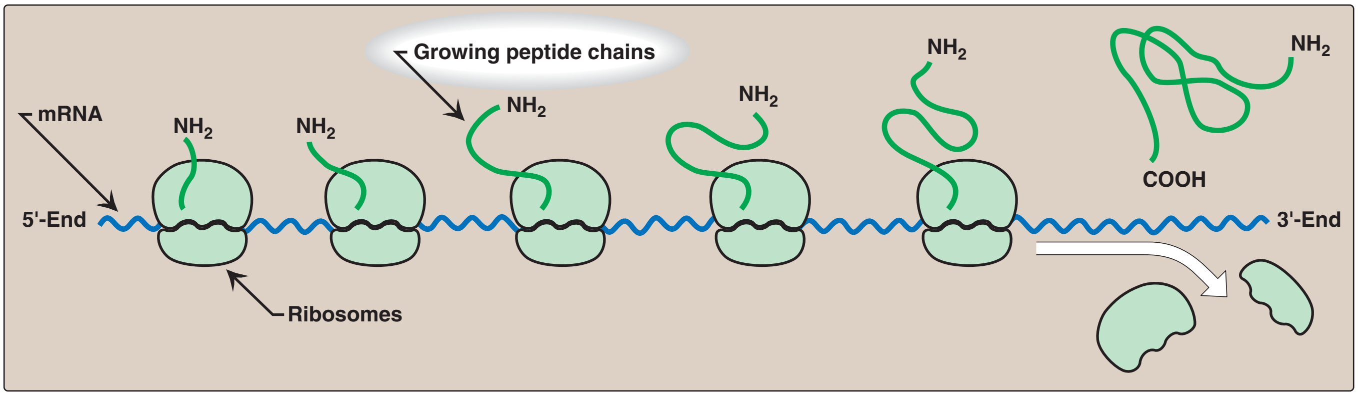


Figure 31.14
A polyribosome consists of several ribosomes simultaneously translating one mRNA. [Note: Eukaryotic mRNA is circularized for translation.]

participation of EF-G-GTP (eukaryotic cells use EF-2-GTP) and GTP hydrolysis. Translocation causes movement of the uncharged tRNA from the P to the E site (before being released), and movement of the peptidyl-tRNA from the A to the P site. The process is repeated until a termination codon is encountered.

C. Termination

Termination occurs when one of the three termination codons moves into the A site. These codons are recognized in E. coli by release factors: RF-1, which recognizes the termination codons UAA and UAG, and RF-2, which recognizes UGA and UAA. The binding of these release factors results in hydrolysis of the bond linking the peptide to the tRNA at the P site, causing the nascent protein to be released from the ribosome. A third release factor, RF-3-GTP then causes the release of RF-1 or RF-2 as GTP is hydrolyzed (see Figure 31.13). [Note: Eukaryotes have a single release factor, eRF, which recognizes all three termination codons. A second factor, eRF-3, is thought to function like the prokaryotic RF-3.] The steps in prokaryotic protein synthesis are summarized in Figure 31.13. The newly synthesized polypeptide may undergo further modification as described below, and the ribosomal subunits, mRNA, tRNA, and protein factors can be recycled and used to synthesize another polypeptide. Some antibiotic inhibitors of protein synthesis are illustrated in Figure 31.13, as is diphtheria toxin. In addition, ricin (from castor beans) is a very potent toxin that exerts its effects by removing an adenine from 28S rRNA, thus inhibiting the function of eukaryotic ribosomes.

D. Polysomes

Translation begins at the 5'-end of the mRNA, with the ribosome proceeding along the RNA molecule. Because of the length of most mRNAs, more than one ribosome at a time can translate a message (Figure 31.14). Such a complex of one mRNA and a number of ribosomes is called a polysome or polyribosome.

E. Protein targeting

Although most protein synthesis is initiated in the cytoplasm of eukaryotic cells, many proteins are destined to perform their functions extracellularly or within specific cellular organelles. Such proteins usually contain amino acid sequences that direct these proteins to their final locations. For example, proteins destined for secretion from the cell are targeted during their synthesis (cotranslationally) targeted to the RER (see p. 436) by the presence of an N-terminal hydrophobic signal sequence. Proteins targeted after synthesis (posttranslationally) include nuclear proteins, which contain a short, basic "nuclear localization signal," and mitochondrial proteins, which contain an amphipathic, α-helical "mitochondrial entry sequence."

F. Regulation of translation

Gene expression is most commonly regulated at the transcriptional level; however, translation may also be regulated. An important mechanism by which this is accomplished in eukaryotes is by covalent modification of eIF-2: phosphorylated eIF-2 is inactive. In both eukaryotes and prokaryotes, regulation can also be achieved through proteins that bind mRNA and either inhibit its use by blocking translation or extend its use by protecting it from degradation. For a more detailed discussion of the regulation of translation, see p. 454.

VI. CO- AND POSTTRANSLATIONAL MODIFICATION OF POLYPEPTIDE CHAINS

Many polypeptide chains are covalently modified, either while they are still attached to the ribosome (cotranslational) or after their synthesis has been completed (posttranslational). These modifications may include removal of part of the translated sequence, or the covalent addition of one or more chemical groups required for protein activity. Some types of posttranslational modifications are listed below.

A. Trimming

Many proteins destined for secretion from the cell are initially made as large, precursor molecules that are not functionally active. Portions of the protein chain must be removed by specialized endoproteases, resulting in the release of an active molecule. The cellular site of the cleavage reaction depends on the protein to be modified. Some precursor proteins are cleaved in the endoplasmic reticulum or the Golgi apparatus, others are cleaved in developing secretory vesicles (for example, insulin, see Figure 23.4, p. 309), and still others, such as collagen (see p. 47), are cleaved after secretion. Zymogens are inactive precursors of secreted enzymes (including the proteases required for digestion). They become activated through cleavage when they reach their proper sites of action. For example, the pancreatic zymogen, trypsinogen, becomes activated to *trypsin* in the small intestine (see Figure 19.5, p. 249). The synthesis of proteases as zymogens protects the cell from being digested by its own products.

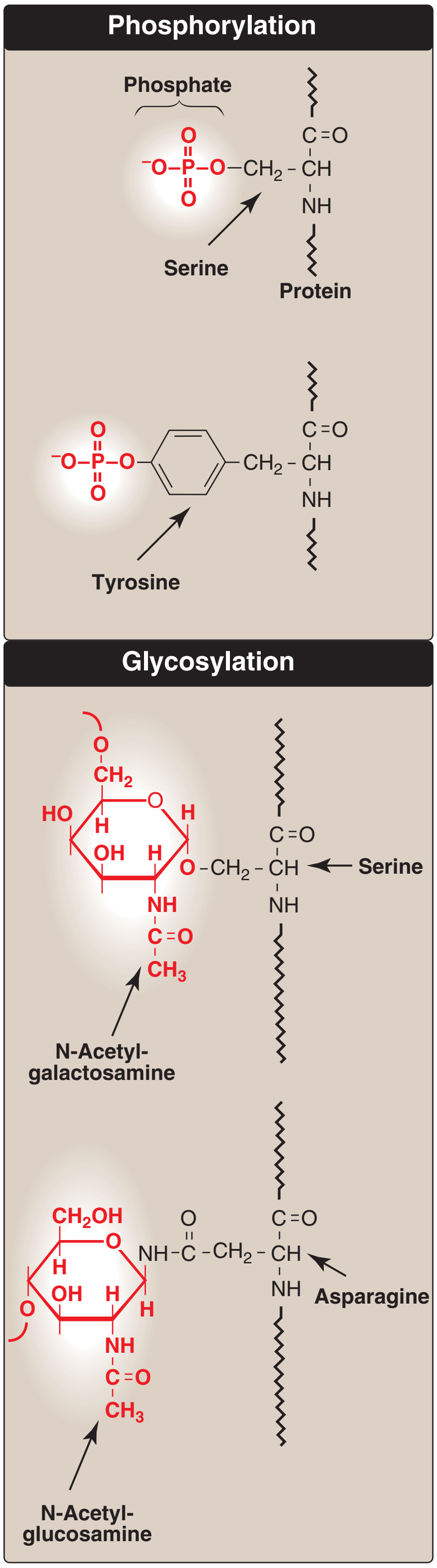


Figure 31.15 *(continued on next page)*
Covalent modifications of some amino acid residues.

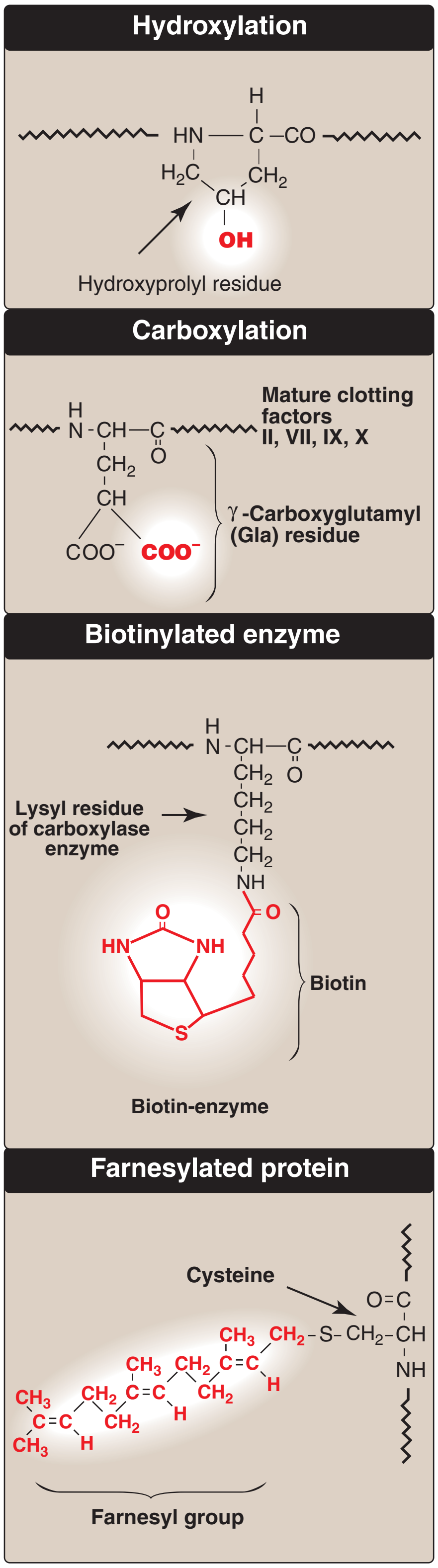


Figure 31.15 *(continued from previous page)*
Covalent modifications of some amino acid residues.

B. Covalent attachments

Proteins may be activated or inactivated by the covalent attachment of a variety of chemical groups. Examples include (Figure 31.15):

1. **Phosphorylation:** Phosphorylation occurs on the hydroxyl groups of serine, threonine, or, less frequently, tyrosine residues in a protein. This phosphorylation is catalyzed by one of a family of protein *kinases* and may be reversed by the action of cellular protein *phosphatases*. The phosphorylation may increase or decrease the functional activity of the protein. Several examples of these phosphorylation reactions have been previously discussed (for example, see Chapter 11, p. 125, for the regulation of synthesis and degradation of glycogen).

2. **Glycosylation:** Many of the proteins that are destined to become part of a plasma membrane or to be secreted from the cell, have carbohydrate chains attached to the amide nitrogen of asparagine (N-linked) or the hydroxyl groups of serine, threonine, or hydroxylysine (O-linked). N-glycosylation occurs in the endoplasmic reticulum and O-glycosyation in the Golgi. (The process of producing such glycoproteins was discussed on p. 165.) Glycosylation is also used to target proteins to the matrix of lysosomes. Lysosomal acid hydrolases are modified by the phosphorylation of mannose residues at carbon 6 (see p. 169).

3. **Hydroxylation:** Proline and lysine residues of the α chains of collagen are extensively hydroxylated by vitamin C-dependent *hydroxylases* in the endoplasmic reticulum (see p. 47).

4. **Other covalent modifications:** These may be required for the functional activity of a protein. For example, additional carboxyl groups can be added to glutamate residues by vitamin K–dependent carboxylation (see p. 389). The resulting γ-carboxyglutamate (Gla) residues are essential for the activity of several of the blood-clotting proteins. Biotin is covalently bound to the ε-amino groups of lysine residues of biotin-dependent enzymes that catalyze carboxylation reactions, such as *pyruvate carboxylase* (see p. 119). Attachment of lipids, such as farnesyl groups, can help anchor proteins to membranes. Histone proteins can be reversibly acetylated (see p. 409).

C. Protein folding

Proteins must fold to assume their functional state. Folding can be spontaneous (as a result of the primary structure), or facilitated by proteins known as “chaperones” (see p. 20).

D. Protein degradation

Proteins that are defective, for example, misfolded, or destined for rapid turnover are often marked for destruction by ubiquitination—the attachment of chains of a small, highly conserved protein, called ubiquitin (see p. 246). Proteins marked in this way are rapidly degraded by a cellular component known as the proteasome, which is a macromolecular, ATP-dependent, proteolytic system located in the cytosol. [Note: The ΔF508 mutation seen in CF causes misfolding of the CFTR protein, resulting in its proteasomal degradation.]

VII. CHAPTER SUMMARY

Codons are composed of three nucleotide bases presented in the mRNA language of **A**, **G**, **C**, and **U**. They are always written **5'→3'**. Of the 64 possible three-base combinations, 61 code for the 20 common amino acids and three signal termination of protein synthesis (**translation**). Altering the nucleotide sequence in a codon can cause **silent mutations** (the altered codon codes for the original amino acid), **missense mutations** (the altered codon codes for a different amino acid), or **nonsense mutations** (the altered codon is a termination codon). Characteristics of the genetic code include **specificity**, **universality**, and **degeneracy**, and it is **nonoverlapping** and **commaless**. Requirements for protein synthesis include all the amino acids that eventually appear in the finished protein, at least one specific type of tRNA for each amino acid, one **aminoacyl-tRNA synthetase for** each amino acid, the mRNA coding for the protein to be synthesized, fully competent **ribosomes**, **protein factors** needed for initiation, elongation, and termination of protein synthesis, and **ATP** and **GTP** as energy sources. tRNA has an attachment site for a specific amino acid at its 3’-end, and an anticodon region that can recognize the codon specifying the amino acid the tRNA is carrying. **Ribosomes** are large complexes of protein and rRNA. They consist of **two subunits**. Each ribosome has three binding sites for tRNA molecules—the A, P, and E sites that cover three neighboring codons. The **A-site** codon binds an **incoming aminoacyl-tRNA**, the **P-site** codon is occupied by **peptidyl-tRNA**, and the **E site** is occupied by the **empty tRNA** as it is about to exit the ribosome. Recognition of an mRNA codon is accomplished by the tRNA **anticodon**. The anticodon binds to the codon following the rules of **complementarity** and **antiparallel** binding. (Nucleotide sequences are ALWAYS assumed to be written in the 5' to 3' direction unless otherwise noted.) The **“wobble” hypothesis** states that the first (5') base of the anticodon is not as spatially defined as the other two bases. Movement of that first base allows nontraditional base-pairing with the last (3') base of the codon, thus allowing a single tRNA to recognize more than one codon for a specific amino acid. For **initiation of protein synthesis**, the components of the translation system are assembled, and mRNA associates with the small ribosomal subunit. The process requires i**nitiation factors**. In **prokaryotes**, a purine-rich region of the mRNA (the **Shine-Dalgarno sequence**) base-pairs with a complementary sequence on 16S rRNA, resulting in the positioning of the small subunit on the mRNA so that translation can begin. The **5'-cap** on **eukaryotic mRNA** is used to position the small subunit on the mRNA. The **initiation codon** is **AUG**; **N-formylmethionine** is the initiating amino acid in prokaryotes, whereas methionine is in eukaryotes. The polypeptide chain is elongated by the addition of amino acids to the carboxyl end of its growing chain. The process requires elongation factors. The formation of the peptide bond is catalyzed by **peptidyltransferase**, which is an activity intrinsic to the rRNA of the large subunit. Following peptide bond formation, the ribosome advances along the mRNA in the **5'→3' direction** to the next codon (translocation). Because of the length of most mRNAs, more than one ribosome at a time can translate a message, forming a **polysome**. Termination begins when one of the three termination codons moves into the A site. These codons are recognized by **release factors.** The newly synthesized protein is released from the ribosomal complex, and the ribosome is dissociated from the mRNA. Initiation, elongation, and termination are driven by the hydrolysis of GTP; initiation in eukaryotes also requires ATP for scanning. Numerous **antibiotics** interfere with the process of protein synthesis. Many polypeptide chains are covalently modified during or after translation. Such modifications include **removal of amino acids**, **phosphorylation,** which may activate or inactivate the protein, **glycosylation**, which plays a role in protein targeting, or **hydroxylation** such as that seen in collagen. Proteins must fold to achieve their functional form. Folding can be spontaneous or facilitated by **chaperones**. Proteins that are defective, for example misfolded, or destined for rapid turnover are marked for destruction by the attachment of chains of a small, highly conserved protein called **ubiquitin**. Ubiquitinated proteins are rapidly degraded by a cytosolic complex known as the **proteasome**.

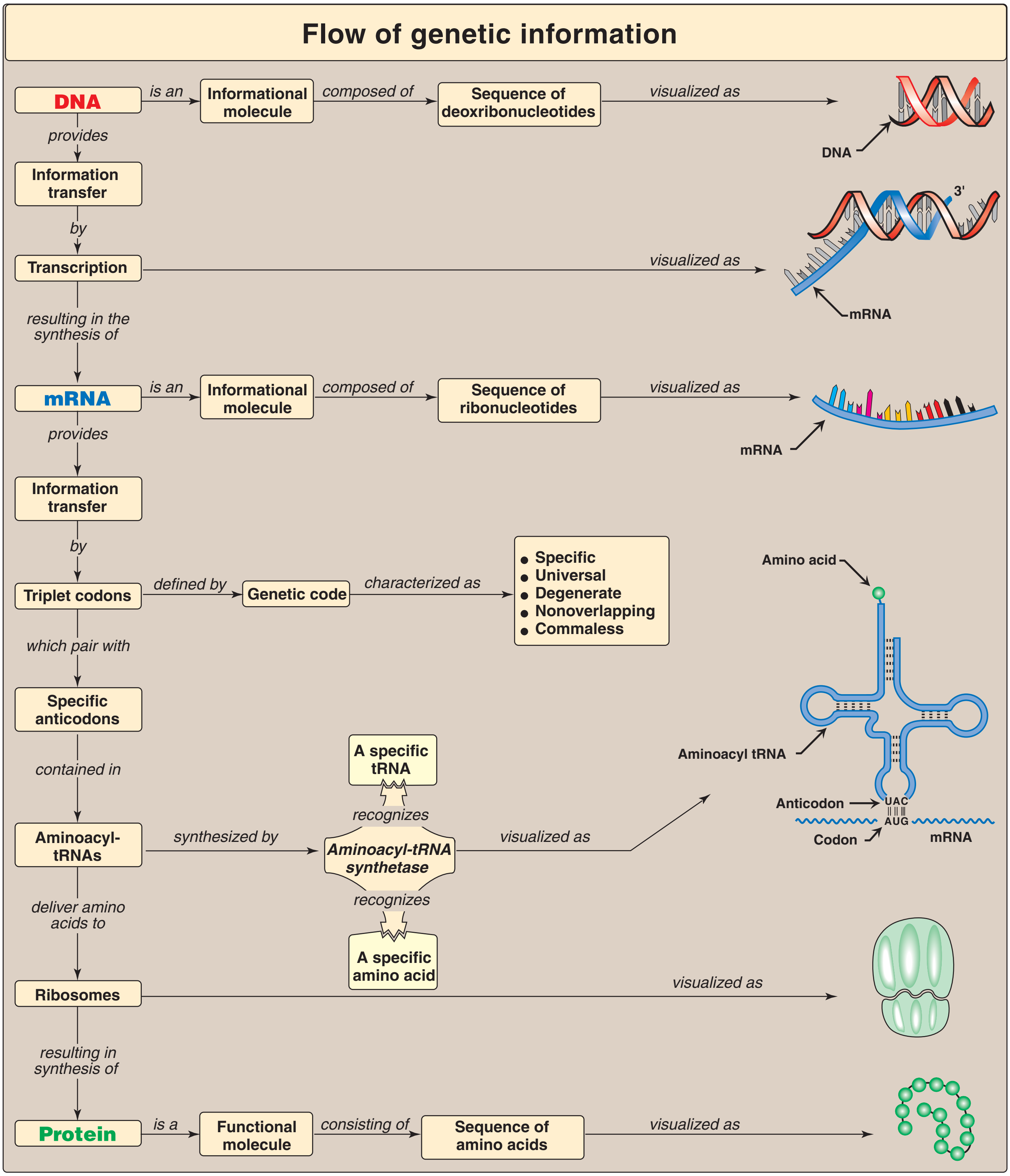

Flow of genetic information
DNA
is an
Informational molecule
composed of
Sequence of deoxribonucleotides
visualized as
DNA
provides
Information transfer
by
Transcription
visualized as
3'
mRNA
resulting in the synthesis of
mRNA
is an
Informational molecule
composed of
Sequence of ribonucleotides
visualized as
mRNA
provides
Information transfer
by
Triplet codons
defined by
Genetic code
characterized as
• Specific
• Universal
• Degenerate
• Nonoverlapping
• Commaless
Amino acid
which pair with
Specific anticodons
contained in
A specific tRNA
recognizes
Aminoacyl tRNA
Anticodon
UAC
AUG
Codon
mRNA
Aminoacyl-tRNAs
synthesized by
Aminoacyl-tRNA synthetase
visualized as
recognizes
A specific amino acid
deliver amino acids to
Ribosomes
visualized as
resulting in synthesis of
Protein
is a
Functional molecule
consisting of
Sequence of amino acids
visualized as

Figure 31.16
Key concept map for protein synthesis.

Study Questions

Choose the ONE correct answer.

31.1 A 20-year-old anemic man is found to have an abnormal form of β-globin (Hemoglobin Constant Spring) that is 172 amino acids long, rather than the 141 found in the normal protein. Which of the following point mutations is consistent with this abnormality?

A. UAA → CAA.
B. UAA → UAG.
C. CGA → UGA.
D. GAU → GAC.
E. GCA → GAA.

Correct answer = A. Mutating the normal stop codon for β-globin from UAA to CAA causes the ribosome to insert a glutamine at that point. It will continue extending the protein chain until it comes upon the next stop codon further down the message, resulting in an abnormally long protein. A change from UAA to UAG would simply change one termination codon for another and would have no effect on the protein. The replacement of CGA (arginine) with UGA (stop) would cause the protein to be too short. GAU and GAC both encode aspartate and would cause no change in the protein. Changing GCA (alanine) to GAA (glutamate) would not change the size of the protein product.

31.2 A pharmaceutical company is studying a new antibiotic that inhibits bacterial protein synthesis. When this antibiotic is added to an in vitro protein synthesis system that is translating the mRNA sequence AUGUUUUUUUAG, the only product formed is the dipeptide fMet-Phe. What step in protein synthesis is most likely inhibited by the antibiotic?

A. Initiation.
B. Binding of charged tRNA to the ribosomal A site.
C. Peptidyltransferase activity.
D. Ribosomal translocation.
E. Termination.

Correct answer = D. Because fMet-Phe is made, the ribosomes must be able to complete initiation, bind Phe-tRNA to the A site, and use peptidyltransferase activity to form the first peptide bond. Because the ribosome is not able to proceed any further, ribosomal movement (translocation) is most likely the inhibited step. The ribosome is, therefore, frozen before it reaches the termination codon of this message.

31.3 A tRNA molecule that is supposed to carry cysteine ($tRNA^{cys}$) is mischarged, so that it actually carries alanine ($ala\text{-}tRNA^{cys}$). Assuming no correction occurs, what will be the fate of this alanine residue during protein synthesis?

A. It will be incorporated into a protein in response to an alanine codon.
B. It will be incorporated into a protein in response to a cysteine codon.
C. It will remain attached to the tRNA, as it cannot be used for protein synthesis.
D. It will be incorporated randomly at any codon.
E. It will be chemically converted to cysteine by cellular enzymes.

Correct answer = B. Once an amino acid is attached to a tRNA molecule, only the anticodon of that tRNA determines the specificity of incorporation. The mischarged alanine will, therefore, be incorporated in the protein at a position determined by a cysteine codon.

31.4 In a patient with cystic fibrosis caused by the ΔF508 mutation, the mutant cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) protein folds incorrectly. The patient's cells modify this abnormal protein by attaching ubiquitin molecules to it. What is the fate of this modified CFTR protein?

A. It performs its normal function, as the ubiquitin largely corrects for the effect of the mutation.
B. It is secreted from the cell.
C. It is placed into storage vesicles.
D. It is degraded by the proteasome.
E. It is repaired by cellular enzymes.

Correct answer = D. Ubiquitination usually marks old, damaged, or misfolded proteins for destruction by the proteasome. There is no known cellular mechanism for repair of damaged proteins.

31.5 Many antimicrobials inhibit protein translation. Which of the following antimicrobials is correctly paired with its mechanism of action?

A. Tetracyclines inhibit peptidyltransferase.
B. Diphtheria toxin binds to the 30S ribosomal subunit.
C. Puromycin inactivates EF-2.
D. Clindamycin binds to the 30S ribosomal subunit.
E. Erythromycin binds to the 50S ribosomal subunit.

Correct answer = E. Erythromycin and clindamycin both bind the 50S ribosomal subunit. Tetracyclines inhibit the 30S ribosomal subunit (chloramphenicol inhibits peptidyl transferase). Diphtheria toxin binds EF-2, inactivating it through ADP ribosylation. Puromycin has structure similar to that of aminoacyl-tRNA. It is incorporated into the growing chain, and inhibits further elongation of the peptide chain.

31.6 Translation of a synthetic polyribonucleotide containing the repeating sequence CAA in a cell-free protein-synthesizing system produces three homopolypeptides: polyglutamine, polyasparagine, and polythreonine. If the codon for glutamine and asparagine are CAA and AAC, respectively, which of the following triplets is the codon for threonine?

A. AAC.
B. CAA.
C. CAC.
D. CCA.
E. ACA.

Correct answer = E. The synthetic polynucleotide sequence of CAACAACAACAA . . could be read by the in vitro protein synthesizing system starting at the first C, the first A, or the second A. In the first case, the first triplet codon would be CAA, which codes glutamine; in the second case, the first triplet codon would be AAC, which codes for asparagine; in the last case, the first triplet codon would be ACA, which codes for threonine.

31.7 Which of the following is required for both prokaryotic and eukaryotic protein synthesis?

A. Binding of the small ribosomal subunit to the Shine-Dalgarno sequence.
B. fMet~tRNA.
C. Movement of the mRNA out of the nucleus and into the cytoplasm.
D. Recognition of the 5'-cap by initiation factors.
E. Translocation of the peptidyl-tRNA from the A site to the P site.

Correct answer = E. In both prokaryotes and eukaryotes, continued translation (elongation) requires movement of the peptidyl-tRNA from the A site to the P site to allow the next aminoacyl-tRNA to enter the A site. Only prokaryotes have a Shine-Dalgarno sequence and use fMet, whereas only eukaryotes have a nucleus and co- and posttranscriptionally process their mRNA.

31.8 Why is the genetic code described as both degenerate and unambiguous?

A given amino acid can be coded for by more than one codon (degenerate code), but a given codon codes for just one particular amino acid (unambiguous code).

31.9 α1-Antitrypsin (A1AT) deficiency can result in emphysema, a lung pathology, because the action of elastase, a serine protease, is unopposed. Deficiency of A1AT in the lungs is the consequence of its retention in (rather than secretion from) the liver, the site of its synthesis. Proteins such as A1AT that are designed to be secreted are best characterized by which of the following statements?

A. Their synthesis is initiated on the smooth endoplasmic reticulum.
B. They contain a mannose 6-phosphate targeting signal.
C. They always contain methionine as the N-terminal amino acid.
D. They are produced from translation products that have an N-terminal hydrophobic signal sequence.
E. They contain no sugars with O-glycosidic linkages because their synthesis does not involve the Golgi apparatus.

Answer = D. Synthesis of secreted proteins is begun on free (cytosolic) ribosomes. As the N-terminal hydrophobic signal sequence of the peptide emerges from the ribosome, it is bound by the signal recognition particle, taken to the rough endoplasmic reticulum (RER), threaded into the lumen, and removed as translation continues. The proteins move through the RER and the Golgi, and undergo processing such as N-glycosylation (RER) and O-glycosylation (Golgi). In the Golgi, they are packaged in secretory vesicles and released from the cell. The smooth endoplasmic reticulum is associated with synthesis of lipids, not proteins, and has no ribosomes attached. Phosphorylation at carbon 6 of terminal mannose residues in glycoproteins targets these proteins (acid hydrolases) to lysosomes. The N-terminal methionine is removed from most proteins during processing.

Regulation of Gene Expression

32

I. OVERVIEW

Gene expression refers to the multistep process that ultimately results in the production of a functional gene product, either ribonucleic acid (RNA) or protein. The first step in gene expression—the use of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) for the synthesis of RNA (transcription)—is the primary site of regulation in both prokaryotes and eukaryotes. In eukaryotes, however, gene expression also involves extensive posttranscriptional and posttranslational processes, as well as actions that influence access to particular regions of the DNA. Each of these steps can be regulated to provide additional control over the kinds and amounts of functional products that are produced.

Not all genes are regulated. For example, genes described as constitutive encode products required for basic cellular functions, and so are continually expressed; they are also known as "housekeeping" genes. Regulated genes, however, are expressed only under certain conditions. They may be expressed in all cells or in only a subset of cells, for example, hepatocytes. The ability to regulate gene expression, that is, to determine if, how much, and when particular gene products will be made, gives the cell control over structure and function. It is the basis for cellular differentiation, morphogenesis, and adaptability of any organism. Control of gene expression is best understood in prokaryotes, but many themes are repeated in eukaryotes. Figure 32.1 lists some common strategies employed in gene regulation.

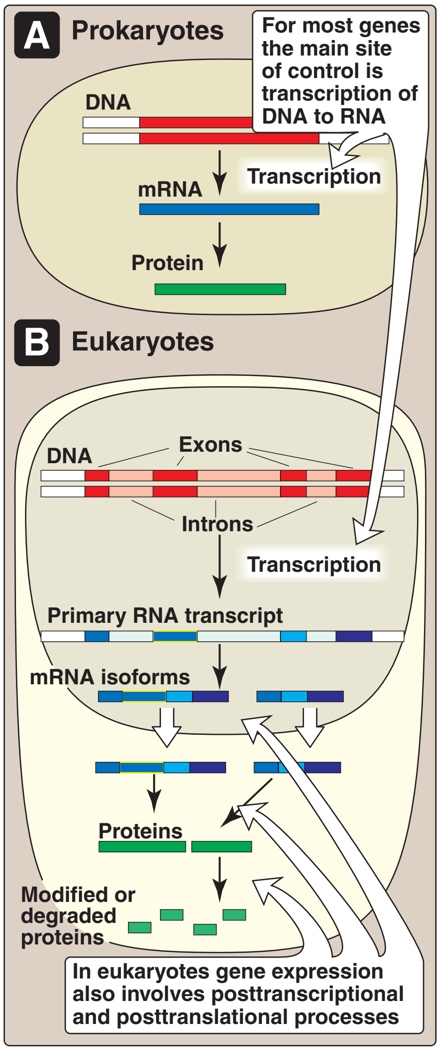
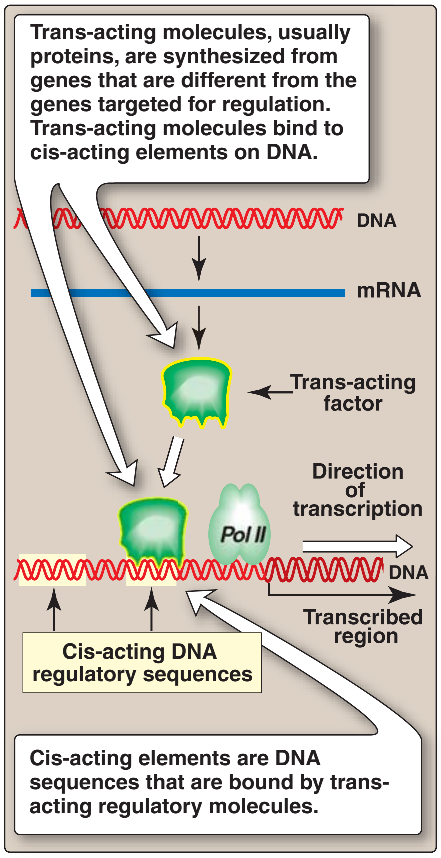

A
Prokaryotes
For most genes the main site of control is transcription of DNA to RNA
DNA
mRNA
Transcription
Protein
B
Eukaryotes
DNA
Exons
Introns
Transcription
Primary RNA transcript
mRNA isoforms
Proteins
Modified or degraded proteins
In eukaryotes gene expression also involves posttranscriptional and posttranslational processes

Figure 32.1
Control of gene expression.

II. REGULATORY SEQUENCES AND MOLECULES

Regulation of transcription—the initial step in all gene expression—is controlled by regulatory sequences of DNA, usually embedded in the noncoding regions of the genome. The interaction between these DNA segments and regulatory molecules, such as transcription factors, can engage or repress the transcriptional machinery, influencing the kinds and amounts of products that are produced. These DNA sequences flanking a gene are called cis-acting because they influence expression of genes only on the same chromosome (see p. 423). A trans-acting factor is the regulatory molecule itself, which can diffuse through the cell from its site of synthesis to its DNA-binding site (Figure 32.2). For example, a protein transcription factor (a trans-acting molecule) which regulates a gene on chromosome 6 might itself have been transcribed from a gene on chromosome 11. The binding of proteins to DNA is through structural motifs such as the zinc finger (Figure 32.3), leucine zipper, or helix-turn-helix in the protein. [Note: Some trans-acting factors can negatively affect gene expression.]


Trans-acting molecules, usually proteins, are synthesized from genes that are different from the genes targeted for regulation. Trans-acting molecules bind to cis-acting elements on DNA.

Cis-acting elements are DNA sequences that are bound by trans-acting regulatory molecules.

DNA
mRNA
Trans-acting factor
Direction of transcription
Pol II
DNA
Transcribed region
Cis-acting DNA regulatory sequences

Figure 32.2
Cis-acting elements and trans-acting molecules. *Pol II = RNA polymerase II.*

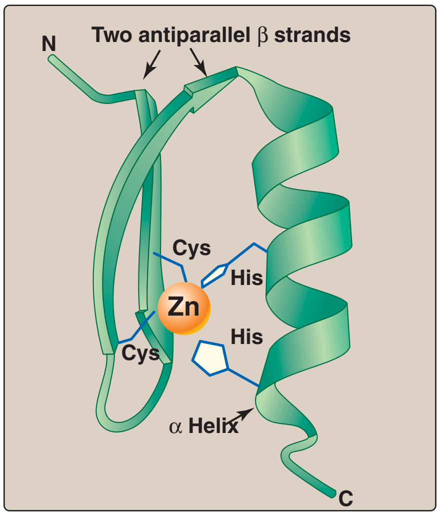


Figure 32.3
Zinc finger is a common motif in proteins that bind DNA.

III. REGULATION OF PROKARYOTIC GENE EXPRESSION

In prokaryotes such as Escherichia coli (E. coli), regulation of gene expression occurs primarily at the level of transcription and, in general, is mediated by the binding of trans-acting proteins to cis-acting regulatory elements on their single DNA molecule (chromosome). [Note: Regulating the first step in the expression of a gene is an efficient approach, as energy is not wasted making unneeded gene products.] Transcriptional control in prokaryotes can involve the initiation or premature termination of transcription.

A. Transcription of mRNA from bacterial operons

In bacteria, the structural genes that code for proteins involved in a particular metabolic pathway are often found sequentially grouped on the chromosome along with the cis-acting regulatory elements that determine the transcription of these genes. The transcription product is a single polycistronic messenger RNA (mRNA) (see p. 418). The genes are thus coordinately controlled, that is, turned on or off as a unit. This entire package is referred to as an operon.

B. Role of operators in prokaryotic transcription

Prokaryotic operons contain an operator—a segment of DNA that regulates the activity of the structural genes of the operon. If the operator is not bound by a repressor molecule, *RNA polymerase* passes over the operator and reaches the protein-coding genes which it transcribes to mRNA. If a repressor molecule is bound to the operator, the *polymerase* is blocked and does not produce mRNA. As long as the repressor is bound to the operator, no proteins are made. However, when an inducer molecule is present, it binds to the repressor, causing the repressor to change shape so that it no longer binds the operator. When this happens, the *RNA polymerase* can proceed with transcription. One of the best-understood examples is the lactose operon of E. coli, which illustrates both positive and negative regulation (Figure 32.4).

C. The lactose operon

The lactose (lac) operon contains the genes that code for three proteins involved in the catabolism of the disaccharide, lactose: The lacZ gene codes for *β-galactosidase*, which hydrolyzes lactose to galactose and glucose; the lacY gene, which codes for a *permease* that facilitates the movement of lactose into the cell; and the lacA gene that codes for *thiogalactoside transacetylase* whose exact physiologic function is unknown. All of these proteins are produced

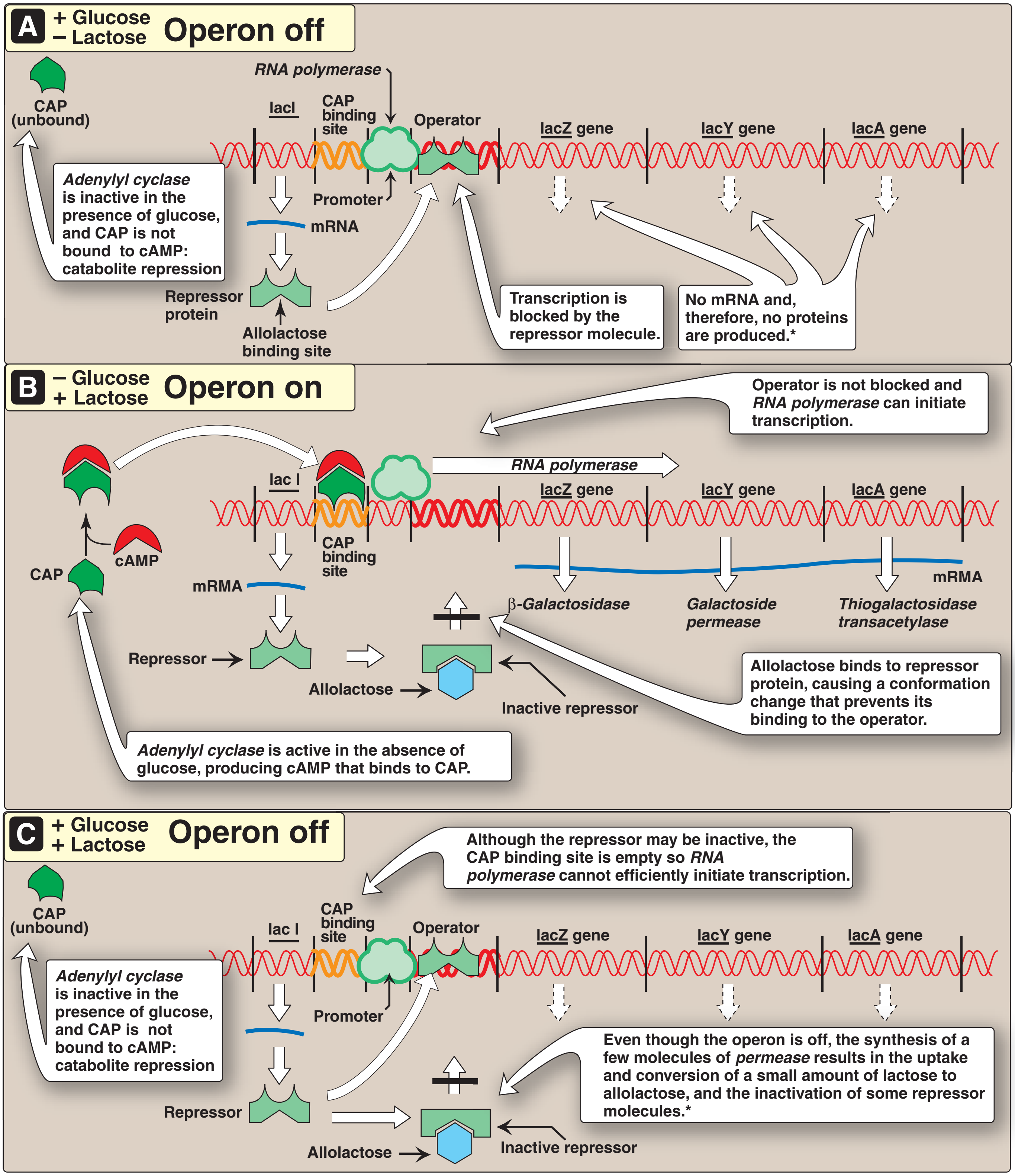

A
+ Glucose
– Lactose
Operon off
CAP (unbound)
RNA polymerase
lacI
CAP binding site
Operator
lacZ gene
lacY gene
lacA gene
Promoter
mRNA
Repressor protein
Allolactose binding site
Adenylyl cyclase is inactive in the presence of glucose, and CAP is not bound to cAMP: catabolite repression
Transcription is blocked by the repressor molecule.
No mRNA and, therefore, no proteins are produced.*
B
– Glucose
+ Lactose
Operon on
Operator is not blocked and RNA polymerase can initiate transcription.
RNA polymerase
lac I
lacZ gene
lacY gene
lacA gene
CAP binding site
CAP
cAMP
mRMA
mRMA
β-Galactosidase
Galactoside permease
Thiogalactosidase transacetylase
Repressor
Allolactose
Inactive repressor
Allolactose binds to repressor protein, causing a conformation change that prevents its binding to the operator.
Adenylyl cyclase is active in the absence of glucose, producing cAMP that binds to CAP.
C
+ Glucose
+ Lactose
Operon off
Although the repressor may be inactive, the CAP binding site is empty so RNA polymerase cannot efficiently initiate transcription.
CAP (unbound)
lac I
CAP binding site
Operator
lacZ gene
lacY gene
lacA gene
Promoter
Adenylyl cyclase is inactive in the presence of glucose, and CAP is not bound to cAMP: catabolite repression
Repressor
Allolactose
Inactive repressor
Even though the operon is off, the synthesis of a few molecules of permease results in the uptake and conversion of a small amount of lactose to allolactose, and the inactivation of some repressor molecules.*

Figure 32.4

The lactose operon of E. coli. *[Note: Even when the operon has been turned off by catabolite repression, the repressor transiently dissociates from the operator at a slow rate, allowing a very low level of expression. The synthesis of a few molecules of *permease* (and β-*galactosidase*) allows the organism to respond rapidly should glucose become unavailable.]

when lactose is available to the cell but glucose is not. [Note: Bacteria use glucose as a fuel in preference to any other sugar.] The regulatory portion of the operon is upstream of the three structural genes, and consists of the promoter (P) region where *RNA polymerase* binds, and two additional sites, the operator (O) site and the CAP site, where regulatory proteins bind. The lacZ, lacY, and lacA genes are expressed only when the O site is empty, and the CAP site is bound by a complex of cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP, see p. 94) and the catabolite gene activator protein or CAP (sometimes called the cAMP regulatory protein or CRP, see Figure 32.4). A regulatory gene, the lacI gene, codes for the repressor protein (a trans-acting factor) that binds to the operator site. [Note: The lacI gene has its own promoter.]

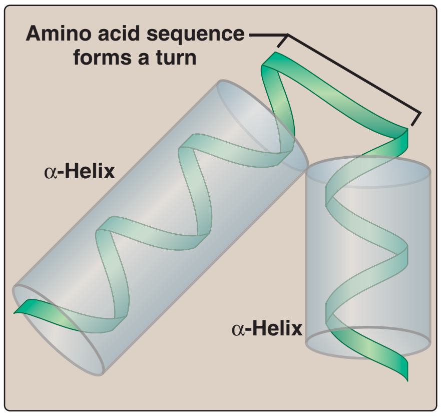


Figure 32.5
Helix-turn-helix motif.

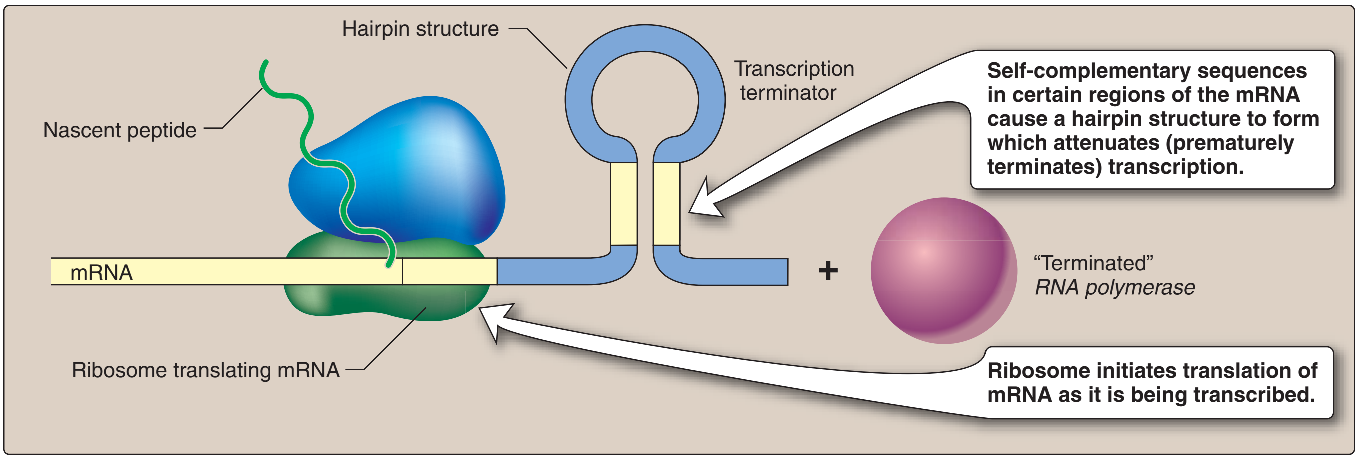
1. **When glucose is the only sugar available:** In this case, the lac operon is repressed (turned off). Repression is mediated by the repressor protein binding via a helix-turn-helix motif (Figure 32.5) to the operator site, which is downstream of the promoter region (see Figure 32.4A). Binding of the repressor interferes with the progress of *RNA polymerase*, and blocks transcription of the structural genes. This is an example of negative regulation.

2. **When only lactose is available:** In this case, the lac operon is induced (maximally expressed or turned on). A small amount of lactose is converted to an isomer, allolactose. This compound is an inducer that binds to the repressor protein, changing its conformation so that it can no longer bind to the operator. In the absence of glucose, *adenylyl cyclase* is active, and sufficient quantities of cAMP are made and bind to the CAP protein. The cAMP–CAP trans-acting complex binds to the CAP-binding site, causing *RNA polymerase* to more efficiently initiate transcription at the promoter site (see Figure 32.4B). This is an example of positive regulation. The transcript is a single polycistronic mRNA molecule that contains three sets of start and stop codons. Translation of the mRNA produces the three proteins that allow lactose to be used for energy production by the cell. [Note: In contrast to the inducible lacZ, lacY, and lacA genes, whose expression is regulated, the lacI gene is constitutive. Its gene product, the repressor protein, is active unless the inducer is present.]

3. **When both glucose and lactose are available:** In this case, transcription of the lac operon is negligible, even if lactose is present at a high concentration. *Adenylyl cyclase* is deactivated in the presence of glucose—a process known as catabolite repression—so no cAMP–CAP complex forms and the CAP-binding site remains empty. *RNA polymerase* is, therefore, unable to effectively initiate transcription, even though the repressor may not be bound to the operator region. Consequently, the three structural genes are not expressed (see Figure 32.4C).

D. The tryptophan operon

The tryptophan (trp) operon codes for five proteins that are required for the synthesis of the amino acid, tryptophan. As with the lac operon, the trp operon is subject to both positive and negative con-



Self-complementary sequences in certain regions of the mRNA cause a hairpin structure to form which attenuates (prematurely terminates) transcription.

Ribosome initiates translation of mRNA as it is being transcribed.

Figure 32.6
Attenuation of transcription of the trp operon when tryptophan is plentiful.

trol. Negative control includes trp itself binding to the repressor protein and facilitating the binding of the repressor to the operator. Repression by trp is not always complete, however, and so unlike the lac operon, the trp operon is also regulated by a process known as attenuation. With attenuation, transcription is initiated but is terminated well before completion (Figure 32.6). If trp is plentiful, transcription initiation that escaped repression by trp is attenuated (stopped) by the formation at the 5'-end of the mRNA of a hairpin (stem-loop) structure like that seen in ρ-independent termination (see p. 421). Transcription and translation are coupled processes in prokaryotes (see p. 438), and, therefore, attenuation also results in the formation of a truncated, nonfunctional peptide product that is rapidly degraded. [Note: If trp is scarce, the operon is expressed. The 5'-end of the mRNA contains two adjacent codons for trp. The lack of trp causes ribosomes to stall at these codons, covering regions of the mRNA required for formation of the attenuation hairpin. This prevents attenuation and thus allows transcription to continue.]

> Transcriptional attenuation can occur in prokaryotes because translation of an mRNA begins before its synthesis is complete. In eukaryotes this does not occur because, as a result of having a membrane-bound nucleus, transcription and translation are spatially and temporally separate processes.

E. Coordination of transcription and translation in prokaryotes

Whereas transcriptional regulation of mRNA production is primary in bacteria, regulation at the level of ribosomal RNA (rRNA) and protein synthesis also occurs, and plays important roles in the microbe's ability to adapt to environmental stress.

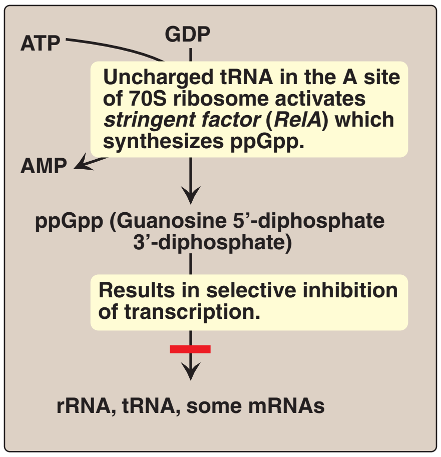

ATP
GDP
Uncharged tRNA in the A site of 70S ribosome activates *stringent factor* (*RelA*) which synthesizes ppGpp.
AMP
ppGpp (Guanosine 5'-diphosphate 3'-diphosphate)
Results in selective inhibition of transcription.
rRNA, tRNA, some mRNAs

Figure 32.7
Regulation of transcription by the stringent response to amino acid starvation.

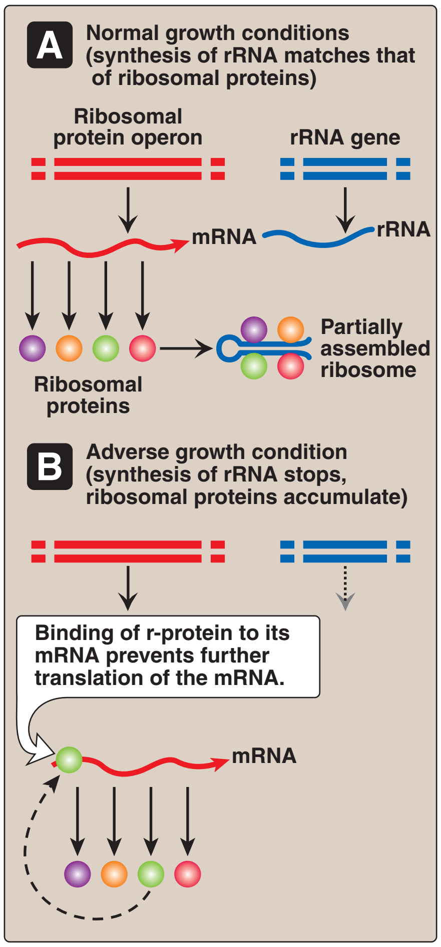

A
Normal growth conditions (synthesis of rRNA matches that of ribosomal proteins)
Ribosomal protein operon
rRNA gene
mRNA
rRNA
Partially assembled ribosome
Ribosomal proteins
B
Adverse growth condition (synthesis of rRNA stops, ribosomal proteins accumulate)
Binding of r-protein to its mRNA prevents further translation of the mRNA.
mRNA

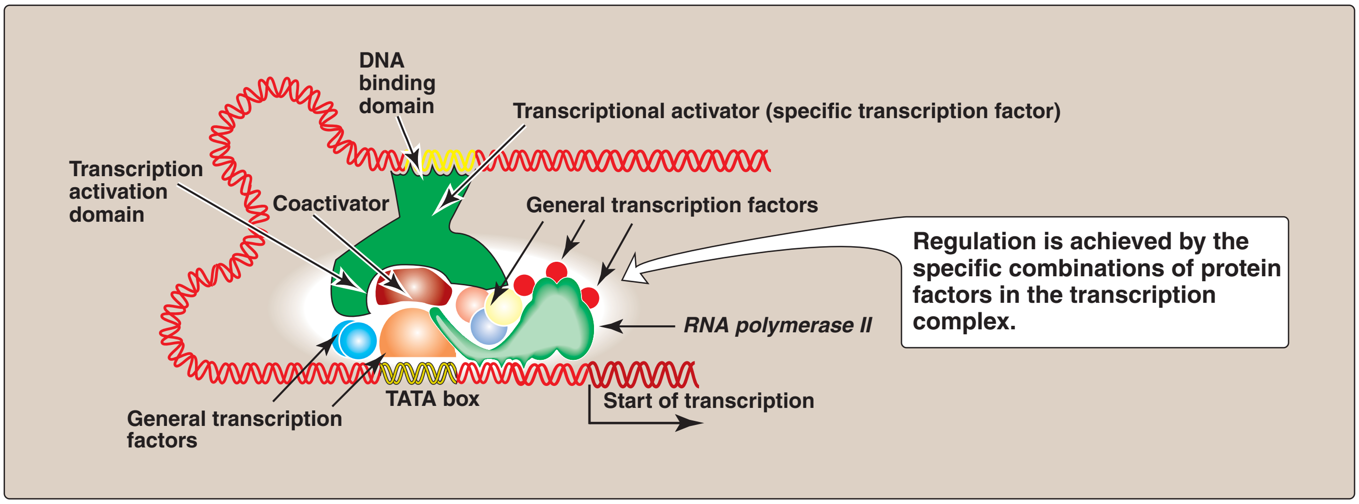
Figure 32.8
Regulation of translation by an excess of ribosomal proteins.

1. **Stringent response:** E. coli has seven operons that synthesize the rRNA needed for ribosome assembly, and each is regulated in response to changes in environmental conditions. Regulation in response to amino acid starvation is known as the stringent response. The binding of an uncharged transfer RNA (tRNA) to the A site of a ribosome (see p. 436) triggers a series of events that leads to the production of polyphosphorylated guanosine (ppGpp). The synthesis of this unusual phosphorylated derivative of guanosine diphosphate (GDP) is catalyzed by *stringent factor (RelA)*, an enzyme physically associated with ribosomes. Elevated levels of ppGpp result in inhibition of rRNA synthesis (Figure 32.7), but how ppGpp inhibits the rRNA operons is as yet unclear. [Note: In addition to rRNA, tRNA synthesis and some mRNA synthesis are also inhibited; however, mRNAs that code for enzymes that are required for amino acid biosynthesis are not inhibited. Thus, transcriptional control by the stringent response ultimately results in down-regulation of protein synthesis until amino acids are again available.]

2. **Regulatory ribosomal proteins:** Operons for ribosomal proteins (r-proteins) can be inhibited by an excess of their own protein products. For each operon, one specific r-protein functions in the repression of translation of the polycistronic mRNA from that operon (Figure 32.8). The r-protein does so by binding to the Shine-Dalgarno (SD) sequence located on the mRNA just upstream of the initiating AUG codon (see p. 439), and acting as a physical impediment to the binding of the small ribosomal subunit to the SD sequence. One r-protein thus inhibits synthesis of all the r-proteins of the operon. This same r-protein also binds to rRNA, and with a higher affinity than for mRNA. If the concentration of rRNA falls, the r-protein then is available to bind its own mRNA and inhibit its translation. This coordinated regulation keeps the synthesis of r-proteins in balance with the transcription of rRNA, so that each is present in appropriate amounts for the formation of ribosomes.

IV. REGULATION OF EUKARYOTIC GENE EXPRESSION

The higher degree of complexity of eukaryotic genomes, as well as the presence of a nuclear membrane, necessitates a wider range of regulatory processes. As with the prokaryotes, the primary site of regulation is at the level of transcription. Again, the theme of trans-acting molecules binding to cis-acting elements is seen. Operons, however, are not found in eukaryotes, which must use alternative strategies to solve the problem of how to coordinately regulate all the genes required for a specific response. In eukaryotes, gene expression is also regulated at multiple levels other than transcription. For example, the major modes of post-transcriptional regulation at the mRNA level are alternative mRNA splicing, control of mRNA stability, and control of translational efficiency. Additional regulation at the protein level occurs by mechanisms that modulate stability, processing, or targeting of the protein.


DNA binding domain
Transcriptional activator (specific transcription factor)
Transcription activation domain
Coactivator
General transcription factors
RNA polymerase II
General transcription factors
TATA box
Start of transcription

Regulation is achieved by the specific combinations of protein factors in the transcription complex.

Figure 32.9
Combinatorial control of transcription.

A. Trans-acting molecules

Specific transcription factors are trans-acting DNA-binding proteins that function as transcriptional activators. They have at least two binding domains: the DNA-binding domain described above (see p. 450), and the transcription activation domain. The transcription activation domain allows the binding of other proteins, such as coactivators (for example, *histone acetyltransferases,* or *HATs*, see Figure 30.11 on p. 422). These facilitate formation of the transcription initiation complex (*RNA polymerase II* plus the general transcription factors, see p. 423) at the promoter, and thus activate transcription (Figure 32.9). Regulation is achieved by the formation of a multiprotein complex bound to DNA, with protein–protein and protein–DNA interactions controlling assembly of the complex. Although activation domains recruit a variety of proteins, the specific effect of any one of them is dependent upon the protein composition of the complex. This is known as combinatorial control. [Note: DNA-binding proteins can also inhibit transcription.]

B. Cis-acting regulatory elements

The need to coordinately regulate a group of genes to effect a particular response is of key importance in multicellular organisms including humans. An underlying theme occurs repeatedly: A protein binds to a regulatory element for each of the genes in the group and coordinately affects the expression of those genes, even if they are on different chromosomes. For example, hormone-response elements (HREs) are cis-acting DNA sequences that bind trans-acting protein factors and regulate gene expression in response to hormonal signals. In general, hormones bind either to intracellular receptors (steroid hormones are an example, see p. 240), or to cell-surface receptors (the peptide hormone, glucagon, is an example, see p. 314).

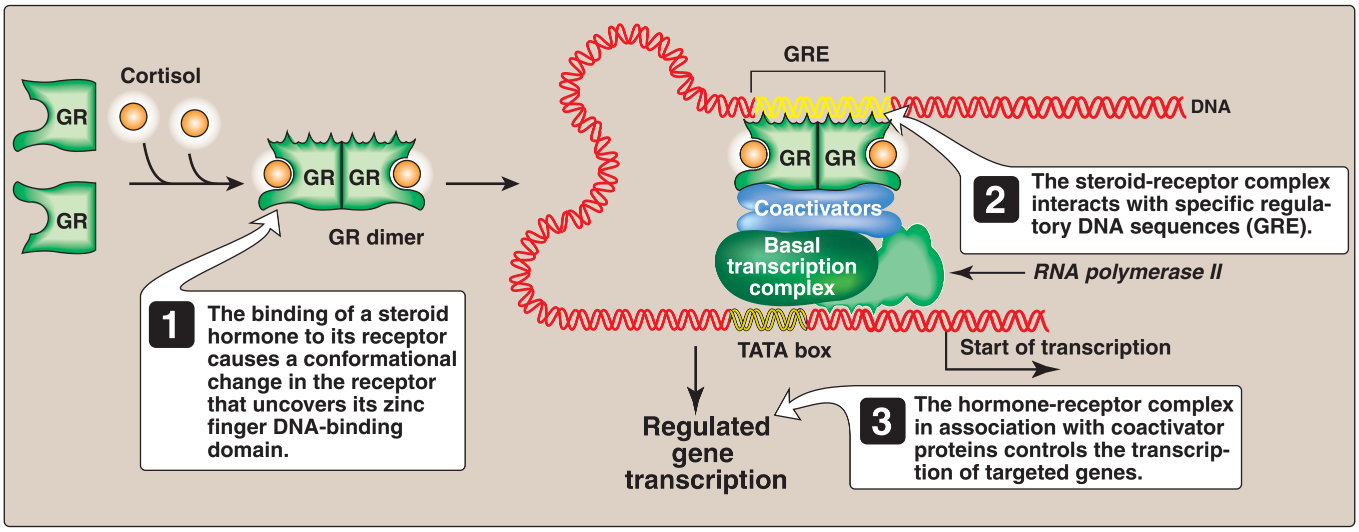

Cortisol
GR
GR
GR GR
GR dimer
1
The binding of a steroid hormone to its receptor causes a conformational change in the receptor that uncovers its zinc finger DNA-binding domain.
GRE
DNA
GR GR
Coactivators
Basal transcription complex
2
The steroid-receptor complex interacts with specific regulatory DNA sequences (GRE).
RNA polymerase II
TATA box
Start of transcription
Regulated gene transcription
3
The hormone-receptor complex in association with coactivator proteins controls the transcription of targeted genes.

Figure 32.10
Transcriptional regulation by intracellular steroid hormone receptors. GRE = glucocorticoid-response element (an example of a hormone response element); GR = glucocorticoid receptor.

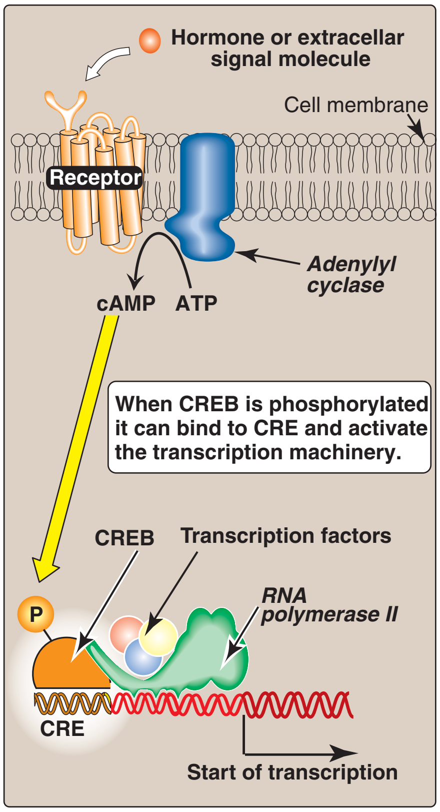

Hormone or extracellar signal molecule
Cell membrane
Receptor
Adenylyl cyclase
cAMP
ATP
When CREB is phosphorylated it can bind to CRE and activate the transcription machinery.
CREB
Transcription factors
RNA polymerase II
P
CRE
Start of transcription

Figure 32.11
Transcriptional regulation by receptors located in the cell membrane.

1. **Regulatory signals mediated by intracellular receptors:** Members of the nuclear receptor superfamily, which includes the glucocorticoid, mineralocorticoid, sex hormone, vitamin D, retinoic acid, and thyroid hormone receptors, all directly influence activity of transcription factors by alteration of the DNA-binding affinity of the factors. This signal transduction pathway is direct, because the receptor and the transcription factor are the same molecule. For example, hydrophobic steroid hormones such as cortisol (a glucocorticoid) bind to soluble receptors (Figure 32.10). Binding of the steroid hormone ligand causes a conformational change in the receptor that activates it. The receptor–ligand complex enters the nucleus, dimerizes, and, in association with coactivators, binds via a zinc finger motif to nuclear DNA at a cis-acting regulatory element, the glucocorticoid-response element (GRE)—an example of an HRE. Each of the cortisol-responsive genes is under the control of its own GRE. Binding of the receptor–hormone complex to the GRE allows coordinate expression of a group of target genes, even when these genes are located on different chromosomes. The GRE can be located upstream or downstream of the genes it regulates, and is able to function at great distances from those genes. The GRE, then, can function as a true enhancer (see p. 424). [Note: If associated with corepressors, hormone-receptor complexes inhibit transcription.]

2. **Regulatory signals mediated by cell-surface receptors:** Cell-surface receptors include those for insulin, epinephrine, and glucagon. Glucagon, for example, is a peptide hormone that binds its G protein-coupled plasma membrane receptor. This extracellular signal is then transduced to intracellular cAMP (Figure 32.11; also see Figure 8.7 on p. 95), which can affect protein expression (and activity) through *protein kinase A*–mediated covalent modification. In response to a rise in cAMP, a trans-acting factor (cAMP-response element-binding protein, or CREB) is phosphorylated

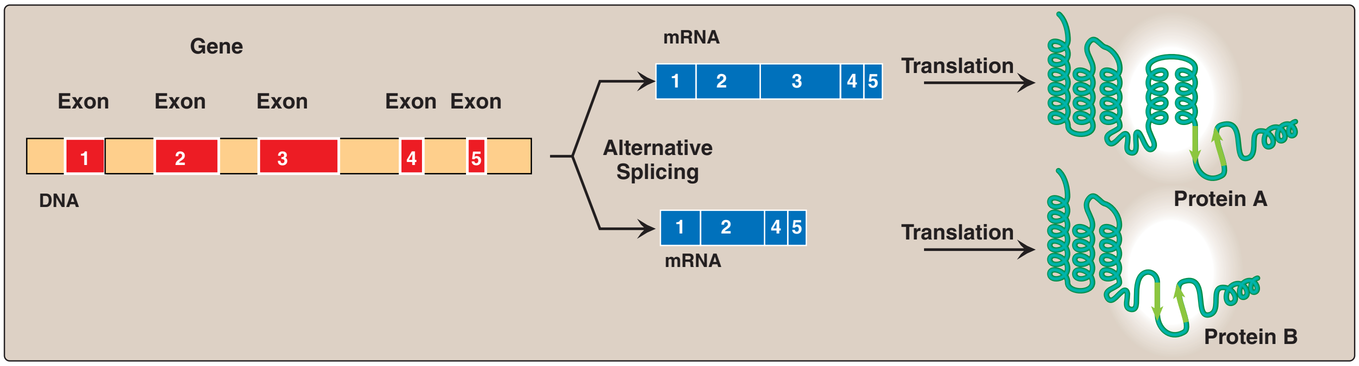


Figure 32.12
Alternative splicing produces multiple related proteins, or isoforms, from a single gene.

and activated. Active CREB binds via a leucine zipper to a cis-acting element, the cAMP-response element (CRE), resulting in the transcription of target genes with CREs in their promoters. [Note: The genes for *phosphoenolpyruvate carboxykinase* and *glucose 6-phosphatase*, key enzymes of gluconeogenesis (see p. 117), are examples of genes up-regulated by the cAMP/CRE/CREB system.]

C. Regulation by co- and posttranscriptional processing of mRNA

Eukaryotic mRNA undergoes several modifications before it is exported from the nucleus to the cytoplasm for use in protein synthesis (see p. 418). Capping at the 5'-end, polyadenylation at the 3'-end, and splicing are essential processing events for the production of a functional eukaryotic messenger from most pre-mRNA (see p. 425), and variations in these events can affect gene expression. In addition, messenger stability also affects gene expression.

1. **Splice-site choice:** Tissue-specific protein products (protein isoforms) can be made from the same pre-mRNA through differential cotranscriptional processing, particularly the use of alternative splice sites (Figure 32.12). For example, tropomyosin (TM) is an actin filament-binding protein that regulates the functions of actin in both muscle and nonmuscle cells. Its pre-mRNA undergoes differential splicing to yield a number of tissue-specific TM isoforms (see p. 427).

> Over 60% percent of the approximately 30,000 genes in the human genome undergo differential splicing. The use of alternative polyadenylation and transcription start sites is also seen in many genes. This explains, at least in part, how 30,000 genes can give rise to over 100,000 proteins.

2. **mRNA editing:** Even after mRNA has been fully processed, it may undergo additional posttranscriptional modification in which a base in the mRNA is altered. This is known as RNA editing. An

important example in humans occurs with the transcript for apoprotein (apo) B—an essential protein component of chylomicrons (see p. 228) and very low density lipoproteins (VLDL, see p. 231). Apo B mRNA is made in the liver and the small intestine; however, in the intestine only, the C residue in the codon (CAA) for glutamine is deaminated to U, changing the sense codon to a nonsense or stop codon (UAA, Figure 32.13). This results in a shorter protein (apo B-48, representing 48% of the message) being made in the intestine (and incorporated into chylomicrons) than is made in the liver (apo B-100, full-length, incorporated into VLDL).

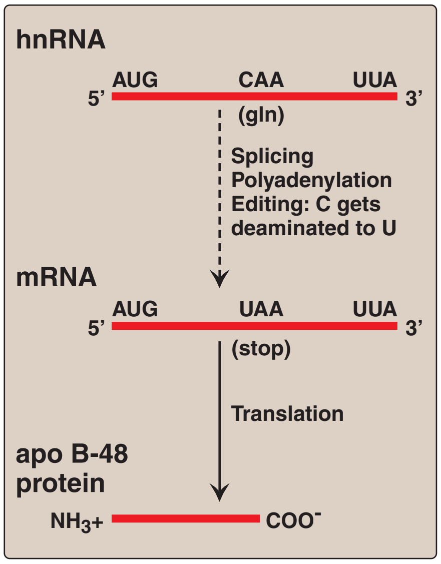

hnRNA
5'
AUG
CAA
UUA
3'
(gln)
Splicing
Polyadenylation
Editing: C gets deaminated to U
mRNA
5'
AUG
UAA
UUA
3'
(stop)
Translation
apo B-48 protein
NH3+
COO-

Figure 32.13
RNA editing of apo B in the intestine and generation of the apo B-48 protein needed for chylomicron synthesis.

3. mRNA stability: How long an mRNA remains in the cytosol before it is degraded influences how much protein product can be produced from it. Regulation of iron metabolism and the gene-silencing process of RNA interference provide good examples of the importance of mRNA stability in the regulation of gene expression.

a. Iron metabolism: Transferrin is a plasma protein that transports iron. Transferrin binds to cell-surface receptors (transferrin receptors, or TfRs) that are internalized and provide target cells with iron. The mRNA for the TfR has cis-acting iron-responsive elements (IREs) at its 3'-end. The IREs have a stem–loop structure that can be bound by trans-acting iron regulatory proteins (IRPs, Figure 32.14). When the iron concentration in the cell is low, the IRPs bind to the IREs and stabilize the mRNA for TfR, allowing TfR synthesis. When intracellular iron levels are high, the IRPs preferentially bind iron instead of IREs. The lack of IRPs bound to the mRNA hastens its degradation, resulting in decreased TfR synthesis. [Note: The mRNA for apoferritin, a protein of iron storage, also has IREs; however, they are at the 5'-end of the mRNA.

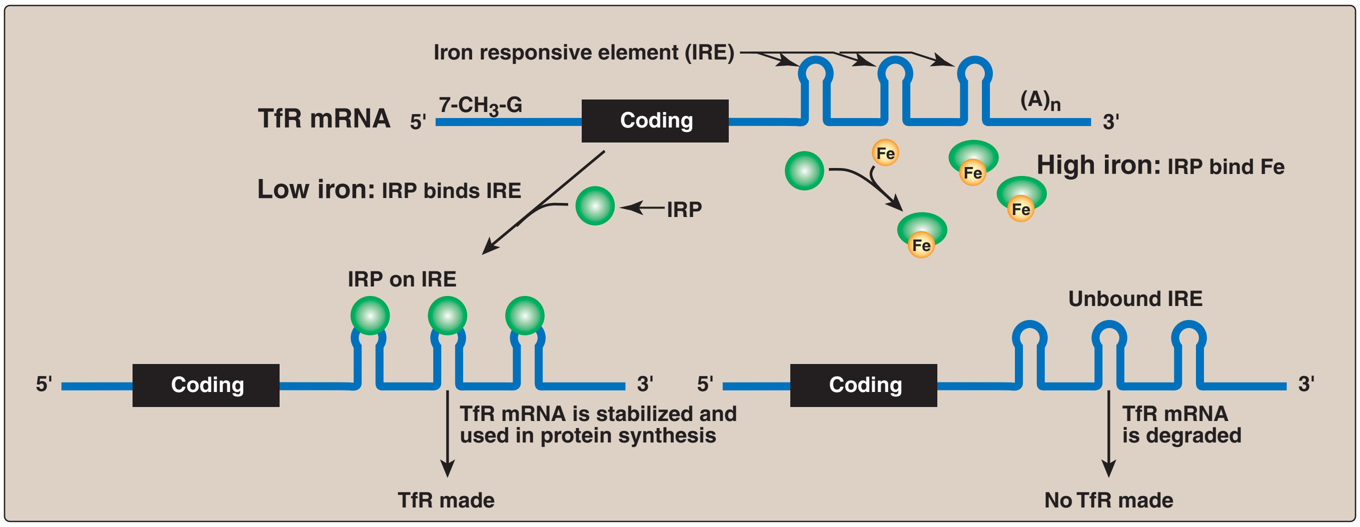

Iron responsive element (IRE)
TfR mRNA
5'
7-CH3-G
Coding
(A)n
3'
Fe
High iron: IRP bind Fe
Low iron: IRP binds IRE
IRP
IRP on IRE
Unbound IRE
5'
Coding
3'
5'
Coding
3'
TfR mRNA is stabilized and used in protein synthesis
TfR mRNA is degraded
TfR made
No TfR made

Figure 32.14
Regulation of transferrin receptor (TfR) synthesis. IRE = iron-responsive element; IRP = iron-responsive element binding protein.

When iron levels in the cell are low, IRPs bind the IREs and prevent the use of the mRNA; thus, less iron is able to be stored, allowing more iron to be transported to cells. As iron accumulates in the cell, however, the IRP protein becomes iron–bound, and loses its affinity for the IRE on mRNA, resulting in production of apoferritin molecules available to store the excess iron.]

b. RNA interference (RNAi): RNAi is a mechanism of gene silencing through decreased expression of mRNA, either by repression of translation or by increased degradation. It is thought to play a key role in such fundamental process as cell proliferation, differentiation, and apoptosis. RNAi is mediated by short (~22 bp), noncoding RNAs called microRNAs (miRNAs), which arise from far longer, genomically encoded nuclear transcripts that are partially processed in the nucleus then transported to the cytoplasm. There, an *endonuclease* (*Dicer*) completes the processing and generates short, double stranded (ds) miRNA. A single strand (the guide or antisense strand) of the ds miRNA associates with a cytosolic protein complex known as the RNA-induced silencing complex, or RISC. The guide strand hybridizes with a complementary sequence on a full length target mRNA, bringing RISC to the mRNA. This can result in repression of translation of the mRNA or its degradation by an *endonuclease* (*Argonaute*/*Ago*/*Slicer*) of the RISC. The extent of complementarity appears to be the determining factor. RNAi can also be triggered by ds short interfering RNAs (siRNAs) introduced into a cell from exogenous sources. [Note: In vertebrates, the function of siRNAs that may arise from endogenous sources is as yet unclear.] The medical and research applications of RNAi are growing rapidly.

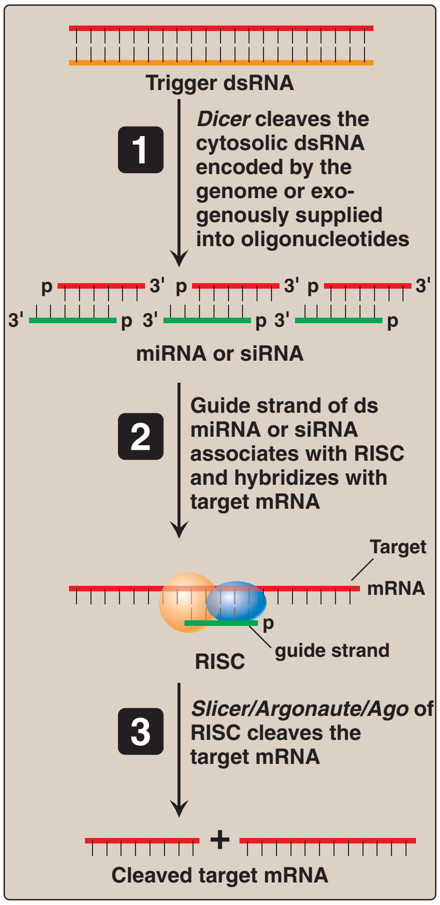

Trigger dsRNA
1
Dicer cleaves the cytosolic dsRNA encoded by the genome or exogenously supplied into oligonucleotides
p
3'
p
3'
p
3'
3'
p
3'
p
3'
p
miRNA or siRNA
2
Guide strand of ds miRNA or siRNA associates with RISC and hybridizes with target mRNA
Target mRNA
p
guide strand
RISC
3
Slicer/Argonaute/Ago of RISC cleaves the target mRNA
+
Cleaved target mRNA

Figure 32.15
RNA interference or RNAi by cleavage of target mRNA. [Note: RNAi can also result from inhibition of target mRNA translation.]

1) **RNAi therapy:** Modulation of gene expression by providing siRNA to trigger RNAi has enormous therapeutic potential. The first clinical trial of RNAi-based therapy involved patients with age-related macular degeneration (AMD), the leading form of adult blindness in the world. AMD is triggered by overproduction of vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF). In patients with AMD, too much VEGF leads to the sprouting of excess blood vessels behind the retina. The blood vessels leak, clouding and often entirely destroying vision; hence, AMD is also referred to as "wet" macular degeneration. The siRNA drug—a short dsRNA that specifically targets the mRNA of VEGF and promotes its degradation—is injected into the eye. One siRNA molecule can destroy hundreds of mRNA, resulting in the suppression of thousands of VEGF proteins, thus preventing damaging angiogenesis in the retina. [Note: The first clinical trial, involving about two dozen patients, showed promising results; however, subsequent trials were suspended.] Although the list of potential disease targets is extensive, the development of RNAi-based drugs is hindered by the problem of targeted RNAi delivery.

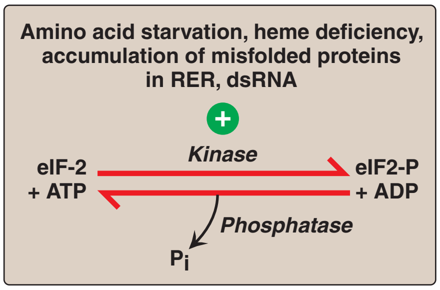

Amino acid starvation, heme deficiency, accumulation of misfolded proteins in RER, dsRNA
+
Kinase
eIF-2
+ ATP
eIF2-P
+ ADP
Phosphatase
P_i

Figure 32.16
Regulation of translation initiation in eukaryotes by phosphorylation of eIF-2. RER = rough endoplasmic reticulum.

4. **Translation of mRNA:** Regulation of gene expression can also occur at the level of translation. One mechanism by which translation is regulated is through phosphorylation of the eukaryotic translation initiation factor, eIF-2 (Figure 32.16). Phosphorylation of eIF-2 inhibits its function and so inhibits translation at the initiation step (see p. 443). Phosphorylation is catalyzed by *kinases* that are activated in response to environmental conditions such as amino acid starvation, heme deficiency, the presence of dsRNA, and the accumulation of misfolded proteins in the rough endoplasmic reticulum. [Note: Phosphorylation of eIF-2 prevents its reactivation by inhibiting GDP–GTP exchange.]

D. Regulation through modifications to DNA

Gene expression in eukaryotes is also influenced by the availability of DNA to the transcriptional apparatus, the amount of DNA, and the arrangement of DNA. [Note: Localized transitions between the B and Z forms of DNA (see p. 398) can also affect gene expression.]

1. **Access to DNA:** In eukaryotes, DNA is found complexed with histone and nonhistone proteins to form chromatin (see p. 409). Transcriptionally active, decondensed chromatin (euchromatin) differs from the more condensed, inactive form (heterochromatin) in a number of ways. Active chromatin contains histone proteins that have been covalently modified at their amino terminal ends by acetylation or phosphorylation (see p. 422 for a discussion of histone acetylation/deacetylation by the *histone acetyltransferase* and *histone deacetylase* enzymes). Such modifications decrease the positive charge of these basic proteins, thus decreasing the strength of their association with negatively charged DNA. This chromatin remodeling relaxes the nucleosome (see p. 409), allowing transcription factors access to specific regions on the DNA. A second difference between transcriptionally active and inactive chromatin is the extent of methylation of cytosine bases in CG-rich regions (CpG islands) in the promoter region of many genes. Methylation is by *methyltransferases* that use S-adenosylmethionine as the methyl donor (Figure 32.17). Evidence supports the idea that transcriptionally active genes are less methylated (hypomethylated) than their inactive counterparts, suggesting that DNA hypermethylation silences gene expression.

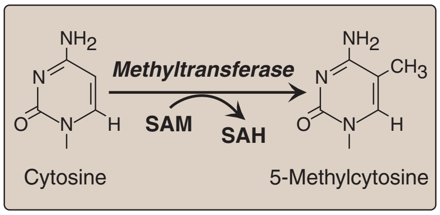


Figure 32.17
The methylation of cytosine in eukaryotic DNA. SAM = S-adenosylmethionine; SAH = S-adenosyl homocysteine.

2. **Amount of DNA:** A change in the number of copies of a gene can affect the amount of gene product produced. An increase in copy number—gene amplification—has contributed to increased genomic complexity and is still a normal developmental process in certain nonmammalian species. In mammalian cells, however, gene amplification is seen in response to particular chemotherapeutic drugs such as methotrexate, an inhibitor of the enzyme *dihydrofolate reductase* (*DHFR*), required for the synthesis of thymidine triphosphate (TTP) in the pyrimidine biosynthetic pathway (see p. 304). TTP is essential for DNA synthesis. Gene amplification results in an increase in the number of *DHFR* genes and resistance to the drug, allowing TTP to be made.

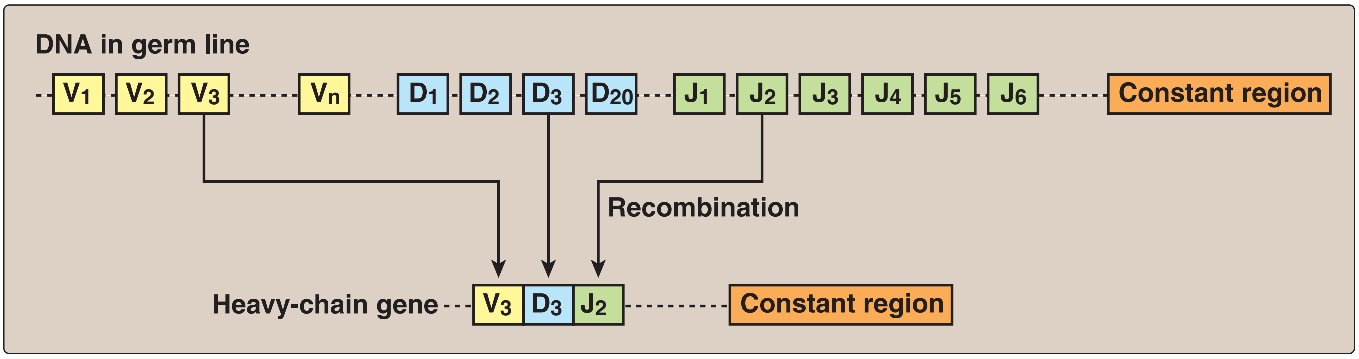


Figure 32.18
DNA rearrangements in the generation of immunoglobulins.

3. **Arrangement of DNA:** The process by which immunoglobulins (antibodies) are produced by B lymphocytes involves permanent rearrangements of the DNA in these cells. The immunoglobulins (for example, IgG) consist of two light and two heavy chains, with each chain containing regions of variable and constant amino acid sequence. The variable region is the result of somatic recombination of segments within both the light- and the heavy-chain genes. During B-lymphocyte development, single variable (V), diversity (D), and joining (J) gene segments are brought together through gene rearrangement to form a unique variable region (Figure 32.18). This process allows the generation of 10^9–10^{11} different immunoglobulins from a single gene, providing the diversity needed for the recognition of an enormous number of antigens. [Note: The shift from the membrane-bound form to the secreted form of immunoglobulins involves polyA-site choice (see p. 426).]

4. **Mobile DNA elements:** Transposons (Tn) are mobile segments of DNA that move in an essentially random manner from one site to another on the same or a different chromosome. Movement is mediated by *transposase*, an enzyme encoded by the Tn itself. Movement can be direct, in which *transposase* cuts out and then inserts the Tn at a new site, or replicative, in which the transposon is copied and the copy inserted elsewhere while the original remains in place. In eukaryotes, including humans, replicative transposition frequently involves an RNA intermediate, in which case the Tn is called a retrotransposon (see p. 408). Transposition has expanded the genome, but also has the potential to alter gene expression and even to cause disease. Although the vast majority of retrotransposons in the human genome have lost the ability to move, a small percentage is still active. Their transposition is thought to be the basis for some rare cases of hemophilia A and Duchenne muscular dystrophy. [Note: The growing problem of antibiotic-resistant bacteria is a consequence, at least in part, of the exchange of plasmids among bacterial cells. If the plasmids contain transposons carrying antibiotic resistance genes, the recipient bacteria gain resistance to one or more antimicrobial drugs.]

V. CHAPTER SUMMARY

Gene expression results in the production of a functional gene product (either RNA or protein) through the processes of replication, transcription, and translation (Figure 32.19). **Genes** can be either **constitutive** (always expressed, housekeeping genes) or **regulated** (expressed only under certain conditions in all cells or in a subset of cells). The ability to appropriately **express** (**positive regulation**) or **repress** (**negative regulation**) genes is essential in all organisms. **Regulation** of gene expression occurs primarily at the level of **transcription** in both **prokaryotes** and **eukaryotes**, and is mediated through the **binding** of **trans-acting proteins to cis-acting regulatory elements on the DNA**. In **eukaryotes**, regulation also occurs through **modifications to the DNA**, as well as through **posttranscriptional** and **posttranslational events**. In **prokaryotes** such as E. coli, the coordinate regulation of genes whose protein products are required for a particular metabolic pathway is achieved through **operons** (groups of genes sequentially arranged on the chromosome along with the regulatory elements that determine their transcription). The **lac operon** contains the Z, Y, and A structural genes, the protein products of which are needed for the catabolism of lactose. When **glucose is available**, the **operon is repressed** by the binding of the repressor protein (the product of the lacI gene) to the operator, thus preventing transcription. When **only lactose is presen**t, the **operon is induced** by an isomer of lactose (**allolactose**) that binds the repressor protein, preventing it from binding to the operator. In addition, **cAMP binds the CAP protein**, and the complex **binds the DNA** at the CAP site. This **increases promoter efficiency** and results in the expression of the structural genes through the production of a **polycistronic mRNA**. When both **glucose and lactose are present**, glucose prevents formation of cAMP and **transcription** of these genes is **negligible**. The **trp operon** contains genes needed for the synthesis of tryptophan, and like the lac operon, it is regulated by **positive** and **negative control**. Unlike the lac operon, it is **also regulated by attenuation**, in which mRNA synthesis that escaped repression by trp is terminated before completion. **Transcription** of **rRNA** and **tRNA** is selectively **inhibited** in prokaryotes by the **stringent response to amino acid starvation**. **Translation** is also a site of **prokaryotic gene regulation**: when ribosomal proteins are in excess, they bind the Shine-Dalgarno sequence on their own polycistronic mRNA, preventing ribosomes from binding. **Gene regulation** is **more complex in eukaryotes**. **Operons** are **not present**, but **coordinate regulation** of the transcription of genes located on different chromosomes can be achieved through the **binding of trans-acting proteins to cis-acting elements**. In **multicellular organisms**, **hormones** can **cause coordinated regulation**, either through the **binding** of the **hormone receptor–hormone complex** itself **to the DNA** (as with steroid hormones) or through the **binding of a protein** that is activated in **response to a second messenger** (as with glucagon). In each case, binding to DNA is mediated through structural motifs such as the **zinc-finger. Co- and posttranscriptional regulation** is also seen in **eukaryotes**, and includes **splice-site choice**, **polyA-site choice**, **mRNA editing**, and variations in **mRNA stability** as seen with transferrin receptor synthesis and with RNA interference. **Regulation at the translational level** can be caused by the **phosphorylation (inhibition) of eIF-2**. Gene expression in eukaryotes is also influenced by availability of DNA to the transcriptional apparatus, the amount of DNA, and the arrangement of the DNA.

Study Questions

Choose the one correct answer.

32.1 Which of the following mutations is most likely to result in reduced expression of the lac operon?

A. i^- (no repressor protein made)
B. O^c (operator cannot bind repressor protein)
C. Cya^- (no adenylyl cyclase made)
D. Functionally impaired glucose transporter

Correct answer = C. In the absence of glucose, adenylyl cyclase makes cAMP, which forms a complex with the CAP protein. The cAMP–CAP complex binds the CAP site on the DNA, causing RNA polymerase to bind more efficiently to the lac operon promoter, thus increasing expression of the operon. With cya^- mutations, adenylyl cyclase is not made, and so the operon is unable to be turned on even when glucose is absent and lactose is present. The absence of a repressor protein or decreased ability of the repressor to bind the operator results in constitutive (constant) expression of the lac operon.

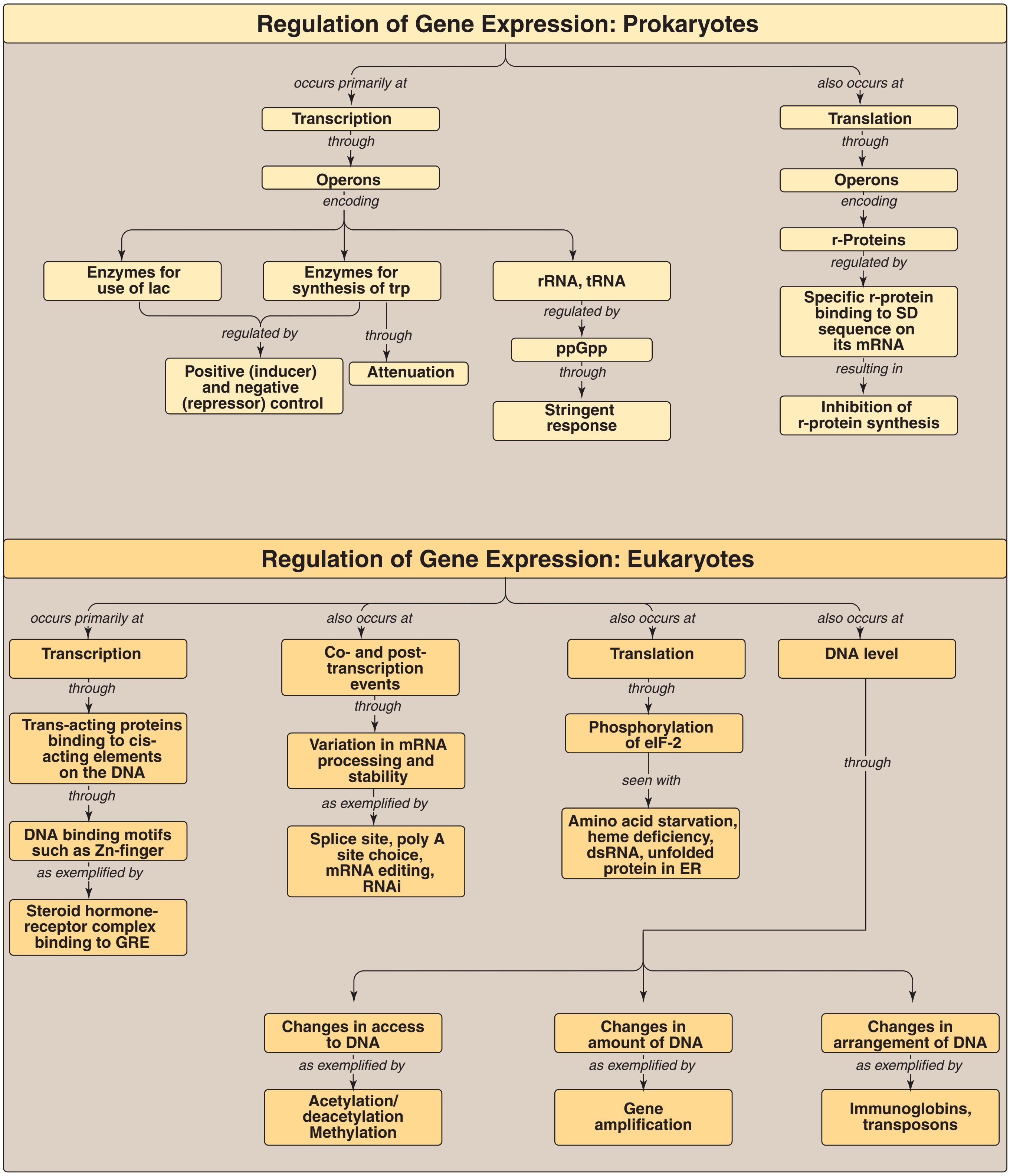

Regulation of Gene Expression: Prokaryotes
occurs primarily at
Transcription
through
Operons
encoding
Enzymes for use of lac
Enzymes for synthesis of trp
rRNA, tRNA
regulated by
Positive (inducer) and negative (repressor) control
through
Attenuation
regulated by
ppGpp
through
Stringent response
also occurs at
Translation
through
Operons
encoding
r-Proteins
regulated by
Specific r-protein binding to SD sequence on its mRNA
resulting in
Inhibition of r-protein synthesis
Regulation of Gene Expression: Eukaryotes
occurs primarily at
Transcription
through
Trans-acting proteins binding to cis-acting elements on the DNA
through
DNA binding motifs such as Zn-finger
as exemplified by
Steroid hormone-receptor complex binding to GRE
also occurs at
Co- and post-transcription events
through
Variation in mRNA processing and stability
as exemplified by
Splice site, poly A site choice, mRNA editing, RNAi
also occurs at
Translation
through
Phosphorylation of eIF-2
seen with
Amino acid starvation, heme deficiency, dsRNA, unfolded protein in ER
also occurs at
DNA level
through
Changes in access to DNA
as exemplified by
Acetylation/ deacetylation Methylation
Changes in amount of DNA
as exemplified by
Gene amplification
Changes in arrangement of DNA
as exemplified by
Immunoglobins, transposons

Figure 32.19
Summary of key concepts for the regulation of gene expression.

32.2 Which of the following is best described as being trans-acting?

A. CAP site
B. Operator
C. Promoter
D. Repressor

Correct answer = D. A repressor is a molecule that transits to the DNA, binds, and reduces the expression of that DNA; it is said to be trans-acting. The CAP site, operator, and promoter are part of the DNA itself, and so are said to be cis-acting.

32.3 Which of the following is the basis for the intestine-specific expression of apoprotein B-48?

A. DNA rearrangement and loss
B. DNA transposition
C. RNA alternative splicing
D. RNA editing
E. RNA interference

Correct answer = D. The production of apoB-48 in the intestine and apoB-100 in liver is the result of RNA editing in the intestine, where a sense codon is changed to a nonsense codon by posttranscriptional deamination of C to U. DNA rearrangement and transposition, as well as RNA interference and alternate splicing, do alter gene expression, but are not the basis of apoB-48 tissue-specific production.

32.4 Which of the following is most likely to be true in hemochromatosis, a disease of iron accumulation in the body?

A. The mRNA for the transferrin receptor (TfR) is stabilized by the binding of IRPs to 3' stem-loop structures known as IREs.
B. The mRNA for the TfR is not bound by IRPs, and is rapidly degraded.
C. The mRNA for apoferritin is not bound by IRPs at its 5' stem-loop IRE, and is translated.
D. The mRNA for apoferritin is bound by IRPs, and is not translated.
E. Both B and C

Correct answer = E. When iron levels in the body are high, as is seen with hemochromatosis, there is increased synthesis of the iron-storage molecule, apoferritin, and decreased synthesis of the transferrin receptor (TfR) that mediates iron uptake by cells. These effects are the result of trans-acting iron regulatory proteins (IRPs) binding iron rather than binding cis-acting iron-responsive elements (IREs), resulting in degradation of the mRNA for TfR, and increased translation of the mRNA for apoferritin.

32.5 After several weeks of chemotherapy with methotrexate, a cancer patient's tumor begins to show signs of resistance to treatment. Which of the following mechanisms is most likely to explain this resistance to methotrexate?

A. Overproduction of dihydrofolate reductase.
B. Overproduction of xanthine oxidase.
C. Deficiency of PRPP synthase.
D. Deficiency of thymidine kinase.
E. Deficiency of thymidylate synthase.

Correct answer = A. Methotrexate interferes with folate metabolism by acting as a competitive inhibitor of the enzyme dihydrofolate reductase. This starves cells for tetrahydrofolate, and makes them unable to synthesize purines and dTMP. This is especially toxic to rapidly growing cancer cells. Overproduction of dihydrofolate reductase, usually caused by amplification of its gene, can overcome the inhibition of the enzyme at the methotrexate concentrations used for chemotherapy, and can result in resistance of the tumor to treatment by this drug.

32.6 The ZYA region of the lac operon will be efficiently transcribed if:

A. glucose and lactose are available.
B. cAMP levels are low.
C. the operator is mutated and can't be bound by the repressor.
D. the repressor is mutated and can't be bound by the inducer.

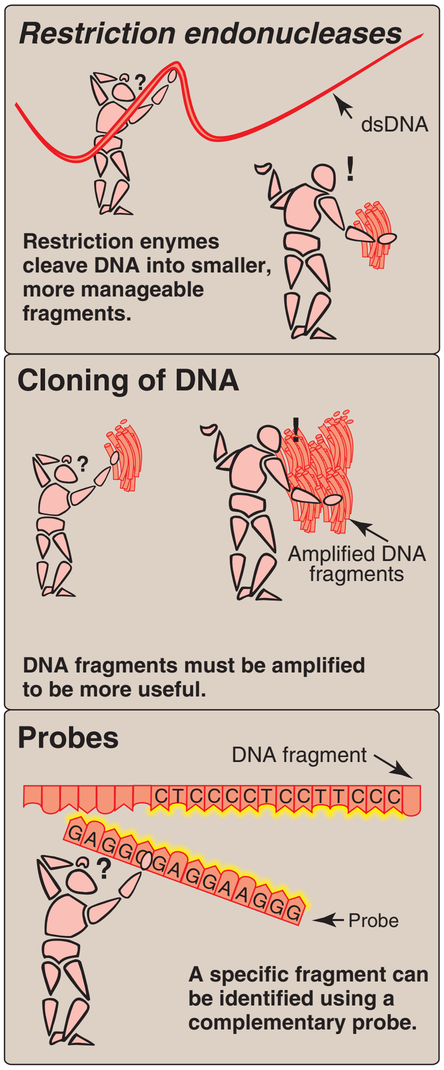
Correct answer = C. The lac operon is negatively regulated by the repressor protein binding to the operator region and preventing RNA polymerase from transcribing the Z, Y, and A genes of the operon. If glucose is present, the operon is off as a result of catabolite repression. It is only when glucose is gone, cAMP levels are increased, and lactose is available that the operon is maximally induced. If the inducer can't bind the repressor, the repressor binds the operator and represses transcription.

Biotechnology and Human Disease

33

I. OVERVIEW

In the past, efforts to understand genes and their expression have been confounded by the immense size and complexity of human deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA). The human genome contains approximately three billion (10^9) base pairs (bp) that encode 20,000 to 30,000 protein-coding genes located on 23 pairs of chromosomes. It is now possible to determine the nucleotide sequence of long stretches of DNA, and the entire sequence of the human genome has been determined. This effort (called the Human Genome Project) was made possible by several techniques that have already contributed to our understanding of many genetic diseases (Figure 33.1). These include, first, the discovery of *restriction endonucleases* that permit the dissection of huge DNA molecules into defined fragments. Second, the development of cloning techniques, providing a mechanism for amplification of specific nucleotide sequences. Finally, the ability to synthesize specific probes, which has allowed the identification and manipulation of nucleotide sequences of interest. These and other experimental approaches have permitted the identification of both normal and mutant nucleotide sequences in DNA. This knowledge has led to the development of methods for the diagnosis of genetic diseases, and initial successes in the treatment of patients by gene therapy.


Restriction endonucleases

Restriction enymes cleave DNA into smaller, more manageable fragments.

Cloning of DNA

DNA fragments must be amplified to be more useful.

Probes

A specific fragment can be identified using a complementary probe.

Figure 33.1
Three techniques that facilitate analysis of human DNA.

II. RESTRICTION ENDONUCLEASES

One of the major obstacles to molecular analysis of genomic DNA is the immense size of the molecules involved. The discovery of a special group of bacterial enzymes, called *restriction endonucleases* (restriction enzymes), which cleave double-stranded (ds) DNA into smaller, more manageable fragments, has opened the way for DNA analysis. Because each enzyme cleaves DNA at a specific nucleotide sequence, restriction enzymes are used experimentally to obtain precisely defined DNA segments called restriction fragments.

A. Specificity of restriction endonucleases

Restriction endonucleases recognize short stretches of DNA (four to eight bp) that contain specific nucleotide sequences. These sequences, which differ for each restriction enzyme, are palin-

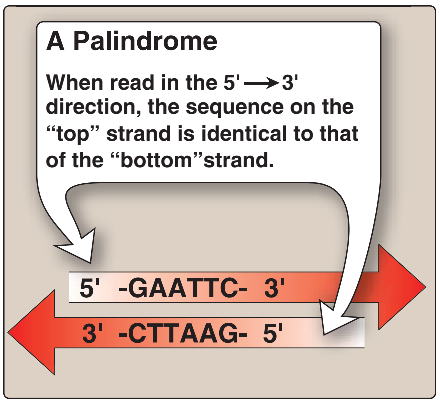

A Palindrome
When read in the 5'→3' direction, the sequence on the "top" strand is identical to that of the "bottom"strand.
5' -GAATTC- 3'
3' -CTTAAG- 5'

Figure 33.2
Recognition sequence of *restriction endonuclease Eco*RI shows two-fold rotational symmetry.

dromes, that is, they exhibit twofold rotational symmetry (Figure 33.2). This means that, within a short region of the double helix, the nucleotide sequence on the two strands is identical if each is read in the 5'→3' direction. Therefore, if you turn the page upside down—that is, rotate it 180 degrees around its axis of symmetry—the sequence remains the same.

> In bacteria, *restriction endonucleases* "restrict" the expression of non-bacterial DNA through cleavage. Bacterial DNA is protected by methylation of bases at the restriction site

B. Nomenclature

A restriction enzyme is named according to the organism from which it was isolated. The first letter of the name is from the genus of the bacterium. The next two letters are from the name of the species. An additional letter indicates the type or strain, and a final number is appended to indicate the order in which the enzyme was discovered in that particular organism. For example, *Hae*III is the third *restriction endonuclease* isolated from the bacterium Haemophilus aegyptius.

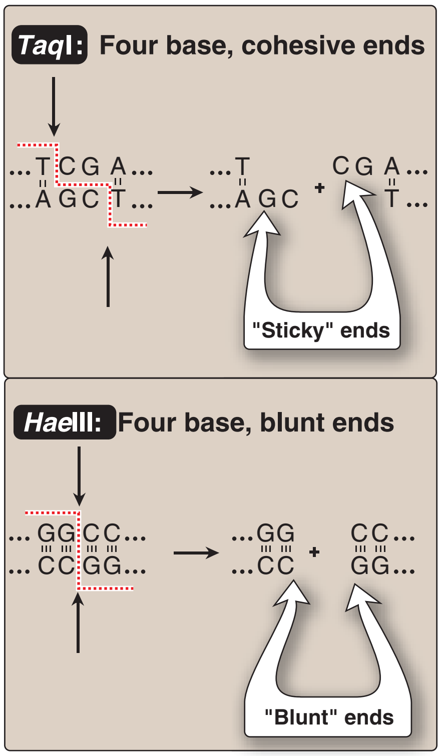


Figure 33.3
Specificity of *Taq*I and *Hae*III *restriction endonucleases*.

C. "Sticky" and "blunt" ends

Restriction enzymes cleave dsDNA so as to produce a 3'-hydroxyl group on one end and a 5'-phosphate group on the other. Some *restriction endonucleases*, such as *Taq*I, form staggered cuts that produce "sticky" or cohesive ends—that is, the resulting DNA fragments have single-stranded (ss) sequences that are complementary to each other (Figure 33.3). Other *restriction endonucleases*, such as *Hae*III, produce fragments that have "blunt" ends that are double-stranded and therefore do not form hydrogen bonds with each other. Using the enzyme *DNA ligase* (see p. 406), sticky ends of a DNA fragment of interest can be covalently joined with other DNA fragments that have sticky ends produced by cleavage with the same *restriction endonuclease* (Figure 33.4). Another *ligase*, encoded by bacteriophage T4, can covalently join blunt-ended fragments.

D. Restriction sites

A DNA sequence that is recognized and cut by a restriction enzyme is called a restriction site. *Restriction endonucleases* cleave dsDNA into fragments of different sizes. For example, an enzyme that recognizes a specific four-base-pair sequence produces many cuts in the DNA molecule, one every 4^4 bp. In contrast, an enzyme requiring a unique sequence of six base pairs produces fewer cuts (one every 4^6 bp) and, hence, longer pieces. Hundreds of these enzymes, having different cleavage specificities (varying in both nucleotide sequences and length of recognition sites), are commercially available as analytic reagents.

III. DNA CLONING

Introduction of a foreign DNA molecule into a replicating cell permits the cloning or amplification (that is, the production of many identical copies) of that DNA. In some cases, a single DNA fragment can be isolated and purified prior to cloning. More commonly, to clone a nucleotide sequence of interest, the total cellular DNA is first cleaved with a specific restriction enzyme, creating hundreds of thousands of fragments. Each of the resulting DNA fragments is joined to a DNA vector molecule (referred to as a cloning vector) to form a hybrid or recombinant molecule. Each recombinant DNA molecule conveys its inserted DNA fragment into a single host cell, for example, a bacterium, where it is replicated. [Note: The process of introducing foreign DNA into a cell is called transformation for bacteria and yeast and transfection for higher eukaryotes.] As the host cell multiplies, it forms a clone in which every bacterium carries copies of the same inserted DNA fragment, hence the name "cloning." The cloned DNA is eventually released from its vector by cleavage (using the appropriate *restriction endonuclease*) and is isolated. By this mechanism, many identical copies of the DNA of interest can be produced. [Note: An alternative to biologic cloning—the polymerase chain reaction—is described on p. 479.]

A. Vectors

A vector is a molecule of DNA to which the fragment of DNA to be cloned is joined. Essential properties of a vector include: 1) it must be capable of autonomous replication within a host cell; 2) it must contain at least one specific nucleotide sequence recognized by a *restriction endonuclease*; and 3) it must carry at least one gene that confers the ability to select for the vector, such as an antibiotic resistance gene. Commonly used vectors include plasmids and viruses.

1. **Prokaryotic plasmids:** Prokaryotic organisms typically contain single, large, circular chromosomes. In addition, most species of bacteria also normally contain small, circular, extrachromosomal DNA molecules called plasmids[1] (Figure 33.5). Plasmid DNA undergoes replication that may or may not be synchronized to chromosomal division. Plasmids may carry genes that convey antibiotic resistance to the host bacterium, and may facilitate the transfer of genetic information from one bacterium to another. Plasmids can be readily isolated from bacterial cells, their circular DNA cleaved at specific sites by *restriction endonucleases*, and up to 10 kb of foreign DNA (cut with the same restriction enzyme) inserted. The recombinant plasmid can be introduced into a bacterium, and large numbers of copies of the plasmid produced. The bacteria are grown in the presence of antibiotics, thus selecting for cells containing the hybrid plasmids, which provide antibiotic resistance (Figure 33.6). [Note: The experiment is conducted to favor only one DNA fragment being inserted into each plasmid and only one plasmid being taken up by each bacterium.]

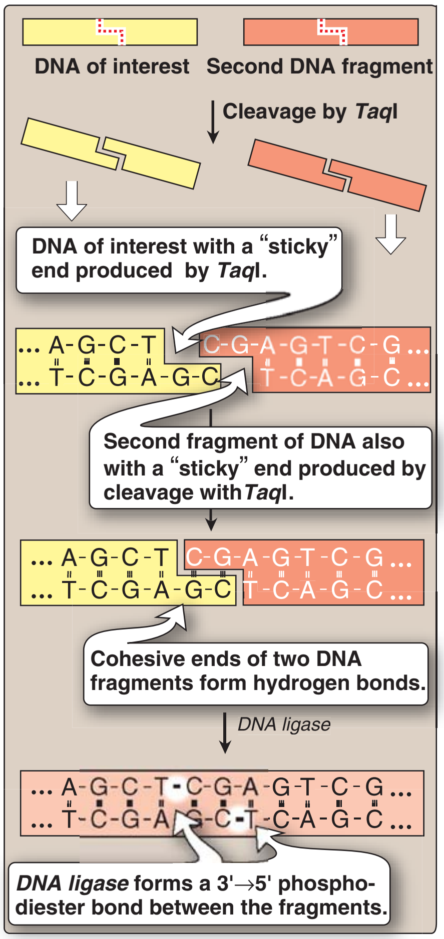

DNA of interest
Second DNA fragment
Cleavage by *Taq*I
DNA of interest with a "sticky" end produced by *Taq*I.
... A-G-C-T
... T-C-G-A-G-C
C-G-A-G-T-C-G ...
T-C-A-G-C ...
Second fragment of DNA also with a "sticky" end produced by cleavage with *Taq*I.
... A-G-C-T
... T-C-G-A-G-C
C-G-A-G-T-C-G ...
T-C-A-G-C ...
Cohesive ends of two DNA fragments form hydrogen bonds.
DNA ligase
... A-G-C-T-C-G-A-G-T-C-G ...
... T-C-G-A-G-C-T-C-A-G-C ...
DNA ligase forms a 3'→5' phosphodiester bond between the fragments.

Figure 33.4
Formation of recombinant DNA from restriction fragments with "sticky" ends.

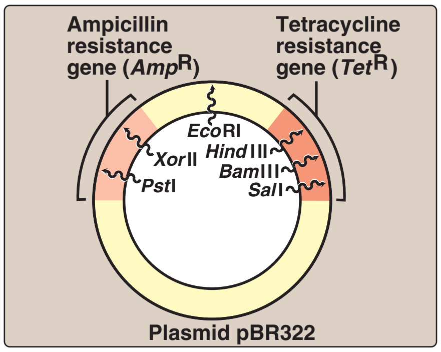

Ampicillin resistance gene (*Amp*R)
Tetracycline resistance gene (*Tet*R)
*Eco*RI
*Xor*II
*Hind*III
*Bam*III
*Sal*I
*Pst*I
Plasmid pBR322

Figure 33.5
A restriction map of plasmid pBR322 indicating the positions of its antibiotic resistance genes and the sites of nucleotide sequences recognized by specific *restriction endonucleases*.

---

[1] See Chapter 7 in ***Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Microbiology*** for a discussion of plasmids.

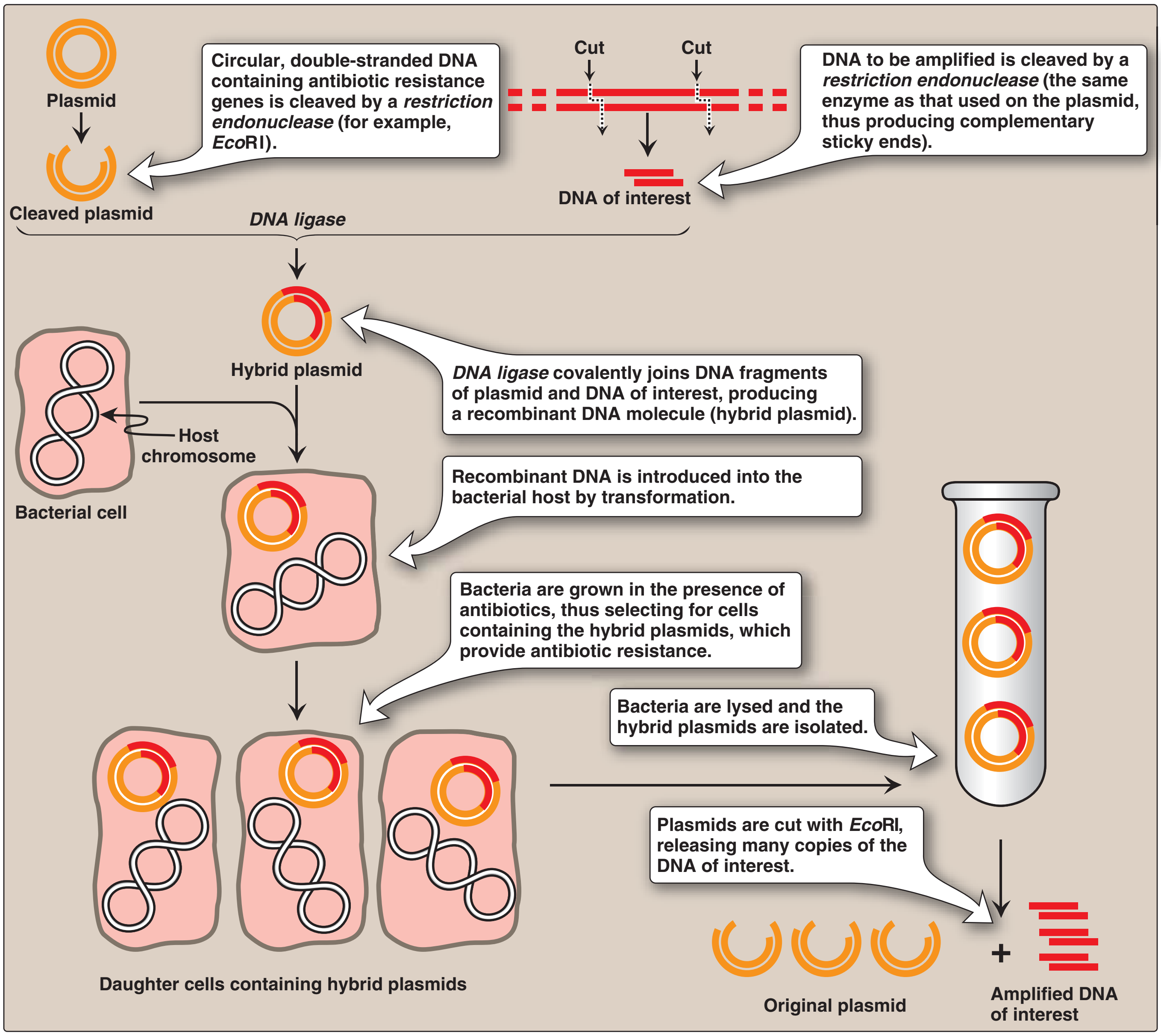

Plasmid
Circular, double-stranded DNA containing antibiotic resistance genes is cleaved by a *restriction endonuclease* (for example, *Eco*RI).
Cut
Cut
DNA to be amplified is cleaved by a *restriction endonuclease* (the same enzyme as that used on the plasmid, thus producing complementary sticky ends).
Cleaved plasmid
DNA of interest
DNA ligase
Hybrid plasmid
DNA ligase covalently joins DNA fragments of plasmid and DNA of interest, producing a recombinant DNA molecule (hybrid plasmid).
Host chromosome
Bacterial cell
Recombinant DNA is introduced into the bacterial host by transformation.
Bacteria are grown in the presence of antibiotics, thus selecting for cells containing the hybrid plasmids, which provide antibiotic resistance.
Bacteria are lysed and the hybrid plasmids are isolated.
Plasmids are cut with *Eco*RI, releasing many copies of the DNA of interest.
Daughter cells containing hybrid plasmids
+
Original plasmid
Amplified DNA of interest

Figure 33.6
Summary of gene cloning.

2. **Other vectors:** The development of improved vectors that can more efficiently accommodate larger DNA segments, or express the passenger genes in different cell types, has aided molecular genetics research. In addition to the prokaryotic plasmids described above, naturally occurring viruses that infect bacteria (bacteriophage λ, for example) or mammalian cells (retroviruses, for example), as well as artificial constructs such as cosmids and bacterial or yeast artificial chromosomes (BACs or YACs, respectively), are currently in wide use as cloning vectors. [Note: BACs and YACs can accept DNA inserts of 100-200 kilobases (kb) and 200-500 kb, respectively.]

B. DNA libraries

A DNA library is a collection of cloned restriction fragments of the DNA of an organism. Two kinds of libraries are commonly used: genomic libraries and complementary DNA (cDNA) libraries. Genomic libraries ideally contain a copy of every DNA nucleotide sequence in the genome. In contrast, cDNA libraries contain those DNA sequences that only appear as processed mRNA molecules, and these differ from one cell type to another. [Note: cDNA lacks introns and the control regions of the genes, whereas these are present in genomic DNA.]

1. **Genomic DNA libraries:** A genomic library is created by digestion of the total DNA of the organism with a *restriction endonuclease* and subsequent ligation to an appropriate vector. The recombinant DNA molecules replicate within host bacteria. The amplified DNA fragments thus represent the entire genome of the organism and are called a genomic library. Regardless of the restriction enzyme used, the chances are rather good that the gene of interest contains more than one restriction site recognized by that enzyme. If this is the case, and if the digestion is allowed to go to completion, the gene of interest is fragmented—that is, it is not contained in any one clone in the library. To avoid this usually undesirable result, a partial digestion is performed in which either the amount or the time of action of the enzyme is limited. This results in cleavage occurring at only a fraction of the restriction sites on any one DNA molecule, thus producing fragments of about 20 kb. Enzymes that cut very frequently (that is, those that recognize 4 bp sequences) are generally used for this purpose so that the result is an almost random collection of fragments. This ensures a high degree of probability that the gene of interest is contained, intact, in some fragment.

2. **cDNA libraries:** If a protein-coding gene of interest is expressed at a high level in a particular tissue, it is likely that the messenger RNA (mRNA) transcribed from that gene is also present at high concentrations in the cell. For example, reticulocyte mRNA is composed largely of molecules encoding the α-globin and β-globin chains of hemoglobin. This mRNA can be used as a template to make a complementary DNA (cDNA) molecule using the enzyme *reverse transcriptase* (Figure 33.7). [Note: mRNA is isolated from transfer RNA and ribosomal RNA by the presence of its polyA tail.] The resulting cDNA is thus a double-stranded copy of mRNA. cDNA can be amplified by cloning or by the polymerase chain reaction. It can be used as a probe to locate the gene that coded for the original mRNA (or fragments of the gene) in mixtures containing many unrelated DNA fragments. If the mRNA used as a template is a mixture of many different size species, the resulting cDNA is heterogeneous. These mixtures can be cloned to form a cDNA library. Because cDNA has no intervening sequences, it can be cloned into an expression vector for the synthesis of eukaryotic proteins by bacteria (Figure 33.8). These special plasmids contain a bacterial promoter for transcription of the

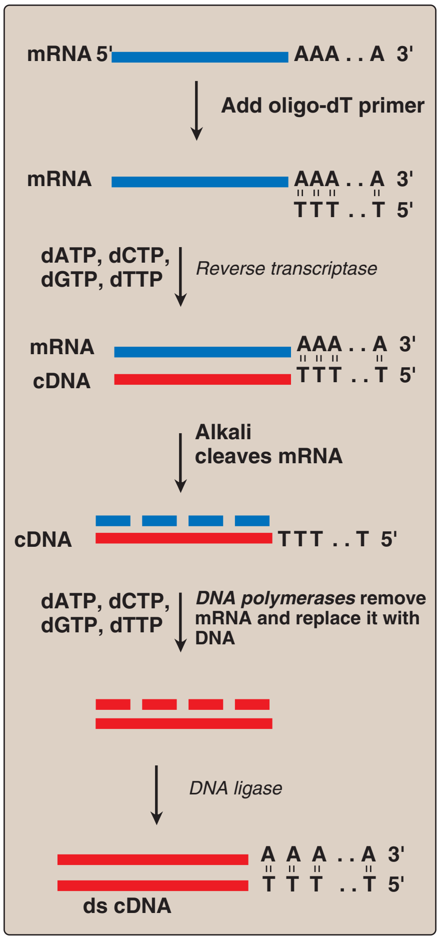


Figure 33.7
Synthesis of cDNA from mRNA using *reverse transcriptase*. Additional steps (not shown) are required to clone the cDNA.

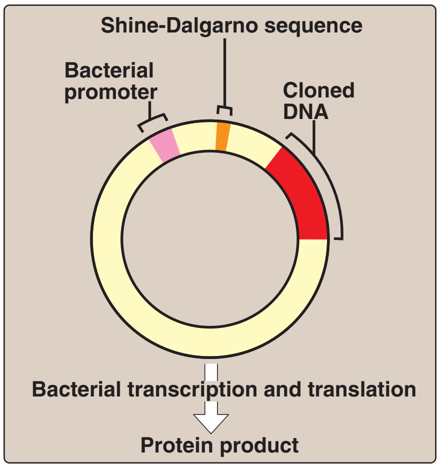


Figure 33.8
An expression vector.

cDNA, and a Shine-Dalgarno sequence (see p. 439) that allows the bacterial ribosome to initiate translation of the resulting mRNA molecule. [Note: Therapeutic human insulin is made in bacteria through this technology; however, the extensive co- and post-translational modifications (see p. 443) required for most other human proteins necessitates the use of eukaryotic hosts.]

C. Sequencing of cloned DNA fragments

The base sequence of DNA fragments that have been cloned can be determined. The original procedure for this purpose was the Sanger dideoxy method illustrated in Figure 33.9. The ssDNA to be sequenced is used as the template for DNA synthesis by *DNA polymerase*. A radiolabeled primer complementary to the 3'-end of the target DNA is added, along with the four deoxyribonucleoside triphosphates (dNTP). The sample is divided into four reaction tubes, and a small amount of one of the four dideoxyribonucleoside triphosphates (ddNTP) is added to each tube. Because it contains no 3'-hydroxyl group, incorporation of a ddNMP terminates elongation at that point. The products of this reaction, then, consist of a mixture of DNA strands of different lengths, each terminating at a specific base. Separation of the various DNA products by size using polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis, followed by autoradiography, yields a pattern of bands from which the DNA base sequence can be read. [Note: The shorter the fragment, the farther it travels on the gel, with the shortest fragment representing that which was made first, that is, the 5'-end.] The Human Genome Project used highly automated variations of this technique to determine the base sequence of the human genome.

IV. PROBES

Cleavage of large DNA molecules by restriction enzymes produces a bewildering array of fragments. How can the DNA sequence of interest be picked out of a mixture of thousands or even millions of irrelevant DNA fragments? The answer lies in the use of a probe—a short piece of ssDNA, labeled with a radioisotope, such as ^{32}P, or with a nonradioactive molecule, such as biotin. The sequence of a probe is complementary to a sequence in the DNA of interest, called the target DNA. Probes are used to identify which band on a gel or which clone in a library contains the target DNA, a process called screening.

A. Hybridization of a probe to DNA fragments

The utility of probes hinges on the phenomenon of hybridization (or annealing) in which a probe containing a complementary sequence binds a single-stranded sequence of a target DNA. ssDNA, produced by alkaline denaturation of dsDNA, is first bound to a solid support, such as a nitrocellulose membrane. The immobilized DNA strands are prevented from self-annealing, but are available for hybridization to an exogenous, radiolabeled, ssDNA probe. The extent of hybridization is measured by the retention of radioactivity on the membrane. Excess probe molecules that do not hybridize are removed by washing the filter.

B. Synthetic oligonucleotide probes

If the sequence of all or part of the target DNA is known, single-stranded oligonucleotide probes of 20–30 nucleotides can be synthesized that are complementary to a small region of the gene of interest. If the sequence of the gene is unknown, the amino acid sequence of the protein— the final gene product—may be used to construct a probe. Short, ssDNA sequences (15–30 nucleotides) are synthesized, using the genetic code as a guide. Because of the degeneracy of the genetic code, it is necessary to synthesize several oligonucleotides. [Note: Oligonucleotides can be used to detect single-base changes in the sequence to which they are complementary. In contrast, cDNA probes contain many thousands of bases, and their binding to a target DNA with a single-base change is unaffected.]

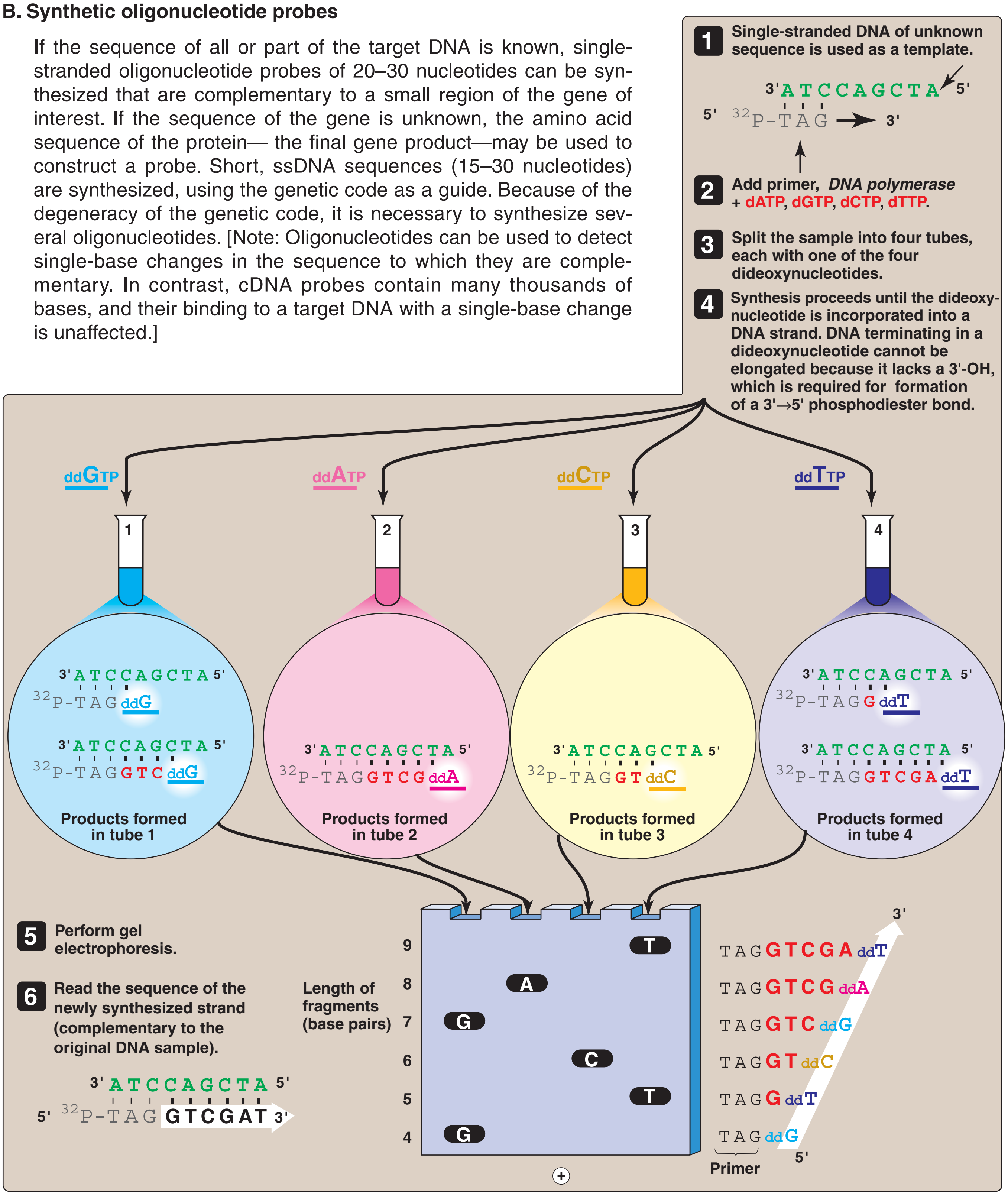

1 Single-stranded DNA of unknown sequence is used as a template.
3' A T C C A G C T A 5'
5' 32P-T A G 3'
2 Add primer, DNA polymerase + dATP, dGTP, dCTP, dTTP.
3 Split the sample into four tubes, each with one of the four dideoxynucleotides.
4 Synthesis proceeds until the dideoxynucleotide is incorporated into a DNA strand. DNA terminating in a dideoxynucleotide cannot be elongated because it lacks a 3'-OH, which is required for formation of a 3'→5' phosphodiester bond.
ddGTP
ddATP
ddCTP
ddTTP
1
2
3
4
3' A T C C A G C T A 5'
32P-T A G ddG
3' A T C C A G C T A 5'
32P-T A G G T C ddG
Products formed in tube 1
3' A T C C A G C T A 5'
32P-T A G G T C G ddA
Products formed in tube 2
3' A T C C A G C T A 5'
32P-T A G G T ddC
Products formed in tube 3
3' A T C C A G C T A 5'
32P-T A G G ddT
3' A T C C A G C T A 5'
32P-T A G G T C G A ddT
Products formed in tube 4
5 Perform gel electrophoresis.
6 Read the sequence of the newly synthesized strand (complementary to the original DNA sample).
3' A T C C A G C T A 5'
5' 32P-T A G G T C G A T 3'
Length of fragments (base pairs)
9
8
7
6
5
4
T
A
G
C
T
G
+
3'
T A G G T C G A ddT
T A G G T C G ddA
T A G G T C ddG
T A G G T ddC
T A G G ddT
T A G ddG
5'
Primer

Figure 33.9
DNA sequencing by the Sanger dideoxy method.

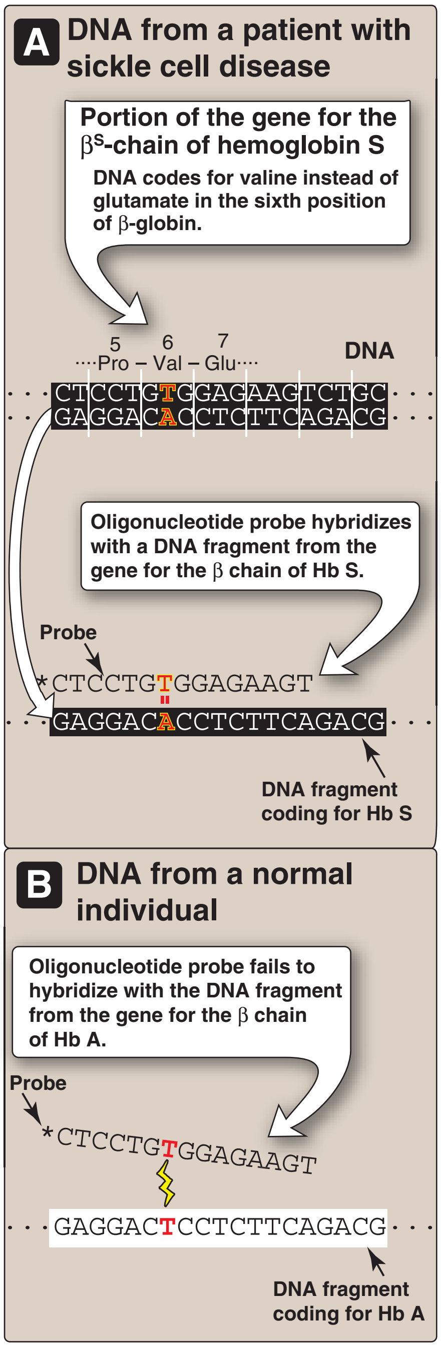

A
DNA from a patient with sickle cell disease
Portion of the gene for the βS-chain of hemoglobin S
DNA codes for valine instead of glutamate in the sixth position of β-globin.
5
6
7
····Pro – Val – Glu····
DNA
CTCCTGTGGAGAAGTCTGC
GAGGACACCTCTTCAGACG
Oligonucleotide probe hybridizes with a DNA fragment from the gene for the β chain of Hb S.
Probe
*CTCCTGTGGAGAAGT
GAGGACACCTCTTCAGACG
DNA fragment coding for Hb S
B
DNA from a normal individual
Oligonucleotide probe fails to hybridize with the DNA fragment from the gene for the β chain of Hb A.
Probe
*CTCCTGTGGAGAAGT
GAGGACTCCTCTTCAGACG
DNA fragment coding for Hb A

Figure 33.10
Allele-specific oligonucleotide probe detects hemoglobin (Hb) S allele. [Note: * indicates ^{32}P radiolabel.]

1. **Detecting the β^S-globin mutation:** Figure 33.10 shows how an allele-specific oligonucleotide (ASO) probe can be used to detect the presence of the sickle cell mutation in the β-globin gene. DNA, isolated from white blood cells and amplified, is denatured and applied to a filter. A radiolabeled oligonucleotide probe, complementary to the point mutation (GAG → GTG, glutamate → valine) at position six in patients with the β^S gene, is applied to the filter. DNA isolated from a heterozygous individual (sickle cell trait) or a homozygous patient (sickle cell disease) contains a sequence that is complementary to the probe; thus, a double-stranded hybrid forms that can be detected by electrophoresis. In contrast, DNA obtained from normal individuals is not complementary at this positon and, therefore, does not form a hybrid (see Figure 33.10). Use of a pair of such ASO probes (one specific for the normal allele and one specific for the mutant allele) allows all three possible genotypes—homozygous normal, heterozygous, and homozygous mutant (Figure 33.11)—to be distinguished. [Note: ASO probes are useful only if the mutation and its location are known.]

C. Biotinylated probes

Because the disposal of radioactive waste is becoming increasingly expensive, nonradioactive probes have been developed. One of the most successful is based on the vitamin biotin (see p. 381), which can be chemically coupled to the nucleotides used to synthesize the probe. Biotin was chosen because it binds very tenaciously to avidin—a readily available protein contained in chicken egg whites. Avidin can be attached to a fluorescent dye detectable optically with great sensitivity. Thus, a DNA fragment (displayed, for example, by gel electrophoresis) that hybridizes with the biotinylated probe can be made visible by immersing the gel in a solution of dye-coupled avidin. After washing away the excess avidin, the DNA fragment that binds the probe is fluorescent. [Note: Fluorescent probes can allow detection and localization of DNA (or mRNA) sequences in cell or tissue preparations, a process called in situ hybridization.]

D. Antibodies

Sometimes no amino acid sequence information is available to guide the synthesis of a probe for direct detection of the DNA of interest. In this case, a gene can be identified indirectly by cloning cDNA in an expression vector that allows the cloned cDNA to be transcribed and translated. A labeled antibody is used to identify which bacterial colony produces the protein and, therefore, contains the cDNA of interest. [Note: A library created using expression vectors is called an expression library.]

Recombinant DNA technology has allowed the production, in nonhuman systems, of human enzymes that have been modified for appropriate targeting to lysosomes. Such recombinant enzyme replacement therapy (ERT) is used in the treatment of lysosomal storage diseases such as Pompe, Gaucher, and Hurler.

V. SOUTHERN BLOTTING

Southern blotting is a technique that can detect mutations in DNA. It combines the use of restriction enzymes, electrophoresis, and DNA probes.

A. Experimental procedure

This method, named after its inventor, Edward Southern, involves the following steps (Figure 33.12). First, DNA is extracted from cells, for example, a patient's leukocytes. Second, the DNA is cleaved into many fragments using a restriction enzyme. Third, the resulting fragments are separated on the basis of size by electrophoresis. [Note: As the large fragments move more slowly than the smaller ones, the lengths of the fragments, usually expressed as the number of base pairs, can be calculated from comparison of the position of the band relative to standard fragments of known size.] The DNA fragments in the gel are denatured and transferred (blotted) to a nitrocellulose membrane for analysis. If the original DNA represents the individual's entire genome, the enzymic digest contains a million or more fragments. The gene of interest is on only one (or a few if the gene itself was fragmented) of these pieces of DNA. If all the DNA segments were visualized by a nonspecific technique, they would appear as an unresolved blur of overlapping bands. To avoid this, the last step in Southern blotting uses a probe to identify the DNA fragments of interest. The patterns observed on Southern blot analysis depend both on the specific *restriction endonuclease* and on the probe used to visualize the restriction fragments. [Note: Variants of the Southern blot have been facetiously named "Northern" (electrophoresis of mRNA followed by hybridization with a specific probe), and "Western" (electrophoresis of protein followed by detection with an antibody directed against the protein of interest), neither of which relates to anyone's name or to points of the compass.]

B. Detection of mutations

Southern blotting can detect DNA mutations such as the insertion or deletion of nucleotides. It can also detect point mutations (replacement of one nucleotide by another, see p. 433) that cause the loss or gain of restriction enzyme cleavage sites. Such mutations cause the pattern of bands to differ from those seen with a normal gene. Longer fragments are generated if a restriction site is lost. For example, in Figure 33.12, Person 2 lacks a restriction site present in Person 1. Alternatively, the point mutation may create a new cleavage site with the production of shorter fragments. [Note: Most sequence differences at restriction sites represent normal variations present in the DNA.]

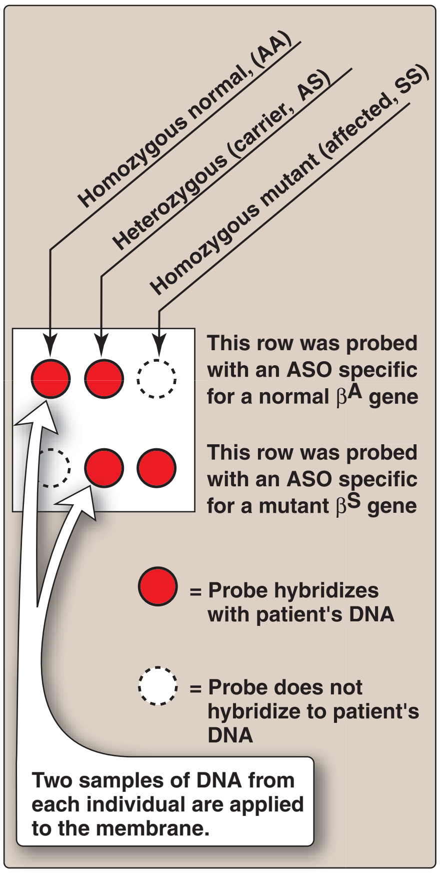
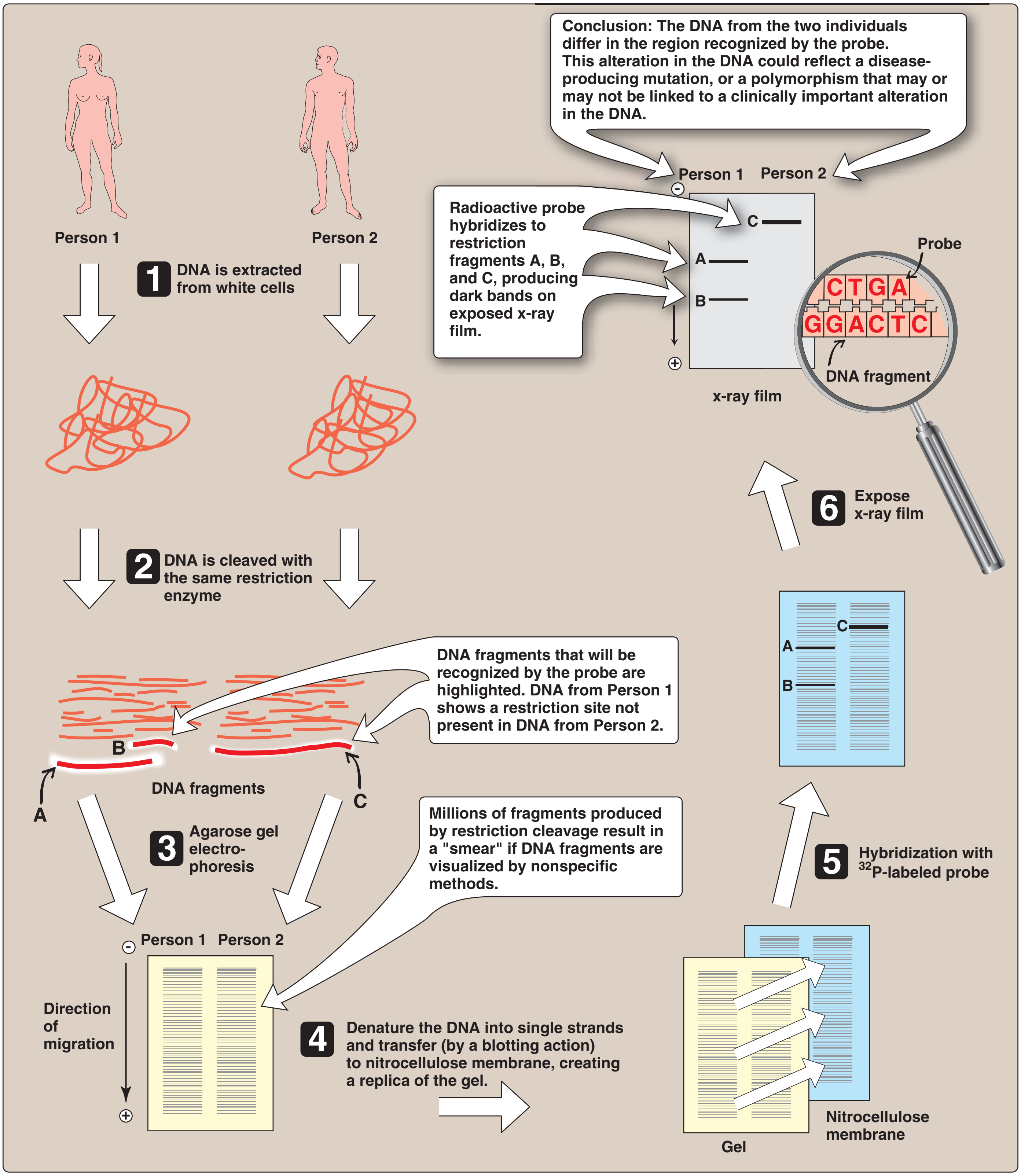

Homozygous normal, (AA)
Heterozygous (carrier, AS)
Homozygous mutant (affected, SS)
This row was probed with an ASO specific for a normal β^A gene
This row was probed with an ASO specific for a mutant β^S gene
● = Probe hybridizes with patient's DNA
○ = Probe does not hybridize to patient's DNA
Two samples of DNA from each individual are applied to the membrane.

Figure 33.11
Allele-specific oligonucleotide (ASO) probes used to detect the sickle cell mutation and differentiate between sickle cell trait and disease.

VI. RESTRICTION FRAGMENT LENGTH POLYMORPHISM

Genome variations are differences in the sequence of DNA among individuals. It has been estimated that the genomes of nonrelated people differ at about one in 1,200 DNA bases, or about 0.1% of the genome. These genome variations include both mutations and polymorphisms. A mutation refers to an infrequent, but potentially harmful, genome varia-



Conclusion: The DNA from the two individuals differ in the region recognized by the probe. This alteration in the DNA could reflect a disease-producing mutation, or a polymorphism that may or may not be linked to a clinically important alteration in the DNA.

1 DNA is extracted from white cells

2 DNA is cleaved with the same restriction enzyme

DNA fragments that will be recognized by the probe are highlighted. DNA from Person 1 shows a restriction site not present in DNA from Person 2.

3 Agarose gel electrophoresis

Millions of fragments produced by restriction cleavage result in a "smear" if DNA fragments are visualized by nonspecific methods.

4 Denature the DNA into single strands and transfer (by a blotting action) to nitrocellulose membrane, creating a replica of the gel.

5 Hybridization with ^{32}P-labeled probe

6 Expose x-ray film

Radioactive probe hybridizes to restriction fragments A, B, and C, producing dark bands on exposed x-ray film.

Person 1
Person 2
B
A
C
DNA fragments
Person 1
Person 2
Direction of migration
-
+
Gel
Nitrocellulose membrane
A
B
C
Person 1
Person 2
-
+
C
A
B
x-ray film
Probe
CTGA
GGACTC
DNA fragment

Figure 33.12
Southern blotting procedure.

tion that is associated with a specific human disease. In contrast, a polymorphism is a clinically harmless DNA variation that does not affect the phenotype. It is traditionally defined as a sequence variation at a given locus (allele) in more than 1% of a population. Polymorphisms primarily occur in regions of the genome that do not encode proteins, that is, in introns and intergenic regions. [Note: Less than 2% of the human genome actually encodes proteins.] A restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP) is a genetic variant that can be observed by cleaving the DNA into fragments (restriction fragments) with a restriction enzyme. The length of the restriction fragments is altered if the genetic variant alters the DNA so as to create or abolish a site of *restriction endonuclease* cleavage (a restriction site). RFLP can be used to detect human genetic variations, for example, in prospective parents or in fetal tissue.

A. DNA variations resulting in RFLP

Two types of DNA variation commonly result in RFLP: single-base changes in the nucleotide sequence, and tandem repeats of DNA sequences.

1. **Single base changes in DNA:** About 90% of human genome variation comes in the form of single-nucleotide polymorphisms, (SNPs, pronounced “snips”), that is, variations that involve just one base (Figure 33.13). The substitution of one nucleotide at a restriction site can render the site unrecognizable by a particular *restriction endonuclease*. A new restriction site can also be created by the same mechanism. In either case, cleavage with an *endonuclease* results in fragments of lengths differing from the normal, which can be detected by DNA hybridization (see Figure 33.12). [Note: The altered restriction site can be either at the site of a disease-causing mutation (rare) or at a site some distance from the mutation, see p. 477.]

2. **Tandem repeats:** Alternatively, polymorphism in chromosomal DNA can arise from the presence of a variable number of tandem repeats (VNTR, see Figure 33.14). These are short sequences of DNA at scattered locations in the genome, repeated in tandem (one after another). The number of these repeat units varies from person to person, but is unique for any given individual and, therefore, serves as a molecular fingerprint. Cleavage by restriction enzymes yields fragments that vary in length depending on how many repeated segments are contained in the fragment. Variation in the number of tandem repeats can lead to polymorphisms (Figure 33.14). Many different VNTR loci have been identified, and are extremely useful for DNA fingerprint analysis, such as in forensic and paternity identity cases. It is important to emphasize that these polymorphisms, whether SNP or VNTR, are simply markers, which, in most cases, have no known effect on the structure, function, or rate of production of any particular protein. [Note: Microsatellites are a type of VNTR.]

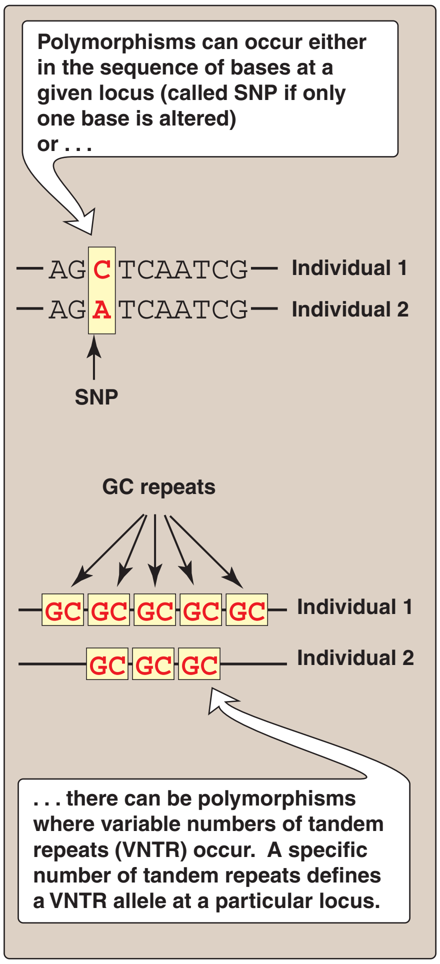
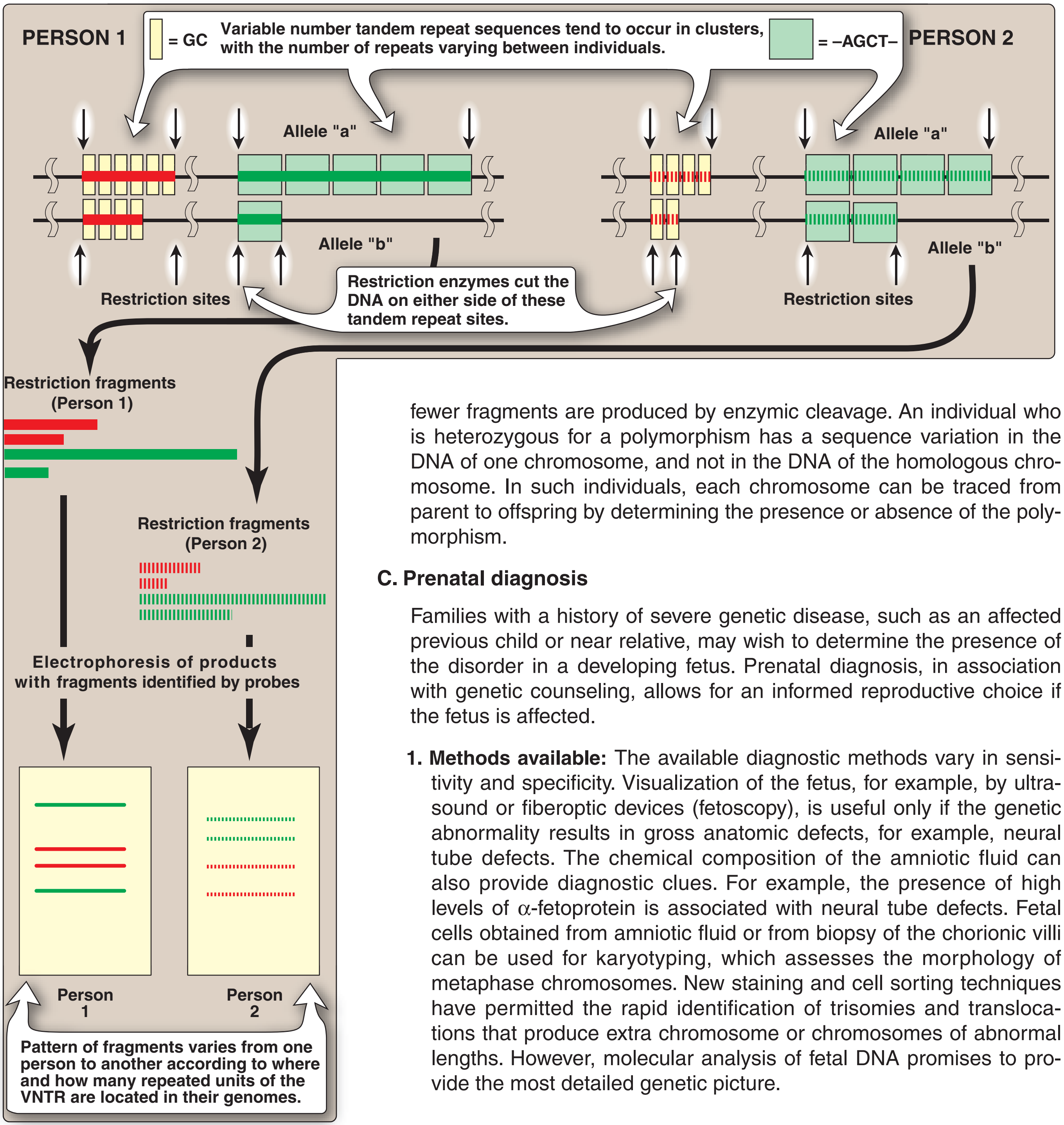

Polymorphisms can occur either in the sequence of bases at a given locus (called SNP if only one base is altered) or . . .
—AG C TCAATCG— Individual 1
—AG A TCAATCG— Individual 2
SNP
GC repeats
GC GC GC GC GC Individual 1
GC GC GC Individual 2
. . . there can be polymorphisms where variable numbers of tandem repeats (VNTR) occur. A specific number of tandem repeats defines a VNTR allele at a particular locus.

Figure 33.13
Common forms of genetic polymorphism. SNP = single-nucleotide polymorphism.

B. Tracing chromosomes from parent to offspring

If the DNA of an individual has gained a restriction site by base substitution, then enzymic cleavage yields at least one additional fragment. Conversely, if a mutation results in loss of a restriction site,


PERSON 1
= GC
= –AGCT–
PERSON 2
Allele "a"
Allele "b"
Allele "a"
Allele "b"
Restriction sites
Restriction sites
Restriction fragments (Person 1)
Restriction fragments (Person 2)
Electrophoresis of products with fragments identified by probes
Person 1
Person 2

Variable number tandem repeat sequences tend to occur in clusters, with the number of repeats varying between individuals.

Restriction enzymes cut the DNA on either side of these tandem repeat sites.

Pattern of fragments varies from one person to another according to where and how many repeated units of the VNTR are located in their genomes.

Figure 33.14
Restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP) of variable number tandem repeats (VNTR). For each person, a pair of homologous chromosomes is shown.

fewer fragments are produced by enzymic cleavage. An individual who is heterozygous for a polymorphism has a sequence variation in the DNA of one chromosome, and not in the DNA of the homologous chromosome. In such individuals, each chromosome can be traced from parent to offspring by determining the presence or absence of the polymorphism.

C. Prenatal diagnosis

Families with a history of severe genetic disease, such as an affected previous child or near relative, may wish to determine the presence of the disorder in a developing fetus. Prenatal diagnosis, in association with genetic counseling, allows for an informed reproductive choice if the fetus is affected.

1. **Methods available:** The available diagnostic methods vary in sensitivity and specificity. Visualization of the fetus, for example, by ultrasound or fiberoptic devices (fetoscopy), is useful only if the genetic abnormality results in gross anatomic defects, for example, neural tube defects. The chemical composition of the amniotic fluid can also provide diagnostic clues. For example, the presence of high levels of α-fetoprotein is associated with neural tube defects. Fetal cells obtained from amniotic fluid or from biopsy of the chorionic villi can be used for karyotyping, which assesses the morphology of metaphase chromosomes. New staining and cell sorting techniques have permitted the rapid identification of trisomies and translocations that produce extra chromosome or chromosomes of abnormal lengths. However, molecular analysis of fetal DNA promises to provide the most detailed genetic picture.

2. **Sources of DNA:** DNA may be obtained from white blood cells, amniotic fluid, or chorionic villi (Figure 33.15). For amniotic fluid, in the past, it was necessary to culture the cells in order to have sufficient DNA for analysis. This took 2–3 weeks to grow a sufficient number of cells. The development of the polymerase chain reaction (see below) has dramatically shortened the time needed for a DNA analysis.

3. Direct diagnosis of sickle cell anemia using RFLP: The genetic disorders of hemoglobin are the most common genetic diseases in humans. In the case of sickle cell anemia (Figure 33.16), the mutation that gives rise to the disease is actually one and the same as the mutation that gives rise to the polymorphism. Direct detection by RFLP of diseases that result from point mutations is, however, limited to only a few genetic diseases.

a. Early efforts to diagnose sickle cell anemia: Prenatal diagnosis of hemoglobinopathies has in the past involved the determination of the amount and kinds of hemoglobin (Hb) synthesized in red cells obtained from fetal blood. For example, the presence of Hb S in hemolysates indicated sickle cell anemia. However, the invasive procedures to obtain fetal blood have a high mortality rate (approximately 5%), and diagnosis cannot be carried out until late in the second trimester of pregnancy when Hb S begins to be produced.

b. RFLP analysis: Sickle cell anemia is an example of a genetic disease caused by a point mutation (see p. 35). The sequence altered by the mutation abolishes the recognition site of the *restriction endonuclease Mst*II that recognizes the nucleotide sequence CCTNAGG (where N is any nucleotide, see Figure 33.16). Thus, the A-to-T mutation within a codon of the β^S-globin gene eliminates a cleavage site for the enzyme. Normal DNA digested with *Mst*II yields a 1.15-kb fragment, whereas a 1.35-kb fragment is generated from the β^S gene as a result of the loss of one *Mst*II cleavage site. Diagnostic techniques for analyzing fetal DNA (from amniotic cells or chorionic villus sampling), rather than fetal blood, have proved valuable because they provide safe, early detection of sickle cell anemia, as well as other genetic diseases. [Note: Genetic disorders caused by the insertion or deletion of nucleotides between two restriction sites, rather than by the creation or loss of cleavage sites, will also display RFLP.]

4. Indirect, prenatal diagnosis of phenylketonuria using RFLP: The gene for *phenylalanine hydroxylase* (*PAH*), deficient in phenylketonuria (PKU, see p. 270), is located on chromosome 12. It spans about 90 kb of genomic DNA, and contains 13 exons separated by introns (Figure 33.17; see p. 426 for a description of exons and introns). Mutations in *PAH* usually do not directly affect any *restriction endonuclease* recognition site. To establish a diagnostic protocol for this disease, one has to analyze DNA of family members of the affected individual. The goal is to identify genetic markers (RFLP) that are tightly linked to the disease trait. Once these markers are identified, RFLP analysis can be used to carry out prenatal diagnosis.

a. Identification of the gene: One can determine the presence of the mutant gene by identifying the polymorphism marker if two conditions are satisfied. First, if the polymorphism is closely linked to a disease-producing mutation, the defective gene can be traced by detection of the RFLP. For example, if one exam-

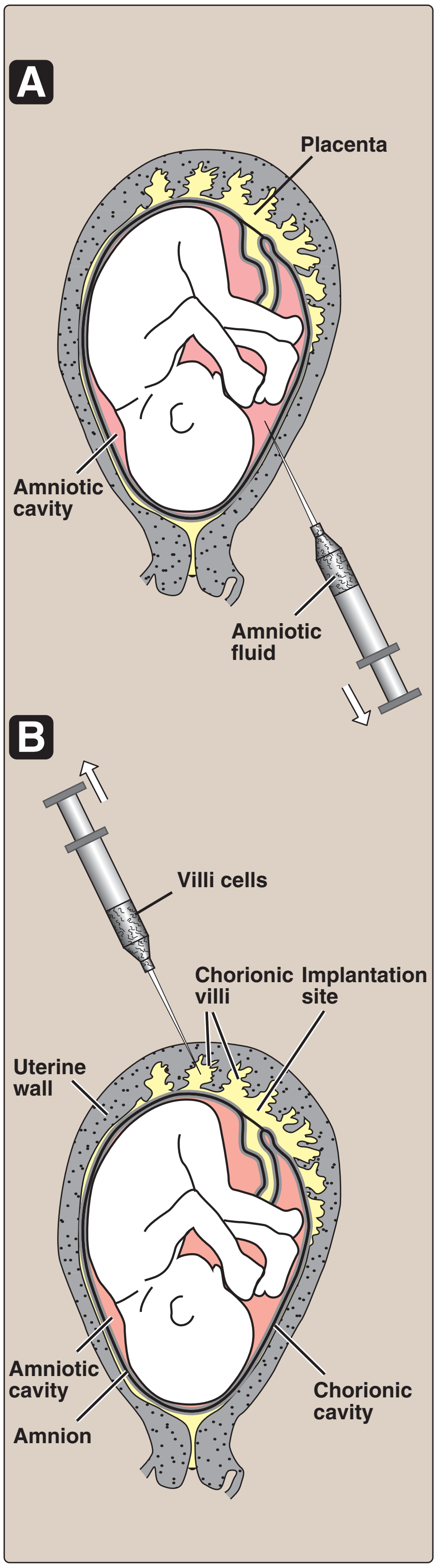
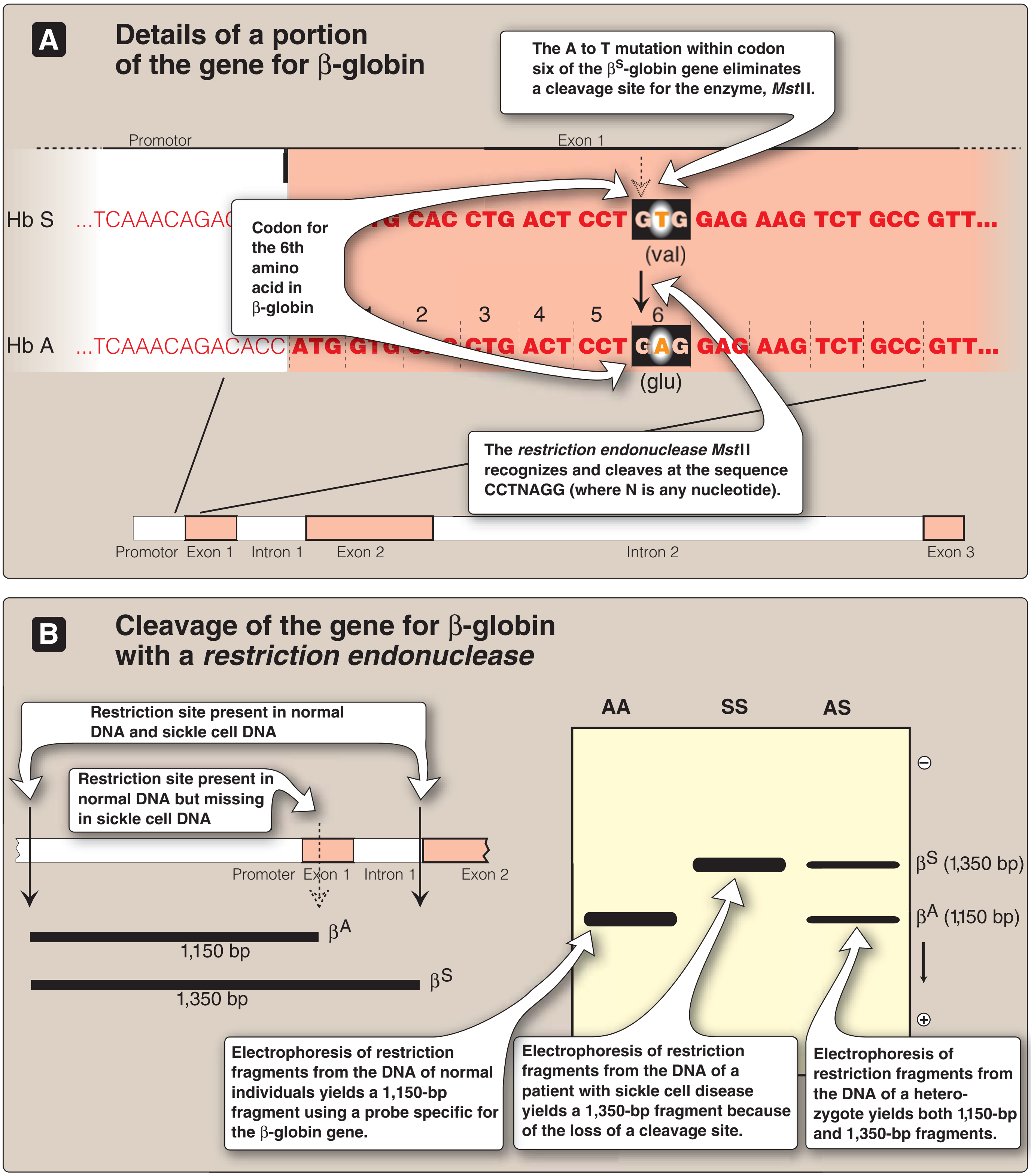


Figure 33.15
Sampling of fetal cells. A. Amniotic fluid. B. Chorionic villus.



A Details of a portion of the gene for β-globin

The A to T mutation within codon six of the β^S-globin gene eliminates a cleavage site for the enzyme, *Mst*II.

Codon for the 6th amino acid in β-globin

The *restriction endonuclease Mst*II recognizes and cleaves at the sequence CCTNAGG (where N is any nucleotide).

B Cleavage of the gene for β-globin with a *restriction endonuclease*

Restriction site present in normal DNA and sickle cell DNA

Restriction site present in normal DNA but missing in sickle cell DNA

Electrophoresis of restriction fragments from the DNA of normal individuals yields a 1,150-bp fragment using a probe specific for the β-globin gene.

Electrophoresis of restriction fragments from the DNA of a patient with sickle cell disease yields a 1,350-bp fragment because of the loss of a cleavage site.

Electrophoresis of restriction fragments from the DNA of a heterozygote yields both 1,150-bp and 1,350-bp fragments.

A
Promotor
Exon 1
Hb S
...TCAAACAGAC
G CAC CTG ACT CCT GTG GAG AAG TCT GCC GTT...
(val)
1
2
3
4
5
6
Hb A
...TCAAACAGACACC ATG GTG
CTG ACT CCT GAG GAG AAG TCT GCC GTT...
(glu)
Promotor
Exon 1
Intron 1
Exon 2
Intron 2
Exon 3
B
AA
SS
AS
⊖
⊕
β^S (1,350 bp)
β^A (1,150 bp)
Promoter
Exon 1
Intron 1
Exon 2
β^A
1,150 bp
β^S
1,350 bp

Figure 33.16
Detection of β^S-globin mutation. bp = base pair; Hb = hemoglobin

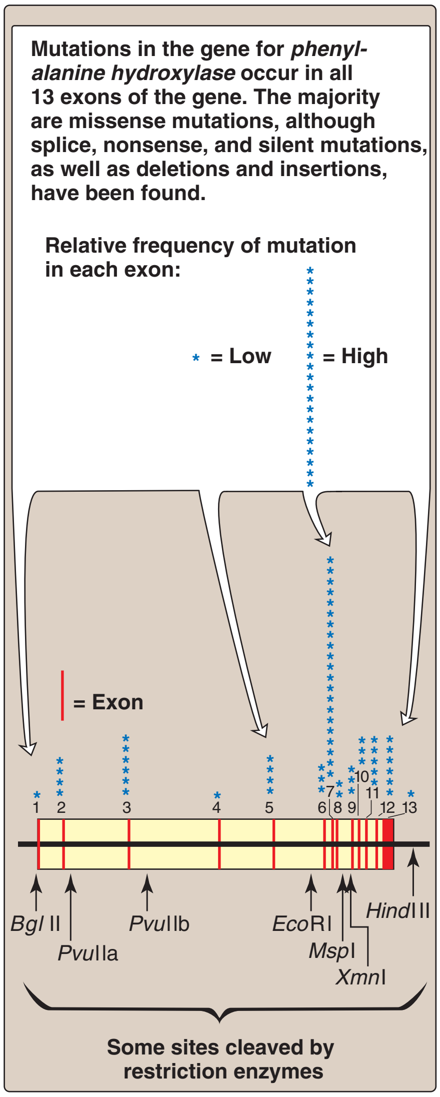
ines, by restriction enzyme cleavage and Southern blotting, the DNA from a family carrying a disease-producing gene, it is sometimes possible to find an RFLP that is consistently associated with that gene (that is, they show close linkage and are coinherited). It is then possible to trace the inheritance of the disease-producing DNA within a family without knowledge of the nature of the genetic defect or its precise location in the genome. [Note: The polymorphism may be known from the study of other families with the disorder, or may be discovered to be unique in the family under investigation.] Second, for autosomal recessive disorders, the presence of an affected individual in the family would aid in the diagnosis. This individual would have the mutation present on both chromosomes, allowing identification of the RFLP associated with the genetic disorder.

b. RFLP analysis: The presence of abnormal genes for *PAH* can be shown using DNA polymorphisms as markers to distinguish between normal and mutant genes. For example, Figure 33.18 shows a typical pattern obtained when DNA from the white blood cells of a family is cleaved with an appropriate restriction enzyme and subjected to electrophoresis. The vertical arrows represent the cleavage sites for the restriction enzyme used. The presence of a polymorphic site (see p. 473 for a discussion of polymorphisms) creates fragment "b" in the autoradiogram (after hybridization with a labeled *PAH*-cDNA probe), whereas the absence of this site yields only fragment "a." Note that Subject II-2 demonstrates that the polymorphism, as shown by the presence of fragment "b," is associated with the mutant gene. Therefore, in this particular family, the appearance of fragment "b" corresponds to the presence of a polymorphic site that tags the abnormal gene for *PAH*. The absence of fragment "b" corresponds to having only the normal gene. In Figure 33.18, examination of fetal DNA shows that the fetus inherited two abnormal genes from its parents and, therefore, has PKU.

c. Value of screening: DNA-based screening is useful not only in determining if an unborn fetus is affected, but also in detecting carriers of the mutated gene. PKU, like many inborn errors of amino acid metabolism, is inherited as an autosomal recessive trait. Identification of heterozygotes can aid in future family planning.

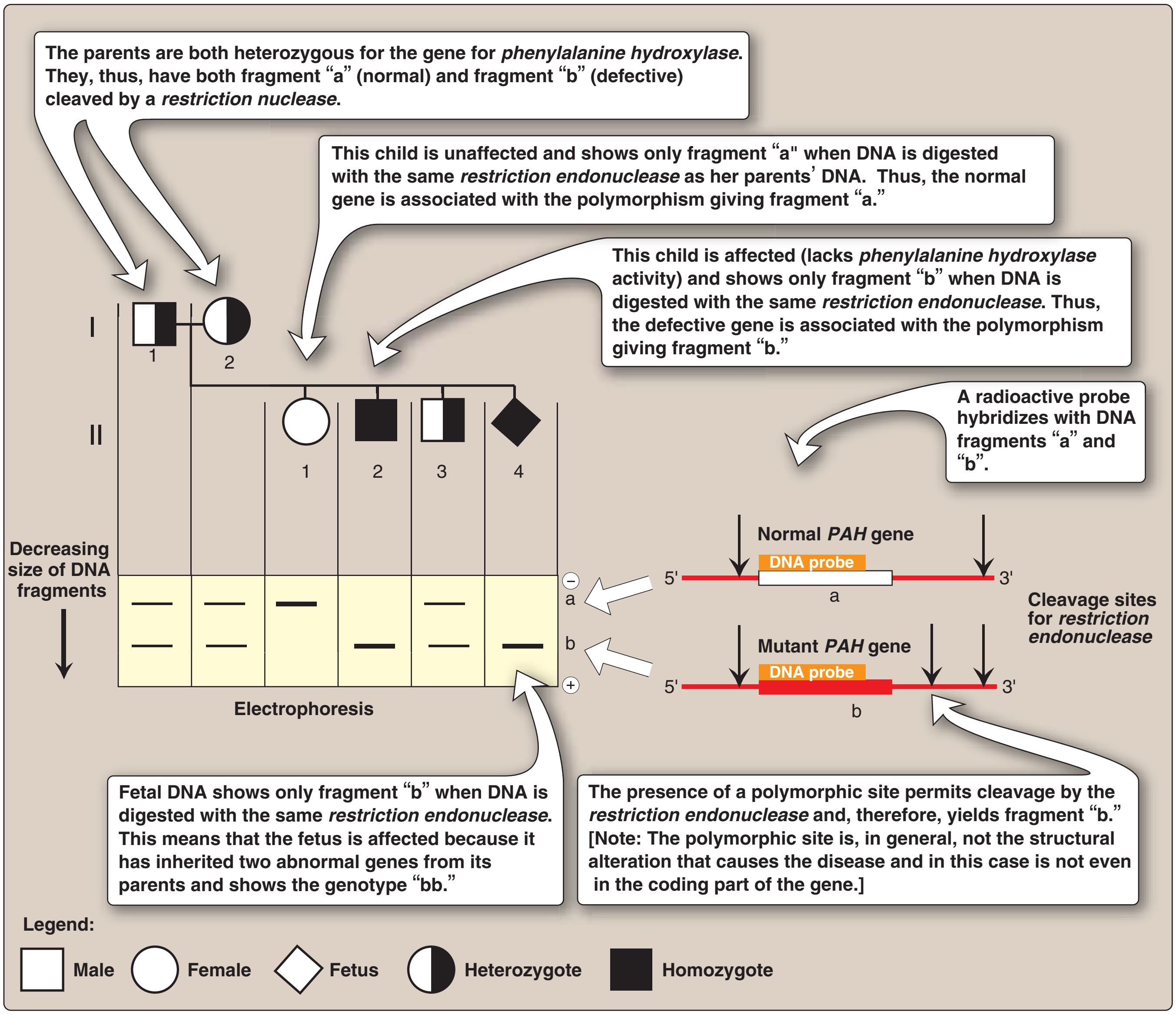
VII. POLYMERASE CHAIN REACTION

The polymerase chain reaction (PCR) is a test tube method for amplifying a selected DNA sequence that does not rely on the biologic cloning method described on p. 467. PCR permits the synthesis of millions of copies of a specific nucleotide sequence in a few hours. It can amplify the sequence, even when the targeted sequence makes up less than one part in a million of the total initial sample. The method can be used to amplify DNA sequences from any source—bacterial, viral, plant, or animal. The steps in PCR are summarized in Figures 33.19 and 33.20.



Mutations in the gene for *phenylalanine hydroxylase* occur in all 13 exons of the gene. The majority are missense mutations, although splice, nonsense, and silent mutations, as well as deletions and insertions, have been found.

Figure 33.17
The gene for *phenylalanine hydroxylase* showing 13 exons, restriction sites, and some of the mutations resulting in phenylketonuria.



The parents are both heterozygous for the gene for *phenylalanine hydroxylase*. They, thus, have both fragment “a” (normal) and fragment “b” (defective) cleaved by a *restriction nuclease*.

This child is unaffected and shows only fragment “a" when DNA is digested with the same *restriction endonuclease* as her parents’ DNA. Thus, the normal gene is associated with the polymorphism giving fragment “a.”

This child is affected (lacks *phenylalanine hydroxylase* activity) and shows only fragment “b” when DNA is digested with the same *restriction endonuclease*. Thus, the defective gene is associated with the polymorphism giving fragment “b.”

A radioactive probe hybridizes with DNA fragments “a” and “b”.

Fetal DNA shows only fragment “b” when DNA is digested with the same *restriction endonuclease*. This means that the fetus is affected because it has inherited two abnormal genes from its parents and shows the genotype “bb.”

The presence of a polymorphic site permits cleavage by the *restriction endonuclease* and, therefore, yields fragment “b.” [Note: The polymorphic site is, in general, not the structural alteration that causes the disease and in this case is not even in the coding part of the gene.]

Figure 33.18
Analysis of restriction fragment length polymorphism in a family with a child affected by phenylketonuria. The molecular defect in the gene for *phenylalanine hydroxylase* (*PAH*) in the family is not known. The family wanted to know if the current pregnancy would be affected by phenylketonuria.

A. Steps of a PCR

PCR uses *DNA polymerase* to repetitively amplify targeted portions of DNA. Each cycle of amplification doubles the amount of DNA in the sample, leading to an exponential increase in DNA with repeated cycles of amplification. The amplified DNA sequence can then be analyzed by gel electrophoresis, Southern blotting, or direct sequence determination.

1. **Primer construction:** It is not necessary to know the nucleotide sequence of the target DNA in the PCR method. However, it is necessary to know the nucleotide sequence of short segments on

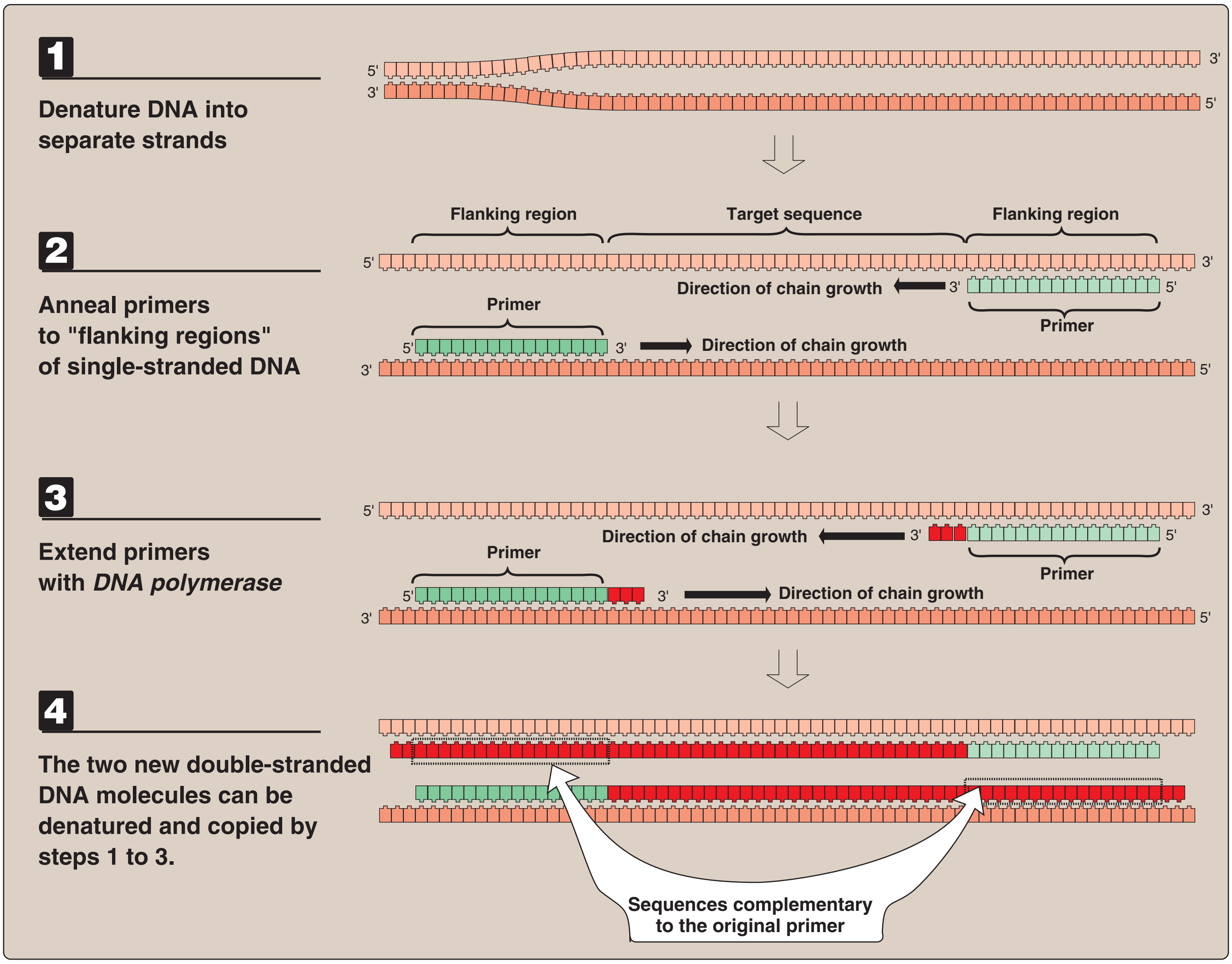

1
Denature DNA into separate strands
5'
3'
3'
5'
2
Anneal primers to "flanking regions" of single-stranded DNA
Flanking region
Target sequence
Flanking region
Direction of chain growth
Primer
Primer
Direction of chain growth
3
Extend primers with *DNA polymerase*
Direction of chain growth
Primer
Primer
Direction of chain growth
4
The two new double-stranded DNA molecules can be denatured and copied by steps 1 to 3.
Sequences complementary to the original primer

Figure 33.19
Steps in one cycle of the polymerase chain reaction.

each side of the target DNA. These stretches, called flanking sequences, bracket the DNA sequence of interest. The nucleotide sequences of the flanking regions are used to construct two, single-stranded oligonucleotides, usually 20–35 nucleotides long, which are complementary to the respective flanking sequences. The 3'-hydroxyl end of each oligonucleotide points toward the target sequence (see Figure 33.19). These synthetic oligonucleotides function as primers in PCR reactions.

2. Denature the DNA: The DNA to be amplified is heated to separate the double-stranded target DNA into single strands.

3. Annealing of primers to ssDNA: The separated strands are cooled and allowed to anneal to the two primers (one for each strand).

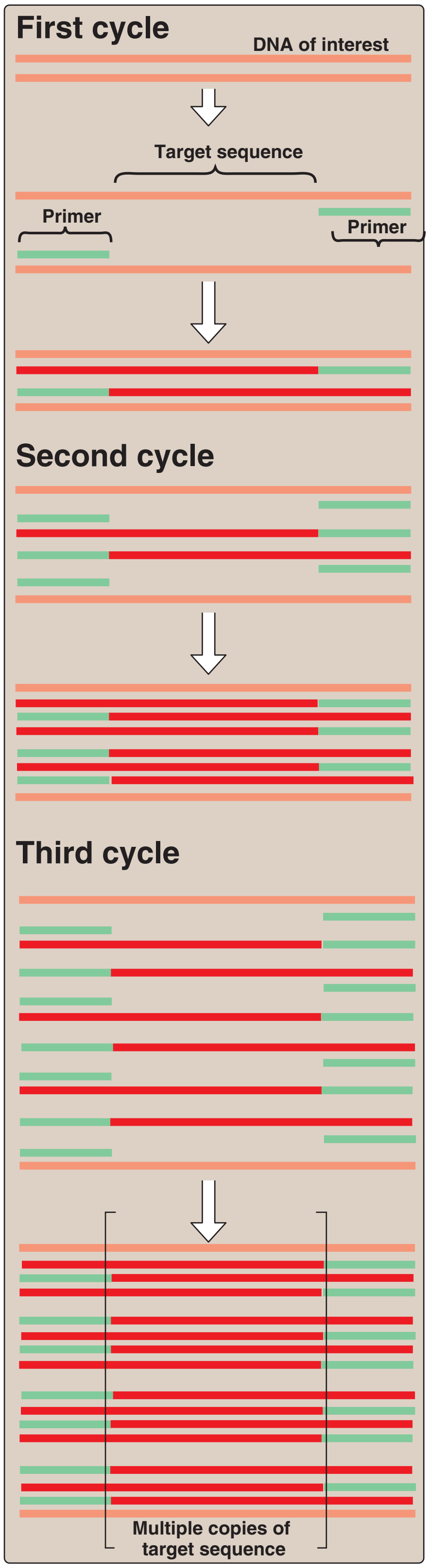


Figure 33.20
Multiple cycles of polymerase chain reaction.

4. **Chain extension:** *DNA polymerase* and deoxyribonucleoside triphosphates (in excess) are added to the mixture to initiate the synthesis of two new strands complementary to the original DNA strands. *DNA polymerase* adds nucleotides to the 3'-hydroxyl end of the primer, and strand growth extends across the target DNA, making complementary copies of the target. [Note: PCR products can be several thousand base pairs long.] At the completion of one cycle of replication, the reaction mixture is heated again to separate the strands (of which there are now four). Each strand binds a complementary primer, and the cycle of chain extension is repeated. By using a heat-stable *DNA polymerase* (for example, *Taq polymerase* from the bacterium, Thermus aquaticus that normally lives at high temperatures), the *polymerase* is not denatured and, therefore, does not have to be added at each successive cycle. Typically 20–30 cycles are run during this process, amplifying the DNA by a million-fold (2^{20}) to a billion-fold (2^{30}). [Note: Each extension product includes a sequence at its 5'-end that is complementary to the primer (see Figure 33.19). Thus, each newly synthesized strand can act as a template for the successive cycles (see Figure 33.20). This leads to an exponential increase in the amount of target DNA with each cycle hence the name "polymerase chain reaction."] Probes can be made during PCR by adding labeled nucleotides to the last few cycles.

B. Advantages of PCR

The major advantages of PCR over cloning as a mechanism for amplifying a specific DNA sequence are sensitivity and speed. DNA sequences present in only trace amounts can be amplified to become the predominant sequence. PCR is so sensitive that DNA sequences present in an individual cell can be amplified and studied. Isolating and amplifying a specific DNA sequence by PCR is faster and less technically difficult than traditional cloning methods using recombinant DNA techniques.

C. Applications

PCR has become a very common tool for a large number of applications. These include:

1. **Comparison of a normal cloned gene with an uncloned mutant form of the gene:** PCR allows the synthesis of mutant DNA in sufficient quantities for a sequencing protocol without laboriously cloning the altered DNA.

2. **Detection of low-abundance nucleic acid sequences:** For example, viruses that have a long latency period, such as human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), are difficult to detect at the early stage of infection using conventional methods. PCR offers a rapid and sensitive method for detecting viral DNA sequences even when only a small proportion of cells is harboring the virus.

3. **Forensic analysis of DNA samples:** DNA fingerprinting by means of PCR has revolutionized the analysis of evidence from crime scenes. DNA isolated from a single human hair, a tiny spot of

blood, or a sample of semen is sufficient to determine whether the sample comes from a specific individual. The DNA markers analyzed for such fingerprinting are most commonly short tandem repeat polymorphisms. These are very similar to the VNTRs described previously (see p. 475), but are smaller in size. [Note: Verification of paternity uses the same techniques.]

4. **Prenatal diagnosis and carrier detection of cystic fibrosis:** Cystic fibrosis is an autosomal recessive genetic disease resulting from mutations in the gene for the cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) protein. The most common mutation is a three-base deletion that results in the loss of a phenylalanine residue from the CFTR protein (see p. 434). Because the mutant allele is three bases shorter than the normal allele, it is possible to distinguish them from each other by the size of the PCR products obtained by amplifying that portion of the DNA. Figure 33.21 illustrates how the results of such a PCR test can distinguish between homozygous normal, heterozygous (carriers), and homozygous mutant (affected) individuals.

PCR can generate 100 billion identical copies of a specific DNA sequence in an afternoon, using a highly automated system.

VIII. ANALYSIS OF GENE EXPRESSION

The tools of biotechnology not only allow the study of gene structure, but also provide ways of analyzing the products of gene expression—mRNA and proteins.

A. Determination of mRNA levels

Messenger RNA levels are usually determined by the hybridization of labeled probes to either mRNA itself or to cDNA produced from mRNA. [Note: Amplification of cDNA made from mRNA by retroviral *reverse transcriptase* (*RT*) is referred to as RT-PCR.]

1. **Northern blots:** Northern blots are very similar to Southern blots (see Figure 33.12, p. 474), except that the original sample contains a mixture of mRNA molecules that are separated by electrophoresis, then transferred to a membrane and hybridized to a radiolabeled probe. The bands obtained by autoradiography give a measure of the amount and size of particular mRNA molecules in the sample.

2. **Microarrays:** DNA microarrays contain thousands of immobilized DNA sequences organized in an area no larger than a microscope slide. These microarrays are used to analyze a sample for the presence of gene variations or mutations (genotyping), or to determine the patterns of mRNA production (gene expression analysis), analyzing thousands of genes at the same time. For genotyping analysis, the cellular sample is genomic DNA. For expression analysis, the population of mRNA molecules from a

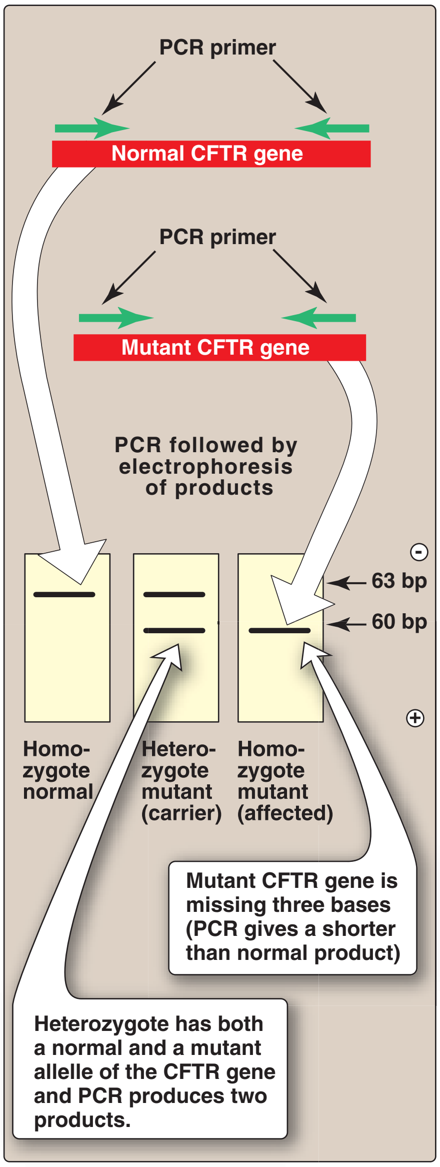

PCR primer
Normal CFTR gene
PCR primer
Mutant CFTR gene
PCR followed by electrophoresis of products
-
63 bp
60 bp
+
Homozygote normal
Heterozygote mutant (carrier)
Homozygote mutant (affected)
Mutant CFTR gene is missing three bases (PCR gives a shorter than normal product)
Heterozygote has both a normal and a mutant allele of the CFTR gene and PCR produces two products.

Figure 33.21
Genetic testing for cystic fibrosis using PCR. CFTR = cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator.

particular cell type is converted to cDNA and labeled with a fluorescent tag (Figure 33.22). This mixture is then exposed to a gene chip, which is a glass slide or membrane containing thousands of tiny spots of DNA, each corresponding to a different gene. The amount of fluorescence bound to each spot is a measure of the amount of that particular mRNA in the sample. DNA microarrays are often used to determine the differing patterns of gene expression in two different types of cell—for example, normal and cancer cells (see Figure 33.22). Physicians hope to one day be able to tailor treatment regimens to each cancer patient, based on the specific microarray expression patterns exhibited by that patient's individual tumor.

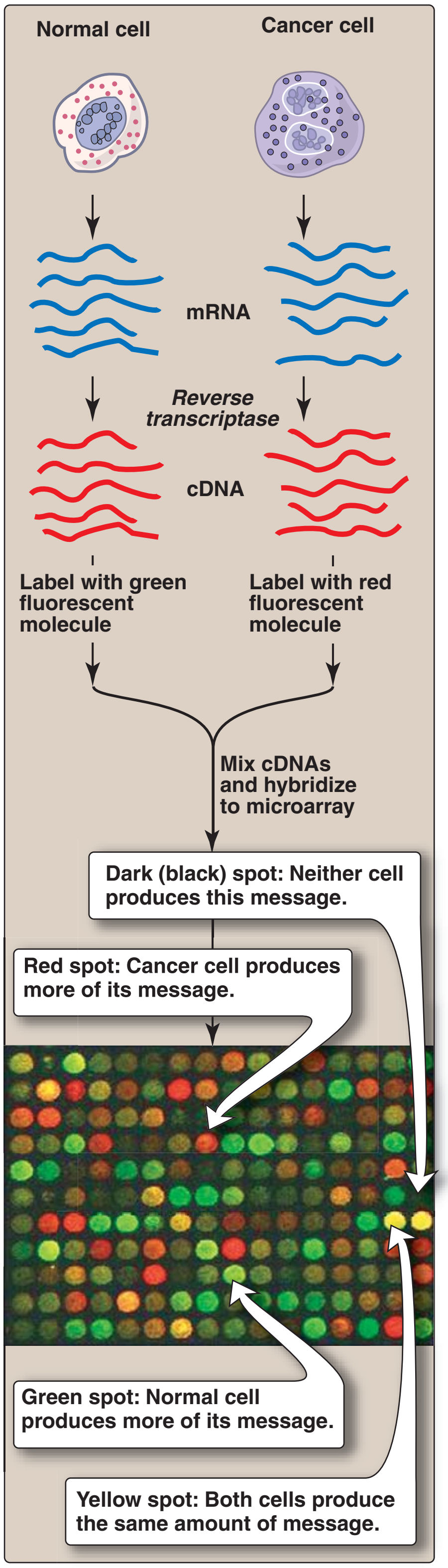

Normal cell
Cancer cell
mRNA
Reverse transcriptase
cDNA
Label with green fluorescent molecule
Label with red fluorescent molecule
Mix cDNAs and hybridize to microarray
Dark (black) spot: Neither cell produces this message.
Red spot: Cancer cell produces more of its message.
Green spot: Normal cell produces more of its message.
Yellow spot: Both cells produce the same amount of message.

Figure 33.22
Microarray analysis of gene expression.

B. Analysis of proteins

The kinds and amounts of proteins in cells do not always directly correspond to the amounts of mRNA present. Some mRNAs are translated more efficiently than others, and some proteins undergo posttranslational modifications by adding sugars or lipids, or both. When investigating one, or a limited number of gene products, it is convenient to use labeled antibodies to detect and quantify specific proteins. However, when analyzing the abundance and interactions of large numbers of cellular proteins (called proteomics, see below), automated methods employing two-dimensional gel electrophoresis, mass spectrometry, multidimensional liquid chromatography, and bioinformatics are employed.

1. **Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays (ELISA):** These assays are performed in the wells of a plastic microtiter dish. The antigen (protein) is bound to the plastic of the dish. The probe used consists of an antibody specific for the particular protein to be measured. The antibody is covalently bound to an enzyme, which will produce a colored product when exposed to its substrate. The amount of color produced can be used to determine the amount of protein (or antibody) in the sample to be tested.

2. **Western blots:** Western blots (also called immunoblots) are similar to Southern blots, except that protein molecules in the sample are separated by electrophoresis and blotted (transferred) to a membrane. The probe is a labeled antibody, which produces a band at the location of its antigen.

3. **Detecting exposure to HIV:** ELISA and Western blots are commonly used to detect exposure to HIV by measuring the amount of anti-HIV antibodies present in a patient's blood sample. ELISAs are used as the primary screening tool, because they are very sensitive. These assays sometimes give false positives, however, so Western blots, which are more specific, are often used as a confirmatory test (Figure 33.23). [Note: ELISA and Western blots can only detect HIV exposure after anti-HIV antibodies appear in the bloodstream. PCR-based testing for HIV is more useful in the first few months after exposure.]

4. **Proteomics:** The study of all proteins expressed by a genome, including their relative abundance, distribution, posttranslational modifications, functions, and interactions with other macromolecules, is known as proteomics. The 20,000 to 30,000 protein-coding genes of the human genome translate into over 100,000 proteins when posttranscriptional and posttranslational modifications are considered. Although a genome remains unchanged, the amounts and types of proteins in any particular cell change dramatically as genes are turned on and off. Proteomics offers the potential of identifying new disease markers and drug targets. Figure 33.24 compares some of the analytic techniques discussed in this chapter.

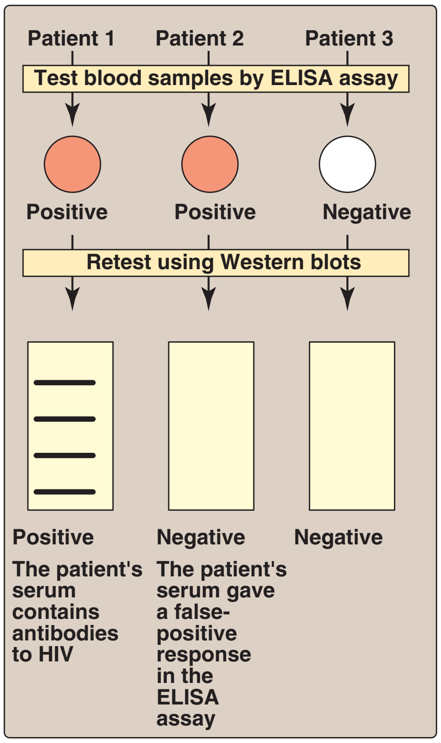

Patient 1
Patient 2
Patient 3
Test blood samples by ELISA assay
Positive
Positive
Negative
Retest using Western blots
Positive
Negative
Negative
The patient's serum contains antibodies to HIV
The patient's serum gave a false-positive response in the ELISA assay

Figure 33.23
Testing for HIV exposure by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays (ELISA) and Western blots.

IX. GENE THERAPY

The goal of gene therapy is to insert the normal, cloned DNA for a gene into the somatic cells of a patient who has a defect in that gene as a result of some disease-causing mutation. The DNA must become permanently integrated into the patient's chromosomes in such a way as to be properly expressed to produce the correct protein. For example, patients with severe combined immunodeficiency disease (SCID) have an immune deficiency as a result of mutations in either the gene for *adenosine deaminase* (see p. 301) or a gene coding for an interleukin receptor subunit (X-linked severe combined immunodeficiency, or SCID-X1). Patients with both kinds of SCID have been successfully treated by incorporating functional copies of the appropriate gene into their cells (Figure 33.25). [Note: This is often called "gene replacement therapy."] Although gene therapy is an attractive therapeutic strategy for individuals with inherited diseases, the method is not without risks. For example, retrovirus-mediated gene transfer was able to correct SCID-X1 in nine of ten patients. However, leukemias developed in several of the patients, presumably because of activation of a hematopoietic oncogene. Clearly, gene therapy is a work in progress.

TECHNIQUE	SAMPLE ANALYZED	GEL USED	PURPOSE
Southern blot	DNA	Yes	Detects DNA changes
Northern blot	RNA	Yes	Measures mRNA amounts and sizes
Western blot	Protein	Yes	Measures protein amounts
ASO	DNA	No	Detects DNA mutations
Microarray	cDNA or genomic DNA	No	Measures many mRNA levels at once; detects genomic changes
ELISA	Proteins or antibodies	No	Detects proteins (antigens) or antibodies; detects genomic changes
Proteomics	Proteins	Yes	Measures abundance, distribution, posttranslational modifications, functions, and interactions of cellular proteins

Figure 33.24
Techniques used to analyze DNA, RNA, and proteins. ASO = allele-specific oligonucleotides. ELISA = enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay.

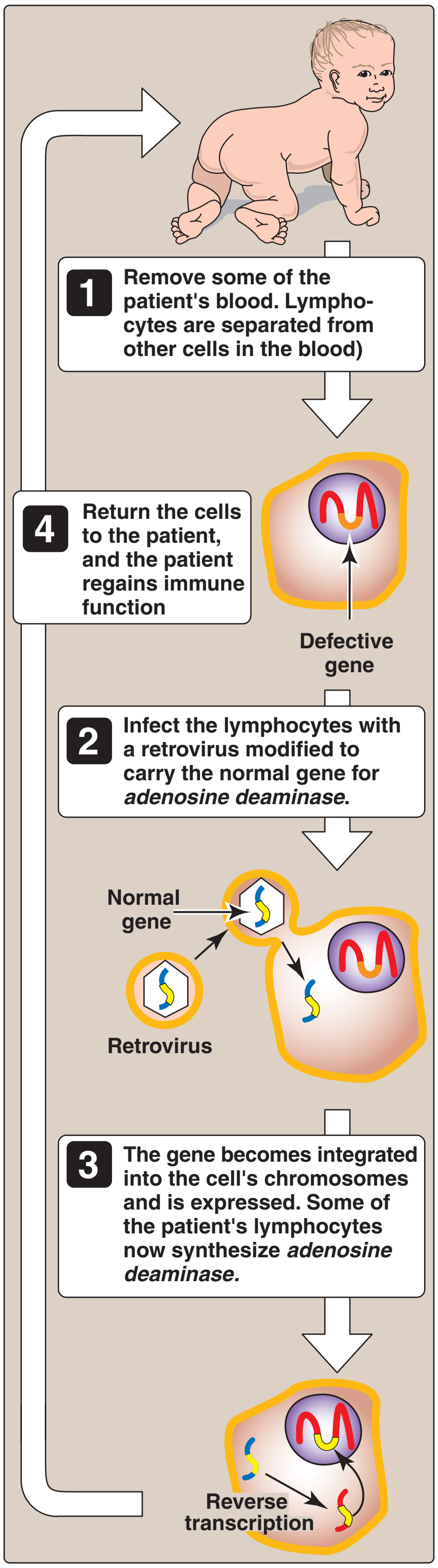

1 Remove some of the patient's blood. Lymphocytes are separated from other cells in the blood)
Defective gene
2 Infect the lymphocytes with a retrovirus modified to carry the normal gene for *adenosine deaminase.*
Normal gene
Retrovirus
3 The gene becomes integrated into the cell's chromosomes and is expressed. Some of the patient's lymphocytes now synthesize *adenosine deaminase.*
Reverse transcription
4 Return the cells to the patient, and the patient regains immune function

Figure 33.25
Gene therapy for a patient with severe combined immunodeficiency caused by *adenosine deaminase* deficiency.

X. TRANSGENIC ANIMALS

Transgenic animals can be produced by injecting a cloned gene into the fertilized egg. If the gene becomes successfully integrated into a chromosome, it will be present in the germline of the resulting animal, and can be passed along from generation to generation. A giant mouse called “Supermouse” was produced in this way by injecting the gene for rat growth hormone into a fertilized mouse egg. In a similar way, transgenic goats and cows can now be designed that produce human proteins, such as blood clotting factors, in their milk. Sometimes, rather than introducing a functional gene into a mouse, a nonfunctional version is inserted. Such genetically engineered animals can be used to produce a colony of “knockout mice” that lack the product of the affected gene. Such animals can then serve as models for the study of a corresponding human disease. [Note: Knock-in mice result if the inserted gene expresses a mutated product or under (over)-expresses a product.]

XI. CHAPTER SUMMARY

Restriction endonucleases are bacterial enzymes that cleave double-stranded DNA into smaller fragments. Each enzyme cleaves dsDNA at a specific four to eight-base-long nucleotide sequence, producing DNA segments called **restriction fragments**. The sequences that are recognized are **palindromic**. These enzymes form either **staggered cuts** (**sticky ends**) or **blunt-end cuts** on the DNA. A DNA sequence that is recognized by a restriction enzyme is called a **restriction site**. **Bacterial DNA ligases** can anneal two DNA fragments from different sources if they have been cut by the same restriction endonuclease. This hybrid combination of two fragments is called a **recombinant DNA molecule**. Introduction of a foreign DNA molecule into a replicating cell permits the **amplification** (production of many copies) of the DNA—a process called **cloning**. A **vector** is a molecule of DNA to which the fragment of DNA to be cloned is attached. Vectors must be capable of **autonomous replication** within the host cell, and must contain at least one specific nucleotide sequence recognized by a restriction endonuclease. It must also carry at least one gene that confers the ability to select for the vector, such as an **antibiotic resistance gene**. Prokaryotic organisms normally contain small, circular, extrachromosomal DNA molecules called **plasmids** that can serve as **vectors**. They can be readily isolated from the bacterium, joined with the DNA of interest, and reintroduced into the bacterium which will replicate, thus making multiple copies of the **hybrid plasmid**. A **DNA library** is a collection of cloned restriction fragments of the DNA of an organism. **A genomic library** is a collection of fragments of double-stranded DNA obtained by digestion of the total DNA of the organism with a restriction endonuclease and subsequent ligation to an appropriate vector. It ideally contains a copy of every DNA nucleotide sequence in the genome. In contrast, **complementary DNA (cDNA) libraries** contain only those DNA sequences that are complementary to messenger RNA (mRNA) molecules present in a cell, and differ from one cell type to another. Because cDNA has no intervening sequences, it can be cloned into an **expression vector** for the synthesis of eukaryotic proteins by bacteria. Cloned, then purified, fragments of DNA can be sequenced, for example, using the **Sanger dideoxy method**. A **probe** is a small, single-stranded piece of DNA (usually labeled with a radioisotope, such as ^{32}P, or another recognizable compound, such as biotin) which has a nucleotide sequence complementary to the DNA molecule of interest (**target DNA**). Probes can be used to identify which clone of a library or which band on a gel contains the target DNA. **Southern blotting** is a technique that can be used to detect specific sequences present in DNA. The DNA is cleaved using a **restriction endonuclease**, and the pieces are separated by **gel electrophoresis** and are denatured and transferred (blotted) to a **nitrocellulose membrane** for analysis. The fragment of interest is detected using a **probe**. The human genome contains many thousands of polymorphisms (DNA sequence variations at a given locus) that do not affect the phenotype of the individual. Polymorphisms can arise from single base changes and from tandem repeats. A polymorphism can serve as a genetic marker that can be followed through families. A restriction fragment length polymorphism is a genetic variant that can be observed by cleaving the DNA into restriction fragments using a restriction enzyme. A base substitution in one or more nucleotides at a restriction site can render the site unrecognizable by a particular restriction endonuclease. A new restriction site also can be created by the same mechanism. In either case, cleavage with the endonuclease results in fragments of lengths differing from the normal that can be detected by DNA hybridization. This technique can be used to diagnose genetic diseases early in the gestation of a fetus. The **polymerase chain reaction** (**PCR**), a test tube method for **amplifying** a selected DNA sequence, does not rely on the biologic cloning method. PCR permits the synthesis of millions of copies of a specific nucleotide sequence in a few hours. It can amplify the sequence, even when the targeted sequence makes up less than one part in a million of the total initial sample. The method can be used to amplify DNA sequences from any source. **Applications of the PCR technique** include: 1) efficient comparison of a normal cloned gene with an uncloned mutant form of the gene, 2) detection of low-abundance nucleic acid sequences, 3) forensic analysis of DNA samples, and 4) prenatal diagnosis and carrier detection, for example, of cystic fibrosis. The **products of gene expression** (mRNA and proteins) can be measured by techniques such as the following: **Northern blots** are very similar to Southern blots except that the original sample contains a mixture of **mRNA** molecules that are separated by electrophoresis, then hybridized to a radiolabeled probe. **Microarrays** are used to determine the differing patterns of gene expression in two different types of cells—for example, normal and cancer cells. **Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays** and **Western blots** (**immunoblots**) are used to detect specific proteins. The goal of **gene therapy** is the insertion of a normal gene to replace a defective gene. Insertion of a foreign gene into an animal creates a **transgenic animal** that can produce therapeutic proteins or serve as a model for human diseases.

Study Questions

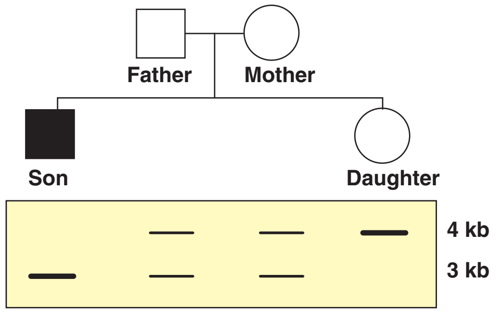
Choose the ONE correct answer.

33.1 *Hin*dIII is a restriction endonuclease commonly used to cut human DNA into pieces before inserting it into a plasmid. Which of the following is most likely to be the recognition sequence for this enzyme?

A. AAGGAA.
B. AAGAAG.
C. AAGTTC.
D. AAGCTT.
E. AAGAGA.

Correct answer = D. The vast majority of restriction endonucleases recognize palindromes, and AAGCTT is the only palindrome among the choices. Because the sequence of only one DNA strand is given, one must determine the base sequence of the complementary strand. To be a palindrome, both strands must have the same sequence when read in the 5'→3' direction. Thus, the complement of 5'-AAGCTT-3' is also 5'-AAGCTT-3'.

33.2 An Ashkenazi Jewish couple brings their 6-month-old son to you for evaluation of listlessness, poor head control, and a fixed gaze. You determine that he has Tay-Sachs disease, an autosomal recessive disorder. The couple also has a daughter. The diagram below shows this family's pedigree, along with Southern blots of an RFLP very closely linked to the hexosaminidase A gene, which is defective in Tay-Sachs. Which of the statements below is most accurate with respect to the daughter?



A. She has a 25% chance of having Tay-Sachs disease.
B. She has a 50% chance of having Tay-Sachs disease.
C. She has Tay-Sachs disease.
D. She is a carrier for Tay-Sachs disease.
E. She is homozygous normal.

Correct answer = E. Both the father and mother must be carriers for this disease. The son must have inherited a mutant allele from each parent. Because he shows only the 3-kb band on the Southern blot, the mutant allele for this disease must be linked to the 3-kb band for both parents. The normal allele must be linked to the 4-kb band in both parents. Because the daughter inherited the 4-kb band from both parents, she must be homozygous normal for the hexosaminidase A gene.

33.3 A physician would like to determine the global patterns of gene expression in two different types of tumor cells in order to develop the most appropriate form of chemotherapy for each patient. Which of the following techniques would be most appropriate for this purpose?

A. Southern blot.
B. Northern blot.
C. Western blot.
D. ELISA.
E. Microarray.

Correct answer = E. Microarray analysis allows the determination of mRNA production (thus, gene expression) from thousands of genes at once. A Northern blot only measures mRNA production from one gene at a time. Western blots and ELISA measure protein production (also gene expression), but only from one gene at a time. Southern blots are used to analyze DNA, not gene expression.

33.4 A 2-week-old infant is diagnosed with a urea cycle defect. Enzymic analysis showed no activity for ornithine transcarbamoylase (OTC). Molecular analysis revealed that the mRNA product of the gene for OTC was identical to that of a control. Which of the techniques listed below was most likely used to analyze the size and amount of the mRNA?

A. Dideoxy chain termination.
B. Northern blot.
C. Polymerase chain reaction.
D. Southern blot
E. Western blot

Correct answer = B. Northern blot allows analysis of the mRNA present (expressed) in a particular cell or tissue. Southern blot is used for DNA analysis, whereas Western blot is used for protein analysis. Dideoxy chain termination is used to sequence DNA. Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) is used to generate multiple, identical copies of a DNA sequence in vitro.

Index

Page numbers in **bold** indicate main discussion of topic. Page numbers followed by f denote figures. *"See"* cross-references direct the reader to the synonymous term. *"See also"* cross-references direct the reader to related topics. [Note: Positional and configurational designations in chemical names (for example, "3-", "α", "N-", "D-") are ignored in alphabetizing.

A

Aβ, in Alzheimer's disease, 21
Abbreviations, for amino acids, 5, 5f
ABCA1, 236
Abetalipoproteinemia, 231
Absorptive state, **321**. *See also* Fed state
Acceptable Macronutrient Distribution Ranges (AMDR), **360,** 360f
ACE. See Angiotensin-converting enzyme
Acetaldehyde, 317
Acetanilid, 153
Acetate (acetic acid), 6f, 7, 182f
  in cholesterol synthesis, 220
  titration of, 6f, 7
Acetoacetate, 195–196, 196f
  formation in amino acid catabolism, 261, 262, 266, 266f
Acetoacetyl CoA, formation in amino acid, 262, 266
Acetone, 195, 196f, 262
Acetylation, 422, 422f
Acetylcholinesterase
  inhibition by insecticides, 62
  in membrane protein anchoring, 206
Acetyl CoA, 96
  in absorptive/fed state, 323, 323f, 324
  allosteric activation of, 122
  amino acids that form, 266
  carboxylation to malonyl CoA, 183–184, 184f
  in cholesterol synthesis, 220
  in citrate synthesis, 111–112, 111f
  conversion of building blocks to, 93, 93f
  cytosolic, production of, 183
  decarboxylation of pyruvate to, 96, 105, 106f, 109–111, 110f
  in diabetes mellitus, 197
  in fatty acid synthesis, 183–184
  formation of
    in amino acid catabolism, 261–262, 266, 266f
    in fatty acid oxidation, 192, 192f
  in gluconeogenesis, 119, 119f, 122
  in glycolysis, 96
  in ketone body synthesis, 195–196, 196f
  oxidation of, 93, 93f
  pyruvate dehydrogenase activated by, 119, 119f
  pyruvate dehydrogenase complex as source of, 109, 109f
  in tricarboxylic acid cycle, 109–111, 109f
Acetyl CoA-ACP acetyltransferase, 184
Acetyl CoA carboxylase, 183, 185f, 190
  in absorptive/fed state, 324
  allosteric activation of, 183–184, 184f
  allosteric inactivation of, 183, 184f
  dephosphorylation of, 184
  in fasting, 330
  hormonal regulation of, 184, 184f
  long-term regulation of, 184
  phosphorylation of, 183–184
  short-term regulation of, 183–184, 184f
Acetyl CoA carboxylase-2 (*ACC2*), 191
N^4-Acetylcytosine, 292f
N-Acetyl-D-glucosamine, 142
N-Acetylgalactosamine (GalNAc), 160, 168
N-Acetylglucosamindase deficiency, 164f
N-Acetylglucosamine (GlcNAc), 160, 166, 168
N-Acetylglucosamine-6-sulfatase deficiency, 164f
N-Acetylglutamate
  synthesis of, 255f, 256
  in urea cycle, 253, 254f
N-Acetylglutamate synthase, 256
N-Acetyllactosamine, 142
CMP-N-Acetylneuraminic acid, 166
N-Acetylneuraminic acid (NANA), 166
  in acidic glycosphingolipids, 209
  synthesis of, 160
Acetyl residue, in plasma-activating factor, 202, 202f
Acid/base properties
  of amino acids, **6–9**
  Henderson-Hasselbalch equation for, 6–9
Acidemia
  ketone bodies and, 197
  methylmalonic, 194
Acid hydrolases, 162
Acidic amino acids, 3f, 5
Acidic sugars
  in glycosaminoglycans, 157, 157f, 161, 162f
  synthesis of, 161, 162f
Acid maltase, 130
Aciduria
  homogentisic, 274
  methylmalonic, 194
  orotic, 303, 303f
Acne, retinoic acid for, 385
Aconitase
  in citrate isomerization, 111f, 112
  inhibition of, 112
Acquired hyperammonemia, 258
ACTH, 239, 239f
Active sites, 54, 54f, 56, 57
Acute intermittent porphyria, 280, 281f
Acyl carrier protein (ACP), 184
Acyl CoA:cholesterol acyltransferase (ACAT), 177, 233f, 234, 234f
Acyl CoA dehydrogenase, 76
Acyl CoA derivatives, α-β-unsaturated, 266
Acyl CoA:diacylglycerol acyltransferase (DGAT), 176
Acyl CoA:monoacylglycerol acyltransferase (MGAT), 176
Acyl CoA oxidase, 195
Acyltransferases, 176–177
Added sugars, 365
Adenine, 291, 291f, 292f, 305f, 396, 396f, 397
  in codons/genetic code, 431, 432f
  pairing with thymine, 396f, 397, 398f
Adenine arabinoside (vidarabine, araA), 409
Adenine phosphoribosyltransferase (APRT), 296, 296f
Adenosine deaminase (ADA), 299
  deficiency of, 298, 300f, 301–302
    gene therapy for, 485, 486f
Adenosine diphosphate (ADP)
  in ATP synthesis, 73, 77–78, 78f
  isocitrate dehydrogenase activation by, 112
  transport of, to inner mitochondrial membrane, 79
  in tricarboxylic acid cycle regulation, 114, 114f
  in urea cycle, 255–256
  ribosylation, 95
Adenosine monophosphate (AMP; also called adenylate)
  cyclic. *See* Cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP)
  gluconeogenesis and, 123
  glycogen degradation, 132, 133f
  IMP conversion to, 295–296, 295f
  phosphofructokinase-1 activated by, 99
  in urea cycle, 255–256
Adenosine triphosphate (ATP)
  in aerobic glycolysis, 97–98, 100f, 102–104
  in amino acid deamination, 252
  in amino acid transport, 249
  in anabolic pathways, 93
  in anaerobic glycolysis, 104
  in catabolic pathways, 91, 93f
  change in free energy of, 77
  in cholesterol synthesis, 220
  as energy carrier, **72–73,** 73f
  in fatty acid synthesis, 183, 183f
  in glycolysis, 96
  in GMP synthesis, 295–296
  hydrolysis of, standard free energy of, 73
  isocitrate dehydrogenase inhibition by, 112
  in muscle contraction, 132
  as phosphate donor, 63, 73
  phosphofructokinase-1 inhibited by, 99
  production/synthesis of
    in fatty acid oxidation, 192, 192f
    in inner mitochondrial membrane, 74
    in oxidative phosphorylation, 73, 73f, 77–80
    by 3-phosphoglycerate, 101–102
    in pyruvate formation, 102–103
    in tricarboxylic acid cycle, 109, 113, 113f, 114f
  in protein degradation, 247
  in protein synthesis, 437
  structure of, 73, 73f
  transport to inner mitochondrial membrane, 79
  in urea cycle, 255–256
Adenylate kinase, 296, 296f
Adenylyl (adenylate) cyclase, 134, 151
  Bordetella pertussis and, 95
  glucagon and, 314
  lactose operon and, 451f, 452
  in metabolic regulation, 94–96, 95f
  in triacylglycerol degradation, 190
  Vibrio cholerae and, 94
Adequate Intake (AI), 358, 359f
Adipocytes
  free fatty acids reesterified in, 178

  in obesity, 350–351
  volume of, 324f, 325
Adiponectin
  in diabetes mellitus, 343
  in obesity, 353
Adipose tissue
  in absorptive/fed state, **324–325**
    carbohydrate metabolism in, 325, 325f
    fat metabolism in, 325, 325f
    intertissue relationships of, 328f
  communication with other metabolic organs, 307, 307f
  in diabetes mellitus
    type 1, 339, 339f
    type 2, 343, 344
  in energy metabolism, 307, 307f
  as energy storage depot, **324–325**
  in fasting, 327, 330f, **331,** 331f
    carbohydrate metabolism in, 331, 331f
    fat metabolism in, 331, 331f
    intertissue relationships of, 328f
  fatty acids in, as fuel reserve, 189
  hormones of, and obesity, 352–353
  hyperplasia of, 351
  hypertrophy of, 351
  insulin resistance and, 343
  lipoprotein lipase in, 228–229
  metabolic role of, 307
  in obesity, 324–325
  subcutaneous, 350
  triacylglycerol fate in, 189
  visceral, 350
A-DNA, 398
ADP. *See* Adenosine diphosphate
Adrenal cortex, cholesterol synthesis in, 220
Adrenal cortical steroid hormones
  deficiency of, 238f
  secretion of, 239, 239f
Adrenal medulla, *tyrosine hydroxylase* in, 286
Adrenergic symptoms, of hyperglycemia, 315
Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), 239, 239f
Adrenoleukodystrophy, 195, 236
Afferent signals, 352–353, 353f
African Americans
  lactose intolerance in, 88
  sickle cell disease in, 35
Age-related macular degeneration (AMD), 459–460
Aggrecan, 158
Aging, telomeres and, 408
Alanine, 253
  amino group of
    dissociation of, 7f, 8
    primary, 4f
  in ammonia transport, 253, 253f
  carboxyl group of, dissociation of, 7, 7f
  catabolism of, 263, 263f
  dipolar form of, 7, 7f
  isoelectric form of, 7f, 8–9
  optical properties of, 5, 5f
  peptide bond with valine, 13, 14f
  pKs of, 8
  side chains of, 2f
  synthesis of, 267–268, 268f
  titration of, 7–9, 7f, 8f
  transamination of, 263, 263f
β-Alanine, 304
Alanine aminotransferase (ALT), 250, 250f, 251, 251f
  diagnostic value of, 251–253
  in jaundice, 284
  in liver disease, 251–252, 251f
  mechanism of action, 251
ALA synthase, 278
  effects of drugs on, 279
  in porphyrias, 280
Albinism, 263, 268f, 269f, 273, 273f, 288
  oculocutaneous, 272, 272f
Albumin
  of aldosterone, 237
  of bile acid, 225
  of bilirubin, 282
  of free fatty acids, 178, 190
  function of, 4
Alcohol
  coronary heart disease and, 364–365
  in cirrhosis of liver, 318
  in fatty liver, 318
  in glycerophospholipids, 202
  hypoglycemia and, 317–318, 317f
  metabolism of, 317–318, 317f
  Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome and, 379
Alcohol dehydrogenase, 317
Aldehyde dehydrogenase, 317
Aldolase, 100
Aldolase A, 138, 138f
Aldolase B, 138, 138f
  deficiency of, 138
Aldose reductase, 139, 140, 141f, 142
Aldoses, 83, 83f
Aldosterone, 237, 237f, 239, 240f
Alkaline phosphatase, 206
Alkaptonuria, 263, 268f, 269f, 274, 274f
Alkyl group
  saturated, in plasma-activating factor, 202, 202f
  unsaturated, in plasmalogens, 202, 202f
Allantoin, 298
Allele-specific oligonucleotide (ASO) probe, 472, 472f, 485f
Allolactose, 451f
Allopurinol, 301
Allosteric activators
  in absorptive/fed state, 321, 321f
  in fasting, 328
  in metabolic regulation, 94
Allosteric effectors, 27, 41f, 62–63, 62f
  in absorptive/fed state, 321, 321f
  carboxylation of pyruvate and, 119
  in fasting, 328
  glucagon levels and, 122
Allosteric enzymes, 57, 67f
  in committed (rate-limiting) step of pathway, 62
  effectors or modifiers of, 62–63, 62f, 64f
    heterotropic, 63
    homotropic, 62–63
    negative, 62
    positive, 62
  sigmoidal kinetics curve of, 57, 62f, 63
Allosteric inhibitors, in metabolic regulation, 94, 252
Allysine, in collagen biosynthesis, 48, 48f
α-Amanita, RNA polymerase II inhibition by, 424
α_1-Antitrypsin (α_1-AT)
  deficiency of, 51f
    in emphysema, 50
  in elastin degradation, 50, 50f
  in lungs, 50, 50f
α cells, 313
α chains, in collagen, 43–44, 43f
  precursors of (pro-α-chains), 45, 46f
α-helix, 16–17, 16f
  amino acids disrupting, 16–17
  amino acids per turn, 16
  in myoglobin, 26, 26f
Alpha-Tocopherol, Beta Carotene Cancer Prevention Trial, 391
Alternative splicing, 457, 457f
Alzheimer disease, 21, 21f, 23f, 231
Amanita phalloides, 251f, 424
Amidation, synthesis of nonessential amino acids by, 268
Amide group, in amino acid side chains, 4
Amine oxidase, 257
Amine(s)
  ammonia from, 257
  biologically active, 285–287
Amino acid analyzer, 15, 15f
D-Amino acid oxidase, 253
Amino acid pool, 246, 246f
Amino acid(s), **1–12**
  abbreviations and symbols for, 5, 5f
  absorption of, 249
  in absorptive/fed state, 321
  acid/base properties of, **6–9**
  acidic, 3f, 5
  in α-helix, 16–17
  amino group of, 1, 1f, 4f, 7f, 8
  ammonia from, 256
  amphoteric properties of, 9
  attachment to tRNA
    enzymes required for, 435, 435f
    site for, 434f, 435
  basic, 3f, 5
  branched-chain, 326
    catabolism of, 266–267, 266f
    dehydrogenation of, 266–267
    oxidative decarboxylation of, 266
    transamination of, 266
  as buffers, 6–7, 6f, 8, 9, 9f
  carbon skeletons of, 245, 250
    catabolism of, **262–267**
  carboxyl group of, 1, 1f, 4f, 7
  catabolism/degradation of, 245, 249–253, 261–267, 261f
    in absorptive/fed state, 323f, 324
    acetoacetyl CoA formation in, 266
    acetyl CoA formation in, 266, 266f
    fumarate formation in, 263, 263f
    α-ketoglutarate formation in, 250–252, 250f, 252f, 262, 263f
    oxaloacetate formation in, 262, 262f
    pyruvate formation in, 263, 263f
    succinyl CoA formation in, 263–265, 264f
  classification of, 2–3f, 2–5, 261, 262f
  clinically important, 275f
  concept map, 11f
  conversion to specialized products, **277–290,** 277f
  D and L forms of, 5, 5f
  de novo synthesis of, 245
  dietary, 245
  disulfide bonding by, 4
  essential, 261, 262f, 367, 434
  free, 1, 1f
  glucagon secretion and, 313, 313f
  glucogenic, **261,** 262f, 266
  in gluconeogenesis, 118
  hydrogen bonding by, 4, 4f
  hydrophobic interactions of, 4, 19, 19f
  in insulin secretion, 310
  ionic interactions of, 19, 19f
  ketogenic, **262,** 262f, 266
  metabolism of, 261f
    in absorptive/fed state, 323f, 324, 326, 326f
    concept map, 275f
    folic acid in, **267**
    metabolic defects in, **270–274**
  net charge, at neutral pH, 8

  - nitrogen removal from, 245, **250–253**
    - in urea cycle, 245f, 253–256, 253f, 254f, 255f
  - nonessential, 261, 262f
    - biosynthesis of, **267–269,** 268f
  - nonpolar, 2–4, 2f, 4f
    - location in proteins, 2, 4, 4f
  - optical properties of, 5, 5f
  - oxidative deamination of, 252–253, 252f
    - allosteric regulation of, 252
    - coenzymes in, 252, 252f
    - direction of reactions, 252
  - peptide bonds of, 1, 1f, 13–14, 14f
  - as precursors of nitrogen-containing precursors, 277, 277f
  - in protein synthesis, 434
  - as proton acceptors, 5
  - as proton donors, 5
  - residue or moiety, 14
  - sequence of, 14–16
    - in collagen, 45, 45f
    - determination of, 14–15, 15f
    - DNA analysis of, 15–16
  - side chains of, 1–5, 1f, 2–3f
    - as attachment site for other compounds, 4
  - structure of, **1–5,** 1f
  - substitution of
    - in hemoglobin C disease, 36f, 37
    - in sickle cell disease, 36, 36f
  - titration of, 6f, 7–9, 8f, 9f
  - transamination of, 245, 250–252, 250f, 251f
    - equilibrium of reactions, 251
  - transport into cells, **249–250**
  - uncharged polar, 3f, 4
- Amino acid starvation, stringent response and, 454, 454f
- *Aminoacyl-tRNA synthetase,* 435, 435f, 437
- Amino group, 1, 1f, 11f
  - α, transfer of (transamination), 245, 250–252, 250f, 251f, 266
  - dissociation of, 7f, 8
  - peptide bind to carboxyl group, 13–14, 14f
  - primary, 4, 4f
  - removal of (deamination), 245, 252–253, 252f, 261
  - secondary, 4, 4f
- β-Aminoisobutyrate, 304
- δ-Aminolevulinic acid (ALA), formation of, 278–279, 278f
- *δ-Aminolevulinic acid dehydrase*, 278f, 279
- *δ-aminolevulinic acid synthase-2* (*ALAS-2*), 278
- *Aminopeptides,* 249
- Amino sugars
  - in glycosaminoglycans, 157, 157f, 160, 161f
  - synthesis of, 160, 161f
- *Aminotransferase(s),* 250, 250f
  - action mechanism of, 251
  - diagnostic value of, 251–253, 251f
  - in liver disease, 251–252, 251f
  - in non-hepatic disease, 252
  - substrate specificity of, 250–251
- Ammonia
  - from amines, 257
  - from amino acids, 256
  - from bacterial action in intestines, 257
  - disposal as urea, 253, 257, 257f
  - elevated levels of, 257–258, 258f
  - from glutamine, 256–257, 257f
  - in fasting, 332
  - in liver disease, 258
  - metabolism of, 245, **256–258,** 257f
  - as product of amino acid catabolism, 250, 253, 253f
  - from purines and pyrimidines, 257
  - sources of, 256–257
  - transport through circulation, 257, 257f
  - transport to liver, 253, 253f
- Ammonia intoxication, 257
- Amniotic fluid, as DNA source, 476, 477f
- Amoxicillin, 62
- AMP. *See* Adenosine monophosphate
- *AMP-activated protein kinase (AMPK),* 223
  - in *acetyl CoA carboxylase* regulation, 184, 184f
  - in fasting, 330
- Ampholytes, 9
- Amphoteric properties, of amino acids, 9
- *α-Amylase,* 86, 87f
- *Amylo-α(1→4) → α(1→6)-transglucosidase,* 128
- *Amylo-α-(1→6)-glucosidase,* 130
- Amyloid beta, 21
  - in Alzheimer's disease, 21
- Amyloid plaques, 21, 21f
- Amyloid precursor protein, 21
- Amyloid protein, 21
- Amylose, 128
- Amytal, 76f
- Anabolic pathways, 91, 93
  - catabolic pathways *vs.,* 93, 93f
  - as divergent process, 93
- Anabolism, insulin and, 308
- Anaerobic glycolysis, 96, 96f, 102–104, 104f
  - energy yield from, 104, 104f
- Analgesics, for sickle cell disease, 36
- Anaplerotic reactions, 109
- Androgens, 237
  - secretion of, 239
- Android or apple-shaped, 350, 350f
- Androstenedione, 239
- Anemia(s)
  - 2,3-bisphosphoglycerate in, 32
  - folic acid deficiency and, 374–375, 374f, 375f
  - hemolytic
    - glycolytic enzyme deficiencies and, 102–103
    - in *G6PD* deficiency, 153
  - iron-deficiency, 374, 374fA
  - macrocytic, 374, 374f
  - megaloblastic, 267, 374, 375, 393f
  - microcytic, 374, 374f
  - normocytic, 374f
  - nutritional, 374, 374f
  - pernicious, 377, 393f
  - sickle cell. *See* Sickle cell disease
  - vitamin B_{12} deficiency and, 374, 374f, 375f
- Anencephaly, 375
- *Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE),* 239
- Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors, 62
- Angiotensin I, 239
- Angiotensin II, 62, 239
- Animal protein, 367, 367f
- Anion-exchange column, 14
- Anomeric carbon, 84
- Anoxia, caused by sickle cell disease, 36, 37f
- Antibiotic resistance, plasmids and, 467, 467f, 468f
- Antibiotics
  - *G6PD* deficiency and, 153
  - for sickle cell disease, 36
  - targeting *DNA gyrase,* 401
  - targeting RNA synthesis, 421, 422f
- Antibodies, labeled, 472
- Anticancer drugs
  - blocking DNA replication, 409, 409f
  - *DNA gyrase* as target of, 401
  - as inhibitors of deoxyribonucleotide synthesis, 298
  - as inhibitors of purine synthesis, 293, 294f, 295
  - as inhibitors of *thymidylate synthase,* 303–304
  - intercalating into DNA double helix, 397
- Anticodon, 435
  - antiparallel binding with codon, 437, 437f
- Antimalarial drugs, 153
- Antimycin A, 76f
- Antioxidant reactions, enzymes catalyzing, 148, 148f
- Antioxidant(s), 148–149, 377–378, 391
- Antiparallel binding, 434f, 437, 437f
- Antiparallel β sheet, 17, 17f
- Antipyretics, 153
- *AP-endonuclease,* 412
- apo B, 457f, 458
- apo B-48 protein, 457f, 458
- Apoenzyme, 54
- Apoferritin, 459
- Apolipoprotein B-48, 177, 228
- Apolipoprotein B-100, 189, 231
- Apolipoprotein C-II, 231
- Apolipoprotein E, 231, 234
- Apolipoprotein(s)
  - classes of, 227
  - HDL as reservoir of, 234
  - synthesis of, 228
- Apoproteins. *See* Apolipoprotein(s)
- Apoptosis, mitochondria and, 80
- Appetite, 352–353
- AraA, 409
- Arabinose, 409
- AraC, 409
- Arachidonic acid, 182, 182f, 183f, 363
  - in prostaglandin synthesis, 213, 214, 215f
- *Arginase,* 262
- Arginine, 5, 262
  - α-helix disrupted by, 16–17
  - catabolism of, 262
  - cleavage to ornithine and urea, 255
  - in creatine synthesis, 287, 288f
  - in histones, 410
  - as *nitric oxide synthase* substrate, 151, 151f
  - side chains of, 3f
  - transport of, 250
  - in urea cycle, 253–255, 254f
- Argininosuccinate
  - cleavage of, 255
  - synthesis of, 255
  - in urea cycle, 253–255, 254f
- *Argininosuccinate lyase,* 254f
- *Argininosuccinate synthase,* 254f
- *Argonaute* (*Ago*), 459
- *Aromatase* (CYP19), 239
- Arsenic poisoning, 101
  - mechanism of, 111
- Arsenite, 111
- Arthritis
  - alkaptonuria and, 274
  - chronic gouty, 299
- Arthrocentesis, 301
- Ascorbate, 148
- Ascorbic acid, **377–378,** 392f. *See also* Vitamin C

  deficiency of, 47
Ashkenazi Jews, phospholipid disorders in, 208, 211
Asians, lactose intolerance in, 88
A sites, on ribosome, 436
Asparaginase, 262
Asparagine
  metabolism of, 262, 262f
  side chains of, 3f, 4
  synthesis of, 268
Asparagine synthetase, 268
Aspartate transcarbamoylase, 302
Aspartame, 272
Aspartate aminotransferase (AST), 250–253, 250f, 251f, 256
  diagnostic value of, 251–253
  in jaundice, 284
Aspartate (aspartic acid), 5, 19f
  α-helix disrupted by, 16–17
  as atom source for purine ring, 292, 293f
  as atom source for pyrimidine ring, 302, 302f
  metabolism of, 262, 262f
  oxaloacetate production and, 113
  as product of amino acid catabolism, 251
  as proton donor, 5
  side chains of, 3f, 5
    carboxylate group of, 5
  synthesis of, 267–268, 268f
  in urea cycle, 253–255, 254f
Aspirin
  antithrombotic effect of, 214, 216f
  as uncoupler, 79
AST. See Aspartate aminotransferase
Asthma, 214
Atherosclerosis, 219, 227
  diabetes mellitus and, 345
  homocysteine and, 263
  pathogenesis of, 234, 235f
  premature, 232
Atherosclerotic plaque, 234, 235f
Atorvastatin, 61, 61f, 224
ATP. *See* Adenosine triphosphate
ATP-ADP transport, 79
ATPase, 232
ATP-binding cassette (ABC) protein, 236
ATP-citrate lyase, 183, 186
ATP-dependent RNA-DNA helicase, 421
ATP synthase, 78–79
ATP synthase complexes, 74
Atractyloside, 79
Autoglucosylation, 127
Autoimmune attack, in type 1 diabetes mellitus, 338, 338f
Autophosphorylation, 312
Avidin, 381, 472
Axis of symmetry, 397, 397f
AZT (zidovudine), 409, 409f

B

β-α-β unit, 18f
Backward reactions, free energy change in, 70
Bacterial artificial chromosomes (BACs), 468
Bacterial operons, transcription from, 450–452, 451f
  when glucose is only sugar available, 452
  when lactose is available, 452
Bacteriophage lambda, 468
Barbiturates, porphyria and, 280
Base exchange reaction, in phosphatidylserine synthesis, 204f, 205
Base excision repair, 412, 413f
Basement membranes, collagen in, 44
Base pairing, 396f, 397, 397f
Basic amino acids, 3f, 5
β-barrel protein motif, 18f
B-DNA, 398, 399f, 460
Behavioral factors, in obesity, 352
Benzoyl peroxide, 385
Beriberi, 379, 393f
β-bends, 17
β-carotene
  as antioxidant, 149, 377, 382
  for porphyria, 282
β cells, 307, 308f
  destruction, in type 1 diabetes mellitus, 338
  dysfunction, in type 2 diabetes mellitus, 341, 343–344
  glucose phosphorylation in, 98
  insulin secretion by, 307–309, 309f, 310f
β-oxidation, 190–195
β-sheets, 17, 17f
BH$_4$, 270–271
Bicarbonate buffer system, 9, 9f
Bidirectional replication, of DNA, 399, 400f
Bile, bilirubin excretion in, 283, 283f
Bile acid(s), **224–227**
  amphipathic nature of, 224
  cholesterol as precursor of, 219, 224
  conjugated, 225
  as emulsifying agents, 224
  enterohepatic circulation of, 225–226, 226f
  primary, 224
  structure of, 224, 224f
  synthesis of, 224, 225f
Bile acid sequestrants, 225
Bile duct obstruction, jaundice and, 284
Bile pigments, 282. *See also* Bilirubin
Bile salts, 175, **224–227**
  cholesterol as precursor of, 225
  deficiency of, 226–227, 226f
  enhanced amphipathic nature of, 225
  in enterohepatic circulation, 225–226, 226f
  intestinal flora action on, 225
  secondary, 225
  structure of, 175, 175f
  synthesis of, 225, 225f
Bilirubin
  as antioxidant, 282
  concentration of, determination of, 285
  conjugated, 282–283, 283f, 285
  direct-reacting, 285
  drugs displacing, 282
  elevated levels, in jaundice, 284–285, 284f, 285f
  formation of, 282, 282f
  indirect-reacting, 285
  metabolism of, 282, 283f
  secretion into bile, 283, 283f
  transport of, 282
  unconjugated, 283, 285
  uptake by liver, 282, 283f
Bilirubin diglucuronide, formation of, 282–284, 282f, 283f
Bilirubin glucuronyltransferase, 282
  in neonatal jaundice, 285, 285f
Biliverdin, 282
Biochemical pathways, 54f
Biocytin, 118
Bioenergetics, **69–82**. *See also* Free energy
Biotechnology, **465–488**
  analysis of gene expression, **483–485,** 484f, 485f
  DNA cloning, **467–470,** 467f, 468f, 469f, 470f
  gene therapy, **485,** 486f
  polymerase chain reaction, **479–483,** 481f, 482f, 483f
  probes, **470–472,** 471f, 472f, 473f
  restriction endonucleases, **465–466,** 465f, 466f, 467f
  restriction fragment length polymorphism, **473–479,** 475f, 476f, 477f, 478f, 479f, 480f
  Southern blotting, **473,** 474f
  transgenic animals, **486**
Biotin, 265, **381,** 381f, 392–393f
  as coenzyme, 381
    in carbonic acid transport, 267
    in carboxylation of acetyl CoA, 183
    in carboxylation of propionyl CoA, 194, 195f
    in carboxylation of pyruvate, 105, 118
  deficiency of, 381
  Dietary Reference Intakes for, 358f
  in DNA probes, 472
  structure of, 381, 381f
Biotin-linked enzyme, 444, 444f
Biotinylated probes, 472
1,3-Bisphosphoglycerate, synthesis of, 101
2,3-Bisphosphoglycerate
  in anemia, 32
  binding of fetal hemoglobin to, 33
  binding site of, 31, 31f
  binding to deoxyhemoglobin, 31, 31f
  in hypoxia, 32, 32f
  oxygen affinity of hemoglobin and, 29, 31–32, 32f
  sickle cell disease and, 36
  stripped of hemoglobin, 32
  synthesis of, 31, 31f
    in red blood cells, 101
  in transfused blood, 32
Bisphosphoglycerate mutase, 101
Blindness, vitamin A and, 384–385, 385f
Blood-brain barrier, 327
Blood clots, prostaglandins and, 214
Blood coagulation, vitamin K and, 389, 390f
Blood transfusions
  2,3-bisphosphoglycerate in, 32
  for β-thalassemia, 39
  hemosiderosis and, 39
  for sickle cell disease, 36
Blunt ends, of DNA fragment, 466, 466f
β-meander, 18f
Body fat, deposition of
  anatomical differences in, 350, 350f
  biochemical differences in, 350
Body mass index (BMI), 349, 349f, 353f, 354f
Body weight. *See also* Obesity
  effects of over- and underfeeding on, 351, 351f
  reduction in, **354–355**
  regulation of, **351–352**
  set point for, 351
  settling point for, 351
Bohr effect, 30–31
  mechanism of, 31
  source of protons that lower pH, 30, 30f
Bone marrow
  heme synthesis in, 278
  histology in normal and folate-deficient individuals, 375f
Bone(s)
  collagen in, 43
  vitamin D and, 388
Bordetella pertussis, 95

Boron, Dietary Reference Intakes for, 358f
Bovine spongiform encephalopathy, 22
Bowel, shortened, steatorrhea with, 177
Brain
  in absorptive/fed state, **326–327,** 327f
    carbohydrate metabolism in, 327, 327f
    fat metabolism in, 327, 327f
    intertissue relationships of, 328f
  communication with other metabolic organs, 307, 307f
  in energy metabolism, 307, 307f
  in fasting, **332,** 332f
  glucose requirements for, 327, 332
  ketone bodies utilized by, 196, 327, 332, 332f
  metabolic priority for, 326
  metabolic role of, 307
  oxygen consumption of, 327
Branched-chain α-amino acid aminotransferase, 266
Branched-chain α-ketoacid dehydrogenase, 111, 272–273
  deficiency in, 266
Branched-chain α-keto acid dehydrogenase complex, 266
Branched-chain amino acid(s)
  absorption of, 249
  in absorptive/fed state, 326
  catabolism of, 266–267, 266f
  degradation of, limited hepatic ability for, 324
  dehydrogenation of, 266
  oxidative decarboxylation of, 266
  transamination of, 266
Branched-chain fatty acid(s), 195, 195f
Branching enzyme, 128
Branch site, 427
Brittle bone syndrome. *See* Osteogenesis imperfecta
Broad beta disease, 231
Brown fat (adipocytes), 79
Brush border membrane
  carbohydrate digestion in, 86
  lipid absorption in, 176
Buffer pairs, 8
Buffers, 6–7
Butyric acid, 182f
Butyryl, 186

C

CAAT box, 423, 423f
CAG codon, 433, 433f
Calcitonin, 387f
Calcium
  as activator
    of glycogen degradation, 131–132, 132f
    of *isocitrate dehydrogenase,* 112
    of *PDH phosphatase,* 111
  Dietary Reference Intakes for, 358f
  insulin release and, 310
  muscle action and, 131–132, 132f
  in nitric oxide synthesis, 151
  regulation by calmodulin, 132, 132f
  vitamin D and, 386, 388, 388f
Calcidiol vitamin D, 386
Calcitriol vitamin D, 386
Calcium/phosphatidylinositol system, 94
Calmodulin
  calcium action and, 132, 132f
Caloric consumption, 365, 365f
Caloric restriction, weight reduction and, 354
Calorimeter, 359
cAMP. *See* Cyclic adenosine monophosphate
cAMP-dependent protein kinase
  glucagon and, 122, 314
  in glycogen degradation, 132
  in *pyruvate kinase* regulation, 102
cAMP-dependent protein kinase A, 134
cAMP-directed pathway
  activation of glycogen degradation by, 132–133, 133f
  inhibition of glycogen synthesis by, 133–134, 134f
cAMP phosphodiesterase, 95
cAMP regulatory protein (CRP), 452
cAMP response element binding protein (CREB), 457
cAMP response element (CRE), 457
Cancer. *See also* Anti-cancer drugs
  diet and, 361f
  DNA repair defects and, 413
  obesity and, 354
  telomeres and, 408
  ultraviolet radiation and, 412
5’ capping, in mRNA, 425–426, 426f, 457
Capric acid, 182f
Captopril, 62
Carbamate, 32
Carbamino-hemoglobin, 32
Carbamoyl phosphate, synthesis of, 253–255, 254f, 302
Carbamoyl phosphate synthetase I (CPS I), 253–255, 255f
  CPS II vs., 302, 302f
  deficiency of, 258f
Carbamoyl phosphate synthetase II (CPS II), 255
  CPS I vs., 302, 302f
Carbohydrate(s), **83–90**
  with aldehyde group (aldoses), 83, 83f
  classification of, **83–86**
  complex, 85–86
  dietary, 357, 357f, **365–367**
    acceptable distribution ranges for, 360, 360f
    blood glucose and, 366, 366f
    classification of, 365–366
    energy content of, 359, 359f
    protein-sparing effect of, 369
    requirements for, 367
  digestion of, **86–88**
    by enzymes synthesized by intestinal mucosal cells, 86–87, 87f
    in mouth, 86, 87f
    by pancreatic enzymes, 86, 87f
    in small intestine, 86, 87f
  enantiomers, 84, 85f
  epimers, 83–84, 84f
  with free carbonyl group, 83
  functions of, 83
  in glycoproteins, 165–166
  glycosidic bonds between, 83, 84f
  glycosidic bonds to non-carbohydrate structure, 84–85, 85f
  in glycosphingolipids, 208
  isomers, 83–84, 84f
  with keto group (ketoses), 83, 83f
  metabolism of
    in absorptive/fed state
      adipose tissue, 325, 325f
      cerebral, 327, 327f
      hepatic, 322–324, 323f
      skeletal muscle, 326, 326f
    in fasting, 329–330, 330f, 331, 331f, 332f
    glucagon and, 314
    insulin and, 310, 311
  simple, empiric formula for, 83
  as structural component, 83
  structure of, **83–86**
Carbon dioxide
  addition of. *See* Carboxylation
  as atom source for purine ring, 292, 293f
  as atom source for pyrimidine ring, 302, 302f
  binding of, and oxygen affinity of hemoglobin, 32
  concentration of, and oxygen affinity of hemoglobin, 30
  partial pressure of. *See* PCO_2
  in pentose phosphate pathway, 145–146
  production of, in citric acid cycle, 114f
  removal of. *See* Decarboxylation
Carbonic acid, 267
Carbonic anhydrase, 30
Carbon monoxide binding, oxygen affinity of hemoglobin, 32–33, 32f, 41f
Carbon monoxide poisoning, 33
Carbon monoxyhemoglobin (HbCO), 32
Carbon skeletons
  catabolism of, **262–267**
Carbon skeletons, of amino acids, 245, 249
Carbonyl groups, 4f
γ-Carboxyglutamate, 389, 389f
Carboxyhemoglobin, 32
β-Carboxyl, 268
γ-Carboxyl, 268
Carboxylate group, 5
Carboxylation
  of acetyl CoA, 183–184, 184f
  of glutamate, 389, 389f
  of proteins, 444, 444f
  of pyruvate, 105, 106f, 118–119, 119f
Carboxyl group, 1, 1f, 11f
  addition to proteins, 443, 444f
  dissociation of, 7, 7f
  peptide bond to amino group, 13, 14f
Cardiac muscle
  carnitine deficiency in, 192
  lipoprotein lipase in, 228
  myoglobin in, 26
  skeletal *vs.,* 326
Cardiac troponin I (cTnI), 66
Cardiolipin, 202, 202f
  synthesis of, 206
Cardiovascular disease, homocysteine in, 263, 265
Carnitine
  deficiencies of, 192
    congenital, 192
    secondary, 192
  in fatty acid oxidation, 190–192, 191f
  functions of, 190–191
  sources of, 191
Carnitine-acylcarnitine translocase, 191
Carnitine acyltransferase I (CAT-I). See Carnitine palmitoyltransferase I
Carnitine palmitoyltransferase I (CPT-I), 191
  deficiency in, 192
Carnitine palmitoyltransferase II (CPT-II), 191, 192
  deficiency in, 192
Carnitine shuttle, 190–191, 191f
Cartilage pigmentation, in alkaptonuria, 274
Caspases, 80
Catabolic pathways, 91–93, 93f

  anabolic pathways *vs.,* 93, 93f
  as convergent process, 93
  conversion of building blocks to simple intermediates in, 93, 93f
  hydrolysis of complex molecules in, 93, 93f
  oxidation of acetyl CoA in, 93, 93f
  stages of, 91–93, 93
Catabolism. *See also specific pathways*
  of amino acids, 245, 249–253, 261–267, 261f
  of branched-chain amino acids, 266–267, 266f
Catabolite gene activator protein (CAP), 452
Catalase, 25, 150, 195, 277
Cataracts, 141, 345
Catecholamine(s), 285–287
  degradation of, 286, 286f
  function of, 285
  monoamine oxidase inhibitors, 286–287, 286f
  synthesis of, 270f, 285–286, 286f
Catechol-O-methyltransferase (COMT), 286, 286f
Cation-exchange chromatography, 14–15, 15f
-CCA sequence, 425, 425f
CDP, in phospholipid synthesis, 203, 203f
CDP-choline, 203, 203f
CDP-ethanolamine, 203, 203f
cDNA, 469
Cefamandole, 390
Cefoperazone, 390
Celecoxib, 214
Celiac disease (celiac sprue), 249
Cell cycle, eukaryotic, 406–407, 407f
Cell membrane, phospholipids in, 201
Cell(s)
  communication between, 94, 94f
  senescence in, *telomerase* and, 408, 408f
  signals within, 94
Cell surface antigenicity, 165, 165f
Cell-surface receptors, 456–457, 456f
Cell surface recognition, 165, 165f
Cellulose, 84
Central dogma of molecular biology, 395, 395f
Central nervous system. *See also* Brain
  tyrosine hydroxylase in, 286
Cephalosporins, 390
Ceramidase, 208
Ceramide(s), 203f, 206, 208
Cerebrocan, 158
Cerebrosides, 209
Chaperones, 20, 23f
Chargaff Rule, 397
Chemical signaling, metabolic regulation via, 94–96, 95f
chemiosmotic hypothesis, 77–79
Chenodeoxycholic acid, 224, 224f, 225f
Chief cells, 248
Chirality, in amino acids, 5, 5f
Chloramphenicol, 153, 440f
Chocolate cyanosis, 38
Cholecalciferol (vitamin D$_3$), 386, 386f
Cholecystokinin (CCK), 176, 248
  obesity and, 310, 353
Cholelithiasis, 226–227, 226f
Cholestanol, 224
Cholesterol, **219–224**
  absorption by intestinal mucosal cells, 176
  bile salts and excretion of, 225
  concept map, 243f
  conversion to pregnenolone, 238, 238f
  coronary heart disease and, 360–361, 361f, 364–365, 364f
  degradation of, **224**
  de novo synthesis of, 219
  deposition of (plaques), 219
  dietary, 219, 364, 364f
  endocytosis of, 232, 233f
    effect on cellular homeostasis, 232–234
  esterification of, 234–235
  excretion of, 224
  functions of, 219
  hepatic regulation of, 219, 219f
  as hydrophobic compound, 219
  in lipoproteins, 219, 227, 228f, 232f
    high density, 232f
    low density, 231–234, 232f
    very low density, 232f
  metabolism of, **219–224**
  in obesity, 353
  plasma, 220, 360–361, 361f
    coronary heart disease and, 360–361, 361f
  in plasma lipoproteins, 219, 227, 227f
  as precursor of bile acids, 219
  as precursor of vitamin D, 219
  reverse transport of, 235–236, 236f
  in steroid hormone synthesis, 237–238
  structure of, **219–220,** 220f, 237f
  synthesis of, **220–224,** 220f, 221f, 222f
    rate-limiting step of, 220–221, 221f
    regulation of, 223
  therapy lowering levels of, 61, 61f, 220, 224, 224f, 361, 380
  unesterified, HDL uptake of, 234, 236f
Cholesterol-7-α-hydroxylase, 224, 225f
Cholesterol ester hydrolase (cholesterol esterase), 175
Cholesterol ester transfer protein (CETP), 235
Cholesterol gallstones, 226, 226f
Cholesterol side chain cleavage enzyme complex (desmolase), 237
Cholesteryl ester(s), 220, 220f
  degradation of, 175
  fatty acids as component of, 181
  in lipoproteins, 227, 228f, 231, 231f
  resynthesis of, 176–177
  secretion from enterocytes, 177, 177f
  synthesis of, 234, 234f
  transfer from HDL to VLDL, 231, 231f
Cholestyramine, 225
Cholic acid, 224, 224f, 225f
Choline
  Dietary Reference Intakes for, 258f
  as essential dietary nutrient, 204
  reutilization of, significance of, 204
  synthesis of phosphatidylcholine and, 203–204
Chondrodystrophies, 162
Chondroitin, 163
Chondroitin sulfates, 158, 159f
  degradation of, 163
  synthesis of, 162, 163f
Chorionic villi sampling, 476, 477f
Chromatin, 422, 460
  condensed (heterochromatin), 422, 460
  gene expression, 422
  relaxed (euchromatin), 422
  remodeling, 422, 423, 460
  structure of, 422
Chronic granulomatous disease (CGD), 150
Chromium, Dietary Reference Intakes for, 358f
Chromosome(s)
  tracing from parent to offspring, 475–476
Chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML), 298
Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 361f
Chyle, 178
Chylomicron remnants
  endocytosis of, 230–231
  fate of, 178
  formation of, 230–231
Chylomicron(s), 177f, 178, 227
  assembly of, 228
  composition of, 232f
  in diabetes mellitus type 1, 339–340, 339f
  in diabetes mellitus type 2, 344
  metabolism of, 228–231, 229f
  modification of nascent, 228
  size and density of, 227, 227f
Chyme, 178
Chymotrypsin, 56, 249f
Ciprofloxacin, 401
Cirrhosis
  ammonia levels in, 258
  α_1-antitrypsin deficiency and, 50, 51f
  jaundice in, 284
  alcoholic, 318
Cis-acting DNA sequences, 449–450, 450f
Cis-acting regulatory elements, 455–456
Cis fatty acids, 363f
Citrate
  in fatty acid synthesis, 183
  isomerization of, 111f, 112
  phosphofructokinase inhibition by, 99, 112
  synthesis of, from acetyl CoA and oxaloacetate, 111–112, 111f
  translocation from mitochondrion to cytosol, 183
Citrate synthase, 111, 114, 114f
Citric acid cycle. *See* Tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle
Citrulline, 257
  in nitric oxide synthesis, 151, 151f
  in urea cycle, 255
CK. See Creatine kinase
CK2 (MB) isoenzyme, 66
Clathrin, in endocytosis, 232, 233f
Clindamycin, 441f
Cloning, 465, 465f
Cloning, DNA, 465, 465f, **467–470,** 468f
  libraries of, 469–470
  sequencing of fragments in, 470, 471f
  vectors, 467–468, 470f
    expression, 470, 470f
    plasmid, 467
CMP-NANA synthetase, 160
Co-activators, 423
Coagulation, vitamin K and, 389, 390f
Cobalamin, 264, **375–377**. *See also* Vitamin B_{12}
Codons, 431–432, 432f
  antiparallel binding with anticodon, 437, 437f
  initiation, 438f, 439
  mutations of, 432f, 433–434, 433f, 434f
  recognition by tRNA, **437,** 437f
  termination (stop or nonsense), 432, 432f
  translation of, 431, 432f
Coenzyme A, 110, 112, 381, 381f
Coenzyme Q (CoQ), 75–76
Coenzyme(s), 54. *See also specific enzymes*
  niacin as, 380
  in *pyruvate dehydrogenase complex,* 110
  of vitamin B_{12}, 375–376, 376f
  Vitamin C as, 377
Cofactors, 54
Colchicine, 301
Colipase, 175
Collagen, **43–49**

  α chains of, 43–44, 43f
    precursors of (pro-α-chains), 45, 46f
  amino acid sequence in, 45, 45f
  assembly of, 47
  biosynthesis of, 45–48, 46–47f, 51f
  concept map, 51f
  cross-linking of, 45, 48, 48f
  degradation of, 48
  diseases, 48–49, 48f, 49f, 51f
  extracellular cleavage of procollagen molecules, 47
  fibril-associated, 44
  fibril formation in, 47f, 48
  fibril-forming, 44
  function of, 43
  glycosylation in, 45, 46f, 47
  hydroxylation in, 45, 45f, 46f, 47
  hydroxylysine in, 45, 45f, 46f, 47
  hydroxyproline in, 45, 45f, 46f, 47
  mechanical properties of, 43
  network-forming, 44, 45f
  polypeptide precursors of, 45–47
  posttranslational modification of, 45
  secretion of, 47
  signal sequence for, 45
  structural roles of, 43
  structure of, 43, 43f, 45, 51f
  triple helix of, 43f, 45, 46f
  type I, 43–44, 44f
  type II, 43–44, 44f
  type III, 44, 44f
    mutations, and Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, 48
  type IV, 44, 44f
  type IX, 44 44f
  types of, 43–44, 44f
  type VII, 44, 44f
  type XII, 44, 44f
  vitamin C and, 47, 47f
Collagenases, 48
Colon cancer,
Colon cancer, hereditary nonpolyposis, 411
Colorimetric test, 85
Combinatorial control, of transcription, 455, 455f
Common intermediate, for coupling reactions, 73
Compartmentalization, of enzymes, 55
Compartment for Uncoupling of Receptor and Ligand (CURL), 232
Competitive inhibition, of enzymes, 60–61, 60f
  Lineweaver-Burke plot, 60, 60f, 61, 61f
  by statins, 61, 61f
Complementary bases, 397, 397f, 398f
Complementary DNA (cDNA), 484
Complementary DNA (cDNA) libraries, 469–470, 469f
Complex oligosaccharides, 166, 166f
Compound heterozygote, 38
Concept map(s), **10**
  for amino acids, 11f
    metabolism of, 275f
  for cholesterol, 243f
  for diabetes mellitus, 347f
  for dietary lipid metabolism, 180f
  for DNA structure, replication, and repair, 414–415f
  for energy metabolism, integration of, 319f
  for enzymes, 67f
  fatty acid metabolism, for 199f
  for feed/fast cycle, 335f
  for fructose metabolism, 143f
  for galactose metabolism, 143f
  for gene expression, regulation of, 463f
  for gluconeogenesis, 123f
  for glycogen metabolism, 135f
  for glycolysis, 107f
  for glycoproteins, 171f
  for glycosaminoglycans, 171f
  for heme metabolism, 289f
  for macronutrients, 370f
  for monosaccharides, 89f
    dietary, 143f
  for NADPH, 155f
  for nitrogen metabolism, 259f
  for nucleotide metabolism, 305f
  for obesity, 355f
  for oxidative phosphorylation, 81f
  for pentose phosphate pathway, 155f
  for protein synthesis, 446f
  for RNA structure and synthesis, 429f
  symbols used in, 10f
  for transcription, 429f
  for triacylglycerol metabolism, 199f
  for tricarboxylic acid cycle, 115f
Congenital adrenal hyperplasias (CAHs), 238, 238f
Congenital disorders of glycosylation (CDG), 167
Conjugation, 282
Connective tissue proteins, 49. *See also* Collagen; Elastin
Consensus sequences
  for DNA replication, 399
  for RNA transcription
    eukaryotic, 423, 423f
    prokaryotic, 420, 420f
Constitutive genes, 449
Cooley anemia, 39
Cooperative binding
  of oxygen, by hemoglobin, 29, 29f
  of single-stranded DNA-binding proteins, 400
Cooperativity, of enzyme binding sites, 62–63
Copper, Dietary Reference Intakes for, 358f
Coproporphyria, hereditary, 280, 281f
Coproporphyrin, 277
Coproporphyrinogen III, 279f
Coproporphyrinogen oxidase, 281f
Coprostanol, 224
Core enzyme, 419
Core pentasaccharide, in oligosaccharides, 166, 166f
Core protein, of glycosaminoglycans, 158, 160f, 161
Cori cycle, 118, 118f
Cornea, collagen in, 43
Coronary artery disease (CAD), 219
Coronary heart disease
  alcohol consumption and, 364–365
  dietary fats and, 360–361, 361f
  plasma lipids and, 360–361, 361f
  soy protein and, 364
  triacylglycerols and, 361–362
Corticosteroid-binding globulin, 237
Corticosteroids, 237, 237f
Corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH), 239
Cortisol, 237, 237f
  action of, 240f
  in hyperglycemia, 315f, 316
  prostaglandin synthesis inhibited by, 214
  secretion of, 239
  in transcriptional regulation, 456
Cosmids, 468
Cosubstrates, 54
Counterregulatory hormones, 313, 316
Coupling reactions
  common intermediates for, 72–73
  energy, 72–73, 72f
Covalent modification
  of enzymes, 63, 64f
    in absorptive/fed state, 321f, 322
    in fasting, 328–329
    glucagon in, 122, 122f
  of proteins, 443f, 444, 444f
COX-1, 213, 214, 216f
COX-2, 213, 214
C-peptide, in insulin synthesis, 308, 308f, 309f
C-procollagen peptidases, 47
Creatine, 287–288
  degradation of, 287–288
  synthesis of, 287, 288f
Creatine kinase (CK), 65, 65f
  in creatine synthesis, 287
Creatine phosphate, 287, 288f
Creatinine, 287, 288f
Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease, 22, 23f
Crigler-Najjar I and II, 282
Cristae, of mitochondrion, 74
Cyanocobalamin, 375, 376f
Cyanogen bromide, 16f
Cyanosis, chocolate, 38
Cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP), 94
  actions of, 96f
  glucagon and, 314
  in glycogen degradation, 132–133, 133f
  glycogen synthesis inhibition by, 133–134, 134f
  hydrolysis of, 95–96, 96f
  as second messenger, 94–96, 291
  in triacylglycerol degradation, 190, 190f
3',5'-cyclic AMP-dependent protein kinase, 190
Cyclic AMP-independent PDH kinase, 110
Cyclin-dependent kinases (Cdk), 407
Cyclins, 407
Cystathionine β-synthase, 273
  deficiency in, 265, 273
Cystathioninuria, 268f, 269f
Cysteine, 4
  catabolism of, 263
  disulfide bonds of, 18f, 19
  side chains of, 3f, 4
  sulfhydryl group in, 18f, 19
  synthesis of, 265, 268
Cystic fibrosis (CF)
  ABC proteins and, 236
  mutation causing, 434
  pancreatic enzyme deficiency in, 174
  prenatal diagnosis of, 483, 483f
  steatorrhea in, 177, 248
Cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR), 174, 434, 483
Cystine
  catabolism of, 263
  disulfide bond in, 4, 18f, 19
  transport of, 250
Cystinosis, 249
Cystinuria, 249f, 250, 268f
Cytidine, 292, 292f
Cytidine triphosphate (CTP)
  NANA reaction with, 160
  synthesis of, 303, 303f
Cytochrome a + a_3, 76
Cytochrome b, 76, 76f
Cytochrome c, 25, 25f, 80
Cytochrome oxidase, 76
Cytochrome P450 (CYP), 279
Cytochrome P450 (CYP) mixed-function oxidase, 237
Cytochrome P450 monooxygenase system, 149–150, 149f
  microsomal, 149–150

  - mitochondrial, 149
- Cytochrome(s)
  - in electron transport chain, 75f, 76
- Cytoplasm, cholesterol synthesis in, 220
- Cytosine, 291, 291f, 292f, 305f
  - in codons/genetic code, 431, 432f
  - damage to and repair of, 412, 413f
  - pairing with guanine, 397, 397f, 398f
- Cytosine arabinoside (cytarabine, ara C), 409, 409f
- Cytosol, 54f
  - cholesterol synthesis in, 220
  - oxaloacetate transport to, 119, 119f
  - porphyrin synthesis in, 278
  - transfer of acetyl CoA to, 183, 183f

D

- Dactinomycin, 397, 421
- Darier disease (keratosis follicularis), 385
- dATP, 404
- D-configuration
  - of amino acids, 5, 5f
- dCTP, 404
- Deamination, oxidative
  - allosteric regulation of, 252
  - of amino acids, 245, 252–253, 252f
  - coenzymes in, 252, 252f
  - direction of reactions, 252
- “Debranching enzymes,” 128
- Decarboxylation
  - of cytosolic oxaloacetate, 119f, 120
  - of histidine, 287, 287f
  - of isocitrate, 112
  - of oxaloacetate, 119f, 120
  - oxidative
    - of α-ketoglutarate, 112, 112f
      - thiamine and, 379, 379f
    - of branched-chain amino acids, 266
      - thiamine and, 379f
    - of pyruvate, 105, 109–111, 110f
- Degeneracy, 433
- 7-Dehydrocholesterol, 386, 386f
- *7-Dehydrocholesterol-7-reductase,* 221
- Dehydroepiandrosterone, 239
- Dehydrogenation, of branched-chain amino acids, 266
- Denaturation
  - of DNA, 397–398, 398f
  - of enzymes, 57
  - of proteins, 20, 23f, 470
- Deoxyadenosine, 292f
- 5’-Deoxyadenosylcobalamin, 375, 376f
- Deoxycholic acid, 225
- Deoxyhemoglobin, 28
- Deoxyribonucleases, 397
- Deoxyribonucleoside phosphates, 291. *See also* Nucleotide(s)
- 5’-Deoxyribonucleoside triphosphate, 404
- Deoxyribonucleoside triphosphates (dNTPs), 470
  - in polymerase chain reaction, 482
- Deoxyribonucleotides
  - synthesis of, **297–298,** 297f
    - regulation of, 297–298, 298f
- 2-Deoxyribose, 292, 292f
- Deoxyribose-phosphate backbone, of DNA, 396–397, 396f, 397f
  - zigzagging of, 398, 399f
- *Deoxyribose-phosphate lyase,* 412
- Deoxythymidine, 292
- Dephosphorylation
  - of *acetyl CoA carboxylase,* 183–184
  - of enzymes, 63, 63f
  - of fructose 1,6-bisphosphate, 120–121, 120f
  - of glucose 6-phosphate, 121, 121f
  - of *hydroxymethylglutaryl (HMG) CoA reductase,* 223, 223f
  - of proteins, 95
  - of *pyruvate kinase,* 102
  - sterol-independent, 223, 223f
- Depot fat, 189
- Dermatan sulfate, 159f, 163
- *Desmolase,* 237, 238
- Desmosine cross-link, in elastin, 49, 49f
- Detoxification, in *cytochrome P450 monooxygenase* system, 149
- dGTP, 404
- Diabetes mellitus, **337–348**
  - chronic effects and prevention of, **344–346**
  - concept map, 347f
  - excessive ketone bodies in, 197
  - hemoglobin A_{1c} in, 340, 340f, 346, 346f
  - nutrition and, 361f
  - sorbitol metabolism in, 345
  - type 1 (insulin-dependent), 197, 337, **338–341,** 347f
    - autoimmune attack in, 338, 338f
    - diagnosis of, 338
    - environmental stimulus for, 338, 338f
    - fasting *vs.,* 340
    - genetic determinant for, 338, 338f
    - intertissue relationships of, 338–339, 339f
    - metabolic changes in, 338–340, 338f
    - treatment of, 340–341, 340f
  - type 2 (non-insulin-dependent), 337, **341–344,** 347f
    - in children, 337
    - exercise and risk of, 345–346, 346f
    - genetic determinant for, 338
    - incidence and prevalence of, 337
    - intertissue relationships of, 344, 345f
    - metabolic changes in, 344, 344f
    - obesity and, 342, 342f
    - progression of glucose and insulin levels in, 342–344, 342f, 343f
    - treatment of, 344
    - typical progression of, 341–342, 344f
  - type 1 *vs.* type 2, 337f
- Diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA), 197, 197f, 339
- Diabetic nephropathy, 344f, 345
  - sorbitol metabolism and, 140
- Diabetic neuropathy, 344f, 345
  - sorbitol metabolism and, 140
- Diabetic retinopathy, 344f, 345
  - sorbitol metabolism and, 140
- *Diacylglycerolacyltransferase,* 176, 177f
- Diacylglycerol (DAG), 189f
  - activation of, 203, 203f
  - in phospholipid synthesis, 201
  - in signal transmission, 205–206
- Diarrhea, osmotic, 87
- Diastereomers, 84
- *Dicer*, 459
- Dicumarol, 389
- 2’,3’-Dideoxyinosine (didanosine, ddI), 409, 409f
- Dideoxyribonucleoside triphosphates (ddNTPs), 470
- Diet. *See* Nutrition
- Dietary Reference Intakes (DRIs), **357–358,** 357f
  - comparison of components in, 358, 359f
  - guide to use, 358, 358f
- Dieting, for weight reduction, 354
- Digestive enzymes
  - deficiencies of, 88
    - diagnosis of, 88
- Dihydrobiopterin, 268
  - deficiency in, 270f
- Dihydrofolate (DHF), 303
- *Dihydrofolate reductase (DHFR),* 267, 460
  - inhibition of, 293, 294f, 303, 375
- *Dihydrolipoyl dehydrogenase,* 110, 110f
- *Dihydrolipoyl transacetylase,* 110, 110f
- *Dihydroorotase,* 302
- *Dihydroorotate dehydrogenase,* 302
- *Dihydropteridine (BH$_2$) reductase,* 270–271, 270f
- *Dihydropteridine (BH$_2$) synthase,* 270–271, 270f
- Dihydrouracil, 292f
- Dihydrouridine, 425f
- Dihydroxyacetone, 83, 83f
- Dihydroxyacetone phosphate (DHAP), 117, 189
  - in fructose metabolism, 138
  - isomerization of, 101
- 1,25-Dihydroxycholecalciferol, 240, 382, 386
- 3,4-Dihydroxyphenylalanine (dopa), 285–286, 286f
- N^6,N^6-Dimethyladenine, 292f
- 3,3-Dimethylallyl pyrophosphate (DPP), 221
- 2,4-Dinitrophenol, 78f, 79
- 1,25-diOH cholecalciferol (calcitriol), 389
- Dipalmitoylphosphatidylcholine (DPPC), 204, 208
- Dipeptides, absorption of, 249
- Diphtheria toxin, 441f
- Dipolar form, of amino acid, 7, 7f
- *Disaccharidases,* 86
- Disaccharide intolerance, 88
- Disaccharide(s), 83, 84f, 85
  - abnormal degradation of, 87–88
  - dietary, 365
  - digestion of, 86, 87
  - in glycosaminoglycans, 157, 157f
  - metabolism of, **137–144**
- Dissociation constant
  - of amino group, 7f, 8
  - of carboxyl group, 7, 7f
- Disulfide bonds, 4, 18f, 19, 297, 311–312
- Disulfiram, 317
- Diverticulosis and fiber, 366
- DNA, **395–416**
  - annealing, in polymerase chain reaction, 481–482
  - bases of, 396–397, 396f
    - abnormal, removal of, 412, 412f
    - alteration of, 410–413
    - hydrogen bonds between, 397, 398f
    - pairing of, 396–397, 396f
    - purine, 291, 291f, 305f
    - pyrimidine, 291, 291f, 305f
    - spontaneous loss of, 410–413
    - unusual, 291–292, 292f
  - B form of, 460
  - chain elongation of, 403–405, 403f
  - concept map, 414–415f
  - denaturation of, 397–398
    - in polymerase chain reaction, 481
  - double helix of, 397–398, 397f
    - antiparallel manner of, 397, 397f
    - axis of symmetry for, 397, 397f
    - base pairing in, 397, 397f
    - B form of, 398, 399f

    - Chargaff’s Rules for, 397
    - complementary nature of, 397, 397f, 398f
    - A form of, 398
    - major (wide) groove of, 397, 397f
    - minor (narrow) groove of, 397, 397f
    - strand separation in, 397–398
    - structural forms of, 398, 399f
    - Z form of, 398, 399f
  - double-strand breaks in, repair of, 412–413
  - double-stranded, 396
  - eukaryotic
    - organization of, **409–410,** 409f, 410f
    - replication of, **406–409,** 414f
  - for eukaryotic transcription, 422
  - information flow from, 395, 395f
  - linker, 410, 410f
  - melting temperature of, 397–398, 398f
  - nucleoid, 398
  - nucleoside analog inhibition of, 408–409, 409f
  - 3’→5’-phosphodiester bonds, 396–397, 396f
  - plasmid, 398
  - polarity of, 396
  - prokaryotic, 395
    - *See also* Prokaryotic DNA
    - replication of, **399–406**
  - proofreading of, 404–405, 404f
  - regulation of gene expression through modifications to, 460–461, 460f, 461f
  - regulatory sequences of, **449–450**
  - renaturation (reannealing), 398
  - repair of, **410–413,** 415f
    - base excision, 412, 413f
    - double-strand breaks, 412–413, 413f
    - homologous recombination, 413
    - methyl-directed mismatch nucleotide excision, 411-412, 411f
    - non-homologous end-joining, 413
  - single-stranded (viral), 396
  - structure of, **396–398,** 414f
  - as template for RNA, 417. *See also* RNA, synthesis (transcription) of
  - ultraviolet damage to, 412, 412f
  - variations in, resulting in restriction fragment length polymorphisms, 475, 475f, 476f
  - Z form of, 460
- DNA analysis, 15–16, 473–485, 485f. *See also specific methods*
  - forensic, 482–483
  - techniques for, 485f
- DnaA protein, 399
- DnaB, 400
- DnaC, 400
- DnaG, 402
- DNA-binding motifs, 423
- DNA-binding site, 450, 450f
- DNA cloning, **467–470,** 468f
  - libraries of, 469–470
  - sequencing of fragments in, 470, 471f
  - vectors, 467–468, 470f
    - expression, 470, 470f
- DNA fingerprinting, 482–483
- DNA fragments
  - blunt ends of, 466, 466f
  - cloned, sequencing of, 470, 471f
  - hybridization of probes to, 470
  - sticky ends of, 466, 466f
    - joining of (recombinant DNA), 467f
- *DNA gyrase,* 401
- *DNA helicases,* 400, 400f, 406
- DNA hybridization, 475
- DNA libraries, 469–470
  - complementary, 469–470, 469f
  - genomic, 469
- *DNA ligase,* 406, 406f
  - in DNA repair, 412
  - restriction endonucleases and, 466
- DNA microarrays, 483–484, 484f, 485f
- *DNA polymerase I,* 405, 406, 406f
  - in DNA repair, 411
- *DNA polymerase III,* 403–404, 404f, 405, 406
  - in chain elongation, 403–405, 404f
  - in proofreading, 404–405, 404f
- *DNA polymerase(s),* 421
  - *3’→5,’* in DNA proofreading, 404f, 405
  - chain elongation and, 403–404, 404f
  - *5’→3’ DNA polymerase,* 404–405, 404f
  - in DNA repair, 411, 412
  - eukaryotic, 407, 407f
  - in polymerase chain reaction, 480–482
  - sequencing cloned DNA fragments and, 470, 471f
- DNA probes, 465, 465f, **470–472**
  - antibodies, 472
  - biotinylated, 472
  - hybridization to DNA fragments, 470
  - oligonucleotide, 471–472, 472f
    - in sickle cell disease, 472, 472f, 473f
- DNA sequencing. *See also* DNA analysis of protein’s primary structure, 15–16
- *DNA topoisomerase(s),* 401
  - *type I,* 401, 421
  - *type II,* 401
- Docosahexaenoic acid (DHA), 363
- Dolichol, 167
- Dolichol-linked oligosaccharide, synthesis of, 167
- Domains, of polypeptides, 19
- Dopamine, in catecholamine synthesis, 286, 286f
- *Dopamine β-hydroxylase,* 286
- Double helix, of DNA, 395, 397–398, 397f
  - antiparallel manner of, 397, 397f
  - axis of symmetry for, 397, 397f
  - base pairing in, 397, 397f
  - B form of, 398, 399f
  - Chargaff’s Rules for, 397
  - complementary nature of, 397, 397f
  - A form of, 398
  - major (wide) groove of, 397, 397f
  - minor (narrow) groove of, 397, 397f
  - strand separation in, 397–398
  - structural forms of, 398, 399f
  - Z form of, 398, 399f
- Double-reciprocal plot, of enzyme action, 59, 59f
- Down-regulation, 313
- Drug absorption, Henderson-Hasselbalch equation for, 9, 9f
- dsRNA, RNA interference and, 459
- D-sugar, 84, 84f
- dTTP, 404
- Dubin-Johnson syndrome, 283
- Duchenne muscular dystrophy, 461
- Duodenum, dietary lipid emulsification in, 175
- Dyslipidemia. *See also* Hyperlipidemia/hyperlipoproteinemia
  - obesity and, 353
- Dystrophin gene, 486

E

- *Eco*RI, 466f
- Edman degradation, 15, 15f
- Ehlers-Danlos syndrome (EDS), 48, 48f
- Eicosanoids, 213
- Eicosapentaenoic acid (EPA), 363
- *Elastase,* 249f
- *Elastase,* inhibition of, 50, 50f
  - deficient, and emphysema, 50
- Elastin, 43, **49–51**
  - concept map, 51f
  - degradation of, 50
    - α_1-antitrypsin in, 50, 50f
    - disorders of, 50, 51f
  - desmosine cross-link in, 49, 49f
  - function of, 43
  - mechanical properties of, 43
  - structure of, 49, 49f
- Electrical gradient, in oxidative phosphorylation, 77–79
- Electrolyte(s), amphoteric, 9
- Electron acceptors, 74, 76
- Electron donors, 74, 76
- Electron transport chain, **73–77,** 75f
  - ATP phosphorylation in, 77–80
  - coenzyme Q in, 75–76
  - coupled to proton transport, 77–78, 78f
  - cytochromes in, 75f, 76
  - free energy release during, 76–77
  - *NADH dehydrogenase* in, 75, 75f
  - NADH formation in, 75, 75f
  - organization of, 74, 75f
  - reactions of, 75–76, 75f, 76f
  - site-specific inhibitors of, 76, 76f
  - tightly coupled with oxidative phosphorylation, 77–78
  - uncoupling from phosphorylation, 78–79
- Electrophoresis, in sickle cell disease, 36, 36f
- Electrophoretic mobility
  - of low-density lipoproteins, 227, 228f
  - of plasma lipoproteins, 227, 228f
- Emphysema, α_1-antitrypsin deficiency and, 50, 51f
- Enalapril, 62
- Enantiomers, 84, 84f, 85f
- Endergonic reactions, 70
- Endocrine signaling, 94f
- Endocytosis
  - of chylomicrons remnants, 230–231
  - of glycosphingolipids, 210
  - of intermediate-density lipoproteins, 231
  - of low-density lipoproteins, 232, 233f
  - receptor-mediated, 232, 233f
- *Endoglycosidases,* 86
- Endonuclease(s), restriction, 405, **465–466,** 465f
  - nomenclature for, 466
  - restriction sites, 466
  - specificity of, 465–466, 466f
  - “sticky” and “blunt” ends, 466, 466f, 467f
- Endopeptidase, 15, 249
- Endoplasmic reticulum
  - cholesterol synthesis in, 220
  - rough
    - apolipoprotein synthesis in, 228
    - collagen precursors in, 45, 46f

    - glycoprotein synthesis in, 166, 167, 167f, 168f
    - ribosomes in, 436–437
  - smooth, *cytochrome P450 monooxygenase* system of, 149
- Endothelium-derived relaxing factor, 151. *See also* Nitric oxide
- End-product inhibition, 293
- Energy
  - ATP as carrier of, **72–73**
  - content in food, 359, 359f
  - free, 55. *See also* Free energy
    - of activation, 55, 55f
    - change in, **70–72,** 70f
    - standard, change in, 71–72, 71f
  - production of
    - in tricarboxylic acid cycle, **113,** 113f
  - requirements in humans, **358–360**
  - use in body, 359–360, 359f
- Energy barrier, in reactions, 55
- Energy coupling, 72–73, 72f
- Energy metabolism, integration of, 307, 307f, 319f
- Energy yield
  - from fatty acid oxidation, 192, 193f
  - from glycolysis, 104
  - from oxidation of fatty acids, 189, 192, 193f
- Enhancers, in eukaryotic gene regulation, 424, 424f
- *Enolase,* 102
- *eNOS,* 151
- *Enoyl CoA hydratase,* 192f
- *3,2-Enoyl CoA isomerase,* 195
- Enteral feeding, 369
- Enterocytes
  - chylomicron assembly in, 228
  - enzymes synthesized by, carbohydrate digestion by, 86–87, 87f
  - lipid absorption by, 176
  - lipid secretion from, 177–178
  - monosaccharide absorption by, 87
- Enterohepatic circulation, 225–226, 226f
- Enterohepatic urobilinogen cycle, 283–284, 283f
- *Enteropeptidase (enterokinase),* 248
- Enthalpy, 69, 69f
- Entropy, 69, 69f
- Environmental factors, in obesity, 352
- Enzyme kinetics curve, 57, 57f
- Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays (ELISAs), 484, 485f
- Enzyme-product (EP) complex, 54
- Enzyme replacement therapy (ERT), 163, 301, 472
- Enzyme(s), **53–68**. *See also specific enzymes*
  - in absorptive/fed state, **321–322,** 322f
  - activation of, 55, 55f
  - active sites of, 54, 54f
    - chemistry of, 56
    - ionization of, 57
  - allosteric, 57, 67f
    - in committed (rate-limiting) step of pathway, 62
    - effectors or modifiers of, 62–63, 62f, 64f
    - sigmoidal kinetics curve of 57, 62f, 63
  - in alternate reaction pathway, 55
  - biotin-linked, 444, 444f
  - catalytic efficiency of, 54
    - factors in, 56
  - changes in fasting, 328–329
  - in clinical diagnosis, **64–66**
  - cofactors for, 54
  - compartmentalization of, 55
  - concept map, 67f
  - core, 419
  - degradation of, 64f
  - denaturation of, temperature and, 57
  - dephosphorylation of, 63, 63f
  - energy changes and, 55, 55f
  - in fatty acid oxidation of fatty acyl CoA, 192
  - first-order reactions of, 59, 59f
  - functions of, 53
  - inhibition of, 55, **60–62**
    - competitive, 60–61, 60f
    - feedback, 63, 63f
    - irreversible, 60
    - noncompetitive, 61–62, 61f, 62f
    - reversible, 60
  - inhibitors of, as drugs, 62
  - IUBMB classification of, 53, 53f
  - location within cell, 54f, 55
  - mechanism of action, **55–56**
    - Lineweaver-Burke plot of, 59, 59f
  - Michaelis-Menten equation for, **58–59**
  - nomenclature for, **53**
    - recommended name, 53
    - systematic name, 53, 53f
  - pancreatic, 175–176
  - pH optimum for, 58, 58f
  - phosphorylation for, 63, 63f
  - plasma assays of, 65
  - properties of, **54–55**
  - as protein catalysts, 54
  - reaction velocity of
    - competitive inhibition and, 60–61, 60f
    - concentration of enzyme and, 59, 60f
    - factors affecting, **56–58**
    - hyperbolic kinetics curve of, 57, 57f
    - initial, 57
    - maximal (V_{max}), 57, 57f
    - noncompetitive inhibition and, 61–62, 61f
    - pH and, 57–58, 58f
    - substrate concentration and, 57, 57f, 58f, 59f
    - temperature and, 57, 57f
  - regulation of, 55, **62–64,** 64f
    - allosteric, 62–63, 62f, 64f
    - by covalent modification, 63, 63f, 64f, 321f, 322
    - by product inhibition, 64f
    - by substrate inhibition, 64f
  - salvage, 409
  - serum assays of, 65
  - specificity of, 54
  - synthesis of, induction and repression of, 63–64, 321f, 322
    - in absorptive/fed state, 321–322, 322f
    - in fasting, 328–329
  - in synthesis of glycosphingolipids, 210
  - transition state and, 56, 56f
  - turnover number of, 54
  - zero-order reactions of, 59, 59f
- Enzyme-substrate (ES) complex, 54
- Enzyme substrates, 53
- Epimers, 83–84, 84f
- Epinephrine
  - in *acetyl CoA carboxylase* regulation, 183, 184f
  - in catecholamine synthesis, 285–286, 286f
  - degradation of, 286, 286f
  - in diabetes mellitus, 341
  - in energy metabolism, 307
  - in fasting, 331
  - functions of, 285
  - glucagon secretion and, 313, 313f
  - glycogen metabolism and, 132, 133f, 134, 134f
  - in hyperglycemia, 315f, 316
  - in hypoglycemia, 315, 315f
  - insulin and, 310, 310f
  - in integration of metabolism, 307
  - synthesis of, 286, 286f
  - in triacylglycerol degradation, 190f
- Epithelial cells, vitamin A and, 384
- Equilibrium, zero free energy change in, 70
- Equilibrium constant (K_{eq}), relationship with standard free energy change, 71–72
- Ergocalciferol, 386, 386f
- Erythrocyte-producing cells, heme synthesis in, 278–279
- Erythromycin, 441f
- Erythropoietic porphyrias, 280, 281f
- Erythropoietin, heme synthesis and, 279
- Escherichia coli
  - DNA replication in, 399–406
  - lactose operon of, 450–452, 451f
  - protein synthesis in, 440–441f
  - regulation of gene expression in, 450–454
  - Shine-Dalgarno sequence, 439, 454
- E sites, on ribosome, 436
- Eskimos, lactose intolerance in 88
- Essential amino acids, 261, 262f, 367
  - in protein synthesis, 434
- Estimated Average Requirement (EAR), 357, 358f
- Estimated Energy Requirement, 358
- Estradiol, 237f, 238f, 239
- Estrogens, 237, 239, 240f
- Ethanol
  - porphyria and, 280
  - pyruvate reduced to, 105, 106f
  - secondary hyperuricemia and, 301
- Ethanolamine, synthesis of phosphatidylethanolamine and, 203–204
- Ether-linkage
  - in plasma-activating factor, 202, 202f
  - in plasmalogens, 202, 202f
- Etoposide, 401
- Euchromatin, 422, 460
- Eukaryotic cell cycle, 406–407, 407f
- Eukaryotic DNA, 399, 400f
  - chain elongation of, 403–405, 403f
  - organization of, **409–410,** 409f, 410f
  - replication of, **406–409**
    - therapeutic inhibition of, 408–409, 409f
- Eukaryotic gene expression, regulation of, 449, 449f, 449f, **454–461,** 463f
- Eukaryotic gene transcription, **422–424**
  - enhancers in, 424, 424f
  - promoters in, 422–423, 423f
- Eukaryotic mRNA, 425–427, 426f
- Eukaryotic translation initiation factor (eIF2), 460, 460f
- Exercise
  - development of type 2 diabetes and, 345–346, 346f
  - energy expenditure and, 359f, 360
  - weight reduction and, 354
- Exergonic reactions, 70
- Exons, 426
- *Exonuclease*, 405
- *3’→5’ exonuclease,* 407
- *3’→5’-exonuclease,* 404f, 405
- *Exopeptidase*, 15, 249
- Expression library, 472
- Expression vector, 470, 470f

- Extracellular matrix (ECM)
  - collagen in, 43
  - collagen precursors in, 45
  - glycosaminoglycans in, 157
- Ezetimibe, 176

F

- Fabry disease, 211, 212f, 213
- FAD. *See* Flavin adenine dinucleotide
- $FADH_2$, 73, 73f, 76
  - production of, in fatty acid oxidation, 192, 193f, 195
  - in tricarboxylic acid cycle, 112f, 113
- Familial dysbetalipoproteinemia, 178, 231
- Familial hypercholesterolemia, 232
- Familial *lipoprotein lipase* deficiency, 178, 229
- Familial type III hyperlipoproteinemia, 231
- Farber disease, 212f
- Farnesylated protein, 444, 444f
- Farnesyl pyrophosphate (FPP), 221
- Fast/fasting, **327–329**
  - adipose tissue in, **331,** 331f
  - brain in, **332,** 332f, 333f
  - enzymic changes in, 328–329, 328f
  - fuel stores at beginning of, 327, 329f
  - gluconeogenesis regulation by, 123, 123f
  - glycogen in, 329, 329f
  - glycogen stores and, 126, 131, 135f
  - hypoglycemia in, 317
  - intertissue relationships of, 334f
  - ketoacidosis and, 197
  - kidney in long-term, **332**
  - liver in, **329–331,** 330f
  - *pyruvate carboxylase* in, 196
  - *pyruvate dehydrogenase* in, 196
  - resting skeletal muscle in, **331–332,** 332f
- Fasting blood glucose (FBG), 338
- Fasting hypoglycemia, 317
- Fat metabolism
  - in absorptive/fed state
    - adipose tissue, 325, 325f
    - cerebral, 327, 327f
    - hepatic, 323f, 324
    - resting skeletal muscle, 326, 326f
  - in fasting
    - adipose tissue, 331, 331f
    - hepatic, 330–331, 330f
- Fat(s)
  - body, deposition of
    - anatomical differences in, 350, 350f
    - biochemical differences in, 350
  - depot, 189
  - dietary, **360–365**
    - acceptable distribution ranges for, 360, 360f
    - coronary heart disease and, 360–361, 361f
    - effects of, 364f
    - energy content of, 359, 359f
    - monounsaturated, 361–362, 362f
    - plasma cholesterol and, 364
    - plasma lipids and, 361–364
    - polyunsaturated, 362–363, 362f
    - saturated, 361, 362f
  - metabolism of
    - in absorptive/fed state, 323f, 324, 325, 325f, 326, 326f, 327, 327f
    - in fasting, 330–331, 330f, 331, 331f, 332, 332f
  - neutral, 188
  - stored, mobilization of, **189–195**
- Fat-soluble vitamins, 373, 373f, 392–393f
- *Fatty acid α-hydroxylase,* 195
- *Fatty acid CoA synthetases (thiokinases),* 189
- *Fatty acid cyclooxygenase (COX),* 213
- Fatty acid(s), 173f
  - in absorptive/fed state, 323f, 324, 325, 325f
  - amphipathic nature of, 181
  - branched-chain, 195, 195f
  - chain lengths of, 182
  - cis, 363f
  - cis double bonds of, 182, 182f
  - common names of, 182, 182f
  - degradation of, 181f, 194f
    - in diabetes mellitus, 197
  - de novo synthesis of, **183–189**
    - NADPH sources for, 186, 186f
    - rate-limiting step of, 183–184, 184f
    - relationship with glucose metabolism, 186, 187f
  - desaturation of, 188
  - dietary
    - coronary heart disease and, 360–361, 361f
    - monounsaturated, 361–362, 362f, 364f
    - polyunsaturated, 362–363, 362f, 364f
    - saturated, 361, 362f, 364f
  - elongation of, 187
  - essential, 182
  - esterified, 181
  - even-numbered, saturated, 194f
  - in fasting, 331, 331f
  - fate of, 189
  - free (unesterified), 181
    - absorption by intestinal mucosal cells, 176
    - fate of, 178
    - metabolism of, 173–180
    - oxidation of
    - as product of lipid degradation, 175–176
    - transport of, 190
  - as fuel source for resting skeletal muscle, 332
  - long-chain (LCFA), 181
    - transport into mitochondria, 190–192, 191f
  - melting temperature of, 182
  - metabolism of, **181–200,** 181f, 199f
  - monounsaturated, 182, 361
    - oxidation of, 195
  - n-3 (omega-3), 182, 363, 364f
  - n-6 (omega-6), 183, 363, 364f
  - with odd number of carbons, oxidation of, 193–195, 195f
  - oxidation of
    - α, 195, 195f
    - β, 190–195, 191f, 192f
    - disorders in, 192
    - energy yield of, 189, 192, 193f
    - enzymes involved in, 192f
    - in fasting, 330, 330f
    - mitochondrial pathway for, 190–192, 191f
    - in peroxisome, 195
    - UCP1 (thermogenin) in, 79
  - plasma, 181
  - polyunsaturated, 182, 188
  - as prostaglandin precursor, 181
  - resynthesis of, 176–177
  - saturation of, 182, 182f, 361
  - short- and medium-chain, transport into mitochondria, 192
  - storage of, 188–189, 188f
  - stored, mobilization of, **189–195**
  - as structural components, 181
  - structure of, **181–182,** 181f
  - trans, 363–364, 363f, 364f
  - transport of, 190–192
  - as triacylglycerol component, 181–183, 188–189
    - release of, 190
  - unsaturated, 182, 182f
    - oxidation of, 195
  - very long-chain, 187
    - oxidation of, 195
- *Fatty acid synthase,* 184–186, 185f, 187
  - pantothenic acid in, 381
- Fatty acyl CoA
  - enzymes in β-oxidation of, 192, 192f
  - long-chain, 183
  - in phosphatidic acid synthesis, 189f
  - in triacylglycerol synthesis, 189, 189f
- *Fatty acyl CoA dehydrogenase,* 193
- *Fatty acyl-CoA synthetase (thiokinase),* 176
- *Fatty acyl CoA transferase,* 208
- Fatty liver, 23, 3181
- Favism, 153
- Favorable processes, 72f, 73
- F-cell, 33
- Febuxostat, 301
- Fecal sterols, neutral, 224
- Fed state, 321–327
  - adipose tissue in, **324–325**
    - carbohydrate metabolism in, 325, 325f
    - fat metabolism in, 325, 325f
  - allosteric effectors in, 321, 321f
  - brain in, **326–327**
    - carbohydrate metabolism in, 327, 327f
    - fat metabolism in, 327, 327f
  - concept map, 335f
  - covalent modification in, 321f, 322
  - enzymic changes in, **321–322,** 321f
  - glycogen stores in, 126, 131, 135f
  - glycolysis in, 100, 100f, 323, 323f, 325, 325f
  - induction-repression of enzyme synthesis in, 321f, 322
  - intertissue relationships in, 328f
  - liver in, **322–324,** 323f
    - amino acid metabolism in, 323f, 324
    - carbohydrate metabolism in, 322–324, 322f
    - fat metabolism in, 322f, 323f, 324
  - resting skeletal muscle in, **325–326**
    - amino acid metabolism in, 326, 326f
    - carbohydrate metabolism in, 326, 326f
    - fat metabolism in, 326, 326f
  - substrate availability in, 321, 321f
- Feedback inhibition, 63, 63f
- Feed/fast cycle, **321–336**. *See also* Fast/fasting; Fed state
  - concept map, 335f
- Feed-forward regulation, 102
- *FEN1,* 406
- *Ferrochelatase,* 62, 279, 281f
- Ferrous iron (Fe^{2+}), in heme, 25, 25f
- Fetal hemoglobin (HbF), 33, 33f
  - binding of 2,3-BPG to, 33
  - in β-thalassemia, 38–39, 38f
  - synthesis of, 33, 33f
- α-Fetoprotein, detection of, 476
- Fetoscopy, 476
- Fiber
  - dietary, 365–366, 366f
    - acceptable distribution ranges for, 360f
    - actions of, 366, 366f
  - functional, 366
  - insoluble, 366
  - soluble, 366
  - total, 366
- Fibrates, 226
- Fibril-associated collagens, 44, 44f
- Fibril-forming collagens, 44, 44f

Fibrillin
  gene, mutation, and Marfan's syndrome, 49
  tropoelastin interaction with, 49
Fibrous proteins, **43–52**. *See also* Collagen; Elastin
  concept map, 51f
  summary, 52
Fight-or-flight reactions, 285, 307
First-order reactions, 59, 59f
Fischer projection formula, 84, 85f
Fish oil, 363, 363f
Flanking sequences, 481
Flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD), 73, 380–381, 380f
  as coenzyme
    for *branched-chain α-ketoacid dehydrogenase,* 266
    for α-ketoglutarate dehydrogenase complex, 112
    for *NADPH oxidase,* 150
    for *nitric oxide synthase,* 151
    for *pyruvate dehydrogenase complex,* 110, 110f
  in fatty acid oxidation, 195
  in mitochondrial matrix, 74
  reduced form of, 76, 380–381. *See also* FADH$_2$
  in tricarboxylic acid cycle, 112–113, 112f
Flavin mononucleotide (FMN), 75, 380–381, 380f
  as coenzyme, for *nitric oxide synthase,* 151
  in electron transport chain, 75, 75f
  in nitric oxide synthesis, 151
  oxidation of NADH by, 76, 77f
  reduced form of (FMNH$_2$), 381
    in electron transport chain, 75, 75f
Fluoride, Dietary Reference Intakes for, 358f
Fluoroacetate, 112
Fluorocitrate, 112
5-Fluorouracil, 303
Fluvastatin, 224
FMN. *See* Flavin mononucleotide
FMNH$_2$, 381
  in electron transport chain, 75, 75f
Foam cells, 234, 235f
Folate trap hypothesis, 376
Folic acid analogs
  action of, 374–375, 374f
  dihydrofolate reductase inhibited by, 374f, 375
  purine synthesis inhibited by, 294f, 295, 374f, 375
Folic acid (folate), 262, 265, **374–375**
  active form of (tetrahydrofolic acid), 392f
    in one-carbon metabolism, 267, 267f
    in thymidine monophosphate synthesis, 303–304, 304f, 374
  in amino acid metabolism, **267**
  as carrier of "one-carbon" units, 267
  deficiency of, 267
    anemia and, 374–375, 374f
    diagnosis of, 262
    neural tube defects and, 375
  dietary intake of
    cardiovascular risk and, 265, 265f
    Dietary Reference Intakes for, 358f
  function of, 374, 392f
  in homocystinuria, 273
  structural analogs of, 293, 294f
  supplementation of, 375
  synthesis of, drug inhibiting, 374–375, 374f
    Vitamin B$_{12}$ deficiency and, 375, 377
Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH), 239f, 240
Food
  energy content in, 359
  thermic effect of, 359
Forensic analysis of DNA samples, 482–483
Formaldehyde, 267
Formic acid, 182f
  as one-carbon unit, 267
N-Formiminoglutamate (FIGlu), 262
N^{10}-Formyltetrahydrofolate, 292, 293, 439
Forssman antigen, 209
Forward reactions, free energy change in, 70
Fragile X syndrome, 433, 433f
Frame-shift mutations, 434, 434f
Free amino acid, 1, 1f
Free energy, **69,** 69f
  of activation, 55, 55f
    catalyzed *vs.* uncatalyzed, 55, 55f
    lower, in alternate reaction pathway, 55
  change in, **70–72**
    coupling of negative and positive, 70
    in forward and backward reactions, 70
    negative, 70, 70f
    positive, 70, 70f
    as predictor of reaction direction, 70
    reactant and product concentrations and, 70–71, 71f
    relationship with enthalpy and entropy, 69, 69f
    zero, in equilibrium, 70
  release, during electron transport, 76–77
  standard, change in, 71–72
    additive
      in consecutive reactions, 72
      in pathways, 72
    in ATP hydrolysis, 73
    as predictor under standard conditions, 71
    relationship with K$_{eq}$, 71–72
    relationship with standard reduction potential, 77
Free radicals, oxygen-derived, 150
Fructokinase, 137
  deficiency of, 138
  in fructose phosphorylation, 137–138, 138f
Fructose, 83, 365
  absorption of intestinal mucosal cells, 87
  dietary intake of, 365
  dietary sources of, 137
  glucose conversion to, via sorbitol, 139–140
  as isomer, 83, 84f
  metabolism of, **137–140,** 137f, 139f
    concept map, 143f
    disorders of, 138
    kinetics of, 138
  phosphorylation of, 137–138, 138f
Fructose 2,6-bisphophonate
Fructose 1,6-bisphosphatase, 99, 120–121, 120f, 122, 123
  in absorptive/fed state, 321, 322f, 324
  in fasting, 329
Fructose 1,6-bisphosphate
  cleavage of, 100, 100f
  dephosphorylation of, 120–121, 120f
  in gluconeogenesis, 120–121, 120f
  in glycolysis, 100, 101f
  in *pyruvate kinase* regulation, 102
  regulation of
    by energy levels within cell, 120–121
    by fructose 2,6-bisphonate, 120f, 121
    by glucagon levels, 120f, 121
Fructose 2,6-bisphosphate
  in absorptive/fed state, 321
  in fructose 1,6-bisphosphonate regulation, 120f, 121
  glucagon and, 121
  insulin and, 100, 100f
  in *phosphofructokinase-1* regulation, 99, 100f
Fructose intolerance, 301
Fructose 1-phosphate
  cleavage of, 138, 139f
  fructose conversion to, 138
Fructose 6-phosphate, 147
  in amino acid synthesis, 161, 161f
  glucokinase regulated by, 98–99
  isomerization of glucose-6-phosphate to, 99, 99f
  mannose conversion to, 138
  in pentose phosphorylation pathway, 147, 147f
  phosphorylation of, 99–100, 100f
Fructose 1-phosphate aldolase, 138
Fructosuria, essential, 139f
L-Fucose (Fuc), 166
Fumarase (fumarate hydratase), 113
Fumarate
  amino acids that form, 263, 263f
  hydration of, 112f, 113
  succinate oxidation to, 112f, 113
  in urea cycle, 253–255, 254f
Furanose, 84

G

Galactocerebroside, 209, 209f
Galactocerebroside 3-sulfate, 210, 210f
Galactokinase, 140
  deficiency of, 141f, 142
D-Galactosamine, 157
Galactose
  absorption by intestinal mucosal cells, 87
  attached to UDP, 140–141, 141f
    in biosynthetic reactions, 141
    as carbon source for glycolysis or gluconeogenesis, 140–141
  dietary sources of, 140
  epimers, 83–84
  as isomer, 83, 84f
  in lactose, 142
  metabolism of, 137f, **140–142,** 141f
    concept map, 143f
    disorders of, 141–142, 141f
  phosphorylation of, 140
Galactosemia
  classic, 141, 141f
  galactokinase deficiency and, 141f, 142
Galactose 1-phosphate, 140
Galactose 1-phosphate uridyltransferase, 140, 141, 141f
β-Galactosidase (lactase), 87, 450
  deficiency of, 140, 141
β-*D-Galactosyltransferase,* 142
Gallstones, 226–227, 226f
Gangliosides, 209–210, 209f
Gangliosidosis, GM$_1$, 212f
Gastric-inhibitory polypeptide (GIP), 310
Gastric juice, 248
Gastric lipase, 173, 174
Gastrointestinal hormones. *See also* Cholecystokinin; Secretin
  insulin secretion and, 310
Gaucher disease, 211, 211f, 212f, 213, 472
Gemfibrozil, 226
Gene chip, 484
Gene expression

  - analysis of, **483–485**
    - DNA microarrays of, 483–484, 484f
    - enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays, 484, 485f
    - HIV, detecting exposure to, 484, 485f
    - northern blots, 483
    - proteomics, 485
    - western blots, 484, 485f
  - regulation of, 449, 449f
    - concept map, 463f
    - eukaryotic, 449, 449f, **454–461,** 463f
    - prokaryotic, 449f, **450–454,** 463f
- Gene replacement therapy, 485, 486f
- Genes, housekeeping, 449
- Genes, constitutive, 449
- Gene therapy, **485,** 486f
- Genetic code, **431–434**
  - characteristics of, 432–433
  - for codon translation, 431, 432f
  - degenerate, 432f, 433
  - nonoverlapping and commaless, 433
  - redundancy of, 433
  - specificity of, 432
  - universality of, 432, 432f
- Genetic factors, in obesity, 352, 352f
- Gene transcription
  - eukaryotic, **422–424**
    - combinatorial control of, 455, 455f
    - enhancers in, 424, 424f
    - promoters in, 422–423, 423f
    - regulation of, 449, **454–461**
  - hormone response elements and, 240, 241f
  - prokaryotic, **419–421**
    - antibiotics targeting, 421, 422f
    - elongation in, 420–421, 420f
    - hairpin turn in, 421, 421f
    - initiation of, 419–420, 420f
    - regulation of, 449, **450–454**
    - termination of, 421, 421f
- Genome, human, 465
- Genomic DNA libraries, 469
- Geranyl pyrophosphate (GPP), 221
- Gestational diabetes, 338, 342
- Ghrelin, 353, 353f
- Gilbert syndrome, 282
- Globin-like genes, 34
- Globin(s). *See also* Hemoglobin(s); Myoglobin
  - β, 427
  - β^S-globin mutation
    - detecting, 472, 473f, 477, 478
  - chains, synthesis of, 35, 35f
  - genes
    - α, 34, 34f, 35f
    - β, 34f, 35, 35f
    - δ, 35
    - ε, 35
    - γ, 35
    - organization of, **34–35,** 34f
    - ζ, 35
- Globoid cell leukodystrophy, 212f
- Globosides, 209
- Globular proteins, **25–42**. *See also* Hemoglobin; Myoglobin
  - in aqueous solution, 18
  - tertiary structure of, **18–20**
- Glucagon, 307, **313–314,** 319f
  - in absorptive/fed state, 321
  - in *acetyl CoA carboxylase* regulation, 183, 184f
  - allosteric effectors and, 122
  - carbohydrate metabolism and, 314
  - composition of, 313
  - concept map, 319f
  - covalent modification of enzyme activity by, 122, 122f
  - in diabetes mellitus, 341
  - fructose 1,6-bisphosphate and, 121
  - gluconeogenesis and, 122
  - glycogen metabolism and, 132–133, 133f
  - glycolysis and, 105, 105f
  - in *HMG CoA reductase* regulation, 223
  - in hyperglycemia, 315f, 316
  - in hypoglycemia, 315, 315f, 316
  - induction of enzyme synthesis by, 122
  - insulin action composed by, 313, 319f
  - in integration of metabolism, 307
  - lipid metabolism and, 314
  - mechanism of action, 314, 314f
  - metabolic effects of, 314
  - protein metabolism and, 314
  - secretion of, 313–314
    - amino acids and, 313, 313f
    - coordination with insulin secretion, 309, 313
    - epinephrine and, 313, 313f
    - glucose and, 313, 313f
    - inhibition of, 313f, 314
    - stimulation of, 313–314
  - synthesis of, 313
  - in transcriptional regulation, 456
  - triacylglycerols and, 190
- *Glucoamylase*, 87
- Glucocerebroside, 209
- Glucocorticoid receptors, 456
- Glucocorticoid response element (GRE), 456
- Glucocorticoids, 237
- Glucogenic amino acids, **261,** 262f, 266
- *Glucokinase*
  - in glucose phosphorylation, 98–99, 98f, 99f
    - in absorptive/fed state, 322, 323f
  - *hexokinase vs.,* 98
  - insulin and, 99, 105, 105f, 310, 313
  - kinetics of, 98, 98f
  - regulation of, 98–99, 99f, 105, 105f
- Gluconeogenesis, 102, **117–124,** 117f, 125
  - in absorptive/fed state, 323–324
  - allosteric activation of acetyl CoA and, 119
  - allosteric inhibition by AMP and, 121
  - concept map, 123f
  - Cori cycle and, 118, 118f
  - ethanol consumption and, 317, 317f
  - in fasting, 329–330, 330f
  - glucagon levels and, 121–122
  - glycolysis *vs.,* reactions favoring, 117, 121
  - reactions unique to, **118–121**
  - regulation of, **121–122**
  - relationship to other metabolic reactions, 117f
  - substrates for, **117–118**
    - availability of, 122
  - UDP-galactose as carbon source for, 140–141, 141f
- Glucopyranose, 84
- Glucoregulatory systems, 315f, 316
- *β–Glucuronidase* deficiency, 164f
- D-Glucosamine, 157
- *Glucosamine-N-acetyltransferase* deficiency, 164f
- Glucose, 365
  - absorption by intestinal mucosal cells, 87
  - in absorptive/fed state, 321
  - α-D, in glycogen, 126
  - anomeric forms, 85f
  - attached to uridine diphosphate (UDP-glucose), 126–127, 127f
  - blood, dietary carbohydrates and, 366, 366f
  - brain requirements for, 327, 332
  - breakdown of. *See* Glycolysis
  - in collagen, 45
  - conversion to fructose, 139–140, 140f
  - conversion to pyruvate, 96–103
  - in diabetes mellitus, 342, 343f
  - dietary carbohydrates and, 366, 366f
  - dietary intake of, 365
    - blood glucose levels and, 366, 366f
  - elevated blood levels of, 337. *See also* Diabetes mellitus
  - enantiomers, 85f
  - as energy source, 125
  - epimers, 83–84, 84f
  - in fasting, 329–331, 330f, 332, 333f
  - formation of. *See* Gluconeogenesis
  - glucagon secretion and, 313, 313f
  - hypoglycemia and, 314, 315f
  - in insulin secretion, 310, 310f
  - isomers of, 83, 84f
  - in lactose, 142
  - low blood levels of, 314–318. *See also* Hypoglycemia
    - regulatory systems activated by, 315f, 316
  - metabolism of, relation to palmitate synthesis, 186, 187f
  - in normal weight and obese subjects, 342, 342f
  - phosphorylation of, 98–99, 98f
    - in absorptive/fed state, 322
    - *glucokinase* in, 98–99, 98f, 99f
    - *hexokinase* in, 98, 98f
  - in regulation of gene expression, 451f, 452, 452f
  - sources of, 125
  - storage of, 125
  - synthesis of. *See* Gluconeogenesis
  - in transcription from bacterial operons, 452
  - transport of
    - in absorptive/fed state, 325, 325f, 326, 326f
    - into cells, **96–97**
    - characteristics of, 312, 312f
    - in fasting, 331, 332f
    - insulin and, 312, 312f
    - Na$^+$-independent facilitated diffusion, 96–97, 97f
    - Na$^+$-monosaccharide cotransporter system of, 96, 97
- Glucose-alanine cycle, 253
- Glucose 1,6-bisphosphate, 126, 130
- *Glucose 6-phosphatase,* 121, 130, 457
  - deficiency of, 130f
  - in fasting, 329, 332
- Glucose 1-phosphate
  - conversion to glucose 6-phosphate, 130
- Glucose 6-phosphate
  - in absorptive/fed state, 326
  - dehydrogenation of, in pentose phosphate pathway, 145–146, 146f

  dephosphorylation of, 121, 121f
  in fasting, 331
  in gluconeogenesis, 121
  from glucose 1-phosphate, 130
  in glycolysis, 98–99
  hexokinase inhibited by, 98
  isomerization of, 99, 99f
Glucose 6-phosphate dehydrogenase, 148
  deficiency in, 103, **152–154,** 153f
    G6PD A$^-$, 153
    Mediterranean, 153, 153f, 154
    precipitating factors in, 153
    variants of, 153, 153f
  molecular biology of, 154
  in red blood cells, role of, 152–153, 152f
Glucose 6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD), 145–146
Glucose 6-phosphate translocase, 121, 130
  deficiency of, 130f
Glucose tolerance test, 338
Glucose transporters, 97, 97f
  GLUT-1, 97
  GLUT-2, 98, 310, 311
    in absorptive/fed state, 322, 323f
  GLUT-3, 97
  GLUT-4, 97
  GLUT-5, 97
  GLUT-7, 97
  GLUT-14, 97
  insulin-sensitive, 312, 312f
  isoforms of, 97
    specialized functions of, 97
α(1→4)-*Glucosidase (acid maltase),* 130
  deficiency in, 129f
Glucuronic acid, 150, 161
D-Glucuronic acid, 157, 157f, 161
β-Glucuronidase, deficiency in, 164f
Glutamate dehydrogenase, 252–253, 252f, 256, 262
  allosteric regulators of, 252
  coenzymes of, 252, 252f
  in fasting, 332
Glutamate (glutamic acid), 19f
  α-helix disrupted by, 16–17
  in amino acid deamination, 252–253, 253f
  carboxylation of, 389, 389f
  catabolism of, 262
  degradation of proteins containing, 247
  as product of transamination, 250–252, 251f
  as proton donor, 5
  replacement of
    by lysine, in hemoglobin C disease, 36f, 37
    by valine, in sickle cell disease, 36, 36f
  side chains of, 3f, 5
    carboxylate group in, 5
  synthesis of, 267–268, 268f
  in urea cycle, 253–256
Glutamate:oxaloacetate transaminase (GOT). See Aspartate aminotransferase (AST)
Glutamate pyruvate transaminase (GPT). See Alanine aminotransferase (ALT)
Glutamate semi-aldehyde, 262
Glutaminase, 253, 253f, 256, 256f, 257
  in fasting, 332
  intestinal, 256
  renal, 256
Glutamine
  ammonia from, 256–257, 256f
  in ammonia transport, 257, 257f
  as atom source for purine ring, 292, 293f
  as atom source for pyrimidine ring, 302, 302f
  catabolism of, 262
  side chains of, 3f, 5
  synthesis of, 256f, 268
Glutamine:phosphoribosylpyrophosphate amidotransferase, 293, 296
Glutamine synthase, 257, 257f
Glutamine synthetase, 253, 253f, 268
γ-Glutamylcysteinylglycine, 148
Glutathione, 152
  as antioxidant, 148
  structure of, 148, 148f
Glutathione peroxidase, 148, 150
Glutathione reductase, 148
Gluten (gliadin), 249
Glycation, 168
Glycemic control, in diabetes mellitus, 345–346, 346f
Glycemic index, 366, 366f
Glycemic load, 366
Glycemic response, 366
Glyceraldehyde, 83, 83f
Glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate, 96, 111, 161
  oxidation of, 101, 101f
  in pentose phosphate pathway, 147
Glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate dehydrogenase, 101, 103
Glycerol
  fate of, 178, 190
  as gluconeogenic precursor, 117
  oxidation of, 117
  in phospholipids, 201–202, 201f
  phosphorylation of, 117
Glycerol kinase, 117, 189, 190
  in absorptive/fed state, 325
Glycerol phosphate
  in phosphatidic acid synthesis, 189f
  synthesis of, 188f, 189
  in triacylglycerol synthesis, 189, 189f
Glycerol 3-phosphate, 311, 324
Glycerol phosphate dehydrogenase, 76, 80, 117, 189, 190
Glyceroneogenesis, 190, 331
Glycerophosphate shuttle, 79f, 80
Glycerophospholipids, 201–202, 201f
  antigenic, 202
  degradation of, 207–208, 207f
  synthesis of, 201f, 202
Glycerylphosphoryl-base, 176
Glycine
  as atom source for purine ring, 292, 293f
  in β-bends, 17
  bile acids conjugated to, 225, 225f
  catabolism of, 263, 263f
  in collagen, 45
  in creatine synthesis, 287, 288f
  interconversion with serine, 263, 263f, 268
  optical properties of, 5
  in porphyrins, 278
  side chains of, 2f
  synthesis of, 268
Glycochenodeoxycholic acid, 225, 225f
Glycocholic acid, 175, 175f, 225, 225f
Glycogen, 84, 85
  allosteric regulation of, 131–132, 131f
  branches of
    formation of, 128
    removal of, 128–130
  chains of
    elongation of, 127
    shortening of, 128
  degradation of (glycogenolysis), 125, 125f, **128–131,** 129–130f
    AMP and, 132
    calcium and, 131–132, 132f
    cAMP-directed pathway and, 132–133
    in fasting, 329, 329f
    lysosomal, 130–131
    regulation of, **131–134,** 133f
  in fasting, 126, 131, 135f
  during fed state, 126, 131, 135f
  as fuel source for resting skeletal muscle, 332
  fuel stores of, before fast, 329, 329f
  function of, **125–126**
  hepatic, 125–126, 131f
  hormonal regulation of, 133–134, 134f
  metabolism of, **125–136**
    concept map, 135f
  muscle, 125–126, 131f
  storage of, 125
    fluctuations in, 126
  structure of, **125–126,** 126f
  synthesis of (glycogenesis), 125, 125f, **126–128,** 127f
    in absorptive/fed state, 323, 326, 326f
    inhibition by cAMP-directed pathway, 133–134
    primer for initiation of, 126–127
    regulation of, **131–134,** 133f, 134f
Glycogenesis. *See* Glycogen, synthesis of
Glycogenin, 127, 127f
Glycogenolysis. *See* Glycogen, degradation of
Glycogen phosphorylase, 128, 128f, 129f, 130, 134
  in absorptive/fed state, 322, 322f
  activation of, 132–133, 133f
  allosteric control of, 131–132, 131f
  AMP and, 132–133, 133f
  deficiency in, 129f
  in fasting, 329
  inactive b form of, 133, 133f
  phosphorylation of, 63
Glycogen phosphorylase kinase, 329
Glycogen storage diseases, 129–130f
  type Ia (Von Gierke disease), 121, 130f
  type II (Pompe disease), 129f, 131
  type V (McArdle syndrome), 129f
Glycogen synthase, 184
  in absorptive/fed state, 323
  active a form of, 133, 133f
  allosteric control of, 131–132, 131f
  elongation of glycogen chains by, 127, 127f, 128
  in glycogen synthesis, 126–127, 127f
  inactive b form of, 133, 133f
  inhibition of glycogen synthesis and, 133–134, 134f
  phosphorylation of, 63
Glycolipids, **208–213**. *See also* Glycosphingolipids
  fatty acids in, 173f
Glycolysis, 91f, 92f, **96–108**
  in absorptive/fed state, 100, 100f, 323, 323f, 325, 325f
  aerobic, 96–102, 96f
    energy yield from, 104
  anaerobic, 96, 96f, 102–104, 104f
  concept map, 107f
  control point and rate-limiting step of, 99–100, 100f
  energy generation phase of, 101–104, 101f, 104f
  energy investment phase of, 97–99, 98f, 100f
  energy yield from, 104
  enzyme deficiencies in, 102–103
  during fasting, 100, 100f, 105

- gluconeogenesis favored over, reactions required for
- glyconeogenesis *vs.,* 121
- intermediates of, in pentose phosphate pathway
- metabolic characteristics of, 106f
- reactions of, **97–104**
- regulation of, 105f
  - hormonal, **104–105,** 105f
- UDP-galactose as carbon source for, 140–141, 141f

- Glycoprotein(s), **165–171**
  - carbohydrates in, 165–166
  - concept map, 171f
  - functions of, 165f
  - lysosomal degradation of, **170**
  - negatively charged, low density lipoproteins as, 232
  - oligosaccharides of, structure of, **165–166,** 166f
  - proteoglycans *vs.,* 165
  - synthesis of, **166–169,** 166f, 168f
  - transport through Golgi apparatus, 166–167, 167f
  - transport to lysosomes, 169, 169f
- Glycoprotein storage disease, 169, 170
- Glycosaminoglycans (GAGs), **157–164**
  - accumulation in mucopolysaccharidoses, **163,** 164f
  - acidic sugars in, 157f, 161, 162f
  - amino sugars in, 157f, 160, 161f
  - carbohydrates in, synthesis of, 162, 163f
  - classification of, 158
  - concept map, 171f
  - core protein of, 161
  - degradation of, **162–163,** 164f
    - lysosomal, 163
  - distribution of, 158, 159f
  - extracellular or cell-surface, phagocytosis of, 163
  - glycoproteins *vs.,* 165
  - linkage region of, 158, 159f, 162
  - monosaccharide units of, 157, 157f
  - repeating disaccharide unit of, 157, 157f
  - resilience of, 158, 158f
  - structure of, **157–158,** 157f, 159f
    - relationship with function, 157–158
  - sulfate groups of, addition of, 162, 163f
  - synthesis of, **158–162**
- *Glycosidases,* 86
- Glycoside bonds
  - between monosaccharides, 85
- Glycosidic bonds, 83, 84f
  - $\alpha(1\rightarrow4)$, 128, 128f, 130
  - α and β, 85
  - carbohydrate to noncarbohydrate structures, 85, 86f
  - in glycogen, 126, 126f, 127f, 128
    - cleavage of, 128, 128f, 129f
  - hydrolysis of, 86, 86f
  - N-, 86, 86f
    - in glycoproteins, 165
  - naming, 85
  - O-, 86, 86f
    - in glycoproteins, 165
    - in glycosaminoglycans, 158
    - in glycosphingolipids, 209, 209f
- Glycosphingolipids, **208–213**
  - acidic, 209–210, 209f
  - antigenic, 209
  - as cell surface receptors, 209
  - concept map, 217f
  - degradation of, **210–213**
    - disorders of, 211–213, 211f, 212f
  - neutral, 209, 209f
  - structure of, **209–210,** 209f
  - synthesis of, **210–213,** 211f
- Glycosylation
  - in collagen, 45, 46f, 47
  - of proteins, 443f, 444
- N-Glycosylation, 167
- Glycosyl phosphatidylinositol (GPI), 206
- Glycosyl residue, 86
- *Glycosyltransferases,* 85, 166–167, 167
- Glycochenodeoxycholic acid, 225
- *Glycogen phosphorylase kinase*
  - in absorptive/fed state, 322
- Glyoxylate, 263
- GM_1 gangliosidosis, 212f
- GMP. *See* Guanosine monophosphate (GMP)
- Golgi apparatus
  - apolipoprotein synthesis in, 228
  - glycoprotein synthesis in, 166, 167f, 168f
  - glycoprotein transport through, 166, 167f
  - glycosaminoglycan synthesis in, 158
  - glycosphingolipid synthesis in, 210
- Gonad(s). *See also* Ovary(ies); Testes
  - steroid hormone secretion from, 240
- Gout, 299–301, 300f, 301f, 305f
  - diagnosis of, 299, 301f
  - in Lesch-Nyhan syndrome, 296f, 297, 300
  - primary, 299–300
  - saturnine, 299
  - secondary, 300–301
  - tophaceous, 299, 301f
  - treatment of, 300f, 301
- G0 phase, of cell cycle, 407, 407f
- G1 phase, of cell cycle, 406, 407f
- G2 phase, of cell cycle, 407, 407f
- G-protein coupled membrane receptor, 94f, 95, 132, 213
- G-proteins, 94f, 95
- Graft rejection, prevention of, 295f, 296
- Granulomatosis, chronic, 150
- Greek key motif, 18f
- Griseofulvin, 279
- Ground substance, 157
- Growth, vitamin A and, 384
- Growth hormone (GH), in hyperglycemia, 315f, 316
- GTP. *See* Guanosine triphosphate
- *GTPase,* 95
- Guanine, 291, 291f, 299, 305f, 396f
  - in codons/genetic code, 431, 432f
  - damage to and repair of, 412, 413f
  - pairing with cytosine, 397, 397f, 398f
- *Guanine-7-methyltransferase,* 425
- Guanine diphosphate-L-fucose, 166
- Guanine diphosphate-mannose, 166
- Guanine monophosphate (GMP), IMP conversion to, 295–296, 295f
- Guanosine triphosphate-dependent regulatory proteins, 95, 95f
- Guanosine triphosphate (GTP)
  - in amino acid deamination, 252
  - in AMP synthesis, 295
  - in protein synthesis, 437
- *Guanylate cyclase,* 151
- *Guanyltransferase,* 425
- Gynoid or pear-shaped, 350, 350f

H

- *Hae*III restriction endonuclease, 466, 466f
- Haemophilus aegyptius, 466
- Hairpin (stem-loop) structure, 453, 453f
- Hairpin turn, in prokaryotic gene transcription, 421, 421f
- Hartnup disorder, 250
- Haworth projection formula, 84, 85f
- HDL. *See* High-density lipoproteins
- Health, obesity and, 349, 354
- Heart. *See also* Cardiac muscle
  - lactate consumption in, 103
- Heart attack. *See* Myocardial infarction
- Heart disease
  - alcohol consumption and, 364–365
  - dietary fats and, 360–364
  - isoenzymes and, 66, 66f
  - lipoprotein (a) in, 237
  - plasma cholesterol and, 360–361, 361f
  - soy protein and, 364
  - triacylglycerols and, 361–364
- Heat shock proteins, 20
- Heinz bodies, 152, 152f
- Helix-turn-helix motif, 450, 452, 452f
- Heme, 25, 277
  - as coenzyme, for *nitric oxide synthase,* 151
  - degradation of, 282–284, 282f, 283f, 284f
  - function of, 25
  - metabolism of, 277–278
    - concept map, 289f
  - structure of, 25, 25f, 26f
  - synthesis of, 278–279, 278f, 279f, 280f, 281f
    - defects in, 278–282, 280f
    - end product inhibition by hemin, 278–279
    - rate-controlling step of, 278
  - uroporphyrinogen conversion to, 279, 279f
- Heme group
  - of *catalase,* 25
  - of cytochromes, 25, 25f
  - of hemoglobin, 25
  - of myoglobin, 25, 26, 26f
- Heme-heme interactions, 29–30
- *Heme oxygenase* system, 282
- Hemeproteins, 277
  - globular, **25–34**. *See also* Hemoglobin; Myoglobin
- Hemin, 278–279
- Hemoglobin A, 27, 29–33, 33
- Hemoglobin A_2, 33–34, 33f
- Hemoglobin A_{1c}, 33f, 34, 34f
  - in diabetes mellitus type 1, 340, 340f
- Hemoglobin Bart's (Hb Bart's)
  - in α-thalassemia, 39, 39f
  - in β-thalassemia, 38f, 39
- Hemoglobin C disease, 36f, 37
- Hemoglobin F, 33f
- Hemoglobin H disease, 39, 39f
- Hemoglobinopathies, **35–39,** 42f
- Hemoglobin(s)
  - α-helix, 27
  - carbamino, 32
  - concept map, 41f
  - developmental changes in, 33, 33f
  - embryonic (Hb Gower 1), 33
  - fetal (HbF), 33
    - in β-thalassemia, 38–39, 38f

  function of, 27, 41f
  genes
    β family, 34f, 35, 35f
    δ, 35
    ε, 35
    α family, 34, 34f, 35f
    γ, 35
    organization of, **34–35,** 34f
    ζ, 35
  heme group of, 26
  heme-heme interactions in, 29–30
  high-oxygen affinity form of, 28, 28f
  low-oxygen affinity form of, 28, 28f
  minor, 33–34
  normal adult, 33–34, 33f
  oxygen affinity/binding of, 27–33, 28f
    allosteric effectors and, 27, 29–33
    2,3-bisphosphoglycerate and, 31–32, 31f, 32f
    carbon dioxide binding and, 32
    carbon monoxide binding and, 32–33, 32f
    cooperative, 29–30, 29f
    PCO_2 and, 29
    pH and, 30, 30f
    PO_2 and, 29, 29f, 30
    saturation in, 28
  oxygen dissociation curve for, 29, 29f, 31
    sigmoidal shape of, significance of, 30
  oxygen loading and unloading by, 30, 30f
  R form (relaxed) of, 28, 28f
  structure of, 27–28, 27f, 28f, 41f
    changes with deoxygenation and oxygenation, 26, 27–28, 28f
    quaternary, 27–28
  T form (deoxy or taut) of, 28, 28f
Hemoglobin SC disease, 38
Hemoglobin S disease. *See* Sickle cell disease
Hemolytic anemia
  glycolytic enzyme deficiencies and, 102–103
  G6PD deficiency and, 152, 153
Hemolytic jaundice, 284, 284f, 289f
Hemophilia A, 461
Hemoproteins, **25–34,** 25f. *See also* Hemoglobin; Myoglobin
Hemosiderosis, 36
Henderson-Hasselbalch equation, 6–9
  application of, 7–8
  for bicarbonate buffer system, 9, 9f
  derivation of, 6
  for drug absorption, 9, 9f
  for titration of amino acids, 7–9
Heparan sulfamidase deficiency, 164f
Heparan sulfate, 159f
  deficient degradation of, 163, 164f
Heparin, 159f
Hepatic lipase, 228
Hepatic porphyrias, acute, 280, 281f
Hepatic steatosis, 231
Hepatitis
  alcoholic, 318
  ammonia levels in, 258
  jaundice in, 284
Hepatocellular jaundice, 284, 289f
Hepatocytes, 449
Hereditary coproporphyria, 280, 281f
Hereditary fructose intolerance (HFI), 138, 139f
Hereditary hyperammonemia, 258
Hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC), 411
Heterochromatin, 422, 460
Heterogeneous nuclear RNA (hnRNA), 425
Heterotropic effectors, 63
Hexokinase, 121
  in absorptive/fed state, 326
  broad substrate specificity of, 98, 98f
  in fructose phosphorylation, 137–138, 138f
  glucokinase vs., 98
  in glucose phosphorylation, 98
  inhibition of, 98
  in mannose phosphorylation, 138
Hexokinase D, 98
Hexokinase/glucokinase, 229
Hexose monophosphate shunt/pathway. *See* Pentose phosphate pathway
D-hexoses, in oligosaccharides, 165
High altitude
  2,3-bisphosphoglycerate levels and, 32, 32f
  sickle cell disease and, 36
High-density lipoproteins (HDLs), 234–236, 321f
  alcohol consumption and, 365
  composition of, 232f
  coronary heart disease and, 360–361
  dietary fats and, 361–364
  electrophoretic mobility of, 227, 228f
  in esterification of cholesterol, 234–235
  as “good” cholesterol carrier, 236
  HDL_2, 235, 236
  HDL_3, 235, 236
  metabolism of, 234–236, 236f
  n-6 fatty acids and, 363
  obesity and, 353
  as reservoir for apolipoproteins, 234
  reverse transport of cholesterol, 235–236, 236f
  size and density of, 227, 227f
  uptake of unesterified cholesterol by, 234, 236f
  VLDL transfer of triacylglycerol to, 231
High fructose corn syrup 55 and 42, 365
High-mannose oligosaccharides, 166, 166f, 168
Histamine, 287
  synthesis of, 287, 287f
Histidase, 262, 263f
  deficiency of, 269f
Histidine, 5
  α-helix disrupted by, 17
  catabolism of, 262, 263f
  decarboxylation to histamine, 287, 287f
  degradation of, 262, 263f
  distal, 26, 26f
  in histamine synthesis, 287f
  in myoglobin, 26, 26f
  proximal, 26, 26f
  side chains of, 3f, 5
Histidinemia, 268f, 269f
Histone acetyltransferases (HATs), 422, 422f, 455
Histone deacetylases (HDACs), 422, 422f
Histones, 409–410, 409f
  acetylation of, 422
HMG CoA. *See* 3-Hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl CoA (HMG CoA)
Hogness box, 423
Holoenzymes, 54, 419
Homocysteine, 263
  conversion to cysteine, 264–265, 264f, 268
  fate of, 264
  methionine conversion to, 263, 264f
  remethylation of, 264
  in vascular disease, 263, 265, 265f
Homocysteine-lowering therapy, 265
Homocystinuria, 268f, 269f, 273, 273f
Homogentisic acid, 274
Homogentisic acid oxidase, 274
Homologous recombination repair, 413
Homotropic effectors, 62–63
Homovanillic acid (HMA), 286
Hormone response elements (HREs), 240, 241f, 455, 456
Hormone(s)
  of adipose tissue, 352–353
    leptin, 353, 353f
  counterregulatory, 313, 316
  gastrointestinal, 310
  in glycogen regulation, 133–134, 134f
  in glycolysis regulation, **104–105,** 105f
  in *HMG CoA reductase* regulation, 223
  in lipid regulation, 176, 176f
  plasma, 307
  steroid. *See* Steroid hormones
  in triacylglycerol degradation, 190, 190f
Hormone-sensitive lipase (HSL), 190, 190f
  in absorptive/fed state, 322, 322f, 325
  in fasting, 329
  insulin and, 311
Housekeeping genes, 449
Human genome, 465
Human Genome Project, 465, 470
Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), 408
  detecting exposure to, 484, 485f
  RNA interference and, 459
Hunter syndrome, 163, 164f
Huntington disease, 433, 433f
Hurler syndrome, 164f, 472
Hyaluronic acid, 159f, 163
Hybrid duplex, in DNA replication, 402
Hybridization, in situ, 472
Hydantoins, 279
Hydratase, 195
Hydration
  of fumarate, 112f, 113
Hydration therapy, for sickle cell disease, 36
Hydride ions, electron transport via, 76
Hydrochloric acid, 248
Hydrochloric acid, in protein digestion, 247
Hydrogen atoms, electron transport via, 76
Hydrogen bonds
  in α-helix, 16
  amino acid, 4, 4f, 19, 19f
  in β-sheets, 17, 17f
  between complementary bases, 397, 397f, 398f
  in hemoglobin, 27–28, 28f
  interchain, 17
  intrachain, 17
Hydrogen peroxide
  reduction of, 148–149, 148f
  superoxide conversion to, 150
Hydrolases, 53f
Hydrolysis
  of cAMP, 95–96, 96f
  in catabolic pathways, 93
Hydrophobic interactions, 19, 19f
  in hemoglobin, 27, 28f
Hydrophobic side chains, 4
Hydrops fatalis, 39, 39f
Hydroxyacyl-ACP dehydratase, 186
Hydroxyallysine, in collagen biosynthesis, 48
3-Hydroxybutyrate, 195–196, 196f, 262, 330, 330f
3-Hydroxy-butyrate dehydrogenase, 196
25-Hydroxycholecalciferol, 386

25-Hydroxycholecalciferol 1-hydroxylase, 386
  regulation of, 386–388
5-Hydroxy-6,8,11,14 eicosatetraenoic acid (5-HPETE), 214, 215f
α-Hydroxylase, 195
11-β-Hydroxylase deficiency, 238f
17-α-Hydroxylase deficiency, 238f
21-α-Hydroxylase deficiency, 238f
Hydroxylation
  in collagen, 45, 45f, 46f, 47
  of proteins, 444, 444f
Hydroxylysine, in collagen, 45, 45f, 46f, 47
Hydroxymethylbilane, 279, 279f
Hydroxymethylbilane synthase, 281f
3-Hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl CoA (HMG CoA), 220, 220f
3-Hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl CoA (HMG CoA) reductase, 220–221, 232
  gene expression of, sterol-dependent, 222–223, 223f
  inhibition of, 232
  phosphorylation and dephosphorylation of, 223, 223f
  regulation of, 222–224, 223f
3-Hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl CoA (HMG CoA) synthase
  in cholesterol synthesis, 220, 220f
  in ketone body synthesis, 196, 196f
Hydroxymethylglutaryl CoA reductase (HMG CoA reductase), 61
Hydroxyproline
  in collagen, 45, 45f, 46f, 47
  in elastin, 49
3-β-Hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase deficiency, 238f
5-Hydroxytryptamine. *See* Serotonin
5-Hydroxytryptophan, 287, 287f
Hydroxyurea, 36, 298
hyperammonemia, 257–258, 258f
  acquired, 258
  hereditary, 258
Hyperbilirubinemia, 284, 284f
Hypercalcemia, vitamin D and, 389
Hypercholesterolemia, 224, 226
Hyperglycemia
  in diabetes mellitus
    type 1, 338–339, 339
    type 2, 344
  glucose phosphorylation in, 98
  sorbitol and, 140
Hyperlipidemia/hyperlipoproteinemia
  niacin for, 380
  type I, 178, 229
  type II, 232
  type IIb, 380
  type III, familial, 231
Hyperoxaluria, primary Type 1, 253
Hyperphosphatemia, 389
Hypertension
  diabetes mellitus and, 346
  obesity and, 354f
  treatment of, 239
Hypertriacylglycerolemia, 229
  in diabetes mellitus
    type 1, 339–340
    in type 2, 344
Hyperuricemia, 296, 299
Hypervitaminosis A, 385–386
Hypocalcemia, 388, 389
Hypochlorous acid (HOCl), 150
Hypoglycemia, **314–318,** 319f
  alcohol-induced, 317–318, 317f
  brain damage in, 327
  characteristics of, 314
  concept map, 319f
  fasting, 317
  glucagon and, 315, 315f, 316
  glucoregulatory systems in, 315f, 316
  insulin-induced, 316, 316f
  postprandial, 316
  symptoms of, 314–315
    adrenergic, 314
    neuroglycopenic, 314
  in type 1 diabetes, 340–341, 341f
  types of, 316–318
Hypoglycemia unawareness, 341
Hypoglycemic agents, for diabetes mellitus type 2, 344
Hypoparathyroidism, 389
Hypopigmentation, in PKU, 271
Hypoprothrombinemia, 390
Hypoxanthine, 299
Hypoxanthine-guanine phosphoribosyltransferase (HGPRT), 296, 296f, 301
Hypoxia, 2,3-bisphosphoglycerate in, 32, 32f

I

I-cell disease, 169
Icterus. *See* Jaundice
Iduronate sulfatase deficiency, 164f
L-Iduronic acid
  in glycosaminoglycans, 157, 157f, 161
  synthesis of, 161
α-L-Iduronidase deficiency, 164f
Immunoblots, 484, 485f
Immunodeficiency syndromes. *See also* Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV); Severe combined immunodeficiency disease (SCID)
  DNA repair defects and, 413
Immunoglobulin G (IgG), 165
Immunoglobulins, production of, 461, 461f
IMP. *See* Inosine monophosphate
Inborn errors of metabolism, 270–274
Incretins, 310
Indomethacin, 214, 301
Infarction, in sickle cell disease, 36, 37f
Inflammatory processes, in gout, 299
Influenza, nutrition and, 361f
Initiation codons, 438f, 439
Initiator tRNA, 438f, 439
Inner membrane particles, 74
iNOS, 151
Inosine, for boosting 2,3-BPG levels in blood, 32
Inosine monophosphate dehydrogenase, 295f
Inosine monophosphate (IMP)
  conversion to AMP and GMP, 295–296, 295f
  as parent purine nucleotide, 293
  in purine synthesis, 293–296, 294f
  synthesis of, 293
Inositol 1,4,5-triphosphate (IP_3), in signal transmission, 205–206, 205f
Inositol triphosphate (ITP), in intracellular signaling, 205, 205f
Insig protein, 223
In situ hybridization, 472
Insulin, **307–313,** 353
  in absorptive/fed state, 328f
  in *acetyl CoA carboxylase* regulation, 184, 184f
  anabolic effects of, 308
  carbohydrate metabolism and, 311
  concept map, 319f
  deficiency of
    absolute, in type 1 diabetes mellitus, 336, 336f
    relative, in type 2 diabetes mellitus, 341
  degradation of, 308
  epinephrine and, 310, 310f, 319f
  exogenous. *See* Insulin therapy
  fructose 2,6-bisphosphate and, 100, 100f
  glucagon opposing action of, 314, 319f
  glucagon secretion and, 309, 313
  glucokinase and, 310, 313
  glycerol phosphate synthesis and, 189
  glycogen degradation and, 133
  glycolysis and, 105, 105f
  in *HMG CoA reductase* regulation, 223
  hormone-sensitive lipase and, 190
  in hypoglycemia, 314–318, 315f
  hypoglycemia and
    alcohol consumption and, 318
  in integration of metabolism, 307
  lipid metabolism and, 311
  mechanism of action, 311–313, 311f
  membrane effects of, 312, 312f
  metabolic effects of, 311
  phosphofructokinase and, 313
  protein synthesis and, 311
  secretion of
    amino acids and, 310
    by β cells, 310, 310f
    coordination with glucagon secretion and, 309, 314
    gastrointestinal hormones and, 310
    glucose levels and, 310, 310f
    inhibition of, 310
    during onset of type 1 diabetes mellitus, 338, 338f
    regulation of, 309–310, 310f, 313
    stimulation of, 309–310
  in signal transduction, 311f, 312
  structure of, 308, 308f
  synthesis of, 308, 308f
  time course of actions, 313
  triacylglycerol degradation and, 189, 190f
Insulinase, 308
Insulin-dependent glucose transport (GLUT-4) proteins, 331
Insulin-induced hypoglycemia, 316, 316f
Insulin receptor, 311–312, 311f
Insulin receptor substrate (IRS) proteins, 311f, 312
Insulin resistance
  causes of, 343
  obesity and, 342
  in type 2 diabetes mellitus, 342–343, 343f
Insulin resistance syndrome, 353
Insulin-sensitive glucose transporters (GLUT-4), 312
Insulin therapy
  hypoglycemia induced by, 316, 316f, 340–341, 340f
  for type 1 diabetes mellitus, 340, 340f
    standard *vs.* intensive, 340, 340f
  for type 2 diabetes mellitus, 344
Insulitis, 338
Intercellular communication, 94, 94f
Intermediate-density lipoproteins (IDLs), 231
International Union of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology (IUBMB), enzyme nomenclature of, 53, 53f
Intestinal mucosal cells
  chylomicron assembly in, 177f, 228, 229f
  enzymes synthesized by, carbohydrate digestion by, 86–87, 87f
  lipid absorption by, 176, 177f
  lipid secretion by, 177f, 178

    monosaccharide absorption by, 87
Intestine(s)
    bacterial action in, ammonia from, 257
    cholesterol synthesis in, 220
    small
        dietary lipid processing in, 175
        dietary nucleic acid degradation in, 298, 299f
        oligopeptide digestion in, 249
    urobilins formation in, 283–284
    vitamin D and, 388
Intracellular communication, 94, 94f, 205–206, 205f
Intrinsic factor, 377
Introns, removal of, 426–427, 427f
Iodine, Dietary Reference Intakes for, 358f
Ionic interactions
    of amino acids, 19, 19f
    of hemoglobin, 27–28, 28f
Iron
    Dietary Reference Intakes for, 358f
    in heme, 25, 25f
    metabolism of, 458–459, 458f
    in porphyrins, 277
Iron-deficiency anemia, 374, 374f
Iron-regulatory proteins (IRPs), 458–459, 458f
Iron responsive elements (IREs), 458, 458f
Iron-sulfur center, of *NADH dehydrogenase,* 75, 75f
Islets of Langerhans, 307, 308f, 313, 316
Isocitrate
    citrate isomerization to, 111f, 112
    oxidation and decarboxylation of, 111f, 112
Isocitrate dehydrogenase, 112, 114, 114f, 183
Isoelectric form, of amino acid, 7, 7f
Isoelectric point, for amino acids, 8–9
Isoenzymes, 65–66, 65f
    heart disease and, 66, 66f
    quaternary structure of, 65–66
Isoforms, 21, 231, 457f
Isoleucine
    in absorptive/fed state, 324
    α-helix disrupted by, 17
    catabolism of, 266–267, 266f
    formation of succinyl CoA and, 265, 266
    hydrophobic interactions and, 19f
    for maple syrup urine disease, 273
    side chains of, 2f
Isomaltase, 87
Isomaltase-sucrase deficiency, 88
Isomerases, 53f
Isomerization
    of citrate, 111f, 112
    of dihydroxyacetone phosphate, 101
    of glucose-6-phosphate, 99, 99f
Isomers, 83–84, 84f
Isoniazid, 377f, 378
Isopentenyl pyrophosphate (IPP), 221
Isoprenoids, 221
Isotretinoin, 385, 385f, 386
Isovaleryl Co A dehydrogenase deficiency, 266
Isozymes, 21, 213
ITP. *See* Inositol triphosphate

J

Jaundice, 284–285, 284f, 285f
    bilirubin concentration in, determination of, 285
    hemolytic, 284, 284f, 289f
    hepatocellular, 284, 289f
    neonatal, 284f, 285, 285f, 289f
        phototherapy for, 285, 285f
    obstructive, 284–285, 289f
    types of, 284–285
Joule, 359

K

Karyotyping, 476
Keratan sulfates, 158, 159f, 162–163
Keratins, 16, 382
α-Keto acid dehydrogenase, 147
Ketoacidosis alcoholic, 318
ketoacidosis alcoholic, 318
Ketoacidosis, type 1 diabetes and, 338–339
α-Ketoacid(s), 118
    in amino acid catabolism, 245
    as gluconeogenic precursors, 117–118
    as product of oxidative deamination, 252–253
    as product of transamination, 250–252
    synthesis of nonessential amino acids from, 267–268, 268f
3-Ketoacyl-ACP reductase, 186
3-Ketoacyl-ACP synthase, 184
β-Ketoacyl-CoA thiolase, 192f
α–Ketobutyrate, 265
Ketogenesis, 196, 196f, 197f
    in fasting, 330–331
Ketogenic amino acids, **262,** 262f, 266
α-Ketoglutarate
    in fasting, 332
    formation of
        in amino acid catabolism, 250–252, 250f, 252f
        from amino acids, 262
    in gluconeogenesis, 118
    oxidative decarboxylation of, 112, 112f
        thiamine and, 379, 379f
    in tricarboxylic acid cycle, 111f, 112, 112f
α-Ketoglutarate dehydrogenase complex, 111–112, 111f, 114, 114f, 147, 266
    thiamine pyrophosphate as coenzyme for, 378f, 379, 379f
Ketohexokinase. See Fructokinase
Ketolysis, 196–197
Ketone bodies, 118, **195–197**
    cerebral use of, 195, 327, 332, 332f
    excessive production, in diabetes mellitus, 197, 339
    in fasting, 330–331, 330f
    glucagon and, 314
    synthesis by liver, 196, 196f, 197f
    use by peripheral tissue, 196–197, 197f
Ketonemia, 197
Ketonuria, 197
Ketoses, 83, 83f
Ketosis
    in type 2 diabetes, 344
    in type 2 diabetes mellitus, 339
Kidney(s)
    cytochrome P450 monooxygenase system of, 149
    fructose metabolism in, 138
    gluconeogenesis in, 117
    in long-term fasting, **332**
Kidney stones, 250
Knock-in mice, 485
Knockout mice, 486
Krabbe disease, 212f
Krebs cycle. *See* Tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle
Kwashiorkor, 369, 369f
Kyphotic, 49

L

lac genes
    lacA, 451f, 452
    lacI, 451f, 452
    lacY, 451f, 452
    lacZ, 451f, 452
α-Lactalbumin, 142
β-Lactam antibiotics, 62
Lactase, 87, 88, 140, 141
Lactate, 96
    consumption of, 103
    in Cori cycle, 118, 118f
    formation in muscle, 103
    in gluconeogenesis, 118
    pyruvate reduction to (anaerobic glycolysis), 103–104, 104f
Lactate dehydrogenase, 103, 111
Lacteals, 178
Lactic acidosis, 104
    congenital, 111
Lactose, 85, 140, 365
    in regulation of gene expression, 451f, 452
    synthesis of, **142,** 142f
Lactose intolerance, 88, 88f
Lactose operon, 450–452, 451f
Lactose synthase, 142
Lactosylceramide, 209
Lagging strand, 402, 403f
Lanosterol, 221
Laparoscopic cholecystectomy, 226
L-configuration, of amino acids, 5, 5f
LDH. See Lactate dehydrogenase
LDL. *See* Low-density lipoproteins
L-dopa (levodopa), 286
Lead, noncompetitive inhibition of enzymes by, 61–62
Leading strand, 402, 403f
Lead poisoning, 279, 281f, 374f
Leber hereditary optic neuropathy, 80
Lecithin. *See* Phosphatidylcholine
Leigh syndrome, 111
Leishmania, 206
Leptin
    in diabetes mellitus, 343
    in obesity, 352–353, 352f, 353f
Lesch-Nyhan syndrome, 296–297, 296f, 297f
Leucine, 19f
    in absorptive/fed state, 324
    catabolism of, 262, 266–267, 266f
    degradation of, 266, 266f
    for maple syrup urine disease, 273
    side chains of, 2f
Leucine zipper, 423, 450, 457
Leukemia, 262
Leukodystrophy
    globoid cell, 212f
    metachromatic, 212f
Leukotriene(s), 213–214
    LTA_4, 213f, 215f
    LTB_4, 215f
    LTC_4, 215f
    synthesis of, 214, 215f
Ligandin, 282
Ligases. See also specific ligases
    classification of, 53f
Lignoceric acid, 182f, 207
Limit dextrin, 128, 129f
Lineweaver-Burk plot, 59, 59f, 60, 60f, 61f
Lingual lipase, 173, 174
α-1,4 linkages, 126, 126f, 127, 128
α-1,6 linkages, 126f
Linker DNA, 410, 410f
Link proteins, in proteoglycan aggregates, 158, 160f
Linoleic acid, 182f, 213, 214f, 363

- α-Linoleic acid, 182, 182f
- α-Linolenic acid, 363
- Lipid(s)
  - complex. *See also* Glycosphingolipids; Phospholipids
    - metabolism of, **201–218**
  - dietary
    - absorption by intestinal mucosal cells, 176, 177f
    - concept map, 180f
    - coronary heart disease and, 361–364
    - degradation by pancreatic enzymes, 174f, 175–176
    - digestion of, 173–178, 174f
    - emulsification in small intestine, 175
    - hormonal regulation of, 176, 176f
    - malabsorption of, 177, 178f
    - metabolism of, **173–180,** 180f
    - in neonates, 174
    - processing in stomach, 173–174
    - use by tissues, 178
  - in fasting, 332, 332f
  - functions of, 173
  - glucagon and, 314
  - insulin and, 311
  - 43f
  - plasma levels of, dietary fats and, 361–362, 361f
  - secretion from enterocytes, 177–178, 177f
  - structure of, 173, 173f
- Lipid storage disease, 211
- Lipoic acid
  - in arsenic poisoning, 111
  - as coenzyme
    - for *branched-chain α-ketoacid dehydrogenase,* 266
    - for α-ketoglutarate dehydrogenase complex, 112
    - for *pyruvate dehydrogenase complex,* 110
- Lipoprotein(a), in heart disease, 237
- *Lipoprotein lipase,* 178, 228–230, 311
  - in absorptive/fed state, 325, 326
  - activation of, 231
  - deficiency of, 178, 228–229
  - degradation of triacylglycerol by, 228–229
  - in diabetes mellitus
    - type 1, 339–340
    - type 2, 344
  - in fasting, 331
  - insulin and, 311
  - regulation of, 229–230
- Lipoprotein(s)
  - cholesterol in, 227, 228f
  - composition of, 227, 231, 232f
  - concept map, 243f
  - electrophoretic mobility of, 227, 228f
  - in heart disease, 237
  - high density. *See* High-density lipoproteins (HDLs)
  - intermediate density (IDL), 231
  - low density. *See* Low-density lipoproteins (LDLs)
  - plasma, **227–237**
  - size and density of, 227, 227f
  - very low density. *See* Very-low-density lipoproteins (VLDLs)
- *Lipoxins, 214*
- *Lipoxygenase,* 214
- *5-Lipoxygenase,* 214
- Lisinopril, 62
- Liver
  - in absorptive/fed state, **322–324,** 323f
    - amino acid metabolism in, 323f, 324
    - carbohydrate metabolism in, 322–324, 323f
    - fat metabolism in, 323f, 324
    - intertissue relationships of, 328f
  - ammonia transport to, 253
  - bile acid synthesis in, 149, 224
  - bilirubin uptake by, 282, 283f
  - cholesterol synthesis in, 220
  - chylomicron remnants in, 178, 230
  - communication with other metabolic organs, 207, 207f
  - *cytochrome P450 monooxygenase system* of, 149
  - D-amino acids metabolized by, 253
  - detoxification in, 149
  - in diabetes mellitus
    - type 1, 333, 339f
    - type 2, 342, 344, 345f
  - in energy metabolism, 307, 307f
  - in fasting, **329–331,** 330f
    - carbohydrate metabolism in, 329–330, 330f
    - fat metabolism in, 330–331, 330f
    - intertissue relationships of, 334f
  - fatty, 231
  - fatty acid synthesis in, 183, 324
  - fructose metabolism in, 138
  - gluconeogenesis in, 117
  - glycogen in, 125–126, 126f, 131, 135f
  - heme degradation in, 282, 282f
  - heme synthesis in, 278
  - lactate consumption in, 103
  - vitamin A transport/release to, 382, 383f
- Liver disease
  - aminotransferases in, 65, 251–252, 251f
  - ammonia levels in, 257–258
- Liver parenchymal cells, glucose phosphorylation in, 98
- L-Methylmalonyl CoA, 194
- Long-chain fatty acids (LCFA), 181
  - transport into mitochondria, 190–192, 191f
- *Long-chain fatty acyl CoA synthetase (thiokinase),* 190
- Lovastatin, 224
- Low-density lipoproteins (LDLs), 227, 227f, 231–234, 232f
  - chemically modified, uptake by macrophage scavenger receptors, 234, 235f
  - composition of, 231, 232f
  - coronary heart disease and, 360–361
  - dietary cholesterol intake and, 364, 364f
  - electrophoretic mobility of, 227, 228f
  - endocytosis of, 232, 233f
  - functional receptors for, deficiency of, 232
  - metabolism of, 230f, 231–234, 233f
  - as negatively charged glycoproteins, 232
  - n-6 fatty acids and, 363
  - niacin and, 380
  - oxidation of, 234, 235f
  - size and density of, 227, 227f
  - VLDL conversion to, in plasma, 231
- Lower body obesity, 350, 350f
- Low-fat diet, 362f
- Lungs, α_1-antitrypsin in, 50, 50f
- Lung surfactant
  - phosphatidylcholine in, 204
  - in respiratory distress syndrome, 204
- Luteinizing hormone (LH), 239f, 240
- *Lyases,* 53f
- Lynch syndrome, 411
- Lysine, 266
  - α-helix disrupted by, 17
  - as carnitine source, 191
  - catabolism of, 262
  - in collagen, 47, 48, 48f
    - hydroxylation of, 45, 45f, 46f, 47
  - in elastin, 49
  - in hemoglobin C disease, 37
  - in histones, 410
  - ionic bonds and, 19f
  - side chains of, 3f, 5
  - transport of, 250
- Lysophosphatidic acid, 189f
- Lysophosphatidyl choline, 175, 234
- Lysophosphoglyceride, 207
- *Lysophospholipase,* 176
- Lysophospholipid, 175
- Lysosomal degradation, of glycosaminoglycans, 163
- Lysosomal enzymes, 247
- Lysosome(s), 54f
  - in degradation
    - of chylomicron remnants, 230
    - of glycogen, 130–131
    - of glycophospholipids, 210
    - of glycoproteins, **170**
    - of glycosaminoglycans, 162–163, 164f
    - of proteins, 246–247
  - glycoprotein transport to, 169, 169f
- *Lysyl hydroxylase*
  - deficiency of, and Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, 48
  - hydroxylation in collagen by, 47
- *Lysyl oxidase*
  - in collagen biosynthesis, 48, 48f
  - tropoelastin polypeptides deaminated by, 49

M

- Macrocytic anemia, 374, 374f
- Macronutrients, 357
  - acceptable distribution ranges for, **360,** 360f
  - caloric consumption and distribution of calories, 365, 365f
  - concept map, 370f
- Macrophages, nitric oxide and, 151
- Macrophage scavenger receptors, uptake of chemically modified LDL by, 234
- Mad cow disease, 22
- Magnesium, Dietary Reference Intakes, 358f
- Malaria, resistance to
  - *G6PD* deficiency and, 152
  - sickle cell trait and, 37, 38f
- Malate
  - formation from α-ketoglutarate, 112f
  - formation of oxaloacetate from, 113, 113f
  - fumarate hydration to, 112f, 113
  - in gluconeogenesis, 119, 119f
  - oxaloacetate reduction to, 119, 119f
  - oxidation of, 113, 113f
  - in urea cycle, 254f, 255
- Malate-aspartate shuttle, 79f, 80
- *Malate dehydrogenase,* 113, 119

Malic enzyme. See NADP$^+$-dependent malate dehydrogenase
Malnutrition, protein-calorie, 369
Malonyl CoA
  carboxylation of acetyl CoA to, 183–184, 184f
  carnitine shuttle inhibited by, 191, 191f
Malonyl CoA-ACP-transacylase, 184
Maltase, 87
Maltose, 85, 365
Mammary glands, lactating, fatty acid synthesis in, 183
Manganese, Dietary Reference Intakes for, 358f
Mannose
  conversion to fructose 6-phosphate, 138
  epimers, 83, 84
  as isomer, 83, 84f
Mannose 6-phosphate, 138
α-Mannosidosis type 1, 170
Maple syrup urine disease (MSUD), 266, 268f, 269f, 272–273
  classification of, 272–273
  screening and diagnosis of, 273
  treatment of, 273
Marasmus, 369
Marfan's syndrome, 49
Maternal PKU syndrome, 272
Maturity onset diabetes of the young (MODY), 99
Maximal velocity (V_{max})
  allosteric effectors and, 62–63, 62f
  of enzyme-catalyzed reactions, 57, 57f
    competitive inhibition and, 60, 60f
    noncompetitive inhibition and, 61, 61f
McArdle syndrome, 129f
Mediterranean diet, 362, 362f
Medium-chain fatty acids, 192
Medium-chain fatty acyl CoA dehydrogenase (MCAD) deficiency, 193
Megaloblastic anemia, 267, 374, 375, 393f
Melanin, 288
  in albinism, 273
  in phenylketonuria, 271
Melanocytes, 288
α-Melanocyte stimulating hormone (α–MSH), 353
Melatonin, 287
Melting temperatures
  of DNA, 398, 398f
  of fatty acids, 182
Membrane protein anchoring, 206, 206f
Membrane transport systems, 79–80
Menadione, 389
Menaquinone (vitamin K_2), 389
Menkes disease, 48
Mental retardation, in phenylketonuria, 271, 271f
Messenger RNA (mRNA)
  alternative splicing patterns of, 427, 428f
  coding for protein synthesis, 435
  codons of, 431–432, 432f
    mutations of, 432f, 433–434, 433f, 434f
    recognition by tRNA, **437,** 437f
  editing, 457–458, 457f
  eukaryotic, 418, 419f, 425–427, 426f
    posttranscriptional modification of, 425–427, 426f, 454, 457–460
  exons, splicing of, 426–427, 427f
  frame-shift mutation of, 434, 434f
  introns of, 426
    removal of, 426–427, 427f
  levels of, determination of, 483–484, 484f
  missense mutation of, 432f, 433
  monocistronic, 438
  nonsense mutation of, 432f, 433
  polycistronic, 438, 450
  regulatory ribosomal protein and, 454, 454f
  silent mutation of, 432f, 433
  splice site mutation of, 427
  stability of, 458–460, 458f, 460f
  transcription of, 450
  translation of, 431–443, 431f, 460, 460f
    components required for, **434–437**
    initiation of, 438–439, 440f
    steps in, 438–442, 440–441f
  trinucleotide repeat expansion of, 433, 433f
Metabolic acidosis, 195
Metabolic map, 91, 92f
Metabolic rate, resting (RMR), 359, 359f
Metabolic syndrome, 353
Metabolism, 73f, **91–93,** 92f
  defined, 91
  four major organs in, 307
    communication between, 307, 307f
  inborn errors in, 268–274
  integration of, 307
    concept map, 319f
  regulation of, **93–96**
    by *adenylyl cyclase* cascade, 94–96, 95f
    by intercellular signals, 94
    by intracellular signals, 94
    by second messenger systems, 94
  tricarboxylic acid cycle in, 109
Metachromatic leukodystrophy, 212f
Metal ions, as cofactors, 54
Metalloporphyrins, 277. *See also* Porphyrin(s)
Metformin, 344
Methane, 267
Methanol, 267
Methemoglobinemias, 38
Methemoglobin (Hb M), 38
Methionine
  as carnitine source, 191
  catabolism of, 263–265, 264f
  resynthesis of, 264, 264f
  side chains of, 2f
  synthesis of, 375, 375f
Methotrexate
  dihydrofolate reductase inhibited by, 304, 375
  folic acid absorption and, 375
  purine synthesis inhibited by, 293, 294f, 304, 304f
Methylation, of S-adenosylmethionine, 460, 461
Methylcobalamin, 264, 264f, 375, 376f
Methyl-directed mismatch repair, 411, 411f
N^5-N^{10}-Methylene, 376
N^5,N^{10}-Methylenetetrahydrofolate, 263, 263f
Methyl group, activated in SAM, 264
3-Methylcrotonyl CoA carboxylase, 266
7-Methylguanosine cap, 426, 426f
Methylmalonic acidemia, 194, 377
Methylmalonic aciduria, 194, 377
D-Methylmalonyl CoA, 194
Methylmalonyl CoA mutase, 194
  deficiency of, 268f, 269f
Methylmalonyl CoA racemase, 194
Mevalonic acid (mevalonate), 220–221, 221f, 222f
Mice, knockout, 486
Michaelis constant (K_m), 59, 59f
  allosteric effectors and, 62f, 63
  apparent, competitive inhibition and, 60, 60f
  noncompetitive inhibition and, 61, 61f
Michaelis-Menten equation, **58–59**
Microarrays, DNA, 483–484, 484f, 485f
Microcytic anemia, 374, 374f
Micronutrients, 357. *See also* Vitamin(s)
MicroRNA (miRNA), 459
Microsatellite DNA, 475
Microsomal cytochrome P450 monooxygenase system, 279
Microsomal TAG transfer protein (MTP), 177–178, 228
Mineralocorticoids, 237
Missense mutation, 432f, 433
Mitchell hypothesis, 77–79
Mitochondrial DNA, 80
  long-chain fatty acid transport to, 190–192, 191f
  mutations in, 80
  short- and medium-chain fatty acid transport into, 192
Mitochondrial entry sequence, 443
Mitochondrial myopathies, 80, 80f
Mitochondrial *RNA polymerase,* 424
Mitochondrion, 54f, 74
  apoptosis and, 80
  cristae of, 74
  cytochrome P450 monooxygenase system of, 149
  fatty acid oxidation in, 190–192, 191f
  inner membrane of
    ATP synthesis in, 74, 74f
    cardiolipin in, 202
    electron transport chain in, 74
    transport systems of, 79–80, 79f
  matrix of, 74, 74f
  porphyrin synthesis in, 278
  structure of, 74, 74f
Mixed micelles, 176, 177, 177f
Molecular biology, central dogma of, 395, 395f
Molybdenum, Dietary Reference Intakes for, 358f
2-Monoacylglycerol, 174f, 175–176
Monoacylglycerolacyltransferase, 176, 177f
Monoamine oxidase inhibitors, 286–287
Monoamine oxidase (MAO), catecholamine metabolism and, 286, 286f
Monocistronic mRNA, 438
Monocytes, 150
Monooxygenases (mixed function oxidases), 149
Monosaccharide(s), 83–85, 83f, 365
  absorption by intestinal mucosal cells, 87
  anomeric forms of, 84, 85f
  ceramide, 209
  classification of, 83, 83f
  concept map, 89f
  cyclization of, 84–85
  dietary, 143f
  examples of, 83, 83f
  glycosidic bonds between, 83, 84f
  joining of, 85
  metabolism of, **137–144**
    concept map, 143f
  mutarotation of, 84, 85f
Monounsaturated fat, 361–362, 362f, 364f
Mortality, obesity and, 354, 354f
Motifs, 18, 18f, 19
Moxalactam, 390
*Mst*II restriction endonuclease, 477, 478f
Mucin, 165, 165f

Mucopolysaccharides, 157. See also Glycosaminoglycans
Mucopolysaccharidoses, **163,** 164f
Multiple carboxylase deficiency, 381
Muscle(s)
  cardiac
    carnitine deficiency in, 192
    lipoprotein lipase in, 228
    myoglobin in, 26
    skeletal *vs.,* 326
  communication with other metabolic organs, 307, 307f
  in diabetes mellitus
    type 1, 338, 339f
    type 2, 342, 344
  metabolic role of, 307, 307f
  skeletal
    calcium and, 131–132, 132f
    cardiac *vs.,* 326
    carnitine deficiency in, 192
    contraction of, 131
    exercising, glycogen as fuel source for, 332
    glycogen in, 125–126, 126f, 131–132, 131f, 133f
    lactate formation in, 103, 118
    lipoprotein lipase in, 228
    myoglobin in, 26
    resting, **331–332,** 332f
      in absorptive/fed state, **325–326,** 326f
      in fasting, **331–332,** 332f
      fatty acids as fuel source for, 332
      oxygen consumption of, 326
  smooth, nitric oxide and relaxation of, 150–151, 151f
Muscular dystrophy, 486
Mutarotation, 84, 85f
Mutations, 411, 475
  detection of, using Southern blotting, 473
  frame-shift, 434, 434f
  missense, 432f, 433
  nonsense, 432f, 433
  silent, 432f, 433
  splice site, 427, 434
  trinucleotide repeat expansion, 433, 433f
Mut proteins, 411
Mycophenolic acid (MPA), 295f, 296
Myeloperoxidase (MPO) system, 150
Myocardial infarction, enzyme markers of, 65f, 66, 66f, 287
Myoglobin, 16
  α-helical content of, 26, 26f
  function of, 26
  heme group of, 25, 26, 26f
  oxygen affinity/binding of, 28–29
  oxygen dissociation curve for, 28–29, 29f
  polar and nonpolar amino acid residues in, 26
  structure of, 26, 26f
Myophosphorylase, deficiency in, 129f
Myosin light-chain kinase, 151
Myotonic dystrophy, 433, 433f
Myristic acid, 361

N

N-acetylneuraminic acid (NANA), 166
  in acidic glycosphingolipids, 209
  synthesis of, 160
NAD. *See* Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide
NADH, 73
  in alcohol-induced hypoglycemia, 317, 317f
  in conversion of pyruvate to lactate (anaerobic glycolysis), 97, 103–104, 103f
  formation of
    in electron transport chain, 75
    in fatty acid oxidation, 192, 193f
    in glycolysis, 101
  oxidation of, 76, 77f
  transport of, to inner mitochondrial membrane, 79–80, 79f
  in tricarboxylic acid cycle, 111, 111f
NADH-cytochrome b_5 reductase (NADH-methemoglobin reductase), 38
NADH dehydrogenase, 75, 75f
NADH-dependent malate dehydrogenase, 186
NADP$^+$-dependent malate dehydrogenase, 152, 186
NADPH
  in cholesterol synthesis, 220–221, 221f
  competitive inhibition of *G6PD by,* 145–146
  concept map, 155f
  in *cytochrome P450 monooxygenase* system, 149–150, 149f
  in fatty acid synthesis, 186, 186f
  G6PD deficiency and, 152
  in nitric oxide synthesis, 150–151, 151f
  in pentose phosphate pathway, 145–146
  in phagocytosis, 150, 150f
  production of, in pentose phosphate pathway, 145–146, 146f
  in reduction of hydrogen peroxide, 148–149, 148f
  in reductive biosynthesis, 147
  in sphingomyelin synthesis, 206, 207f
  in steroid hormone synthesis, 237, 238f
  structure of, 147f
  uses of, **147–151**
NADPH-dependent 2,4-dienoyl CoA reductase, 195
NADPH oxidase, 150
  deficiencies in, 150
Native conformation, of protein, 23f
Natural killer (NK) cells, 301
Negative regulation, of gene expression, 453
Neomycin, 255
Neonate(s)
  jaundice in, 284, 285, 285f, 289f
    G6PD deficiency and, 153
    phototherapy for, 285, 285f
  PKU screening in, 270, 271
  premature, vitamin E deficiency in, 391
  vitamin K deficiency in, 390
Nephropathy, 345
Nervonic acid, 182f, 207
Network-forming collagen, 44, 44f
Neural tube defects, 265, 375, 393f, 476
Neuraminic acid, in oligosaccharides, 165
Neurocan, 158
Neurodegeneration, in Niemann-Pick disease, 208
Neurofibrillary tangles, in Alzheimer disease, 21
Neuroglycopenia, 315
Neuropathy, diabetic, 345
Neuropeptide Y (NPY), 353
Neurotransmitter(s)
  in metabolic regulation, 94, 94f, 95
  nitric oxide as, 150–151, 151f
Neutral fat, 188
Neutral fecal sterols, 224
Neutrophils, 150
Niacin, 54, **379–380,** 392–393f
  active forms of, 379, 379f, 392f
  clinical indications for, 380
  deficiency of, 380, 393f
    three Ds of, 380
  dietary intake of, 380
    Dietary Reference Intakes for, 358f
    sources of, 380
  distribution of, 380
  function of, 380–381
  for hyperlipidemia, 380
  structure of, 379f, 380
Nickel, Dietary Reference Intakes for, 358f
Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD$^+$), 73, 75, 379–380, 379f, 392f
  as coenzyme, 54
    for *branched-chain α-ketoacid dehydrogenase,* 266
    for α-ketoglutarate dehydrogenase complex, 112, 112f
    for *pyruvate dehydrogenase complex,* 110, 111f
  in conversion of pyruvate to lactate (anaerobic glycolysis), 103, 103f
  in mitochondrial matrix, 74
  NADPH *vs.,* 147
  oxidation of NADH to, 76, 77f
  reduced form of, 380, 380f. *See also* NADP$^+$
  structure of, 379f
  in tricarboxylic acid cycle, 113, 113f
Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate (NADP$^+$)
  reduced form of, 380, 380f
  structure of, 379f
Nicotinic acid. *See* Niacin
Niemann-Pick disease, 208, 208f, 211, 212f, 232
Night blindness, 384, 393f
Ninhydrin, 15
Nitric oxide (NO)
  actions on vascular endothelium, 151
  macrophage bactericidal activity and, 151, 151f
  as neurotransmitter, 151, 151f
  platelet aggregation inhibited by, 151
  synthesis of, 150–151, 151f
Nitric oxide synthase, 150–151, 151f
  endothelial *(eNOS),* 151
  inducible *(iNOS),* 151
  neural *(nNOS),* 151
Nitrogen
  in dietary protein, 245, **247–249**
  disposal of, **245–260**
    as ammonia, **256–258**
    in protein digestion, 247–249
    in urea cycle, 245f, 253–256, 253f, 254f, 255f
  metabolism of, **245–247**
    concept map, 259f
  removal from amino acids, 245, **250–253,** 259f
Nitrogen balance, 368
Nitrogen-containing bases, in nucleotides, 291–292, 291f
Nitrogen-containing compounds, amino acids as precursors of, 277, 277f
Nitroglycerin, 151
Nitroprusside, 151

- Nitrous acid, 412
- Nitrous oxide (N_2O), 151
- N-linked glycoproteins, 142
- N-linked glycosides, synthesis of, 167–169, 168f
- N-linked oligosaccharides, 165, 166
  - final processing of, 168, 169f
- *nNOS,* 151
- Non-coding RNA (ncRNA), 417
- Noncompetitive inhibition, of enzymes, 61–62, 61f, 62f
  - examples of, 61–62
  - Lineweaver-Burke plot, 61, 61f
- Nonessential amino acids, 261, 262f
  - biosynthesis of, **267–269**
- Nonhomologous end-joining repair, 413
- Nonpolar amino acids, 2–4, 2f, 4f
  - hydrophobic interactions of, 2, 19, 19f
  - location in proteins, 2, 4, 4f
  - in myoglobin, 26
- Nonsense codons, 432
- Nonsense mutation, 432f, 433
- Nonshivering thermogenesis, 79
- Non-spherocytic hemolytic anemia,103, 153
- Norepinephrine
  - catecholamine synthesis and, 285–286, 286f
  - in energy metabolism, 307
  - in fasting, 331
  - functions of, 285
  - methyl group and, 264
- Normocytic anemia, 374f
- Northern blot, 473, 483, 485f
- *NO synthase,* 151
- NPY, 353
- N-terminal amino acid, 247
- N-terminal residue
  - in protein degradation, 247
- Nuclear localization signal, 443
- Nuclear receptor superfamily, 456
- Nucleic acids, 292. *See also* DNA; RNA
  - detection of low-abundance sequences, 482
  - dietary, degradation of, 298, 299f
  - types of, 395
- Nucleofilament, 411
- Nucleoid, 398
- Nucleolus, RNA synthesis in, 422
- Nucleoplasm, in RNA synthesis, 422
- Nucleoprotein, 396
- Nucleoside analogs, inhibition of DNA synthesis by, 408–409, 409f
- *Nucleoside diphosphate kinase,* 112, 127, 296, 296f
- Nucleoside diphosphate (NDP), 292
  - nucleoside monophosphate conversion to, 296, 296f
- *Nucleoside monophosphate kinases,* 296, 296f
- Nucleoside monophosphate (NMP), 292
  - conversion to nucleoside diphosphates and triphosphates, 296, 296f
- Nucleoside 5′-phosphate, 292
- Nucleoside(s), 292. *See also* Nucleotide(s)
- Nucleoside triphosphate (NTP), 292
  - nucleoside monophosphate conversion to, 296, 296f
- Nucleosomes, 422
  - fate during DNA replication, 411
  - formation of, 409–410, 410f
- *5′-Nucleotidase,* 299
- 5′-Nucleotide, 292
- Nucleotide excision repair, 411, 411f
- Nucleotide(s), 292
  - function of, 291
  - high-energy bond of, 292, 293f
  - metabolism of, **291–306**
    - concept map, 305f
  - pentoses added to, 292, 292f
  - purine
    - degradation of, **298–302,** 300f, 305f
    - parent, inosine monophosphates as, 293
    - purine base conversion to, 296, 296f
    - salvage pathway for, 296–297, 296f
    - structure of, 291–292, 291f, 292f
    - synthesis of, **292–297,** 305f
      - committed step of, 293, 294f
      - drugs targeting, 293, 294f, 305f
  - pyrimidine
    - degradation of, 304
    - formation of, 302–303, 303f
    - salvage of, 304
    - structure of, 291–292, 291f, 292f
    - synthesis of, **302–304,** 303f, 305f
  - structure of, **291–292,** 291f, 292f
  - synthesis of, 291
  - unusual bases of, 291–292, 292f
- Nucleotide sequences, 396, 396f
  - alteration of, consequences of, 432f, 433–434
  - mapping of, 449. *See also* DNA analysis
- *Nucleotidyltransferase,* 425
- Nutrients, 357
  - Acceptable Macronutrient Distribution Ranges in, 360, 360f
  - availability of, and metabolism, 94
  - classes of, 357, 357f
  - hepatic distribution of, **322–324**
- Nutrition, **357–372**
  - cancer and, 360, 361f
  - Dietary Reference Intakes in, **357–358,** 357f, 358f
  - influence on common causes of death, 361f
  - macronutrients in, **360,** 360f
    - concept map, 370f
  - vitamins in, **372–394**
- Nutritional anemias, 374, 374f
- Nutritional rickets, 388
- Nutrition Facts labels, 364

O

- Obesity, **349–356**
  - adipose tissue in, 350–353, 353f
  - afferent signaling molecules in, 353, 353f
  - assessment of, **349–350**
  - body mass index in, 349, 349f, 353f, 354f
  - carbohydrate intake and, 365
  - cause of, 351–352
  - childhood, 349
  - concept map, 355f
  - diabetes mellitus and, 349, 354
  - diseases associated with, relative risk of developing, 349, 354
  - environmental and behavioral factors in, 352
  - epidemic in United States, 349
  - fat deposition in
    - anatomical differences in, 350, 350f
    - biochemical differences in, 350
  - fats cells in, 351, 351f
  - genetic factors in, 352
  - health and, **354**
  - insulin resistance and, 342, 342f, 346f, 353
  - lower body, 350, 350f
  - metabolic changes in, **353**
  - molecules influencing, **352–353**
  - mortality and, 354, 354f
  - pharmacotherapy for, 355
  - surgical treatment of, 355
  - upper body, 350, 350f
  - weight reduction in, **354–355**
- Obstructive jaundice, 284–285, 289f
- Oculocutaneous albinism, 272, 272f
- O-glycosides, 86, 86f
- O-glycosidic bonds, 86, 86f
  - in glycoproteins, 165
  - in glycosaminoglycans, 158
  - in glycosphingolipids, 209, 209f
- Oils, 188
- Okazaki fragments, 403, 407
- Oleic acid, 182f
- *Oligo-$\alpha(1\to4)\to\alpha(1\to4)$-glucan transferase,* 130
- Oligomycin, 78
- Oligonucleotide probes
  - in sickle cell disease, 472, 472f, 473f
  - synthetic, 471–472, 472f
- Oligonucleotide(s), 298
- Oligopeptides, digestion of, 249
- Oligosaccharide(s), 83, 85
  - carbohydrate-protein linkage in, 165
  - ceramide, 209
  - complex, 166, 166f
  - dolichol-linked, 167
    - synthesis of, 167, 168f
  - in glycoproteins, structure of, **165–166,** 166f
  - high-mannose, 166, 166f
  - N-linked, 165, 166
    - synthesis of, 167–169, 168f
  - O-linked, 165
    - synthesis of, 166–167
- Oligosaccharidoses, 169, 170
- O-linked glycosides, synthesis of, 166–167
- O-linked oligosaccharides, 165, 166–167
- Omega-6 fatty acids, 363
- Omega (ω) oxidation fatty acids, 195
- One-carbon units, 267
  - folic acid as carrier of, 267
- Operators, in prokaryotic transcription, 450
- Operons
  - bacterial, 450
  - lactose, 450–452, 451f
  - tryptophan, 452–453, 453f
- Opsin, 383f, 384
- Optical isomers, 5, 5f
- Optical properties of amino acids, 5, 5f
- Oral tolerance tests, for digestive enzyme deficiencies, 88
- Organic molecules, as enzyme cofactors, 54
- Origin of replication, 399, 400f
- Orlistat, 175
- Ornithine
  - formation from arginine, 262
  - transport of, 250
  - in urea cycle, 255, 255f
- *Ornithine transcarbamoylase,* 254f
- *Ornithine transcarbamoylase* deficiency, 258
- *Orotate phosphoribosyltransferase,* 302
- Orotic acid, synthesis of, 302, 303f
- Orotic aciduria, 303, 303f, 304
- Orotidine 5′-monophosphate (OMP), 302
- *Orotidylate decarboxylase,* 302
- Osmotic diarrhea, 87
- Osteoblasts, 45
- Osteocalcin vitamin K, 390
- Osteogenesis imperfecta (OI), 49, 49f, 51f
  - type II (osteogenesis imperfecta congenita), 49
  - type I (osteogenesis imperfecta tarda), 49

Osteomalacia, 388, 389f, 393f
Ovary(ies), hormonal secretion by, 237, 240, 240f
Overweight, classification of, 349
Oxaloacetate (OAA)
  carboxylation of pyruvate to, 105, 106f, 118–119, 119f
    NADPH production in, 183, 183f
  in citrate synthesis, 111–112, 111f
  cytosolic, decarboxylation of, 119f, 120
  formation of
    in amino acid catabolism, 251f
  in gluconeogenesis, 118–120, 119f
  malate oxidation to, 113
  reduction to malate, 119, 119f
  transport to cytosol, 119, 119f
  in tricarboxylic acid cycle, 109, 109f, 111–112
Oxidant drugs, 153
Oxidation
  of arachidonic acid, 213, 214f
  of fatty acids, **189–195**
  of glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate, 101, 101f
  of isocitrate, 112
  of LDL, 234, 235f
  of malate, 113
  of palmitoyl CoA, 192, 193f
  of succinate, 112f, 113
Oxidative deamination
  allosteric regulation of, 252
  of amino acids, 245, 252–253, 252f
  coenzymes in, 252, 252f
  direction of reactions, 252
Oxidative decarboxylation
  of α-ketoglutarate, 112, 112f
    thiamine and, 379, 379f
  of branched-chain amino acids, 266
    thiamine and, 379f
  of pyruvate, 105, 109–111, 110f
Oxidative phosphorylation, 73, 73f, **77–80**
  in catabolic pathways, 93
  concept map, 81f
  inherited defects of, 80
  tightly coupled with electron transport, 77–78
  uncoupling from electron transport, 78–79
Oxidative reactions, irreversible, **145–146,** 146f
Oxidizing agent (oxidant), 76
Oxidoreductases, 53f
Oxygen
  hemoglobin affinity for and binding of, 27–33, 28f, 41f
    allosteric effectors and, 27, 29–33
    2,3-bisphosphoglycerate and, 31–32, 31f, 32f
    carbon dioxide binding and, 32
    carbon monoxide binding and, 32–33, 32f
    cooperative, 29–30, 29f
    PCO_2 and, 29
    pH and, 30, 30f
    PO_2 and, 29, 29f, 30
    saturation and, 28
  molecular
    reactive intermediates of, 148–149, 148f
    in steroid hormone synthesis, 237, 238f
  myoglobin affinity for and binding of, 28–29
  as *nitric oxide synthase* substrate, 151
  partial pressure of. *See* PO_2
Oxygen debt, 104
Oxygen dissociation curve
  for hemoglobin, 29, 29f, 31
    2,3-bisphosphoglycerate and, 32, 32f
    sigmoidal shape of, significance of, 30
  for myoglobin, 29, 29f
Oxyhemoglobin, 28
Oxypurinol, 301

P

PABA analogs, 294f
Palindromes, 466
Palmitate (palmitic acid)
  elongation of, 187
  synthesis of, 184–186, 185f
    relationship with glucose metabolism, 186, 187f
Palmitic acid, 182f, 361
Palmitoleic acid, 182f
Palmitoyl CoA, energy yield from oxidation of, 192, 193f
Palmitoyl thioesterase, 186
Pancreas, 307, 308f
Pancreatic enzymes
  carbohydrate digestion by, 86, 87f
  deficiency of, in cystic fibrosis, 174
  dietary nucleic acid degraded by, 298, 299f
  hormonal regulation by, 176, 176f
  lipid processing by, 175–176
  protein digestion by, 248–249, 249f
Pancreatic islet cells
  α, glucagon secretion by, 309, 313, 313f
  β
    destruction, in type 1 diabetes mellitus, 338, 338f
    dysfunction, in type 2 diabetes mellitus, 342, 342f, 344, 344f
    glucose phosphorylation in, 98
    insulin secretion by, 307–308, 308f, 310f
Pancreatic lipase, 175
Pancreatitis, chronic, 248
Pancreozymin. *See* Cholecystokinin
Pantothenic acid, 54, 184, **381,** 392–393f
  in coenzyme A, 381, 381f
  deficiency of, 381, 393f
  dietary intake of, 381
    Dietary Reference Intakes for, 358f
  function of, 381, 392f
Parallel β sheet, 17, 17f
Parathyroid hormone (PTH), 388
Parenteral feeding, 369
Parietal cells, 248, 377
Parkinson disease, 286
Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria, 206
Partial pressure of carbon dioxide. *See* PCO_2
Partial pressure of oxygen. *See* PO_2
Pathways, 91. *See also specific pathways*
PCO_2
  oxygen affinity of hemoglobin and, 29, 29f
  sickle cell disease and, 36
PCR. *See* Polymerase chain reaction
Pellagra, 380, 393f
Penicillin, 62
Pentasaccharide, core, in oligosaccharides, 166, 166f
Pentavalent arsenic (arsenate), 101
Pentose phosphate pathway, 92f, **145–156,** 145f, 146f
  in absorptive/fed state, 323, 323f, 325, 325f
  concept map, 155f
  fatty acid synthesis and, 186, 186f
  irreversible oxidative reactions in, **145–146**
  reversible nonoxidative reactions in, **147**
Pentoses, 291, 292f
Pentose(s), in nucleosides, 292, 292f
PEP. *See* Phosphoenolpyruvate
PEP-carboxykinase (PEPCK), 118, 120, 122
PEP-carboxylase, in fasting, 329
PEP carboxylase (PEPCK), 457
Pepsin
  pH optimum for, 58
  in protein digestion, 248, 248f
Pepsinogen, 248
Peptide bonds, 1, 1f, 13–14, 14f. *See also* Polypeptide
  characteristics of, 14, 14f
  formation of, 13, 14f
  naming, 14
  partial double-bond character of, 14, 14f
  polarity of, 14, 14f
  rigid and planar character of, 14, 14f
  trans configuration of, 14, 14f
Peptide YY (PYY), 353
Peptidyltransferase, 439, 440f
Peripheral tissues
  ketone body use by, 196, 197f
  transport of ammonia from, 253, 253f
Peristalsis, 175
Pernicious anemia, 377, 393f
Peroxidase, 213
Peroxisome, β-oxidation in, 195
Peroxynitrite, 151
PEST sequences, 247
pH
  enzyme denaturation and, 57
  optimum, for enzymes, 58, 58f
  oxygen affinity of hemoglobin and, 29, 30–31, 30f
  protons lowering, source of, 30, 30f
  reaction velocity and, 57–58, 58f
  sickle cell disease and, 36
Phagocytosis, 150, 150f
  of extracellular glycosaminoglycans, 163
  oxygen-dependent, 150
  oxygen-independent, 150
Phenobarbital, 279
Phenolic compounds, 365
Phenylacetate, 271
Phenylacetylglutamine, 258, 258f
Phenylalanine
  degradation of, 263, 263f
  inherited deficiencies in, 263
  side chains of, 2f
  tyrosine and, 268
Phenylalanine hydroxylase (PAH), 263, 268, 271–272, 287
  deficiency in, 270–271, 270f
  gene for, mutation of, prenatal detection of, 477, 479f, 480f
Phenylbutazone, 214
Phenylbutyrate, 258, 258f
Phenylisothiocyanate, 15
Phenylketonuria (PKU), 263, 268f, 269f, 270–272, 270f
  antenatal diagnosis of, 271–272
  characteristics of, 271, 271f
  maternal, 272
  neonatal screening and diagnosis of, 270, 271
  prenatal diagnosis of, using RFLPs, 477–479, 479f, 480f
  treatment of, 272

- Phenyllactate, 271
- Phenylpyruvate, 271
- Phenylthiohydantoin (PTH), 15
- Pheochromocytoma, 286
- pH gradient, in oxidative phosphorylation, 77–78
- *Phosphatase,* 101
- Phosphate
  - addition of. *See* Phosphorylation
  - inorganic (P_i)
    - as activator of *PRPP synthase,* 293, 293f
    - in ATP synthesis, 73
  - removal of. *See* Dephosphorylation
  - vitamin D and, 388
- Phosphatidalcholine, 202
- Phosphatidalethanolamine, 202, 202f
- Phosphatidic acid, 201, 201f, 202
  - synthesis of, 189f, 203
- Phosphatidylcholine, 201f, 234
  - in bile, 224
  - in lung surfactant, 204
  - synthesis of, 203–204, 204f
    - from phosphatidylserine in liver, 204, 204f
- *Phosphatidylcholine:cholesterol acyltransferase (PCAT, LCAT),* 234–235, 236
- Phosphatidylethanolamine, 201f, 204
  - synthesis of, 203–204
- Phosphatidylglycerol, 206
- Phosphatidylinositol, 205–206
  - as arachidonic acid reservoir, 205
  - in membrane protein anchoring, 206, 206f
  - in signal transmission across membranes, 205–206, 205f
  - synthesis of, 205–206
- Phosphatidylinositol 4,5-bisphosphate (PIP_2), 205
- Phosphatidylserine, 201f, 205
  - synthesis of phosphatidylcholine from, 204, 204f
- 3'-Phosphoadenosine-5'-phosphosulfate (PAPS), 162, 210, 210f, 263
- *Phosphodiesterase,* 95–96
- 3'→5'-Phosphodiester bonds, 396–397, 396f
- Phosphodiester bonds, in RNA, 417
- Phosphoenolpyruvate (PEP), 102
  - glucagon and, 122, 122f
  - in gluconeogenesis, 118–120, 119f
  - in glycolysis, 102, 102f
- *Phosphofructokinase*
  - in absorptive/fed state, 323
  - glucagon and, 122, 123
  - in glycolysis, 102, 121, 138
  - hormonal regulation of, 105, 105f
  - inhibition of, by citrate, 63, 98, 112
  - insulin and, 313
- *Phosphofructokinase-1 (PFK-1)*
  - in absorptive/fed state, 321
  - in gluconeogenesis, 120, 120f
  - in glycolysis, 99, 100f
- *Phosphofructokinase-2 (PFK-2),* 99
- *6-Phosphoglucanolactone dehydrogenase,* 146
- *6-Phosphoglucanolactone hydrolase,* 146
- *Phosphoglucomutase,* 126, 128f, 130
- *6-Phosphogluconate dehydrogenase,* 146
- 6-Phosphogluconate pathway. *See* Pentose phosphate pathway
- 6-Phosphogluconolactone, in pentose phosphate pathway, 145–146, 146f
- *Phosphoglucose isomerase,* 99
- *Phosphoglucose isomerase* deficiency, 103
- 2-Phosphoglycerate, dehydration of, 102
- 3-Phosphoglycerate, 101–102, 268
- *Phosphoglycerate kinase,* 102
- *Phosphoglycerate mutase,* 102
- Phosphoglycerides. *See* Glycerophospholipids
- *Phospholipase A_1*, 207–208, 207f
- *Phospholipase A_2*, 175, 207–208, 207f, 213, 214
- *Phospholipase C,* 205, 205f, 206, 207f, 208
- *Phospholipase D,* 207f
- Phospholipids
  - amphipathic nature of, 201
  - in cell membranes, 201
  - concept map, 217f
  - degradation of, 175–176, **207–208,** 207f, 208f
    - by pancreatic enzymes, 174, 174f
  - fatty acids as component of, 181
  - functions of, 201
  - in lipoproteins, 227, 228f, 232f
  - metabolism of, 173–180, **201–208**
  - remodeling of, 207–208
  - structure of, **201–203,** 201f, 202f
  - synthesis of, **203–207,** 203f, 204f, 207f
- Phospholipid(s), 173f, **201–208**
- *Phosphomannose isomerase,* 138
- *Phosphoprotein phosphatase,* 63, 63f, 102, 223
- 5'-Phosphoribosylamine, synthesis of, 293
- 5-Phosphoribosyl-1-pyrophosphate (PRPP)
  - in purine synthesis, 293, 293f, 294f
  - in pyrimidine synthesis, 302
  - synthesis of, 292–293, 293f
- Phosphorus, Dietary Reference Intakes for, 358f
- *Phosphorylase kinase,* 132
  - activated a form of, 132, 133f
  - calcium-calmodulin complex and, 132, 133f
  - inactivated b form of, 132–133, 133f
- Phosphorylation
  - of enzymes, 63, 63f
  - of eukaryotic translation initiation factor, 460, 460f
  - of fructose, 137–138, 138f
  - of fructose-6-phosphate, 99–100, 100f
  - of galactose, 140
  - of glucose, 98–99, 98f
  - of *HMG CoA reductase,* 223, 223f
  - inherited defects of, 80
  - oxidative, 73, 73f, **77–80**
    - in catabolic pathways, 93
    - concept map, 81f
    - tightly coupled with electron transport, 77–78
    - uncoupling from electron transport, 78–79
  - of proteins, 443f, 444
  - sterol-independent, 223, 223f
  - substrate level, 98, 102, 112
- Photosensitivity, in porphyria, 280
- Phylloquinone (vitamin K_1), 389
- Physical activity. *See* Exercise
- Phytanic acid, 195, 195f
- Pigmentation disorders
  - in alkaptonuria, 274
  - in phenylketonuria, 271
- Pineal gland, 287
- Pituitary hormones, in steroid hormone synthesis, 239, 239f
- Placenta, hormonal secretion by, 237
- Plant protein, 367, 367f
- Plant sterols, 220
- Plasma assays, 65
- Plasma enzymes
  - classification of, 64
  - as diagnostic tool, 65
  - elevated levels of, 65
    - in disease states, 64f, 65
  - in normal cell turnover, 64–65, 64f
- Plasma hormones, 307
- Plasma lipoproteins, **227–237**. *See also* Lipoprotein(s)
- Plasmalogens, 202, 202f
- Plasmids, 398
  - prokaryotic, 467, 467f, 468f
- Plasminogen, apo(a) and, 237
- Plasmodium falciparum, 37
- Platelet-activating factor (PAF), 202, 202f
- Platelet aggregation
  - n-6 and n-3 polyunsaturated fats and, 363, 363f
  - nitric oxide as inhibitor of, 150, 151f
- Platelet homeostasis, prostaglandins in, 214, 216f
- Platelet(s), interaction of prothrombin with, 389
- Pneumonia, nutrition and, 361f
- PO_2, oxygen affinity binding and
  - of hemoglobin, 29, 29f
  - of myoglobin, 29, 29f
- *Pol α, 407, 407f*
- Polar amino acids
  - in myoglobin, 26
  - uncharged, 3f, 4
- Polar hydroxyl group, in amino acid side chains, 4
- Polarity, of peptide bond, 14, 14f
- Polar side chains, 3f
- *Pol β, 407, 407f*
- *Pol δ, 407, 407f*
- *Pol ε, 407, 407f*
- *Pol γ, 407, 407f*
- *Pol 5'→3' polymerase,* 407
- *Polyadenylate polymerase,* 426
- Polyadenylation, 457
- Poly-A tail, of mRNA, 426, 426f
- Polycistronic mRNA, 438, 450, 452
- Polydipsia, in diabetes mellitus, 338, 341
- *5'→3' polymerase,* in DNA proofreading, 404–405, 404f
- Polymerase chain reaction (PCR), **479–483**
  - advantages of, 382
  - applications of, 482–483
  - for comparison of normal cloned gene with uncloned mutant gene, 482
  - in cystic fibrosis, 483, 483f
  - for detection of low-abundance nucleic acid sequences, 482
  - for forensic analysis of DNA samples, 482–483
  - primer construction in, 480–481, 481f
  - steps in, 480–482
- Polymorphism(s), 475, 475f. *See also* Restriction fragment length polymorphism
  - in phenylketonuria, 477–479
  - for prenatal diagnosis, 476–479
  - restriction fragment length, **473–479**
  - short tandem repeat, 483
  - in sickle cell disease, 476–477, 478f
  - single nucleotide, 475
  - in tandem repeats, 475, 476f
  - for tracing chromosomes from parent to offspring, 475–476
- Polynucleosome, 411
- Polyol, 139
- Polypeptide chains, 431, 431f
  - posttranslational modification of, **443–444,** 443f

- Polypeptide(s), 14
  - α-helix of, 16–17, 16f
  - amino acid composition of, determination of, 14–15, 15f, 16f
  - amino acid residue or moiety in, 14
  - β bends of, 17
  - β-sheets of, 17, 17f
  - cleavage into smaller fragments, 15, 16f
  - domains of, 19
  - elongation of, 439–442, 439f
  - mRNA translation into, 431–438
  - posttranslational modification of, **443–444,** 443–444f
  - primary structure of, 14–16
  - secondary structure of, 16–18
    - nonrepetitive, 18
  - sequencing of, from N-terminal end, 15, 15f
  - tertiary structure of, 18–20
    - interactions stabilizing, 19
- Polyphagia, in diabetes mellitus, 338, 341
- Polyphosphorylated guanosine (ppGpp), 454
- Polysaccharide(s), 83, 85
  - dietary, 365
  - digestion of, 86
- Polysomes, 442, 442f
- Polyubiquitin chain, 247
- Polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFA), 188, 364f
- Polyuria, in diabetes mellitus, 338, 341
- Pompe disease, 129f, 131, 472
- Porphobilinogen, 278, 278f, 279, 279f
- Porphyria cutanea tarda, 280, 280f, 281f
- Porphyria(s), 279–282
  - acute intermittent, 280, 281f
  - chronic, 280, 281f
  - clinical manifestations of, 280
  - erythropoietic, 280, 281f
    - congenital, 280, 281f
  - hepatic, 280
    - acute, 280
  - hereditary coproporphyria, 280, 281f
  - treatment of, 282
  - variegate, 280, 281f
- Porphyrinogens, 278
- Porphyrin(s)
  - degradation of, 282–284, 282f, 283f, 284f
  - metabolism of, **277–278**
  - side chains of, 277
    - distribution of, 278, 278f
  - structure of, 277–278, 278f
  - synthesis of, 278–279, 278f, 279f, 280f, 281f
    - defects in, 279–282, 280f
    - end product inhibition by hemin, 278–279
    - rate-controlling step of, 278
  - type I, 278, 278f
  - type II, 278, 278f
- Positive regulation, of gene expression, 452, 453
- Postprandial hypoglycemia, 316
- Posttranscriptional modification, **424–427**
  - of ribosomal RNA, 424–425, 424f
  - of transfer RNA, 425, 425f
- Posttranslational modification
  - of collagen, 45
  - of polypeptide chains, 443–444, 443f
- Pravastatin, 61, 224
- Prednisone, 301
- Pregnancy
  - folic acid supplementation in, 375
  - retinoid/vitamin A toxicity in, 386
- Pregnenolone, 237f, 238
- Premature atherosclerosis, 232
- Prenatal diagnosis, 476–479
  - of cystic fibrosis, 483, 483f
  - DNA sources, 476, 477f
  - methods, 476
  - of phenylketonuria, 477–479, 479f, 480f
  - of sickle cell disease, 476–477, 478f
- Prenylation, 221
- Prepriming complex, for DNA replication, 399, 403
- Preproglucagon, 313
- Preproinsulin, 308, 308f, 309f
- Preribosomal RNA, 424
- Pribnow box, 420, 420f
- Primaquine, 153
- Primary hyperoxaluria Type 1, 253
- *Primase,* 402–403, 402f
- Primosome, 403
- Prion disease, 22, 22f
- Prion protein (PrP), 22, 22f
- Pro-α-chains, in collagen synthesis, 45, 46f
- Probenecid, 301
- Probes, DNA, **470–472**
  - antibodies, 472
  - biotinylated, 472
  - hybridization to DNA fragments, 470
  - oligonucleotide, 471–472, 472f
    - in sickle cell disease, 472, 473f
- Procollagen, 46f, 47
  - extracellular cleavage of, 46–47f, 47
- *Procollagen peptidases,* 47, 47f
  - deficiency of, and Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, 48
- *N-Procollagen peptidases,* 47
- Product inhibition, 64f
- Progesterone, 237f, 240f
- Progestins, 237
- Proinsulin, 308, 308f, 309f
- Prokaryotic DNA, 395
  - chain elongation in, 403–405, 403f
  - lagging strand of, 402, 403f
  - leading strand of, 402, 403f
  - proofreading of, 404–405, 404f
  - proteins required for strand separation in, 399–400, 400f
  - replication fork of, 399–400, 400f
  - replication of, **399–406**
    - bidirectional, 399, 400f
    - continuous, 402
    - direction of, 402
    - discontinuous, 402, 402f
    - origin of, 399, 400f
    - prepriming complex for, 399, 402
    - processive, 403
    - RNA primer for, 402–403, 402f
      - excision and replacement of, 405, 405f, 406f
    - semiconservative, 399, 399f
    - supercoil problem in, 400–401, 401f
- Prokaryotic gene expression, regulation of, 449f, **450–454,** 463f
  - coordination of transcription and translation, 453–454, 454f
  - lactose operon in, 450–452, 451f
  - mRNA transcription from bacterial operons, 450
  - role of operators, 450, 451f
  - tryptophan operon in, 452–453, 453f
- Prokaryotic gene transcription, **419–421**
  - antibiotics targeting, 421, 422f
  - elongation in, 420–421, 420f
  - hairpin turn in, 421, 421f
  - initiation of, 419–420, 420f
  - regulation of, 449f, **450–454**
  - termination of, 421, 421f
    - rho-dependent, 421
    - rho-independent, 421, 421f
- Prokaryotic plasmids, 467, 467f
- Prolactin, 142
- Proliferating cell nuclear antigen (PCNA), 407
- Proline, 4, 4f, 262
  - α-helix disrupted by, 16–17
  - in β-bends, 17
  - catabolism of, 262
  - in collagen, 45
    - hydroxylation of, 45, 45f, 46f, 47
  - degradation of proteins containing, 247
  - in elastin, 49
  - side chains of, 2f, 4, 4f
  - synthesis of, 268
- *Prolyl hydroxylase,* hydroxylation in collagen by, 45f, 47
- Promoter activation, hormone response elements and, 240, 241f
- Promoter region, 419–420, 420f
- Promoters, 422–423, 423f
- Propeptides, in collagen biosynthesis, 47, 47f
- Propionate, 277
- Propionic acid, 182f
- Propionyl CoA, 265
  - amino acid catabolism forming, 265, 266f
  - conversion to succinyl CoA, 265
  - metabolism of, 194–195, 195f
- *Propionyl CoA carboxylase,* 194
- Prostacyclin, 213f
- *Prostaglandin endoperoxide synthase (PGH synthase),* 213
- Prostaglandin(s), **213–214**
  - concept map, 217f
  - fatty acids as precursors of, 181
  - function of, 215f
  - n-6 and n-3 polyunsaturated fats and, 363
  - PGE$_2$, 213f, 215f
  - PGF$_{2\alpha}$, 213f, 215f
  - PGG$_2$, 214f
  - PGH$_2$, synthesis of, 213, 214f
  - PGI$_2$, 213, 213f, 214, 215f
  - in platelet homeostasis, 214
  - structure of, 213f
  - synthesis of, 213–214, 215f
    - inhibition of, 214
    - substrates for, 202
- Prosthetic group, 54
- Proteases, 50
- Proteasomes, 246–247, 444
- Protein-calorie malnutrition (PEM), 369
- Protein C vitamin K, 390
- Protein Digestibility Correct Amino Acid Score (PDCAAS), 367, 367f
- Protein factors, 437
- *Protein kinase A,* 95, 134
- *Protein kinase A*-mediated covalent modification, 456–457
- *Protein kinase C,* 95, 134, 208
  - in intracelluar signaling, 205f, 206
- *Protein kinase G,* 151
- *Protein kinase(s)*
  - cAMP-dependent, 95, 95f
    - glucagon and, 314
    - in glycogen degradation, 132, 133, 133f
    - in *pyruvate kinase* regulation, 102, 102f
  - in phosphorylation, 63, 63f
  - pyruvate as inhibitor of, 111
  - in *pyruvate dehydrogenase complex,* 111f
- *Protein-oligosaccharide transferase,* 167
- *Protein phosphatase 1,* 132, 133, 134
- *Protein phosphatase(s),* 95
- Protein(s)
  - α-helix of, 16–17, 16f
  - amino acid sequence, 14–16

    - determination of, 14–15, 15f
    - DNA analysis of, 15–16
  - amino acid sequence in, 14–16
    - determination of, 14–15, 15f
    - DNA analysis of, 15–16
  - analysis of, 484–485, 485f
  - β-bends of, 17
  - β-sheets of, 17, 17f
  - carboxylation of, 444, 444f
  - covalent modification of, 444
  - degradation of, 246–247, 444
    - chemical signals for, 247
    - ubiquitin-proteasome mechanism for, 246–247, 247f
  - denaturation of, 20
    - agents for, 20
    - reversibility of, 20
  - dephosphorylation of, 95
  - dietary, 246f, 357, 357f, **367–369**
    - acceptable distribution ranges for, 360, 360f
    - from animal sources, 367, 367f
    - deficient intake of, 369, 369f
    - with differing limiting amino acids, 368, 368f
    - digestion of, **247–249**
      - abnormalities in, 248–249
      - by gastric secretion, 248, 248f
      - by pancreatic enzymes, 248–249, 249f
    - energy content of, 359, 359f
    - excessive intake of, 368
    - nitrogen balance and, 368
    - from plant sources, 367f, 368
    - quality of, 367–368, 367f, 368f
    - requirement for, 368–369
    - sparing effect of carbohydrates and, 369
  - DnaA, 399
  - DNA helicases, 400, 400f
  - domains of, 19
  - farnesylated, 444, 444f
  - fibrous, **43–52,** 51f. *See also* Collagen; Elastin
    - summary, 52
  - folding of, 20, 20f
    - chaperones in, 20
    - errors or mutations in
  - function of, 1
  - γ-carboxyglutamate in, 389–390
  - globular, 18, **25–42**. *See also* Hemoglobin; Myoglobin
  - glycosylation of, 443f, 444
  - hydroxylation of, 444, 444f
  - location of nonpolar side chains in, 2, 4, 4f
  - metabolism of
    - in fasting, 332, 332f
    - glucagon and, 314
  - monomeric, 20
  - native conformation of, 23f
  - peptide bonds of, 13–14, 14f
  - phosphorylation of, 443f, 444
  - posttranslational modification of, **443–444,** 443f, 444f
  - ribosomal, 436
    - regulatory, 454, 454f
  - single-stranded DNA-binding (SSB), 400, 400f
  - for strand separation, 399–400, 400f
  - structure of, **13–24**
    - in aqueous solution, 18
    - concept map, 23f
    - hierarchy of, 13, 13f, 23f
    - misfolding, **21–22**
    - primary, **13–16,** 13f, 14f, 15f, 23f
    - quaternary, 13f, **20–21,** 23f
    - secondary, 13f, **16–18,** 16f, 17f, 23f
      - nonrepetitive, 18
    - supersecondary (motifs), 18, 18f
    - tertiary, 13f, **18–20,** 18f, 19f, 20f, 23f
      - interactions stabilizing, 19
  - synthesis of, 395, **431–448,** 440–441f. *See also* Gene expression
    - in absorptive/fed state, 323f, 324, 326, 326f
    - components required for, **434–437**
    - concept map, 446f
    - elongation in, 439–442, 439f, 440f
    - inhibitors of, 442
    - initiation of, 438–439, 440f
    - insulin and, 311
    - regulation of, 443
    - steps in, **438–443**
    - termination of, 441f, 442
  - trimming of, 443
  - uncoupling, 79
- Protein-sparing effect, 369
- Protein targeting, 45, 166, 443
- Protein turnover, 246–247, 246f, 259f
  - rate of, 246
- Proteoglycan aggregates, 158, 160f
- Proteoglycan monomers, 158
  - brush-bottle model of, 158, 160f
  - structure, 158, 160f
- Proteoglycan(s), 157
  - cartilage, 158, 160f
  - glycoproteins *vs.,* 165
  - linkage region of, 158, 160f
  - structure of, 158, 160f
- Proteolytic enzymes, 248, 248f
- Proteomics, 484, 485, 485f
- Prothrombin, 389
- Proton acceptors, amino acids as, 5
- Proton donors, amino acids as, 5
- "Proton leak," 79
- Proton pump, 77–78
- Proton transport, coupled with electron transport, 77–78, 78f
- Protoporphyria, erythropoietic, 280, 281f
- Protoporphyrin, 62, 277
- Protoporphyrin IX, 279f
- *Protoporphyrinogen oxidase,* 281f
- *PRPP synthetase,* 293, 299
- Pruritus,
  - in porphyria, 280
  - treatment of, 385
- *PS decarboxylase,* 204
- Pseudogenes, 34
- Pseudouridine, 425f
- P sites, on ribosome, 436
- Psoriasis, retinoic acid for, 385
- *Purine nucleoside phosphorylase,* 299
  - deficiency in, 300
- Purine nucleotides
  - degradation of, **298–302,** 300f, 305f
    - diseases associated with, 299–302, 300f, 301f
  - parent, inosine monophosphates as, 293
  - purine base conversion to, 296, 296f
  - salvage pathway for, 296–297, 296f
  - structure of, 291–292, 291f, 292f
  - synthesis of, **292–297,** 305f
    - committed step of, 293, 294f
    - drugs targeting, 293, 294f, 305f
- Purine ring, atom sources for, 292, 293f
- Purine(s)
  - ammonia from, 257
  - bases
    - conversion to nucleotides, 296, 296f
    - in DNA and RNA, 291–292, 291f, 305f
  - de novo synthesis of, 291
- Puromycin, 440f
- Pyranose, 84
- Pyridoxal, 377f, 378
- Pyridoxal phosphate, 251, 251f, 377f
  - in glycogen degradation, 128
  - in histamine synthesis, 287
  - in sphingomyelin synthesis, 206
  - in transamination of amino acids, 251, 251f
- Pyridoxamine, 377f, 378
- Pyridoxine, 273, 377f, 378, **378**. *See also* Vitamin B$_6$
- Pyrimidine nucleotides
  - degradation of, 304
  - formation of, 302–303, 303f
  - salvage of, 304
  - structure of, 291–292, 291f, 292f
  - synthesis of, **302–304,** 303f, 305f
- Pyrimidine ring, sources of individual atoms in, 302, 302f
- Pyrimidine(s)
  - ammonia from, 257
  - bases, in DNA and RNA, 291–292, 291f, 305f
  - degradation of, **304**
  - de novo synthesis of, 291
  - salvage of, 304
  - structure of, 291–292, 291f, 292f
  - synthesis of, **302–303,** 303f
- *Pyrophosphatase,* 126, 296, 437
- Pyrophosphate (PP$_i$), 404
- Pyruvate, 96
  - alternate fates of, **105**
  - amino acids that form, 263, 263f
  - carboxylation to oxaloacetate, 105, 118–119, 119f
    - NADPH production in, 186, 186f
  - formation of
    - in amino acid catabolism, 261, 263, 263f
    - ATP-producing, 102–103
  - glucose conversion to (aerobic glycolysis), 96–102, 96f
  - glucose synthesis from (gluconeogenesis), 118–119, 119f
  - oxidative decarboxylation of, 105, 106f, 109–111, 110f
    - thiamine and, 378f, 379, 379f
  - phosphoenolpyruvate conversion to, 102
  - reduction to ethanol, 105, 106f
  - reduction to lactate (anaerobic glycolysis), 103–104, 103f
  - in tricarboxylic acid, 109–111
- *Pyruvate carboxylase,* 105, 106f, 118, 120, 122, 123
  - in absorptive/fed state, 323
  - allosteric regulation of, 119
  - in fasting, 330
- *Pyruvate carboxylase/PEP carboxykinase,* 121
- *Pyruvate decarboxylase,* 147
- *Pyruvate dehydrogenase complex,* 105, 106f, 109–111, 110f
  - coenzymes in, 110
  - component enzymes in, 110
  - deficiency in, 111
  - mechanism of action, 110, 110f
  - regulation of, 110–111, 111f
  - in tricarboxylic acid cycle, 109–111
- *Pyruvate dehydrogenase kinase,* 110, 323
- *Pyruvate dehydrogenase (PDH),* 105, 110, 110f, 119
  - in absorptive/fed state, 323
  - in arsenic poisoning, 101, 111

  deficiency of, 111
  in fasting, 196, 330
  inhibition of, by acetyl CoA, 122
  irreversibility of action, 118
Pyruvate dehydrogenase phosphatase, 110–111
Pyruvate kinase, 98, 102, 118
  in absorptive/fed state, 323
  activation of, 102
  covalent modification of, 102
  deficiency in, 102–103
  dephosphorylation of, 102
  glucagon and, 121, 122f
  hormonal regulation of, 105
  insulin and, 313
  mutant forms of, 103

Q

Quinolones, 401

R

Racemases, 84
Random coil, 18
Rate of reaction, 55
Reactive oxygen species, 148–149, 148f
  in porphyria, 280
Receptor-mediated endocytosis, 232, 233f
Recombinant DNA, 472
  joining of sticky ends, 467f
Recommended Dietary Allowance (RDA), 357, 358f
  for carbohydrates, 367
  for protein, 368
  for vitamin D, 388
  for vitamin E, 391
Red blood cells
  2,3-bisphoglycerate synthesis in, 101
  G6PD in, 152, 152f
    deficiency of, 152, 152f
  hemoglobin in, 27
  NADPH in, 148
Redox pairs, 76
Reducing agent (reductant), 76
Reducing equivalents, transport of, 79–80, 79f
Reducing sugars, 84–85
Reduction potential, standard (E_o), 77, 77f
  relationship with free energy change, 77
Redundancy, 433
Refsum disease, 195
Regulatory sequences, in transcription, **449–450**
RelA, 454
Release factor (RF), 441f, 442
Renal osteodystrophy, 389
Renal rickets, 389
Renaturation (reannealing), 398
Renin, 239
Replication fork, 399–400, 400f
Reproductive tissues
  cholesterol synthesis in, 220
  vitamin A and, 384
Respiratory burst, 150
Respiratory control, of energy production, 78
Respiratory distress syndrome, 204, 236
Resting metabolic rate (RMR), 359
Restriction endonucleases, **465–466,** 465f
  nomenclature for, 466
  restriction sites, 466
  specificity of, 465–466, 466f
  “sticky” and “blunt” ends, 466, 466f, 467f
Restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP), **473–479**
  close linkage in, 477
  DNA variation resulting in, 475, 475f, 476f
  in phenylketonuria, 477–479, 479f
  for prenatal diagnosis, 476–479, 477f
  in sickle cell disease, 476–477, 478f
  of single DNA base changes, 474, 475
  of tandem repeats, 475, 476f
  for tracing chromosome from parent to offspring, 475–476
Restriction fragment(s), 465–466
  sticky and blunt ends of, 266, 266f
Restriction map, 467
Restriction sites, 466
Reticuloendothelial (RE) system, heme degradation in, 282, 282f
Retinal, 382, 382f, 392f
  11-cis, 382f, 383f, 384
11-cis-Retinal, 382f, 383f, 384
Retinoic acid, 381–382, 382f, 392f
  mechanism of action, 382, 384f
  reproduction and, 384
  retinol oxidation to, 384f
  in transcriptional regulation, 456
  use in dermatology, 385, 385f, 386
Retinoids, 381–384
  clinical indications for, 384–385
  function of, 384
  mechanism of action, 382, 383f, 384f, 385f
  structure of, 382, 382f
  toxicity of, 385–386, 393f
Retinol, 382, 382f, 392f
  as dietary supplement, 384, 391
  oxidation to retinoic acid, 384f
Retinol-binding protein (RBP), 382
  cellular, 382
  plasma, 382, 384f
Retinopathy, 140
Retinopathy, diabetic, 345, 346f
Retrotransposons, 408, 461
Retroviruses, 459, 468
Reverse transcriptase, 408, 469, 469f
Reyes syndrome, 193
RFLP. *See* Restriction fragment length polymorphism
R-group. *See* Side chains, of amino acids
Rho-dependent termination, 421
Rhodopsin, 384
Rho factor, 419
Rho-independent termination, 421, 421f
Riboflavin, 54, **380–381,** 392–393f
  active forms of, 380–381, 380f, 392f
  deficiency of, 381, 393f
  Dietary Reference Intakes for, 358f
  function of, 381, 392f
Ribonucleases, 397, 424
Ribonucleoside 5’-diphosphate (NDP), 293f
Ribonucleoside 5’-monophosphate (NMP), 293f
Ribonucleoside phosphates, 291. *See also* Nucleotide(s)
Ribonucleoside 5’-triphosphate (NTP), 293f
Ribonucleotide reductase, 297, 300f
  activity site of, 297–298, 298f
  reduced, regeneration of, 297
  regulation of, 297–298, 298f
  substrate specificity of, 298
Ribonucleotide(s)
  conversion to deoxyribonucleotides, 297–298, 297f
  as end product of purine synthesis, 293
Ribose, 292, 292f
Ribose 5-phosphate, 145
  formation of, in pentose phosphate pathway, 147, 147f
Ribosomal proteins, 436
  regulatory, 454, 454f
Ribosomal RNA (rRNA), 418, 418f
  posttranscriptional modification of, 424–425, 424f
  stringent response and, 454
Ribosomes, 436–437
  cellular locations of, 436–437
  eukaryotic, 436–437, 436f
  prokaryotic, 436–437, 436f
Ribozymes, 54, 434, 439
Ribulose 5-phosphate, 145, 147
  formation of, 146, 146f
Ricin, 442
Rickets, 393f
  nutritional, 388
  renal, 389
Rifampin, 421, 422f
RNA, 395, **417–430**
  alkali cleavage of, 396
  analysis of, 485f
  bases of
    purine, 291, 291f, 305f
    pyrimidine, 291, 291f, 305f
    unusual, 291–292, 292f, 418
  concept map, 429f
  DNA information for, 395, 395f
  elongation of, 420–421, 420f
  heterogeneous nuclear, 425
  messenger (mRNA), 417, 418, 419f
    alternative splicing patterns of, 427, 428f
    coding for protein synthesis, 434
    codons of, 431–432, 432f
      mutations of, 432f, 433–434
      recognition by tRNA, 435
    editing, 457–458, 457f
    eukaryotic, 418, 419f
      posttranscriptional modification of, 425–427, 426f, 454, 457–460
    exons of, splicing of, 426–427, 427f
    frame-shift mutation of, 434, 434f
    introns of, 426
      removal of, 426–427, 427f
    levels of, determination of, 483–484, 484f
    missense mutation of, 432f, 433
    monocistronic, 438
    non-coding (ncRNA), 417
    nonsense mutation of, 432f, 433
    nucleotide sequence of, alternation of, 432f, 433–434
    polycistronic, 438, 450, 452
    silent mutation of, 432f, 433
    splice site mutation of, 434
    stability of, 458–460, 458f, 460f
    transcription of, 450
    translation of, 431f, 432–443, 440–441f, 460, 460f
      components required for, **434–437**
      regulation of, 443
      steps in, 438–444, 440–441f
    trinucleotide repeat expansion of, 433, 433f
  posttranscriptional modification of, **424–427**
  preribosomal, 424
  ribosomal (rRNA), 417, 418, 418f
    posttranscriptional modification of, 424–425, 424f
    in regulation of gene expression, 454, 454f
  small nuclear (snRNA), 418, 426–427, 427f
  structure of, **417–418,** 429f
  synthesis of (transcription), 429f. *See also*

      - Gene expression
    - antibiotics targeting, 421, 422f
    - from bacterial operons, 450–453, 451f
    - DNA palindrome and, 466, 466f
    - elongation in, 420–421, 420f
    - eukaryotic, **420–422, 454–461**
    - hairpin turn in, 421, 421f, 453
    - initiation of, 419–420, 420f
    - negative regulation of, 453
    - positive regulation of, 452, 453
    - primary transcript in
    - prokaryotic, **419–421, 450–454**
    - termination of, 421, 421f
  - transfer (tRNA), 417, 418, 418f
    - as adaptor molecules, 435
    - anticodon of, 435
    - antiparallel binding with codon, 437, 437f
    - attachment of amino acids to
      - enzymes required for, 435, 435f
      - site for, 434f, 435
    - codon recognition by, 435
    - initiator, 438, 440f
    - intrachain base pairing of, 418, 418f
    - posttranscriptional modification of, 425, 425f
    - in protein synthesis, 435
    - ribosomal binding sites for, 436
    - synthesis of, 425
    - unusual bases of, 417f, 418, 425
- RNA-induced silencing complex (RISC), 459
- RNA interference (RNAi), 459, 459f
  - therapy using, 459–460
- *RNA polymerase,* 417
  - antibiotics targeting, 421, 422f
  - core enzyme of, 419, 419f
  - DNA unwinding by, 420–421, 420f
  - in eukaryotic transcription, 422–424, 423f
  - holoenzyme (sigma factor, unit) of, 419, 419f
  - mitochondrial, 424
  - nuclear, of eukaryotic cells, 422–424, 423f
  - in prokaryotic transcription, 419–421, 419f, 450–452, 451f
  - rho factor of
    - consensus nucleotide sequences recognized by, 419–420, 420f
    - transcription termination dependent on, 421, 421f
- *5'→3' RNA polymerase*
  - in transcription, 419–421, 420f
- *RNA polymerase I,* 422
- *RNA polymerase II,* 422–424, 425
  - inhibitors of, 424
- *RNA polymerase III,* 424
- RNA primers, 402–403, 402f
  - excision of, 405, 406f
- *RNase H,* 406
- RNA silencing, 459
- Rosuvastatin, 224
- Rotenone, 76f
- RT-PCR (*reverse transcriptase*-PCR), 483

S

- S-adenosylhomocysteine, 264
- S-adenosylmethionine (SAM), 204, 263, 425–426
  - activated methyl group of, 264
  - as carrier of one-carbon units, 263, 267
  - hydrolysis of, 264–265, 264f
  - methylation of, 460, 461f
  - synthesis of, 264, 264f
- Salicylates, 282
- Salt bridges, 31
- Salvage enzymes, 409
- Sandhoff's disease, 212f
- Sanfilippo syndrome, 164f
- Sanger dideoxy method, 470, 471f
- Saturated fat, 361, 362f, 364f
- Saturnine gout, 299
- Scaly dermatitis, 182
- Scavenger receptor class A (SR-A), 234
- Scavenger receptor class B type 1 (SR-B1), 236
- Sclera,
  - blue, 49
  - yellow, 284
- Scrapie, 22
- Scurvy, 47, 47f, 377, 377f, 393f
- Second messenger systems, 94
- Secretin, 176, 248
- Sedimentation coefficients, of ribosomes, 436
- Selenium, Dietary Reference Intakes for, 358f
- Semiconservative replication, of DNA, 399, 399f
- Senescence, cellular, 408, 408f
- Serine, 4, 19f
  - catabolism of, 263, 263f
  - in cysteine synthesis, 265, 268
  - degradation of proteins containing, 247
  - interconversion with glycine, 263, 263f, 268
  - in phospholipids, 201f, 202
  - in proteoglycans, 158
  - side chains of, 3f, 4
  - in sphingomyelin synthesis, 206, 207f
  - synthesis of, 268
- *Serine dehydratase,* 263
- *Serine hydroxymethyl transferase,* 268
- Serotonin
  - functions of, 287
  - *monoamine oxidase* inhibitors and, 287
  - synthesis of, 270f, 287, 287f
- Serum assays, 65
- Set point, for body weight, 351
- Settling point, for body weight, 351
- Severe combined immunodeficiency disease (SCID)
  - gene therapy for, 485, 486f
  - X-linked, 485
- Severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID), 300f, 301–302
- Sex-hormone binding protein, 237
- Sex hormone(s), 237
- Shine-Dalgarno sequence, 438f, 439, 454
- Short-chain fatty acids, 192
- Short tandem repeat polymorphisms (STRs), 483
- Sialic acid. *See* N-Acetylneuraminic acid
- Sickle cell anemia
  - jaundice and, 284
- Sickle cell disease, 4, 35–37, 42f
  - amino acid substitution in HbS and, 36, 36f
  - anoxia caused by, 36, 37f
  - diagnosis of, using RFLPs, 476–477, 478f
  - electrophoresis in, 36, 36f
  - ethnicity and, 35
  - oligonucleotide probes and, 472, 472f, 473f
  - point mutation in β-globin gene causing, 35, 37f
  - selective advantage of heterozygous state, 37, 38f
  - treatment of, 36, 298
  - variables increasing sickling in, 36
- Side chains
  - of amino acids, 1–5, 1f, 2–3f
    - acidic, 3f, 5
    - as attachment site for other compounds, 4
    - basic, 3f, 5
    - in disulfide bonds, 4
    - hydrogen bonding by, 4, 19, 19f
    - hydrophilic, 18
    - hydrophobic, 18
    - hydrophobic interactions of, 4, 19, 19f
    - ionic interactions of, 19, 19f
    - nonpolar, 2–4, 2f, 4f
      - location in proteins, 2, 4, 4f
    - polar, 3f, 4
    - uncharged polar, 3f, 4
  - of porphyrins, 277–278
    - distribution of, 278, 278f
- Sigma factor, 419
- Signal transmission
  - ceramides in, 208
  - insulin in, 311f, 312
  - phosphatidylinositol in, 205–206, 205f
  - second messengers in, 94–96, 291
  - sphingosine in, 208, 208f
- Sildenafil citrate, 151
- Silencers, 424
- Silent mutation, 432f, 433
- Simvastatin, 61, 224, 224f
- Single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs), 475
- Single-stranded DNA-binding (SSB) proteins, 400, 400f
- β-Sitosterol, 220
- Skeletal muscle
  - calcium and, 131–132, 132f
  - carnitine deficiency in, 192
  - contraction of, 131
  - exercising, glycogen as fuel source for, 332
  - glycogen in, 125–126, 126f, 131–132, 131f, 133f
  - lactate formation in, 103, 118
  - *lipoprotein lipase* in, 228
  - myoglobin in, 26
  - resting
    - in absorptive/fed state, **325–326,** 326f
      - amino acid metabolism in, 326, 326f
      - carbohydrate metabolism in, 326, 326f
      - fat metabolism in, 326, 326f
      - intertissue relationships of, 328f
    - in fasting, **331–332,** 332f
      - carbohydrate metabolism in, 331, 332f
      - lipid metabolism in, 332, 332f
      - protein metabolism in, 332, 332f
    - fatty acids as fuel source for, 332
    - oxygen consumption of, 326
- Sly syndrome, 164f
- Small intestine
  - dietary lipid processing in, 175
  - dietary nucleic acid degradation in, 298, 299f
  - oligopeptide digestion in, 249
- Small interfering RNA (siRNA), 459
- Small nuclear ribonucleoprotein particles (snRNPs), 427, 427f
- Small nuclear RNA (snoRNA), 418, 422, 424–425, 427f
- Smith-Lemli-Opitz syndrome (SLOS), 221
- Smooth muscle, nitric oxide and relaxation of, 150–151, 151f
- Sodium azide, 76f
- Sodium-dependent glucose co-transporter 1 (SGLT-1), 87
- Sodium-glucose linked transporter (SGLT), 97
- Sodium (Na⁺)-independent facilitated diffusion transport, of glucose, 96–97, 97f

Sodium (Na⁺)-monosaccharide

      cotransporter system, 96, 97
Sorbitol, 345
  and diabetes, 345
  glucose conversion to fructose via, 139–140, 140f
  hyperglycemia and, 140
  synthesis of, 139–140
Sorbitol dehydrogenase, 139, 140
Southern blotting, **473,** 485f
  detection of mutations, 473
  experimental procedure, 473, 474f
  variants of, 473
Soy protein, coronary heart disease and, 364
Sperm cells, fructose metabolism in, 139–140
S phase, of cell cycle, 407, 407f
Sphinganine, 203f
Sphingolipidoses, 210–213, 211–213, 211f, 212f
Sphingolipids. *See* Glycosphingolipids
Sphingomyelin, 202–203, 203f
  degradation of, 208, 208f
    disorders of, 208, 208f
  ratio with phosphatidylcholine, in respiratory distress syndrome, 204
  synthesis of, 206–207, 207f
Sphingomyelinase, 208
Sphingophospholipids, 202–203
Sphingosine, 201
Spina bifida, 265, 375
Spleen, heme degradation in, 282, 282f
Spliceosome, 426
Splice site mutations, 427, 434
Splicing, 426
  alternative, 457, 457f
  mechanism of, 427, 427f
  splice-site choice, 457
Squalene, 221
Starch
  dietary intake of, 365
  digestion of, 85
Starvation. *See* Fast/fasting
Statin drugs, 224, 361
  competitive inhibition by, 61, 61f
Stearic acid, 182f, 361
Steatorrhea, 177, 178f, 248
Stercobilin, 283
Steroid, 173f
Steroid hormones, **237–240,** 237f
  action mechanism of, 240, 240f, 241f
  adrenal cortical
    secretion of, 239, 239f
  deficiencies of, 238, 238f
  degradation of, 240
  excretion of, 240
  gonad secretion of, 240
  metabolism of, 240
  synthesis of, 237–238, 238f
    cholesterol in, 237–238
    rate-limiting step of, 237
  transport of, 237
Steroid nucleus, 219
  hydroxylation of, 237
Steroidogenic acute regulatory protein (StAR), 238
Sterol regulatory element-binding protein cleavage activating protein (SCAP), 223
Sterol regulatory element-binding protein (SREBP), 222–223, 223f, 232
Sterol regulatory element (SRE), 222–223, 223f, 232
Sterol(s), 219–220
  in *HMG CoA reductase* regulation, 222–223, 223f
  neutral fecal, 224
  plant, 220
Sticky ends, of DNA fragment, 466, 466f, 467f
Stoichiometry, of urea cycle, 255–256
Stomach
  digestion of proteins in, 248
  lipid processing in, 173–174
Stop codons, 432
Strand-directed mismatch system, for DNA, 411, 411f
Streptomycin, 440f
Stress response, ACTH in, 239
Stringent factor, 454
Stringent response, 454, 454f
Stroke, nutrition and, 361f
Structural motifs, 450
Substrate concentration
  in absorptive/fed state, 321, 321f
  in fasting, 329
  reaction velocity and, 57, 57f
    Michaelis-Menten equation for, 58–59, 58f, 59f
Substrate-level phosphorylation, 98, 102, 112
Succinate, 112f
  oxidation of, 112f, 113
Succinate dehydrogenase, 76, 80, 80f, 113
Succinate thiokinase (succinyl CoA synthase), 112–113
Succinyl CoA, 265
  α-ketoglutarate conversion to, 112, 112f
  cleavage of, 112–113, 112f
  formation of, in amino acid catabolism, 263–265, 264f
  in porphyrins, 278
  propionyl CoA conversion to, 265
  synthesis of, 194–195
Succinyl CoA:acetoacetate CoA transferase (thiophorase), 197
Sucrase, 87
Sucrose, 85, 365, 367
Sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS), 193
Sugar(s). *See also* Disaccharide(s); Monosaccharide(s); Oligosaccharide(s); Polysaccharide(s)
  acidic
    in glycosaminoglycans, 157, 157f, 161, 162f
    synthesis of, 161, 162f
  added, 365
  amino
    in glycosaminoglycans, 157, 157f, 160, 161f
    synthesis of, 160, 161f
  D- and L-, 84, 84f
  dietary intake of, 365
    disease and, 367
  reducing, 84–85
Sulfamethoxazole, 153
Sulfate groups
  addition of, in glycosaminoglycans, 162
  addition of, in glycosphingolipids, 210, 210f
  in sulfatides, 210
Sulfatides, 210
Sulfhydryl groups, 18f, 19
Sulfinpyrazone, 301
Sulfoglycosphingolipids, 210
Sulfonamides, 282
  purine synthesis inhibited by, 293, 294f
  tetrahydrofolate synthesis inhibited by, 374f
Sulfonylureas, 310
Sulfotransferases, 162, 210
Supercoils (supertwists), 400–401, 401f
Supermouse, 486
Superoxide, converted into hydrogen peroxide, 150
Superoxide catalase, 148
Superoxide dismutase (SOD), 74, 148, 150
Superoxide radicals, 151
Supersecondary structures, 18, 18f
Surfactant, 207
  phosphatidylcholine and, 204
  in respiratory distress syndrome, 204
Surgery, weight-reduction, 355
Svedberg units, of rRNA, 418
Symbols, for amino acids, 5, 5f
Sympathetic ganglia, *tyrosine hydroxylase* in, 286
Synaptic signaling, 94f
Syndecan, 158
Synthetic uncouplers, 79
Systemic lupus erythematosus, 427

T

TAG synthase, 176
Tandem repeats, 475, 476f
Tangier disease, 236
*Taq*I, specificity of, 466, 466f
Taq polymerase, 482
TATA box, 423
Tau protein, 21
Taurine, bile acids conjugated to, 225, 225f
Taurochenodeoxycholic acid, 225, 225f
Taurocholic acid, 225
Tay-Sachs disease, 211, 212f
Telomerase, 407–408, 408f
Telomeres, 407–408
Temperature
  enzyme denaturation and, 57
  melting
    of DNA, 398, 398f
    of fatty acids, 182
  reaction velocity and, 57, 57f
Termination codons, 432, 432f
Termination factor, 419
Testes, hormonal secretion by, 237, 239–240, 239f
Testosterone, 237, 237f, 239, 240f
Tetanus toxin, cell surface receptors for, 209
Tetracyclines, 440f
Tetrahydrobiopterin (BH_4), 151, 268, 270f
Tetrahydrofolic acid (THF). *See also* Folic acid
  in one-carbon metabolism, 267, 267f
  synthesis of, inhibition of, 374f, 375
  in thymidine monophosphate synthesis, 303, 304f
  vitamin B_{12} deficiency and, 376
Thalassemia(s), 38–39
  α, 39, 39f, 42f
    hemoglobin H disease and, 39, 39f
    hydrops fatalis and, 39, 39f
    silent carriers of, 39
  β, 38–39, 38f, 42f, 427
    major, 39
    minor, 39
Thermogenin, 79
Thermus aquaticus, 482
Thiamine, **378–379,** 392–393f
  active form of, 378, 378f, 392f. *See also* Thiamine pyrophosphate
  clinical indications for, 379
  as coenzyme, 378, 379f
  deficiency of, 379, 393f
  Dietary Reference Intakes for, 358f
  function of, 378
  structure of, 378, 378f
Thiamine pyrophosphate (TPP)
  as coenzyme
    for α-ketoglutarate dehydrogenase

complex, 112, 378, 378f, 379f
    for *branched-chain α-ketoacid dehydrogenase,* 266f
    for *pyruvate dehydrogenase complex,* 110, 378, 378f, 379f
Thiamine pyrophosphate (TPP)-requiring enzymes, 147
Thiazide diuretics, 299
Thiogalactoside transacetylase, 450
Thiokinases, 176, 189, 190
Thiophorase, 197
Thioredoxin, 297, 297f
  reduced, regeneration of, 297, 297f
Thioredoxin reductase, 297, 297f
-35 sequence, 420, 420f
Threonine, 4
  catabolism of, 263, 265
  degradation of proteins containing, 247
  side chains of, 3f, 4
Thrombogenesis
  n-6 and n-3 polyunsaturated fats and, 363, 364f
  prostaglandins and, 214
Thromboxane(s), 213–214
  n-6 and n-3 polyunsaturated fats and, 363, 364f
  synthesis of, 213–214, 215f
  TXA_2, 213f, 214, 215f
    production by activated platelets, 214
Thymidine, 409f
  salvage of, 304
  synthesis of, drug inhibiting, 374f
Thymidine monophosphate (TMP), synthesis of, 303–304, 304f, 374
Thymidylate synthase, 303
Thymine, 291, 291f, 305f, 396f
  damage to and repair of, 412
  pairing with adenine, 397, 397f, 398f
Thymine dimers, 412
Tightly coupled reactions, electron transport and oxidative phosphorylation, 78
Tissues, use of dietary lipids by, 178
Titration, of amino acids, 6f, 7–9, 8f
Tocopherol, α-, 391, 392f
Tolerable Upper Intake Level (UL), 358, 359f
Tophaceous gout, 299, 301f
Tophi, 299
Trans-acting elements, 449–450, 450f
  in eukaryotic transcription, 455
Transaldolase, 147
Transamination, of amino acids, 245, 250–252, 250f, 251f
  branched-chain, 266
  equilibrium of reactions, 251
Transcortin, 237
Transcription, 395, 417, 417f
  concept map, 429f
  eukaryotic, **422–424**
    combinatorial control of, 455, 455f
    enhancers in, 424, 424f
    promoters in, 422–423, 423f
    regulation of, 449f, **454–461**
  prokaryotic, **419–421**
    antibiotics targeting, 421, 422f
    elongation in, 420–421, 420f
    hairpin turn in, 421, 421f
    initiation of, 419–420, 420f
    regulation of, 449f, **450–454**
    termination of, 421, 421f
  regulation of, 449–450
Transcription factors, 422–423, 423f, 449
Transcription unit, 419
Trans fatty acids, 363–364, 363f
Transfection, 467
Transferases, 53f
Transferrin receptor (TfR), synthesis of, 458–459, 458f
Transfer RNA (tRNA), 418, 418f
  as adaptor molecules, 435
  anticodon of, 435
  antiparallel binding with codon, 437, 437f
  attachment of amino acids to
    enzymes required for, 435, 435f
    site for, 434f, 435
  codon recognition by, 435
  initiator, 438, 440f
  posttranscriptional modification of, 425, 425f
  in protein synthesis, 435
  ribosomal binding sites for, 436
  synthesis of, 425
  unusual bases of, 417f, 418, 425
Transformation, 467
Transformylase, 439
Transgenic animals, **486**
Transition state, in enzyme-catalyzed reactions, 55f, 56
  stabilization of, active site and, 56
  visualization of, 56, 56f
Transketolase, 146f, 147, 379f
Translation, of mRNA, 431–443, 431f, 460, 460f
  components required for, **434–437**
  initiation of, 438–439, 440f
  steps in, 438–442, 440–441f
Translocation, 439
Transmissible spongiform encephalopathies (TSEs), 22
Transposons (Tn), 408, 461
Trehalase, 87
Trehalose, 87
Treponema pallidum, 202
Tretinoin, 385, 385f
Triacylglycerol (TAG), 173, 173f
  in absorptive/fed state, 321
  in adipocytes, 350
  in chylomicrons, 228–231, 229f, 232f
  degradation of, 92f, 175, 181f, 199f
    in absorptive/fed state, 325
    in fasting, 331, 331f
    hormone regulation of, 190, 190f
    insulin and, 311
    by *lipoprotein lipase,* 228–229
  in diabetes mellitus
    type 1, 339, 339f
    in type 2, 344, 345f
  dietary, 361–364
    coronary heart disease and, 360–361, 361f
  elevated levels of, 228–229, 339f, 340, 344, 345f
  emulsification of, 175, 224
  in fasting, 329, 331, 331f
  fates of, in liver *vs.* adipose tissue, 189
  fatty acid component of, 181–183, 188–189
    release of, 189–190, 190f
  insulin and, 189, 190f
  metabolism of, 173–178, 180f
  niacin and, 380
  in obesity, 353
  in plasma lipoproteins, 227, 227f
  processing in stomach, 173–174, 174f
  resynthesis of, 176–177
  secretion from enterocytes, 177, 177f
  storage of, 188–189
  stored, mobilization of, 189–195
  structure of, 188, 188f
  synthesis of, 92f, 181f, 188–189, 188f, 189f, 199f
    in absorptive/fed state, 324, 325, 325f
  transfer from VLDL to HDL, 231, 231f
  use by tissues, 178
Tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle, 92f, 93, **109–116,** 109f
  as aerobic pathway, 109
  ATP production in, 109, 113, 113f, 114f
  concept map, 115f
  energy produced by, **113–114,** 113f
  function of, 107, 115f
  intermediates of, amino acid catabolism yielding
  rate limiting steps of, 112
  reactions of, **109–113**
  regulation of, **114,** 114f, 115f
    by activation and inhibition of enzyme activities, 114, 114f
    by availability of ADP, 114
Trimethoprim, 293
  tetrahydrofolate synthesis inhibition by, 374f
Trimming, 443, 443f
Trinucleotide repeat expansion, 433, 433f
Triose phosphate isomerase, 101
1,4,5-Triphosphate (IP_3), 205–206
Triple helix, in collagen, 43f, 45, 46f
Tropocollagen, 47f, 48
Tropomyosin (TM), 427, 457
Troponin I and T, 66
Trypanosomes, 206
Trypsin, 16f, 443
  inhibition of, 50
  in lipid digestion, 175
  pH optimum for, 58f
  in protein digestion, 248, 249f
Trypsinogen, 443
Tryptophan
  α-helix disrupted by, 17
  catabolism of, 266
  in serotonin synthesis, 287, 287f
  side chains of, 2f
Tryptophan hydroxylase, 271
Tryptophan operon, 452–453, 453f
Tryptophan pyrrolase, 277
TSEs. *See* Transmissible spongiform encephalopathies
TTP, synthesis of, 460–461
Tuberculosis, isoniazid for, 377f, 378
Tunicamycin, 167
Turnover number (k_{cat}), 54
Two-fold rotational symmetry, 466, 466f
Type 1 hyperlipoproteinemia, 229
Type Ia glycogen storage disease, 121
Type I DNA topoisomerases, 401, 401f
Type II DNA topoisomerases, 401, 401f
Type II hyperlipidemia, 232
Tyrosinase-negative oculocutaneous albinism, 272, 272f
Tyrosinase (tyrosine hydroxylase)
  in catecholamine synthesis, 285
  deficiency of, 271
  in phenylketonuria, 271
Tyrosine, 4, 4f
  catabolism of, 263, 263f
    disorder of, 263
  in catecholamine synthesis, 285, 286f
  in melanin synthesis, 288
  metabolic defect in albinism, 273
  phenylketonuria and, 272
  side chains of, 3f, 4
  synthesis of, 268, 270f
Tyrosine kinase, 312
Tyrosinemia type I, 268f, 269f

U

- Ubiquinone. *See* Coenzyme Q
- Ubiquitin, 247, 444
- Ubiquitination, 444
- Ubiquitin-proteasome proteolytic pathway, 246–247, 247f
- UCP1 (thermogenin), 79
- UDP-galactose, 166
    - in biosynthetic reactions, 141
    - as carbon source for glycolysis/gluconeogenesis, 140–141
    - formation of, 140, 141f
    - structure of, 141f
- *UDP-galactose:glucose galactosyltransferase,* 142
- UDP-glucose, 166
    - structure of, 127f
    - synthesis of, 126
- *UDP-glucose pyrophosphorylase,* 126
- UDP-glucuronic acid, 161, 162f
- *UDP-hexose 4-epimerase,* 140, 141
- UDP-N-acetylgalactosamine, 166
- UDP-N-acetylglucosamine, 166
- Ultraviolet light, repair of damage caused by, 412, 412f
- Uncharged polar amino acids, 3f, 4
- Uncoupling proteins (UCP), 79
- Upper body obesity, 350, 350f
- Upstream, 420
- Uracil, 291, 291f, 292f, 305f
    - in codons/genetic code, 431, 432f
- *Urate oxidase*, 298
- Urea, 253
    - ammonia disposal in, 253, 257, 257f
    - fate of, 255
- Urea cycle, 92f, 245f, **253–256**
    - ammonia disposal in, 253, 256–258
    - deficiency in, 257–258, 258f
    - overall stoichiometry of, 255–256
    - reactions of, 253–255, 254f
    - regulation of, 255f, 256
- *Urease,* 255, 257
- Uric acid
    - conversion of dietary nucleic acids to, 298, 299f
    - as end product of purine degradation, 298–299, 300f
    - formation of, 298–299
    - in gout, 299–301, 301f
    - in Lesch-Nyhan syndrome, 296–297, 296f, 300
    - overproduction of, 299–301
    - underexcretion of, 299
- Uridine diphosphate (UDP)
    - galactose attached to, 140–141, 141f
    - glucose attached to, 126, 127f
- *Uridine monophosphate synthase,* 302–303
- Uridine monophosphate (UMP)
    - deoxy form of (dUMP), 302–303, 304f
    - in pyrimidine synthesis, 302, 303f
- Uridine triphosphate (UTP)
    - in glycogen synthesis, 126, 127f
    - synthesis of, 303, 303f, 304f
- *Uridyltransferase,* 141
- Urobilinogen, 283f, 284
    - in jaundice, 284
- Urobilins, formation in intestine, 283–284
- Urocanic acid, 262, 263f
- Urolithiasis, 298
- Uronic acid pathway, 161, 162f
- *Uronosyl 5-epimerase,* 161
- Uroporphyrin, 277
- Uroporphyrin I, 278, 278f
- Uroporphyrin II, 278, 278f
- Uroporphyrinogen, 279
- *Uroporphyrinogen decarboxylase,* deficiency of, 280, 281f
- Uroporphyrinogen III, 279f
- *Uroporphyrinogen III synthase,* 281f
- *Uroporphyrinogen II synthase,* 279
- *UTP diphosphatase* (*dUTPase*), 303
- *uvrABC excinuclease,* 412
- *UV-specific endonuclease,* 412

V

- Valine, 265
    - in absorptive/fed state, 324
    - α-helix disrupted by, 17
    - catabolism of, 266–267, 266f
    - glutamate replaced by, in sickle cell disease, 36, 36f
    - peptide bond with alanine, 13, 14f
    - side chains of, 2f
- Valine therapy, for maple syrup urine disease, 273
- Valyalanine, 14, 14f
- Valyglycylleucine, 14
- Vanadium, Dietary Reference Intakes for, 358f
- van den Bergh reaction, 285
- Vanillylmandelic acid (VMA), 286
- Variable number of tandem repeats (VNTR), 475, 476f
- Variegate porphyria, 280, 281f
- Vascular disease, homocysteine and, 263, 265, 265f
- Vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), 459
- Vectors, 467–468
    - cloning, 468
    - expression, 470, 470f
    - prokaryotic plasmids, 467, 467f
- Velocity, of enzymatic reactions
    - competitive inhibition and, 60–61, 60f
    - enzyme concentration and, 59
    - factors affecting, **56–58**
    - hyperbolic kinetics curve of, 57, 57f
    - initial, 57, 59
    - maximal (V_{max}), 57, 57f
    - noncompetitive inhibition and, 61–62, 61f
    - pH and, 57–58, 58f
    - substrate concentration and, 57, 57f, 58–59, 59f
    - temperature and, 57, 57f
- Versican, 158
- Very-long-chain fatty acids (VLCFA), 187, 195
- Very-low-density lipoproteins (VLDLs), 189, 227, 227f, 228f, 231, 231f, 232f
    - in absorptive/fed state, 323f, 324
    - circulating, modification of, 231, 231f
    - composition of, 232f
    - conversion to low-density lipoprotein, in plasma, 231
    - in diabetes mellitus
        - type 1, 339–340, 339f
        - type 2, 344
    - electrophoretic mobility of, 227, 228f
    - metabolism of, 230f, 231
    - niacin and, 380
    - in obesity, 353
    - release of, 230f, 231
    - size and density of, 227, 227f
- Vibrio cholerae, 94
- Vidarabine, 409
- Vision, vitamin A and, 382, 383f, 384
- Vitamin A, 373, **381–386,** 392–393f
    - absorption of, 382, 383f
    - clinical indications for, 384–385, 385f
    - deficiency of, 384–385, 385f, 393f
    - dermatologic use of, 385, 385f, 386
    - dietary intake of
        - cancer risk and, 391
        - excessive, 375, 385–386
        - requirement for, 358f, 384
        - sources of, 383f, 384
    - distribution of, 384
    - epithelial cells and, 384
    - functions of, 382–384, 383f, 392f
    - growth and, 384
    - mechanism of action, 382, 383f, 384f, 385f
    - prevention of chronic disease and, 384–385, 385f
    - reproduction and, 384
    - storage of, 383f
    - structure of, 382, 382f
    - supplementation of, 384, 391
    - toxicity of, 385–386, 393f
    - transport of, 382, 383f
    - vision and, 382, 383f, 384
- Vitamin B_1. *See* Thiamine
- Vitamin B_2. *See* Riboflavin
- Vitamin B_6, **378,** 392–393f
    - active form of, 377f, 378, 392f
    - clinical indications for, 378
    - cysteine synthesis and, 265
    - deficiency of, 378, 393f
    - dietary intake of
        - cardiovascular risk and, 265
        - Dietary Reference Intakes for, 358f
    - function of, 392f
    - for homocystinuria, 273
    - in homocystinuria, 273
    - structure of, 377f, 378
    - supplementation of, 391
    - toxicity of, 378
- Vitamin B12
    - for homocystinuria, 273
- Vitamin B_{12}, 265, **375–377**
    - absorption of, 376f, 377
    - active forms of, 375, 376f, 392f
    - clinical indications for, 376–377
    - as coenzyme, 375, 375f, 376f
        - in succinyl CoA synthesis, 194–195, 195f
    - deficiency of, 375, 377, 393f
        - anemia and, 374, 377
        - folate trap hypothesis of, 376
    - dietary intake of
        - cardiovascular risk and, 265, 265f
        - Dietary Reference Intakes for, 358f
        - sources of, 376
    - distribution of, 376
    - function of, 392f
    - in homocystinuria, 273
    - megaloblastic anemia and, 375
    - structure of, 375, 376f
    - supplementation of, 391
    - synthesis of, 376
- Vitamin B_{12} (deoxyadenosylcobalamin), 194
- Vitamin C, **377–378,** 392–393f
    - active form of (ascorbic acid), 377, 377f, 392f
    - as antioxidant, 148–149, 377–378, 391
    - as coenzyme, 377
    - collagen biosynthesis and, 47, 47f, 377
    - deficiency of, 377, 377f, 393f
    - dietary intake of
        - cancer risk and, 378, 391
        - Dietary Reference Intakes for, 358f

  - function of, 377
  - prevention of chronic disease and, 377–378
  - structure of, 377, 377f
  - supplementation of, 391
- Vitamin D, 373, **386–389,** 392–393f
  - bone action of, 388
  - calcium and, 386, 388, 388f
  - cholesterol as precursor of, 219
  - clinical indications for, 388–389
  - deficiency of, 388–389, 389f, 393f
  - dietary intake of
    - Dietary Reference Intakes for, 358f
    - excessive, 373, 389
    - sources of, 386
  - distribution of, 386, 388
  - endogenous precursor of, 386
  - function of, 387f, 388, 392f
  - hydroxylation of, 149
  - intestinal action of, 388
  - metabolism of, 386–388, 387f
    - regulation of, 386–388
  - supplementation of, 391
  - toxicity of, 389, 393f
  - in transcriptional regulation, 456
- Vitamin E, 148, **391,** 392–393f
  - active form of, 392f
  - as antioxidant, 148–149, 377, 391
  - clinical indications for, 391
  - deficiency of, 391, 393f
  - dietary intake of
    - cancer risk and, 391
    - Dietary Reference Intakes for, 358f
    - requirement for, 391
    - sources of, 391
  - distribution of, 391
  - function of, 391, 392f
  - structure of, 391, 391f
  - supplementation of, 391
  - toxicity, 391, 393f
- Vitamin K, 373, **389–391,** 392–393f
  - blood coagulation and, 389, 390f
  - clinical indications for, 390
  - deficiency of, 390, 393f
    - in newborn, 390
  - dietary intake of
    - requirement for, 358f, 390
    - sources of, 390
  - distribution of, 390
  - in formation of γ-carboxyglutamate, 389, 389f
  - function of, 389–390, 392f
  - toxicity of, 391, 393f
- Vitamin K-dependent carboxylation, 444
- Vitamin(s), **373–394,** 392–393f
  - classification of, 373, 373f
  - coenzymes and, 54
  - fat-soluble, 373, 373f, 392–393f
  - supplements of, 391
  - water-soluble, 373, 373f, 392–393f
- VLDL. *See* Very-low-density lipoproteins
- von Gierke disease, 130f, 301

W

- Waist to hip ratio in obesity, 349
- Waist size in obesity, 349
- Warfarin, 389
- Water-soluble vitamins, 373, 373f, 392–393f
- Weight. *See* Body weight, Obesity
- Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome, 110, 379, 393f
- Western blot, 473, 484, 485f
- Western diet, 362f
- White blood cells
  - as DNA source, 476
  - phagocytosis by, 150, 150f
- Wilson disease, 48
- Wobble hypothesis, 437, 437f
- Wolman disease, 232

X

- Xanthine, 299
- *Xanthine oxidase,* 299, 300f, 301
- Xenobiotics, 149
- Xeroderma pigmentosum, 412, 412f
- Xerophthalmia, 384–385, 393f
- X-linked adrenoleukodystrophy, 195
- X-linked sideroblastic anemia, 278
- X-linked severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID-X), 485
- *Xylosyltransferase,* 162
- D-Xylulose 5-phosphate, 161

Y

- Yeast artificial chromosomes (YACs), 468

Z

- Z-DNA, 398, 399f, 460
- Zellweger syndrome, 195
- Zero-order reactions, 59, 59f
- Zidovudine (AZT), 409, 409f
- Zinc, Dietary Reference Intakes for, 358f
- Zinc finger motif, 18, 423, 450, 450f
- Zwitterion, 7, 7f
- Zymogens, 64, 443
  - activation of, 248
  - gastric, 248
  - pancreatic, 248, 249f
  - in protein digestion, 248

Figure Sources

Figure 2.12: Modified from Garrett, R. H. and Grisham, C. M. *Biochemistry*. Saunders College Publishing, 1995. Figure 6.36, p. 193.

Figure 2.13 (panel C, top): Abdulla, S. Basic mechanisms of protein folding disease. Nature Publishing Group.

Figure 3.1A: Illustration: Irving Geis. Rights owned by Howard Hughes Medical Institute. Not to be used without permission

Figure 3.20: Photo curtesy of Photodyne Incorporated, Hartland, WI.

Figure 3.21: Corbis

Figure 4.3: Electron micrograph of collagen: Natural Toxin Research Center. Texas A&M University-Kingsville. Collagen molecule modified from Mathews, C. K., van Holde, K. E. and Ahern, K. G. Biochemistry. 3rd Ed., Addison Wesley Longman, Inc. 2000. Figure 6.13, p.175.

Figure 4.4: modified from Yurchenco, P. D., Birk, D. E., and Mecham, R. P., eds. (1994) Extracellular Matrix Assembly and Structure, Academic Press, San Diego, California

Figure 4.8: Kronauer and Buhler, Images in Clinical Medicine, The New England Journal of Medicine, June 15, 1995 , Vol. 332, No. 24, p.1611.

Figure 4.10: Photo from Web site Derma.de

Figure 4.11: Jorde, L. B., Carey, J. C., Bamshad, M. J. and White, R. L. Medical Genetics, 2nd Ed. http://medgen.genetics.utah.edu/index.htm

Question 4.3: from Berge LN, Marton V, Tranebjaerg L, Kearney MS, Kiserud T, Oian P. Prenatal diagnosis of osteogenesis imperfecta. Acta Obstetricia et Gynecologica Scandinavica. 74(4):321-3, 1995 Apr.

Figure 13.11: The Crookston Collection, University of Toronto.

Figure 17.13: Urbana Atlas of Pathology, University of Illinois College of Medicine at urbana-champaign. Image number 26.

Figure 17.19: Interactive Case Study Companion to Robbins Pathologic Basis of Disease.

Figure 18.12: Custom Medical Stock Photo.

Figure 20.20: Success in MRCO phth. http://www.mrcophth.com/iriscases/albinism.html

Figure 20.22 (top): Rubin, E. and Farber, J. L. Pathology (2nd edition). J. B. Lippinoctt. 194.Figure 6-30, p. 244.

Figure 20.22 (bottom): Gilbert-Barness, E. and Barness L. *Metabolic Disease*. Eaton Publishing, 2000. Figure 15, p.42.

Figure 21.6: Rich, M. W. Porphyria cutanea tarda, Postgraduate Medicine, 105: 208-214 (1999).

Figure 21.5: Department of Dermatlogy, University of Pittsburgh. http://www.upmc.edu/dermatology/MedStudentInfo/introLecture/enlarged/vespct.htm.

Figure 21.10: Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc.

Figure 21.13: Phototake.

Figure 22.16: Wuthrich, D. A., and Lebowitz. Tophaceous gout. Images in clinical Medicine. N Engl J Med, 332:646, 1995.

Figure 22.17: WebMD Inc. http://www.samed.com/sam/forms/index.htm

Figure 22.18 : Corbis.

Figure 23.2: Childs, G. http://www.cytochemistry.net/.

Figure 24.4: Phototake.

Figure 26.6: Corbis.

Figure 27.20: Joseph E. Armstrong Illinois State University.

Figure 28.4: Matthews, J. H. Queen's University Department of Medicine, Division of Hematology/Oncology, Kingston, Canada.

Figure 29.7: Nolan, J., Department of Biochemistry, Tulane University, New Orleans, LA.

Figure 23.13: Modified from Cryer, P. E., Fisher, J. N. and Shamoon, H. Hypoglycemia. Diabetes Care 17:734-753, 1994.

RRS1003

The Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews Series

Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews
Microbiology 3rd edition
Series Editor: Richard A. Harvey
Pharmacology 4th edition
Series Editors: Richard A. Harvey, Pamela C. Champe
Collaborating Editors: Richard Finkel, Luigi X. Cubeddu, Michelle A. Clark
Biochemistry 5th edition
Series Editor: Richard A. Harvey
Immunology
Series Editors: Richard A. Harvey, Pamela C. Champe
Thao Doan, Roger Melvold, Susan Viselli, Carl Waltenbaugh
Cell and Molecular Biology
Series Editor: Richard A. Harvey
Nalini Chandar, Susan Viselli
thePoint
Wolters Kluwer Health | Lippincott Williams & Wilkins

LIR—Seeing is Understanding

The Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews series is the successful and easy way for students to review, assimilate, and integrate large amounts of critical and complex information. The **LIR** series offers powerful visual and text resources that deliver content clearly, directly, and with the focus you require. When you need to master concepts quickly, **LIR** is the source to choose.

LIR titles offer these key features:

- **Signature outline format** ensures the most user-friendly learning resources in the field
- **Abundant, full-color illustrations** throughout the texts emphasize essential concepts
- **USMLE-style review questions** provide abundant opportunities for self-paced review. (Most titles in the series also offer access to additional online questions via LWW's **thePoint**.)
- **Titles in the series are cross-referenced to other LIR titles** to help you understand key interrelationships between disciplines
- **Authoritative editing and design** assures quality content

Coming in Spring of 2011!
Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Microbiology 3rd Edition

Wolters Kluwer Health | Lippincott Williams & Wilkins

thePoint

Where Teaching, Learning, & Technology Click

LWW's Online Resources for students and faculty, all housed in one robust, easy-to-access website.

http://thePoint.lww.com/LIR_Biochem5e

thePoint provides flexible learning solutions and resources to students using *Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Biochemistry, Fifth Edition.*

Resources for students:

- Fully searchable online text
- Interactive USMLE-style questions and answers with detailed explanations

Tools to make instructors' jobs easier:

- Image bank that includes all images from the text

Log on today!

Visit **http://thepoint.lww.com/LIR_Biochem5e** to learn more about thePoint and the resources available. Use the code provided to access the student resources for **Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Biochemistry, Fifth Edition.**

STICKER
AREA
FPO

Scratch off the sticker with care!

Note: Book cannot be returned once the panel is scratched off.

Biochemistry—USMLE Review

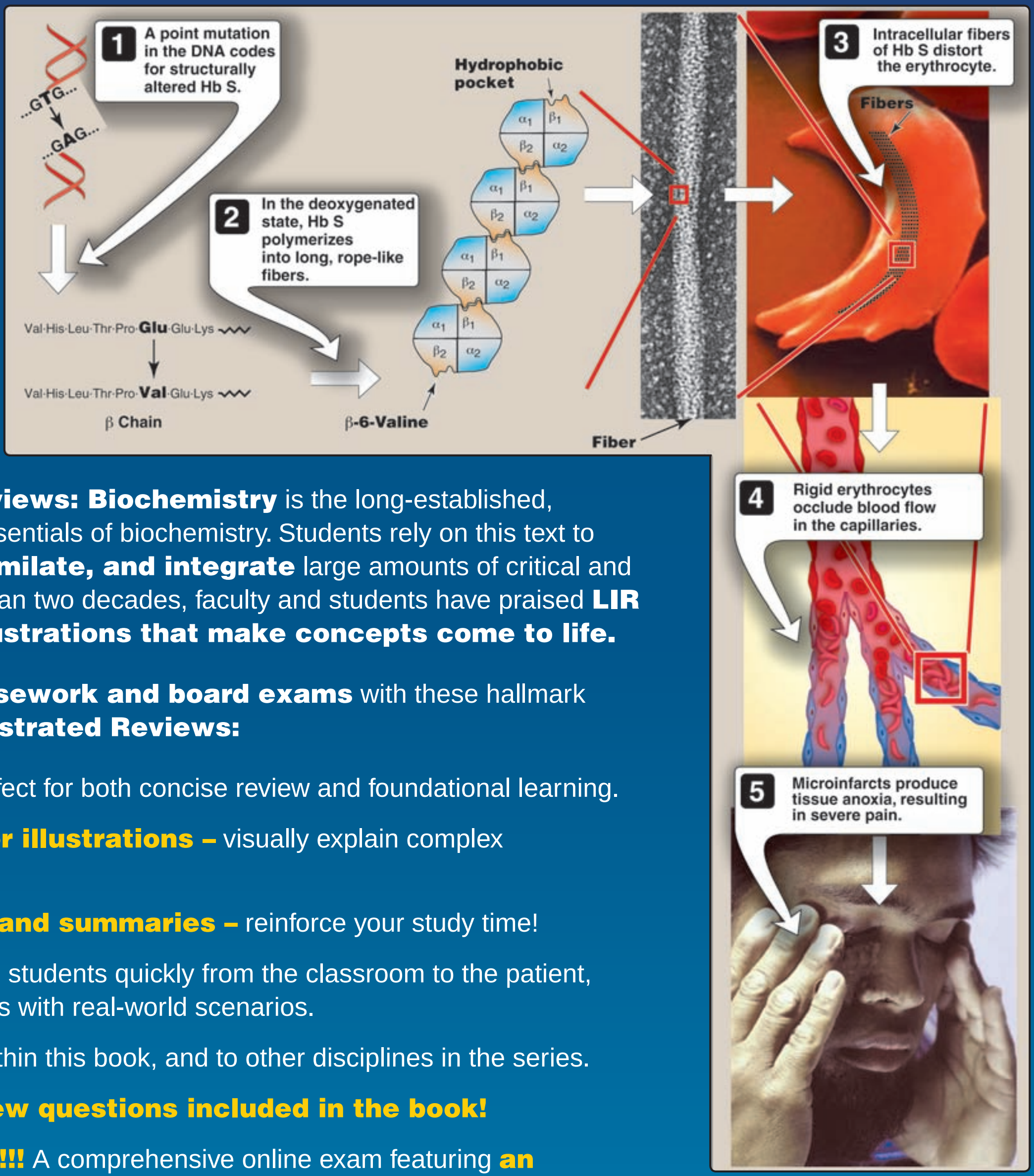
Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews—Seeing is Understanding

Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews

Biochemistry

5th edition

Richard A. Harvey
Denise R. Ferrier



1 A point mutation in the DNA codes for structurally altered Hb S.
...GTG...
...GAG...
Val-His-Leu-Thr-Pro-Glu-Glu-Lys
Val-His-Leu-Thr-Pro-Val-Glu-Lys
β Chain
2 In the deoxygenated state, Hb S polymerizes into long, rope-like fibers.
Hydrophobic pocket
α1 β1
β2 α2
β-6-Valine
Fiber
3 Intracellular fibers of Hb S distort the erythrocyte.
Fibers
4 Rigid erythrocytes occlude blood flow in the capillaries.
5 Microinfarcts produce tissue anoxia, resulting in severe pain.

Figure 3.20
Molecular and cellular events leading to sickle cell crisis.

Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews: Biochemistry is the long-established, first-and-best resource for the essentials of biochemistry. Students rely on this text to help them quickly **review, assimilate, and integrate** large amounts of critical and complex information. For more than two decades, faculty and students have praised **LIR Biochemistry's** matchless **illustrations that make concepts come to life.**

Get fully prepared for coursework and board exams with these hallmark features from **Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews:**

- ✓ **Outline format –** perfect for both concise review and foundational learning.
- ✓ **Annotated, full-color illustrations –** visually explain complex biochemical processes.
- ✓ **Chapter overviews and summaries –** reinforce your study time!
- ✓ **Clinical boxes –** take students quickly from the classroom to the patient, associating key concepts with real-world scenarios.
- ✓ **Cross-references** within this book, and to other disciplines in the series.
- ✓ **More than 100 review questions included in the book!**
- ✓ **Free With Purchase!!!** A comprehensive online exam featuring **an additional 450 practice questions,** plus fully searchable online text!

Additional FREE!! Online resources available on thePoint, where Teaching, Learning, and Technology "click."

Don't miss these other titles in the Lippincott's Illustrated Reviews series:

LIR: Immunology • *LIR: Microbiology*

LIR: Pharmacology • *LIR: Cell and Molecular Biology*

ISBN-13: 978-1-60831-412-6
ISBN-10: 1-60831-412-X
90000
9 781608 314126

Wolters Kluwer Health | Lippincott Williams & Wilkins

LWW.com